Decision Making in Emergency Critical Care
An Evidence-Based Handbook

Editor:
John E. Arbo
Associate Editors:
Stephen J. Ruoss
Geoffrey K. Lighthall
Michael P. Jones
To John and Marlene for a lifetime of support, to Rani for her editorial genius, and to Morgan for never letting me forget the bigger picture
CONTRIBUTORS

Darryl Abrams, MD
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Division of Pulmonary, Allergy, and Critical Care
Department of Medicine
Columbia University Medical Center
Assistant Attending Physician
Division of Pulmonary, Allergy, and Critical Care
Department of Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Cara Agerstrand, MD
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Department of Medicine
Columbia College of Physicians and Surgeons and the New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

John E. Arbo, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine and Pulmonary Critical Care Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Anne-Sophie Beraud, MD, MS
Consulting Instructor
Division Cardiovascular Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California
Staff Cardiologist
Cardiovascular Medicine
Clinique Pasteur
Toulouse, France

Rana Biary, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Division of Medical Toxicology
New York University Medical Center
New York, New York

Nicole Bouchard, MD, BSc
Assistant Clinical Professor
Director of Medical Toxicology
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York

Daniel Brodie, MD
Associate Professor of Medicine
Department of Medicine
Columbia College of Physicians and Surgeons and the New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Carlos Brun, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Anesthesiology, Perioperative, and Pain Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California
Attending and Intensivist
Anesthesiology and Perioperative Care Service
VA Palo Alto Health Care System
Palo Alto, California

Carla M. Carvalho, MD
Surgical Critical Care Fellow
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Betty C. Chen, MD
Acting Instructor
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Medicine
University of Washington School of Medicine
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Medicine
Harborview Medical Center
Seattle, Washington

Glenn Chertow, MD, MPH
Norman S. Coplon/Satellite Healthcare Professor of Medicine
Chief, Division of Nephrology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Palo Alto, California
Contributors

Jey K. Chung, MD
Fellow
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Nicholas J. Connors, MD
Medical Toxicology Fellow
Division of Medical Toxicology
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University School of Medicine
New York, New York

J. Randall Curtis, MD, MPH
A. Bruce Montgomery—American Lung Association Endowed Chair in Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Division of Pulmonary & Critical Care Medicine
University of Washington
Professor of Medicine, Section Head
Division of Pulmonary & Critical Care Harborview Medical Center
Seattle, Washington

Christopher Davis, MD, DTMH
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Altitude Research Center
University of Colorado School of Medicine
Aurora, Colorado

Katy M. Deljoui
Critical Care Medicine Fellow
Department of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
University of Maryland Medical Center
Baltimore, Maryland

Rachel H. Dotson, MD
Attending Physician
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Department of Medicine
California Pacific Medical Center
San Francisco, California

E. Wesley Ely, MD, MPH
Professor
Division of Allergy, Pulmonary, and Critical Care
Department of Internal Medicine
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee

Morgan Eutermoser, MD, DTMH
Wilderness Medicine Fellow
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Colorado
Aurora, Colorado

Jose Evangelista III, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Division of Undersea and Hyperbaric Medicine
University of California San Diego
San Diego, California

Brandon Foreman, MD
Clinical Fellow in Neurocritical Care/EEG
Division of Neurocritical Care
Department of Neurology
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Shai Friedland, MD
Assistant Professor
Stanford University School of Medicine
Staff Physician
Gastroenterology
Stanford University Hospital and Veteran Affairs Hospital Palo Alto
Palo Alto, California

Samuel Gerson, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
School of Medicine
University of California San Diego
La Jolla, California
Attending Physician
Emergency Medicine
University of California San Diego Medical Center
San Diego, California

Laleh Gharahbaghian, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Director, Emergency Ultrasound Program and Fellowship
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Morgan Eutermoser, MD, DTMH
Wilderness Medicine Fellow
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Colorado
Aurora, Colorado

Jose Evangelista III, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Division of Undersea and Hyperbaric Medicine
University of California San Diego
San Diego, California

Brandon Foreman, MD
Clinical Fellow in Neurocritical Care/EEG
Division of Neurocritical Care
Department of Neurology
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Shai Friedland, MD
Assistant Professor
Stanford University School of Medicine
Staff Physician
Gastroenterology
Stanford University Hospital and Veteran Affairs Hospital Palo Alto
Palo Alto, California

Samuel Gerson, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
School of Medicine
University of California San Diego
La Jolla, California
Attending Physician
Emergency Medicine
University of California San Diego Medical Center
San Diego, California

Laleh Gharahbaghian, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Director, Emergency Ultrasound Program and Fellowship
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Morgan Eutermoser, MD, DTMH
Wilderness Medicine Fellow
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Colorado
Aurora, Colorado

Jose Evangelista III, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Division of Undersea and Hyperbaric Medicine
University of California San Diego
San Diego, California

Brandon Foreman, MD
Clinical Fellow in Neurocritical Care/EEG
Division of Neurocritical Care
Department of Neurology
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York-Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Shai Friedland, MD
Assistant Professor
Stanford University School of Medicine
Staff Physician
Gastroenterology
Stanford University Hospital and Veteran Affairs Hospital Palo Alto
Palo Alto, California

Samuel Gerson, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
School of Medicine
University of California San Diego
La Jolla, California
Attending Physician
Emergency Medicine
University of California San Diego Medical Center
San Diego, California

Laleh Gharahbaghian, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Director, Emergency Ultrasound Program and Fellowship
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California
Alberto Goffi, MD  
Clinical Fellow  
Interdepartmental Division of Critical Care  
University of Toronto  
Intensivist, Medical-Surgical and Neuro-Intensive Care Unit  
University Health Network—Toronto Western Hospital  
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

M. Cristina Vazquez-Guillamet, MD  
Infectious Disease Fellow  
University of New Mexico Hospital  
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Francois Haddad, MD, FAHA  
Director Biomarker and Phenotypic Core Laboratory  
Stanford Cardiovascular Institute  
Stanford University Medical Center  
Stanford, California

Alexis Halpern, BA, MD  
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine  
Assistant Director, Geriatric Emergency Medicine Fellowship  
Department of Medicine  
Weill Cornell Medical College  
Attending Physician  
Division of Emergency Medicine  
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College  
New York, New York

Jin H. Han, MD, MSc  
Assistant Professor  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine  
Nashville, Tennessee

Lawrence A. Ho, BS, MD  
Clinical Assistant Professor  
Center for Interstitial Lung Disease, Pulmonary and Critical Care  
University of Washington  
Seattle, Washington

Joe L. Hsu, MD, MPH  
Instructor of Medicine  
Department of Medicine  
Stanford University School of Medicine  
Attending  
Department of Medicine  
Stanford University Medical Center  
Stanford, California

Catherine T. Jamin, MD  
Assistant Professor, Chief of Emergency Medicine Critical Care  
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
NYU Langone Medical Center  
Assistant Professor, Chief of Emergency Medicine Critical Care  
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
Bellevue Hospital Center  
New York, New York

Michael P. Jones, MD  
Assistant Professor  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
Albert Einstein College of Medicine  
Associate Residency Director  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
Jacobi Medical Center  
Bronx, New York

Shawn K. Kaku, MD  
Fellow  
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine  
Stanford University Medical Center  
Stanford, California

Jon-Emile S. Kenny, MD  
Fellow  
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine  
Stanford University Medical Center  
Stanford, California

Feras Khan, MD  
Clinical Assistant Professor  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
University of Maryland School of Medicine  
Baltimore, Maryland

Hong K. Kim, MD, MPH  
Assistant Professor  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
University of Maryland School of Medicine  
Attending Physician  
Department of Emergency Medicine  
Mercy Medical Center  
Baltimore, Maryland
Contributors

Michael Klompas, MD, MPH, FRCPC, FIDSA
Associate Professor
Department of Population Medicine
Harvard Medical School and Harvard Pilgrim Health Care Institute
Associate Hospital Epidemiologist
Brigham and Women’s Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

James Lantry III, MD
Critical Care Fellow
Department of Medicine
University of Maryland
Baltimore, Maryland

Cappi Lay, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine/Neurocritical Care
University of Washington
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine/Neurocritical Care
Harborview Medical Center
Seattle, Washington

Jarone Lee, MD, MPH
Instructor in Surgery
Department of Surgery
Harvard Medical School
Quality Director, Surgical Critical Care
Trauma, Emergency Surgery, Surgical Critical Care
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Jay Lemery, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Colorado School of Medicine
Attending Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Colorado Hospital
Aurora, Colorado

Geoffrey K. Lighthall, MD, PhD
Associate Professor, Anesthesia and Critical Care
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California
Staff Physician Anesthesia and Critical Care
Department of Anesthesia
Veteran Affairs Hospital
Palo Alto, California

Glen A. Lutchman, MD, MHSc
Clinical Assistant Professor of Medicine
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Chad M. Meyers, MD
Associate Chief, Emergency Critical Care
Assistant Director, Emergency ICU
Department of Emergency Medicine
NYU School of Medicine
New York, New York

Paul Maggio, MD, MBA, FACS
Assistant Professor of Surgery
Co-Director Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Thomas “Tom” Mailhot, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Keck School of Medicine of the University of Southern California
Director Emergency Ultrasound Fellowship
LAC + USC Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

Diku P. Mandavia, MD, FACEP, FRCPC
Attending Staff Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Southern California
Department of Emergency Medicine
LAC+USC Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

Jeffrey Manko, MD
Program Director, Emergency Medicine Residency
Department of Emergency Medicine
NYU/Bellevue Medical Center
New York, New York

A.L.O. Manoel, MD
Clinical Fellow
Interdepartmental Division of Critical Care
University of Toronto
Clinical and Research Fellow
Department of Critical Care
Department of Medical Imaging
St. Michael’s Hospital
Toronto, Ontario, Canada
Contributors

David M. Maslove, MD, MS, FRCPC
Assistant Professor
Department of Medicine and Critical Care Program
Queen’s University
Kingston General Hospital
Internal Medicine and Critical Care
Kingston General Hospital
Kingston, Ontario, Canada

Michael T. McCurdy, MD
Assistant Professor
Departments of Medicine and Emergency Medicine
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Program Director
Critical Care Medicine Fellowship
University of Maryland Medical Center
Baltimore, Maryland

Anil Mendiratta, MD
Associate Professor
Comprehensive Epilepsy Center
Department of Neurology
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
Attending Physician
Department of Neurology
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York

Venu Menon, MD
Staff Physician
Department of Cardiovascular Medicine
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio

Tsuyoshi Mitarai, MD, FACEP
Clinical Assistant Professor
Division of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Attending Physician
Medical Intensive Care Unit
Emergency Department
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Paul K. Mohabir, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Medicine
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Joshua J. Mooney, MD
Fellow
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care
Department of Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Mary R. Mulcare, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Parvathi A. Myer, MD, MHS
Attending Physician
Department of Gastroenterology
Kaiser Permanente
Irvine, California

Margaret J. Neff, MD, MSc
Clinical Associate Professor of Medicine
Division of Pulmonary & Critical Care Medicine
Department of Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California
Medical Director, Medical-Surgical ICU
Critical Care Service
VA Palo Alto Health Care System
Palo Alto, California

Lewis S. Nelson, MD
Professor and Medical Toxicology Fellowship Director
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University School of Medicine
Attending Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
NYU Langone Medical Center and Bellevue Hospital Center
New York, New York

Pratik Pandharipande, MD, MSCI
Professor of Anesthesiology and Surgery
Department of Anesthesiology
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee
Contributors

Walter G. Park, MD, MS
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Department of Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Medical Director, Pancreas Clinic
Department of Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Phillips Perera, MD, RDMS
Clinical Associate Professor, Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Thomas B. Perera, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Albert Einstein College of Medicine
Residency Director
Department of Emergency Medicine
Jacobi/Montefiore Medical Centers
Bronx, New York

Jane Marie Prosser, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Consult, Medical Toxicology
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Susan Y. Quan, MD
Fellow
Division of Gastroenterology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Rama B. Rao, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Director, Medical Toxicology
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Vidya K. Rao, MD, MBA
Clinical Instructor
Department of Anesthesiology, Perioperative and Pain Medicine
Divisions of Cardiac Anesthesia and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Catherine S. Reid
Clinical Instructor
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Chanu Rhee, MD
Research Fellow
Department of Population Medicine
Harvard Medical School/Harvard Pilgrim Health Care Institute
Associate Physician
Division of Infectious Diseases
Department of Medicine
Brigham and Women’s Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Robert M. Rodriguez, MD
Professor of Emergency Medicine
Department of Emergency Medicine
School of Medicine
University of California San Francisco
San Francisco, California

Daniel Runde, MD
Assistant Residency Director
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics
Iowa City, Iowa

Stephen Ruoss, MD
Professor of Medicine
Department of Medicine, Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Professor of Medicine
Department of Medicine, Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California
Tara Scherer, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Vanderbilt University
Nashville, Tennessee

Michael C. Scott, MD
Fellow, Combined Emergency Medicine/Internal Medicine/Critical Care Program
Departments of Internal Medicine, Emergency Medicine and Critical Care
University of Maryland Medical Center
Baltimore, Maryland

Daniel Sedehi, MD
Cardiology Fellow
Department of Cardiovascular Medicine
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio

Zina Semenovskaya, MD
Wilderness Medicine Fellow
Division of Emergency Medicine
Stanford University
Stanford, California
Associate Clinical Instructor
Department of Emergency Medicine
San Francisco General Hospital
San Francisco, California

Sam Senturia, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Nina Patel Shah, DO
Fellow
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Lauren K. Shawn, MD
Attending Physician
Emergency Medicine
Mt Sinai St Luke’s Roosevelt
New York, New York

Paul Singh, MD, MPH
Neuroendovascular Surgery Fellow
Department of Neurosurgery
New York Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical Center
New York, New York

Corey Slovis, MD
Professor of Emergency Medicine and Medicine
Chairman Department of Emergency Medicine
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Chief of Emergency Services
Vanderbilt University Hospital
Nashville, Tennessee

Silas W. Smith, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Division of Medical Toxicology
NYU School of Medicine
Bellevue Hospital Center
New York, New York

Deborah M. Stein, MD, MPH
Associate Professor of Surgery
Department of Surgery
Chief of Trauma and Medical Director,
Neurotrauma Critical Care Program in Trauma
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Associate Professor of Surgery
Department of Surgery
Chief of Trauma and Medical Director,
Neurotrauma Critical Care
R Adams Cowley Shock Trauma Center
University of Maryland Medical Center
Baltimore, Maryland

Michael E. Stern, MD
Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine
Director, Geriatric Emergency Medicine Fellowship
Department of Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
Attending Physician
Division of Emergency Medicine
New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

Joshua Sternbach, MD
Fellow
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Joshua Stillman, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Division of Emergency Medicine
Emergency Medicine Director of the Stroke Center at New York-Presbyterian Hospital/Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York
Contributors

Matthew C. Strehlow, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Clinical Associate Professor of Emergency Medicine
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Mark Su, MD, MPH
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University School of Medicine
Attending Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
Bellevue Hospital Center
New York, New York

Payal Sud, MD
Assistant Professor of Emergency Medicine
Hofstra North Shore-LIJ School of Medicine at Hofstra University
Hempstead, New York
Medical Toxicologist, Emergency Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
North Shore University Hospital and Long Island Jewish Medical Center
Manhasset, New York and New Hyde Park, New York

Anand Swaminathan, MD, MPH, FACEP, FAAEM
Assistant Residency Director
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University Hospital
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University/Bellevue Emergency Department
New York, New York

Mai Takematsu, MD
Physician
Division of Medical Toxicology
Department of Emergency Medicine
New York University School of Medicine
Physician
Department of Emergency Medicine
Bellevue Hospital Center
New York, New York

Mohamed Teleb, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Neurology
Medical College of Wisconsin
Clinical Instructor
Department of Neurology
Froedtert Hospital and Medical College of Wisconsin
Milwaukee, Wisconsin

Martina Trinkaus, MD, BSc, BPHE
Assistant Professor
Divisions of Hematology and Medical Oncology
Department of Medicine
University of Toronto
Staff Hematologist
Divisions of Hematology and Medical Oncology
St. Michael’s Hospital
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

D. Turkel-Parrella, MD
Clinical Fellow
Department of Neurology
University of Toronto
Clinical Fellow, Vascular and Interventional Neurology
Division of Neurology
Department of Medical Imaging
St. Michael’s Hospital
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Christina Ulane, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Neurology
Department of Neurology
The Neurological Institute, Columbia University Medical Center
Attending Physician
Department of Neurology
New York Presbyterian Hospital, Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York

Eduard E. Vasilevskis, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Division of General Internal Medicine and Public Health
Department of Internal Medicine
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee
Audrey K. Wagner  
Critical Care Medicine Fellow  
Department of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine  
University of Baltimore Maryland Medical Center  
Baltimore, Maryland

Richard Ward, MBBS  
Assistant Professor  
Division of Hematology  
Department of Medicine  
University of Toronto  
Staff Physician  
Division of Medical Oncology and Hematology  
Department of Medicine  
University Health Network  
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Scott Weingart, MD, FCCM  
Associate Clinical Professor  
Director of Emergency Department Critical Care  
Emergency Medicine  
Mount Sinai School of Medicine  
Elmhurst Hospital Center  
New York, New York

Emilee Willhem-Leen, MD, MS  
Fellow  
Division of Nephrology  
Stanford University Medical Center  
Stanford, California

Sarah R. Williams, MD  
Associate Program Director  
Stanford/Kaiser Emergency Medicine Residency  
Co-Director  
Stanford EM Ultrasound Fellowship  
Clinical Associate Professor of Surgery/Emergency Medicine  
Department of Surgery, Division of Emergency Medicine  
Stanford University School of Medicine  
Stanford, California

Michael E. Winters, MD  
Associate Professor of Emergency Medicine and Medicine  
Departments of Emergency Medicine and Medicine  
University of Maryland School of Medicine  
Medical Director, Adult Emergency Department  
Co-Director, Combined Emergency Medicine/Internal Medicine/Critical Care Program  
University of Maryland Medical Center  
Baltimore, Maryland

Robert J. Wong, MD, MS  
Gastroenterology and Hepatology Fellow  
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology  
Stanford University School of Medicine  
Stanford, California

Randall Wood, MD  
Attending Physician  
Unity Point Health-Saint Lukes Hospital  
Sioux City, Iowa
Emergency physicians are caring for a growing number of critically ill patients. This increase in ED-critical care volume, coupled with prolonged patient stays, has placed new demands on the emergency physician. He or she must now provide not only acute resuscitative care, but also extended management of complex cardiac, pulmonary, and neurologic emergencies.

Leadership in the field of emergency medicine has embraced this broadening ED-ICU overlap in a timely and skillful manner. Residency program directors are placing new emphasis on critical care medicine in resident education and clinical training. Nationally, emergency departments have become a focus for evidence-based trials in goal-directed therapy for the critically ill. And finally, in a much-anticipated collaboration, the American Board of Emergency Medicine (ABEM) and the American Board of Internal Medicine (ABIM) have agreed to allow graduates of emergency medicine residencies to sit for board certification in critical care medicine following fellowship training.

Decision Making in Emergency Critical Care: An Evidence-Based Handbook is a portable guide to diagnosis and treatment in emergency critical care for the resident and attending emergency physician. Its collaborating authors include fellows and attending physicians in the fields of emergency medicine, pulmonary and critical care medicine, cardiology, gastroenterology, and neurocritical care. It is not intended as a guide to what emergency physicians already do best; namely, recognize and correct acute life-threatening conditions. Rather, it details the fundamentals of critical care medicine for the emergency physician who must make sustained data-driven decisions for the critically ill patient in an often chaotic and resource-limited environment.

Each chapter provides a streamlined review of a common problem in critical care medicine, evidence-based guidelines for management, and a summary of relevant literature. The result, we hope, is a valuable guide to rational clinical decision making in the challenging—and changing—world of emergency critical care.

John E. Arbo, MD
CONTENTS

Contributors v

Preface: From The Editor xv

Section 1 Introduction 1

Chapter 1 Emergency Critical Care ......................................................... 1
Robert M. Rodriguez

Section 2 Hemodynamic Monitoring 6

Chapter 2 Tissue Oxygenation and Cardiac Output ..................................... 6
Geoffrey K. Lighthall and Catherine S. Reid

Chapter 3 Noninvasive Hemodynamic Monitoring ....................................... 18
Chad M. Meyers

Chapter 4 Arterial Blood Pressure Monitoring ........................................ 40
Vidya K. Rao and John E. Arbo

Chapter 5 The Central Venous and Pulmonary Artery Catheter ..................... 50
Carlos Brun and Geoffrey K. Lighthall

Section 3 Critical Care Ultrasonography 62

Chapter 6 Principles of Critical Care Ultrasonography ............................... 62
Phillips Perera, Laleh Gharahbaghian, Thomas “Tom” Mailhot, Sarah R. Williams, and
Diku P. Mandavia

Chapter 7 Pulmonary Ultrasonography ....................................................... 94
Feras Khan and Anne-Sophie Beraud

Section 4 Pulmonary Critical Care 109

Chapter 8 Respiratory Failure and Mechanical Ventilation .......................... 109
Jon-Emile S. Kenny and Stephen Ruoss

Chapter 9 Ventilation Strategies in COPD, Asthma, and Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension ................................. 124
Jey K. Chung, Paul K. Mohabir, and Stephen Ruoss

Chapter 10 Acute Pulmonary Edema .......................................................... 133
Nina Patel Shah and Margaret J. Neff

Chapter 11 High Risk Pulmonary Embolism .............................................. 139
Tsuyoshi Mitarai

Chapter 12 Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome ....................................... 158
Darryl Abrams and Daniel Brodie

Chapter 13 Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation .................................. 170
Vidya K. Rao, Darryl Abrams, Cara Agerstrand, and Daniel Brodie

xvii
Section 5 Cardiac Critical Care  180
Chapter 14 Heart Failure and Cardiogenic Shock. ................................. 180
   Daniel Sedehi and Venu Menon
Chapter 15 Right Ventricular Failure. ................................................. 193
   Joshua Stermbach, Francois Haddad, John E. Arbo, and Anne-Sophie Beraud
Chapter 16 Hypertensive Crises .......................................................... 208
   Anand Swaminathan and Michael P. Jones
Chapter 17 Controversies in Arrhythmia Management ....................... 219
   Sam Senturia
Chapter 18 Left Ventricular Assist Devices ........................................ 233
   Joe L. Hsu and Rachel H. Dotson
Chapter 19 Management of the Post-Cardiac Arrest Patient ............... 249
   Cappi Lay

Section 6 Neurological Critical Care  261
Chapter 20 Ischemic Stroke ............................................................... 261
   Mohamed Teleb and Paul Singh
Chapter 21 Subarachnoid and Intracerebral Hemorrhage ..................... 276
   A.L.O. Manoel, Cappi Lay, D. Turkel-Parrella, Joshua Stillman, and Alberto Goffi
Chapter 22 Seizure and Status Epilepticus ........................................ 302
   Brandon Foreman and Anil Mendiratta
Chapter 23 Myasthenic Crisis and Peripheral Neuromuscular Disorders 315
   Christina Ulane

Section 7 Gastrointestinal and Hematological Critical Care  324
Chapter 24 Gastrointestinal Hemorrhage ......................................... 324
   Parvathi A. Myer and Shai Friedland
Chapter 25 Acute Liver Failure and Hepatic Encephalopathy ............... 334
   Robert J. Wong and Glen A. Lutchman
Chapter 26 Pancreatitis ................................................................. 349
   Susan Y. Quan and Walter G. Park
Chapter 27 Acute Leukemia .............................................................. 357
   Martina Trinkaus
Chapter 28 Sickle Cell Disease .......................................................... 368
   Richard Ward
Chapter 29 Platelet Disorders and Hemostatic Emergencies .............. 375
   Shawn K. Kaku and Catherine T. Jamin
Chapter 30 Transfusion Therapy ...................................................... 387
   Michael P. Jones and John E. Arbo
Section 8 Sepsis and Septic Shock 394
Chapter 31 Sepsis ................................................................. 394
  Michael C. Scott and Michael E. Winters
Chapter 32 Vasopressors and Inotropes ............................... 404
  Matthew C. Strehlow
Chapter 33 Principles of Antimicrobial Therapy ...................... 413
  Chanu Rhee and Michael Klompas
Chapter 34 Infections in the Immunocompromised Host ............ 437
  M. Cristina Vazquez-Guillamet, Joshua J. Mooney, and Joe L. Hsu
Chapter 35 Burns and Soft Tissue Infections ........................ 472
  Carla M. Carvalho and Paul Maggio
Chapter 36 Biomarkers in Sepsis ........................................ 481
  David M. Maslove

Section 9 Disorders of Acid-Base, Electrolytes, and Fluid Balance 491
Chapter 37 Acid–Base Disorders ........................................... 491
  Tara Scherer and Corey Slovis
Chapter 38 Electrolyte Disorders .......................................... 504
  Katy M. Deljoui and Michael T. McCurdy
Chapter 39 Rhabdomyolysis ................................................ 524
  Audrey K. Wagner and Deborah M. Stein
Chapter 40 Acute Kidney Injury and Renal Replacement Therapy 534
  Emilee Willhem-Leen and Glenn Chertow

Section 10 Endocrine Critical Care 543
Chapter 41 Glycemic Control in the Critically Ill ...................... 543
  Daniel Runde and Jarone Lee
Chapter 42 Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State 551
  Catherine T. Jamin and Jeffrey Manko
Chapter 43 Adrenal Insufficiency .......................................... 561
  Thomas B. Perera
Chapter 44 Thyroid Storm and Myxedema Coma ....................... 569
  James Lantry III, John E. Arbo, and Geoffrey K. Lighthall
Section 11 Toxicologic Critical Care 587

Chapter 45 Cardiotoxins ................................................................. 587
Nicholas J. Connors and Silas W. Smith

Chapter 46 Pulmonary Toxins ....................................................... 598
Hong K. Kim and Rama B. Rao

Chapter 47 Toxicologic Hyperthermic Syndromes ...................... 606
Mai Takematsu and Rama B. Rao

Chapter 48 Metabolic Inhibitors .................................................. 616
Lauren K. Shawn and Lewis S. Nelson

Chapter 49 Caustics .................................................................... 630
Payal Sud and Mark Su

Chapter 50 Anticoagulants .......................................................... 641
Betty C. Chen and Lewis S. Nelson

Chapter 51 Drugs of Abuse .......................................................... 652
Rana Biary and Jane Marie Prosser

Chapter 52 Alcohol Withdrawal .................................................... 661
Nicole Bouchard

Section 12 Environmental Critical Care 680

Chapter 53 Hypothermia ............................................................... 680
Morgan Eutermoser and Jay Lemery

Chapter 54 Altitude Emergencies ................................................ 691
Christopher Davis, Zina Semenovskaya, and Jay Lemery

Chapter 55 Drowning .................................................................. 699
Samuel Gerson and Jose Evangelista III

Section 13 Sedation and Delirium 704

Chapter 56 Delirium .................................................................... 704
Jin H. Han, Eduard E. Vasilevskis, and E. Wesley Ely

Chapter 57 Sedation of the Agitated Patient ................................. 718
Randall Wood and Jin H. Han

Chapter 58 Induction of Intubation and Sedation of the Mechanically Ventilated Patient .......... 727
Jin H. Han and Pratik Pandharipande

Section 14 Geriatrics and Palliative Care 741

Chapter 59 The Geriatric Patient .................................................. 741
Mary R. Mulcare, Alexis Halpern, and Michael E. Stern

Chapter 60 Palliative Care in the Emergency Department ............. 754
Lawrence A. Ho and J. Randall Curtis
Section 15 The ED-ICU Transfer of Care  762

Chapter 61 ED Evaluation of the Critically Ill Patient ................................. 762
  Geoffrey K. Lighthall and John E. Arbo

Chapter 62 Severity of Illness Scores and Prognostication .......................... 770
  David M. Maslove

Chapter 63 Indications for Contact and Respiratory Isolation ..................... 783
  Chanu Rhee and Michael Kompas

Epilogue  791
  Scott Weingart

Index  793
Emergency Critical Care
Robert M. Rodriguez

THE GROWTH OF EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT CRITICAL CARE

Emergency physicians are assuming an ever-expanding role in the care of critically ill patients. The emergency department (ED) is the hospital entry point for virtually all trauma admissions, over 70% of adult sepsis admissions, and the vast majority of patients with acute myocardial infarction, acute stroke, and major gastrointestinal bleeding.1

More than a quarter of all patients admitted to the hospital from the ED are critically ill at their time of presentation.2,3 While some of these patients are admitted to the ICU, many more are resuscitated and stabilized in the ED. Because of increases in ED boarding and delays in ICU transfer, however, EDs are being asked to provide extended ICU-level care.4 This new volume of ED-based critical care has not only demanded an increasingly solid foundation in critical care medicine from the emergency physician but also given rise to a new specialist: the emergency intensivist. As experts on the presenting phase of critical illness, these physicians are valued members of the critical care team and are uniquely suited to provide a seamless patient transition from the ED to the ICU.

Physicians with dual training in emergency and critical care medicine have successfully combined careers in the ED and ICU for decades; but only in the past several years has there been a formal EM/critical care certification pathway. Historically, emergency physicians who wanted critical care medicine certification had to complete a second residency in addition to fellowship training (usually through an EM/internal medicine/critical care medicine combination). Years of intense lobbying have finally resulted in a more practical certification pathway for the EP. After completing an EM residency and an approved 2-year critical care medicine fellowship, emergency physicians can now be certified in critical care medicine through the American Board of Internal Medicine. This cohort, which began as a handful of triple-trained EM critical care physicians, now encompasses more than 200 EM physicians certified in critical care medicine in the United States.6

This surge of EM intensivists has been paralleled by exciting innovations in ED-based diagnosis and therapy. Given that patient physiology changes most rapidly during the
first few hours of patient presentation, it is not surprising that these new approaches are profoundly affecting morbidity and mortality in the critically ill. ED-based landmark trials have revolutionized approaches to resuscitation, sepsis, and trauma and have had an impact on many critical care disciplines.

**EARLY IDENTIFICATION AND RESUSCITATION OF CRITICAL ILLNESS**

One of the most important ED-centered concepts, ushered in by Rivers' landmark study of early goal-directed therapy (EGDT), is that outcomes are improved by early recognition of critical illness and by prompt, aggressive resuscitation. An excellent example of this paradigm of timely, structured ED critical care is the current ED sepsis “bundle” of care (i.e., early identification of septic patients, prompt antibiotic delivery, and aggressive hemodynamic resuscitation) endorsed by the Society of Critical Care Medicine and other international organizations. ED protocols incorporating sepsis bundles have been shown not only to significantly improve survival outcomes but also to decrease the rate of ICU admission by approximately 11%.

To continue the example, the first step in ED sepsis protocols is rapid identification and risk stratification, which is accomplished using algorithms that incorporate triage vital signs and lactate point-of-care devices. Following identification of severe sepsis, computer-generated and other automatic flagging systems may speed up and ensure reliable activation of sepsis bundle protocols. To further accelerate this process, EM investigators have recently proposed less invasive alternatives for determining central venous oxygen saturation measurement (SCvO₂) and central venous pressure, facilitating implementation of EGDT. In a recent study, clearance of >10% of venous blood lactate was found to be an equivalent resuscitative endpoint as achieving an SCvO₂ > 70%, effectively reducing the need for placement of central venous catheters. New minimally invasive techniques for assessing intravascular volume status and volume responsiveness have also been introduced, including systolic pressure and pulse pressure variation arterial waveform analysis, physiologic response to passive leg raising, and respirophasic changes in inferior vena cava diameter as measured by bedside ultrasound. ED-based research networks and studies, such as the Protocolized Care for Early Septic Shock (ProCESS) trial, continue to refine optimal emergency sepsis management.

Structured early identification and risk-stratification protocols have improved ED care for many other critical disease processes as well. Rapid identification of ST-segment elevation MI (STEMI) via point-of-first-contact electrocardiogram analysis is now standard practice in order to reduce reperfusion (door-to-balloon) times. Many emergency medical systems have also implemented prehospital wireless transmission of 12-lead ECGs to facilitate early identification of STEMI patients and timely transport to dedicated cardiac care centers.

Similarly, in acute stroke management, ED protocols that incorporate early stroke scale examinations are improving diagnosis and management. Many emergency physicians have trained their paramedics to screen patients with abbreviated stroke detection instruments in the field, in order to direct at-risk patients to comprehensive stroke centers for potential reperfusion therapy.
Improved ED-staging algorithms also help identify patients with impending respiratory failure due to pneumonia, COPD, and other respiratory illnesses. These tools promote early delivery of appropriate antibiotics, timely initiation of ventilatory support and judicious triage of ICU beds. Analogous to early hemodynamic fluid resuscitation in patients with shock, timely, aggressive respiratory support with non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) in the ED has been shown to improve outcomes and, in many cases, to avert endotracheal intubation and ICU admission. Formerly limited to use in patients with COPD, NIPPV has now been shown to decrease respiratory distress and improve outcomes in a broad spectrum of pulmonary disorders.

THE ED–ICU TEAM APPROACH

Protocols emphasizing a team-oriented approach have transformed the delivery of ED critical care. Based on the “golden hour” model of trauma resuscitation, emergency physicians and intensivists have developed ED-based critical care collaborations for treating acute coronary syndrome, stroke, and sepsis. Enhanced communication and structured, automated activation of protocols are the keys to the success of these endeavors. The first step in these protocols is early recognition of critical illness, which ideally begins in the prehospital setting. After recognition of acute disease, prompt notification of key consultants (STEMI team, stroke team, or sepsis team) mobilizes resources and brings critical care personnel to the ED for a timely, orchestrated resuscitation and a smooth transition to the cardiac catheterization laboratory, endovascular suite, or other critical care unit.

Just as ED-derived critical care concepts can benefit ICU practice, so too can ICU-centered concepts improve outcomes in the ED, especially in the setting of extended wait times for transfer to the ICU. For example, with the reported 20% increase in risk of ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) per hour spent in the ED, simple ICU VAP reduction measures (head of bed elevation, oral chlorhexidine application, and oral gastric tube decompression) should now be the standard of care in the ED. Likewise, ED application of ICU-derived ventilator management standards, such as ARDSnet protocols, should be fully implemented. The lung-protective ventilation strategies outlined in the ARDSnet protocols have recently been demonstrated to benefit a broader population of patients without adult respiratory distress syndrome, making early consideration of these protocols in a broader ED population a logical extension of ICU care.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The expanded delivery of critical care in the ED opens fertile ground for emergency physician and intensivist research collaboration on a number of unresolved management issues. In sepsis, for example, the best choice (if there is a best choice) of a first-line vasopressor for patients with septic shock has yet to be clearly determined. Similarly, the adrenal suppression effects of etomidate have raised debate as to whether it should continue to be used as an intubation induction agent in patients with sepsis.

A number of unresolved issues also remain for cardiac arrest patients receiving postresuscitation care in the ED. For example, the optimal timing and temperature
goals for therapeutic hypothermia (or avoidance of hyperthermia) are unclear, as is the question of whether the neuroprotective benefits extend to patient populations beyond those resuscitated from ventricular fibrillation. Likewise, the potential detrimental effects of postresuscitation hyperoxia and hyperglycemia are undetermined, as are optimal blood pressure targets and glucose control in patients with traumatic brain injury. Collaboration between emergency physicians and intensivists will be needed to address these questions.

Optimal care of the critically ill patient begins with early recognition of disease and aggressive resuscitation in the ED, and is followed by a well-coordinated, multidisciplinary effort to facilitate a smooth transition from ED to the ICU. The ED–ICU partnership has never been stronger and will continue to grow as more EM-trained physicians embark on critical care fellowships. This text provides the emergency physician with the foundation necessary to provide our sickest patients with both immediate and ongoing care.

REFERENCES
6. SAEM


BACKGROUND

The two principle determinants of tissue perfusion are, (1) a mean arterial pressure (MAP) sufficient to maintain constant blood flow within key organs (i.e., within the autoregulatory range); and, (2) tissue oxygen delivery in excess of metabolic demand. Deliberate evaluation of these physiologic relationships can help define an individual’s risk for organ dysfunction and shock, as well as establish end points of resuscitation.

The balance between oxygen utilization (VO\textsubscript{2}) and oxygen delivery (DO\textsubscript{2}) provides a conceptual framework for understanding the development of organ dysfunction and for the formation of resuscitation strategies. DO\textsubscript{2} is the product of cardiac output (CO) and arterial oxygen content and may be determined using the calculations in Table 2.1. Under normal conditions, global VO\textsubscript{2} is approximately 25% of the delivered quantity, demonstrated by mixed venous oxyhemoglobin saturations of 70% to 75%. Factors that unilaterally increase VO\textsubscript{2} or decrease DO\textsubscript{2}, therefore, increase the oxygen extraction ratio (VO\textsubscript{2}/DO\textsubscript{2}) and lower the body’s overall oxygen reserves. In extreme cases, when DO\textsubscript{2} falls below a critical threshold (Fig. 2.1A), DO\textsubscript{2} limits oxygen consumption. Below this point, oxygen consumption becomes supply-dependent, mitochondrial respiration is impaired, and lactic acidosis often manifests.\textsuperscript{1-3} The curve is a snapshot of a dynamic situation; infection and stress raise oxygen demand, while hemorrhage, hypovolemia, or impaired cardiac function compromises DO\textsubscript{2}.

Most clinicians are accustomed to thinking of shock, organ failure, and perfusion not in terms of the VO\textsubscript{2}/DO\textsubscript{2} relationship, but rather in terms of changes in blood pressure, or MAP. In the case of cellular function, these two physiologic parameters overlap significantly. When MAP drops below the autoregulatory threshold for a given organ (Fig. 2.1B), regional imbalances between VO\textsubscript{2} and DO\textsubscript{2} occur, yet may escape detection. Note that deficits in DO\textsubscript{2} can occur in the setting of an apparently normal MAP—a condition termed cryptic shock\textsuperscript{4}—and that a desirable level of total-body DO\textsubscript{2} can exist in conjunction with an inadequate MAP.

Resuscitation from shock states focuses on moving the patient to within the normal range on these curves (Fig. 2.1A and B). Careful inspection of the determinants underlying DO\textsubscript{2}...
and MAP (Table 2.1, Fig. 2.1A) reveals the common factor of CO. As the sole factor whose improvement leads to increases in both MAP and DO₂, CO optimization is typically the focus of patient examination and monitoring, fluid replacement, and other resuscitative measures. Pursuit of resuscitative targets other than CO is of less clear benefit. For example, in the wrong situation, raising MAP with alpha-adrenergic agonists may actually worsen CO and have disastrous consequences for DO₂ and tissue perfusion. Similarly, raising hemoglobin levels with aggressive transfusion does not necessarily improve DO₂,

TABLE 2.1  Determinants of Tissue Oxygenation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAP</td>
<td>CO × SVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO₂</td>
<td>CO × CaO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VO₂</td>
<td>CO × (CaO₂ − CvO₂)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO₂</td>
<td>(1.34 × Hb × SaO₂) + 0.0031 × PaO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O₂ER</td>
<td>VO₂/DO₂ = (CaO₂ − CvO₂/CaO₂)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MAP, mean arterial pressure; CO, cardiac output; SVR, systemic vascular resistance; VO₂, oxygen utilization; CaO₂, arterial oxygen content; CvO₂, mixed venous oxygen content; Hb, hemoglobin; SaO₂, hemoglobin saturation; DO₂, oxygen delivery; PaO₂, partial pressure of arterial oxygen; O₂ER, oxygen extraction ratio.

FIGURE 2.1  The key determinants of organ perfusion are depicted. In (A), the relationship between oxygen consumption (VO₂) and delivery (DO₂) is indicated. Patients usually function on the rightward side of the curve, where an excess of oxygen is supplied relative to demand. As delivery decreases relative to consumption, the patient moves left on the curve. A decrease in central venous oxygen saturation accompanies leftward movement on the curve. In severe cases where delivery is unable to meet metabolic demands, the patient slips beneath the critical DO₂ threshold, where oxygen consumption is limited by delivery. Organ dysfunction and lactic acidosis are regarded as evidence of pathologic oxygen supply. In (B), the autoregulatory curve describing constancy of organ blood flow over a broad range of MAP is shown. Some patients with chronic hypertension have curves shifted to the right relative to the normotensive curve as shown with the dashed line. For both relationships shown, the flat horizontal portions indicate safe ranges, indicative of adequate organ blood flow and intact homeostatic mechanisms. Movement to the down-sloping portions on the left indicates decompensation, placing the patient at risk for organ failure. VO₂, oxygen uptake/minute; CaO₂, oxygen content of arterial blood [mainly hemoglobin]; CO, cardiac output; MAP, mean arterial pressure; SVR, systemic vascular resistance; DO₂, oxygen delivery.
can produce volume overload, and can precipitate acute lung injury. For these reasons, the critical care community pays close attention to interventions that modulate CO and to monitoring systems that capture these changes. This chapter provides a review of the evolution of our understanding of these concepts; details of the evidence from specific studies of these subjects are presented in the Literature Tables of Chapters 3, 4, and 5.

**HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE**

Modern hemodynamic monitoring and resuscitation have evolved significantly from decades ago, when manipulation of CO and $\text{DO}_2$ indices to supranormal values was believed to improve patient survival. In the early 1970s, enhanced ventricular performance and increased $\text{DO}_2$ and consumption were predicted to improve survival in trauma patients.\(^5\) Subsequent studies in surgical patients appeared to confirm the survival benefit of using a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) to facilitate increases in CO and $\text{DO}_2$.\(^6-10\) Deliberate augmentation of $\text{DO}_2$ in medical and surgical ICU patients was the natural next step; however, therapy designed to achieve such supranormal indices repeatedly failed to improve outcomes in this patient population.\(^11-14\) The difference in outcomes was believed to be due to the use of less stringent and, in some cases, clinician-generated, resuscitative end points in larger and better-controlled studies comparing pulmonary artery and CVP catheters. These studies demonstrated no advantage of pursuing supranormal indices in high-risk surgical patients,\(^15\) in patients with shock and sepsis,\(^16\) or in adult patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome.\(^17\)

Critics of targeted supranormal indices noted that some patients may have reached an optimum blood pressure or $\text{DO}_2$ at lower cardiac indices than that pursued by the experimental protocol (e.g., 3.3 vs. 4.5 L/min/m\(^2\)) and suffered harm from excessive use of fluids and vasoactive agents. Additionally, these supranormal indices may have been impossible to attain in some patients with advanced age or structural heart disease. One important finding in these studies was that some patients, regardless of the treatment group, were able to raise their own CO and $\text{DO}_2$ to very high levels and that these patients had improved survival. The collective outcomes of these studies supported the qualitative goal of optimizing CO and increasing $\text{DO}_2$ but refuted the use of specific numerical end points in restoring organ perfusion. This approach continues to define critical care resuscitative philosophy.

**OPTIMIZATION OF CARDIAC OUTPUT**

CO is the product of heart rate and stroke volume. In healthy individuals, stroke volume is normally a function of preload; however, with any acute or chronic disease, stroke volume is also sensitive to ventricular performance (contractility) and afterload. Optimization of tissue perfusion requires the provider to answer four questions: (1) Is the patient fluid responsive (i.e., will a fluid challenge increase stroke volume)? (2) Is contractility adequate (i.e., does the patient need an inotrope)? (3) Does the patient need a vasopressor? and (4) Does the patient need a blood transfusion? If the patient has adequate MAP (achieved using vasopressors if needed), hemoglobin within normal range and constant across serial measurements, and a relatively static demand for oxygen ($\text{VO}_2$), then the provider need addresses only fluid responsiveness and contractility
to optimize CO. Techniques used to monitor these parameters will vary by clinical circumstance and available resources; whereas some suit initial evaluation in the ED, others with greater trending capabilities may be preferred in the ICU.

**FLUID RESPONSIVENESS**

Fluid responsiveness describes the ability of the heart to increase its stroke volume—and consequently CO—in response to infusion of fluids. From a patient management perspective, fluid responsiveness determines the extent to which circulatory homeostasis can be maintained with fluids alone, without the addition of inotropes or vasopressors. The decision to give a patient more fluids requires an understanding of the concepts demonstrated by the Frank-Starling curve, which describes how stroke volume responds to changes in preload (Fig. 2.2). The ascending portion of the Frank-Starling curve corresponds to the fluid-responsive phase of resuscitation, seen as a fairly linear increase in CO. Once the left ventricle reaches the plateau phase of the curve, additional fluid administration will not further improve CO and may lead to adverse consequences such as hydrostatic pulmonary edema.

Methods of interpreting intravascular volume range from clinical assessments (e.g., inspection of veins or a passive leg-raising test), to more invasive methods (e.g., central venous and pulmonary artery catheterization), and to newer and technically sophisticated methods (e.g., echocardiography and analysis of flow parameters). When evaluating these techniques, it is helpful to consider their ability to predict a state of fluid responsiveness versus euvoolemia and how their unique characteristics may be paired with different clinical situations to yield accurate and meaningful information.

**Passive Leg-Raising**

The passive leg-raising test (PLR), in which the legs of a supine patient are elevated to 45 degrees, delivers a reversible endogenous fluid challenge by increasing venous return; the effect on blood pressure and heart rate is subsequently evaluated. When PLR is used in concert with an existing arterial line, changes in preload leading to increased

![Cardiac Output vs Preload](image-url)
CO and blood pressure are immediately apparent. Because fluid bolus administration is the primary alternative to a PLR, the PLR can quickly identify patients for whom fluid infusion would be of no benefit and potentially harmful. The PLR has shown good correspondence with other derived indices in predicting fluid responsiveness in patients with sepsis and pancreatitis and has been compared favorably with transthoracic echo and esophageal Doppler in mechanically ventilated patients. PLR is a valuable technique in early patient assessment, as it requires little technical skill and does not rely on the presence of a central venous and pulmonary arterial catheter for preload assessment.

**Central Venous Pressure Monitoring**

Central venous pressure (CVP) is the measurement of pressure within the thorax in the superior vena cava and serves as a reasonable surrogate for right atrial pressure. Historically, CVP was widely used to estimate intravascular volume in critically ill patients, with the implication that CVP served as a reasonable surrogate for left ventricular preload and that some correspondence between measured values and CO existed.

The standard test for volume responsiveness was to give a fluid challenge that increases the CVP by 2 mm Hg and then determine whether it increased CO. A study of 83 ICU patients showed that patients with an increase in CVP of 2 mm Hg following a bolus of approximately 500 mL of isotonic crystalloids over 10 to 30 minutes had a cardiac index increase of 300 mL/min/m². Two additional findings of the study were important: (1) only 4.5% of the patients with a CVP more than 10 mm Hg responded to a fluid challenge; and (2) of patients who had increase in CO, 42% only had a simultaneous increase in blood pressure. The study concluded that, first, patients with a CVP of more than 10 mm Hg responded poorly to volume infusion and that 10 mm Hg likely represented euvolemia in most individuals; and second, that blood pressure increase was not a good indicator of cardiac response to a fluid challenge. These data, which supported the notion that CVPs in the 8 to 12 mm Hg range indicated volume repletion, were incorporated into early goal-directed therapy and subsequently into the initial versions of the Surviving Sepsis Guidelines.

More recent examination of central pressures has shown CVP to be a poor indicator of intravascular volume. A healthy person may have a CVP of less than zero in an upright position (due to the influence of negative intrathoracic pressure generated during spontaneous respirations) and still have an adequate CO and be euvolemic. Conversely, CVP can be high in a patient with poor ventricular function and low CO or with good ventricular function and volume overload. As these common scenarios illustrate, values derived from pressure readings are most usefully considered in conjunction with a dynamic clinical response—such as blood pressure or urine output—or with another measure of CO. Meta-analyses show no difference between fluid responders and nonresponders at CVPs of a given value; a poor correlation between changes in CVP and cardiac performance following a fluid challenge; and poor correlation between blood volume and CVP. Although use of CVPs in resuscitation persists, the recommendation for their application has softened in the latest Surviving Sepsis Guidelines, and many believe the practice of targeted CVPs should be abandoned completely. Despite the inability of CVP to represent the dynamic range of fluid responsiveness, a low CVP (<5 mm Hg) in a critically ill patient is generally assumed to correlate with...
hypovolemia. Ideally, however, significant hypovolemia should be suspected clinically and acted upon empirically, without the need for invasive pressure monitoring.

**Pulmonary Artery Catheterization**

In the setting of cardiac and lung pathology, aberrations in right heart compliance and pulmonary vascular resistance can drastically alter the relationship between CVP and left atrial pressure. In critically ill patients with such underlying pathology, pulmonary artery catheterization remains a reasonable option for measuring both right and left heart and pulmonary artery pressures. As with the CVP, however, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP, or “wedge” pressure) measurements are dependent on myocardial compliance. Multiple studies of ICU patients with acute illness have shown PAOP to correlate poorly or inconsistently with left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV). Studies in mechanically ventilated patients receiving positive-end expiratory pressure (PEEP) show that PEEP drastically alters the relationship between PAOP and recruitable stroke volume, and surprisingly, that a right heart parameter (right ventricular end-diastolic volume; RVEDV) correlated more reliably with changes in the cardiac index.

As noted, use of the PAC was historically justified by the assumption that it was desirable to target improvements in physiologic parameters to supranormal end points in critically ill patients. Use of PACs for this purpose has fallen over the last 10 years because of the reasons cited, because of relative success with CVP-based methods for resuscitation in septic shock, and because of unique complications of the PAC, including ventricular arrhythmias, right bundle-branch block, thromboembolism, pulmonary artery rupture, and frequent misinterpretation of PAC-generated data. Despite these issues, debate continues as to whether the PAC can assist in fluid and hemodynamic management in patients with severe cardiac or pulmonary pathology. A number of randomized trials have assessed protocols for fluid and inotrope management, both with and without the PA catheter in patients undergoing major surgery, in patients with congestive heart failure, shock and ARDS, and in general ICU populations, and have demonstrated no hospital or mortality benefit ascribable to the device. Future research is needed to demonstrate whether the PAC retains a useful niche in the management of the very few critically ill patients (e.g., those with severe pulmonary hypertension) in whom maintenance of CO requires careful manipulation of pulmonary artery pressures.

**CARDIAC CONTRACTILITY**

**Central Venous Oxygen Saturation and Lactate Clearance**

While a central venous catheter is of limited value in assessing fluid responsiveness and of no use in direct measurement of CO, analysis of CVP-derived central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO₂) can provide insight into the adequacy of cardiac contractility and CO. ScvO₂ provides a dynamic measure of the VO₂/DO₂ relationship; ScvO₂ values of >70% are consistent with an adequate CO and perfusion status. When VO₂ is constant among several serial Fick equation measurements (i.e., all obtained with the patient at a similar level of activity and with a similar body temperature), increases and decreases in ScvO₂ indicate horizontal movement along the VO₂/DO₂ curve (Fig. 2.1A) and thus
indicate a change in CO or hemoglobin, or both. If the hemoglobin is also constant during serial measurements of ScvO₂, then changes in the latter value (again, indicating horizontal movement along the curve) indicate changes in CO. In the absence of significant bradycardia, CO problems are typically due to inadequate stroke volume, either from low preload or from problems with contractility. Continuing with the condition in which VO₂ and hemoglobin are constant along several measurements, if a patient is on the upper reaches of the Starling curve, and therefore is euvoletic, then abnormalities in ScvO₂ are indicative of inadequate contractility and suggest the need for inotropic support. The ScvO₂ target of 70% is an integral part of the Surviving Sepsis campaign’s resuscitation bundle for severe sepsis, and careful inspection of the algorithm reveals the logic detailed above, in which ScvO₂ is used to judge adequacy of contractility. Intermittent blood samplings via CVP, dialysis, or peripherally inserted central catheters lines, or the use of catheters with oximetric sensors are equally valid means of analyzing ScvO₂.

Central vein oximetry is based on the assumption that the cellular machinery responsible for oxygen uptake and utilization functions normally and that changes in measured values reflect oxygen supply and demand. This is not, however, always the case. In sepsis, mitochondrial function can be impaired as a result of depletion of high-energy substrates related to the inflammatory burst; in this case, oxygen consumption is disrupted in the setting of high demand—a state termed cytopathic hypoxia. Under these conditions, central venous saturation will be deceptively normal because tissues cannot fully utilize the oxygen delivered. Organ function and adequacy of blood flow should therefore be simultaneously assessed. To this end, lactate clearance has recently been studied as an assessment of cellular function during resuscitation. In two recent multicenter trials, patient inability to normalize lactate with resuscitation was found to be an independent predictor of mortality. In a recent landmark trial, a lactate clearance of 10% was found to be equivalent to ScvO₂ as both the resuscitative end point and predictor of mortality. Importantly, resuscitation to a ScvO₂ saturation of >70% can still be associated with lactate nonclearance for the reasons stated above; in these instances, clinical assessment of organ function and lactate clearance should be used to guide ongoing resuscitation.

**Echocardiography**

Transthoracic echocardiography (TEE), with its increased portability and affordability, has found a place in all acute care settings, and the modern intensivist and emergency physician are expected to be skilled in its use. Where the PAC uses pressure measurements to make volume determinations, echocardiography relies on direct visualization of the cardiac anatomy and flow dynamics. In patients with overlapping causes of circulatory failure, echocardiography can evaluate structural abnormalities, contractility, and intravascular volume in a single efficient exam.

In the last decade, the improved image quality of portable echocardiography machines has made TTE a popular tool for intravascular fluid assessment. Right heart preload can be reliably obtained by direct measurement of variation in the diameter of the inferior vena cava (IVC) with respiration and by measurement of right and left ventricular end-diastolic volumes. In one study, a 50% decrease in IVC diameter (caval index), seen in the subcostal views with spontaneous breathing, correlated with an RA pressure of <10 mm Hg (mean SD 6±5) as measured by CVP. Recent studies in ED settings
found caval index measurement to be a useful noninvasive tool for initial estimation of CVP and, more importantly, fluid responsiveness. In mechanically ventilated patients, an IVC variation of 12% with respiration (delta IVC) differentiated fluid responders from nonresponders. In another study of mechanically ventilated septic patients, the CVP and the IVC diameter increase on inspiration (distensibility index [dIVC]) was measured before and after a gelatin fluid challenge of 7 mL/kg. Response was measured as an increase in cardiac index (CI) of 15% or more. A dIVC of >18% predicted fluid responsiveness with a sensitivity and specificity of 90%. Changes in CVP, however, correlated poorly with changes in CI or dIVC. Although it can be challenging to visualize the IVC in patients who are obese or post–abdominal surgery, TTE is usually able to provide a quick, noninvasive, and reliable method of assessing intravascular volume status and fluid responsiveness in most patients.

TTE is also a promising tool for noninvasive measurements of global cardiac contractility and left ventricular function. A goal-oriented exam can provide a rapid assessment of the adequacy of contractility and aid in resuscitation decision making. While this technique (discussed in detail in Chapter 6) requires an initial investment in training of medical staff, it has a subsequent high success rate and requires little time to perform. Studies have demonstrated that after initial training—including basic echocardiography, review of images, and demonstration of image acquisition and interpretation techniques—intensivists were able to successfully perform and interpret (84% correct) a limited TTE in a mean time of 11 minutes. Goal-directed TTE can also aid in the diagnosis of specific pathologies contributing to a patient’s hemodynamic instability. TTE is safe and noninvasive, which make it an ideal tool for repeated assessment of hemodynamic variables that change as a result of interventions or the disease process itself.

As noted above, fluid responsiveness and contractility are the key factors influencing CO; an emergency physician experienced in TTE can evaluate both without the need for CVP monitoring. For the many patients who do receive central catheter placement—to facilitate safe administration of vasopressors or serial assessment of ScvO₂—the volumetric views provided by echocardiography may help contextualize waveform or catheter-based values.

INFLUENCE OF CARDIOPULMONARY INTERACTIONS ON CARDIAC OUTPUT

Cardiac output and MAP interact with the respiratory system in a predictable manner. With positive pressure ventilation, venous return to the left ventricle is initially augmented, causing a rise in cardiac output and MAP during early inspiration. Following this, a decrease in RV preload caused by positive intrathoracic pressure will manifest as a drop in LV preload. The varying effects of positive pressure ventilation on preload and cardiac output are influenced by the patient’s intravascular volume status. For example, with hypovolemia, the myocardium is on the steep portion of the Frank-Starling curve, such that minor variations in left ventricular preload with inspiration or expiration can cause appreciable changes in CO and MAP.

In mechanically ventilated patients, changes in arterial pressure waveforms and Doppler analysis of aortic blood flow during the respiratory cycle can be used to evaluate euvoolemia and fluid responsiveness. Where CVP and other pressure-based measures of fluid responsiveness are suspect in these patients, flow-based measurements
### TABLE 2.2 Hemodynamic Monitoring Devices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device or Modality</th>
<th>Ability to Evaluate or Measure:</th>
<th>Invasiveness</th>
<th>Pre-load</th>
<th>Contractility</th>
<th>Euvolemia</th>
<th>Fluid Responsiveness</th>
<th>CO</th>
<th>VO₂/DO₂</th>
<th>Training Needs</th>
<th>Limitations or Artifacts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CVP</td>
<td>Central vein, RA pressure</td>
<td>Indirect, from ScVO₂</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Generally, if flow</td>
<td>Indirect via ScVO₂</td>
<td>ScVO₂</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Prone to respiratory artifacts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary Artery</td>
<td>Central vein, LA pressure</td>
<td>Starling curves from TDCO</td>
<td>Plateau of Starling curve</td>
<td>CO responsive to dPAWP</td>
<td>Direct measurement</td>
<td>SvO₂</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Prone to respiratory and valvular artifacts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial Line</td>
<td>Art line</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Lack of PPV, SPV</td>
<td>Lack of SPV</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>SPV depends on MV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTE</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Visual</td>
<td>Visual</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Visual estimate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Image quality, non-continuous device</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal Doppler</td>
<td>Nasoesophageal probe</td>
<td>Flow analysis</td>
<td>Wave analysis</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Wave analysis during MV</td>
<td>Via assumptions</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Probe focus and position, requires MV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common means of circulatory monitoring are listed and compared for their ability to estimate intravascular volume, contractility, and cardiac output.

CO, cardiac output; MV, mechanical ventilation; PPV, pulse pressure variation; SPV, systolic pressure variation; dPAWP, change in (delta) pulmonary artery wedge pressure; TDCO, thermodilution cardiac output.
using Doppler achieve their highest accuracy. Similarly proven are several indices of fluid responsiveness derived from the interaction between positive pressure ventilation and arterial blood pressure waveforms (e.g., systolic and pulse pressure variation). Measurement of these indices is described in Table 2.2 and discussed fully in Chapter 3. Reliable parameters for predicting fluid responsiveness have not been developed for patients breathing spontaneously.

CONCLUSION

Optimization of CO is central to the maintenance of circulatory homeostasis. The emergency and critical care communities have moved away from resuscitation based on targeted values of CO and toward resuscitation based on adequacy of CO. Evaluating adequacy of CO requires assessment of fluid responsiveness and contractility. A number of invasive and noninvasive tools can be used in a flexible manner to provide rapid answers to these fundamental questions.

REFERENCES


Noninvasive Hemodynamic Monitoring

Chad M. Meyers

BACKGROUND

The provision of optimal medical care presents a dilemma in emergency medicine. As the importance of early resuscitation continues to be reinforced, the role and responsibilities of the emergency physician continue to expand. Unfortunately, overcrowded emergency departments and overextended staff weaken the emergency physician’s ability to provide the highest level of care to the sickest patients. This concerning trend is exemplified in the early management of severe sepsis, in which full realization of the benefits of aggressive goal-directed therapy is often constrained by the requirement for invasive monitoring. Knowledge of noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring modalities enables the emergency physician to improve diagnostic efficiency and more effectively deliver care to the critically ill. This chapter reviews the noninvasive monitoring devices available to the emergency physician and discusses their clinical applicability.

CARDIAC OUTPUT MONITORING

As discussed in detail in Chapter 2, tissue oxygenation is maintained during periods of rising metabolic demand by the modulation of cardiac output and tissue oxygen extraction. If cardiac output or arterial oxygen content is suboptimal, the delivery of oxygen, or tissue perfusion, may drop below a critical threshold, and the body’s oxygen consumption becomes supply dependent. If this supply-dependent phase is not rapidly corrected, tissues enter a dysoxic state and a shock ensues (Fig. 3.1).

The ability of physicians to make reliable clinical estimates of cardiac output is limited. Emergency physicians, intensivists, and surgeons were consistently unable to provide accurate clinical assessment of hemodynamics when compared to invasive and noninvasive determination of cardiac output and systemic vascular resistance. This limitation likely reflects an overdependence on measurements such as blood pressure and heart rate, neither of which are reliable indicators of cardiac output or critical illness. A significant number of critically ill patients will present with normal vital signs despite having global tissue hypoxia, identified by an elevated lactate or abnormal central venous oxygen saturation (Scv02). Noninvasive cardiac monitors enable the emergency physician to identify concerning trends in cardiac function present in critically ill patients prior to the development of significant hemodynamic instability; importantly, this information not only helps guide management but also has been shown to predict outcome.
Management of compromised cardiac output requires a basic understanding of the determinants of cardiac function. Cardiac output is the product of stroke volume and heart rate. Stroke volume, in turn, is dependent on preload, afterload, and the quality of cardiac contractility. Each of these variables may be estimated and manipulated to optimize forward flow. For example, an echocardiogram with evidence of poor contractility may prompt the administration of inotropic agents. The most common initial therapeutic strategy, however, is restoration of homeostasis, which typically begins with an assessment of preload and an attempt to determine fluid responsiveness.

**IMPORTANCE OF FLUID RESPONSIVENESS**

The importance of fluid resuscitation in the management of the critically ill patient cannot be overstated. Fluid resuscitation using objective endpoints has been found to improve clinical outcomes in various clinical settings, while overzealous resuscitation has been found to increase mortality. Ultimately, the decision to administer fluid to a patient in shock is driven by the goal of improving cardiac output as a means of restoring adequate tissue perfusion. This concept is referred to as fluid responsiveness and implies residence on the ascending portion of the Frank-Starling curve. Historically, the determination of fluid responsiveness relied on static estimates of preload such as central venous pressure (CVP) and pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP). However, as discussed in Chapter 2, static pressure–based measurements have repeatedly been shown to be poor predictors of fluid responsiveness. While the adequacy of preload largely determines response to fluid administration, the interplay between venous return
and cardiac output is also dependent on the contractile state of the heart and afterload, both of which change unpredictably in patients with critical illness. Thus, an increase in right-sided filling pressure that would normally improve cardiac output may correspond to the flat, nonrecruitable portion of the cardiac function curve in the same patient with critical illness associated as pathologic alterations in cardiac contractility (Fig. 3.2).37–40 In this circumstance, further fluid resuscitation would do little to improve cardiac output and risk fluid overload.

In contrast to static measurements of preload like CVP that provide limited information regarding the potential for fluids to enhance forward flow, noninvasive monitors attempt to measure, either directly or indirectly, dynamic changes in cardiac output as a function of filling pressure. The calculations used to generate these indices are predicated on heart–lung interactions in which venous return, cardiac filling pressure, and cardiac output change as a result of increasing and decreasing intrathoracic pressure during the respiratory cycle. The reproducibility of these indices, however, is currently limited to sedated and mechanically ventilated patients in whom tidal volumes, and therefore changes in intrathoracic pressure, remain relatively constant over time. While useful indices of fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients do exist, nearly all studies demonstrating reliable prediction of fluid responsiveness have done so in ventilated patients without spontaneous breathing and with tidal volumes of >8 mL/kg.

THE SCIENCE OF DEVICE ASSESSMENT

The evaluation of a novel noninvasive cardiac output monitor requires assessment of both the reliability of its measurements and the validity of its clinical application. Since the inception of the pulmonary artery catheter (PAC), thermodilution-based measurements of cardiac output are the standard to which new devices are compared and reliability assessed. Early studies comparing cardiac monitors used linear regression and correlation in their analysis. The error of such methods is that they focused on the relationship between measurements and not their agreement; that is, two monitors might correlate well but produce substantially different measurements. Bland and Altman realized the limitation of such methodology and introduced the concepts of bias and precision when comparing a new method of clinical measurement to a standard reference.41,42 This type of analysis provides more useful information regarding the interchangeability of two measurement devices.

What is considered an acceptable limit of agreement, however, is controversial.43–45 A 1999 meta-analysis of noninvasive cardiac output monitors proposed that a percentage error of ±30% be adopted as the acceptable limit of error between a novel cardiac monitor and bolus thermodilution.44 The reliability of thermodilution, however, is itself disputed.46 One intraoperative study using magnetic aortic flowmetry—the original gold standard for cardiac output—noted the percent error of PAC thermodilution for measuring cardiac output to be as high as 46%.47 Ultimately, very few cardiac monitors have consistently achieved the 30% threshold for acceptable reliability, arguably because of the limitations of PAC thermodilution to which they are being compared. To accommodate this variability, it was proposed that the standard for acceptable level of agreement for a novel cardiac output monitor be increased to ±45%.45 The implications of such a wide range of agreement are, however, considerable, and discussion regarding
FIGURE 3.2 In Guyton's depiction of cardiocirculatory function, the intersection of the two curves represents the current cardiac output and right atrial pressure for any given combination of venous return and cardiac function states. In the patient with normal cardiac function who is operating on the ascending fluid-responsive portion of the Frank-Starling curve, the infusion of volume results in a rightward shift of the venous return curve, with subsequent increase in venous return, preload, right atrial pressure, and, ultimately, cardiac output. In contrast, in the patient with decreased cardiac performance whose venous return/cardiac function intersection already lies on the flat unresponsive portion of the Frank-Starling curve, further infusion of volume will not result in increased cardiac output, instead only resulting in increased resistive right atrial filling pressures and likely volume overload. Figure courtesy of Chad M. Meyers, MD.
what constitutes acceptable reliability continues. The current goal for a novel cardiac output monitor remains 30% agreement with PAC bolus thermodilution. While device reliability is important, the validity of its clinical application is arguably of greater significance. It is now recognized that the most important indicators of adequate resuscitation are not specific quantitative measures, per se, but rather the qualitative adequacy of cardiac output. To this end, assessment of monitor performance is increasingly linked to the ability to predict physiologic determinants of cardiac output such as euvolemia and volume responsiveness. Analysis of this performance is often described in terms of a receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve. The “area under the curve,” or AUC, represents the relationship between true and false positives over a range of thresholds of positivity and provides an overall assessment of device performance. AUC values range between 0.5 (a random association between test result and outcome) and 1, a perfect prediction. In addition, the slope of a line connecting any two points along the ROC represents the likelihood ratio for that specific interval, allowing the clinician to avoid the limitations of single dichotomous yes/no clinical cutoffs and improving context-specific applicability.

**PRINCIPALS OF MINIMALLY INVASIVE ASSESSMENT OF FLUID RESPONSIVENESS**

**Arterial Waveform Analysis**

Various dynamic methods of arterial waveform analysis, both minimally invasive and completely noninvasive, have been identified to assist in the determination of fluid responsiveness in the mechanically ventilated patient. As venous return decreases with positive pressure ventilation, a patient functioning on the ascending portion of the Frank-Starling curve will demonstrate a transient corresponding decrease in cardiac output. If arterial pressure is continuously transduced in the presence of sinus rhythm, this decrease in cardiac output manifests as a change in the arterial waveform several beats later. Several calculations capturing this relationship are described in the following sections.

**Delta-down**

Delta-down (d-down) is defined as the difference, in mm Hg, between the minimum systolic pressure over several respiratory cycles and a reference systolic pressure measured during an end-expiratory pause. One study demonstrated that a d-down >5 mm Hg had a positive predictive value of 95% and a negative predictive value of 93% for fluid responders and nonresponders, respectively. The magnitude of the d-down correlated linearly with the corresponding increase in cardiac output achieved with additional fluids.

**Pulse Pressure Variation**

Pulse pressure variation (PPV) is defined as the difference between the maximal and minimal pulse pressures that occurs during the respiratory cycle (Fig. 3.3). Various diagnostic PPV thresholds are described, with two studies demonstrating values of >13% or >11% to have a positive predictive value of 94% or 100% and a negative predictive value of 96% and 93%, respectively. In a meta-analysis comparing intravascular arterial
modalities, PPV had the greatest diagnostic accuracy for fluid-responsive states, when compared to other such measures including systolic pressure variation (SPV) and pulse contour estimates of stroke volume variation (SVV), to be discussed below.53

Pulse Oximeter Waveform Analysis

The photoplethysmogram, or waveform, displayed by transmission pulse oximeters represents the variation in light intensity transmitted through the fingertip or ear lobe. The intensity of this transmitted light is inversely related to intravascular blood volume. Similar in appearance to arterial blood pressure waveforms, the pulse oximeter waveform is traditionally used by the clinician to distinguish between physiologic and noisy waveforms, in order to determine the reliability of arterial oxygen saturation measurements.56

Photoplethysmographic waveforms also permit the calculation of several completely noninvasive indices that have been shown to correlate with fluid responsiveness in ventilated patients without spontaneous respirations. A respiratory variation in pulse oximetry plethysmographic waveform amplitude, or d-POP, of >13% was found to predict fluid responsiveness with 80% sensitivity and 90% specificity when compared to its intravascular physiologic correlate PPV.57 Another photoplethysmographic measure, the perfusion index (PI), describes the relationship between the pulsatile and nonpulsatile plethysmographic signal. Changes in PI are monitored over the respiratory cycle using a specialized pulse oximeter (Masimo Corp, Irvine, CA) and are displayed as the plethysmographic variability index (PVI), allowing for continuous assessment of fluid responsiveness. In a series of 25 patients after induction of general anesthesia, a PVI >14% was found to discriminate responders with 81% sensitivity and 100% specificity.58
A meta-analysis of 10 studies investigating d-POP and PVI found inferior correlation with each other when predicting the magnitude of corresponding cardiac output change, but suggested similar predictive value in the determination of fluid responsiveness when compared to PPV. However, while such simple noninvasive determinants of fluid responsiveness are appealing, the accuracy of d-POP and PVI are dependent on the quality of the plethysmographic waveform. Two studies observing ICU patients receiving norepinephrine infusions with corresponding vasoactive drug-induced changes in peripheral vascular tone found significantly reduced correlation between both d-POP/ PVI and PPV, suggesting limited applicability in the critically ill hemodynamically unstable patient.

**STROKE VOLUME VARIATION**

Intermittent determination of cardiac output by methods such as bolus thermodilution provide the clinician with broad trends in cardiac function, but are limited in periods of rapid hemodynamic change common in critical illness. Cardiac output monitors capable of continuous beat-to-beat stroke volume assessment not only assist the emergency physician with earlier recognition of sudden changes in cardiovascular function but also provide a unique dynamic marker of fluid responsiveness. A meta-analysis of 23 studies investigating the relationship between fluid responsiveness and SVV as determined by a variety of devices (PiCCO, LiDCO, FloTrac, and USCOM) found a pooled sensitivity and specificity of 81% and 80%, respectively, and an area under the receiver operating characteristic curve (AUC) of 0.84. A similar meta-analysis supported these findings, but demonstrated slightly weaker predictive values when comparing SVV to PPV and SPV, the AUC of which were 0.94 and 0.86, respectively. While most of these studies were performed in the operating room under general anesthesia, eight were performed in the ICU with heterogeneous mechanically ventilated patient populations without spontaneous breathing. In another study that investigated intubated septic shock patients spontaneously breathing on the mechanical ventilator, the AUC was reduced to 0.52, prompting investigators to conclude that SVV is not of value in spontaneously breathing patients. Additionally, nearly all studies demonstrating the utility of arterial waveform measures (PPV, SPV, SVV) in ventilated patients did so in patients receiving tidal volumes of >8 mL/kg. In studies in which patients received tidal volumes of <8 mL/kg (typically acute respiratory distress syndrome [ARDS] patients following low TV protocols), this relationship was not maintained.

**ULTRASOUND INDICES**

**Inferior Vena Cava**

Echocardiographic evaluation of the inferior vena cava (IVC) using the subcostal view provides the clinician with a noninvasive estimation of right heart filling pressure and fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients. As intrathoracic pressure increases and decreases with positive pressure ventilation, low venous return and low right-sided filling pressures (i.e., low intravascular volume) result in an increase in both right atrial and IVC compliance, which manifests as respirophasic change in the diameter of the IVC. A study measuring cardiac output in septic patients before and after
volume expansion with colloids demonstrated that a distensibility index of the IVC (dIVC) of >18% has a sensitivity of 90% and specificity of 90% for the determination of fluid responsiveness (Table 3.1). A second study, also evaluating fluid responsiveness, demonstrated a dIVC of >12% to have a positive predictive value of 93% and negative predictive value of 92%.66,67 Of note, the application of IVC ultrasound may be limited in obese or postoperative laparotomy patients.

**Brachial Artery Peak Velocity Variation**

Similar to arterial waveform analysis, noninvasive Doppler assessment of brachial artery flow over the respiratory cycle can identify volume-responsive patients. This technique requires the patient be mechanically ventilated without spontaneous breathing and in sinus rhythm. When brachial artery maximum and minimum velocities were recorded during standardized ventilation with a handheld ultrasound device, a brachial artery peak velocity variation (d-Vpeak_brach) >16% was found to correlate with PPV.68 In a separate case series, d-Vpeak_brach > 10% was found to predict fluid responsiveness with a sensitivity of 74% and specificity of 95%.69

**MEASUREMENTS OF VOLUME RESPONSIVENESS IN SPONTANEOUSLY BREATHING PATIENTS**

The reliance of dynamic indices on positive changes in intrathoracic pressure limits their applicability in spontaneously breathing patients. While a single study found that a drop in right atrial pressure >1 mm Hg (as measured by CVP) during inspiration predicted volume response in spontaneously breathing patients, most other studies have not duplicated these findings.31 One study found that SVV in mechanically ventilated patients who were breathing spontaneously with pressure support did not have value in predicting fluid responsiveness, with an AUC of 0.52.63 In spontaneously breathing patients who are significantly volume depleted, these indices may still be of some value. In a study of hemodynamically unstable and clinically volume-depleted patients, PPV >12% was found to be 92% specific for identifying volume responsiveness, but

| **TABLE 3.1** Formulas and Thresholds for the Determination of Fluid Responsiveness |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| **Modality**    | **Formula**                     | **Fluid Response Threshold** |
| Pulse pressure variation (PPV) | $\text{PPV} (%) = 100 \times \frac{(\text{PPV}_\text{ins} - \text{PPV}_\text{exp})}{(\text{PPV}_\text{ins} + \text{PPV}_\text{exp} / 2)}$ | >13% or >11% |
| Pulse oxymetry plethysmographic waveform amplitude ($\Delta$POP) | $\Delta\text{POP} (%) = 100 \times \frac{\text{POP}_\text{ins} - \text{POP}_\text{exp}}{\text{POP}_\text{ins} + \text{POP}_\text{exp} / 2}$ | >13% |
| Distensibility index of the IVC (dIVC) | $\text{dIVC} = \frac{\text{Inspiratory diameter} - \text{Expiratory diameter}}{\text{Inspiratory diameter}}$ | >12% or >18% |
| Brachial artery peak velocity variation ($\Delta$Vpeak_brach) | $\Delta\text{Vpeak}_\text{brach} (%) = 100 \times \frac{\text{Vpeak}_\text{ins} - \text{Vpeak}_\text{exp}}{\text{Vpeak}_\text{ins} + \text{Vpeak}_\text{exp} / 2}$ | >10% or >16% |
the absence of PPV had poor sensitivity (63%) for excluding hypovolemia.\textsuperscript{20} Significant IVC variation may also have value in identification of fluid responsiveness. In a study of 40 hemodynamically unstable patients, IVC collapse of >40% had a sensitivity and specificity of 70% and 80%, respectively, for fluid responders.\textsuperscript{71}

**Passive Leg Raise**

The simplest provocative test of fluid responsiveness is to administer a fluid bolus and then measure whether an appropriate increase in cardiac output has occurred. This fluid challenge can be extrinsic, in the form of a bolus of crystalloid or colloid fluids, or intrinsic, in the form of autotransfused lower extremity blood volume achieved by passive leg raise (PLR). PLR is performed by elevating the lower extremities 30 to 45 degrees relative to the upper body in supine position for a period of 1 to 5 minutes and then measuring cardiac output invasively or noninvasively. An increase in cardiac output of 10% to 15% after PLR predicts fluid responsiveness.\textsuperscript{72–81}

The PLR-induced change in cardiac output (PLR-cCO) technique is capable of accurately determining fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated or spontaneously breathing patients and is not affected by the presence of cardiac dysrhythmias. In one meta-analysis, which reviewed the applicability of PLR-cCO in the ICU—and included patients spontaneously breathing or mechanically ventilated—the pooled sensitivity and specificity for fluid-responsive patients were 89.4% and 91.4%, respectively, with an AUC of 0.95.\textsuperscript{77}

PLR-induced changes in arterial pulse pressure (PLR-cPP) have also been evaluated for their ability to determine fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with normal sinus rhythm. In a case series of 34 nonintubated patients, PLR-induced changes in radial pulse pressure >9% were shown to predict fluid responsiveness with a sensitivity of 79% and specificity of 85%.\textsuperscript{76} However, in a meta-analysis, including both spontaneously breathing and mechanically ventilated patients, PLR-cPP demonstrated significantly lower predictive value for fluid responsiveness than PLR-cCO, with a pooled sensitivity and specificity of 59.5% and 86.2%, respectively, and an AUC of 0.76.\textsuperscript{77}

**End-Tidal CO\textsubscript{2}**

In mechanically ventilated patients with stable minute ventilation and stable tissue carbon dioxide (CO\textsubscript{2}) production, continuous capnometry may provide a simple method to determine fluid response. Two studies demonstrated that an end-tidal CO\textsubscript{2} (EtCO\textsubscript{2}) increases >5% in response to PLR-predicted fluid response with a sensitivity of 71% and 90.5% and a specificity of 100% and 93.7%, respectively.\textsuperscript{82,83}

**SPECIFIC DEVICES AND TECHNIQUES FOR THE ASSESSMENT OF CARDIAC OUTPUT**

**Pulse Contour Analysis**

Several devices are available that indirectly estimate cardiac output by changes in the contour of the arterial waveform over the cardiac cycle. Derived from Otto Frank’s Windkessel model published in 1899, pulse contour analysis estimates beat-to-beat
Chapter 3  Noninvasive Hemodynamic Monitoring

Cardiac output based on the relationship between blood pressure, stroke volume, arterial compliance, and vascular resistance. While each device uses a different method to calculate the variables in the Windkessel relationship, they can be broadly divided into two main categories: calibrated and uncalibrated.

The two calibrated devices, the Pulse Contour Cardiac Output, or PiCCO (Pulsion Medical Systems SE, Munich, Germany), and Lithium Detected Cardiac Output, or LiDCO (LiDCO Ltd, London, UK), compensate for individual differences in vascular impedance by intermittent direct determination of cardiac output using indicator dilution techniques. Beat-to-beat cardiac output is then calculated using continuous measurement of the area under the systolic portion of the arterial pulse wave. PiCCO uses transpulmonary thermodilution to determine cardiac output, a method that requires both central venous and central arterial cannulation. The LiDCO monitor uses lithium bolus dilution and uses an arterial catheter paired with either a peripheral or central venous catheter. Both devices require recalibration via indicator dilution every 4 to 6 hours or whenever a change in patient status occurs.

Uncalibrated devices determine cardiac output by mathematically estimating aortic impedance and vascular resistance. Beat-to-beat cardiac output is then calculated in a similar manner as calibrated devices. The most widely tested of the uncalibrated devices, the FloTrac (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA), requires only peripheral artery catheterization and standard patient characteristics to estimate large-vessel compliance and estimate cardiac output. An additional uncalibrated device, Nexfin (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA), uses the volume-clamp principle to estimate arterial pressure via an inflatable finger cuff, calculating cardiac output via an updated Modelflow algorithm that allows for a completely noninvasive monitoring modality.

When compared to PAC thermodilution, the reliability of pulse contour analysis for the estimation of cardiac output varies greatly. PiCCO device estimates of cardiac output have been found to correlate acceptably with thermodilution; however, these studies have shown conflicting results during periods of hemodynamic instability. One study demonstrated that PiCCO remained reliable when compared to transpulmonary thermodilution in septic patients with circulatory failure. However, two additional studies demonstrated a percentage error of >30% if the device was not recalibrated hourly during periods of hemodynamic instability or following therapeutic maneuvers such as fluid challenge.

The LiDCO system has been found to correlate well with thermodilution both intra- and postoperatively, but has not been well studied during periods of hemodynamic instability. The FloTrac device has been studied widely given its simplicity, minimal invasiveness, and ease of use; however, results have been inconsistent and mostly disappointing. Despite several generations of software and hardware updates, the FloTrac has generally shown an unacceptable cardiac output agreement with PAC thermodilution. Although a meta-analysis of 16 prospective investigations found an improvement in the accuracy and precision of the FloTrac when comparing earlier versions of the device and more recent versions, the review was criticized for excluding studies that evaluated hemodynamically unstable patients. A subgroup analysis of the newer generation of FloTrac devices found a percentage error of 44.7% when compared to PAC thermodilution when septic and critically ill patient populations were included.
A meta-analysis of 24 studies in mixed patient populations comparing PiCCO, LiDCO, and FloTrac with PAC thermodilution found a pooled percentage error of 41.3% for all three pulse contour monitors.\textsuperscript{45} In another comparative study of LiDCO, PiCCO, and FloTrac, LiDCO was found to have the best overall agreement when compared to PAC thermodilution, with a percentage agreement of 29%, compared to 41% and 59% for PiCCO and FloTrac, respectively.\textsuperscript{106,110} The Nexfin has not been extensively studied, but preliminary results are promising when compared to thermodilution intraoperatively and in the cardiac ICU.\textsuperscript{111–113}

Ultimately, while the simplicity of uncalibrated devices such as FloTrac makes application in the ED attractive, the poor performance of the current models limits their applicability. The calibrated PiCCO and LiDCO devices demonstrate improved reliability when compared to thermodilution, but are limited by the need for frequent recalibration during periods of hemodynamic instability or following therapeutic intervention. In addition, the PiCCO device requires central venous and central arterial cannulation for calibration by transpulmonary thermodilution, which limits its applicability.

**Ultrasound**

**Esophageal Doppler**

Esophageal Doppler allows continuous estimation of stroke volume by recording the velocity of blood flow in the descending aorta with a flexible ultrasound probe—roughly the size of a nasogastric tube—placed either nasally or orally in a mechanically ventilated patient. The accurate assessment of stroke volume via esophageal measurement relies on two assumptions: (1) the presence of a stable cephalic-to-caudal blood flow ratio, which may be inconsistent in certain patients, and (2) a homogenous cross-sectional area of the aorta. Aortic measurement is estimated either by calculations based on height, weight, and age or directly via real-time motion-mode (M-mode) Doppler on capable models.\textsuperscript{114} While esophageal Doppler is highly operator dependent, it is quickly performed, and one study suggests no more than 12 placements are needed to become proficient.\textsuperscript{114} In a prospective study in the emergency department (ED), mean time until optimal Doppler signal was obtained was 5.7 minutes.\textsuperscript{115}

The reliability of esophageal Doppler to estimate cardiac output when compared to PAC thermodilution is, however, not encouraging. Two separate meta-analyses demonstrated limits of agreement of $\pm 65\%$ and $42.1\%$, respectively.\textsuperscript{44,45} A meta-analysis of 11 validation studies also found limited agreement in cardiac output values when compared to PAC thermodilution, but improved results when following trends. The limited number of studies included in the review does make it difficult to draw conclusions regarding the accuracy of these findings.\textsuperscript{116} Analyzed separately, studies comparing M-mode–capable esophageal Doppler with PAC thermodilution have revealed better agreement and may provide the clinician with a valuable method to continuously measure cardiac output in the mechanically ventilated patient.\textsuperscript{117–119}

**USCOM Cardiac Monitor**

The ultrasonic cardiac output monitor, or USCOM (USCOM LTD, Sydney, Australia), is a completely noninvasive cardiac output monitoring system that uses transthoracic Doppler to measure either transaortic or transpulmonary blood flow. Stroke volume is calculated by measurement of the velocity time integral (VTI) and the cross-sectional...
area of the outflow tract. Clinical trials comparing USCOM with thermodilution have shown conflicting results. In one meta-analysis, the range of percentage error in the 10 studies reviewed was between 14% and 56%, with a pooled percentage error of 42.7%. In addition, like esophageal Doppler, the USCOM device is user dependent, with a failure rate to obtain measurements ranging from 5% to 24% across studies.

Transthoracic Echocardiography
Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) provides the emergency physician with indispensable clinical information regarding left and right cardiac function, ventricular dilation, pericardial effusion, and valvular competence. As with the USCOM device, TTE can provide intermittent quantitative estimation of cardiac output using Doppler assessment of the left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) and VTI calculations. Basic qualitative information regarding adequacy of cardiac filling and global function is also easily obtained. While providing no numerical data regarding cardiac output, a brief and focused qualitative exam can often identify patients that need more fluid versus those that are euvoletic and distinguish between patients needing inotropes from those with normal function. A detailed discussion of echocardiographic evaluation of the critically ill patients is presented in Chapter 6.

While the utility of transthoracic LVOT assessment to follow cardiac output changes is limited given the necessity of repeat measurements and time-consuming nature of the study, it may have a role in the absence of other specialized devices.

Transthoracic Electrical Bioimpedance
Transthoracic electrical bioimpedance (TEB) estimates cardiac output by measuring resistance in the thorax to high-frequency, low-magnitude current to determine changes in total thoracic fluid content over the cardiac cycle. First introduced in the 1970s, cardiac bioimpedance monitors use skin electrodes applied to the neck and thorax, allowing for quick and completely noninvasive cardiac monitoring. TEB is limited in its ability to assess cardiac output in patients with dysrhythmias or pulmonary edema. In two studies evaluating critically ill ED patients, estimation of cardiac output using TEB agreed well with PAC thermodilution, but accuracy was compromised in the presence of pulmonary edema, pleural effusions, chest wall edema, or chest tubes. However, when clinical studies comparing TEB with PAC thermodilution were systematically reviewed, the findings were less favorable. A 1999 meta-analysis estimated the percentage error of TEB compared with PAC thermodilution to be ±38%. A more recent meta-analysis echoed the limitation of TEB, estimating an overall mean percent error of ±42.9%. A newer noninvasive cardiac output monitor, the NICOM device (NICOM, Cheetah Medical Inc., Wilmington, DE), using the related principle of bio- reactance, has been less rigorously studied. It is unclear at this time whether it shares the same limitations as TEB.

Carbon Dioxide and the Fick Principle
The Fick equation, which is based on the conservation of mass, allows for the calculation of cardiac output (or alveolar blood flow) by measuring the arteriovenous difference in oxygen consumption. The Fick principle may be applied to any gas diffusing
through the lungs, including carbon dioxide. These concepts are discussed in detail in Chapter 2.

The noninvasive cardiac output device, or NICO (Novametrix Medical Systems Inc., Wallingford, CT), uses a partial carbon dioxide rebreathing technique in intubated patients to estimate CO₂ elimination (VCO₂) and uses the changes in venous and arterial CO₂ (EtCO₂) to calculate the arteriovenous difference in CO₂. However, to accurately assess cardiac output by expired CO₂, pulmonary capillary blood flow must also be known. To determine this, pulmonary shunting is estimated using SpO₂ and FiO₂; thus, the NICO provides a noninvasive determination of cardiac output using mainstream capnometry, a differential pressure pneumotachometer, and pulse oximetry. One shortcoming of this technique is that EtCO₂ provides unreliable estimates of PaCO₂ in unstable patients due to the variability of V/Q mismatch in the critically ill. Estimating pulmonary capillary blood flow can compensate for this, but several studies have demonstrated the calculated pulmonary shunt fraction by NICO differs considerably from traditionally calculated shunt fraction by blood gas analysis. In light of this, cardiac output calculated by NICO was typically only considered accurate when limited to stable patients with normal pulmonary function or when monitoring trends. This was supported by a pooled analysis of 167 measurements from 8 studies performed in various patient populations, which found a mean percentage error of ± 44.5% for partial CO₂ rebreathing method. At this time, the NICO may be more appropriate for anesthetized patients in the operating room rather than in the stabilization of critically ill patients in the ED.

**A PRACTICAL FLUID STRATEGY IN SEVERE SEPSIS**

Despite evidence of significant reduction in mortality when used to guide therapy in patients with severe sepsis and septic shock, the adoption of early goal-directed therapy (EGDT) is not widespread. One barrier to implementation is the requirement for central venous access and specialized monitoring equipment. In hemodynamically stable patients who meet the criteria for severe sepsis by elevated lactate alone, and who do not require central access for vasopressor support, adherence to the EGDT algorithm’s requirement for central access is understandably reduced. Central venous catheterization is not a benign procedure, and the clinical information gained by knowledge of the CVP and central venous O₂ (ScvO₂) saturation must be balanced with the inherent risk of invasive monitoring. Furthermore, in a recent landmark study, lactate clearance compared favorably with ScvO₂ as a final resuscitative endpoint in patients with severe sepsis.

Aggressive fluid therapy, however, remains a cornerstone of management in sepsis, and despite the well-documented limitations of CVP in predicting fluid responsiveness, its use has been found to significantly increase the volume of fluid administered in the first 6 hours of therapy. The additional fluids given in the EGDT trial’s experimental group are thought to have played a central role in the observed positive impact on mortality. In the trial, the control group resuscitated empirically received on average 3.5 ± 2.4 L crystalloid, compared with the experimental group guided by a target CVP of 8 to 12 mm Hg, which received 4.9 ± 2.9 L. Other studies have found a similar disparity between empiric and
targeted volume resuscitation in severe sepsis. Importantly, despite the significantly larger volume of fluid given, respiratory failure requiring mechanical ventilation was not more frequent in the EGDT group. Therefore, while CVP does not adequately predict fluid responsiveness, it may demonstrate the concept of fluid tolerance: A patient with severe sepsis who is not volume overloaded will likely benefit from additional fluid therapy.

Using measures of fluid responsiveness to guide therapy in sepsis is ideal. However, indices of fluid responsiveness can be cumbersome, time consuming, and often require the patient to be mechanically ventilated without spontaneous respirations. In contrast, fluid tolerance can be quickly assessed with an ultrasound survey of the IVC, heart, and lungs and is a valuable initial assessment tool. While IVC variation has limited capability to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients, a collapse of >50% has been demonstrated to correlate well with CVP <8 mm Hg. In patients in whom adequate visualization of the IVC is difficult, ultrasound of the bilateral apical three interspaces provides an alternative approach to estimating cardiac filling pressures. One study—while investigating fluid tolerance in the ICU—demonstrated that <3 b-lines (a comet tail artifact indicating subpleural interstitial edema) per interspace identified a pulmonary artery opening pressure, or PAOP, of <18 mm Hg with a PPV of 97%. It should be noted, while the absence of lung ultrasound b-lines is indicative of low filling pressures, their presence is too sensitive and does not accurately reflect high filling pressures. Therefore, while the development of b-lines should prompt caution, it may not accurately reflect the transition past the upper inflection point of the Frank-Starling curve.

Indicators of fluid tolerance are not meant to replace those of fluid responsiveness. Instead, they are meant to supplement the preliminary clinical evaluation and increase the clinician’s confidence in initial volume resuscitation. If, during the administration of fluid, the patient develops clinical evidence of volume overload—or indices of fluid tolerance are lost and a subsequent repeat serum lactate has not normalized—then more time-intensive measures of fluid responsiveness are justified to guide fluid therapy.

Finally, qualitative assessment of ejection fraction with early standardized echocardiography is always recommended as it provides the clinician with an overall estimate of cardiac function and has been demonstrated to improve survival and ventilator-free days when performed in the ICU.

CONCLUSION

While knowledge of hemodynamics plays an important role in the ED resuscitation of the critically ill, the determination of cardiac function has historically been limited to the intensivist. With the advent of noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring, emergency physicians can now quickly and efficiently assess cardiac output and fluid responsiveness at a stage in the care of the critical patient in which goal-directed therapy is most crucial. A familiarity with these advanced techniques, as well as their appropriate application and limitations, will assist the emergency physician in meeting resuscitative endpoints.
## LITERATURE TABLE

### Arterial Waveform Analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Michard et al., <em>Am Respir Crit Care Med.</em> 2000</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 40 patients with sepsis, mechanically ventilated, without spontaneous breathing and in normal sinus rhythm</td>
<td>PPV &gt; 13% predicted fluid response with 94% sensitivity and 96% specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marik et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2009</td>
<td>Systematic review of 29 studies, enrolling 685 patients, investigating PPV, SPV, SVW and CVP in the OR and ICU. Patients were mechanically ventilated, without spontaneous breathing and in normal sinus rhythm</td>
<td>AUC for PPV 0.94 (CI, 0.93–0.95) AUC for SPV 0.86 (CI, 0.86–0.90) AUC for SVW 0.72 (CI, 0.73–0.88) AUC for CVP 0.55 (CI, 0.46–0.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kramer et al., <em>Chest.</em> 2004</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 21 patients undergoing CABG, mechanically ventilated, without spontaneous breathing and in normal sinus rhythm</td>
<td>PPV &gt; 11% predicted fluid response with 100% sensitivity and 93% specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandroni et al., <em>Intensive Care Med.</em> 2012</td>
<td>Systematic review of 10 studies, enrolling 233 patients, investigating POP and PVI in the OR and ICU. Patients were mechanically ventilated, without spontaneous breathing and in normal sinus rhythm</td>
<td>Pooled AUC for POP and PVI 0.85 (CI, 0.79–0.92) Pooled sensitivity 80% (CI, 0.74–0.85) Pooled specificity 76% (CI, 0.68–0.82)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Stroke Volume Variation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zhang et al., <em>J Anesth.</em> 2011</td>
<td>Systematic review of 23 studies, enrolling 568 patients, in the OR and ICU. Patients were mechanically ventilated, without spontaneous breathing and in normal sinus rhythm</td>
<td>AUC for SVV 0.84 (CI, 0.81–0.87) Pooled sensitivity 81% Pooled specificity 80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perner et al., <em>Acta Anaesthesiol Scand.</em> 2009</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 30 consecutive patients with septic shock. Patients were mechanically ventilated but spontaneously breathing</td>
<td>AUC for SVV in spontaneously breathing patients was 0.52 (CI, 0.30–0.73)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Inferior Vena Cava Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feissel et al., <em>Intensive Care Med.</em> 2004</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 39 patients in the MICU with septic shock. Patients were mechanically ventilated and without spontaneous breathing.</td>
<td>dIVC &gt; 12% predicted fluid response with positive predictive value of 93% and a negative predictive value of 92%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbier et al., <em>Intensive Care Med.</em> 2004</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 23 patients in the ICU with sepsis. Patients were mechanically ventilated and without spontaneous breathing.</td>
<td>dIVC &gt; 16% predicted fluid response with 90% sensitivity and 90% specificity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Brachial Artery Peak Velocity Variation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brennan et al., <em>Chest.</em> 2007</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 30 patients, mechanically ventilated with tidal volume &gt;8 mL/kg, without spontaneous respiration, and in sinus rhythm</td>
<td>( \Delta \text{Vpeak}_{brach} &gt; 16% ) predicted fluid response with 91% sensitivity and 95% specificity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monge et al., Crit Care. 2009⁶⁶</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 38 patients in the ICU. Patients were mechanically ventilated without spontaneous respiration, and in sinus rhythm</td>
<td>( \Delta \text{Vpeak}_{\text{brach}} &gt; 10% ) predicted fluid response with 74% sensitivity and 95% specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavallaro et al., Intensive Care Med. 2010⁷⁷</td>
<td>Systematic review of 9 studies enrolling 353 patients investigating cardiac output changes induced by PLR in the ICU. Patients were mechanically ventilated with and without spontaneous respirations or spontaneously breathing off the ventilator.</td>
<td>AUC for PLR was 0.95 (CI, 0.92–0.97) Pooled sensitivity 89.4% (CI, 0.84–0.93) Pooled specificity 91.4% (CI, 0.85–0.95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critchley and Critchley, J Clin Monit Comput. 1999⁴⁴</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 25 studies comparing transthoracic bioimpedance or esophageal Doppler to bolus thermodilution in the OR, ICU, pediatrics or animals.</td>
<td>Percent error for bioimpedance ±37% Percent error for Doppler ±65%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peyton et al., Anesthesiology. 2010⁶⁶</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 47 studies investigating pulse contour, esophageal Doppler, partial carbon dioxide rebreathing, and transthoracic bioimpedance with bolus thermodilution in the OR and ICU</td>
<td>Percent error for pooled pulse contour ±41.3% Percent error for FloTrac ±44.7% Percent error for bioimpedance ±42.9% Percent error for Doppler ±42.1% Percent error for partial CO₂ rebreathing ±44.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marik et al., J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2013⁸⁶</td>
<td>Review article and meta-analysis of 45 studies investigating the FloTrac during cardiac surgery and in the ICU</td>
<td>Percent error for FloTrac during cardiac surgery ±37% Percent error for FloTrac in ICU ±47%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadian et al., Crit Care. 2010⁶⁶</td>
<td>Prospective observational study in 17 postoperative cardiac surgery patients comparing LiDCO, PiCCO, FloTrac and PAC thermodilution</td>
<td>Percent error for LiDCO ±29% Percent error for PiCCO ±41% Percent error for FloTrac ±59%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayer et al., Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2009⁸⁹</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 16 studies representing 3,372 data points comparing FloTrac and bolus thermodilution in patients in the OR and ICU without hemodynamic instability</td>
<td>Percent error for first gen FloTrac ±44% Percent error for second gen FloTrac ±30%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.

### REFERENCES

Section 2 ■ Hemodynamic Monitoring

60. Biass M, Cottenceau V, Petit L, et al. Impact of norepinephrine on the relationship between pleth var-


61. Landsverk SA, Hoiseth LO, Kvandal P, et al. Poor agreement between respiratory variations in pulse oxi-

ometry photoplethysmographic waveform amplitude and pulse pressure in intensive care unit patients. 


63. Perner A, Faber T. Stroke volume variation does not predict fluid responsiveness in patients with septic 


64. Reuter DA, Bayerlein J, Goepfert MS, et al. Influence of tidal volume on left ventricular stroke volume 

variation measured by pulse contour analysis in mechanically ventilated patients. *Intensive Care Med*


67. Barbier C, Loubieres Y, Schmit C, et al. Respiratory changes in inferior vena cava diameter are helpful in 


68. Brennan JM, Blair JE, Hampole C, et al. Radial artery pulse pressure variation correlates with brachial 

artery peak velocity variation in ventilated subjects when measured by internal medicine residents using 


69. Monge Garcia MI, Gil Cano A, Diaz Monroe JC. Brachial artery peak velocity variation to predict fluid 


70. Soubrier S, Saulnier F, Hubert H, et al. Can dynamic indicators help the prediction of fluid responsiveness 

71. Muller L, Bobbia X, Toumi M, et al. Respiratory variations of inferior vena cava diameter to predict fluid 

responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with acute circulatory failure: need for a cautious use. 

*Crit Care*. 2012;16:R188.


better than pulse pressure variation in patients with low respiratory system compliance. *Crit Care Med*. 


assessment of arterial pressure in critically ill patients: comparison with four other dynamic indices. *Br J 


76. Preau S, Saulnier F, Dewavrin F, et al. Passive leg raising is predictive of fluid responsiveness in spontane-


77. Cavallaro F, Sandroni C, Marano C, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of passive leg raising for prediction of 


78. Lamia B, Ochagavia A, Monnet X, et al. Echocardiographic prediction of volume responsiveness in criti-


79. Thiel SW, Kollef MH, Isakow W. Non-invasive stroke volume measurement and passive leg raising predict 


80. Biass M, Vidi L, Sarrabay P, et al. Changes in stroke volume induced by passive leg raising in spontane-

ously breathing patients: comparison between echocardiography and Vigileo/FloTrac device. *Crit Care*. 


82. Chalak LF, Barber CA, Hynan L, et al. End-tidal CO(2) detection of an audible heart rate during 

neonatal cardiopulmonary resuscitation after asystole in asphyxiated piglets. *Pediatr Res*. 2011;69:

401–405.

83. Monnet X, Bataille A, Magalhaes E, et al. End-tidal carbon dioxide is better than arterial pressure for 


84. Frank O. The basic shape of the arterial pulse. First treatise: mathematical analysis. 1899. *J Mol Cell 


Arterial Blood Pressure Monitoring

Vidya K. Rao and John E. Arbo

BACKGROUND

Arterial blood pressure (ABP) is an essential cardiovascular vital sign and monitoring parameter for all critically ill patients. ABP may be measured indirectly using an inflatable external cuff or directly by cannulation of a peripheral artery.

Indirect ABP measurement is performed noninvasively and requires the use of an external expandable cuff and a pressure gauge, known as a sphygmomanometer. The cuff is wrapped around an extremity overlying an artery and inflated to a pressure that temporarily occludes arterial blood flow. The cuff is then gradually deflated, and blood pressure is determined by auscultation of Korotkoff sounds or by an automated system that measures oscillations as blood flow resumes.

While inexpensive and easy to perform, indirect ABP measurement has limitations that make it unsuitable for critically ill patients. Auscultation is cumbersome in a busy environment and is impaired by ambient noise. The patient’s body habitus as well as improper cuff size, position, or external compression can prevent an accurate measurement.1–3 In critically ill patients, the principal disadvantage of indirect ABP measurement is the inability to provide continuous measurement, which is useful in hemodynamic compromise or vasopressor administration. Indirect measurements also frequently fail to correlate with direct pressure monitoring, especially in times of rapidly changing or unstable hemodynamics.4,5 Finally, repetitive cycling of the blood pressure cuff can result in arm pain, limb edema, ischemia, neuropathy, and, in rare cases, compartment syndrome.6–8

Direct ABP monitoring, in which a catheter is inserted into a peripheral artery and continuously transduced, is the benchmark for arterial pressure measurement and is considered standard of care for most critically ill patients. An ABP catheter enables dynamic monitoring and provides continual vascular access when repetitive blood sampling is required. As discussed later in this chapter, the arterial pressure waveform also offers a wealth of diagnostic information.

GENERAL DEFINITIONS

Systolic blood pressure (SBP) is the peak pressure generated by ventricular contraction, and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) is the lowest pressure observed during ventricular filling. Pulse pressure (PP) is defined as the difference between the systolic and diastolic pressures.
Mean arterial pressure (MAP) is the time-weighted average of arterial pressures in a single cardiac cycle, and represents systemic perfusion pressure. MAP is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{MAP} = \left( \frac{1}{3} \right) \times \text{SBP} + \left( \frac{2}{3} \right) \times \text{DBP}$$

Noninvasive blood pressure measurement determines SBP, DBP, and MAP by comparison of oscillatory characteristics to cuff pressures, where MAP is the point of maximal oscillations during cuff deflation. Direct ABP measurement produces an arterial waveform that consists of a systolic peak and a diastolic trough. MAP is then determined by integrating the area under the curve.

**DIRECT BLOOD PRESSURE MONITORING**

**Indications**

Direct ABP monitoring provides continuous, beat-to-beat arterial pressure measurement, which is essential in the management of patients who are hemodynamically unstable, have advanced cardiovascular disease or significant dysrhythmia, require vasopressor support, or whose condition necessitates targeted blood pressure control (Table 4.1). Waveform analysis can also provide significant insight into a patient’s physiology, including intravascular volume status, volume responsiveness, and the presence of valvular abnormalities. As previously mentioned, this modality provides dependable vascular access and is indicated in patients with pulmonary compromise or significant

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.1</th>
<th>Comparison of Invasive and Noninvasive Blood Pressure Monitoring in Critically Ill Patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advantages</strong></td>
<td><strong>Disadvantages</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invasive monitoring</td>
<td>Continuous measurement of ABP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Utility in titration of vasoactive infusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Continuous vascular access when repetitive blood sampling is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additional data regarding pathophysiology and hemodynamics provided by arterial waveform analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noninvasive monitoring</td>
<td>Avoidance of a procedure and associated complications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ease of performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 2  ▪ Hemodynamic Monitoring

acid–base derangements where frequent blood sampling is required. Peripheral arterial catheters may also be placed in patients prior to the administration of thrombolytic therapy to facilitate the collection of laboratory studies.

Site Selection
Factors that must be considered in site selection include the presence of adequate collateral circulation and patient comfort, as well as the phenomenon of distal pulse amplification that causes distal SBP measurements to be higher than central SBP, without significant differences in DBP or MAP.

The radial artery is the most commonly used vessel for ABP monitoring due to its superficial location, ease of cannulation, presence of collateral flow, and low risk of complications. However, due to its small caliber, this site carries the highest incidence of temporary arterial occlusion, reported to occur in over 25% of procedures performed. Despite its high incidence, temporary occlusion of the artery does not appear to have serious sequelae in most cases. Given its peripheral location, a radial artery catheter provides a less accurate measurement of aortic pressure than do more centrally placed catheters due to distal pulse wave amplification.

The femoral artery is the second most commonly used site. The central location of this vessel allows for more accurate measurement of aortic blood pressure, particularly in patients requiring high-dose vasopressor administration, and its larger caliber mitigates the risk of temporary arterial occlusion seen with radial catheters. However, clinicians must be cognizant of—and monitor for—retroperitoneal hemorrhage following cannulation. Historically, there has been reluctance to use this site given its proximity to the anogenital region and the concern that it carries an increased risk of infection. However, published studies do not uniformly substantiate or refute this concern.

The axillary artery has gained popularity in recent decades as it permits measurement of central pressure using a cannulation site that is considered to be in a cleaner location. This approach is more technically challenging than are others, and is often avoided due to the theoretical risk of cerebral embolic events given its proximity to the carotid artery. The incidence of major complications associated with this cannulation site was similar to that of radial and femoral catheterization.

Complications
Arterial catheterization is generally considered to be a safe procedure, but complications can and do occur, and must be factored into site selection (Table 4.2). Risks include temporary arterial occlusion, ischemia, pseudoaneurysm, arteriovenous fistula, infection, bleeding, air embolism, and hematoma. Patients with preexisting vascular disease,
arterial injury, high-dose vasopressor administration, and long-term cannulation may be at higher risk for adverse events. Fortunately, serious complications occur in <1% of cases. Use of the Allen test does not minimize complications associated with arterial artery cannulation and has been abandoned.

**Contraindications**

Contraindications are generally relative, site specific, and based upon consideration of risk and benefit. Relative contraindications include significant peripheral vascular disease and Raynaud syndrome due to the associated risk of limb ischemia, and severe coagulopathy or use of thrombolytics given the risk of bleeding. Placement of intra-arterial catheters should also be avoided at sites with signs of obvious infection, burns, vascular trauma, or previous vascular surgery or grafts. Cannulation ipsilateral to arteriovenous dialysis shunts will yield false results and should be avoided.

**THE MONITORING SYSTEM**

**Components of the Monitoring System**

Data from the monitoring system must be converted into a waveform that can be visualized on the patient’s monitor. Monitoring systems consist of several parts beyond the arterial cannula, including a fluid-filled system, transducer, flushing assembly, microprocessor, amplifier, and display.

- The fluid-filled system creates a column of fluid, usually heparinized saline, between the arterial cannula and the transducer, known as hydraulic coupling. To minimize waveform distortion, the tubing must be noncompliant, as short as possible, and free of air bubbles, blood clots, and extraneous three-way stopcocks. It is imperative that the tubing be clearly labeled to avoid inadvertent intra-arterial injection of medications.
- A flushing assembly that often contains heparinized saline pressurized to 300 mm Hg is attached to the fluid tubing to help maintain patency of the cannula. The system also allows high-pressure fluid flushes through the tubing system in order to keep it clear of clot and debris.
- The transducer converts pressure into an electrical signal. Changes in arterial pressure are transferred via the fluid in the tubing to a flexible diaphragm contained in the transducer. Movement of the diaphragm causes an imbalance by stretching or compressing four strain gauges that are incorporated into a Wheatstone bridge circuit. The imbalance creates an electrical current.
- Once pressure is converted into an electrical signal in the transducer, it is transmitted through an electrical cable to a microprocessor to be filtered, and then through an amplifier, after which the waveform is shown on an on-screen display.

**The Physics of the Arterial Pressure Waveform**

The arterial pressure waveform is composed of a fundamental wave and a series of harmonic waves. The fundamental wave frequency is equivalent to the pulse rate, and the frequencies of the harmonic waves are multiples of the fundamental frequency. Fourier analysis, the process by which the complex arterial waveform is constructed...
The arterial pressure waveform (C) is a sum of a fundamental wave (A) and six to eight harmonic waves (B). Summation is performed by Fourier analysis. From Pittman JA, Ping JS, Mark JB. Arterial and central venous pressure monitoring. *Int Anesthesiol Clin.* 2004;42:13–30.

The dynamic response of the ABP monitoring system is determined by resonant frequency and damping. Resonant (or natural) frequency is defined as the frequency at which a given material oscillates when disrupted. When a system is stimulated by a frequency that is close to its own resonant frequency, it oscillates and amplifies the incoming signal. Thus, if the frequencies of the fundamental or harmonic waves of an ABP waveform approach, coincide with, or overlap with the resonant frequency of the ABP monitoring system, amplification occurs and results in elevated SBP and PP measurements. The resonant frequency of the monitoring system is designed to be at least five to eight multiples above the fundamental frequency, and is determined by the physical properties of the system’s components. Increasing tubing diameter while reducing tubing length, compliance, and density of the fluid in the system can increase the natural frequency of the monitoring system.

In addition to having a high resonant frequency, the ABP monitoring system must also be properly damped. Damping occurs when the energy in an oscillating system is reduced. While some degree of damping, termed critical damping, is essential in the monitoring system, overdamping and underdamping can result in inaccurate measurement of ABP. Overdamping may occur when the system contains excess tubing, stopcocks, occlusion, and air, and can be identified by examining the arterial waveform for a slurred upstroke, absent dicrotic notch, and loss of fine detail. Overdamped waves display falsely lower SBPs, falsely higher DBPs, and a narrowed PP, though MAP may still be accurate. Conversely, underdamping results in increased oscillations and therefore a falsely elevated SBP and PP. A patient’s physiology can also result in underdamping; tachycardia increases the fundamental frequency given the high pulse rate. As the fundamental frequency approaches the resonant frequency of the monitoring system, oscillations are amplified and the system becomes underdamped.

The “square wave” or “fast flush” test evaluates the dynamic response of the monitoring system and helps predict signal distortion by determining the system’s natural frequency and degree of damping. This test is performed by briefly opening the continuous flush valve and increasing the flow of fluid to 30 mL/h, which generates a square wave
that can be seen on the patient’s monitor. Once the valve is closed, the resulting oscillations on the waveform are examined. The system’s natural frequency is inversely proportional to the time between successive oscillation peaks; if the oscillation cycle is shorter, the system has a higher natural frequency. The degree of damping is determined by evaluating the ratio of the amplitudes of adjacent oscillation peaks. The amplitude ratio is then referenced with a graph that contains the corresponding damping coefficient. In an underdamped system, the amplitude ratio of successive oscillation peaks will be higher, and the system will have a lower damping coefficient. Conversely, overdamped systems will have lower amplitude ratios, and an elevated damping coefficient (Fig. 4.2).

**Leveling and Zeroing**

Following cannulation and connection to the pressure transducer tubing, the ABP monitoring system must be leveled and zeroed in order to provide consistent and accurate ABP measurements.

Leveling is the process of eliminating the influence of hydrostatic pressure on the measured BP. The transducer is leveled to the phlebostatic axis, defined as the intersection of the 4th intercostal space and the midaxillary line. This external location correlates to the anatomic position of the right atrium, which reflects central blood pressure. If positioned too low, the transducer will produce a deceptively high-pressure reading; if positioned too high, it will produce a deceptively low reading. Occasionally, the transducer is placed at the level of the tragus when cerebral perfusion pressure is the primary concern.

Zeroing is the process of eliminating the effects of atmospheric pressure on measured BP. To zero the system, it is opened to atmospheric pressure and set to a pressure of zero. This ensures that atmospheric pressure is the starting value.

**ARTERIAL PRESSURE WAVEFORM ANALYSIS**

**The Arterial Waveform**

The arterial waveform consists of five main elements: systolic upstroke, systolic peak, systolic decline, dicrotic notch, and the point of end diastole (Fig. 4.3).
Section 2  ▪ Hemodynamic Monitoring

The systolic upstroke, or anacrotic limb, begins with the opening of the aortic valve and appears as a rapid rise in the arterial waveform. Data regarding degree of contractility and left ventricular (LV) stroke volume may be inferred from the rate of ascent and height of the anacrotic limb.

The systolic peak is the highest point of the waveform and marks the SBP, or the maximum pressure generated by the left ventricle during contraction.

The systolic decline, or dicrotic limb, immediately follows the systolic peak and represents a decrease in blood flow out of the left ventricle.

The dicrotic notch is seen during the course of the dicrotic limb and represents the closure of the aortic valve and the start of diastole.

The point of end diastole is the lowest point of the waveform and marks the diastolic pressure.

Waveform Abnormalities

Close examination of the arterial line waveform can provide diagnostic clues regarding cardiac pathology, such as cardiac tamponade, aortic valvular disease, LV failure, and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (Fig. 4.4A–D).

- **Pulsus tardus** and **pulsus parvus** are seen in aortic stenosis due to the fixed outflow obstruction imposed on the LV by the stenotic valve. This waveform is marked by a slow systolic rise (pulsus tardus), a late peak, and diminished amplitude (pulsus parvus), often mimicking an overdamped waveform (Fig. 4.4B).

- A **bisperiens pulse** is seen in aortic regurgitation and is characterized by two systolic peaks secondary to the large volume of blood ejected from the LV during systole. The first peak, or percussion wave, arises from ventricular ejection. The second peak, or tidal wave, arises from a wave reflected from the peripheral circulation as well as elastic recoil of the aorta. A bisperiens pulse will also demonstrate a sharp systolic upstroke, a low diastolic pressure, and a widened PP because of a backflow of blood into the LV during diastole (Fig. 4.4C).
● A spike-and-dome waveform may be noted in cases of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy and consists of three phases. In early systole, a rapid systolic upstroke arises from the forceful LV ejection. In mid systole, SBP falls precipitously as LV outflow obstruction occurs. In late systole, a reflected wave is seen, creating a double-peaked appearance (Fig. 4.4D).22

● Pulsus paradoxus is an inspiratory decrease in SBP in excess of 10 to 12 mm Hg. This finding may be seen in cases of cardiac tamponade or pericardial constriction (Fig. 4.4E).

● Pulsus alternans is seen in cases of severe LV systolic dysfunction and is characterized by regular, alternating larger and smaller amplitude PP beats (Fig. 4.4F).

CONCLUSION

Direct ABP monitoring is essential in the management of most critically ill patients. In addition to providing the dynamic BP monitoring these patients require, a nuanced appreciation of arterial BP waveforms can greatly assist the clinician in understanding a patient’s underlying physiology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lehman et al., Crit Care Med.</td>
<td>Retrospective, single-center</td>
<td>Noninvasive modalities overestimate systolic pressure in hypotensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201323</td>
<td>study of patients admitted to</td>
<td>patients when compared to invasive blood pressure monitoring. Patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>intensive care units at a</td>
<td>in whom NIBP readings were &lt;70 mm Hg systolic had higher rates of acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tertiary medical center</td>
<td>kidney injury and ICU mortality when compared to patients with direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>requiring invasive arterial</td>
<td>ABP readings in the same range (p = 0.008 and p &lt; 0.001, respectively).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pressure monitoring. 27,022</td>
<td>MAP measurements from NIBP and IABP were similar, and there were no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>simultaneously measured</td>
<td>significant differences in the incidences of acute kidney injury or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>invasive arterial/</td>
<td>ICU mortality in patients with MAP &lt; 60 measured by either modality (p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>noninvasive blood pressure</td>
<td>= 0.28 and p = 0.76, respectively)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pairs recorded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES

The Central Venous and Pulmonary Artery Catheter

Carlos Brun and Geoffrey K. Lighthall

BACKGROUND
Since their inception, both central venous and pulmonary artery catheters (PACs) have been influential in the management of critically ill patients. Bedside use of a central venous catheter (CVC) was first clearly described by Wilson1 in 1962, who noted the clinical importance of bedside volume assessment and described CVC indications and techniques. Wilson explained the association between extremes of central venous pressures (CVPs) and volume status in the settings of normal or inadequate circulation. He further noted that, although the CVP indicated the circulating blood volume in relation to the pumping capacity of the heart at a given point in time, to maintain a CVP at a “predetermined level” would be clinically misguided.

Bedside use of a flow-directed, balloon-tipped catheter to measure right heart pressures was described in 1970 by Swan and Ganz.2 Early studies in critically ill patients showed improved survival with PAC use in targeting supranormal cardiac output (CO) and oxygen delivery indices; later, more carefully designed studies demonstrated no benefit with this strategy.3–5 Recent studies in geriatric, high-risk surgery, and lung injury patients have also shown no benefit of fluid management based on PAC measurements.6,7

The lack of survival benefit with PAC use may be partially attributable to misinterpretation of waveforms, misguided correlations with preload, and resuscitation to predetermined numeric endpoints rather than measures of adequate circulation.8–10 The declining use of these invasive monitors has led to decreased familiarity with waveform analysis and a lack of appreciation of the full set of information that can be obtained from these devices. This chapter aims to provide a basic understanding of the information that can be obtained through accurate interpretation of the waveforms and numerical data generated by central venous and PACs and to identify each catheter’s appropriate clinical application.

CENTRAL VENOUS CATHETERS
Indications
CVCs have traditionally been inserted to assess circulatory volume, to provide intravenous access for vasopressors, and to facilitate simultaneous delivery of multiple medications. CVCs also allow assessment of central venous oxyhemoglobin saturation (ScvO₂), a
value used to assess the adequacy of oxygen delivery relative to consumption (DO₂/VO₂). When accurately interpreted, CVP waveforms yield a wealth of hemodynamic data, as well as information about a patient’s cardiac health, and can help identify a number of disease states commonly seen in the critically ill. Patient benefits from CVCs are likely maximized in scenarios in which clinicians are versed in the full range of quantitative and qualitative information available from the catheter.

**Qualitative Waveform Analysis**

Qualitative analysis of CVP waveforms yields information analogous to the examination of jugular venous pulsation (JVP), but with greater ease and visibility. Insight into both structural and electrical functions of the heart is obtained by analysis of characteristic waveforms present during each cardiac cycle.

Each CVP tracing contains a, c, and v waves and x and y descents. These waves and descents represent the spikes and troughs in pressure that occur in the right atria during each cardiac cycle. The a wave reflects atrial contraction and occurs after the ECG P wave at end diastole. Following atrial contraction, atrial pressures begin to fall due to atrial relaxation and downward right ventricular movement during systole. This fall in pressure—represented by the x descent—is briefly interrupted in early systole by isovolumetric contraction of the right ventricle (RV) against a closed tricuspid valve—represented by the c wave. The time between a and c waves peaks is identical to the PR interval, albeit 80 to 100 ms later than the corresponding ECG.

The v wave follows the x descent and reflects passive atrial filling, which begins at the end of systole and peaks in early diastole. The y descent indicates atrial diastolic emptying and passive ventricular filling. While this discussion centers on the CVP, the PAC in the “wedged” position produces identical—appearing waves, but reflects left atrial activity (discussed below). Some examples of the variability of CVP waveforms and their ability to indicate pathology are highlighted below (Fig. 5.1).

![Atrial Fibrillation](image)

![Atrial Flutter](image)

![Complete AV Block](image)

![Tricuspid Regurgitation](image)

![Pericardial Tamponade](image)

![Constrictive Pericarditis](image)

**FIGURE 5.1** Center: Normal EKG to CVP waveform relationship. A–F: CVP waveform changes seen with specified pathology.
Pathologies that can be detected by analysis of CVP waveforms include the following:

A. Atrial fibrillation: lack of coordinated atrial activity leads to absence of $a$ waves.

B. Atrial flutter: atrial activity leads to high-frequency $a$ waves.

C. AV dissociation: intermittent atrial contraction against a closed tricuspid valve leads to large “cannon” $a$ waves.

D. Tricuspid valve dysfunction: tricuspid valve regurgitation leads to prominent $v$ waves or fusion of the $e$ and $v$ waves without an $x$ descent. In tricuspid stenosis, the mean CVP will be high with large $a$ waves and small slurred $y$ descents due to a continuously elevated atrial diastolic pressure.

E. Pericardial tamponade: CVP values reflect pericardial pressures and change as the size of the heart changes during the cardiac cycle. During diastole, as the heart enlarges, pericardial pressures increase and limit passive ventricular filling; thus, the $y$ descent is impaired. As blood is ejected during systole, the heart becomes smaller, pericardial pressures exert less influence, and the CVP falls, resulting in an isolated $x$ descent.

F. Restrictive and constrictive diseases: pathologies, including constrictive pericarditis, myocarditis, infiltrative diseases, hypertrophy, and ischemia, are typified by high mean filling pressures (tall $a$ and $v$ waves) and short, steep $x$ and $y$ descents, which create an “M” or “W” pattern. The “square root sign” describes an abrupt $y$ descent followed by a plateau when the diastolic pressure limit is met.

Quantitative Central Venous Pressure Analysis

Since pressure-based estimates of preload attempt to estimate ventricular volume, CVP is measured when there is a continuous column of fluid between the catheter tip and the ventricle. During the cardiac cycle, this continuity exists when the atrioventricular valves are open and corresponds to the pressure at the end of the $a$ wave just prior to the $c$ wave. If the $c$ wave is not seen, CVP can be inferred from the mean of the $a$ wave’s highest and lowest points at end-expiration. If neither the $a$ wave nor the $c$ wave is present, the $z$ point may be used. The $z$ point is a line dropped perpendicularly from the end of the QRS to intersect a simultaneously co-recorded CVP tracing. Respiration will alter CVP measurements, so all quantitative analyses of CVP waveforms and pressures are measured at end-expiration—a time when no net forces are exerted upon the central circulation by the chest wall or lung parenchyma.

CVP is displayed in mm Hg, as opposed to cm H$_2$O, which is generally used in JVP estimation. Using the proper conversion, a JVP of 13.6 cm H$_2$O corresponds to a CVP of 10 mm Hg. A normal CVP is 0 to 4 mm Hg. An elevated CVP results from anything that increases the pressure surrounding the catheter tip, including decreased cardiac function, elevated pericardial pressure, elevated intrathoracic pressures (including elevated extrinsic or intrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure [PEEP]), active exhalation or increased intra-abdominal pressure, vasoconstriction, increased pulmonary artery pressures, and increased venous return (hypervolemia). Decreased CVP results from hypovolemia, vasodilation, or decreased thoracic pressure due to active inspiration (which can generate a CVP of less than 0 mm Hg). Given its predisposition to a number of artifacts, CVP waveforms should be analyzed over several respiratory cycles—ideally using a printout from the monitor. All principles discussed here for CVP, as well as Figure 5.1, are equally applicable to measurements of ‘wedge’ or pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP) using a PAC.
Many intensivists have used CVP to guide fluid therapy in septic patients.\textsuperscript{11,13,14} Traditionally, the CVP was thought to be a reliable indicator of fluid responsiveness of the left ventricle.\textsuperscript{1,15} The belief was that if CVP reflected right ventricular preload and therefore stroke volume, CVP should ultimately predict left ventricular preload and stroke volume. The fact that CVP does not accurately reflect the Starling curve of the left ventricle is due to the complex nature of venous return as it relates to CO. Venous return to the right heart is determined by the difference between mean circulatory filling pressure and right atrial pressure; the pressure gradient for left heart filling is affected by transpulmonary pressure, pulmonary venous pressure, and interventricular septal function. Since addition of fluid sufficient to raise CVP does not always augment CO, its role as the measure of preload has been questioned. CVP changes have not been shown to correlate reliably with corresponding changes in blood volume, left heart preload, or fluid responsiveness.\textsuperscript{8,10,16} In a meta-analysis of 24 ICU-based studies, a poor relationship between CVP (or changes in CVP) and changes in cardiac index following fluid administration were observed (pooled correlation coefficient between CVP and change in cardiac index, 0.18).\textsuperscript{8} Furthermore, a “normal” CVP does not necessarily reflect euvoolemia, as splanchnic circulation allows the venous system to accommodate approximately a 10% intravascular volume gain or loss without a change in CVP. Research has also shown that in critically ill patients, a CVP > 12 mm Hg does not substantially increase CO, suggesting that this value corresponds to the upper, non–fluid-responsive portion of the Starling curve.\textsuperscript{17,18} Despite good rationale to abandon CVP as a marker of fluid responsiveness, CVP-guided resuscitation persists. The 2012 Surviving Sepsis Campaign (SSC) guidelines continue to endorse CVP as a tool to assure adequate intravascular volume during fluid administration. While acknowledging that “there are limitations to CVP as a marker of intravascular volume status and response to fluid,” the guidelines conclude, “a low CVP generally can be relied upon as supporting a positive response to fluid loading.”\textsuperscript{14}

In managing hemodynamically unstable patients, current clinical evidence calls for avoiding static measures of intravascular pressure such as CVP and PAOP in favor of more accurate indicators of volume responsiveness (see Chapter 3). Monitoring techniques based on dynamic cardiopulmonary interactions—such as pulse pressure, stroke volume variation, and indices derived from Doppler measurements—are better predictors of volume responsiveness and are used increasingly in critical care.\textsuperscript{10}

**Central Venous Oximetry**

CVCs allow measurement of the oxyhemoglobin saturation of superior vena caval blood (ScvO\textsubscript{2}), thus providing an ability to assess the relationship between VO\textsubscript{2} and DO\textsubscript{2}. While the gold standard for this VO\textsubscript{2}/DO\textsubscript{2} assessment is mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO\textsubscript{2}) measured in the pulmonary artery, ScvO\textsubscript{2} has been demonstrated to provide a reliable surrogate in septic patients.\textsuperscript{18} Changes in ScvO\textsubscript{2} can be used to estimate adequacy of CO and thus to gauge efforts to reverse deficits in tissue perfusion. A decrease in ScvO\textsubscript{2} should prompt examination of the components of oxygen delivery (see Chapter 2); if fluid status and hematocrit are determined to be adequate, cardiac contractility should be evaluated and inotropic support initiated when indicated to help normalize DO\textsubscript{2}/VO\textsubscript{2}.\textsuperscript{14} ScvO\textsubscript{2} may also be a marker for cardiopulmonary reserve. For example, a decrease in ScvO\textsubscript{2} of >4.5% during a spontaneous
breathing trial was reported as a sensitive and specific predictor of reintubation in difficult-to-wean patients.\textsuperscript{19}

**Complications**

Significant complications attributable to CVC insertion include infection; arterial or venous injury or fistula; venous thrombosis; DVT/pulmonary embolism; hematoma; hemothorax; pneumothorax; chylothorax; nerve injury; knotting or dislocation of other implanted catheters or equipment; air embolus; and dysrhythmias.\textsuperscript{20,21} Catheter placement should be justified by a sound physiologic rationale for use, and removal should occur as soon as these indications cease to exist.\textsuperscript{22}

**Contraindications**

Relative contraindications to CVC placement include coagulopathy, infection at the insertion site, right heart ventricular assist devices, and recent pacemaker placement. Some of these obstacles can be managed by placement of the CVC at an alternative anatomic site (e.g., internal jugular vs. subclavian in the case of coagulopathy). Absolute contraindications are vascular occlusion and patient refusal.

**Practical Considerations**

Ultrasound guidance should be used wherever available when placing a CVC. Use of continuous ultrasound guidance for insertion of CVC improves first-pass success, decreases procedure duration, and minimizes number of needle passes.\textsuperscript{20,21} Placement of a CVC should occur concurrently with therapeutic maneuvers and not delay empiric treatment of extremes in intravascular volume or blood pressure.

**PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETERS**

PACs are not typically employed as resuscitative or analytic tools in the ED; their use is generally seen in the ICU, operating room, and cardiac catheterization lab. The PAC is capable of providing simultaneous assessment of CO, $SvO_2$, left-sided filling pressures, and continuous right-sided pressures. The PAC is available in thermodilution, pacing, or continuous CO/SvO$_2$ models. The ability to measure $SvO_2$ allows evaluation of adequacy of $DO_2$ in the context of CO measurements. PAC insertion should not delay either resuscitation or ICU admission.

As with CVP, no absolute PAOP has been shown to predict fluid responsiveness, as euvolemic pressures are dependent upon each individual’s left ventricular function and compliance.\textsuperscript{10,23} Thus, the usefulness of the PAC may be limited to specific situations not fully addressed in randomized trials where PAC use failed to show any benefit. In 53 Japanese hospitals, the ATTEST registry showed an in-hospital mortality benefit for patients with acute nonischemic heart failure managed with a PAC (PAC 1.4% vs. non-PAC 4.4%).\textsuperscript{24} Rationale for PAC placement in registry patients was cardiogenic shock, shock and pulmonary edema, and diagnosis of type of shock; patients were managed individually without a generalized treatment protocol. In a retrospective analysis of the National Trauma Data Bank, a mortality benefit with PAC use was seen in severely injured patients in shock (base deficit $\leq -11$) except
in patients aged 41 to 60. Interestingly, patients older than 60 with severe injury had decreased mortality even with base deficit of −6 to −10, possibly signifying that PAC placement at admission in severely injured patients was associated with earlier resuscitation.

A unique characteristic of the PAC is its ability to provide continuous measurement of pulmonary artery pressures. The ability to titrate pulmonary vasodilators and monitor CO changes remains an attractive advantage of the PAC, although it has not been addressed experimentally. In patients with cardiogenic shock, PACs may help following reperfusion therapy to gauge response to supportive interventions. A recent review on left ventricular assist devices advocated use of the PAC to differentiate between right and left heart failure when investigating causes of hypotension in the setting of adequate filling pressures. Many of the recent studies on PACs excluded patients that received a PAC based on physician preference—including patients with severe heart failure or pulmonary vascular disease—and thus may have some selection bias against potential beneficiaries of the device.

**Indications**

There are no clear indications regarding PAC use in the emergency department or ICU; in lieu of clinical evidence, existing personal or institutional practices and preferences dictate use. It is not uncommon for institutions to employ PACs in postoperative cardiac surgery patients to provide a broad set of physiologic parameters, allowing practitioners to distinguish between hypovolemia, vasoplegia, and inadequate cardiac contractility.

**Insertion and Data Interpretation**

A PAC may be inserted through any large vein, but the right internal jugular and left subclavian veins are optimal for maintaining the catheter’s curvature and are likely the best locations for easy flotation of the tip. Waveform recognition (Fig. 5.2) is typically sufficient for guiding the catheter to its resting position in a central branch of the pulmonary artery. However, fluoroscopy and echocardiography are occasionally used if this approach is unsuccessful. A plain radiograph should be obtained to confirm final position and to rule out right ventricular coiling, aberrant placement, overinsertion, or mechanical complications such as pneumothorax and hemothorax.

Device-specific problems during PAC insertion include failure to zero the transducer, misconnections of pressure tubing and transducer wires to pulmonary artery (PA) and CVP ports causing erroneous display of waveforms, failure to inflate the balloon, advancing too slowly or quickly, and misinterpretation of waveforms. The larger introducer catheter also increases risks of bleeding and carotid injury.

The normal pulmonary arterial tracing has an arterial-like waveform with systolic pulmonary pressures in the 15 to 25 mm Hg range. The PAOP or “wedge” waveform reflects left atrial filling and is recognized by disappearance of the PA waveform and appearance of a CVP-like waveform during catheter advancement. When compared to the CVP tracing, the PAOP tracing normally has two prominent peaks (a and v waves) instead of three. The PAOP should be measured at end-expiration as the average of the a wave’s peak and nadir pressures.
FIGURE 5.2  A: With the PAC tip in the right atrium, the balloon is inflated. B: The catheter is advanced into the right ventricle with the balloon inflated, and right ventricle pressure tracings are obtained. C: The catheter is advanced through the pulmonary valve into the pulmonary artery. A rise in diastolic pressure should be noted. D: The catheter is advanced to the “wedge” or PAOP position. A typical PAOP tracing should be noted with A and V waves. E: The balloon is deflated. Phasic pulmonary artery pressure should reappear on the monitor. Center: Waveform tracings generated as the balloon-tipped catheter is advanced through the right heart chambers into the pulmonary artery. Adapted from Wiedmann HP, Matthay MA, Matthey RA. Cardiovascular pulmonary monitoring in the intensive care unit (Part 1). Chest. 1984;85:537.
In a patient with normal pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR), the PA diastolic pressure (PAD) will be 8 to 15 mm Hg and only slightly higher (1 to 4 mm Hg) than the PAOP. This normal PAD–PAOP gradient often allows the practitioner to follow trends in PAD as estimates of LV filling pressures and eliminates the need for balloon inflation and repeated catheter “wedging.” PAD pressures that are higher than normal (>20 mm Hg) raise concern for either elevated left heart pressures or elevated PVR. For example, with a PAD of 22 mm Hg, a similar PAOP (say 18 mm Hg) would point to elevated left-sided filling pressures as the cause of pulmonary venous hypertension. A PAD of 22 with a PAOP of 10 indicates that the left heart and related structures are not responsible for the elevated pulmonary artery pressure and that the pressure likely comes from high PVR. Elevations in PAOP may also be due to atrial myxomas, mitral valvulopathy, and high PEEP.

As with the CVC, qualitative information regarding left ventricular pump and electrical function can be obtained through the study of waveforms and their intervals. The discussion in the CVP section above is equally applicable here, except that the a and c waves of the PAOP tend to be fused, and an abnormally large v wave would reflect mitral valve regurgitation or poor LV compliance.

PACs had a historical role in defining the hemodynamic profiles associated with prototypic shock states (Table 5.1). Hypovolemic shock is readily recognized by decreased right- and left-sided filling pressures with decreased CO and a high SVR. Cardiogenic shock typically refers to LV failure, which is identified by increased right- and left-sided pressures, decreased CO, and increased SVR. Pure right heart failure is observed with elevated CVP, decreased PAOP and CO, and increased SVR. While a common cause of RV failure is LV failure, other possible etiologies include RV ischemia, pulmonary embolism, and pulmonary hypertension. Distributive shock from sepsis has been clinically described as progressive from an “early” or “warm” to a “late” or “cold” state. A change in measured CO via the PAC can differentiate the prototypically high CO in warm shock versus the low CO of cold distributive shock. This is relevant, as the latter condition may require inotropes while the former may not.

**TABLE 5.1** Shock State Identification by PAC Hemodynamic Parameters (Normal Values for Each Parameter Noted in Parentheses)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shock State</th>
<th>CVP (0–4 mm Hg)</th>
<th>PAP (15–25/8–15 mm Hg)</th>
<th>PAOP (8–12 mm Hg)</th>
<th>Cardiac Index (2.2–4.2 L/min/m²)</th>
<th>SVR (700–1,200 Dyne–s/cm²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypovolemic</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiogenic or obstructive left heart</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive right heart</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributive early</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributive late</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Complications
Complications from pulmonary artery catheterization include those of CVC placement, as well as more PAC-specific problems such as misinterpretation of data, higher likelihood of arrhythmia, pulmonary artery injury, pulmonary infarction, valvular injury, and catheter knotting or tangling with other devices. Of note, misinterpretation of respiratory cycle and corresponding wedge pressures can lead to large over- or underestimates of filling pressures. As with any central catheter, there is always a risk of infection, which is dependent on the length of time a PAC/introducer is maintained and the sterility of the techniques used to place it.

PAC placement is often difficult in patients with pulmonary artery hypertension, where tricuspid regurgitation and a large RV size impede flotation through the right heart. The catheter may coil in the RV, leading to arrhythmias and prolonged insertion times. Pulmonary artery injury can result from spontaneous wedging (also called “over wedging”) (Fig. 5.3). Spontaneous wedging is evident when the PA waveform transitions to a “wedged” waveform without deliberate catheter advancement or balloon inflation. Over wedging occurs because of inadvertent migration of the catheter tip or occlusion of the PAC tip against a vessel wall.

Contraindications
Contraindications to PAC placement include left bundle branch block (LBBB) (given the ~5% risk of inducing right bundle branch block [RBBB]), right-sided cardiac mass, or right-sided infectious endocarditis. Contraindications listed for CVCs are also applicable. Attention should be paid to each particular PAC inserted, as several

FIGURE 5.3 Overwedging. This condition should be suspected with a rise in PA pressures above known occlusion pressure values. A balloon inflated in this position could lead to pulmonary artery rupture. After assuring balloon deflation, catheters should be withdrawn to the main pulmonary artery and readvanced if necessary. Rarely, a PAC tip thrombus can produce an “overwedging” waveform. Adapted from Civetta GA. Taylor & Kirby’s Critical Care. W. W. Philadelphia, PA: Norton & Company; 2009:175.
models contain heparin and/or latex and therefore would be contraindicated in patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia or a latex allergy. Risks of complications from insertion, manipulation, and interpretation are further increased with operator inexperience.

CONCLUSION

Invasive pressure monitoring is most useful when a change in hemodynamic status demands further clarification and assessment of adequacy of perfusion. CVCs enable the safe administration of vasoconstrictors and measurement of ScvO₂ and, with proper interpretation of their waveforms, provide a wealth of hemodynamic data. The PAC’s ability to continuously monitor pulmonary artery pressures, CO, and SvO₂ remains useful in the management of complex patients, yet awaits a clearly defined population or protocol that demonstrates a clinical benefit. These “upstream” indicators of perfusion, however, have idiosyncrasies and inherent limitations. Careful examination of these capabilities over the last 30 years demonstrates that end points of resuscitation should also include evaluation of “downstream” variables, such as organ function and oxidative metabolism (e.g., lactate). Given the still widespread use of invasive pressure monitoring, understanding the full array of data available from CVC and PAC numerical and waveform data is important in assuring that the patient will derive the greatest benefit from his or her exposure to the risks of catheterization. The clinician at the bedside, not the devices, determines patient outcome.

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CVP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marik et al., Chest. 2008</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 24 ICU-based studies to determine the ability of CVP, or changes in CVP, to predict fluid responsiveness</td>
<td>No relationship between CVP and changes in CVP with changes in cardiac index (CI) following fluid administration. Pooled correlation coefficient between CVP and change in CI = 0.18 (95% CI, 0.08–0.28). The pooled area under the ROC curve = 0.56 (95% CI, 0.51–0.61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michard and Teboul, Chest. 2002</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 334 ICU patients to evaluate prediction of change in SV or CI with fluid administration from change in CVP</td>
<td>No CVP threshold to identify fluid responsiveness. Only inspiratory decrease in change in CVP was equivalent to other dynamic parameters (“delta-down” arterial systolic blood pressure, pulse pressure variation, and change in aortic blood flow velocity) in ability to predict change in CI with fluid administration. Results seen in two studies of spontaneously breathing patients showed inspiratory decrease of CVP ≥ 1 mm Hg correlated with change in CO after fluid challenge. Those two studies reported positive predictive values of 77% and 84% and negative predictive values of 81% and 93%, respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumar et al., Crit Care Med. 2004</td>
<td>Prospective, nonrandomized, nonblinded interventional study of 44 patients in cardiac catheterization and echocardiography lab to predict change in CI with fluid administration based on change in CVP</td>
<td>No relationship between change in CI and change in CVP with fluid administration. Pearson correlation coefficient = 0.32 (p = 0.31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Section 2  Hemodynamic Monitoring

LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sandham et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2003</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter, nonblinded RCT of 1,994 elderly, high-risk (ASA 3 or 4) patients comparing goal directed therapy (GDT) with PAC vs. standard care without PAC periparative optimization. Optimization was defined as utilization of supranormal hemodynamic parameter goals of CI of 3.5–4.5, MAP &gt; 70, PAOP of 18, HR &lt; 120, and HCT &gt; 27</td>
<td>Six-month mortality was unchanged with PAC GDT vs. standard care (12% vs. 13%, p = 0.93). Weaknesses include atypical GDT (supranormal hemodynamic goals) and low overall mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shah et al., <em>JAMA</em>. 2005</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 13 RCT of 5,051 patients with ARDS, severe heart failure, sepsis, general ICU treatment, or high-risk surgery, and the impact of PAC use on outcome</td>
<td>No mortality benefit comparing PAC use to no PAC use (combined OR = 1.04, CI = 0.90–1.2). PAC use was associated with increased use of inotropes (OR = 1.58, CI = 1.19–2.12) and vasodilators (OR = 2.35, CI = 1.75–3.15). Weaknesses include no GDT strategies and no specific criteria for PAC placement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sotomi et al., <em>Int J Cardiol</em>. 2014</td>
<td>Prospective, observational, multicenter cohort trial reporting the association of PAC use and mortality in 1,004 patients with acute heart failure syndrome</td>
<td>Decreased mortality with PAC use (1.4% vs. 4.4%, p = 0.006). Weaknesses included exclusion of patients with acute coronary syndrome, creatinine &gt; 3.5, or prior use of dopamine/dobutamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeler et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2006</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter, nonblinded RCT of 1,000 patients’ 60-day mortality comparing PAC vs. CVP to guide hemodynamic management in ALI</td>
<td>No mortality difference using PAC vs. CVP (27% vs. 26%, p = 0.69). Also no significant difference in length of mechanical ventilation. Weaknesses included broad exclusion criteria and PAC management starting 40 h after admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvey et al., <em>Lancet</em>. 2005</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter, nonblinded RCT of 1,341 patients to compare PAC use to usual care in reducing mortality in critically ill patients</td>
<td>No significant difference in mortality was found comparing PAC to usual care (68% vs. 66%, p = 0.39). No difference in ICU length of stay (12 d with PAC vs. 11 d without PAC, p = 0.26). Weaknesses included delay in randomization (16 h), no GDT, and high overall mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard et al., <em>JAMA</em>. 2003</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter, nonblinded RCT of 676 patients comparing early PAC use in shock and ARDS to usual care. Early use was defined as PAC placement within 12 h of ARDS or shock diagnosis</td>
<td>No difference in 14 d mortality comparing PAC vs. no PAC (50% vs. 51%, p = 0.7). Weaknesses included frequent use of echocardiography to guide therapy (84% of patients with PAC and 78% of patients without PAC received echocardiography)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES

Traditionally, clinicians have divided shock into four distinct categories. In each category, there are several subtypes (Table 6.1).

Rapidly determining the type of shock state in the critically ill patient and initiating the appropriate resuscitative measures can lower patient mortality. With the decreased reliance on invasive monitoring tools for shock assessment, focused bedside ultrasonography, or ultrasound (US), has evolved to become a key means for evaluation. As US allows for the rapid assessment of both the anatomy and physiology of the shock patient, multiple resuscitation protocols have been created.

The major resuscitation US protocols in critically ill medical and trauma patients include ACES, BEAT, BLEEP, Boyd ECHO, EGLS, Elmer/Noble Protocol, FALLS, FATE, FAST, extended FAST, FEEL resuscitation, FEER, FREE, POCUS (FAST and RELIABLE), RUSH-HIMAP, RUSH (pump/tank/pipes), Trinity, and UHP. These algorithms have many similar components but differ in the sequence of exam performance (Table 6.2).

The RUSH protocol, named for Rapid Ultrasound in Shock, offers one easily remembered and comprehensive resuscitation protocol first to identify the shock state and then to monitor targeted therapy.

**SOCIETY SUPPORT FOR FOCUSED ULTRASOUND IN CRITICALLY ILL PATIENTS**

The use of focused US, including the individual components of the RUSH exam, has been supported by the major emergency medicine organizations. These organizations include the American College of Emergency Physicians (ACEP), the Society for Academic Emergency Medicine, and the Council of Emergency Medicine Residency Directors (CORD). Critical care societies have endorsed both training in and the
clinical use of bedside US. US has become an increasingly important diagnostic modality for this specialty. In 2010, an important collaborative paper was published jointly between the American Society of Echocardiography (ASE) and ACEP that endorsed focused echocardiography (echo) for a defined set of emergent conditions. These exam indications and goals include the core exam components of the RUSH exam (Tables 6.3 to 6.5).

In addition, other components of the RUSH exam, including the FAST, lung, aorta, and deep venous thrombosis (DVT) US exams, are supported by ACEP as core applications for use by the emergency physician.

**PERFORMANCE OF THE RUSH EXAMINATION: BASIC CONCEPTS**

**Ultrasound Probe Selection**
A phased array probe at 2 to 3 MHz is used for the cardiac and thoracic components of the exam. A curvilinear probe at 2 to 3 MHz can be used for the abdominal components (FAST and aorta). A linear array probe at 8 to 12 MHz is used for the more superficial vascular components (DVT, internal jugular (IJ) veins).

**Ultrasound Presets**
The heart moves rapidly in reference to other body structures. For this reason, selection of a high frame rate on the US machine settings will allow for optimal imaging. This is done by selecting the cardiac preset, which is preloaded on most current US machines. The abdominal preset is best for the FAST and aorta exams. The vascular or venous preset is best for the DVT and IJ vein exams.

**B-Mode Ultrasound**
The RUSH US exam utilizes modalities that can image both critical anatomy and physiology. This is done by first employing two-dimensional B-mode imaging. B-mode imaging projects the body as a continuum of color in the gray spectrum, termed echogenicity. Echogenicity results from the fact that the US probe first acts as a transducer that sends sound waves into the body. The sound waves then penetrate into the body, traveling a distance until they are bounced back to the probe. Different tissues will have varying resistance to the movement of sound. Higher-density (hyperechoic) structures will reflect an increasing amount of the sound back to the probe, resulting in a brighter appearance (i.e., a calcified heart valve, diaphragm). Fluid-filled structures (hypoechoic or anechoic) will allow for increased propagation of sound through the body, leading to a darker appearance (i.e., blood, body fluids) (Fig. 6.10).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAST-A/P</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aorta</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungs-PX</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungs-PE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ectopic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers indicate order of exam sequence for each protocol.
M-Mode Ultrasound
M-mode or “motion” mode illustrates an “ice pick” image of movement across a defined anatomical axis in relation to time. This generates a gray-scale illustration of movement over time that can be used to easily document motion on a static image (Figs. 6.11 and 6.12).

Doppler Ultrasound
Doppler US allows for the evaluation of motion within the body. The Doppler shift is defined as the movement of body structures relative to the position of the US probe. A positive Doppler shift results from structures (such as blood cells) moving toward the probe and a negative Doppler shift from movement away from the probe. The Doppler shift can be interpreted in several imaging modalities, two of which are discussed below.

Color-Flow Doppler
This modality demonstrates directionality of flow both toward and away from the probe and is often used in echo and vascular applications. Movement toward the probe results in a shorter frequency of sound. It is traditionally represented as red on the US image. Movement away from the probe results in a longer frequency of sound and is typically represented as blue. The scale that displays the color-flow Doppler setting should be set high (>70 cm/s) for echo to best capture the fast flow of the blood traveling through the heart. A lower scale can be used for the evaluation of the aorta and other vascular applications (DVT, IJ veins).

Pulsed-Wave Doppler
Pulsed-wave Doppler allows for assessment of flow velocity in a waveform that identifies the specific speed of blood flow over time. This modality is often used in advanced echo to define the velocity of blood flow through cardiac valves.

TABLE 6.3  ACEP/ASE Consensus Guidelines for Ultrasound Exam—Clinical Indications

| American College of Emergency Physicians and American Society of Echocardiography Consensus Guidelines on Focused Echocardiography |
| Recognized clinical indications for ultrasound examination: |
| 1. Cardiac trauma: Focused assessment with sonography in trauma (FAST) exam |
| 2. Cardiac arrest |
| 3. Hypotension/shock |
| 4. Dyspnea/shortness of breath |
| 5. Chest pain |

TABLE 6.4  ACEP/ASE Consensus Guidelines for Core Ultrasound Exam—Clinical Goals

| American College of Emergency Physicians and American Society of Echocardiography Consensus Guidelines on Focused Echocardiography |
| Core echocardiography indications: |
| 1. Assessment for pericardial effusions and pericardial tamponade |
| 2. Assessment of global cardiac systolic function |
| 3. Identification of marked right ventricular and left ventricular enlargement |
| 4. Assessment of intravascular volume |
| 5. Guidance of pericardiocentesis |
| 6. Confirmation of transvenous pacemaker wire placement |
Critical Care Ultrasonography

Orientation of Indicator on Machine and Probe
Historically, there has been practice variation between different US exams with regard to the orientation of the indicator dot on the screen and the marker on the probe. The reason for this being that the first widespread applications used in emergency medicine practice, such as the FAST and OB/GYN exams, were oriented based on traditional radiology practice, with the US screen indicator dot oriented to the left. Emergency medicine-practiced echo was therefore configured similarly. This differs from traditional cardiology practice, where the indicator dot is oriented to the right on the US screen. Despite this difference, the standard practice has been to orient the US probe (at a 180-degree variance, depending on screen orientation), so that the cardiac images obtained with the screen indicator dot on either side display the heart in the same configuration. In this chapter, the probe orientation for all RUSH exam components, including the cardiac views, will be described with the screen indicator dot located to the left side. This convention avoids having to flip the screen marker dot between different exams.

THE RUSH EXAM: PROTOCOL COMPONENTS
The RUSH exam involves a 3-part bedside physiologic patient assessment, which is simplified as “the pump,” “the tank,” and “the pipes.”

RUSH STEP 1: THE PUMP
Clinicians caring for the patient in shock should begin with assessment of “the function of the pump,” which is a goal-directed echo exam looking specifically for:

1. The degree of left ventricular contractility
2. Detection of pericardial effusion and cardiac tamponade
3. The presence of right ventricular enlargement

In addition, other cardiac pathology may be detected on bedside echo. A confirmatory test should generally be ordered if more advanced pathology is seen on bedside US, in accordance with the joint ACEP/ASE guidelines. The information gained by this exam can also allow a better assessment of the need for an emergent cardiac procedure. If indicated, US can then allow more accurate guidance of both the pericardiocentesis procedure and placement of a transvenous pacemaker wire.

TABLE 6.5
ACEP/ASE Consensus Guidelines for Advanced Ultrasound Exam—Exam Goals
American College of Emergency Physicians and American Society of Echocardiography Consensus Guidelines on Focused Echocardiography
The following conditions may be suspected on focused echocardiography:
(Additional imaging should be obtained if possible.)
1. Intracardiac masses
2. Cardiac chamber thrombus
3. Regional wall motion abnormalities
4. Endocarditis
5. Aortic dissection
Performance of the Echocardiography Examination

There are three traditional windows used for performance of cardiac US. These are the parasternal (long- and short-axis views), subxiphoid, and apical views (Fig. 6.1).

The Parasternal Long-Axis View

*Patient Position*  This view can be performed with the patient in a supine position. Turning the patient into a left lateral decubitus position will often improve this view by moving the heart away from the sternum and closer to the chest wall. This displaces the lung from the path of the sound waves.

*Probe Position*  The probe should initially be positioned just lateral to the sternum at about the third intercostal space. The probe position can then be adjusted for optimal imaging by moving the probe up or down one additional intercostal space. The probe indicator should be oriented toward the patient’s left elbow (Fig. 6.2).
Anatomic and Sonographic Correlation  The parasternal long-axis view will visualize three cardiac chambers and the aorta. The right atrium is not seen from this view. Optimally, the parasternal long-axis images have both the aortic and mitral valves in the same view. The aortic valve and aortic root can be visualized as the area known as the left ventricular outflow tract (Fig. 6.3).

Parasternal Short-Axis View

Probe Position  This view is obtained by first identifying the heart in the parasternal long-axis view and then rotating the probe 90 degrees clockwise. The probe indicator dot is aligned toward the patient’s right hip (Fig. 6.4).

Anatomic and Sonographic Correlation  The short-axis view visualizes the left and right ventricles in cross section and is known as the ring, or doughnut view, of the heart (Fig. 6.5). The traditional view is of the left ventricle at the level of the mitral
valve, which appears as a “fish mouth” opening and closing during the cardiac cycle. Visualizing the heart as a cylinder with the US beam cutting tangentially through different levels, one can look as far inferiorly as the apex of the left ventricle and superiorly to the level of the aortic valve.

To best evaluate left ventricular contractility, the probe is moved inferiorly to the level of the papillary muscles, allowing confirmation of the assessment taken from the parasternal long-axis view. In addition, cardiologists routinely evaluate for segmental wall motion abnormalities on this view. If the probe is angled superiorly and medially from the above location, the aortic valve and right ventricular outflow tract will come into view. The aortic valve should appear as the “Mercedes-Benz sign” with a normal tricuspid configuration. A calcified bicuspid valve that may be prone to stenosis and pathology can be identified here.33

Subxiphoid Window

**Patient Position**  This view is performed with the patient supine. Bending the patient’s knees will relax the abdominal muscles and can improve imaging.

**Probe Position**  Place the probe just inferior to the xiphoid tip of the sternum, with the indicator oriented toward the patient’s right side (Fig. 6.6). Flattening and pushing down on the probe will aim the US beam up and under the sternum to best image the heart. If gas-filled stomach or intestine impedes imaging, one can move the probe to the patient’s right while simultaneously aiming the probe toward the patient’s left shoulder, to utilize more of the blood-filled liver as an acoustic window.

**Anatomic and Sonographic Correlation**  The liver, which will be seen anteriorly, will act as the acoustic window to the heart from the subxiphoid view, allowing all four cardiac chambers to be seen. Because of the superior ability to visualize the right side of the heart from the subxiphoid window, it is often employed when close assessment of these chambers is needed (Fig. 6.7).
Apical Window

**Patient Position** Roll the patient into the left lateral decubitus position to bring the heart closer to the lateral chest wall, and obtain optimal imaging from this view.

**Probe Position** Palpate the point of maximal impulse on the lateral chest wall and place the transducer at this point. This is generally just below the nipple line in men and under the breast in women. For the apical view, the probe marker will be oriented toward the patient’s right elbow (Fig. 6.8).

**Anatomic and Sonographic Correlation** The apical window allows for detailed assessment of the sizes and movements of all four cardiac chambers in relation to one another (Fig. 6.9). The apical four-chamber view is the first traditional view from this window.

![Subxiphoid View of Heart](image)

**FIGURE 6.6** Subxiphoid view, probe position.

![Cardiac Echocardiography: Subxiphoid View](image)

**FIGURE 6.7** Subxiphoid view, anatomy.
The optimal views from this position have both the mitral and tricuspid valves in the image. From this position, the probe can then be angled more superiorly to obtain the apical 5-chamber view. The “5th chamber” will be the aortic valve and aortic outflow tract in the middle of the image.

**RUSH STEP 1a: ASSESSMENT OF CARDiac CONTRACTILITY**

**Background**
A relatively high percentage of critical patients may have compromised cardiac function contributing to their shock state, which may be diagnosed with bedside echo. Published studies have demonstrated that emergency physicians with focused training can accurately evaluate left ventricular contractility.

**FIGURE 6.8** Apical view, probe position.

**FIGURE 6.9** Apical view, anatomy.
Qualitative Evaluation of Left Ventricular Contractility

Evaluating motion of the left ventricular walls by a visual estimation of the volume change from diastole to systole provides a qualitative assessment of contractility.\textsuperscript{34–36} A ventricle that has good contractility will have a large-volume change between the two cycles (Fig. 6.10), while a poorly contracting heart will have a small percentage change. The poorly contracting heart may also be dilated in size. Based on these assessments, a patient’s contractility can be broadly categorized as being normal, mildly to moderately decreased, or severely decreased. A fourth category, known as hyperdynamic, can be seen in advanced hypovolemia or in distributive shock states. The heart will have small chambers and vigorous, hyperkinetic contractions with the endocardial walls almost touching during systole.

Semiquantitative Means for Assessment of Contractility

Fractional Shortening

M-mode can be used to graphically depict the movements of the left ventricular walls through the cardiac cycle. In the parasternal long-axis view, the M-mode cursor is placed across the left ventricle beyond the tips of the mitral valve leaflets at about the midventricle area. The resulting tracing allows a two-dimensional length-based measurement of the chamber diameters over time. Fractional shortening is calculated according to the following formula:

\[
\frac{(EDD - ESD)}{EDD} \times 100
\]

where ESD is the end-systolic diameter, measured at the smallest dimension between the ventricular walls, and EDD is the end-diastolic diameter, where the distance is greatest (Fig. 6.11).

In general, fractional shortening above 35% to 40% correlates to a normal ejection fraction.\textsuperscript{37} Compared to the comprehensive volumetric assessment required for measuring ejection fraction, fractional shortening is a semiquantitative method for determining systolic function that is relatively fast and easy to perform.\textsuperscript{38}

![Parasternal Long Axis View: Good Contractility](image-url)
E-Point Septal Separation
Motion of the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve in the parasternal long-axis view can also be used to assess left ventricular contractility. In the early diastolic phase of a normal contractile cycle, the anterior mitral leaflet can be observed to fully open to a position close to the septal wall. This is with the caveat that mitral valve abnormalities (stenosis, regurgitation), aortic regurgitation, and extreme left ventricle hypertrophy are not present. Early diastolic opening of the mitral valve is represented on M-mode US as the E-point. The distance measured between the E-point, representing the position of the fully open mitral valve, and the septum is known as the E-point septal separation or EPSS. To measure the EPSS, the M-mode cursor is placed over the tip of the anterior mitral valve leaflet. In a normal contractile state, the EPSS will be <7 mm, as the mitral valve will almost approximate the septum during early diastolic filling. As left ventricular contractility decreases, diastolic flow through the valve will diminish. This results in decreased mitral valve opening to a position relatively farther from the septum and a corresponding increase in the EPSS (Fig. 6.12). Further research is ongoing to determine the accuracy of correlation between EPSS and fractional shortening.

RUSH STEP 1b: DIAGNOSIS OF PERICARDIAL EFFUSION AND CARDIAC TAMPOONADE
Pathophysiology
Published studies have documented that pericardial effusions may be found relatively commonly in critical patients presenting with acute shortness of breath, respiratory failure, shock, and cardiac arrest. Fortunately, the literature also indicates that emergency physicians with focused echo training can accurately identify effusions. Pericardial effusions may result in hemodynamic instability as the pressure in the pericardial sac acutely increases, resulting in reduced cardiac filling. Acute pericardial effusions (as
small as 50 cc) may result in tamponade. This pathology may quickly compromise the trauma patient. Conversely, in chronic conditions, the pericardium may slowly stretch to accommodate large effusions over time without tamponade.47

**Sonographic Appearance of Pericardial Effusions**

Pericardial effusions are generally recognized by a dark, or anechoic, appearance. However, inflammatory or infectious conditions may result in effusions with a brighter, or more echogenic, appearance. In addition, traumatic pericardial effusions will take on a more echogenic appearance over time as blood clots.

**Grading Scale for the Size of Pericardial Effusions**

One scale for describing the size of the effusion is shown below (Table 6.6).48

**Specific Echocardiographic Windows for Evaluating Pericardial Effusions**

**Parasternal Long-Axis View**

**Size and Location of Effusions** Smaller effusions will first layer posteriorly behind the heart. As effusions grow in size, they will surround the heart in a circumferential manner, moving into the anterior pericardial space.47 Most effusions are free flowing in the pericardial sac. However, occasionally loculated effusions may occur. These typically occur in postoperative cardiac surgery patients and in inflammatory conditions.49

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6.6: Grading Scale for Pericardial Effusions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Small: &lt;1 cm depth, noncircumferential around heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Moderate: &lt;1 cm depth, circumferential around heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Large: &gt;1 cm depth, circumferential around the heart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Differentiation of Pleural from Pericardial Fluid  The critical landmarks for detection of a pericardial effusion are the descending aorta and the posterior pericardial reflection. The descending aorta will appear as a circle directly behind the left atrium, posterior to the mitral valve (Fig. 6.13). The posterior pericardial reflection will be identified as a hyperechoic structure immediately anterior to the descending aorta. First, select the appropriate depth of the US image, so that the descending aorta and pericardial reflection are adequately visualized posteriorly on the screen. Pericardial effusions will be located anterior to the descending aorta and above the posterior pericardial reflection (Fig. 6.13). In contrast, pleural effusions will be located posterior to the descending aorta and below the posterior pericardial reflection (Fig. 6.14). To further confirm the presence of a left pleural effusion, the probe can be moved to a lateral position on the chest wall as for the FAST views and aimed above the diaphragm to visualize the lower thoracic cavity (Fig. 6.17).
Pericardial Fat Pad  A pericardial, or epicardial, fat pad may at times be confused with a pericardial effusion. The typical location for this structure is in the area just deep to the near-field pericardial reflection and anterior to the heart. The fat pad often has a classic appearance, with an interspersed speckling of bright, or hyperechoic, regions. From the parasternal views, an isolated anterior “echo-dense” structure is more suggestive of a fat pad and not of an effusion. For an effusion to be visualized anteriorly on the parasternal views, a circumferential effusion would usually be present (with the exception of the presence of a rarer loculated pericardial effusion). From the subxiphoid view, the fat pad would be seen closer to the probe, located just beneath the near-field pericardial reflection and anterior to the heart.

Subxiphoid View
Size and Location of Effusions  Because the subxiphoid window is taken from a position inferior to the heart, small effusions will typically first layer out with gravity along the near-field pericardial reflection. This is especially noted in cases where the patient has been in an upright position. Larger effusions will spread to surround the heart circumferentially.

Differentiation of Pericardial Effusion from Ascites  Ascites may be confused with a pericardial effusion. To help differentiate between the two, ascites will be seen nearer to the probe, anterior to the near-field pericardial reflection, outside the pericardial sac, and surrounding the liver within the abdominal cavity. In contrast, a pericardial effusion is located posterior to the near-field pericardium, adjacent to the heart, and within the pericardial sac.

Echocardiographic Diagnosis of Cardiac Tamponade
Ultrasound Findings  As pericardial effusions accumulate, the pressure in the pericardial sac rises and will first compromise the lower pressure circuit of the right heart. This is best recognized sonographically as an inability of these chambers to fully expand during the relaxation phase of the cardiac cycle. Cardiac tamponade is thus classically defined on US as diastolic collapse of either the right atrium or the right ventricle. While both right heart chambers should be evaluated, diastolic collapse of the right ventricle is a more specific finding. This is because as tamponade progresses, the right atrium may take on an appearance of a “furiously contracting chamber” with hyperdynamic contractions. This can at times make differentiation of atrial systolic contraction from diastolic collapse more difficult.

Diastolic collapse of the right ventricle in tamponade is best understood as a spectrum of US findings, from a subtle serpentine deflection of the wall to complete chamber compression (Fig. 6.15). One important pitfall to this general diagnostic strategy is seen in the patient with pulmonary hypertension, where diastolic collapse of the right heart may occur late in the disease process.

Advanced Strategies in the Identification of Tamponade  There are several more advanced strategies used to document diastolic compression of the right heart in tamponade. The first is to attach an EKG monitoring lead to the US machine to allow for simultaneous display of both the US and electrical phases. Systole
will be identified immediately following the QRS, and diastole will follow later in the electrical cycle, just prior to the next P–QRS complex. Slowing the video down and scrolling through the echo with simultaneous attention to both the EKG phase and the US will allow discrimination of systolic from diastolic movements of the right atrium and ventricle. In tamponade, right atrial diastolic collapse may be noted first, occurring directly after atrial systole and early after the QRS complex. Right ventricular diastolic collapse will be noted later as tamponade progresses. This will be seen on EKG later in the electrical cycle and just before the following P–QRS complex.

Evaluation of the inferior vena cava (IVC) may also be performed to confirm tamponade physiology. A dilated, or plethoric, IVC without respiratory collapse implies tamponade. A more advanced exam using Doppler US allows for one of the most sensitive tests to evaluate for tamponade. From the apical 4-chamber view, color-flow Doppler can first be used to identify the flow of blood through the tricuspid and mitral valves. Pulsed-wave Doppler is then used to identify the augmented respiratory variation in the flow velocities across these valves, which is noted in tamponade. In inspiration, an increase in blood flow through the tricuspid valve and a decrease in flow through the mitral valve will be seen. Flow variations >25% across the tricuspid valve and >15% across the mitral valve are considered abnormal.

Ultrasound Guidance of Pericardiocentesis

In cases of cardiac tamponade and shock, an emergent pericardiocentesis is generally indicated. Emergency physicians have classically been taught the subxiphoid approach for pericardiocentesis. However, a large review from the Mayo Clinic included 1,127 pericardiocentesis procedures and found that the optimal position for placement of the needle was the apical position in 80% of patients. The subxiphoid approach was only chosen in 20% of these procedures, due to the interposition of the liver. US allows for accurate guidance of the pericardiocentesis needle and guidewire into the pericardial sac. In addition, agitated saline can be used as a form of US contrast to confirm proper needle placement in the pericardial space.
RUSH STEP 1c: ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY IN PULMONARY EMBOLUS AND EVALUATION FOR RIGHT VENTRICULAR ENLARGEMENT

Background
While a CT scan is typically thought of as the current diagnostic standard for pulmonary embolism, focused echo can identify one of the more serious complications of this disease, right ventricular strain. This finding correlates with a poorer prognosis and the need for more immediate treatment. Right ventricular enlargement on focused echo may also suggest this pathology in the undifferentiated patient presenting in shock, potentially leading to more timely diagnosis and treatment.

Echocardiography Literature for Pulmonary Embolus
Studies have previously evaluated the use of echo for the diagnosis of pulmonary embolus, specifically looking for the presence of right ventricular enlargement due to acute cardiac strain. The documented sensitivity of this test in all patients with pulmonary embolus is only moderate. Therefore, echo cannot be used to rule out a pulmonary embolus, especially in those patients who are hemodynamically stable. However, identification of right ventricular enlargement can be of increased diagnostic utility in cases of hypotension with suspected thromboembolic disease, where it will have a higher specificity and positive predictive value.

The traditional treatment of patients with a pulmonary embolus has been with anticoagulation. However, more recent guidelines recommend the combined use of anticoagulants and fibrinolytics in cases of severe pulmonary embolism. This is defined as the presence of acute right heart strain and clinical signs and symptoms of hypotension, severe shortness of breath, or altered mental status.

Echocardiographic Findings of Hemodynamically Significant Pulmonary Embolism
Parasternal Views
The relative sizes of the left and right ventricles can be evaluated from this window. A normal ratio of the right to the left ventricle is defined as 0.6:1 with a greater than 1:1 ratio indicating right ventricular dilatation. A higher relative ratio, combined with deflection of the interventricular septum from right to left, indicates the right ventricular strain that may be seen in a severe pulmonary embolus. In acute right ventricular strain, the chamber wall will typically be thin, due to the lack of time for compensatory hypertrophy. Conversely, in cases of chronic pulmonary strain seen in conditions of long-standing pulmonary artery hypertension, the right ventricle will compensate with hypertrophy. This will result in a thicker wall, typically measuring >5 mm. These findings can allow the clinician to further differentiate the US findings of acute from chronic right heart enlargement. On the parasternal short-axis view, the interventricular septum may be seen to bow from right to left with high right-side pressures. This can result in a finding known as the left ventricular “D-shaped cup,” or “D-sign,” as the septum is pushed down and away from the right ventricle (Fig. 6.16).
Subxiphoid and Apical Views

The subxiphoid view may also be used in the assessment of right ventricular strain: however, one must take care to aim the probe to capture the widest chamber size, avoiding underestimation of dimensions by imaging the right ventricle off-axis. The apical window is another excellent view for visualization of both right ventricular enlargement and septal bowing. In addition to findings of right ventricular strain, occasionally clot may be visualized within the heart.73

**RUSH STEP 1 - OTHER USES: THE PATIENT WITH HEART BLOCK AS CAUSE FOR SHOCK: ULTRASOUND GUIDANCE OF TRANSVENOUS PACEMAKER PLACEMENT**

In cases of cardiogenic shock due to pump failure from bradycardia, immediate transvenous pacemaker placement may be indicated in cases unresponsive to medications. US guidance of transvenous pacemaker placement can be performed from either the subxiphoid or apical window. The pacing wire should be observed to pass from the right atrium through the tricuspid valve and into the right ventricle. Optimally, the wire can be observed to float up against the electrically active right ventricular septum and mechanical capture then confirmed with US.

**RUSH STEP 2: THE TANK**

The second part of the RUSH protocol focuses on the determination of the effective intravascular volume status, referred to as “the tank” (Fig. 6.17). This information, in conjunction with evaluation of cardiac status, provides a key guide to fluid management in the critical patient. The evaluation of “the tank” is composed of three components: (1) “Tank Fullness”, (2) “Tank Leakiness”, and (3) “Tank Compromise.”
1) “Fullness of the Tank”: Inferior Vena Cava and Internal Jugular (IJ) Veins

Following evaluation of the heart and quantification of contractility, assessment of the central venous pressure (CVP) or “fullness of the tank” should be performed. The IVC will typically be the primary structure evaluated to give this information (Fig. 6.17, position A). However, if the IVC cannot be seen well in a given patient, evaluation of the IJ veins can provide an alternate means for volume assessment.

**Ultrasound Evaluation of the Inferior Vena Cava**

**Patient Position**  The IVC is best evaluated with patient in the supine position.

**Probe Position**  From the subxiphoid window, there are several variant views that are utilized in the imaging of the IVC. First, identify the right atrium in the four-chamber subxiphoid view and angle the probe inferiorly toward the spine to visualize the IVC as it joins this chamber. The IVC can then be followed inferiorly as it runs from the right atrium through the liver to the confluence with the three hepatic veins. Next, rotate the probe from the subxiphoid four-chamber view to the subxiphoid two-chamber view, by orienting the probe with the indicator oriented superiorly toward the ceiling. This allows for imaging of the right ventricle above the left ventricle, with the aorta typically seen in a long-axis orientation inferior to the heart. Moving the probe toward the patient’s right side will then bring the IVC into view.

**Anatomic and Sonographic Correlation**  Current recommendations for the measurement of the IVC are at the point just inferior to the confluence with the hepatic veins. This is approximately 2 cm from the junction of the right atrium and the IVC.\(^4\) Examining the IVC first as a circular structure in a short-axis plane is recommended. This can avoid slicing the US beam to the side of IVC and resulting in a falsely low measurement, in a pitfall known as the cylinder tangent effect. The probe can then be rotated to image the IVC in a longitudinal plane. This will allow confirmation of the accuracy of vessel measurements.
Differentiation of IVC from Aorta  The aorta and the IVC may be confused with one another. The aorta can be identified as a thicker-walled and pulsatile structure, with more prominent branch vessels and a location to the patient’s left side. In contrast, the IVC has thinner walls, is often compressible with the probe, can be seen to move through the liver, and is located to the patient’s right side. While the IVC may have pulsations due to its proximity to the aorta, Doppler US will allow differentiation of arterial pulsations from the phasic movement of IVC blood with respirations.

Ultrasound Evaluation of the IVC for Volume Status  A noninvasive estimation of the patient’s intravascular volume can be determined by examining both the relative size and the respiratory dynamics of the IVC. The assessment of the IVC should follow the determination of cardiac contractility, allowing the clinician to evaluate both parameters together to more accurately gauge the volume status. As the patient breathes, the IVC will have a normal pattern of inspiratory collapse. This respiratory variation can be further accentuated by having the patient sniff, or inspire forcefully. M-mode US, positioned in both the short- and long-axis planes of the IVC, can graphically document these dynamic respiratory changes in vessel size. Previous studies have demonstrated a positive correlation between the size and respiratory change of the IVC taken simultaneously with the patient’s measured CVP, in an examination termed sonospirometry (Figs. 6.18 and 6.19).75–83 Changes in the size and respiratory variation of the IVC and/or IJ veins can then be followed over time as fluid is given to the patient in shock, to assess for a therapeutic response. Clinical decisions to continue fluid loading, or to start vasopressor agents, can be assisted through knowledge of the “fullness of the tank.”

Newer published guidelines by the ASE support this general use of the evaluation of IVC size and respiratory change in assessment of CVP, but suggest more specific ranges for the pressure measurements (Table 6.7).84

In intubated patients, the respiratory dynamics of the IVC will be reversed. In these patients, the IVC becomes less compliant and more distended in both respiratory phases. However, important physiologic data can still be obtained in these patients, as fluid

**FIGURE 6.18** IVC evaluation, low CVP.
responsiveness has been correlated with an increase in IVC diameter over time.\textsuperscript{85} This highlights the importance of serial examinations of the IVC in the shock patient to better assess response to therapy. In the nonintubated patient, the size and percentage respiratory collapse of the IVC can be used to assess for changes in CVP with fluid loading. In the intubated patient, the absolute size of the IVC may be a better indicator of CVP and successful fluid loading will be seen as a progressively larger IVC noted on serial US exams.

**Evaluation of the Internal Jugular Vein**
The IJ veins may be evaluated as an alternative means of volume assessment. This is helpful in the patient in whom a gas-filled stomach or intestine prohibits imaging of the IVC. The patient should be positioned with the head of the bed elevated to 30 degrees. A high-frequency linear array probe is recommended for this exam. For volume assessment, one should examine both the relative fullness and the height of the vessel column in the neck. Both short- and long-axis views of the vein can be utilization (Figs. 6.20 and 6.21). The US measurement for jugular venous distention has been performed by identifying the absolute vertical height of the column of blood in the IJ vein at end expiration as measured above the sternal angle. To this measurement is added 5 cm, which is the distance from the right atrium to the sternal notch.

Jugular venous distention measured >8 cm has been predictive of elevated CVP.\textsuperscript{86,87} The change in the column height, both with respiratory dynamics and with the Valsalva maneuver, can also be evaluated to help assess right atrial pressure. One study looked at

**TABLE 6.7 IVC Correlation to CVP, ASE Guidelines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IVC Size and Collapsibility</th>
<th>Correlation to Central Venous Pressure (ASE Guidelines):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. IVC diameter &lt; 2.1 cm, collapses &gt;50% with sniff: Correlates to a normal CVP pressure of 3 mm Hg (range 0–5 mm Hg) (While a normal measurement in the healthy patient, this would be considered low in the critically ill patient)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. IVC diameter &gt; 2.1 cm, collapses &lt;50% with sniff: Correlates to a high CVP pressure of 15 mm Hg (range 10–20 mm Hg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Scenarios in which the IVC diameter and collapse do not fit these indices: An intermediate value of 8 mm Hg (range 5–10 mm) may be used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the percentage change in the cross-sectional area of the vein during Valsalva and found a decreased measurement to be present with elevated right atrial pressure, suggesting a more plethoric and less compliant vein.86–88 Another study looked at the maximal IJ vein diameters (IJV max diam) in both expiration and inspiration to measure a collapsibility index.

This was defined as follows:

\[
\text{IJV max diam (expiration)} - \text{IJV max diam (inspiration)} / \text{IJV max diam (expiration)}
\]

A collapsibility index $>39\%$ correlated best with hypovolemia, with a sensitivity of $87.5\%$ and specificity of $100\%$.

2) “Leakiness of the Tank”: FAST and Thoracic Ultrasound

Once a patient’s intravascular volume status has been determined, the next step is to assess for “leakiness of the tank.” This refers to hemodynamic compromise due to a loss of fluid from the core vascular circuit. This assessment is initiated with the Extended Focused Assessment
with Sonography for Trauma exam.\textsuperscript{11,12} The traditional FAST exam will identify fluid collections in the abdominal and pelvic cavities (Fig. 6.17, positions B, C, D). The extended FAST exam includes evaluation of the thoracic cavity for fluid and for pneumothorax (PTX).

A thoracic fluid collection, either a pleural effusion or hemothorax depending on the clinical scenario, can be identified by aiming the probe above the diaphragm from the standard right and left upper quadrant views (Fig. 6.22). Traumatic conditions resulting in hemothorax or hemoperitoneum cause hypovolemic shock due to a “hole in the tank.” This in combination with a hyperdynamic heart and flat IVC correlates with hypovolemic shock. In a female patient of childbearing age presenting in shock, this may reflect a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, resulting in physiology effectively similar to a traumatic condition. Conversely, medical conditions causing pleural effusions and ascites often occur due to “tank overload.” This occurs when there is failure of the heart, kidneys, or liver. Finally, lung US can identify pulmonary edema, a sign often indicative of both “tank overload” and “tank leakiness,” with fluid accumulation in the lung parenchyma.\textsuperscript{90–92} This exam is performed by placing the phased array probe over the thorax to look for US B-lines, or “lung rockets” (Fig. 6.23). Optimally, the clinician should inspect both anterior (Fig. 6.17, position E) and lateral areas of the thorax to increase exam sensitivity, as edema in the supine patient may be increasingly prominent in the more dependent lateral areas.\textsuperscript{93}

3) “Compromise of the Tank”: Tension Pneumothorax

The third component of the assessment of the tank is to look for “tank compromise.” A tension PTX may result in hypotension by severely limiting venous return to the heart within the superior and inferior venae cavae. A high-frequency linear array probe is optimal for use in the PTX exam. The probe should first be placed on the anterior chest at about the second intercostal space in the midclavicular line, as air from a PTX will first collect in this location in the supine patient (Fig. 6.24). Normal lung will appear to slide horizontally back and forth as the patient breathes. Vertical small “comet-tail artifacts” will also be noted to extend a short distance posteriorly off the pleura. These findings result from the US appearance of the normally apposed pleural line, made up of the combined inner visceral pleura of the lung and the outer parietal pleural layer of the thoracic cavity (Fig. 6.25).
In a PTX, air will collect within the thoracic cavity and will split the normally touching parietal and visceral layers. On US, a single line that represents the solitary parietal pleura will be seen, as the visceral pleura will be obscured by air. This single line will not slide back and forth with respirations, and vertical comet tails will not be seen.⁹⁴–⁹⁷

In an incomplete PTX, a portion of the lung may still be inflated and will touch up against the outer parietal pleura. The lead point, or transition point, is the area where the lung in an incomplete PTX makes contact with the outer pleural layer. This may be seen on US as an area where lung sliding is seen on one side of the image, while no sliding is seen on the other. The transition point of lung sliding may be observed to move across the US field as the patient breathes. To find the transition point, the probe is moved progressively more laterally on the chest wall from the midclavicular line toward the midaxillary line.

**FIGURE 6.23** Ultrasound B-lines, lung rockets.

**FIGURE 6.24** Probe position, pneumothorax exam.
M-mode US can confirm the B-mode US findings of a PTX. Normal lung sliding gives the appearance of “waves on the beach” or “the seashore sign.” In PTX, the loss of lung sliding will result in the “stratosphere” or “the bar-code” signs.

An emergent needle decompression can then be performed rapidly in patient in shock where a PTX is identified on US, especially in cases where there may be a delay in obtaining a chest radiograph.

**RUSH STEP 3: THE PIPES**

The third and final step in the RUSH exam is to examine “the pipes,” or the major arterial and venous structures (Fig. 6.26).
The first part of this exam is to assess the arterial side of the circulatory system. Vascular catastrophes, such as a ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) or an aortic dissection, are life-threatening causes of hypotension that may be accurately diagnosed with bedside US.

AAA may be diagnosed by detection of an aorta larger than 3 cm in diameter. As most AAAs rupture into the retroperitoneal space, it may not be possible to visualize the actual area of aortic rupture. This is because the retroperitoneal area can be difficult to image with US. However, in the patient presenting in shock where AAA is diagnosed and rupture is clinically suspected, emergency surgical consultation and expedited therapy should be pursued. In the chest, dilation of the aortic root to a size >3.8 cm may be seen with a proximal, or Stanford class A, thoracic aortic dissection. This is measured just distal to the aortic valve. An intimal flap may at times be seen here, confirming dissection.

The evaluation of the major venous structures would then be indicated if right ventricular enlargement is identified on echo and a thromboembolic etiology for shock is suspected. In this scenario, imaging of the veins of the lower extremities for a DVT would be indicated. The limited leg compression DVT examination can be performed rapidly by evaluation of a targeted portion of the proximal femoral and popliteal veins, where the majority of thrombi are located.

For this exam, compression of the femoral vein is performed first, beginning superiorly at a level just below the inguinal ligament. The common femoral vein and artery should first be identified. Doppler flow can be used to differentiate arterial from venous structures. The vein should be located medially to the artery and fully compressible with probe pressure. Serial compressions of the vein in a short-axis, or side-to-side, orientation can then be performed every centimeter, moving the probe inferiorly past the confluence of the saphenous vein down to the bifurcation of the vein into the femoral vein of the thigh and the deep femoral vein. The femoral vein of the thigh (formerly the superficial femoral vein) then continues down the leg to become the popliteal vein behind the knee. From a posterior position behind the knee, the vein will generally be seen above or closer to the probe, in relation to the popliteal artery. The popliteal vein should be evaluated with serial compressions from high in the popliteal fossa down inferiorly to the level of trifurcation into the three calf veins. Failure to fully compress the femoral or popliteal vein with direct probe pressure is pathognomonic of thrombosis.

**PUTTING RUSH INTO ACTION**

The RUSH protocol—pump, tank, and pipes—was created as an easily remembered physiologic roadmap for use in the resuscitation of the critical patient. The RUSH protocol was designed to be performed expeditiously by specifically choosing those exam components most applicable to the patient’s clinical context. While the entire protocol is extensive and incorporates multiple US elements, the clinician should generally begin with evaluation of the heart, IVC, and/or the IJ veins. The RUSH exam should then be tailored based on clinical suspicion, as many patients may be assessed with an abbreviated exam. Incorporation of other components, such as the lung, FAST, aorta, and DVT
Critical Care Ultrasonography

exams, can be determined as the clinical picture dictates. Table 6.8 demonstrates how using the RUSH exam at the bedside can assist in the diagnosis of the type of shock in the critically ill patient.

Response to therapy can also be evaluated by repeating the RUSH exam in the hypotensive patient. Specifically as mentioned above, the clinician can monitor the function of the heart and the size and respiratory variation of the IVC and IJ veins over time to assess for the response to fluid loading or for the need to initiate vasopressor agents in the patient in shock.

CONCLUSION

Focused bedside US has evolved to become a key assessment tool in the evaluation of the critically ill patient in shock. Clinical information that once necessitated invasive measures, such as placement of a central line or a Swan-Ganz catheter, can now be measured by US assessment. The RUSH exam represents one of a series of resuscitation US algorithms for use in the critically ill patient. The physiologic basis for the protocol, simplified to “the pump, tank, and pipes,” allows for an easily remembered and rapidly performed protocol for shock assessment. While the RUSH protocol provides an extensive roadmap for shock evaluation, the exam should be adapted to best match the clinical presentation and not all elements may need to be performed in any given patient. Emergency physicians and critical care physicians caring for the sickest of patients should consider integrating US techniques, including the RUSH protocol, into their care.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Funding Sources: All authors disclose no funding sources.

Conflicts of Interest: Phillips Perera is an educational consultant for SonoSite Ultrasound. Diku Mandavia is the Chief Medical Officer for SonoSite Ultrasound, Bothell, WA. All other authors disclose no conflicts of interest.

---

**TABLE 6.8** Using the RUSH Protocol to Diagnose the Type of Shock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RUSH Exam:</th>
<th>Hypovolemic Shock</th>
<th>Cardiogenic Shock</th>
<th>Obstructive Shock</th>
<th>Distributive Shock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pump</td>
<td>Hypercontractile heart Small heart size</td>
<td>Hypocontractile heart Dilated heart size</td>
<td>Pericardial effusion RV strain Hypercontractile heart</td>
<td>Hypercontractile heart (early sepsis) Hypocontractile heart (late sepsis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tank</td>
<td>Flat IVC Flat IJV Peritoneal fluid Pleural fluid</td>
<td>Distended IVC Distended IJV B-lines Pleural effusions Ascites</td>
<td>Distended IVC Distended IJV Absent lung sliding (PTX)</td>
<td>Normal/small IVC Normal/small IJV Pleural fluid (Empyema) Peritoneal fluid (Peritonitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipes</td>
<td>AAA Aortic dissection</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>DVT</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jones et al., <em>Shock</em> 2005&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective, randomized trial of 103 patients with nontraumatic shock. The goal was to assess left ventricular contractility as a predictor for septic shock</td>
<td>The finding of hyperdynamic left ventricular contractility had a positive likelihood ratio of 5.3 for diagnosis of sepsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moore et al., <em>Acad Emerg Med.</em> 2002&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective, observational study included 51 adult patients with symptomatic hypotension. Echocardiography exams were performed by emergency physicians and then later assessed by a cardiologist blinded to the preliminary emergency physician assessment. The goal was to assess agreement between the final reading by emergency physicians and cardiologists</td>
<td>Comparison of emergency physician vs. cardiologist evaluation of left ventricular contractility yielded a Pearson correlation coefficient of $r = 0.86$. This compared favorably to the interobserver correlation of the reading between cardiologists $r = 0.84$. The conclusion was that emergency physicians with focused echo training can accurately determine left ventricular contractility in hypotensive patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joseph et al., <em>Chest.</em> 2004&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center prospective study included 100 ICU patients in shock</td>
<td>Transthoracic echocardiography was performed by cardiologists. 63% of patients had a cardiac cause of shock present, defined as pericardial effusion, left or right ventricular failure, or valve dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tayal et al., <em>Resuscitation.</em> 2003&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center observational study of 20 patients with nontraumatic hemodynamic collapse. All patients had bedside echocardiography performed by emergency physicians during the resuscitation</td>
<td>12 of the 20 patients had cardiac kinetic activity on US. 8 of these 12 patients had a pericardial effusion noted. 3 patients required immediate pericardiocentesis for cardiac tamponade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandavia et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2001&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center prospective study enrolled 515 patients at high risk for pericardial effusion. Emergency physicians initially performed the echocardiography exam. Cardiologists later reviewed all studies for the presence of pericardial effusion</td>
<td>103 of 515 patients were found to have a pericardial effusion. Emergency physician-performed echocardiography had a sensitivity of 96% (95% CI 90.4–98.9), specificity of 98% (95% CI 95.8–99.1), and overall accuracy of 97.5% (95% CI 95.7–98.7) for the detection of pericardial effusions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.

REFERENCES


41. Silverstein JR, Laffely NH, Rifkin RD. Quantitative estimation of left ventricular ejection fraction from mitral valve E-point to septal separation and comparison to magnetic resonance imaging. *Am J Cardiol.* 2006;97(1):137–140.


Pulmonary Ultrasonography
Feras Khan and Anne-Sophie Beraud

BACKGROUND
Over the past decade, bedside point-of-care ultrasonography, or ultrasound (US), has become an indispensable tool in critical care and emergency medicine. It is an efficient and effective diagnostic aid for myriad conditions and has improved procedure safety in both the emergency department (ED) and intensive care units (ICUs). The American College of Emergency Physicians (ACEP) recommends that all emergency medicine residents train to proficiency in emergency US. Lung US, the subject of this chapter, is fast becoming an integral component of point-of-care US for both intensivists and emergency physicians. First developed in European ICUs, lung US has proven to be highly useful in detecting disease processes including pneumonia, pneumothorax, pleural effusions, and pulmonary edema. With recent advances in technology, point-of-care US can now be performed at bedside with relatively small devices. This allows physicians to make decisions quickly and safely—without having to transport the patient out of a monitored setting—and has helped minimize computed tomography (CT) use and associated patient exposure to ionizing radiation. In 2012, the first evidence-based guidelines for point-of-care lung US were published in order to standardize definitions for a variety of lung pathologies.

PROBE SELECTION, TECHNICAL EQUIPMENT, AND SCANNING TECHNIQUE
Transducer Selection
Lung US can be performed with three types of US transducers: linear (usually used for vascular access or nerve blocks), phased array (“cardiac”), or convex (“abdominal”). Because of its high frequency (7.5 to 10 MHz), the linear probe is preferred for analyzing superficial anatomy such as the pleura as well as individual rib interspaces. The linear probe, however, does not allow deep penetration to visualize deeper structures, such as the lungs themselves; better suited for this are the phased-array (2 to 8 MHz) and the convex probes (3.5 MHz).

Imaging Modalities
The US transducer generates US waves that are reflected back to the transducer. These returning waves generate a signal that is determined by the difference in the acoustic
impedance of the tissues encountered. There are two US modes commonly used for lung imaging. The first, B-mode (brightness mode), generates a 2D image. The second, M-mode (motion mode), displays images in relation to elapsed time (one axis showing the depth of the image-producing interface and the other showing time) (Fig. 7.1). M-mode allows recording of motion of the interface toward and away from the transducer. The use of each mode is discussed in detail in the sections below. When performing a bedside lung US exam, all preset filters should be turned off to allow lung artifacts to appear. The probe indicator points cephalad in all exams.

**Imaging Technique**

Prior to use, both machine and probe should be thoroughly cleaned with disinfectant to limit contamination and nosocomial infection spread. The patient is typically imaged in the supine position. For patients in a critical care setting, it may be difficult to obtain true posterior views. In these patients, a protocol using the anterior and lateral chest walls has been described (Fig. 7.2) that images two interspaces (2nd and 5th) along the midclavicular line and at the midaxillary line. This approach allows the clinician to quickly assess eight lung zones. For a more thorough examination in stable patients, the probe should be advanced longitudinally and transversely along the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th and 5th intercostal interspaces.

**Training Requirements**

No consensus exists regarding the number of supervised US exams needed for a clinician to achieve proficiency in lung US. The ACEP has proposed that 25 to 50 studies be reviewed by a qualified ultrasonographer in order to demonstrate competence in a specific exam (e.g., pulmonary, cardiac).
NORMAL SONOGRAPHIC THORACIC ANATOMY

The lung parenchyma is normally filled with air, which has very low acoustic impedance and is therefore not detected on ultrasonography. Pulmonary disease processes result in changes to the air–fluid interface in the lung. These changes generate unique US patterns, or artifacts, which can help identify a variety of conditions including pleural effusions, pneumothorax, pneumonia, and alveolar–interstitial syndrome (AIS).

Lung Sliding
The lung can be visualized in the intercostal spaces, which delineate US windows between each rib. The parietal pleura lines the thoracic wall, covers the superior surface of the diaphragm, and separates the pleural cavity from the mediastinum. The visceral pleura covers the surface of the lung. The pleural space is a virtual space between the parietal and the visceral pleura.

In the intercostal spaces, the pleural line is situated below the subcutaneous tissue, about 0.5 to 2 cm from the skin depending on chest wall thickness. It is a horizontal and thin structure that appears intensely hyperechoic on US imaging (Fig. 7.3). In normal healthy lungs, US imaging will demonstrate “lung sliding” of parietal pleura against the visceral pleura during the respiration.
Chapter 7 Pulmonary Ultrasonography

A-Lines
“A-lines” are hyperechoic horizontal artifacts seen in healthy lungs and represent repetition artifact generated by the pleural line (Fig. 7.3). Importantly, A-lines can also be seen in patients with pneumothorax as described below. In M-mode, healthy lungs will demonstrate a “seashore” sign (Fig. 7.1). This description captures the “wavelike” pattern produced by normal pleural line movement coupled with the “sandy beach” or granular appearance generated by lung parenchyma.

B-Lines
A “B-line” is a reverberation artifact with the following properties:
1. A vertical comet-tail artifact
2. Arises from the pleural line
3. Well defined
4. Hyperechoic
5. Long (does not fade)
6. Erases A-lines
7. Moves with lung sliding

One or two B-lines may be seen in the dependent lung zones in the normal lungs. A large number of B-lines are pathologic (Fig. 7.4A and B) and will be described below in the AIS section. These artifacts are also called “comet tails.”

CLINICAL CONDITIONS

Pneumothorax
A pneumothorax can be traumatic or nontraumatic in etiology. A large pneumothorax, especially if causing hemodynamic compromise, may require emergent treatment.
Chest radiography (CXR) is the imaging modality most commonly used to evaluate pneumothorax; it has, however, been repeatedly demonstrated to be poorly sensitive (36% to 48%) for this condition.\textsuperscript{10–13} CT remains the gold standard for the diagnosis of pneumothorax, but is time consuming and requires that the patient be transported out of the acute care setting.

Recent studies have demonstrated bedside lung US to have similar sensitivity to CT for the detection of pneumothorax,\textsuperscript{10} making it ideal for the evaluation of hemodynamically unstable or ventilated patients in whom there is concern for lung collapse. A number of lung US findings exist that can help confirm or exclude pneumothorax. The presence of lung sliding has a negative predictive value for pneumothorax of close to 99%.\textsuperscript{14} The lung sliding examination should be performed with the patient in a supine position.

**FIGURE 7.4**

A: B-lines: alveolar–interstitial syndrome. This image shows three B-lines (arrows) in an interspace characteristic of AIS. There is a varying degree of thickness on each B-line. Image used courtesy of Dr. Darrell Sutijono. B: B-lines. This image shows 7 B-lines (arrows). Image used courtesy of Dr. Liz Turner.
position allowing air to rise to the most anterior part of the chest and should be evaluated at several points on the anterior and lateral chest wall. The presence of B-lines also rules out pneumothorax with a negative predictive value of 98% to 100%. If a pneumothorax exists, a “stratosphere” or “bar-code” sign will replace the normal “seashore” sign seen using M-mode. The “stratosphere” sign is caused by air interrupting the normal pleural line reflection (Fig. 7.5). A “lung point,” which represents the interface of normal lung next to an area of pneumothorax (Fig. 7.6A and B), may also be observed and is the most specific indicator for this condition. Lung point is best visualized using M-mode with the probe held in the middle of the interspace transecting the lung—lung sliding will be seen on the part of the pleural line with intact lung and then will disappear in the area of pneumothorax. Finally, the absence of the “lung pulse” has also been described as a sign of pneumothorax. The lung pulse refers to the rhythmic movement of the visceral and parietal pleural in step with the heart rate that is seen in normal healthy lungs. A combination of absent lung sliding and the presence of A-lines results in a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 94% for pneumothorax. Guidelines recommend imaging at least four zones on each lung field to identify these findings.

In trauma, lung US has become a part of the Focused Assessment with Sonography for Trauma (FAST) as described in the extended FAST (E-FAST) protocol. In this study of 225 trauma patients, a trained attending trauma surgeon using a 5- to 10-MHz linear transducer performed all US examinations. The protocol required imaging over the anteromedial chest at the second interspace at the midclavicular line and at the anterolateral chest wall near the 4th or 5th intercostal space at the midaxillary line. The absence of lung sliding and B-lines (comet tails) corresponded to an US diagnosis of pneumothorax. Lung US was found to be more sensitive than CXR alone (48.8% vs. 20.9%) with similar specificities (99.6% and 98.7% respectively). Compared with a composite standard (CXR, chest and abdomen CT, clinical course, and clinical interventions), the sensitivity of E-FAST was 58.9% with a specificity of 99.1%. The low
sensitivity of US in this study was attributed to the high rate of occult pneumothorax or partial pneumothorax. Nevertheless, the study highlights the importance of lung US as an integral part of trauma assessment and the need to incorporate lung US into the FAST protocol (E-FAST). In a 2012 systematic review of eight primarily trauma studies with a total of 1,048 patients, lung US was found to have superior sensitivity to CXR (90.9% vs. 50.2%) but similar specificity (98.2% vs. 99.4%) for detection of pneumothorax.20

**Alveolar–Interstitial Syndrome**

AIS describes a group of conditions—including pulmonary edema, interstitial pneumonia, and pulmonary fibrosis—that demonstrate similar findings on lung US.9 Specifically,
the normal air–fluid interface responsible for the artifacts seen on US imaging is shifted toward the fluid side. Cardiogenic pulmonary edema is the most common source of this change and is characterized on US by the presence of multiple B-lines (Fig. 7.4A and B). B-lines correspond to interlobular septal thickening on CT imaging, which denotes pulmonary vascular congestion. B-lines are thought to be reverberation artifacts produced as the US beam strikes these congested areas.

To identify these findings, the US should be in B-mode, and at least eight lung zones should be imaged. A lung zone is considered “positive” when three or more B-lines are present. Two or more positive zones bilaterally are required to meet the US definition.

**FIGURE 7.7** A: Pneumonia. This image shows a hyperechoic area (arrow) corresponding to an air bronchogram with pneumonia (x). The lung begins to resemble the liver (y) on US, a pattern termed “hepatization.” There is also a pleural effusion (z). Image used courtesy of Dr. Liz Turner. B: Pneumonia. This image shows a hyperechoic area (arrow) that correlates to air bronchograms and pneumonia. The liver (x) and lung (y) are visible. Image used courtesy of Dr. Darrell Sutijono.
of AIS (it is not uncommon to have one or two B-lines in normal patients in dependent lung areas). Bilateral, diffuse B-lines have been demonstrated to have a specificity of 95% and a sensitivity of 97% for the diagnosis of pulmonary edema. In this study, AIS was confirmed by CXR in 86 of 92 patients who had diffuse B-lines in all lung fields. In another study of 300 ED patients presenting with shortness of breath, 77 had radiologic evidence of diffuse AIS detected by lung US with a sensitivity and specificity of 85.7% and 97.7%.

The ability of lung US to predict the presence of pulmonary edema has been compared to extra-vascular lung water (EVLW) calculations by the PiCCO system (Pulse index Contour Continuous Cardiac Output, Pulsion Medical Systems, Germany) and to pulmonary artery catheter (PAC)–derived wedge pressure. Although only 20 patients were enrolled in this study, positive linear correlations were found between a total B-line score and EVLW \( r = 0.42 \) and PAC wedge pressure \( r = 0.48 \). It should be noted that patients with lung disease were excluded from this study and that conditions such as pulmonary fibrosis or acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) can present with B-lines as well.

Lung US has also been used to monitor improvement in patients with varying degrees of pulmonary congestion/edema. In a study of 40 patients undergoing routine dialysis, B-lines were recorded pre- and postdialysis. In 34 out of 40 patients, the number of B-lines underwent statistically significant reduction from predialysis to postdialysis. The study suggests that quantification of B-lines could potentially be used to complement daily patient weights in monitoring improvement in pulmonary congestion/edema. Lung US has also proven useful in measuring B-line improvement in acute decompensated heart failure.

Pneumonia/Lung Consolidation

Pneumonia is a common diagnosis in both ED and ICU patients. Using US, lung consolidations have been described as a subpleural area with tissue-like hypoechoic texture (Fig. 7.7A and B) and can resemble the US appearance of the liver, a pattern called “hepatization.” Other US findings in patients with pneumonia include air bronchograms, comet-tail reverberation artifacts in a localized area, and a vascular pattern within the consolidation. Hyperechoic, linear, tubular artifacts within an isoechoic region suggest atelectasis.

In a prospective study of 65 ICU patients, US was found to have a sensitivity of 90% and a specificity of 98% for pneumonia when compared to alveolar consolidation on CT. It should be noted that the ultrasonographers in this study were highly experienced and performed a thorough lung examination on each patient. In a separate study, lung US was used in 49 patients presenting to an ED with signs and symptoms of pneumonia. All patients received both an US examination and a CXR. If the CXR was negative for pneumonia, and the US positive, a confirmatory CT was performed. Thirty-two out of 49 patients were confirmed to have pneumonia, with US outperforming CXR in diagnostic accuracy, 96.9% versus 75%, respectively. Limitations of the study included its nonblinded design, the small number of patients studied, and the variable experience of the ultrasonographers. Due to the design of the study, false negatives of US may have been missed.
Pleural Effusion

Detection of Pleural Effusion

Lung US is well validated as a tool for the detection of pleural fluid. Using B-mode, the probe is positioned along the mid- to posterior axillary line on the lateral aspect of the chest wall. The diaphragm should be identified as well as the liver (Fig. 7.8). Pleural fluid appears as an anechoic area superior to the diaphragm. The “sinusoid sign,” which demonstrates variation in the interpleural distance with each respiratory cycle, has also been used as an indicator of pleural effusion. A systematic review of four lung US studies, using chest CT as a gold standard, demonstrated US to have a mean sensitivity of 93% and specificity of 96% for detecting pleural effusion.

In trauma patients, lung US has been used to rapidly detect hemothorax. In one study, 61 trauma patients underwent a standard FAST examination with two additional views used to evaluate the thoracic cavity laterally; the sensitivity and specificity of US for hemothorax were 92% and 100%, respectively.

Quantification of Pleural Effusion

The amount of pleural fluid can also be quantified by US. A traditional posteroanterior CXR can identify effusions as small as 175 mL. US has been able to detect as little as 20 mL of pleural fluid. In a study of patients with known pleural effusions, 81 US examinations were performed to quantify amount of pleural fluid. Patients were examined in a supine position with mild trunk elevation of 15 degrees and with the probe placed in the posterior axillary line perpendicular to the body axis. The maximal distance between the visceral and parietal pleural (Sep) in end-expiration was measured, which allowed calculation of the estimated volume (V). The volume estimated by US was compared to the volume of fluid obtained after thoracentesis:

\[ V (\text{mL}) = 20 \times \text{Sep (mm)} \]
A positive correlation was seen with both Sep and V ($r = 0.72$ and $r^2 = 0.52$, respectively). The mean prediction of error of V was $158.4 \pm 160.5$ mL. No complications were noted during US-guided thoracentesis in this study.

Characterization of Pleural Effusion
US may also be able to help identify subtypes of pleural effusion (transudate or exudate). Pleural fluid patterns are characterized as anechoic, complex nonseptated, and complex septated. In a study of 320 patients undergoing both thoracentesis and lung US, transudates were anechoic in appearance (the type of effusion was determined by both chemical analysis of pleural fluid and clinical evaluation (i.e., evaluation of ascites, peripheral edema)). Complex septated or nonseptated effusions were always found to be exudates. At this time, however, US should not be substituted for thoracentesis and definitive chemical evaluation of pleural fluid.

Ultrasound-Guided Thoracentesis
US-guided thoracentesis is both safe and efficient. A study of 67 patients with pleural effusion compared US-guided to blind thoracentesis; the use of US prevented organ puncture in 10% of cases and increased identification of accurate puncture sites by 26%. When performing an US-guided thoracentesis, the clinician should place the patient in a supine position and use a convex probe in the midaxillary line to detect the effusion. Prior to insertion of a needle, relevant anatomic landmarks should also be identified, including the rib space, diaphragm, and depth of effusion. The needle should be directed superior to the rib to avoid the neurovascular bundle.

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome/Acute Lung Injury
Using traditional CXR, ARDS can appear similar to AIS, cardiogenic pulmonary edema, and pulmonary fibrosis. Recently, attempts have been made to identify a lung US pattern unique to ARDS. A recent study compared the lung US findings of 58 patients, in which 18 met criteria for acute lung injury (ALI)/ARDS (based on the American-European Consensus Conference diagnostic criteria) and 40 had acute pulmonary edema. In ALI or ARDS, the lung examination showed areas that were spared of B-lines, while in cardiogenic pulmonary edema, the distribution of B-lines was more diffuse. ALI/ARDS patients also had more posterior lung consolidations with typical air bronchogram findings and a pleural line with reduced “sliding” and thickened and coarser appearance. A recently published guideline for lung US in ARDS lists the following associated findings:

1. Anterior subpleural consolidation
2. Absence or reduced lung sliding
3. Sparred areas of normal parenchyma
4. Pleural line abnormalities
5. Nonhomogenous distribution of B-lines

To date, these findings have not been validated in a prospective study and should not replace the traditional diagnostic approach to APE or ARDS/ALI.
Chapter 7 ▪ Pulmonary Ultrasonography

BEDSIDE LUNG ULTRASOUND IN EMERGENCY (BLUE) PROTOCOL

A recent major study used a lung US-based algorithm (Fig. 7.9) to categorize shortness of breath in patients presenting to the ICU and compared results to final ICU diagnosis. Rare causes or uncertain diagnosis were excluded from the study (<2%). Six lung zones were analyzed for A- or B-lines, lung sliding, and alveolar consolidation. An US of both lower extremities was also performed for deep venous thrombosis.

A predominantly A-line pattern was seen in patients with chronic obstructive lung disease (89% sensitivity and 97% specificity). Multiple anterior diffuse B-lines with lung sliding were seen in patients with pulmonary edema (97% sensitivity and 95% specificity). A normal lung examination and deep venous thrombosis on lower extremity US indicated pulmonary embolism (81% sensitivity and 99% specificity). Lack of lung sliding plus A-lines and a lung point indicated pneumothorax (81% sensitivity and 100% specificity). Anterior and posterior consolidations, anterior asymmetric interstitial patterns, or anterior diffuse B-lines with abolished lung sliding indicated pneumonia (89% sensitivity and 94% specificity). The postero-lateral alveolar and/or pleural syndrome (PLAPs) is an entity seen on US that usually indicates pneumonia and was used in the BLUE protocol algorithm. The postero-lateral segment is found on the lower lateral part of the chest wall and is positive if there is evidence of effusion and areas of consolidation. These patterns correctly identified the final diagnosis in 90.5% of cases. It should be noted that 41 patients were excluded from the study for the following reasons: multiple diagnoses, no final diagnosis, and “rare” causes such as interstitial lung disease or massive pleural effusion.

![Diagram of the BLUE protocol algorithm](image)

Limitations

Although bedside US is easy to perform in most patients, certain scenarios pose challenges. Obese patients with thick chest walls generate suboptimal images and limit artifact formation. Inadequate imaging may also occur in patients with subcutaneous emphysema or chest tubes and in trauma or postsurgical patients with large dressings in place. Adequate training is also essential in allowing a sonographer to recognize findings with confidence.37

CONCLUSION

The use of lung US has increased dramatically since its introduction in the 1980s. Portable US machines permit safe, cost-effective, and rapid detection of a variety of lung pathologies at bedside, while minimizing the need to transport patients away from the critical care setting. Lung US may help patients avoid harmful ionizing radiation exposure associated with repetitive CXR or CT.36 Potential future uses of lung US include predicting successful extubation from the ventilator, evaluating recruitment maneuvers in mechanically ventilated patients, and differentiating ARDS from typical AIS patterns.

| LITERATURE TABLE |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| TRIAL            | DESIGN           | RESULT           |
| Volpicelli et al., Intensive Care Med. 2012 | Consensus recommendations | Definition of lung ultrasound findings |
| Lichtenstein et al., Chest. 2008 | Prospective observational study of 260 ICU patients with acute respiratory failure comparing initial lung US results with final ICU diagnosis | Accurate diagnosis of causes of respiratory failure by ultrasound in 90.5% of cases |
| Lichtenstein et al., Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1997 | Prospective, observational study of lung US in 250 ICU patients, 121 with radiographic evidence of AIS and 129 without radiographic evidence of AIS | Comet-tail artifacts suggestive of AIS; 93.4% sensitivity |
| Kirkpatrick et al., J Trauma. 2004 | Prospective, observational cohort study of EFAST in 225 trauma patients | E-FAST more sensitive than CXR (48.8% vs. 20.9%) in detecting pneumothorax after trauma. Both exams had high specificity (99.6% and 98.7%, respectively) |
| Alrajhi et al., Chest. 2012 | Meta-analysis of 8 of 1,048 patients evaluated for pneumothorax, 884 of whom received both CXR and lung US | Ultrasound is more sensitive than CXR to detect pneumothorax (90.9% vs. 50.2%, respectively). Both were similarly specific (98.2% and 99.4%, respectively) |
| Agricola et al., Chest. 2005 | Prospective, observational study of lung US in 20 patients following cardiac surgery | Comet tails correlate with EVLW \( r = 0.42, p = 0.001 \) and wedge pressure \( r = 0.60, p = 0.0001 \) |
| Noble et al., Chest. 2009 | Prospective, observational study of lung US in 40 patients undergoing hemodialysis | Significant B-line reduction as fluid is removed during dialysis (\( p < 0.001 \)) |
| Mayo et al., Chest. 2009 | Consensus statement | Definition of competence in critical care ultrasonography |
REFERENCES


5. Chan VWS. Ultrasound Imaging for Regional Anesthesia. 2nd ed. Toronto, ON: Toronto Printing Company; 2009.


Acute respiratory failure (ARF) is a life-threatening process that requires rapid identification and treatment by the emergency physician. The causes of ARF are myriad, and its clinical presentation ranges from somnolence and hypopnea to profound tachypnea, tachycardia, and agitation. Appropriate diagnosis and treatment of ARF flow from a sound understanding of pulmonary pathophysiology.

Normal respiratory activity has been described as a functional chain, beginning with the central nervous system (CNS) and ending with the thoracic cage, muscles of respiration, pulmonary parenchyma, and the pulmonary vasculature. A break in any of these links may result in ARF. ARF occurs when the respiratory system is unable to meet the metabolic needs of the tissues. Classically, this clinical state is divided into hypoxemic and hypercapnic respiratory failure.

**HYPOXEMIC RESPIRATORY FAILURE**

Commonly cited causes of hypoxemia include global alveolar hypoventilation, diffusion impairment, ventilation–perfusion mismatch, and shunting. Additionally, hypobaric (high-altitude) conditions, low inspired fraction of oxygen, and desaturated mixed venous blood can also cause hypoxemia.

**Hypoventilation**

Alveolar ventilation is the process by which the lungs deliver oxygen to the pulmonary capillaries and rid them of carbon dioxide. The alveolar gas equation describes the relationship between oxygen and carbon dioxide in the alveolus at a given atmospheric pressure and fraction of inspired oxygen:

\[
PAO_2 = \left[ P_{\text{barometric}} - P_{\text{water vapor}} \right] \times FiO_2 - \left[ PaCO_2 / 0.8 \right]
\]

\(PAO_2 = \) alveolar partial pressure of oxygen, \(PaCO_2 = \) arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide, \(FiO_2 = \) fraction of inspired oxygen
This equation does not imply cause and effect; it is merely a description of the relationship between oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions in the alveolus. For instance, when the CNS is depressed as a result of a toxic or anatomical insult, normal alveolar ventilation may be impaired. In this context, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the alveolus will rise, and the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveolus will fall; the two processes however, are independent from one another—it is the alveolar hypoventilation that links both abnormalities.

The alveolar–arterial, or A–a, gradient is a calculation that provides a means of assessing how well oxygen is moving from the alveoli to the arterial blood:

\[
A-a \text{ gradient } = \frac{\text{PAO}_2 - \text{PaO}_2}{\left(\text{P}_{\text{barometric}} - \text{P}_{\text{water vapor}}\right) \times \text{FiO}_2 - \left[\text{PaCO}_2 / 0.8\right]} - \text{PaO}_2
\]

An elevated A–a gradient (>10 mm Hg) is seen in patients with diffusion defects, ventilation–perfusion mismatch, or shunting. In the setting of hypoventilation, the difference between the alveolar oxygen concentration (as calculated from the alveolar gas equation above) and the measured arterial \(\text{PaO}_2\) is minimal, and therefore the A–a gradient should be normal.

In practice, however, global alveolar hypoventilation is commonly complicated by states that also alter the pulmonary parenchyma (e.g., aspiration, compressive atelectasis). The administration of supplemental oxygen, a common intervention in these patients, can also cause ventilation–perfusion anomalies (See below) and nitrogen atelectasis.\(^2\,^3\) These two factors can raise the A–a gradient, thereby diminishing the clinical utility of this calculation.

**Diffusion Impairment**

From the alveolus to the erythrocyte, a molecule of oxygen must pass through an alveolar epithelial cell, a small interstitial space, the pulmonary capillary endothelium and then into the erythrocyte. Any disease or disorder that disrupts this passive diffusion process is known as diffusion impairment. Diffusion impairment may contribute to—but rarely drives—hypoxemia. Normally, the concentration of oxygen in the alveolus and an erythrocyte equilibrate one-third of the way through the pulmonary capillary bed (carbon dioxide does so much more rapidly).\(^2\,^3\) This rapid equilibration ensures that even when capillary transit time decreases substantially (e.g., during exercise) there will be no compromise of gas exchange. However, hypoxemia will be amplified when there is an effective decrease in alveolar–capillary surface area (e.g., severe emphysema or severe interstitial lung disease such as pulmonary fibrosis) in conjunction with increased pulmonary blood flow. When this pathologic state exists, the oxygen tension in the erythrocyte is unable to equilibrate with alveolar oxygen tension prior to the erythrocyte's passage through the pulmonary capillary bed.

**Ventilation–Perfusion (V/Q) Mismatch**

V/Q mismatch is the most common and important mechanism of hypoxemia encountered by the emergency physician.\(^1\) Alveolar ventilation (\(Va\)) is determined by three
variables: (1) respiratory rate (RR), (2) tidal volume (Vt), and (3) dead space fraction (Vd/Vt), as related in the following equation:

\[
Va = [RR \times Vt] \times [1 - (Vd / Vt)]
\]

(Va = alveolar ventilation, RR = respiratory rate, Vd = dead space ventilation, Vt = tidal volume)

The product of the RR and Vt is known as the minute ventilation (Mve). If alveolar ventilation to a unit of lung exceeds its blood flow (Q), the Va/Q ratio exceeds 1. Such Va/Q mismatch produces alveolar and capillary gas tensions similar to air (i.e., high oxygen and low carbon dioxide). While one would expect such lung units to be beneficial, they are, in fact, inefficient. Lung units with Va/Q ratios > 1 yield a high partial pressure of oxygen in the pulmonary capillary; however, the arterial oxygen content draining from these units does not dramatically increase. Recall that the total oxygen content of blood is primarily determined by hemoglobin concentration and saturation, and that only a small portion of blood oxygen content is composed of dissolved oxygen. Because the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve (Fig. 8.1) is largely flat once the PaO₂ is much >60 mm Hg, large increases in PaO₂ do not greatly increase oxygen saturation.

Unlike the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, the carbon dioxide dissociation curve is linear. Therefore, decrements in the partial pressure of carbon dioxide in high Va/Q lung units result in decreased carbon dioxide concentration, and therefore content, in pulmonary capillary blood. This is why normal, or low, carbon dioxide levels frequently accompany hypoxemia; the small increase in pH caused by carbon dioxide retention is a potent stimulus to augment alveolar ventilation and lower the PaCO₂.

Dead space is an area of the lung that is ventilated but not perfused. There is a normal amount of physiologic dead space in all lungs as the conducting airways do not participate in gas exchange. However, alveoli that are not perfused are considered pathologic dead space. These two types of dead space are referred to as anatomical and physiologic dead space, respectively. Dead space (both anatomical and physiologic)
is, by mathematical definition, a high Va/Q unit. However, rather than being a function of increased ventilation, dead space is the result of absent pulmonary blood flow (i.e., a Va/Q ratio of infinity). These portions of the lung behave differently from lung units with Va/Q ratios >1 (i.e., high Va/Q ratios). Examination of Equation 8.3 (above) reveals that dead space and alveolar ventilation (VA) are inversely proportional. Therefore, increased dead space results in a functionally low Va/Q physiology. As discussed below, the consequence of low Va/Q physiology is both hypoxemia and hypercapnia.

When alveolar ventilation (VA) falls in relation to perfusion (i.e., a low Va/Q), alveolar gas approaches the composition of mixed venous blood, resulting in a low partial pressure of oxygen and a high partial pressure of carbon dioxide. Consequently, these lung units result in low oxygen- and high carbon dioxide–containing blood. Because blood flow from low Va/Q lung units is by definition proportionately large relative to blood flow from normal or high Va/Q lung units, these lung units contribute disproportionately to the composite arterial blood gas values.

**Shunt**

Shunt is the most severe form of low Va/Q physiology (i.e., a Va/Q ratio of zero); shunt occurs when mixed venous blood passes into the left heart without participating in gas exchange. Shunt may have cardiac (e.g., patent foramen ovale) and/or pulmonary (e.g., severe pneumonia and acute respiratory distress syndrome [ARDS]) etiologies. The result of shunt is that mixed venous blood returns to the left heart without being exposed to alveolar gas. The more shunt a lung has, the more mixed venous blood oxygen content will contribute to arterial oxygen content. While it is commonly taught that shunt physiology does not respond to supplemental oxygen, this is only partly true. Oxygen-refractory hypoxemia due to shunt only begins to occur when the shunt fraction of the lung approaches 40% to 50%. Notably, acute lung injury and ARDS typically occur when the shunt fraction approaches 20% to 30%.

Arterial oxygen saturation is determined by the mixed venous oxygen saturation—that is, the blood entering the lungs from the right ventricle—and the degree to which the lungs can match ventilation with perfusion. If the blood returning to the lungs is disproportionately desaturated—as a result of increased oxygen consumption in the tissues, low cardiac output, or low hemoglobin levels—then the effects of Va/Q mismatch, and in particular shunt physiology, will be magnified.

**HYPERCAPNIC RESPIRATORY FAILURE**

Hypercapnic respiratory failure is a result of impaired alveolar ventilation (VA). As described in Equation 8.3, alveolar ventilation is determined by three variables: (1) RR, (2) tidal volume, and (3) dead space fraction. It follows that hypercapnia can result from impaired central drive to respiration, neuromuscular weakness, chest wall deformities, lung disease that increases the resistive or elastic load on the lungs, and increased dead space. Many of the aforementioned disease states are also associated with Va/Q mismatch.
While it is intuitive how CNS depression and neuromuscular weakness lead to hypoventilation and hypercapnia, it is less obvious how diseases with increased pulmonary elastic and resistive loads like chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), asthma, and chronic heart failure (CHF) result in hypercapnia, as patients with these issues typically present with dramatically increased RRs. The important physiologic anomaly in these disease states is rapid shallow breathing. The shallow tidal volume (Vt) serves, despite the tachypnea, to both decrease minute ventilation (Mve) and increase the dead space fraction of ventilation. Because anatomical dead space (Vd) stays relatively constant, a precipitous drop in Vt acts to increase dead space fraction (Vd/Vt). As described above, true dead space ventilation prevents the lung from removing carbon dioxide, and while dead space is technically a high Va/Q ratio, its physiology mirrors that of low Va/Q units with hypoxemia and hypercapnia as a consequence.

The differential diagnosis of arterial hypercapnia should also include increased carbon dioxide production. Arterial carbon dioxide content is directly proportional to the tissue production of carbon dioxide and indirectly proportional to alveolar ventilation (Va).

\[ \text{PaCO}_2 = \frac{\text{VCO}_2}{\text{Va}} \]

Or

\[ \text{PaCO}_2 = \frac{\text{VCO}_2}{[\text{RR} \times \text{Vt}] \times [1 - (\text{Vd} / \text{Vt})]} \]

\( \text{VCO}_2 = \) carbon dioxide production

While increased production rarely is the sole cause of hypercapnia, it can be an important contributor, especially when work of breathing is high. With extremis, the muscles of respiration can increase total body carbon dioxide production by fourfold. Fever also increases CO2 production by approximately 10% per degree celsius.

AN ALTERNATIVE DIAGNOSTIC APPROACH TO ARF

The traditional classification of respiratory failure as either hypoxemic or hypercapnic does provide some indication of underlying etiology of failure, and can help direct initial ventilator settings. Given the overlap between these etiologies discussed above, and the fact that Va/Q mismatch is by far the most common cause of ARF, a more physiologically intuitive and clinically useful approach to ARF may be to overlay the common insults to alveolar ventilation and perfusion onto the framework of the respiratory chain. To this end, a simplified scheme (Table 8.1) thus divides ARF into neuromuscular abnormalities and parenchymal abnormalities which include airway injury or dysfunction, alveolar injury, and pulmonary vascular injury.

BASICS OF MECHANICAL VENTILATION

Mastering the basic nomenclature of mechanical ventilation is challenging, and is complicated by inconsistent naming among manufacturers and by novel ventilation modes available with newer devices. This section outlines the basics of mechanical ventilation. Ventilation strategies for specific disease entities are elaborated upon in following chapters.
Modes of Invasive Mechanical Ventilation

Invasive ventilation entails the application of positive pressure via an endotracheal tube. The breath type delivered to the patient defines a mode of ventilation. Breath types, in turn, are defined by three variables: what triggers (initiates), limits (maintains), and cycles (terminates) a breath. While there are three variables, it is typically how a breath is cycled that categorizes the ventilation mode. Volume-cycled breaths are terminated when a preset volume has been achieved. Pressure-cycled breaths are terminated when a preset time has been reached (Fig. 8.2). While the later are technically time-cycled breaths, the common clinical parlance of ‘pressure-cycled’ is used here.

The choice between using volume-cycled and pressure-cycled modes of ventilation depends mostly on what the clinician desires to control. When a patient needs a guaranteed Mve (e.g., a patient with severe acid–base disturbances), it is prudent to choose a volume-cycled mode of ventilation because Mve is controlled directly. However, when airway pressure needs to be strictly managed (e.g., in a patient at risk of ventilator-induced lung injury and/or high airway pressures) then a pressure-cycled mode of mechanical ventilation should be instituted.

Importantly, when a clinician initiates and monitors ventilation that is volume cycled, there will be varying peak and plateau pressures depending on airway resistance and thoracic compliance, respectively. Conversely, Vt—and therefore Mve—will vary when pressure is the predetermined variable. A more detailed discussion of thoracic compliance and the relationship between airway pressure and Vt is presented below.

Volume-Cycled Ventilation

The two most common modes of volume-cycled ventilation are volume assist-control ventilation (AC; also known simply as assist-control), and synchronized
intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV). AC is defined by delivery of a set Vt for each breath, regardless of whether the breath is initiated by the ventilator or the patient. In AC mode, the patient receives, at a minimum, the ventilation rate and the tidal volume set on the ventilator. If a patient has an intrinsic respiratory drive to breathe at a rate faster than the one set on the mechanical ventilator in AC mode, the patient will still receive the full machine-delivered tidal volume for every breath initiated. Thus, AC ventilation mode involves assured delivery of a set and consistent Vt for any net RR, regardless of whether the patient or the machine is initiating the breath.

In contrast to AC, the central ventilation feature of SIMV is the delivery of the preset Vt to the patient only at the rate set on the ventilator. Breaths initiated by the patient over the set machine ventilation rate are not assisted with a preset Vt, but instead follow a Vt that is generated independently by the patient. Preset inspiratory pressure assistance—or pressure support—is an added feature that helps the patient to achieve a physiologically reasonable Vt in the absence of a set Vt for breaths initiated by the patient above and beyond the set RR.

Both AC and SIMV guarantee a minimum Mve, because the clinician directly sets both RR and Vt. An important operational difference between AC and SIMV is that AC will allow full Vt support for a patient breathing over the preset ventilation rate; in SIMV, if the preset ventilator rate is not sufficient for the patient’s ventilator requirements, the patient will not receive an adequate Mve. This is particularly important when
initiating ventilation, as the true physiologic needs of the patient may not yet be fully understood. Thus, in initial ventilator mode setup, including in an emergency department (ED), there may be an advantage in choosing AC. For the initial treatment of sedated and paralyzed ED patients, there will be no difference in the achieved minute ventilation.

**Pressure-Cycled Ventilation**
In contrast to SIMV and AC, pressure-cycled modes of ventilation use airway pressure as the independent (clinician-controlled) variable. In these modes, therefore, $V_t$ (and consequently $M_{ve}$) becomes the dependent variable and is a function of the preset pressure, airway resistance, and thoracic compliance. Pressure control ventilation (PCV) is analogous to volume assist-control, in that the ventilator can deliver both assisted (patient-triggered) and controlled (machine-triggered) breaths; however, they are pressure (not volume) cycled. As noted above, in PCV, both assisted and controlled breaths are time-cycled. Therefore, in these modes, direct control can be maintained over inspiratory and expiratory time (i.e., the I:E ratio). PCV is typically utilized when the clinician desires direct control over airway pressure at the expense of guaranteed volume.

**Pressure Support Ventilation**
In this mode, the ventilator provides a preset pressure throughout spontaneous patient inspiration, leaving the patient to control inspiratory and expiratory times as well as achieved $V_t$. Given the dependence of pressure support ventilation (PSV) on patient cooperation and effort, respiratory support provided by this mode can be altered substantially by patient sedation, respiratory muscular weakness, or clinical features such as pain or agitation. PSV is commonly used in the ICU prior to extubation (i.e., as a “weaning” mode), and so is unlikely to be encountered in the ED.

**Noninvasive Positive Pressure Ventilation**
Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) entails the application of positive pressure to the patient via a tight-fitting mask over the nose or mouth and nose. Essentially, there are two modes of NIPPV—bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) and continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP). As the name suggests, BiPAP requires that the clinician set two pressure variables: the inspiratory positive airway pressure (IPAP) and the expiratory positive airway pressure (EPAP). The change in pressure in BiPAP—referred to as the “delta”—is the IPAP minus the EPAP, because both pressures are referenced to zero (atmospheric) pressure. The difference between inspiratory and expiratory pressure is the driving pressure to support alveolar ventilation and CO2 clearance. Note that the EPAP is equivalent to the positive end-expiratory pressure, or PEEP, value used with invasive modes of ventilation, and is defined as the set pressure above atmospheric pressure that is delivered throughout expiration. BiPAP can be thought of as the noninvasive equivalent to PSV. One important difference between PSV and BiPAP is the terminology used to define the pressure parameters. In PSV, the inspiratory pressure is delivered above a baseline PEEP. In BiPAP, the IPAP is always delivered above atmospheric pressure, not above EPAP.
CPAP, by contrast, requires only one pressure preset. A single pressure is delivered throughout the respiratory cycle; that is, the IPAP and EPAP are the same. CPAP mainly benefits oxygenation by stenting open collapsed airways, thereby reducing the number of low Va/Q lung units. Because BiPAP has preset inspiratory and expiratory pressures, BiPAP increases the Vt and therefore aids in ventilation (CO2 elimination) as well as oxygenation.

**AIRWAY PRESSURES DURING MECHANICAL VENTILATION**

Two important physiologic aspects of mechanical ventilator support are airway pressures and PEEP. The peak airway pressure (also known as the peak inspiratory pressure or PIP) measured by the ventilator is the pressure required to overcome both the thoracic (lung and chest wall) compliance and the airway resistance (Equation 8.5). Compliance describes the change in volume with respect to a change in pressure in a deformable object. For example, a poorly compliant thorax has a small change in volume for a large change in pressure. Airway resistance, analogous to resistance in blood vessels, describes the mechanical factors that limit airflow. There are approximately 23 generations, or branching points, of airways from the trachea to the alveoli, and the resistance to airflow is highly dependent upon the cumulative cross-sectional area of each generation in parallel. While the trachea has a larger diameter than a single terminal bronchiole, the trachea has a much smaller diameter than the entire cross-sectional diameter of all the terminal bronchioles in parallel. Hence, the trachea contributes more to airway resistance than do the terminal bronchioles in the healthy lung.

\[
PPIP = (\frac{Vt}{Ct}) + (Raw \times Q)
\]

*(PIP = peak inspiratory pressure, Vt = tidal volume, Ct = thoracic compliance, Raw = airway resistance, Q = airflow)*

Note that Equation 8.5 divides PIP into two components—a static component that is determined by the Vt and the compliance of the thorax, and a dynamic component that is determined by the flow of gas and the composite resistance of the lungs’ airways. Consequently, an increase in airway resistance or a decrease in thoracic compliance will increase peak airway pressure. Distinguishing between the two requires a cessation of airflow at end-inspiration. In the absence of airflow (i.e., Q is zero), the resistive component is removed from the equation, and the pressure that remains is related only to the thoracic compliance; this pressure is referred to as the plateau pressure.

When evaluating a patient with high PIPs, a large pressure drop between the peak and plateau pressure suggests an excess of airway resistance. Conversely, if there is little difference between the peak and plateau pressures, there is likely a poorly compliant lung or chest wall (Fig. 8.3). Normal peak and plateau values are approximately 20 and 10 cm H2O, respectively. An inspiratory hold maneuver is best carried out in a volume-cycled mode of ventilation rather than a pressure-cycled one. This is because in volume-cycled ventilation, pressure is the dependent variable.
PEEP may be applied to a patient supported with either invasive or noninvasive ventilation. It is often applied to some small degree under the guise of replacing the “physiologic PEEP,” which is reportedly lost when the endotracheal tube separates the vocal cords. While there is little evidence that physiologic PEEP exists, PEEP can be applied therapeutically to aid in oxygenation. Typical PEEP levels range between 5 and 15 cm H₂O. PEEP promotes oxygenation by preventing alveolar and small airway closure at end-expiration. As previously noted, multiple mechanisms may result in low Va/Q lung units. For example, increased airway resistance due to inflammation, secretions and airway edema; physical compression secondary to habitus; and excessively compliant airways may all lead to low alveolar ventilation relative to perfusion. The judicious application of PEEP preserves patent airways and maintains the lung on a mechanically favorable portion of its compliance curve.

While PEEP has beneficial applications, it can be detrimental to both the heart and lungs. PEEP has a profound effect on mean airway pressure and can exert a multitude of effects on the right heart, pulmonary vasculature, and left heart. Specifically, excessive PEEP can impair venous return, which in turn has the potential to diminish cardiac output and compromise oxygen delivery to the tissues. Excessive PEEP can also lead to alveolar rupture.

The time constant of a lung unit describes the length of time required for inflation and deflation of a ventilated portion of the lung. The time constant is directly proportional to the resistance and compliance of the lung unit. Hence, if the resistance or the compliance of a lung unit increases, the time it takes to deflate increases. This is particularly important in patients with emphysema, as both resistance and compliance may be dramatically elevated. If lung units fail to deflate before a subsequent breath is taken (or delivered by a ventilator), retained volume—and consequently pressure—can build within portions of the lung. This phenomenon is called auto-PEEP or intrinsic PEEP. The risk of auto-PEEP becomes greatest in patients with airway obstruction and tachypnea. In order to detect auto-PEEP, the clinician must first anticipate its existence. On the ventilator, the presence of an expiratory
flow curve that does not reach zero flow prior to a subsequent breath is suggestive of auto-PEEP (Fig. 8.4). Since the pressure at end-expiration is the sum total of both extrinsic (machine delivered) and intrinsic PEEP, an end-expiratory breath hold maneuver is another way to reveal pressure present in the airway. Just as with extrinsic PEEP, excessive auto-PEEP can diminish venous return to the right heart and negatively impact cardiac output. Treatment of auto-PEEP that results in hemodynamic compromise includes briefly removing the patient from the ventilator to allow for lung and chest decompression. For ongoing correction of intrinsic PEEP, sedating the patient and/or lowering the set RR and decreasing the inspiratory time (and thus prolonging the expiratory time at any given ventilation rate) will all help avoid or reverse intrinsic PEEP.

### BASIC STRATEGIES OF MECHANICAL VENTILATION IN RESPIRATORY FAILURE

Indications for mechanical ventilation can be difficult to define for all clinical conditions. Often, it is a gestalt decision based upon the clinical status of the patient in combination with objective measures such as pulse oximetry and arterial blood gas sampling (Table 8.2). When neurologic insult impairs global alveolar ventilation, the resultant hypoxemia and hypercapnia are usually easily managed with invasive mechanical ventilation. A volume-cycled mode such as AC or SIMV is preferred, because the clinician

---

**FIGURE 8.4 Auto-PEEP**

- Alveolus
  - 0 cm H₂O
  - +5 cm H₂O
  - +10 cm H₂O

- Airflow
  - Flow does not return to zero prior to inspiration

- Alveolar Pressure
  - Auto-PEEP
can directly control Mve while monitoring airway pressure. In the absence of severe pulmonary parenchymal abnormalities, minimal PEEP is typically required. NIPPV should be avoided, as the unconscious or obtunded patient is at high risk for gastric distention and aspiration without definitive control of the airway.

When ventilating a patient with severe obstructive lung disease, the clinician must be wary of auto-PEEP and dynamic hyperinflation. It can be difficult to balance the need for increased Mve for the treatment of these patients’ hypercapnia with the potential for producing auto-PEEP. Usually a volume-cycled mode (A/C or SIMV) is chosen for control of Mve, coupled with short inspiratory times to allow for adequate expiration. Often, sedation is required to synchronize the patient with the ventilator. Permissive hypercapnia (allowance for a modest supranormal increase in PaCO₂) may be needed to allow for complete emptying of the lungs at a lower RR. Externally applied PEEP can be useful in emphysema, a condition in which increased airway compliance makes the alveoli susceptible to collapse during positive pressure ventilation (See Chapter 9). Furthermore, when auto-PEEP exists, extrinsic PEEP may decrease the pressure gradient required to trigger the ventilator. While adding extrinsic PEEP to aid a patient with excessive intrinsic PEEP may seem counterintuitive, the rationale is that ventilators use small deflections in airway pressure as the signal to begin a subsequent breath (pressure triggered). Ventilators may also use changes in flow and time as other variables to trigger breaths. The drop in pressure that must be achieved to trigger a breath is referenced to the preset (extrinsic) PEEP. If there is superimposed intrinsic PEEP, then the patient must create a pressure drop that includes all of the intrinsic PEEP plus the trigger value below the extrinsic PEEP. Increasing the extrinsic PEEP will narrow this pressure differential and ease breath triggering.11

When managing alveolar and/or interstitial edema, it is recommended to adopt a low-lung-volume ventilation strategy, especially if ARDS is the presumed cause of ARF. In this paradigm, plateau pressures of <30 cm H₂O are desirable. If a volume-cycled mode of ventilation is chosen, peak and plateau pressures should be closely monitored. This hazard can be avoided by placing the patient on a pressure-cycled mode (e.g., PCV), which allows the clinician to select the delivered pressure. The trade-off of selecting a pressure-cycled mode, however, is that close observation of Vt and Mve (the dependent variables) is required. As ventilators become more sophisticated, modes of ventilation that deliver safe levels of pressure to obtain a preset volume (e.g., pressure-regulated volume control) are being adopted. However, the only mode of ventilation known to improve mortality in ARDS is volume control, as this was used in the ARDSNet trial.2
The use of NIPPV for COPD exacerbations has been demonstrated to decrease mortality and intubation rates, and improved long-term outcomes.\textsuperscript{13} Evidence for the application of NIPPV in acute asthma is less robust.\textsuperscript{14} While there is evidence to support the use of NIPPV in cardiogenic pulmonary edema to improve dyspnea, gas exchange, and perhaps prevent intubation,\textsuperscript{15,16} the data for ARDS are less definitive.\textsuperscript{17,18}

**CONCLUSION**

Acute respiratory failure is a life-threatening process that requires rapid identification and treatment. The decision to initiate mechanical ventilation is always best made by the emergency physician at bedside, however a nuanced understanding of the different etiologies of respiratory failure and optimal corresponding modes of ventilatory support described in this chapter can help ensure patient safety and improve outcomes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ARDS Network, <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2000\textsuperscript{12}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agarwal et al., <em>Respir Care</em>. 2010\textsuperscript{17}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhan et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2012\textsuperscript{18}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exacerbations of Obstructive Airways Disease</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram et al., <em>Cochrane Database Syst Rev</em>. 2004\textsuperscript{11}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soroksky et al., <em>Chest</em>. 2004\textsuperscript{14}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
REFERENCES


Ventilation Strategies in COPD, Asthma, and Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension

Jey K. Chung, Paul K. Mohabir, and Stephen Ruoss

BACKGROUND

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), asthma, and pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) are diseases that are commonly encountered in an emergency department (ED) setting. It is estimated that 1.5 million patients visit the ED in the United States each year for COPD exacerbations, 1.75 million for acute asthma, and 200,000 for PAH.1–3 The appropriate initiation and management of emergent ventilatory support in these patients requires a nuanced understanding of the pathophysiology of these diseases.

DISEASE PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Severe airflow obstruction is typically encountered in asthma and COPD, the latter of which includes both chronic bronchitis and emphysema. In both asthma and chronic bronchitis, the central pathologic events include inflammation, increased mucus (due to both hypersecretion and inflammation), and airway caliber reduction due to the combination of these processes. Airways in asthma and chronic bronchitis also suffer from decreased compliance, or compromised airway caliber expansion during spontaneous inspiration or positive pressure ventilation. The consequence of these pathologic effects is a limitation of airflow during both inspiration and expiration, both of which are important considerations when initiating mechanical ventilation in these patients.

The pathology of emphysema is different, even while the resulting expiratory airflow limitation can be similarly extreme. Emphysema is characterized by a loss of parenchymal lung elastic tissue, and thus a loss of the normal elastic recoil forces that hold open the smaller conducting airways. The result is that conducting airways tend to collapse with normal expiration; in marked contrast to airways in asthma, conducting airways in emphysema have greater compliance, and this airflow obstruction can magnify with increased expiratory effort during spontaneous breathing. Appreciating these distinct disease processes is critically important when considering mechanical ventilation for these patients.
Another important pathologic feature present in all patients with acute airflow obstruction is an increase in the work of breathing because of the greater airway resistance in these diseases; left untreated, a sustained increase in work of breathing can quickly lead to respiratory muscle fatigue and failure.

PAH has diverse pathologic causes, but a number of characteristics are common to all etiologies of this disease. These include an already-increased pulmonary arterial resistance and an associated increase in right ventricular afterload. Increases in pulmonary arterial resistance are seen with hypoxemia, hypercapnia (with magnified response to the combination of both), as well as with significant increases or decreases in lung volume because of lung parenchymal compression and overdistension of the pulmonary vascular beds, respectively.

**VENTILATION STRATEGIES IN COPD AND ASTHMA**

Patients who present with exacerbations of obstructive airway disease have an acute or chronic increase in airway resistance and an associated increase in work of breathing. This process heightens the risk of respiratory muscle fatigue and decompensation, which can compound already inadequate ventilation and increase the risk of respiratory failure. The application of assisted ventilation, by either noninvasive or invasive modes, can help reduce a patient’s work of breathing. The underlying increased airway resistance persists, however, and can be challenging to manage. Comprehensive therapy therefore combines support of respiratory mechanics (assistance with ventilation as well as reduction of work of breathing) with administration of bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory medications.

**Noninvasive Ventilation Support**

Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) can be an appropriate first-line adjunct to medical therapy in the management of obstructive airway disease. When properly applied, NIPPV can preclude the need for invasive mechanical ventilation and its associated risks of trauma (direct, mechanical trauma or barotrauma), infection, adverse effects of sedation, increased length of hospital stay, and difficulty or failure to wean from the ventilator.4

The benefits of NIPPV assistance in respiratory distress from COPD are significant and well documented. A 1995 multicenter randomized control trial (RCT) of 85 patients with COPD compared NIPPV with standard treatment and demonstrated a decreased rate of intubation (26% vs. 74%), frequency of complications (16% vs. 48%), length of hospital stay (23 vs. 35 days), and inpatient mortality rates (9% vs. 29%).5 A MEDLINE and EMBASE review of similarly designed RCTs from 1968 to 2006 confirmed a consistent significant reduction in the risk of intubation (65%), in-hospital mortality (55%), and length of hospitalization (1.9 days) when NIPPV was used for acute exacerbation of COPD.6 A 2003 Cochrane systemic review meta-analysis of eight RCTs evaluating the use of NIPPV as an adjunct to usual medical care in COPD exacerbations similarly demonstrated a lower mortality risk (RR 0.41), shorter hospital stays (−3.24 days), and greater improvements at 1 hour in pH (+0.03), PaCO₂ (−0.04 kPa), and respiratory rate (−3.08 breaths per minute).7 While the benefits of noninvasive ventilation are well established in COPD, its efficacy is less well established, and its use more controversial, in the setting of status asthmaticus.8
The decision to undertake a trial of noninvasive ventilation rather than proceed directly to intubation and mechanical ventilation is largely based on clinical judgment. Studies show that the majority of patients with asthma, even those with some degree of hypercapnia, can be successfully managed noninvasively.9,10 Similarly, in an RCT of 49 patients who failed standard ED medical therapy for COPD exacerbations, the use of NIPPV as a rescue therapy averted the need for intubation in 48%. Factors supporting the decision to initiate invasive ventilation in both COPD and asthma include refractory hypoxemia, severe hypercapnia (PaCO₂ > 60 mm Hg), significant acidosis (pH < 7.25), and the inability to tolerate noninvasive ventilation, whether due to unsustainable dyspnea with increased respiratory frequency or altered mental status. Certainly, failure of a noninvasive ventilation trial or cardiorespiratory arrest calls for immediate intubation.11,12

**Mechanical Ventilation Support**

If the decision is made to initiate invasive ventilatory support, either assist–control ventilation or synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation, using volume or pressure cycling, may be used; no one mode of ventilation has been found consistently superior in the treatment of these conditions. There are, however, a number of ventilator parameters that should be carefully selected and continuously evaluated when managing these patients.

The initiation of mechanical ventilation involves a substantial shift in the physiology of ventilation, with multiple, immediately relevant effects. The principal physiologic differences for the clinician to remember are that:

- Positive pressure (with or without patient assistance) is now being used to achieve lung inflation.
- Inspiratory peak pressures from positive pressure ventilation will necessarily be increased in the context of the high airflow resistance caused by airway inflammation and narrowing and/or dynamic collapse.
- The time needed for complete exhalation will be substantially increased due to the marked airflow obstruction, and if adequate (prolonged) expiratory times are not allowed by the ventilator parameters, lung gas volumes will increase (“air trapping” and “hyperinflation”) and intrapulmonary and intrathoracic pressures will rise (“induced, or intrinsic, positive end-expiratory pressure [PEEP]”).

By far, the most potentially harmful of these adverse physiologic effects is the production of higher intrathoracic pressures and induced PEEP, which can result in both pulmonary and cardiac compromise. Pulmonary effects include barotrauma (i.e., pneumothorax, interstitial emphysema with pneumomediastinum) and parenchymal ventilator–induced lung injury. In addition, increased intrathoracic pressure increases thoracic volume, which results in chest wall distension (and a less compliant chest wall) and a greater ventilator workload for any patient assisting with mechanical ventilation (i.e., taking spontaneous breaths in addition to the set mechanical respiratory rate). This increased work of breathing can raise metabolic demand, further destabilizing an already compromised patient. Cardiac effects include reduced biventricular preload and increased pulmonary artery resistance (increased RV afterload), with resulting diminished cardiac output. Given this array of potential issues, the goal when initiating mechanical ventilation in patients with severe airflow obstruction is to employ techniques and parameters that avoid or at least limit pulmonary and cardiac compromise.
Minimization of induced intrathoracic air trapping and intrinsic PEEP is achieved by using either a shorter inspiratory time (which, for a fixed respiratory rate, will produce a lengthened I:E ratio) or a lower respiratory rate (which, with a fixed inspiratory time, will also produce a lengthened I:E ratio). As inspiratory time is shortened, ventilator inspiratory flow rate will necessarily be increased in volume-cycle ventilation modes to achieve the specified tidal volume, often into the range of 80–100 L/min.

As a working example of the adjustment of ventilator parameters to achieve a lengthened I:E ratio and lessened barotrauma risk, consider the following example in volume-cycled ventilation:

A. Initial ventilator settings:
   - Ventilator mode: volume cycle assist control ventilation
   - Ventilator rate: 20 (i.e., a 3-second breath cycle)
   - Inspiratory time: 1 second (with resulting I:E ratio of 1:2)

B. Adjusted ventilator settings to avoid air trapping:
   - Ventilator mode: volume cycle assist control ventilation
   - Ventilator rate: 20
   - Inspiratory time: 0.5 second (with resulting I:E ratio now increased to 1:5)

While different ventilator manufacturers use different default parameters to adjust the I:E ratio (i.e., either adjustment of the I:E ratio directly, or conversely, adjustment of inspiratory time to alter the dependent I:E ratio), the important points are the following: a) it is imperative to recognize the need for a lengthened I:E ratio for optimal control of ventilation in severe obstructive diseases, and b) careful monitoring and appropriate adjustment of the I:E ratio will help to avoid increments in intrinsic PEEP and resulting cardiopulmonary function compromise. Peak inspiratory pressures will necessarily increase with a shorter inspiration but will not contribute to patient injury.

It is important to understand the role of increased peak inspiratory pressures seen in severe airflow obstruction. While high inspiratory peak pressures have historically been thought to produce an increased risk for barotrauma, this has been proven false. To avoid air trapping and hyperinflation—by far the more harmful consequences of mechanical ventilation in these patients—ventilator settings that are invariably associated with higher peak inspiratory pressures (e.g., shorter inspiratory times with higher ventilator inspiratory flow rates) are reasonable and should be tolerated by the treating physician. In addition, these same physiological considerations also underlie the strong recommendation to not use pressure-control ventilation modes in acute severe airflow obstruction. Using pressure-limited ventilation modes in severe obstruction will produce very small, and likely much more variable tidal volumes and resulting minute ventilation, and thus should be avoided, particularly when higher peak pressures of volume-cycle modes are known to be tolerated well.

In contrast to peak pressures, high plateau pressures are known to be harmful and to be associated with barotrauma. While few studies have looked specifically at patients with COPD or asthma, lower plateau pressures (<30 cm H₂O) have been shown to decrease the incidence of ALI and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) in mechanically ventilated patients. As in circumstances of acute lung injury, the delivery
of smaller tidal volumes may also be necessary to achieve target plateau pressures and
avoid traumatic complications in patients with COPD or asthma. A tidal volume of
6 to 8 mL/kg of ideal body weight, with further adjustments as needed, is a reason-
able initial strategy. Lower tidal volumes, however, produce lower minute ventilation,
which can be a physiologic confounder in the already hypercapnic patient. Increasing
set ventilatory rates can counter the effect on MV of lower tidal volumes but will, in
turn, accelerate air trapping. To minimize air trapping, a set respiratory rate of 10 to
14 breaths per minute is preferred. Significant air trapping is indicated by increasing
levels of intrinsic PEEP and should be closely monitored and minimized where pos-
sible. Careful consideration of physiology and available ventilator support options
is necessary to balance acceptable ventilation with the associated risks of mechanical
ventilation in these patients; some degree of “permissive hypercapnia” —that is, allow-
ing for an abnormal rise in PCO₂ to enable minimization of delivered tidal volumes
and breaths per minute—is often required to avoid exacerbation of lung injury and
barotrauma.

While the addition of PEEP is known to contribute to lung hyperinflation in
patients with obstructive airway disease, there are certain circumstances in which
added PEEP can help relieve airflow obstruction. This is particularly true in patients in
whom airflow obstruction and respiratory failure are associated with increased airway
compliance (e.g., emphysema) as opposed to decreased compliance (e.g., acute asthma
flare or bronchiolitis). When intrinsic PEEP is present in these patients, the applica-
tion of added PEEP can provide a “stenting” effect to maintain airway caliber during
exhalation, which can improve overall airflow obstruction, assist the patient’s abil-
ity to trigger subsequent breaths, and minimize the associated hypercapnia, increased
work of breathing, and hemodynamic compromise. If this technique is used, additional
extrinsic PEEP should be set to a level that is approximately 75% of the intrinsic
PEEP.

The optimal fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO₂) provided to the mechanically venti-
lated patient with COPD or asthma has not been clearly determined. While low pO₂
(>60) and Hgb saturations (>90%) may be acceptable in ARDS, the avoidance of addi-
tional cardiopulmonary compromise from hypoxemia may require a higher FiO₂ in this
setting.

Helium can be mixed with oxygen to form a gas with a lower density than ambient
air or than ambient air mixed with oxygen. Termed “heliox,” and generally available
in helium:oxygen ratios of 80:20 or 70:30, this gas can decrease airway resistance by
increasing the proportion of laminar to turbulent flow in the airways, thereby improv-
ing airflow and decreasing a patient’s work of breathing. Heliox can be delivered either
noninvasively or with mechanical ventilation. It should be noted, however, that there
are limited data supporting the routine use of heliox in obstructive airway diseases.
While there are minimal adverse effects associated with the use of heliox, the physician
should be aware that ventilator adjustments might be necessary to correct for changes
in flow of this less dense gas. The use of heliox mixtures can produce erroneous volume
delivery measurements in some mechanical ventilators, with a resulting need to use
pressure-cycle rather than volume-cycle ventilation modes. It is important to determine
the specific needs of the ventilators used and to make any necessary adjustments, before
using heliox mixtures for ventilator support.
VENTILATION STRATEGIES IN PULMONARY ARTERIAL HYPERTENSION

PAH is a significant contributor to right ventricular dysfunction.22–24 The challenges to mechanical ventilation in patients with PAH are significant, as positive pressure ventilation can exert a destabilizing hemodynamic impact on an already stressed right heart. Positive pressure ventilation increases intrathoracic pressures, including right atrial pressures, which in turn decreases venous return to the right ventricle. This drop in right ventricular preload decreases right ventricular output, contributing to ventricular dysfunction. Compounding this process, as lung volumes increase with positive pressure ventilation and larger tidal volumes, alveolar distention leads to compression of the associated vessels, including the inferior vena cava. The resultant increase in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) is reflected as an increase in right ventricular afterload, which exacerbates existing PAH and tricuspid regurgitation, and contributes to further right ventricular dysfunction.25–27

Both hypoxemia and hypercapnia/acidemia independently increase PVR, and the combination of the two has a greater effect on PVR than either alone. The choice of ventilation parameters thus needs to optimize oxygenation and ventilation as much as can be safely achieved without adding greater stress on RV function.

Initial ventilation management strategies for patients with PAH should focus on limiting intrathoracic pressures. High applied PEEP and large tidal volumes should be avoided if possible. Lower tidal volumes (4 to 6 mL/kg ideal body weight) will help limit plateau pressures while still allowing for adequate oxygenation and ventilation. Similarly, lower levels of applied PEEP, typically to remain <15 cm H2O, will limit the detrimental effects of high plateau and intrathoracic pressures. Careful monitoring is required to avoid the problem of mechanical ventilation-induced increased intrinsic PEEP, as can be produced in severe airflow obstruction (e.g., asthma and COPD). Oxygen saturation should be maintained at or above 92%. When employing a low tidal volume ventilation approach, a higher set respiratory rate can help minimize hypercapnia and acidemia; this is unlikely to create physiologic problems so long as there is no concurrent severe airflow obstruction present. If airflow obstruction is present concurrently with PAH, then the ventilator management guidelines outlined earlier in this chapter will also need to be employed.28

CONCLUSION

Optimal support of severe COPD and asthma requires recognition of the central and critically important role of increased airway resistance in these diseases. NIPPV can assist significantly in reducing the work of breathing and helping to alleviate respiratory failure. Intubation and mechanical ventilation are typically necessary when progressive respiratory muscle fatigue and/or worsening airflow obstruction produce hypercapnic ventilatory decompensation. Critical parameters to consider for achieving optimal mechanical ventilation support in these patients include

- Shorter inspiratory times and prolonged expiratory times, with resulting longer I:E ratios
- Acceptance of higher peak inspiratory airway pressures to achieve shortened inspiratory times
- Reduced tidal volumes to avoid higher inspiratory plateau pressures
Avoidance of increases in trapped gas, hyperinflation, and the induction of increased intrinsic PEEP

Application of PEEP in select patients with emphysema to assist in the relief of airflow obstruction resulting from dynamic expiratory airway compression

Mechanical ventilator support of patients with significant PAH requires taking steps to minimize physiologic stressors that can increase pulmonary arterial resistance. These include

Avoidance of hypercapnia and hypoxemia
Avoidance of high tidal volumes, as these can contribute to increased PVR

While these diseases can be associated with complex clinical conditions, their optimal ventilatory management is based on well-understood pathophysiology. The considerations and approaches outlined in this chapter provide a basis for the initial aspects of ventilatory care, with the goal of improving outcomes in ED and ICU care (Table 9.1).

**TABLE 9.1** Ventilation Strategies for COPD, Asthma, and Pulmonary Hypertension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NIPPV for COPD and Asthma</th>
<th>Mechanical Ventilation Strategies for COPD and Asthma</th>
<th>Mechanical Ventilation Strategies for Pulmonary Hypertension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appropriate for initial supportive therapy</td>
<td>• Initial tidal volumes 6–8 mL/kg ideal body weight</td>
<td>• Initial tidal volumes 6–6 mL/kg ideal body weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Indications for immediate intubation include refractory hypoxemia, severe hypercapnia (PaCO₂ &gt; 60 mm Hg), significant acidosis (pH &lt; 7.25), inability to tolerate noninvasive ventilation, and cardiorespiratory arrest</td>
<td>• Limit plateau pressures (&lt;30 cm H₂O)</td>
<td>• Limit use of higher PEEP levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Decrease I/E ratio to allow for complete exhalation</td>
<td>• Limit plateau pressures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Increase inspiratory flow rates (80–100 L/min) to decrease inspiratory time</td>
<td>• Avoid hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and acidemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Monitor closely for air trapping with increased respiratory rates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Accept mild hypercapnia and acidemia (keep pH &gt; 7.2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Titrated FiO₂ to maintain PaO₂ &gt; 60 mm Hg (SaO₂ &gt; 90%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In patients with emphysema, careful application of PEEP to ~75% of intrinsic PEEP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brochard et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 1995⁵</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 85 patients with COPD comparing NIPPV with standard therapy</td>
<td>NIPPV significantly reduced the need for endotracheal intubation (26% vs. 74%, ( p &lt; 0.001 )), frequency of complications (16% vs. 46%, ( p = 0.001 )), mean hospital stays (23 vs. 35 d, ( p = 0.003 )), and in-hospital mortality (9% vs. 29%, ( p = 0.02 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quon et al., <em>Chest.</em> 2008⁶</td>
<td>MEDLINE and EMBASE search of RCT from 1968 to 2006 that evaluated the advantages of specific medical therapies as well as the use of NIPPV for acute exacerbations of COPD</td>
<td>Compared to standard therapy, NIPPV significantly reduced the risk of intubation by 65% (95% CI, 0.32–0.92), in-hospital mortality by 55% (95% CI, 0.08–0.62), and length of hospitalization by 1.9 d (95% CI, 0.0–3.9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lightowler et al., BMJ. 2003</td>
<td>Systematic review of eight RCTs comparing NIPPV plus usual medical care with medical care alone in patients with respiratory failure secondary COPD exacerbation</td>
<td>Using NIPPV as an adjunct to usual care was associated with a lower mortality (relative risk 0.41, 95% CI, 0.26–0.64), and greater improvements at 1 h in pH (mean difference 0.03), PaCO₂ (mean difference of –0.04 kPa), and respiratory rate (mean difference –3.08 breaths per minute). NIPPV was also associated with shorter hospital stays (mean difference –3.24 d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gupta et al., Respir Care. 2010</td>
<td>RCT of 53 patients with asthma comparing NIPPV with standard treatment</td>
<td>NIPPV significantly reduced ICU length of stays (10 vs. 24 h, p = 0.01) and hospital length of stays (38 vs. 54 h, p = 0.01) as well as decreased doses of bronchodilators; however, there were no significant differences in FEV₁s, respiratory rates, pHs, P/F ratios, PaCO₂s, or mortality rates. A nonsignificant trend toward ≥ 50% improvement in FEV₁ values at 1, 2, and 4 h after treatment initiation was noted in the NIPPV arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conti et al., Intensive Care Med. 2002</td>
<td>RCT of 49 patients with COPD who failed standard medical treatment in the ED setting comparing NIPPV with conventional ventilation via endotracheal intubation</td>
<td>Forty-eight percent of patients in the NIPPV arm avoided intubation. Overall, the two groups had similar lengths of ICU stay, days on mechanical ventilation, and overall complications. 1-y follow-up showed significantly fewer hospital readmissions (65% vs. 100%) or need for de novo oxygen supplementation (0% vs. 36%) in the NIPPV arm. There was also a trend toward increased survival (54% vs. 74%) in the NIPPV arm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.

REFERENCES


Acute Pulmonary Edema

Nina Patel Shah and Margaret J. Neff

BACKGROUND
No single test can distinguish cardiogenic from non-cardiogenic pulmonary edema. A clear understanding of the physiology of each disease process, however, enables the clinician to better integrate patient history, exam, and diagnostic tests into a cohesive management strategy. This chapter outlines a systematic approach to the identification of the most common etiologies of acute pulmonary edema. Management details are addressed separately (see Chapters 12 and 14).

ETIOLOGY OF PULMONARY EDEMA
Noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, often referred to as increased permeability pulmonary edema, is caused by an increase in the vascular permeability of the lung—specifically the epithelial barrier—with subsequent movement of protein-rich fluid into the lung interstitium. Increased vascular permeability is commonly associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and can be due to a myriad of pathologies including pneumonia, sepsis, ingestions, and trauma associated with large-volume transfusions. It is also the disease process associated with neurogenic and high-altitude pulmonary edema.

Cardiogenic pulmonary edema results when increased left ventricular end-diastolic and left atrial pressures elevate hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary capillaries, leading to transmission of protein-poor edema fluid across the lung endothelium and into the alveoli. Alveolar edema reduces diffusion capacity, leading to hypoxia and dyspnea. The physiologic stress of the dyspnea results in a catecholamine surge, which produces tachycardia and increased afterload that can, in turn, further augment left-sided pulmonary pressures and exacerbate the edema. Cardiogenic pulmonary edema can result from a variety of pathologies, including acute decompensated heart failure, mitral or aortic valve dysfunction, tachyarrhythmias, and renovascular hypertension.

CARDIOGENIC PULMONARY EDEMA
Acute decompensated heart failure accounts for more than 650,000 emergency department (ED) visits in the United States per year. By itself, acute heart failure is associated with a 5% mortality rate; this number rises to 12% to 15% when the failure produces pulmonary edema. Acute decompensated heart failure can result from impaired systolic
or diastolic function. Impaired left ventricle (LV) systolic function is associated with coronary artery disease, hypertension, valvular heart disease, viral myocarditis, and dilated cardiomyopathies, as well as with toxins and metabolic disorders such as hypothyroidism. Impaired LV systolic function results in decreased cardiac output, which increases pulmonary capillary pressure and activates the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system; this, in turn, triggers sodium and fluid retention. In diastolic heart failure, the LV becomes less compliant, leading to coronary ischemia (since the coronary arteries fill during diastole), arrhythmias (especially atrial fibrillation), reduced ventricular filling, and increased end-diastolic pressure.

Valvular abnormalities, particularly stenosis of the mitral and aortic valves, are common culprits in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. Mitral stenosis, a known complication of rheumatic heart disease, causes an atrial obstruction that leads to pulmonary capillary congestion. Although mitral stenosis generally develops in a chronic manner, stresses such as tachycardia and decreased diastolic filling can lead to acute increases in hydrostatic pressure. Aortic valve stenosis limits LV outflow, resulting in a similar upstream increase in hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary capillaries.

Renal artery stenosis is a less common etiology for cardiogenic pulmonary edema. It causes long-standing hypertension, leading to diastolic dysfunction as well as chronic physiologic activation of the renin–angiotensin system with resulting increases in sodium and water retention.

Of the tachyarrhythmias associated with acute pulmonary edema, atrial fibrillation is the most common. In a study of more than 200 consecutive elderly patients presenting with acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema, approximately 36% had an arrhythmia; 24% were in rapid atrial fibrillation, causing an elevation in end-diastolic pressure and subsequent drop in cardiac output. Ventricular arrhythmias can also account for acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema, especially when associated with myocardial ischemia.

NONCARDIOGENIC PULMONARY EDEMA

The functional definition of noncardiogenic edema is the presence of increased vascular permeability, resulting in protein-rich fluid leaking into the pulmonary interstitium and air spaces. It is most commonly associated with ARDS, defined as acute bilateral pulmonary edema in the absence of heart failure or other causes of hydrostatic edema. With the advent of a therapeutic strategy for ARDS—namely, low tidal volume ventilation—prompt recognition and treatment of this condition are essential. A predisposing risk factor is not a diagnostic criterion for ARDS; in fact, 20% of diagnosed cases of ARDS have no identifiable risk factor. The most commonly associated conditions are trauma and sepsis; others include massive transfusion, aspiration, inhalation injury, and pancreatitis.

Other etiologies of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema likely to be encountered by the emergency physician include neurogenic edema, opiate toxicity, and high-altitude pulmonary edema. Neurogenic pulmonary edema can be a consequence of seizures, blunt or penetrating head injuries, and cerebral, especially subarachnoid, hemorrhage. Treatment of neurogenic, nonhydrostatic pulmonary edema—thought to be due to catecholamine excess—consists of supportive treatment and management of the underlying brain injury. Opiate toxicity—from narcotics including street drugs (e.g., heroin), hospital-prescribed methadone, intravenous narcotics (e.g., a bolus of fentanyl), and
even the narcotic antagonist naloxone—can also precipitate noncardiogenic pulmonary edema; the exact mechanism in this process is, however, unclear. Lastly, high-altitude pulmonary edema can result from rapid ascent to high altitudes. In this case, profound hypoxia leads to pulmonary vasoconstriction, causing capillary leak permeability edema; the primary treatment strategy is descent and supplemental oxygen (see Chapter 54).

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

The diagnosis of pulmonary edema is achieved via patient history and physical exam, chest radiograph, ultrasound, chemistries, and biomarker tests. A cardiogenic etiology is suggested by a history of hypertension, heart failure, aortic or mitral valve disease, or coronary artery disease or its accompanying disease states (e.g., diabetes, hyperlipidemia, obesity). A patient with this history may exhibit findings suggestive of elevated left ventricular end-diastolic pressure, including an S3 gallop, which has a high specificity (90% to 97%) but low sensitivity (9% to 51%) for a reduced ejection fraction. In addition, the patient may have cool extremities and preferential vasoconstriction resulting from compromised cardiac output. Other physical signs are less reliable indicators of etiology, as they can result from multiple noncardiogenic processes. For example, lower extremity edema can be due to chronic kidney or liver disease, and findings of inspiratory crackles and rhonchi on examination of the lung—while consistent with the finding of pulmonary edema—can also result from aspiration of gastric contents, sepsis, trauma, or recent blood transfusion.

Imaging modalities are useful in the workup of acute pulmonary edema, but often cannot be relied upon to establish etiology. The chest radiograph, almost universally used in the initial workup of dyspnea, can reveal findings highly specific for pulmonary edema—such as the characteristic patterns of cephalization (by which upper lobe vessels are recruited to carry more blood when lower lobe vessels are compressed by increased hydrostatic pressure), interstitial edema, and alveolar edema. However, these findings cannot be used to establish etiology. Importantly, in almost 20% of patients with clinically significant heart failure, chest radiograph will show no evidence of pulmonary edema; this is likely because lung fluid must increase 30% before becoming evident radiographically. Vascular pedicle width (VPW) has also been used to help distinguish between cardiogenic and noncardiogenic causes of pulmonary edema, but its sensitivity and specificity (71% and 66%, respectively) are inadequate for independent use. The electrocardiogram (EKG) can also be useful in the initial workup; patients with clinically significant heart failure from various etiologies rarely present with a normal EKG. EKG findings commonly associated with heart failure, as discussed above, include tachycardia (the natural response of the heart to preserve cardiac output in the setting of impaired stroke volume), arrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation, and myocardial infarctions. Finally, a pulmonary artery wedge pressure of $\leq 18$ mmHg—measured using a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC)—has traditionally been part of the definition of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema. Wedge pressure has since been disproved as a useful marker and has fallen out of favor as diagnostic tools less invasive than the PAC have become available.

In the past decade, bedside, or point-of-care, ultrasound has increasingly been used to evaluate the lungs for various insults, including pulmonary edema, pneumothorax,
and pleural effusion. The finding of at least three to six bilateral “B-lines” (vertical lines that extend from the pleural surface and obliterate the A-lines that occur horizontally as reflections of the pleura) has been demonstrated to be up to 95% specific for pulmonary edema and correlates with the radiographic finding of alveolar–interstitial syndrome—a condition most commonly associated with cardiogenic pulmonary edema20–22 (Fig. 10.1). Some caution is advised in the interpretation of these findings, however, as B-lines in clusters can be found in dependent lung zones in up to 28% of normal patients and may be limited or absent in patients with milder forms of pulmonary edema.21–23 Bedside ultrasound to evaluate cardiac function and assess intravascular volume is also increasingly used by the critical care community.24 The combination of LV and right ventricle (RV) assessment, when coupled with an assessment of inferior vena cava size and respiratory variation, can help include or exclude volume overload and heart failure as a likely cause of the pulmonary edema (see Chapters 6 and 7).

Biomarkers, such as B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), are also useful in determining the etiology of acute pulmonary edema and can help prompt early implementation of targeted interventions, such as diuretics and vasodilators for cardiogenic edema or lung-protective ventilation strategy for nonhydrostatic ARDS.25 A recent study evaluated the utility of BNP in distinguishing cardiogenic from noncardiogenic pulmonary edema and found that a BNP level of 100 pg/mL or less was highly specific for noncardiogenic pulmonary edema in ED patients, with a negative predictive value (NPV) for heart failure of >90%.26 Similarly, a BNP level >500 pg/mL was strongly suggestive of heart failure ([positive predictive value] PPV > 90%).27

Direct analysis of pleural fluid using thoracentesis, although unlikely to be used in a busy ED, is another classic test for distinguishing cardiogenic and noncardiogenic etiology.28 A pleural fluid/serum protein concentration ratio >0.65 has been shown to be over 80% sensitive and specific for noncardiogenic edema in intubated patients being evaluated for ARDS.
CONCLUSION

There is no one test that determines the cause or detects the presence of acute pulmonary edema. A detailed history and physical exam followed by diagnostic testing, including chest radiography, BNP, and ultrasound (cardiac and lung), can help differentiate the cause of acute edema and guide appropriate treatment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knudsen et al., <em>Am J Med</em>. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice et al., <em>Crit Care</em>. 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volpicelli et al., <em>Am J Emerg Med</em>. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levitt et al., <em>Crit Care</em>. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware et al., <em>Eur Respir J</em>. 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; NPV, negative predictive value; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES

BACKGROUND

In an autopsy series of hospital deaths, pulmonary embolism (PE) was found in approximately 15% of the cases and—after excluding incidental PE—to be a primary or contributing cause of death in 3.4% to 8.9% of cases.1-5 In only 30% of this group had there been an antemortem suspicion or diagnosis of PE, a statistic that fueled the argument that PE is an underdiagnosed disease.3-6 Conversely, another study, done after the introduction of multidetector row computed tomographic pulmonary angiography (MDCTPA) in 1998, pointed to the possible overdiagnosis of PE.7 No significant change in the incidence of PE was reported between 1993 and 1998 (from 58.8 to 62.3 per 1,00,000; annual percentage change [APC] 0.5%). Between 1998 and 2006, when the use of MDCTPA increased 7- to 13-fold,8-11 an 81% increase in incidence of PE was reported (from 62.1 to 112.3 per 1,00,000; APC 7.1%).7 Despite this improved detection of PE, reduction in PE-associated mortality has been modest,7 raising concern that we are diagnosing and treating (and sometimes overdiagnosing/overtreating) patients with low-risk PE and an intrinsically low mortality rate, while underdiagnosing and/or undertreating patients with high-risk PE. This hypothesis is supported by the findings in the Emergency Medicine Pulmonary Embolism in the Real World Registry (EMPEROR).12 In the analysis of 1,880 emergency department (ED) patients with confirmed PE (88% diagnosed with CTPA), the all-cause mortality rate at 30 days was only 5.4%.12 Although only 3% of the registry had a systolic blood pressure (SBP) <90 mm Hg at presentation, 30-day mortality of this subgroup was much higher than those with SBP >90 (14.0% vs. 1.8%).13 Furthermore, only 15.5% (9/58) of this high-risk subgroup received reperfusion therapy (systemic thrombolytic therapy or embolectomy).13 The review of data from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample also shows underutilization of reperfusion therapy among PE patients with shock or ventilator dependence (30%, 1.2%, and 0.3% for systemic thrombolytic therapy, surgical embolectomy, and catheter embolectomy, respectively). The review also reports higher case fatality rate attributable to PE not treated versus treated with systemic thrombolytic therapy (42% vs. 8.4%).14 To improve the mortality outcome of this disease, there needs to be an improvement in the care of patients in the high-risk PE subgroups. This chapter focuses on the diagnostic approach and management of unstable patients with suspected and confirmed PE in the ED. A discussion of the diagnosis and management of PE in stable patients may be found elsewhere.15-18
CLASSIFICATION OF ACUTE PULMONARY EMBOLISM

One of the hallmarks of PE is its wide spectrum of clinical presentation. The mortality rate of PE ranges from approximately 1% for low-risk PE to 65% for massive PE with cardiac arrest.\textsuperscript{19–22} Classification of PE into different risk subgroups is important for appropriate prognostication, treatment selection, and disposition. Classification of PE based solely on the degree of clot burden fails to account for the patient’s underlying cardiopulmonary reserve or physiologic response against the clot. In fact, anatomically massive PE—defined by an angiographic obstruction of >50% or obstruction of two lobar arteries—is rarely associated with shock and accounts for only 50% of fatal PE;\textsuperscript{8} in patients with saddle emboli, only 8% to 14% are reported to have sustained hypotension.\textsuperscript{21,24} Right ventricular (RV) failure and associated hemodynamic compromise, on the other hand, reflect both embolism size as well as underlying cardiopulmonary status and serve as a better indicator of clinical outcome.\textsuperscript{6,25–27} In 2011, the American Heart Association (AHA) proposed classifying PE into three groups based on the patient’s physiologic response to the embolus: massive, submassive, and low-risk PE.\textsuperscript{28} The European Society of Cardiology (ESC) guidelines use the terms high-risk, intermediate-risk, and low-risk PE.\textsuperscript{15}

Massive PE is defined as an acute PE accompanied by any of the following:

- Systolic blood pressure < 90 mm Hg for at least 15 minutes or requiring inotropic support without alternative cause of hypotension, such as arrhythmia, hypovolemia, sepsis, or left ventricular dysfunction
- Pulselessness
- Persistent bradycardia with heart rate < 40 bpm with signs of shock

ESC guidelines include a drop of SBP > 40 mm Hg over 15 minutes in this category.\textsuperscript{15,22}

Submassive PE is defined as an acute PE without hypotension with any of the following:

- Myocardial necrosis
  - Troponin I > 0.4 ng/mL or troponin T > 0.1 ng/mL
- RV dysfunction
  - RV systolic dysfunction or dilation (apical four-chamber RV diameter divided by LV diameter > 0.9) on echocardiography
  - RV dilation on CT (four-chamber RV diameter divided by LV diameter > 0.9)
  - Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) > 90 pg/mL
  - N-terminal pro-BNP > 500 pg/mL
  - Electrocardiographic (ECG) changes (new complete or incomplete right bundle branch block, anteroseptal ST elevation or depression, or anteroseptal T-wave inversion)

Low-risk PE encompasses all other patients with PE not included in these first two categories.

In large registries, massive PE accounts for <5% of patients with acute PE,\textsuperscript{12,29} but it is associated with a high mortality rate. The International Cooperative Pulmonary Embolism Registry (ICOPER) reported 90-day mortality rates of nonmassive and massive PE to be 15.1% and 58.3%, respectively.\textsuperscript{29} The Management Strategy and
Prognosis of Pulmonary Embolism Registry (MAPPET) reported an in-hospital mortality rate of 8.1% for submassive PE, 15% for massive PE meeting hypotension criteria without signs of shock or vasopressor use, 25% for massive PE with signs of shock or requiring use of vasopressors, and 65% in patients requiring cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). A conceptual guide to the triage of PE patients by clinical severity subgroups is shown in Figure 11.1. The determination of which low-risk PE patients may be treated as an outpatient is outside the scope of this chapter.

MASSIVE PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Pathophysiology
The relative utility of various therapies for massive PE, including inotropic and vasopressor drugs, has yet to be assessed in a robust trial. However, a rational management strategy can be guided by an understanding of the pathophysiology of cardiovascular compromise in these patients (Fig. 11.2).

Acute PE produces an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) through not only mechanical obstruction but also pulmonary artery vasoconstriction from hypoxia, neural reflexes, and humoral factors. This sudden increase in PVR is poorly tolerated by the right ventricle (RV), which cannot generate mean pulmonary artery pressures (PAPs) of ≥40 mm Hg. The increase in RV afterload results in a proportional decrease in RV stroke volume (RVSV) as well as RV dilation. The decrease in

**FIGURE 11.1** Triage concept of acute pulmonary embolism: Three PE risk subgroups and potential disposition site. PE, pulmonary embolism; ICU, Intensive Care Unit.
RVSV compromises left ventricle (LV) preload and, thus, LV stroke volume (LVSV), which—once a patient’s compensatory sympathetic tachycardia and increased systemic vascular resistance (SVR) are no longer sufficient—eventually results in systemic arterial hypotension.

The accompanying RV dilation/increased RV end-diastolic volume (RVEDV) further complicates this process in several ways: (1) It produces significant tricuspid regurgitation (TR), which results in increased RV preload.\(^{34}\) A volume-overloaded RV will eventually take residence on the descending portion of the Frank-Starling curve, further decreasing RVSV.\(^{34-39}\) (2) It causes a shift of the interventricular septum toward the left ventricle, as well as an increase in pericardial constraint; both of these effects result in a drop of LV preload and thus a drop in LVSV.\(^{36-39}\) (3) It causes an elevation in RV end-diastolic pressure (RVEDP), which results in an increase in RV wall stress (RV wall stress = RV radius \times RVEDP) and an associated decrease in RV coronary perfusion pressure (RVCPP) (RVCPP = Mean arterial pressure − RVEDP).\(^{6}\) This increase in RV wall stress and decrease in RVCPP will produce higher RV oxygen demand and lower oxygen supply, respectively. These changes—particularly in the context of...

**FIGURE 11.2** Pathophysiology of pulmonary embolism. Large arrows indicate how patients with massive PE can continue to deteriorate without a recurrent PE. PE, pulmonary embolism; RV, right ventricular; RVEDV, right ventricular end-diastolic volume; RVEDP, right ventricular end-diastolic pressure; O\(_2\), oxygen; TR, tricuspid regurgitation; LV, left ventricle; RVSV, right ventricular stroke volume; SV, stroke volume; RVCPP, right ventricular coronary perfusion pressure; MAP, mean arterial pressure.
systemic hypotension—can easily precipitate RV ischemia or infarction.\textsuperscript{40–43} Figure 11.2 demonstrates this vicious cycle, which explains how patients with massive PE can continue to deteriorate without a recurrent PE.

**Considerations during Patient Stabilization**

Untreated patients with massive PE can further decompensate through a loss of physiologic compensation, recurrent PE, and/or in response to interventions. Two-thirds of patients with a fatal PE die within the first hour of presentation.\textsuperscript{6} Careful stabilization, rapid diagnostic efforts, and appropriate treatment of suspected massive PE therefore need to take place simultaneously. The concept of a golden hour should be applied to these patients just as with patients with major trauma, ST elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), and acute stroke.\textsuperscript{6} Understanding the physiology of massive PE as described above illuminates several key points that are important in stabilization of such patients in the ED:

- Excessive intravenous (IV) fluid in patients with massive PE suffering from RV dilation and failure can further compromise cardiac output by worsening of RV ischemia and increasing septal bowing toward the LV.\textsuperscript{44–46} An initial 500-mL IV fluid bolus is reasonable, but if hemodynamic improvement is not observed, use of vasopressors should not be delayed. This is in stark contrast to the majority of hypotensive patients in the ED who typically require aggressive fluid resuscitation, including those with nonmassive PE but hemodynamic instability caused by sepsis and/or hypovolemia. Clinical impression and early bedside transthoracic echocardiogram (TTE) (see Diagnostic Approach to Suspected Massive PE) are therefore important determinants of the early resuscitative pathway.

- Vasopressor therapy should be considered early in massive PE in order to maintain RV CVP and minimize RV ischemia and infarction. There are no human trials data to establish superiority of one vasopressor over another in massive PE. In a canine PE model with relative hypotension, both norepinephrine and phenylephrine showed restoration of hemodynamics, but only the norepinephrine group showed improved RV function, presumably through its beta-1 properties.\textsuperscript{47} Dopamine is known to have a higher tachyarrhythmia risk compared to norepinephrine for the treatment of patients with shock,\textsuperscript{48} and such arrhythmia is poorly tolerated in patients with acute right ventricular failure.\textsuperscript{35,49} Epinephrine has a theoretical benefit for its combined property of positive inotropy and vasoconstriction, but clinical evidence on its use is limited.\textsuperscript{50} Therefore, norepinephrine seems to be a reasonable vasopressor of choice for massive PE, with epinephrine as a possible alternative. The risk of vasopressor infusion through a peripheral IV should be weighed against the risks of delay in blood pressure restoration and of increased bleeding from a central line insertion site (if thrombolytic agents are to be used).

- The inotropic agent dobutamine has been shown to improve cardiac output in PE patients with evidence of cardiogenic shock without profound hypotension in a small ICU study.\textsuperscript{51} However, in massive PE with significant hemodynamic compromise, dobutamine should be used cautiously, as it can worsen hypotension through systemic vasodilation and may necessitate the concurrent use of norepinephrine.\textsuperscript{35}
Providing adequate oxygen promptly reduces PAP and improves cardiac output in patients with pulmonary hypertension.\textsuperscript{35,52} Orotracheal intubation, however, poses a threat to patients with massive PE, as it removes the compensatory sympathetic tone and can exacerbate systemic hypotension.\textsuperscript{6} If intubation is necessary, vasopressor therapy should be titrated to maintain adequate mean arterial pressure (MAP) (i.e., $\geq 65$ mm Hg), and induction agents known to cause systemic vasodilation, such as propofol, should be avoided. Care should be taken to minimize hypoxia, prolonged hypercarbia, and worsening of acidosis, all of which may increase PVR.\textsuperscript{53–55} Unfortunately, despite these precautionary measures, a patient may still decompensate following intubation. A retrospective chart review of 52 normotensive and non-intubated patients requiring emergent pulmonary embolectomy showed 19% rate of hemodynamic collapse (refractory to fluid, inotrope, or vasopressor administration and requiring emergent cardiopulmonary bypass [CPB]) after receiving induction of general anesthesia for intubation.\textsuperscript{56} The rate of hemodynamic collapse following emergency intubation for massive PE patients in the ED may be even higher. Although there are no data for the use of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NIPPV) in massive PE, carefully selected patients may benefit from the use of short-term NIPPV as a bridge to definitive therapies, including administration of thrombolytic agents.

Even after successful intubation, positive-pressure mechanical ventilation can produce substantial destabilizing cardiovascular effects, including a decrease in venous return and an increase in PVR, resulting in further RV decompensation and subsequent hypotension.\textsuperscript{6} It is thought that lung hyperinflation along with excessive positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) can significantly reduce RV systolic function and cardiac output.\textsuperscript{57} A low tidal volume (6 mL/kg ideal body weight) with plateau pressure goal below 30 cm H$_2$O should be used in massive PE,\textsuperscript{15} since this strategy seems to provide both lung and RV protection in acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)\textsuperscript{59} with lower incidence of acute cor pulmonale.\textsuperscript{59}

### Diagnostic Evaluation

Massive PE poses unique challenges for the emergency physician: time constraints, physiology that is unforgiving in response to common stabilizing measures, and diagnostic uncertainty where clinical instability may preclude or delay confirmatory diagnostic studies. A step-by-step diagnostic approach to suspected massive PE is proposed below:

**Step 1.** Suspecting massive PE among hypotensive patients:

Massive PE should be considered in all hypotensive patients, especially with suggestive symptoms. In the MAPPET study, which included both massive and submassive PE, acute onset of symptoms (<48 hours), dyspnea, and syncope were reported in 70%, 96%, and 35% of patients, respectively.\textsuperscript{22} In the subgroup analysis of massive PE patients in the ICOPER study, reported symptoms included dyspnea (81%), chest pain (40%), and syncope (39%).\textsuperscript{60}

**Step 2.** Transthoracic echocardiogram:

TTE is a noninvasive and easily repeatable bedside procedure that can be performed by the emergency physician without interfering with ongoing stabilizing interventions.
In cases of massive PE, TTE may demonstrate RV dilation and hypokinesis, septal shift, and tricuspid regurgitation (TR). While the absence of these echocardiographic findings does not rule out PE (sensitivity 60% to 70%), it effectively eliminates PE as a cause of hemodynamic instability and encourages a search for alternative explanations of a patient’s hypotension. The presence of such TTE findings should change the urgency of a confirmatory PE study and justifies the initiation of stabilizing maneuvers discussed above. Finally, TTE will identify emboli in transit in 4% to 18% of patients with acute PE and can help identify other causes of shock, including cardiac tamponade, aortic dissection, hypovolemia, LV dysfunction, and valvular insufficiency (see Chapter 6).

**Step 3:** Confirmatory studies for massive PE:

Pending a confirmatory study, therapeutic anticoagulation with intravenous unfractionated heparin (UFH) should be started (in the absence of a drug contraindication) for all patients in whom there is high or intermediate suspicion of PE. The standard dose of UFH for the treatment of PE is an 80 unit/kg IV bolus followed by 18 unit/kg/min.

Given its widespread availability, diagnostic accuracy, and short study time, MDCTPA is the study of choice for confirmation of massive PE. Because of the frequent finding of proximal or central pulmonary circulation clot in massive PE, MDCTPA is usually able to confirm the diagnosis. Even in patients with renal insufficiency, the risk of contrast-induced nephropathy is likely outweighed by the risk of delay in the diagnosis and treatment.

Although its availability in the ED may be limited, transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) should be considered in cases in which a patient has an IV contrast allergy or is hemodynamically too unstable to be transported to CT. In patients with suspected PE noted to have RV dysfunction on TTE, TEE has been shown to have a sensitivity of 80% to 96.7% and specificity of 84% to 100% for massive PE (by detection of proximal clots).

Ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) studies require a prolonged departure from the ED and have limited utility in a patient with massive PE. Similarly, lower extremity Doppler ultrasound, while increasing the likelihood of PE diagnosis if positive, neither confirms nor excludes a diagnosis of massive PE.

A confirmatory diagnosis of massive PE, while not required before initiating therapeutic anticoagulation, is preferred before initiating reperfusion therapy such as systemic thrombolytic therapy, surgical embolectomy, or catheter-directed therapy (CDT). However, if severe hemodynamic instability does not permit additional testing, aggressive measures may be warranted based on clinical suspicion and TTE findings alone. One study tested an institution-specific algorithm for suspected PE in ED patients with the goal of implementing appropriate treatment, including reperfusion therapy, in a timely manner. Twenty-one of the 204 patients had a shock index (SI) (SI = HR/SBP, normal range 0.5 to 0.7) of ≥1; of these, 14 demonstrated RV dysfunction on TTE. All 14 patients with RV dysfunction received reperfusion treatment without a confirmatory study (systemic thrombolysis, 7; catheter fragmentation, 4; and surgical embolectomy, 3) with an averaged time interval between ED admission and start of reperfusion therapy of 32 ± 12 minutes. In all 14 patients, PE was confirmed after initiation of reperfusion therapy.
Management Guidelines
Systemic Thrombolytic Therapy
The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved the following three drugs in the treatment of massive PE:\textsuperscript{15,28}

- **Streptokinase**: 250,000 IU IV bolus over 30 minutes followed by 100,000 IU/hour for 12 to 24 hours (or 1.5 million IU IV over 2 hours\textsuperscript{22})
- **Urokinase**: 4,400 IU/kg IV bolus over 10 minutes followed by 4,400 IU/kg/h for 12 to 24 hours (or 1 million IU IV bolus over 10 minutes followed by 2 million IU IV over 110 minutes\textsuperscript{73})
- **Alteplase**: 100-mg IV infusion over 2 hours (or 0.6 mg/kg IV over 15 minutes with maximum dose of 50 mg\textsuperscript{74,75})

Systemic thrombolytic therapy is associated with more rapid clot lysis than heparin therapy alone.\textsuperscript{76–81} In a study comparing a 2-hour infusion of 100 mg of alteplase (a recombinant tissue plasminogen activator [rt-PA]) combined with heparin versus heparin alone, at the 2-hour mark the alteplase group showed a 12\% decrease in vascular obstruction, 30\% reduction in mean PAP, and 15\% increase in cardiac index. No changes were observed in the heparin group except for an 11\% rise in mean PAP.\textsuperscript{79} One week postintervention, however, the severity of vascular obstruction\textsuperscript{79,82} and reversal of RV dysfunction\textsuperscript{83} were similar in both groups.\textsuperscript{6,15,28} Systemic thrombolytic therapy has been shown to have greatest benefit when started within 48 hours of symptom onset\textsuperscript{80} but may still be useful for patients who have had symptoms for up to 14 days.\textsuperscript{15,84}

A mortality benefit of thrombolysis has not been found in patients with nonmassive PE and remains speculative in patients with massive PE, since there exists no large randomized controlled trial in this subgroup. One meta-analysis failed to demonstrate a superiority of thrombolysis compared with heparin alone with regard to recurrent pulmonary embolism or death as a composite outcome. However, when the study restricted analysis to trials that included massive PE patients, the composite outcome was 9.4\% with the thrombolysis group versus 19.0\% with heparin alone (odds ratio 0.45; NNT = 10).\textsuperscript{85} In a large retrospective study that analyzed patients with a diagnosis of PE and shock or ventilator dependence, the case fatality rate attributable to PE was higher among patients not receiving systemic thrombolytic therapy (42\% vs. 8.4\%).\textsuperscript{14}

The three drugs listed above appear to be comparable in efficacy and bleeding risk, provided doses are equivalent and given over the same time period.\textsuperscript{72,73} Shorter infusion regimens (i.e., \leq 2 hours) are preferred as they are associated with lower bleeding risk and more rapid clot lysis.\textsuperscript{86} Drug delivery via peripheral IV is preferred, as pulmonary artery catheters are associated with an increased bleeding risk at the insertion site without an increase in efficacy.\textsuperscript{86,87} IV UFH should be discontinued during systemic thrombolytic therapy.\textsuperscript{15,28} Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) should be checked after the completion of alteplase, and maintenance IV heparin should be restarted without a bolus if aPTT is <80 seconds (if not, it should be checked again in 4 hours).\textsuperscript{88}

An alteplase bolus regimen (0.6 mg/kg, maximum of 50 mg) given over 15 minutes appears to be comparable in both efficacy and bleeding risk to the more commonly
used 100-mg infusion given over 2 hours. Limited data exist for more rapid bolus infusions. In a study of a 2-minute alteplase infusion protocol (0.6 mg/kg ideal body weight, maximum dose not specified) versus heparin alone, a significant mean relative improvement in perfusion after 24 hours was reported (measured by perfusion lung scan, 37% vs. 18.8%, respectively) without an increase in major bleeding (minor bleeding was 45% vs. 4%). In patients in extremis, including cardiac arrest from massive PE, a bolus dose should be given. However, thrombolysis for undifferentiated cardiac arrest is not recommended.

All thrombolytic drugs carry a risk of bleeding. The cumulative rate of major bleeding and intracranial/fatal hemorrhage in early trials was shown to be to be 13% and 1.8%, respectively. Life-threatening hemorrhage is less common in more recent trials. Thrombolysis-related major bleeding is also less frequent when noninvasive imaging methods are used for PE diagnosis. Of note, massive PE patients have higher bleeding rates when compared to patients with nonmassive PE, regardless of whether they are receiving thrombolysis plus heparin or heparin alone. A retrospective chart review of patients who received IV alteplase 100 mg for PE between 1996 and 2004 showed a significant increase in bleeding risk among patients with hemodynamic instability requiring vasopressors prior to treatment (multivariate analysis: odds ratio 115). Systemic thrombolytic therapy is nevertheless recommended for patients with massive PE considered to have acceptably low bleeding risk. Absolute contraindications to systemic thrombolytic therapy for PE (listed after this paragraph) are extrapolated from guidelines for ST-segment elevation MI; clinicians are, however, encouraged to judge the relative merits of the therapy on a case-by-case basis. Absolute contraindications to systemic thrombolytic therapy for MI might become relative in a patient with immediately life-threatening high-risk PE. Despite the recommendations of current guidelines and evidence in favor of systemic thrombolytic therapy in massive PE, this therapy continues to be grossly underutilized.

Absolute contraindications to systemic thrombolytic therapy in PE:
- Any prior intracranial hemorrhage
- Known structural intracranial malignant neoplasm or cerebrovascular disease (e.g., arteriovenous malformation)
- Ischemic stroke within 3 months
- Suspected aortic dissection
- Active bleeding or bleeding diathesis
- Recent (i.e., within preceding 3 weeks) surgery encroaching on the spinal canal or brain
- Recent (i.e., within preceding 3 weeks) significant closed-head or facial trauma with radiographic evidence of bony fracture or brain injury

Surgical Embolectomy
Historically, surgical embolectomy for PE was considered an option of last resort, reserved for patients in cardiogenic shock or requiring CPR. However, as mortality rates have improved from 57% in the 1960s to 26% (16% to 46%) in the late 1980s/early 1990s, this procedure has reemerged as a viable treatment option for massive PE. Certain authors
have attributed this change not to surgical technique, but rather to a more expeditious diagnostic approach and to advances in the perioperative management of these patients, specifically the preoperative application of CPB in moribund patients. A more rigorous and discriminating patient selection process has likely also contributed to the improved outcomes. For example, instead of undergoing surgical embolectomy, patients with acute PE superimposed on chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension are now transferred to centers that specialize in pulmonary endarterectomy. The wide range of mortality rates reported in various case series reflects the importance of presurgical clinical status on postsurgical outcome; patients with no preoperative CPR, intermittent CPR with stable hemodynamics on arrival to the OR, and continuous CPR on arrival to the OR were reported to have mortality rate of 10%, 40%, and 80%, respectively.

A recent study, extended inclusion criteria for surgical embolectomy to include hemodynamically stable patients with large clot and RV dysfunction, demonstrated an even lower mortality rate of 6%. Although extending the indications to include submassive PE remains controversial, this and another recent series (0% perioperative mortality, 8% 30-day mortality) suggest that surgical embolectomy is not as futile as once believed, provided there is appropriate patient selection and consideration of technical factors.

If surgical expertise and resources are available, indications for surgical embolectomy for massive PE are the presence of a contraindication to systemic thrombolytic therapy, failed systemic thrombolytic therapy, or hemodynamic instability that is likely to cause death before systemic thrombolytic therapy can take effect. A surgical approach may also be appropriate in the case of impending paradoxical embolism (thrombus entrapped within a patent foramen ovale [PFO]). Absolute contraindications to systemic thrombolytic therapy are present in approximately one-third of massive PE (although this number varies depending on what is considered to be an absolute vs. relative contraindications). Failure of systemic thrombolytic therapy is defined as persistent clinical instability and residual echocardiographic RV dysfunction at 36 hours and is reported to occur in 8.2% of cases. In these cases, rescue embolectomy is recommended over repeat systemic thrombolytic therapy.

**Catheter Embolectomy**

The goal of the CDT is rapid central clot debulking to relieve life-threatening heart strain and improve pulmonary perfusion. Modern CDT for massive PE is defined as the use of low-profile catheters and devices (<10 F) for the purpose of catheter-directed mechanical fragmentation and/or aspiration of emboli, as well as optional intraclot thrombolytic agent injection. To avoid the risk of perforation, CDT is recommended only for use on major branches of the pulmonary artery and should be terminated as soon as hemodynamics improves, regardless of angiographic result. However, because successful clot fragmentation increases the surface area of thrombus, some authors advocate giving an extended intraclot infusion of low-dose thrombolytics, especially to patients with residual elevation of PA pressure with right heart strain.

Large randomized controlled trials on CDT have been hindered by device variations, lack of well-established protocols, and feasibility issues. A meta-analysis of 35 studies conducted from January 1990 through September 2008 evaluated the safety and efficacy of CDT for massive PE. Clinical success—defined as stabilization of hemodynamics, resolution of hypoxia, and survival to hospital discharge—was 86.5%. In 96% of
patients, systemic thrombolytic therapy was not given, and CDT was used as the first adjunct to heparin. Approximately 30% of patients received mechanical fragmentation and/or aspiration of emboli only, and 60% of patients received an extended thrombolytic infusion through the catheter. The pooled risk of major procedural complications (e.g., groin hematoma requiring transfusion) was 2.4%.

CDT shares the same indications as surgical embolectomy and is a relatively safe and highly effective treatment option for massive PE in an experienced center. Knowledge of local expertise should guide the emergency physician’s decision to pursue one or the other option, and establishing a transfer protocol is encouraged in facilities that lack either option. A management algorithm for suspected massive PE in the ED is shown in Figure 11.3.

Adjunctive Therapies

**Inferior Vena Cava (IVC) Filter** Subgroup analysis of massive PE patients in the ICOPER showed reduced 90-day mortality among patients with IVC filters (hazard ratio 0.12). However, only 11 of 108 patients with massive PE in this registry received an IVC filter. Some authors of case series for surgical embolectomy and catheter embolectomy advocate the use of IVC filters for their patients with massive PE, given relatively the low procedural risk and potentially lethal nature of recurrent PE in this group. In the absence of data from large randomized controlled

---

**FIGURE 11.3** Management algorithm for suspected massive PE. PE, pulmonary embolism; TTE, transthoracic echocardiogram; IV, intravenous; UFH, unfractionated heparin; BP, blood pressure; RV, right ventricular; ECLS, extracorporeal life support; CTPA, computed tomographic pulmonary angiography; CT, computed tomography; Cr, creatinine; TEE, transesophageal echocardiogram; min., minutes.
trials, AHA guidelines state that placement of an IVC filter may be considered for patients with acute PE with very poor cardiopulmonary reserve, including those with massive PE.28

**Extracorporeal Life Support (ECLS)** ECLS can be lifesaving for massive PE patients who are too unstable to tolerate other interventions or have failed reperfusion therapy.109 Bedside cannulation and placement on ECLS are possible during cardiac arrest, and patients can be transferred to institutions with higher levels of care while receiving ECLS.109 A study of 21 patients with massive PE receiving ECLS (8 in cardiac arrest at ECLS initiation) demonstrated a mortality rate of 38% and mean ECLS bypass duration of 4.7 days.109 Of note, 10/13 survivors in this study required no additional therapy other than anticoagulation. Excluding patients in hypercoagulable states, the study noted that these 10 patients had sufficient amount of emboli autolysis to allow recovery of RV function within 5 days.109 A recent case series of patients with massive PE requiring ECLS (9/10 in cardiac arrest) reported a 30-day mortality of 30%.110 Of note, 8 out of 10 patients had CDT while on ECLS, which improved hemodynamics and allowed early weaning of ECLS (mean ECLS bypass was 48 ± 44 hours).110 Although this was a small study without a comparative group, it suggests that early CDT to shorten ECLS bypass time may have both clinical and financial benefit, given the complications associated with prolonged ECLS. However, it should also be noted that a small case series of successful CDT during cardiac arrest (6/7 survived) suggests less of a need for ECLS if expertise with CDT is readily available in a given facility.111 There are no guidelines to define the exact role of ECLS in massive PE. Facilities that can offer this option should have a treatment algorithm developed by an interdisciplinary team.

**Inhaled Nitric Oxide (INO)** INO induces pulmonary artery vasodilation without generating systemic hypotension, making it a physiologically attractive adjunct in the management of massive PE. INO may help stabilize patients with suspected massive PE while definitive diagnostic tests or interventions are arranged. In a small case series of patients with massive PE requiring intubation, INO at a dose of 10–20 ppm was shown to rapidly improve oxygenation and hemodynamics.112 Given the known risk of hemodynamic deterioration following intubation and mechanical ventilation in patients with massive PE, having INO readily available in this setting is a reasonable strategy.

**HIGH-RISK SUBMASSIVE PULMONARY EMBOLISM**

Many patients with submassive PE will have a benign clinical course with appropriate anticoagulation; others will experience clinical deterioration due to a loss of physiologic compensation or recurrent embolic events. In a prospective clinical outcome study of 209 patients with confirmed PE, 65 (31%) were found to be normotensive with RV dysfunction on initial TTE; of these, 10% developed shock within the first 24 hours despite initiation of heparin therapy; half of these 10% died.113 Important issues that remain to be addressed include: (1) How to identify submassive PE patients with poor short-term prognosis who may benefit from ICU admission (Fig. 11.1), and (2) What treatment beyond anticoagulation can be provided to improve the outcome of this subgroup.
Research has assessed a variety of risk-stratification tools for normotensive patients with PE. Current risk stratification tools include clinical scores (e.g., the pulmonary embolism severity index [PESI], simplified PESI), biomarkers (e.g., troponin, highly sensitive troponin T assay, heart-type fatty acid–binding protein, brain-type natriuretic peptides [BNP]/N-terminal–pro-BNP [NT-proBNP]), cardiopulmonary imaging (e.g., RV dysfunction in CT/TTE), or combinations of these indicators. Unfortunately, identification of a definitive risk assessment tool has been hampered by a paucity of studies focusing on short-term mortality/deterioration risk (i.e., within the first 48 hours) and lack of a universally accepted definition of RV dysfunction and threshold values for diagnostic biomarkers.

Even if such a high-risk subgroup can be successfully identified, it remains unclear what therapeutic interventions would prove safe and superior to the current approach of anticoagulation with the option of subsequent reperfusion therapy for patients who further deteriorate. In a trial comparing heparin plus alteplase versus heparin alone for submassive PE, the requirement for escalation of treatment was significantly lower in the first group (10.2% vs. 24.6%), but no difference in all-cause mortality was observed (3.4% vs. 2.2%). The study showed that in the majority of submassive PE patients who experience subsequent deterioration, providers had sufficient time to intervene with reperfusion therapy. Preemptive reperfusion therapy with the goal of reducing short-term mortality therefore appears unjustified at this time.

The use of preemptive reperfusion therapy to prevent long-term RV dysfunction is also of questionable value. In patients with submassive PE who survive to receive 1 week of anticoagulation alone, the degree of pulmonary vascular obstruction and reversal of RV dysfunction appear similar to patients who receive systemic thrombolytic therapy. Reperfusion therapy may possibly have benefit in preventing persistent or worsening RV systolic pressure (RVSP) in the long term (i.e., 6 months), but the clinical significance of changes (or lack thereof) in RVSP have yet to be demonstrated in a large-scale study.

Four major interventions are being investigated in the treatment of the high-risk subgroup in submassive PE. The use of systemic rt-PA, soon to be addressed by the ongoing PEITHO trial (tenecteplase vs. placebo); surgical embolectomy, as described in more recent surgical case series; CDT with extended catheter-based infusion of rt-PA; and half-dose alteplase as described in the MOPETT trial. Besides safety, clinically meaningful outcome benefits should be demonstrated before these strategies can routinely be recommended over anticoagulation alone in this subgroup of patients.

CONCLUSION

Massive PE comprises a small fraction of PE, particularly now that we are detecting a greater number of lower-risk patients with the advent of MDCTPA; it remains, however, an undertreated, lethal, and challenging condition to manage. Optimal management requires a sophisticated understanding of the unique physiology of PE, an efficient and systemic approach to diagnosis and treatment, and an institution-based management algorithm based on available resources and expertise. If there are no contraindications, systemic thrombolytic therapy should be offered to patients with confirmed
massive PE, as well as suspected massive PE with suggestive TTE findings when there is no time for confirmatory study due to imminent risk of death. A decision to withhold thrombolysis based on the risk of bleeding needs to be followed by an attempt to provide either surgical or catheter-directed embolectomy in massive PE. As for submassive PE, a large-scale study is needed to determine what risk factors predict short-term (i.e., <48 hours) deterioration. The challenge remains to identify the high-risk subgroup in patients with submassive PE who may benefit from more aggressive care, and it is still unknown what specific preemptive reperfusion therapy should be offered to them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torbicki et al., Eur Heart J. 200819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kasper et al., J Am Coll Cardiol. 199722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaff et al., Circulation. 201123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldhaber et al., Lancet. 199929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wan et al., Circulation. 200485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuo et al., J Vasc Interv Radiol. 2009107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio; NNT, number needed to treat; OR, odds ratio.
REFERENCES


Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome

Darryl Abrams and Daniel Brodie

BACKGROUND

Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is characterized by the rapid onset of hypoxemia and bilateral pulmonary infiltrates consistent with pulmonary edema that cannot be fully attributed to cardiac failure or fluid overload. The ARDS Definition Task Force has recently revised this definition, which uses the ratio of the partial pressure of arterial oxygen to the fraction of inspired oxygen (PaO$_2$ to FIO$_2$ ratio), to classify ARDS into mild (200 < PaO$_2$/FIO$_2$ ≤ 300), moderate (100 < PaO$_2$/FIO$_2$ ≤ 200), and severe (PaO$_2$/FIO$_2$ ≤ 100), with a positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) of at least 5 cm of water. By these criteria, there are estimated to be over 190,000 cases of ARDS in the United States annually. In clinical trials involving patients with ARDS, mortality remains in the range of 22% to 45%, with lower PaO$_2$ to FIO$_2$ ratios correlating with worse survival rates. The majority of ARDS cases are caused by bacterial or viral pneumonia, extrapulmonary sepsis, aspiration, and trauma. Less common causes include acute pancreatitis, transfusions, and drug reactions. Pathologically, diffuse alveolar damage results from injury to both the capillary endothelium and the lung epithelium, increasing permeability and allowing protein-rich alveolar edema to form. Surfactant production and function are impaired, promoting alveolar collapse. The result is abnormal gas exchange, with hypoxemia and impaired carbon dioxide excretion, as well as decreased lung compliance. The distribution of ARDS is heterogeneous within the lung. Positive pressure ventilation, although potentially lifesaving in ARDS, may cause ventilator-associated lung injury (VALI) and exacerbate the inflammatory process by overdistending less affected regions of the lung and repeatedly collapsing and reopening small bronchioles and alveoli. The use of a high fraction of inspired oxygen may also contribute to lung injury. The cornerstone of management of ARDS is treatment of the precipitating illness and minimization of VALI. This chapter discusses ARDS therapies available to the emergency physician and the rationale behind them.

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Lung-Protective Ventilation
The only intervention that definitively demonstrates a survival benefit in ARDS is a volume- and pressure-limited ventilation strategy. In 2000, the ARDS Network published the results of a prospective randomized trial (ARMA) in which 861 intubated
patients with ARDS were assigned to receive either (1) a tidal volume of 6 mL/kg predicted body weight (based on height) with a goal airway pressure measured after a 0.5-second pause at the end of inspiration (plateau pressure) of 30 cm of water or less or (2) a traditional tidal volume of 12 mL/kg with a goal plateau pressure of 50 cm of water or less. Tidal volumes in each group were reduced stepwise by 1 mL/kg (minimum tidal volume 4 mL/kg) as needed to achieve the target plateau pressures, with an increase in respiratory rate as needed to maintain adequate minute ventilation up to a maximum set respiratory rate of 35 breaths/min. For the group treated with the volume- and pressure-limited strategy, results showed significantly lower mortality (31% vs. 39.8%), more ventilator-free days (12 ± 11 vs. 10 ± 11), and more days without nonpulmonary organ failure (15 ± 11 vs. 12 ± 11). Of note, the actual plateau pressures achieved in the low and traditional tidal volume groups were 25 ± 6 and 33 ± 8 cm of water, respectively. Additionally, oxygenation early in the trial was not a good predictor of outcome, as the low tidal volume group had lower PaO2 to FIO2 ratios on days 1 and 3, yet this group had better survival. The results of this and two other randomized trials with similar interventions have led to the adoption of a lung-protective strategy targeting low volume (6 mL/kg predicted body weight or less) and low pressure (plateau pressures of 30 cm of water or less) as the standard of care in ventilator management in ARDS.4,16,17

PEEP Strategy

Nonaerated portions of the lung in ARDS—those not adequately exchanging gas due to alveolar edema and collapse—may contribute significantly to shunt physiology and hypoxemia; in addition, the shear forces of cyclic opening and closing of alveolar units with positive pressure ventilation may precipitate worsening inflammation and VALI.13,18 By applying PEEP via the ventilator, a portion of the collapsed alveoli may be reopened or “recruited.” With this intervention, the proportion of nonaerated lung may be reduced and arterial oxygenation goals met, with lower levels of FIO2 delivered by the ventilator. However, increased levels of PEEP may cause circulatory compromise by impeding venous return and may lead to increased regional airway pressures and lung volumes, further exacerbating VALI.

The effect of different levels of PEEP on clinical outcomes was investigated by the ARDS Clinical Trials Network in a prospective, randomized trial in which 549 intubated patients with ARDS were randomized to either a high or low PEEP strategy.5 PEEP and FIO2 were adjusted in discrete steps to maintain an arterial oxyhemoglobin saturation (measured by pulse oximetry, SpO2) of 88% to 95% or a PaO2 of 55 to 80 mm Hg. There was no difference in mortality, ventilator-free days, ICU-free days, or organ failure–free days between the two groups, despite higher PaO2 to FIO2 ratios and respiratory system compliance in the high PEEP group. A subsequent multicenter study randomized 767 subjects with ARDS to either a minimal distention strategy (moderate PEEP of 5 to 9 cm of water) or an increased recruitment strategy (a level of PEEP set to reach a plateau pressure of 28 to 30 cm of water).8 Both groups were managed with low tidal volume ventilation (6 mL/kg of predicted body weight). Mean PEEP values in the minimal distention and increased recruitment strategy groups on day 1 were 8.4 cm of water and 15.8 cm of water, respectively. The increased recruitment strategy was associated with more ventilator-free days (7 vs. 3) and organ failure–free days.
(6 vs. 2), but there was no difference in 28- or 60-day mortality. In meta-analyses of 2,299 individual subjects from three randomized trials of high versus low PEEP (including the two previously mentioned trials), there was no significant difference in overall mortality between PEEP strategies (adjusted relative risk 0.94), though subset analysis demonstrated a survival benefit in subjects with moderate to severe ARDS who received a higher PEEP strategy (34.1% vs. 39.1%, adjusted relative risk 0.90).5,8,19–21

Based on the above results, there may be a role for higher levels of PEEP in improving surrogate outcomes (ventilator-free days, ICU-free days, organ failure–free days) in ARDS, and a high PEEP strategy may confer a survival benefit in patients with more severe cases of ARDS. However, the potential benefits of higher levels of PEEP have to be balanced against the risk of hemodynamic compromise. In the acute care setting, regardless of the PEEP strategy utilized, it is essential to institute early and appropriate standard-of-care ventilator management, which requires careful attention to tidal volumes, plateau airway pressures, and acceptable combinations of PEEP and FIO₂.22

**Fluid Management and Hemodynamic Monitoring**

Noncardiogenic pulmonary edema in ARDS results from increased capillary permeability and is exacerbated by increased intravascular hydrostatic pressure and decreased oncotic pressure. This argues in favor of a strategy that minimizes fluid administration. However, given that mortality in ARDS is often the result of nonpulmonary organ failure, a conservative fluid strategy may worsen organ perfusion and outcomes. To help guide fluid management in ARDS, the ARDS Clinical Trials Network conducted the Fluid and Catheter Treatment Trial (FACTT), a randomized controlled trial of 1,001 patients assigned to receive either a liberal or conservative fluid strategy, guided by intravascular pressure monitoring.6 The 7-day cumulative fluid balance in the conservative-strategy group was −136 ± 491 mL, compared to 6,992 ± 502 mL in the liberal-strategy group. There was no significant difference in in-hospital mortality between groups (25.5 ± 1.9% in the conservative-strategy group, 28.4 ± 2.0% in the liberal-strategy group). However, the conservative-strategy group had significantly more ventilator-free days (14.6 vs. 12.1) and ICU-free days (13.4 vs. 11.2) than did the liberal-strategy group, without increasing the rate of nonpulmonary organ failure. Based on these data, it is generally recommended to adhere to a conservative fluid strategy to help improve lung function and minimize the duration of mechanical ventilation and intensive care. Despite the recommendation to minimize intravascular pressure, this same trial found no benefit in guiding hemodynamic management using a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) versus a central venous catheter. PACs were, however, associated with a higher rate of atrial and ventricular arrhythmias. Based on these results, PACs are not recommended for routine use in ARDS.

**Corticosteroids**

ARDS is characterized by diffuse lung inflammation, which is further exacerbated by positive pressure ventilation and resulting VALI. Corticosteroids, with their anti-inflammatory properties, have been hypothesized to have a role in treating ARDS; however, multiple randomized trials have not demonstrated a clear and consistent benefit from corticosteroids in either the early or late phases of ARDS.23–26 One RCT
found no difference in 45-day mortality, resolution of ARDS, or infectious complications among 99 patients with early ARDS (onset within 48 hours) who were randomized to either high-dose corticosteroids (methylprednisolone 30 mg/kg every 6 hours for 24 hours) or placebo. Another randomized trial of 24 patients demonstrated a benefit in mortality when a prolonged course of corticosteroids was administered after 7 days of persistent ARDS; however, a subsequent multicenter trial conducted by the ARDS Clinical Trials Network (Late Steroid Rescue Study, LaSRS), randomizing 180 patients with ARDS of 7 to 28 days’ duration to methylprednisolone versus placebo, showed no difference in 60-day mortality (28.6% vs. 29.2%). Corticosteroids were associated with increases in the number of ventilator-free days (11.2 vs. 6.8) and shock-free days (20.7 vs. 17.9), but they were also associated with significantly more episodes of neuromyopathy (9 vs. 0) and a higher mortality when steroids were started 14 or more days after ARDS onset (35% vs. 8%). Based on the existing evidence, the routine use of corticosteroids is not generally recommended for ARDS; however, this remains an area of controversy. Also, such recommendations do not apply to patients whose acute hypoxemic respiratory failure is due to an etiology for which corticosteroids are indicated, such as collagen vascular disease or acute eosinophilic pneumonia.

Neuromuscular Blocking Agents
Neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs) are often used in severe ARDS to decrease patient–ventilator dyssynchrony and improve oxygenation when sedation alone is insufficient. However, their use has also been associated with muscle weakness. The ACURASYS trial, a recent multicenter study from France, was conducted to evaluate the effect of NMBAs in early, severe ARDS. Three hundred and forty patients with ARDS for <48 hours, a PaO₂ to FIO₂ ratio of <150, and a Ramsey sedation score of 6 (no response on glabellar tap) were randomized to receive cisatracurium or placebo for 48 hours. Those who received cisatracurium had a significantly lower 90-day mortality (hazard ratio 0.68) after post hoc adjustments were made for the degree of hypoxemia, severity of illness, and plateau airway pressure; however, this difference did not become apparent until well after NMBAs were discontinued. There were also more ventilator-free and ICU-free days within the cisatracurium group, without a significant difference in ICU-acquired paresis. NMBAs remain an option early in the course of severe ARDS when severe gas exchange abnormalities persist despite deep sedation, but their use has yet to be widely accepted as standard of care.

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) refers to an extracorporeal circuit that directly oxygenates and removes carbon dioxide from the blood. In most cases of ECMO for ARDS, a cannula is placed in a central vein. Blood is withdrawn into an extracorporeal circuit by a mechanical pump and passed through an oxygenator, where the blood passes along one side of a semipermeable membrane that allows for diffusion of gases. The oxygenated blood is then returned to a central vein. This technique is referred to as “venovenous” ECMO because blood is withdrawn from and returned to the venous system. ECMO may be considered as a rescue therapy in patients whose
gas exchange abnormalities are so severe that positive pressure ventilation alone is insufficient to maintain adequate gas exchange. Additionally, ECMO may be indicated in patients who can be maintained on positive pressure ventilation only at the expense of excessively high airway pressures or in patients who cannot tolerate a lung-protective ventilation strategy because of unacceptable levels of hypercapnia and acidemia.

The results of two early, randomized controlled trials with outdated ECMO technology failed to show a survival benefit with ECMO for ARDS. However, in the interval since those trials, there have been significant advances in ECMO technology, with observational reports demonstrating higher rates of survival and fewer complications. The only controlled clinical trial using modern ECMO technology is Conventional Ventilation or ECMO for Severe Adult Respiratory Failure (CESAR), in which 180 subjects with severe but potentially reversible respiratory failure were randomized to conventional mechanical ventilation or referral to a specialized center for consideration of ECMO. There was a significantly lower rate of death or severe disability at 6 months in the group referred for consideration of ECMO (37% vs. 53%, relative risk 0.69). The major limitation of the study was that only 70% of the conventionally managed patients received a lung-protective ventilation strategy at any time in the study because such a strategy was not mandated despite the fact that it is the widely accepted standard of care. Regardless, the results of this trial and other observational studies (particularly those published during the influenza A (H1N1) pandemic) have given momentum to the belief that there is a role for ECMO in ARDS when gas exchange is markedly abnormal or airway pressures are excessively high. A randomized controlled trial of ECMO versus standard-of-care mechanical ventilation is needed to better define the use of this therapy in severe cases of ARDS. The initiation of ECMO should be reserved for centers with extensive experience in its use. Early referral to such a center is recommended, since the benefits of ECMO may be lessened by prolonged mechanical ventilation with plateau pressures exceeding 30 cm of water for >7 days or prolonged exposure to high FIO₂. Earlier initiation of ECMO has been associated with better outcomes in some, but not all, observational studies.

### ADDITIONAL RESCUE THERAPIES

**Prone Positioning**

ARDS affects the lung heterogeneously, with more consolidation and atelectasis occurring in the dependent portions of the lung and with alveolar inflation and ventilation distributing preferentially to the nondependent lung regions. Hypoxemia results from ventilation–perfusion mismatch and from the development of physiologic shunt as blood flow remains prominent in the dependent, atelectatic lung regions. Prone positioning has been proposed as a way of improving oxygenation by improving ventilation–perfusion matching. Prone positioning achieves this through redistribution of perfusion, recruitment of previously dependent lung regions, more homogeneous distribution of ventilation, and alterations in chest wall compliance.

Despite demonstrating a consistent relationship between prone positioning and improved oxygenation, multiple randomized trials and meta-analyses initially failed to show any mortality benefit, with prone positioning associated with a higher rate of
complications, including hemodynamic instability, loss of venous access, and endotracheal tube displacement.\textsuperscript{42} However, post hoc analyses of several trials and two meta-analyses have suggested a mortality benefit in patients with the most severe forms of ARDS,\textsuperscript{50,51} leading to a multicenter randomized trial of prone versus supine positioning in 466 patients with ARDS with a PaO\textsubscript{2} to FIO\textsubscript{2} ratio <150.\textsuperscript{52} Twenty-eight–day mortality was significantly lower in the prone group than the supine group (16.0\% vs. 32.8\%, hazard ratio 0.42), a difference that persisted at 90 days. Adverse event rates were comparable between the two groups, except for a higher rate of cardiac arrests in the supine group. Based on the results of this trial, the early institution of prone positioning is not recommended for routine use in ARDS, but may be considered in cases of severe hypoxemia at centers experienced in its use.

**High-Frequency Oscillatory Ventilation**

The principle of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) is to maintain alveolar patency while avoiding low end-expiratory pressure and high peak pressures. Ventilation is achieved with an oscillating piston that creates pressure cycles around a constant mean airway pressure at a very high frequency (180 to 900/min), resulting in low tidal volumes (<2.5 mL/kg).\textsuperscript{53,54} Early randomized trials demonstrated a trend toward decreased mortality with HFOV compared to conventional mechanical ventilation.\textsuperscript{55} Two multicenter randomized controlled trials comparing HFOV to standard-of-care lung-protective ventilation, the Oscillation for Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Treated Early Trial (OSCILLATE) and High-Frequency Oscillation in ARDS (OSCAR), have recently been conducted.\textsuperscript{56,57} OSCAR failed to show a difference from HFOV in 30-day mortality (41.7\% vs. 41.1\%), and OSCILLATE was terminated early by the data monitoring committee due to increased in-hospital mortality in the HFOV group (47\% vs. 35\%, RR 1.33). Given the findings of these studies, HFOV is not recommended for routine use in ARDS.

**Inhaled Vasodilators**

Inhaled vasodilator therapy delivers aerosolized vasodilator medications to the alveoli by way of a ventilator. The effect of the vasodilators will not be significant in areas of the lung where edema and atelectasis are plentiful and delivery is hampered. However, in well-ventilated portions of the lung, inhaled vasodilators may improve oxygenation in ARDS by preferentially recruiting blood flow and simultaneously diverting it from areas with high levels of shunt.

Commonly used vasodilators include inhaled nitric oxide and inhaled epoprostenol. Despite demonstrating improvements in oxygenation, randomized trials have failed to show a survival benefit from vasodilator therapy, and concerns have been raised about side effects from prolonged nitric oxide administration, including cyanide toxicity, methemoglobinemia, and worsening renal function.\textsuperscript{58–60} Side effects from epoprostenol may include flushing and hypotension if there is systemic absorption of the medication.\textsuperscript{61} Both therapies may worsen hypoxemia by worsening ventilation–perfusion mismatch if systemic absorption results in vasodilation of the pulmonary vasculature in areas of the lung where ventilation is low. Inhaled vasodilators should not be used routinely in ARDS, but may be considered in cases of severe, refractory hypoxemia.
Recruitment Maneuvers
Recruitment maneuvers, often used in conjunction with high levels of PEEP, are intended to improve aeration to collapsed or fluid-filled alveoli, thus improving oxygenation, minimizing shear stress on alveoli, and increasing pulmonary compliance.54,62 A recruitment maneuver involves increasing airway pressures to levels above tidal ventilation for a brief period of time. Risks of achieving these higher airway pressures include overinflation of unaffected alveoli, increased VALI, decreased alveolar fluid clearance, and hemodynamic compromise.21,63–65 In a prospective trial of 983 patients with ARDS randomized to recruitment maneuvers and high levels of PEEP (40-second breath hold at 40 cm of water followed by a PEEP of 20 cm of water) or standard-of-care lung-protective ventilation, the intervention group had lower rates of refractory hypoxemia (4.6% vs. 10.2%) and death with refractory hypoxemia (4.2% vs. 8.9%), but there was no difference in all-cause mortality (36.4% vs. 40.4%, RR, 0.90).21 Recruitment maneuvers were complicated by hypotension, worsening hypoxemia, arrhythmia, or barotrauma in 22% of the subjects in the intervention group. Similar to the results of trials evaluating high PEEP strategies, these results show that recruitment maneuvers may improve surrogate outcomes but do not demonstrate a definitive mortality benefit.21,65,66 Recruitment maneuvers may be considered in severe ARDS with refractory hypoxemia, but should be avoided in patients in shock and those with pneumothoraces or focal disease. The maneuver should be aborted if hypotension or worsening hypoxemia develops and should not be repeated if there is no improvement after the initial maneuver.54

OTHER THERAPIES
The utility of noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV), although well established in exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and cardiogenic pulmonary edema, is limited in ARDS and not recommended as routine therapy.67 High failure rates have been reported in several studies of NIPPV in ARDS, with severe hypoxemia, shock, and metabolic acidosis identified as independent risk factors for NIPPV failure.68 In patients with ARDS who have lower severity of illness scores and more mild hypoxemia, there may be a role for the cautious application of NIPPV.67,69 However, such patients must be assessed frequently for signs of failure of NIPPV and for the need for prompt institution of invasive mechanical ventilation. Ventilatory strategies that have been used as rescue therapies for severe ARDS include airway pressure release ventilation, inverse-ratio ventilation, and open lung ventilation. These therapies may demonstrate a benefit in surrogate outcomes, but none has been shown to affect major clinical outcomes in ARDS favorably.21,70–77

CONCLUSION
Management of ARDS should focus on treatment of the underlying etiology and application of a volume- and pressure-limited ventilation strategy. A conservative fluid management strategy is recommended, and the administration of NMBAs may be associated with decreased mortality when used early in cases of severe ARDS. In patients with refractory gas exchange abnormalities despite these interventions, other therapies,
including ECMO, high levels of PEEP, prone positioning, inhaled vasodilators, and recruitment maneuvers, may be considered (Table 12.1). The use of HFOV, corticosteroids, and PACs for hemodynamic monitoring is generally not recommended. Whether to use alternative therapies depends on the preference of the treating clinician and the resources available at a given institution or in that institution’s referral network, since there are no evidence-based algorithms to guide decision making.

### TABLE 12.1 Therapies for ARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard of Care</th>
<th>Therapies to Consider</th>
<th>Controversial Therapies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Volume- and pressure-limited ventilation</td>
<td>• High PEEP strategy</td>
<td>• Corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Conservative fluid strategy</td>
<td>• NMBAs</td>
<td>• HFOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ECMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Inhaled vasodilators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Recruitment maneuvers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Prone positioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ARDS, acute respiratory distress syndrome; PEEP, positive end-expiratory pressure; NMBAs, neuromuscular blocking agents; ECMO, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; HFOV, high-frequency oscillatory ventilation.

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lung-protective ventilation</strong></td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 861 patients with ARDS, randomized to conventional (higher tidal volume) or lung-protective (lower tidal volume) ventilation</td>
<td>Lower mortality with tidal volume of 6 mL/kg and plateau pressure ≤30 cm H₂O than 12 mL/kg and plateau pressure ≤50 cm H₂O (31% vs. 39.8%, p = 0.007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Network. <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2000[1]</td>
<td>RCT of 53 patients with ARDS in 2 ICUs, randomized to conventional or lung-protective ventilation</td>
<td>Lower 28-d mortality with low tidal volume (&lt;8 mL/kg) than high tidal volume (12 mL/kg) (38% vs. 71%, p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amato et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 1998[2]</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 103 patients with ARDS in mixed ICUs, randomized to conventional or lung-protective ventilation</td>
<td>Lower hospital mortality with lower tidal volume (6–8 mL/kg) than higher tidal volume (9–11 mL/kg) (34% vs. 66%, p = 0.041)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villar et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2006[3]</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 549 patients with ARDS, randomized to a high or low PEEP strategy</td>
<td>No difference in mortality between high and low PEEP strategies (27.5% vs. 24.9% p = 0.48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercat et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2008[4]</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 767 patients with ARDS, randomized to a high or low PEEP strategy</td>
<td>More ventilator-free days (7 vs. 3, p = 0.04) and organ failure–free days (6 vs. 2, p = 0.04) in high PEEP strategy, no difference in mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maziere et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2010[5]</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 2,299 patients from 3 RCTs of high vs. low PEEP in ARDS</td>
<td>Lower in-hospital mortality with high PEEP strategy in moderate to severe ARDS (34.1% vs. 39.1%, adjusted RR 0.90, 95% CI, 0.81–1.00, p = 0.049)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meade et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2008[7]</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 983 patients with ARDS randomized to recruitment maneuvers and high PEEP or conventional ventilation</td>
<td>Lower rates of hypoxemia in intervention arm, but no difference in mortality (36.4% vs. 40.4%, RR, 0.90, 95% CI, 0.77–1.05, p = 0.19). High rate of complications in intervention arm (22%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fluid management</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiedemann et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2006&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt; FACTT Multicenter RCT of 1,001 patients with ARDS, randomized to conservative or liberal fluid strategy</td>
<td>No difference in mortality in conservative vs. liberal fluid strategy (25.5% vs. 28.4%, <em>p</em> = 0.30), but significantly more ventilator-free days (14.6 vs. 12.1, <em>p</em> &lt; 0.001) and ICU-free days (13.4 vs. 11.2, <em>p</em> &lt; 0.001) with conservative strategy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Corticosteroids</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernard et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 1987&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt; Multicenter RCT of 99 patients treated with high-dose steroids or placebo in early ARDS</td>
<td>No difference in mortality between high-dose steroids and placebo (60% vs. 63%, <em>p</em> = 0.74)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meduri et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 1998&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt; RCT of 24 patients in 4 ICUs with ARDS for more than 7 d, randomized to steroids or placebo</td>
<td>Decreased hospital mortality in steroid group (12% vs. 62%, <em>p</em> = 0.03). Small study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steinberg et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2006&lt;sup&gt;25&lt;/sup&gt; LasRS Multicenter RCT of 180 patients with ARDS for more than 7 d, randomized to steroids or placebo</td>
<td>No difference in mortality between steroids and placebo (28.6% vs. 29.2%, <em>p</em> = 1.0), but higher mortality when steroids started 14 or more days after ARDS onset (35% vs. 8%, <em>p</em> = 0.02). Higher rate of neuromyopathy in the steroid group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaian et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2010&lt;sup&gt;29&lt;/sup&gt; ACURASYS Multicenter RCT of 340 patients with ARDS, randomized to NMBA or placebo</td>
<td>Decreased risk of death in NMBA group (HR 0.68, 95% CI, 0.48–0.98, <em>p</em> = 0.04)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peek et al., <em>Lancet.</em> 2009&lt;sup&gt;32&lt;/sup&gt; CESAR RCT of 180 patients with ARDS randomized to conventional mechanical ventilation or referral for consideration of ECMO</td>
<td>Decreased rate of death or severe disability in ECMO referral group (37% vs. 53%, RR 0.69, 95% CI, 0.05–0.97; <em>p</em> = 0.03)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prone positioning</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taccone et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2009&lt;sup&gt;43&lt;/sup&gt; RCT of 342 patients with moderate to severe ARDS, randomized to prone or supine positioning</td>
<td>No difference in 28-d and 6-mo mortality. Higher rate of complications in prone group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gattinoni et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2001&lt;sup&gt;45&lt;/sup&gt; RCT of 304 patients with ARDS, randomized to prone or supine positioning</td>
<td>No difference in mortality at time of ICU discharge (RR 1.05; 95% CI, 0.89–1.28). Post hoc analysis suggested benefit of prone positioning in those with the most severe ARDS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guerin et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2013&lt;sup&gt;52&lt;/sup&gt; Multicenter RCT of 466 patients with ARDS with <em>PaO₂/FIO₂</em> &lt; 150, randomized to prone or supine positioning</td>
<td>Decreased 28- and 90-d mortality in the prone group (16.0% vs. 32.8%, HR 0.42, 95% CI 0.26–0.66; <em>p</em> &lt; 0.001)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferguson et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2013&lt;sup&gt;56&lt;/sup&gt; OSCILLATE Multicenter RCT of HFOV vs. conventional lung-protective ventilation</td>
<td>Increased in-hospital mortality in the HFOV group (47% vs. 35%, RR 1.33, 95% CI 1.09–1.64, <em>p</em> = 0.005)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2013&lt;sup&gt;57&lt;/sup&gt; OSCAR Multicenter RCT of HFOV vs. conventional lung-protective ventilation</td>
<td>No difference in 30-d mortality (41.7% vs. 41.1%, <em>p</em> = 0.85)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio; RR, relative risk; RCT, randomized controlled trial.
REFERENCES


Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation
Vidya K. Rao, Darryl Abrams, Cara Agerstrand, and Daniel Brodie

BACKGROUND
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) is a term often used broadly to describe an extracorporeal circuit that provides short-term support of respiratory or cardiac function. In this chapter, we use the acronym ECMO in this expansive way, although ECMO is most accurately used to describe an extracorporeal circuit in which the primary goal is to provide oxygenation. Extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal (ECCO₂R, pronounced ee-kor) is the more appropriate terminology when the primary function of the circuit is correction of hypercapnia. Extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation (ECPR) is used to describe the initiation of ECMO for resuscitation during cardiac arrest when conventional resuscitative efforts have failed.

The appropriate use of ECMO in the emergency department or intensive care unit requires an understanding of the principles behind extracorporeal support and an ability to identify circumstances in which its use would provide sufficient benefit to justify its associated risk. While ECMO is used in the neonatal, pediatric, and adult populations, this chapter only focuses on the use of ECMO in the adult population.

BRIEF HISTORY
In 1971, Dr. J.D. Hill documented the first successful case of ECMO for severe, post-traumatic hypoxemic respiratory failure.¹ A subsequent multicenter, randomized, controlled trial published in 1979 evaluated conventional mechanical ventilation with and without venoarterial ECMO support for severe hypoxemic respiratory failure.² This study failed to demonstrate a survival benefit from ECMO (9.5% in the ECMO group vs. 8.3% in the control group). Despite these findings, and inspired by the success of others in using ECCO₂R to minimize respiratory rates and airway pressures in patients with severe hypoxemic respiratory failure,³–⁶ a subsequent randomized trial of ECCO₂R was conducted in 1994, but again failed to demonstrate survival benefit (33% in the ECCO₂R group, 42% in the control group).⁷ Both trials, however, had significant limitations, especially with regard to extracorporeal technology and mechanical ventilation practices, making their relevance in the era of modern-day ECMO and ventilation strategies questionable at best.
Enthusiasm for ECMO in the adult population was initially tempered by the lack of survival benefit in these early studies, but multiple subsequent observational reports, particularly during the influenza A (H1N1) pandemic in 2009, demonstrated high rates of survival with ECMO for the acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). In an attempt to investigate the effect of ECMO on ARDS in the era of more advanced technology, the Conventional Ventilation or ECMO for Severe Adult Respiratory Failure (CESAR) trial was performed. One hundred eighty subjects with severe but potentially reversible respiratory failure were randomized to conventional mechanical ventilation or transfer to a single ECMO center for consideration of ECMO. Death or severe disability at 6 months occurred in 37% of the subjects in the ECMO-referred group, compared with 53% in the control group (relative risk 0.69). However, the lack of a standardized ventilation strategy in the control group; the differences in adherence to a low-volume, low-pressure strategy between the groups; and the fact that only 76% of patients referred for ECMO actually received ECMO limit the conclusions that can be drawn from this study. Nonetheless, the results of the CESAR study suggest there may be a benefit in referring patients with severe ARDS to a center capable of conducting ECMO as part of a larger management protocol.

**INDICATIONS AND TECHNIQUE**

ECMO may be initiated as salvage therapy in patients with life-threatening cardiac or respiratory failure that is refractory to conventional therapy. Regardless of the specific indication, it is important to note that extracorporeal support does not treat a patient’s underlying disease. Rather, it provides supportive care while the cause of cardiac or respiratory failure is addressed. In patients with end-stage respiratory failure, ECMO may be used, where appropriate, as a bridge to lung transplantation. In patients with end-stage cardiac failure, ECMO may be used as a bridge to either heart transplantation or a ventricular assist device (or total artificial heart), which itself may be used as destination therapy or as a bridge to transplantation.

If life-threatening respiratory or cardiac failure persists despite conventional management therapies, emergency medicine physicians should consider prompt ECMO consultation in appropriate patients. In centers where there is limited ECMO experience, early referral to a regional ECMO center is advised.

**Respiratory Failure**

ECMO and ECCO₂R may be considered in cases of severe hypoxemic or hypercapnic respiratory failure. Etiologies of respiratory failure for which these modalities have been initiated include, but are not limited to, ARDS, refractory status asthmaticus, acute pulmonary embolism, pulmonary hypertensive crisis, end-stage respiratory failure pre-transplant, and primary graft dysfunction in the posttransplant period. Uncommonly, ECMO has been instituted in cases of severe air leak syndromes.

There is no universally accepted set of criteria for initiating ECMO in severe hypoxic respiratory failure. However, reasonable proposed criteria include a partial pressure of oxygen to fraction of inspired oxygen ratio (PaO₂/FIO₂) < 80 despite the use of high levels of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) for several hours, uncompensated hypercapnia with acidemia (pH < 7.15), or excessively high end-inspiratory plateau airway pressures despite standard-of-care lung protective ventilation strategies.
ECMO is considered a rescue strategy and should not be initiated, either in the medical intensive care unit or from the emergency department (ED), until conventional strategies to optimize oxygenation and ventilation have proven inadequate.

**Cardiac Failure**
ECMO can be used to provide hemodynamic support in cardiogenic shock that is refractory to aggressive inotropic support. Although it is an application that requires continued study, ECMO may also be employed in cases of respiratory failure with concomitant hemodynamic instability, including sepsis-induced cardiomyopathy or severe septic shock.

With advances in extracorporeal technology that allow for rapid cannulation, there has been increasing interest in the use of ECPR for in-hospital cardiac arrest, typically in cases where return of spontaneous circulation has not occurred within 10 minutes or more of maximal resuscitative efforts. This application requires availability of an on-site ECMO team, which in some institutions may include emergency medicine physicians. Recent data show that patients with in-hospital cardiac arrest, who received conventional cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) that was escalated to ECPR or to ECPR combined with intraarrest percutaneous coronary intervention, had better survival than patients receiving conventional CPR alone.

**Contraindications**
While ECMO may benefit select critically ill patients, there are situations in which extracorporeal support has an unacceptable risk to benefit ratio. Relative contraindications include limitations in vascular access that would preclude cannulation and comorbid conditions or concomitant organ dysfunction for which aggressive management would not provide meaningful benefit (e.g., advanced metastatic cancer or devastating neurologic injury). Finally, since the use of systemic anticoagulation is strongly recommended to maintain the integrity of the ECMO circuit, a contraindication to the use anticoagulation is also a relative contraindication for ECMO.

**Technique**
The initiation and management of ECMO requires a trained, multidisciplinary team, typically consisting of surgeons, intensivists, ECMO specialists, and nurses. ECMO circuits most often require insertion of a drainage cannula into a central vein. Deoxygenated blood is withdrawn by a pump and passes through an oxygenator, where gas exchange occurs. The blood passes along one side of a semipermeable membrane, and “sweep gas,” typically 100% oxygen, is delivered to the other side. Oxygen is taken up by the blood, and carbon dioxide is removed. The oxygenated blood may be heated or cooled as necessary and is returned to the patient via a reinfusion cannula. The reinfusion cannula can be inserted into either a central vein (venovenous ECMO) or artery (venoarterial ECMO) (Fig. 13.1).

Venovenous ECMO is indicated in patients with hypoxemic or hypercapnic respiratory failure but preserved cardiac function. The configuration may consist of either single-site or multisite cannulation. In single-site cannulation, a dual-lumen cannula is inserted into the internal jugular vein and advanced through the superior vena cava and right atrium into the inferior vena cava under transthoracic echocardiographic or fluoroscopic...
Drainage ports of one lumen are positioned in the superior and inferior vena cavae, and the port of the second lumen is positioned such that the reinfusion jet is directed across the tricuspid valve. Multisite (typically dual-site) venovenous cannulation is commonly performed using the internal jugular and femoral veins and requires less sophisticated radiographic guidance and technical expertise than single-site cannulation. While more expedient in emergent situations, this cannulation strategy is more prone to recirculation, which occurs when reinfused oxygenated blood is drawn back into the extracorporeal circuit by the venous drainage cannula instead of flowing across the tricuspid valve and contributing to systemic oxygenation. Single-site cannulation, when properly positioned, is less prone to recirculation. In venovenous ECMO, blood pressure and heart rate are managed in standard fashion, as they would be for any patient not receiving extracorporeal support. Because oxygenation in ECMO is dependent on the amount of blood passing through the oxygenator, some cases of severe hypoxemia may require a second venous drainage cannula to maximize the rate of blood flow through the circuit (veno–venovenous ECMO) (see Fig. 13.1).

Venoarterial ECMO is indicated in cases of severe cardiac failure refractory to conventional therapy, combined respiratory and cardiac failure, and ECPR. Femoral venous and arterial cannulation is the most common configuration and is the approach of choice in unstable patients and in the ED, as it can be performed rapidly and with minimal interference of ongoing resuscitative efforts in cases of ECPR. Vascular access

**FIGURE 13.1** A: Venovenous extracorporeal cannulation; deoxygenated blood is drained from the femoral vein with oxygenated blood being returned to the right atrium. B: Venoarterial cannulation; deoxygenated blood is drained from the femoral vein and returned to the femoral artery where oxygenated blood flows in a retrograde direction up along the aorta. When some residual cardiac function remains, oxygenated ECLS blood mixes with deoxygenated blood ejected from the left ventricle. ECLS, extracorporeal life support. Adapted from Gaffney AM, Wildhirt SM, Griffin MJ, et al. Extracorporeal life support. *BMJ*. 2010;341:982–986. Copyright ©2010, *British Medical Journal*, with permission from BMJ publishing group.
is typically obtained using the Seldinger technique, though at times surgical cutdown or a hybrid technique may be required. Intrathoracic cannulation may be performed intraoperatively, but is less likely to be used in the ED. Mean arterial pressure and systemic perfusion in venoarterial ECMO are determined by a combination of the blood flow rate through the circuit, the native cardiac output, and systemic vascular resistance. Because blood reinfused from the femoral arterial cannula flows in a retrograde direction in the descending aorta, ECMO blood flow can be impeded by the patient’s native cardiac output and may not necessarily reach the aortic arch, great vessels, or coronary arteries. Furthermore, oxygen saturation measured in the lower limbs may not accurately reflect the amount of oxygenated blood being delivered to the brain and heart, and because of this, oxygen is preferably monitored from a site on the upper body, such as the right upper extremity. When there is concern for adequate upper body perfusion, a second reinfusion cannula can be inserted into the internal jugular vein (venoarterial venous ECMO), with that portion of oxygenated blood being pumped into the ascending aorta via the patient’s native cardiac function. Additional venoarterial configurations include internal jugular venous drainage and subclavian arterial reinfusion, though the latter requires placement in the operating room.24

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Circuit-Related Factors
A trained ECMO team manages the extracorporeal circuit. A brief description of these management principles is provided here in order to highlight the possible complications and concerns associated with extracorporeal circuitry.

Anticoagulation
In preparation for vascular cannulation, patients are given a bolus of unfractionated heparin, followed by a continuous heparin infusion. To assess the adequacy of anticoagulation, activated clotting time (ACT) or activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) is followed; other evaluations, such as anti–factor Xa assays and thromboelastography, have also been employed.25–27 When heparin is contraindicated, direct thrombin inhibitors may be used.28,29 Platelet counts typically decrease with ECMO and should also be monitored. Although platelet transfusion thresholds vary by center, 20,000 platelets/cm² is a reasonable trigger for transfusion in the absence of bleeding. The ECMO circuit should be periodically inspected for thrombi, whose presence may indicate a need to increase anticoagulation or change circuit components.

Gas Exchange
The sweep gas is the source of oxygen for the circuit and also provides a gradient for carbon dioxide diffusion out of the blood. The fraction of oxygen delivered in the sweep gas (FDO₂) is adjusted by a blender, but is typically maintained at 1.0. Goal arterial oxygen saturation is generally ≥88%, although this may vary by patient and institution. The amount of oxygen supplied by ECMO is determined primarily by the blood flow rate through the circuit, since oxygen transfer across the membrane is highly efficient. A higher blood flow rate means that a greater proportion of the patient’s cardiac output passes through the oxygenator and, therefore, makes a greater
contribution to systemic oxygenation. It is important to note that the proportion of cardiac output that passes through the circuit depends not only on the circuit blood flow rate but also on the total cardiac output of the patient. Any increase in a patient’s cardiac output, for a given extracorporeal blood flow rate, will translate to a lower proportion of blood flowing through the circuit and a decrease in ECMO’s contribution to systemic oxygenation. Oxygen delivery is also affected by hemoglobin concentration; however, there is no universally accepted transfusion threshold for packed red blood cells. Current recommendations for transfusion during ECMO are the same as for all critically ill patients.

Carbon dioxide removal is primarily dependent on the sweep gas flow rate, as carbon dioxide diffusion across the oxygenator is extremely efficient. The sweep gas flow rate should be adjusted as needed to achieve appropriate pH and PaCO\(_2\) goals.

**Blood Flow**

Blood flow through the ECMO circuit is determined by the revolutions per minute (RPMs) of the pump (although newer pumps allow the blood flow rate to be set with variability in RPMs), the sizes of the drainage and reinfusion cannulae, the intravascular volume of the patient, and the resistance to reinfusion flow. Increasing the RPMs on the pump will usually increase blood flow, but close attention must be paid to the pressure within the venous drainage cannula. As the RPMs are increased, pressure will become more negative in the venous limb; excessively negative pressures (typically more negative than minus 50 to 100 mm Hg) may cause trauma to red blood cells. High positive pressures (typically >300 to 400 mm Hg) in the reinfusion cannula are also potentially problematic. Adequacy of blood flow is monitored by levels of oxygen saturation and markers of end-organ perfusion.

**Patient-Related Factors**

**Sedation, Analgesia, and Neuromuscular Blockade**

During cannulation, sedation, analgesia, and neuromuscular blockade may be required to provide comfort and minimize patient movement. Following stabilization on ECMO, sedation and analgesia should be titrated as they would in other critically ill patients. Select patients, once in the ICU, will be able to tolerate decreased sedation. In such patients, sedation is minimized in favor of allowing the patient to be awake and potentially participate in physical rehabilitation.

Occasionally, ongoing neuromuscular blockade may be required in order to optimize cardiac or respiratory function. When neuromuscular blocking agents are administered, the patient must be adequately sedated, and the degree of neuromuscular blockade should be monitored with “train of four” sequences by a peripheral nerve stimulator.

Adequate dosing of sedatives can be challenging due to pharmacokinetic alterations in the ECMO circuit. The circuit provides an additional volume of distribution and may adsorb certain, especially lipophilic, medications onto the surfaces of the tubing and oxygenator, reducing their bioavailability. This is an area of active investigation, and the behavior of many medications in the setting of ECMO is not known. Frequent reassessment is recommended to ensure that the desired effect of a given medication is being achieved.
Hemodynamics
In patients receiving venovenous ECMO, manifestations of hemodynamic instability, including hypotension, tachycardia, dysrhythmias, and inadequate perfusion, are managed as they would be in any other critically ill patient. In venoarterial ECMO, blood flow rate may be adjusted to increase mean arterial pressure and enhance perfusion.

Ventilator Management
Ventilator management practices vary based on the underlying condition necessitating the use of ECMO. In patients with ARDS, once stabilized on ECMO, the goal of mechanical ventilation is to minimize the deleterious effects of positive pressure ventilation, using a low-volume, low-pressure strategy. The ARDS Clinical Trials Network ARMA trial demonstrated mortality benefit when using goal tidal volume and plateau airway pressure ≤6 mL/kg predicted body weight and 30 cm of water, respectively. Lower tidal volumes and plateau airway pressures than those used in the ARMA trial, a target often referred to as “lung rest,” may provide additional benefit for patients receiving ECMO for ARDS, although this remains an area of continued study. Lower tidal volumes and plateau airway pressures than those used in the ARMA trial, a target often referred to as “lung rest,” may provide additional benefit for patients receiving ECMO for ARDS, although this remains an area of continued study. FIO₂ should also be minimized as tolerated, though it is prudent to continue moderate to high levels of PEEP to maintain alveolar patency and minimize atelectasis. In patients with severe air leak syndromes, extracorporeal support could allow complete discontinuation of the ventilator to allow sealing of the leak. In patients requiring venoarterial ECMO for the treatment of cardiac failure, lung rest setting should be avoided to prevent the development of atelectasis.

Volume Status and Electrolyte Management
Patients are often volume overloaded at the time of ECMO initiation as a result of resuscitative efforts related to their critical illness. In patients with ARDS, additional volume infusions should be minimized, and aggressive diuresis should be instituted, as tolerated, to minimize extravascular lung water. If diuresis is limited by renal dysfunction, or if it alone does not achieve adequate euvoolemia, ultrafiltration should be considered.

In patients without ARDS who are receiving venoarterial ECMO, optimal volume status should be determined clinically. Patients receiving ECPR and therapeutic hypothermia may experience cold diuresis; their volume status must be closely assessed in order to avoid hypovolemia. Electrolyte derangements may also occur following resuscitation or during diuresis and should be managed as in other critically ill patients.

Infection
In ECMO, as with any vascular access, precautions must be taken to minimize infection. Antibiotic prophylaxis is not specifically required, but patients should continue to receive any antibiotic therapy clinically indicated prior to ECMO initiation as well as standard monitoring for general infection. Cannula maintenance and dressing changes require strict aseptic techniques, and access points within the circuit should be kept to a minimum. It is important to note that the pharmacokinetics of antibiotics, much like sedative agents, may be altered with the use of the extracorporeal circuit, and antibiotic drug levels should be monitored to ensure adequate dosing.
Temperature Regulation

Temperature regulation can be achieved within the ECMO circuit. In most cases of venovenous and venoarterial ECMO, normothermia is the goal; warming of the blood within the oxygenator counteracts the effect of the extracorporeal blood cooling.

In cases of ECPR or other neurologic injury, therapeutic hypothermia may be induced following the initiation of ECMO and stabilization of the patient. Counterregulatory mechanisms, such as shivering, electrolyte derangements, insulin resistance, platelet dysfunction, and hemodynamic changes associated with cutaneous vasoconstriction, must be recognized and appropriately managed.

Procedures

Procedures should be minimized while a patient is receiving ECMO. If an intervention is necessary, anticoagulation may be temporarily discontinued; however, prolonged periods without anticoagulation should be avoided. Close attention must be paid to cannula positioning if the patient requires repositioning for a procedure. Ideally, patients should not be moved without the assistance or approval of the ECMO team.

Complications

Despite close monitoring, life-threatening complications do occur during all stages of ECMO, from initiation to weaning and decannulation. Therefore, ECMO should be instituted only when its benefits are believed to outweigh its risks. Bleeding complications may occur due to anticoagulation or as a result of vascular injury during cannulation. Additionally, cellular destruction and factor consumption by the circuit may lead to a clinical picture consistent with disseminated intravascular coagulation. ECMO cannulae are a nidus for thrombus formation, and inadequate anticoagulation may lead to thromboembolic complications. Air embolism has also been reported during cannulation. Adverse events related to the circuit and oxygenator, including oxygenator failure from thrombosis, have also been reported and require the vigilance of a trained ECMO specialist. Fortunately, complications have become considerably less frequent with recent improvements in ECMO technology.

CONCLUSION

The availability of extracorporeal support enables an ED to initiate early escalation of care in patients with severe respiratory or cardiac failure for whom the expectation of survival without such intervention is low. Emergency physicians have an opportunity to identify both patients who might benefit from ECMO support and those for whom it is inappropriate. At certain institutions, they may be responsible for initiating early consultation or regional referral to an ECMO center as well as providing essential ongoing management while the patient awaits transfer.

It should be emphasized that the initiation and management of ECMO is an involved process that requires a trained team and that inexperienced providers should never attempt extracorporeal cannulation or management without involvement from clinicians with ECMO expertise. That said, the ED’s role in providing extracorporeal support is likely to continue to expand as more centers include emergency physicians on ECMO teams to enable more efficient initiation of therapy.
REFERENCES


Chapter 13  Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation  179


ACUTE HEART FAILURE SYNDROME

Background
Acute heart failure syndrome (AHFS) is a term intended to capture pathologic changes in cardiac function that are new or that destabilize an already vulnerable cardiac substrate. These alterations in myocardial, valvular, pericardial, or electrical function frequently result in admission to the emergency department (ED), where rapid recognition and correction of the destabilizing change are essential to successful therapy.\(^1,2\) AHFS now accounts for over 3 million ED visits annually—a number that has increased dramatically over the last several decades as a result of an aging population as well as significant advances in acute reperfusion therapy, neurohumoral modulation for heart failure (HF), preventive strategies for sudden cardiac death, and primary prevention strategies that limit and attenuate the consequences of cardiac injury.\(^2-9\) Nearly 80% of AHFS patients have an established diagnosis of HF; 20% of AHFS patients will present with new-onset HF. Common comorbid conditions in these patients include coronary artery disease, hypertension (HTN), diabetes mellitus, atrial fibrillation, and chronic renal dysfunction.

The 2009 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) guidelines define three classes of AHFS:

- Class 1—volume overload: pulmonary congestion, systemic congestion
- Class 2—impaired cardiac output: hypotension, organ failure, shock
- Class 3—combination of classes 1 and 2

This classification of AHFS echoes a diagnostic approach developed in 1999\(^{10}\) (Fig. 14.1). The figure, which shows fluid status on one axis and cardiac output on the other, provides a useful description of four hemodynamic profiles based on evidence of resting congestion and hypoperfusion. As the majority of AHFS presenting to the ED will fall into class 1, or “B” in Figure 14.1, this chapter focuses on the diagnostic and therapeutic strategies involved in the care of this patient population. Cardiogenic shock (CS) is addressed in the second part of the chapter.
History and Physical Exam

An essential component of the AHFS patient history is identification of possible triggers of cardiac decompensation, including dietary indiscretion, physician-prescribed adjustments in medication dosage, medication nonadherence, and usage of new medications, including over-the-counter medications such as NSAIDs. Infections, particularly of the respiratory or genitourinary tract, may also trigger decompensation.

AHFS patients with pulmonary congestion will commonly report dyspnea, orthopnea, and postural nocturnal dyspnea. Patients will often deny an inability to sleep but will admit to sleeping in a reclining chair or even upright. Many of these patients also complain of lower extremity edema, a sign of underlying right HF. Right HF can also present with nausea, vomiting, anorexia, and gradually increasing abdominal girth.

Most cases of acute HF originate in the left ventricle and result in shortness of breath, exercise intolerance, and clinical signs of pulmonary congestion. In the ED, initial assessment should focus on respiratory status and adequacy of circulation.

Observation of the patient’s presenting position (e.g., sitting, recumbent) can provide important information regarding the severity of pulmonary edema; patients sitting erect or leaning on their knees in a “tripod” position are typically the most dyspneic and congested. Attention should also be paid to a patient’s respiratory rate and the ability to speak in full sentences; aberrations in either of these may suggest an urgent need for ventilatory support and/or rapid correction of volume overload. The pulmonary exam should evaluate for signs of congestion, including inspiratory crackles suggestive of resting congestion and/or hypoperfusion. A: normal cardiac function. B (wet and warm): require only diuresis in addition to their regular regimen of ACE inhibitors and digoxin. C (cold and wet): in general cannot be effectively “dried out” until they have “warmed up,” usually with monitored vasodilation, rarely requiring inotropic therapy as well. L (cold and dry): comfortable at rest but have no cardiac reserve or exercise capacity. Adjustment of the oral regimen for L patients is unlikely to yield direct improvement, and most will require increased doses of vasodilators or imitation of IV vasodilators or inotropes. Na, serum sodium level. Adapted from: Stevenson LW. Tailored therapy to hemodynamic goals for advanced heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail.* 1999;1:251–257.

![FIGURE 14.1 Four hemodynamic profiles describing cardiac function based on evidence of resting congestion and/or hypoperfusion. A: normal cardiac function. B (wet and warm): require only diuresis in addition to their regular regimen of ACE inhibitors and digoxin. C (cold and wet): in general cannot be effectively “dried out” until they have “warmed up,” usually with monitored vasodilation, rarely requiring inotropic therapy as well. L (cold and dry): comfortable at rest but have no cardiac reserve or exercise capacity. Adjustment of the oral regimen for L patients is unlikely to yield direct improvement, and most will require increased doses of vasodilators or imitation of IV vasodilators or inotropes. Na, serum sodium level. Adapted from: Stevenson LW. Tailored therapy to hemodynamic goals for advanced heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail.* 1999;1:251–257.](image-url)
of elevated left ventricular (LV) pressures. Percussion of posterior chest walls may also reveal pleural effusions secondary to AHFS, typically larger in the right lung.

Assessment of circulation begins with a tactile skin exam. In a “warm and wet” patient, skin temperature suggests normal peripheral vascular tone and implies there will be a positive response to a diuretic alone. In a “cold and clammy” patient, skin findings result from peripheral vasoconstriction and the body’s attempt to maintain central vascular tone, blood pressure, and perfusion of vital organs; in these cases, vasodilators and inotropes may be required.

The quality and character of a patient’s pulses provide additional information on circulatory adequacy. Diminished and thready pulses denote low pulse pressure and suggest low cardiac output. Irregular pulses suggest arrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation, while frequent ectopic beats may accompany electrolyte imbalances. Pulsus alternans, a clinical feature seen almost exclusively in severe LV dysfunction, is characterized by alternating forceful and weak peripheral pulses at regular beat intervals.

Jugular venous distension (JVD), a marker of fluid status, is often pronounced in patients presenting with AHFS. Careful examination of the neck veins—starting with the patient sitting upright and then with the bed lowered—can provide vital information about a patient’s intravascular volume status. As a marker for right atrial pressure, and thereby right-sided preload, jugular venous pressure (JVP) should also be measured, using the technique described in Chapter 15. JVP also may also be assessed using the hepatojugular reflex; continued abdominal compression will result in sustained (>3 seconds) elevation of the JVP in patients with volume overload or a failing right ventricle. Assessment of inspiratory change in JVP is important as well; Kussmaul sign (a failure to decrease or even an increase in the mean JVP during inspiration) can be seen in constrictive and restrictive processes, as well as in the setting of an acute right ventricular (RV) infarction.

Precordial palpation should be performed for determination of displaced cardiac apex, parasternal heaves, and thrills. A displaced apex with sustained impulse suggests either long-standing HTN or LV cavity enlargement in a dilated cardiomyopathy. Parasternal heave can accompany this in the setting of RV hypertrophy or enlargement. Any palpable murmur is abnormal and classified as a thrill or an 4/6 murmur on the Levine grading scale.

Auscultation of the heart should focus on extra heart sounds; in patients with volume overload, for example, a postsystolic sound (the S3) is a very specific marker for reduced ejection fraction. Murmurs and their characteristics are important to note, as a patient with 3/6 or greater holosystolic murmur over the apex radiating to the axilla may have hemodynamically significant mitral regurgitation. Finally, irregular heart rhythms may suggest a new destabilizing arrhythmia.

Bilateral lower extremity pitting edema may be seen in patients with AHFS and elevated JVP. Lower extremity edema may be present in other conditions (such as liver failure and nephrotic syndrome) and is not specific to HF. As the location of edema is gravity dependent, patients who are not upright (e.g., bedbound) must be examined for edema in the dependent parts of their body, such as the sacrum.

Ascites can also be seen in AHFS and is often associated with severe right-sided HF. Palpation of the liver will reveal enlargement and sometimes tenderness, both signs
of hepatic congestion. Pulsatility of the liver may be observed in patients with severe tricuspid insufficiency.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

**Electrocardiogram**
Sinus tachycardia is the most common finding on an electrocardiogram (ECG) in AHFS. This reflects compensatory response to preserve cardiac output in the setting of impaired stroke volume. Arrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation are present in approximately 20% of patients with AHFS who present to the ED. Acute coronary syndromes (ACS)—as an ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), a non-ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction (NSTEMI), or an unstable angina—can cause an acute decompensation in patients with underlying structural heart disease or even severe dysfunction in a previously normal heart.27

**Laboratory Testing**
Hyponatremia is a common finding in AHFS; up to 25% of patients will have a serum sodium of <135 mEq/L. Patients with baseline serum sodium of <137 mEq/L have been shown to have significantly shorter life expectancy than patients with a normal baseline serum sodium, and patients with a baseline serum sodium <130 mEq/L have a 15% 12-month survival rate.16 While potassium is within the normal range for most AHFS patients, potassium levels can be elevated by typical AHFS medications, including angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, or aldosterone antagonist diuretics such as spironolactone. Concomitant renal dysfunction—the result of impaired perfusion due to diminished cardiac output or venous renal congestion—can exacerbate this hyperkalemia, sometimes to dangerous levels.17,18 In patients with severe right HF, a hepatic transaminitis may also be observed.19

Natriuretic peptides (BNP, NT-proBNP) are normally secreted in response to ventricular distension and stretch and may be of particular use to the emergency physician (EP). Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) and N-terminal pro–brain natriuretic peptide (NT-proBNP) act as endogenous diuretics, cardiac myocyte relaxants (lusitropic agents), and vasodilators. In the clinical setting, they have been shown to aid in the differentiation of the causes of acute dyspnea in patients with concomitant COPD and HF.20–24 Natriuretic peptides have a high negative predictive value for cardiac failure–induced dyspnea in the patient with AHFS. In a recent prospective cohort study of 1,586 patients, the diagnostic accuracy of BNP at a cutoff of 100 pg/mm was 83.4% and the negative predictive value at levels of <50 pg/mm was 96%.21 Importantly, natriuretic peptides are insensitive in patients with marked obesity and may be elevated in patients with chronic renal failure or long-standing HF.22,23,25 In these cases, knowledge of the patient’s baseline (dry weight) BNP level aids in decision making.

**Chest Radiograph**
Obtaining a chest radiograph (CXR) is considered standard of care in the evaluation of dyspnea, and approximately 80% of patients with AHFS will have radiographic
evidence of pulmonary edema. Attention should be paid to the cardiac silhouette, as well. Enlargement can indicate chronic LV dysfunction; a globular appearance, pericardial effusion; and pericardial calcification, constriction.\textsuperscript{26} Significant pleural effusions (typically left greater than right) are often present in patients with congestive HF.

**Differential Diagnosis**
The differential diagnosis for causes of AHFS is extensive but may be broadly divided into ischemic and nonischemic (Table 14.1).

**Management Guidelines**
The initial assessment of the patient with AHFS begins with an assessment of respiratory status and the need for immediate respiratory support with either invasive or noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV). In patients with intact mental status but severe respiratory distress, NIPPV has been shown to improve ventilation and reduce cardiac strain. A recent RCT of 2,096 patients with acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema compared standard O\textsubscript{2} supplementation and NIPPV and showed significant reductions in breathlessness, heart rate, acidosis, and hypercapnia at 1 hour with NIPPV use.\textsuperscript{28} In patients with altered sensorium who are unable to adequately protect their airway, rapid sequence intubation should be performed immediately. In patients who are not hypoxic, supplemental oxygen therapy is still effective at relieving dyspnea and should be provided.

### TABLE 14.1 Causes of AHFS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ischemic</th>
<th>Nonischemic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACS</td>
<td>End-stage cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Large anterior wall MI</td>
<td>Medication/Toxin induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- RV infarction</td>
<td>- Calcium channel blocker induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Acute ischemic mitral regurgitation</td>
<td>- β-Blocker induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical complications</td>
<td>Stress cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ventricular septal rupture</td>
<td>- Takotsubo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Papillary muscle rupture</td>
<td>Myocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Free wall rupture/tamponade</td>
<td>- Infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myocardial stunning after fatal arrhythmia and ICD discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiomyopathy of sepsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acute valvular pathology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Acute aortic insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Infectious endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Type A aortic dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Acute mitral regurgitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Infectious endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acute tamponade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the severely hypertensive patient, sublingual nitroglycerin can favorably alter hemodynamics by decreasing afterload and preload. Sublingual administration is preferred as it rapidly increases blood levels in a bolus fashion, after which a nitroglycerin drip can be initiated.

Morphine is commonly administered for patient comfort but may produce undesirable effects, including a higher incidence of need for mechanical ventilation, intensive care unit admission, and prolonged hospital stay. Morphine has also been associated with increased mortality in patients presenting with NSTEMI.28

Most AHFS patients will benefit from diuretic therapy instituted in the ED, with the notable exception of patients with hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy, whose cardiac output is dependent on adequate preload. Intravenous (IV) furosemide is the safest and most effective initial therapy, resulting in rapid diuresis. A recent RCT of patients with AHFS demonstrated IV bolus dosing of furosemide—preferred in the ED for ease of administration—to be equivalent to continuous infusion, with no significant difference in patients’ assessment of symptoms or in the change in renal function.29

Arrhythmias can be the precipitating event in AHFS.30 For the AHFS patient presenting with a tachyarrhythmia—such as atrial fibrillation with rapid ventricular response—IV calcium channel and β-blocking agents should be avoided, as their negative inotropic effect may produce further hemodynamic deterioration. The COMMIT trial demonstrated that routine use of IV β-blockade in patients with STEMI reduced the risks of reinfarction and ventricular fibrillation, but these gains were offset by increased rates of CS.31 In the absence of STEMI, consideration can be given to IV β-blockade in low dosages, such as 5 to 15 mg total of IV metoprolol. In a state of volume overload, diuresis can sometimes be a more effective modality for rate control. In the patient with hemodynamic instability, immediate electrical cardioversion should be performed.

CARDIOGENIC SHOCK

Background
CS is defined as severely depressed cardiac output leading to life-threatening tissue hypoperfusion. In-hospital mortality from CS is approximately 60%, a number that has not changed dramatically over the last 20 years.32 Approximately 3% to 5% of patients with AHFS and 5% to 8% of patients with STEMI will present in CS. Of patients with CS in the setting of STEMI, the majority will have left anterior descending artery occlusions.33,34 Other risk factors for CS in the setting of myocardial infarction (MI) include advanced age, diabetes, a history of peripheral arterial disease, stroke, transient ischemic attack, coronary artery bypass grafting, and prior STEMI.35,36 The remainder of this chapter discusses the management of CS due to acute MI.

LV failure is the most common cause of CS. LV failure may result from one significant ischemic event or from a series of smaller ischemic insults over time. Subjects who are not reperfused, or who present late in the course of their MI, are particularly vulnerable. Importantly, when the degree of hemodynamic compromise is disproportionate to the area of myocardium at risk (i.e., as seen on ECG), alternate etiologies for the patient’s hemodynamic instability should be sought. These include
mechanical complications such as ventricular septal rupture and papillary muscle rupture—which can occur as early as the first day of infarction—as well as tamponade, acute aortic dissection, pulmonary embolism, medication effect, and occult blood loss (Table 14.2).

### Physical Exam
Cold and clammy extremities are common in patients with an inadequate cardiac output and are due to the compensatory release of endogenous catecholamines that cause peripheral vasoconstriction and shunting of blood to vital organs. Diminished stroke volume may also result in a thready pulse, low pulse pressure, and a compensatory tachycardia. Importantly, attenuation of this tachycardic response may be noted in patients with chronic β-blocker use or conduction abnormalities.

Determination of volume status is a challenging but important step in the management of CS. As with any patient with HF, measurement of JVP, lung and thoracic auscultation, and assessment of extremity and dependent edema should be performed. CS remains one of the few clinical entities in which use of a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) continues to be recommended. PAC monitoring can help confirm adequate...
intravascular status and enables the clinician to differentiate true CS from a mixed cardiogenic and vasodilatory process. Only experienced clinicians should perform PAC insertion, preferably in a medical or cardiac ICU.

The cardiac examination in a patient in CS should focus on the auscultation of cardiac murmurs. Holosystolic murmurs can suggest either a ventricular septal rupture or acute mitral regurgitation secondary to papillary muscle rupture. Distant heart sounds suggest a pericardial effusion and possibly tamponade secondary to free wall rupture.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

**Electrocardiogram**

ST elevation consistent with acute ischemic injury is an indication for prompt reperfusion. Care must be taken to look for new arrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia, or heart blocks, that can result in severe bradycardia.

**Laboratory Testing**

New-onset end-organ dysfunction is a defining feature of shock. Newly elevated creatinine or hepatic enzymes suggest poor delivery of blood to the kidneys and liver. Elevated lactate levels, seen with any tissue hypoperfusion, are a quantitative measure of shock severity. Cardiac enzyme levels, as well, may be useful in helping elucidate the magnitude and timing of the ischemic event.

**Chest Radiograph**

In patients with difficult physical exams, a CXR is useful in assessing for pulmonary edema and pleural effusions. Although not specific, a bulbous cardiac silhouette may suggest pericardial fluid or tamponade from a free wall rupture, while unilateral pulmonary edema may be seen in the setting of acute mitral regurgitation due to papillary muscle rupture.

**Echocardiogram**

Echocardiography is an invaluable diagnostic tool in CS and can help identify the precipitating pathology. Acute valvular pathology, tamponade, RV infarction, takotsubo cardiomyopathy, LV wall motion abnormalities, and ventricular septal rupture—to name a few—can be ruled in or out by echocardiography.

**Management Guidelines**

Primary reperfusion therapy is the mainstay of treatment in patients presenting with CS secondary to acute myocardial ischemia. The SHOCK trial demonstrated an initial early revascularization strategy—using either percutaneous coronary intervention or coronary artery bypass grafting—to be associated with a 13% decrease in mortality when compared to medical stabilization strategy (50.3% vs. 63.1%). In the absence of contraindications, these patients should be taken for mechanical revascularization as urgently as possible. Pharmacologic lytic therapy is ineffective in this population, as poor blood flow leads to low drug concentration in the target coronary arteries.

Mechanical complications of MIs, such as ventricular septal rupture or papillary muscle rupture, are surgical emergencies minimally amenable to medical
management. Adjunctive mechanical support devices, such as an Impella, Tandem Hearts, or intra-aortic balloon pumps (IABPs), may be considered as a bridge to surgical intervention but are not definitive therapies. Although IABPs and Impellas have often been used to provide adjunctive hemodynamic support in the setting of CS, they have yet to be proven to improve clinical outcomes or decrease mortality. In the IABP SHOCK-2 trial, patients with CS due to MI in whom an early invasive strategy was planned were randomized to either IABP or medical therapy alone. No difference was seen between the patient groups in terms of mortality (relative risk with IABP, 0.96). As an alternative therapy for the same clinical scenario, Impella 2.5 L/min was compared with IABP in the ISAR-Shock 2 trial. Both therapies were shown to have similar effects on 30-day mortality (30-day mortality 46% in both groups).

**Vaspressors and Inotropes**

In an ED setting, temporary stabilization of the patient with vasopressors or inotropes may be necessary. The use of vasopressors in CS should be limited to patients with hypotension (systolic blood pressure < 80 mm Hg or mean arterial pressure < 65 mm Hg). Increasing afterload provides a temporizing solution for a failing heart but will also increase cardiac oxygen consumption. An understanding of the appropriate application of these agents is important.

Norepinephrine is a synthetic catecholamine with vasoconstrictive as well as positive chronotropic (heart rate) and inotropic (contractility) effects. Its primary effect is stimulation of α receptors, which raises systemic vascular resistance (SVR) leading to an increase in blood pressure. Norepinephrine also increases heart rate and contractility through a weak but present agonism of β receptors. As with any α receptor agonist, or vasopressor, long-term use or sustained high doses can result in peripheral tissue ischemia.

Phenylephrine is a pure α receptor agonist and vasoconstrictor; like norepinephrine, it raises blood pressure by increasing SVR. It has no direct effect on the heart but will increase blood pressure. Phenylephrine should be limited to use in patients with hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy.

Epinephrine is a powerful vasoconstrictor and inotrope and acts directly on both α and β receptors. The result is a more dramatic increase in inotropy and chronotropy with a similar, or even more powerful, degree of vasoconstriction than norepinephrine. As a potent chronotropic agent, the drug is capable of inducing cardiac arrhythmias, including atrial fibrillation and ventricular fibrillation. For this reason, it is considered a second- or third-line agent in CS.

Vasopressin is an analog of antidiuretic hormone and acts on the vasopressin receptor. A powerful vasoconstrictor, it works best at a fixed dose in concert with another vasoconstrictor such as norepinephrine or phenylephrine. There is limited data for the use of vasopressin in CS, and for this reason, it is recommended only as a third- or fourth-line agent.

Dopamine is a weaker version of epinephrine and has effects on the α, β, and Dopamine (D) receptors. Traditional teaching is that at increasing doses, dopamine affects different receptors; in practice, dopamine can be used simultaneously as a vasoconstrictor, inotrope, and chronotrope. Data from the SOAP II trial suggested dopamine and norepinephrine to have similar efficacy in CS but found dopamine to be associated with more adverse events, specifically arrhythmias (Table 14.3).
CONCLUSION

In patients with HF and CS, early and accurate assessment of volume status and cardiac function improves outcome. Close hemodynamic monitoring is vital, and the use of intra-arterial blood pressure monitoring is strongly recommended. Early involvement of a cardiology intensivist is recommended for any unstable patient with AHFS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 14.3</th>
<th>Vasopressors and Inotropes in Cardiogenic Shock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent</td>
<td>Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norepinephrine</td>
<td>Increase BP through vasoconstriction, mild increase inotropy and chronotropy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epinephrine</td>
<td>Powerful inotropy, chronotropy, vasoconstriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine</td>
<td>Mild to moderate inotropy, chronotropy, vasoconstriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine</td>
<td>Potent vasoconstrictor without effect on inotropy or chronotropy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasopressin</td>
<td>Potent vasoconstrictor without effect on inotropy or chronotropy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
REFERENCES


Right Ventricular Failure
Joshua Sternbach, Francois Haddad, John E. Arbo, and Anne-Sophie Beraud

BACKGROUND

Accurate and rapid assessment of right ventricular failure (RVF) is challenging. The thin-walled right ventricle (RV), which serves as a conduit to the typically high-flow low-pressure pulmonary circulation, is less tolerant of increases in afterload and wall stress. Right ventricular hemodynamic compromise can occur as a result of a variety of clinical insults and can benefit from an equally diverse group of therapies. This chapter presents the clinical approach to the evaluation of the failing right heart, while providing evidence-based strategies for effective therapeutic intervention.

CLASSIFICATION AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

RVF is a complex clinical process defined by the inability to provide adequate blood flow through the pulmonary circulation at a normal central venous pressure (CVP).\(^1,2\) Although heart failure is often ascribed to either the left or the right ventricle, the interdependence of these structures renders this division somewhat artificial. Isolated left ventricular failure can create an unhealthy milieu for an otherwise well-functioning RV, just as a struggling RV can hinder the performance of a normal LV. In the latter case, RV distension and diminished contractility may lead to paradoxical interventricular septal motion, producing an acute deficit in LV filling and therefore decreased cardiac output and oxygen delivery.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

RV dysfunction or failure occurs as the result of one or more of three pathophysiologic processes: RV pressure overload, volume overload, or reduced contractility (see Fig. 15.1). RV pressure overload may occur in conditions such as pulmonary embolism (PE), pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) (with or without associated lung disease), and positive pressure ventilation. RV volume overload occurs in the setting of valvular (tricuspid or pulmonic) regurgitation and has particularly deleterious effects on LV systolic function. Finally, depressed RV contractility may manifest as a result of myocardial ischemia, arrhythmia, or sepsis.

Specific etiologies of RV dysfunction include intrinsic pulmonary or pulmonary vascular conditions (also termed cor pulmonale) or cardiac disease. Data regarding the
incidence and associated morbidity and mortality of various causes are presented in Table 15.1. Patients requiring ICU admission for RV failure frequently experience high mortality rates and require prolonged medical intensive care. Other conditions not mentioned in Table 15.1 that can result in RV failure include adult congenital heart disease, sleep-disordered breathing, any disorder associated with pulmonary hypertension (PH)—including chronic thromboembolic disease—and connective tissue disorders such as scleroderma (Table 15.2).

**HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM**

In patients with mild to moderate chronic right heart disease, reports of dyspnea, fatigue, lethargy, light-headedness, angina, and exertional syncope or presyncope will predominate. Patients with a more severe disease may initially present with lower extremity edema or ascites, prompting complaints of abdominal pain or fullness due to hepatic congestion.

In a patient with established RV dysfunction, a careful review of medications is an essential part of the initial patient history, as any missed doses or lapses in compliance can result in a dramatic clinical decline. Patients with chronic PH treated with vasodilatory agents—or patients with chronic lung diseases treated with daily inhalers or immunomodulators—may develop advanced symptoms, despite seemingly minimal changes
Chapter 15  Right Ventricular Failure  195

in their prescribed routine. Likewise, recreational or illicit drug use may trigger new, or exacerbate chronic, RV dysfunction. In particular, amphetamines, cocaine, and dietary supplements containing fenfluramine constitute a common cohort of agents known to cause PH and subsequent cor pulmonale.34,46

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Process</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Associated Morbidity and Mortality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>40%–70% of PEs present with RV dysfunction.4,47 8% of PEs present with circulatory collapse.4 Overall PE incidence: 112.3 per 100,000 US adults,4 600,000 cases per year, &gt;50,000 deaths per year²</td>
<td>15.3% mortality rate for all acute pulmonary emboli at 3 mo The presence of right ventricular hypokinesis on the baseline echocardiogram confers twofold mortality risk at 3 mo²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right ventricular myocardial infarction (RVMI)</td>
<td>43% of inferior MIs present with RV involvement.4,5 6.9% of RV infarcts result in cardiogenic shock⁴ 96% of RV infarcts resulting in shock have an inferior location on ECG¹¹</td>
<td>In-hospital mortality of 31% in patients with inferior MI and RVMI (vs. 6% in those with no RV involvement) In-hospital mortality 53% in patients with RVMI when shock present¹⁰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)</td>
<td>Acute cor pulmonale present in 25% of ARDS patients on transthoracal echocardiography (TEE)¹⁹</td>
<td>Longer duration of mechanical ventilation, no apparent difference in mortality²¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAH</td>
<td>A rare disease: 26–52 cases per million of total population.¹² 1% of all causes of cor pulmonale.¹² A higher incidence of PAH exists in certain at-risk groups: HIV: 0.5%¹³ Systemic sclerosis: 7%–12%¹⁰¹³ Sickle cell disease: 2%–3.75%¹³¹⁹</td>
<td>RV failure is the leading cause of hospitalization in PAH patients (56%). Mortality is 40%–48% for those PAH patients admitted to the ICU with RV failure.¹⁰¹³ 29% with PAH and RV failure die or require urgent transplantation within 90 d of admission¹²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)</td>
<td>Most common cause of cor pulmonale in North America.¹² Cor pulmonale present in 40% of those with FEV₁ &lt;1.0 L, 70% when FEV₁ falls to 0.6 L²²</td>
<td>4-y mortality rate of 73% when cor pulmonale¹⁷ present²³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interstitial pulmonary fibrosis (IPF)</td>
<td>65% with RV dysfunction¹² in end-stage disease patients being evaluated for transplant.¹⁴ The prevalence of PH² ranges from 20% to 32%²⁰–²⁷</td>
<td>1-y survival: 45% when pulmonary artery systolic (PAS) pressure &gt;50 mm Hg on echocardiogram, 83% when PAS &lt;50²⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
<td>30%–40% have evidence of nonisolated RV dysfunction.¹¹ Isolated RV dysfunction –10%²¹²⁶</td>
<td>Lower overall cardiac output. Higher vasopressor requirements. Higher median troponin and lactate levels. No difference in 30-d or 1-y mortality rates when compared to patients with normal myocardial function²⁰</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹No uniform criteria exists to assess the presence of right ventricular dysfunction. In the majority of studies included in this meta-analysis, right ventricular dysfunction was defined as right ventricular hypokinesis as assessed by a qualitative evaluation of the right ventricular wall motion.
²Circulatory collapse defined as loss of consciousness or systolic blood pressure ≤80 mm Hg.
³Technetium-99m pyrophosphate scintigraphy and a dynamic flow study performed to detect right ventricular involvement.
⁴Acute cor pulmonale defined as RV dilation (a right ventricular end-diastolic area to left ventricular end-diastolic area ratio >0.6 on long-axis view) associated with septal dyskinesia on the short-axis view.
⁵Presence of RHF with no demonstrable cause other than COPD.
⁶RV dysfunction defined as a right ventricular ejection fraction (RVEF) <45% as determined by radionuclide ventriculography.
⁷Defined as a mean pulmonary artery pressure of >25 mm Hg on cardiac catheterization.
⁸RV function evaluated with a multimodal approach (lateral tricuspid annulus peak systolic velocity was used in association with the relative RV to LV size, motion of the RV wall, and expert evaluation).
⁹Reproduced with the permission of Stanford University School of Medicine.
The initial physical exam centers on a determination of CVP and signs of low cardiac output or hemodynamic compromise. In the absence of significant tricuspid valve stenosis, CVP provides a reasonable estimate of the filling pressure of the RV, in much the same way that the pulmonary capillary wedge pressure can estimate LV diastolic pressure.\(^1\)

Jugular venous pressure (JVP) is a surrogate for CVP, but it can be measured by direct visualization of the internal jugular vein. To perform the exam, position the patient at a 45-degree angle and measure at the vertical height of the jugular vein, just above the sternal angle (or angle of Louis).\(^3\) Calculate the JVP by adding 5 cm to this height (the distance from the middle of the right atrium to the sternal angle). CVP can also be estimated using ultrasound and examining the inferior vena cava (IVC) diameter (see Echocardiography below). A JVP >8 cm is suggestive of elevated right-sided filling pressures.

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS**

Identifying conditions that mimic RV failure requires consideration of disease processes that cause either a real or perceived elevation in CVP. For example, constrictive pericarditis produces elevated right-sided filling pressures with elevations in CVP as well as signs and symptoms of acute heart failure. Superior vena cava syndrome, as might be seen in patients with a history of central venous catheters, device placement, or known malignancies, can present with an increase in jugular venous distension, or height, without a true elevation in right atrial pressure.

Because lower extremity edema, abdominal ascites, and even hepatic engorgement can result from RVF, other syndromes marked by anasarca—or total body fluid excess—must also be excluded. Cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, or disorders disruptive of the...
hepatic circulation (such as Budd-Chiari or hepatic venoocclusive disease) may produce a pattern of edema identical to that found in states of RVF.

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

**Electrocardiogram**

The initial evaluation of a patient with suspected RV dysfunction should begin with an assessment using simple and noninvasive diagnostic modalities. An electrocardiogram (ECG) can offer significant insight into the presence or absence of RV strain. Significant ECG findings include an S1Q3T3 pattern, right axis deviation, or signs of RV hypertrophy such as a dominant R wave in V1 and V2 with a prominent S wave in V5 and V6. A low threshold for performing a right-sided ECG (providing the additional leads of V3R to V6R) can improve the detection of RV infarction and inferior wall ischemia. In a prospective study of patients with acute inferior myocardial infarction (MI) complicated by RV involvement (evidenced by ST-segment elevation in V4R), in-hospital mortality rate was significantly higher when compared to those with inferior MI in the absence of RV ischemia (31% vs. 6%, respectively). Posterior MI, especially in patients with a right dominant coronary circulation, represents another potential insult to RV perfusion. This can manifest with subtle ECG findings, including prominent R wave amplitude and ST depressions in V1 to V3. However, more demonstrative ST-segment elevations can become evident with the use of posterior or the so-called esophageal ECG leads (V7 to V9).

**Chest Radiography**

Appreciating signs of RV enlargement on a single- or two-view chest x-ray (CXR) requires close attention to subtle findings. PH and RV hypertrophy may produce enlargement of the proximal pulmonary arteries or a reduction in retrosternal air space (Fig. 15.2). Classic CXR findings in PE include Westermark sign (focal oligemia) and Hampton hump (peripheral area of opacification representing pulmonary infarction); note that these findings lack in sensitivity and specificity. The absence of pulmonary edema in the setting of elevated JVP is considered to be the most specific sign for isolated RVF.

**FIGURE 15.2** Signs of right ventricular hypertrophy/pulmonary hypertension. A: Enlarged pulmonary arteries and (B) loss of retrosternal airspace in a patient with chronic PAH.
Once conventional imaging studies such as CXR and computed tomography demonstrate evidence for RV dysfunction, however, the disease process is likely already advanced.

**Echocardiography**

Bedside portable ultrasound and echocardiography has gained widespread popularity and can provide direct assessment of cardiac function. Findings indicative of RV dysfunction include tricuspid regurgitation, RV hypokinesis or dilatation (Fig. 15.3), right atrial enlargement, and paradoxical septal motion.\(^{12,37}\) CVP can be evaluated echocardiographically by measurement of the degree of IVC collapse with inspiration.\(^{42}\) RV failure due to acute PE—or occasionally MI—may present with diffuse hypokinesis of the RV free wall sparing the apex (McConnell sign).\(^{3}\) Echocardiographic findings in RV failure are discussed in further detail in Chapter 6.

**Laboratory Investigation**

Poor end-organ perfusion as a result of diminished right heart function may be suggested by elevations in serum lactate or evidenced by markers of organ-specific injury such as serum creatinine (kidney) or hepatic function tests and bilirubin (liver).\(^{37}\) Troponin and brain natriuretic peptide (BNP)—two biomarkers of cardiac injury—also have predictive value in the setting of RV dysfunction due to PE or acute exacerbations of PH. In acute PE, an elevated troponin T was found to be associated with in-hospital and 30-day mortality, prolonged hypotension, cardiogenic shock, and need for resuscitation.\(^{43,44}\) BNP has also been shown to have significant predictive value for outcomes in PE. In one study of 79 patients with acute PE, those who had an uncomplicated clinical course (16.5%) all had normal BNP values, whereas all in-hospital deaths and serious events occurred in the group with elevated measures. BNP also serves as a reliable marker of RV strain and correlates well with echocardiographic measurements of RV/LV ratio and IVC dimension.\(^{45}\) In patients with PAH requiring hospitalization for ICU management of acute right heart failure, elevations in admission BNP, C-reactive protein, and creatinine were found to negatively correlate with survival.\(^{20}\)

**FIGURE 15.3** Bedside echocardiogram in short-axis view demonstrating sizeable RV dilatation in a patient with PH. (RV, right ventricle; LV, Left ventricle.)
MONITORING AND SUPPORTIVE CARE

Initial treatment of RVF requires the basic supportive care necessary for all critically ill patients. Monitoring of blood pressure, heart rate, and pulse oximetry—whether performed noninvasively or with the assistance of an intra-arterial catheter—is essential. Central venous access, in addition to enabling complex pharmacotherapy, offers the additional benefit of regular CVP measurement and central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO₂), data that can assist in the assessment of response to vasoactive medications and fluid therapy.

Supplemental oxygen administration to maintain oxygen saturation >92% can reverse one of the more injurious influences on RV afterload, namely, hypoxic vasoconstriction (see below). Basic lab work, including a complete blood count, coagulation studies, and a comprehensive metabolic panel, permits identification of easily correctable disorders such as anemia, electrolyte or acid/base abnormalities, as well as renal or hepatic dysfunction.

Once advanced monitoring is in place, and initial diagnostic studies performed, targeted interventions should be implemented to relieve RV strain. Prior to initiating medical therapy, however, consideration of the following unique characteristics of RV failure can help avoid unintentional exacerbation of cardiopulmonary function.

Afterload Reduction
Administration of RV afterload-reducing agents such as inhaled nitric oxide can precipitate acute pulmonary edema if the RV failure is secondary to a left-sided cardiac process (e.g., LV systolic or diastolic failure, mitral stenosis). This occurs as a result of decreased pulmonary vascular resistance in the face of a relatively fixed left-sided obstruction or defect.⁴⁶

Inotropic Support
In the case of RV failure presenting with systemic hypotension, initiation of certain vasopressor therapies may become necessary. There is no evidence to suggest that one inotrope or vasopressor has greater success than another at maintaining circulatory support in RVF. However, careful consideration should precede the use of strong alpha-1 agonists as they can increase pulmonary vascular tone and further impinge on RV function.

Volume Resuscitation
Although a trial of intravenous volume administration may be appropriate in hypotensive patients without an increased CVP or evidence of pulmonary edema (as in the case of right ventricular MI), signs of RV volume overload including a CVP of >12 to 15 mm Hg should preclude this therapy. In these instances, initiation of vasopressors or inotropes may be preferable; if uncertainty exists, aggressive fluid therapy should be avoided. A trial bolus of 500 cc of crystalloid, with careful monitoring of clinical response, should be used instead.³,⁴⁷

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Oxygen
Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction—although normally a protective physiologic response against V/Q mismatching when pO₂ levels drop below 50 to 60 mm Hg—requires a reversal in instances of life-threatening RV failure. Application of supplemental oxygen via nasal cannula, Venturi mask, simple face mask, nonbreathing face mask, or other device depending on the degree of hypoxia can reduce pulmonary vascular
Additionally, systemic acidosis, if present, can worsen hypoxic vasoconstriction and should be corrected.49

**Nitric Oxide**
Available in the inhaled form (iNO), nitric oxide can diffuse rapidly across the alveolo-capillary membrane into adjacent smooth muscle of pulmonary vessels to increase cyclic guanosine monophosphate, leading to vasodilatation. In right heart failure (RHF), iNO is an attractive therapeutic option given its ability to preferentially improve perfusion to well-ventilated pulmonary segments while avoiding unwanted systemic hypotension (prevented by the scavenging of NO by native hemoglobin). Initial dosing begins at 20 parts per million or less; higher concentrations provide little additional hemodynamic benefit.50 Disadvantages of iNO include the risk of developing methemoglobinemia as well as rebound PH upon discontinuation.51,52

**Vasopressors and Inotropes**
Improvement of a poorly contractile RV requires augmentation of ventricular perfusion, RV ejection fraction, and ultimately stroke volume. Various agents have been employed for this purpose, and each agent comes with different risks and benefits depending on the underlying etiology of the dysfunction (Table 15.3). Definitive evidence to guide choice of vasopressor or inotrope in patients with acute RHF is lacking. Experimental studies suggest that dobutamine may be more beneficial than norepinephrine.47,54 A recent extensive literature review gave weak evidence-based recommendations for the use of norepinephrine, vasopressin, dobutamine, and levosimendan. Strong recommendations were made for the use of PDE3 inhibitors (e.g., milrinone) for improvement in RV performance and reduction in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). A strong recommendation advised against the use of dopamine in cardiogenic shock secondary to an increase in tachyarrhythmias.55

**Diuretics**
Although a key therapy for the volume-overloaded RV, achieving clinically meaningful diuresis in the emergency department may be impractical and, at times, detrimental depending upon the patient’s hemodynamic stability. Inpatient therapy in the intensive care unit may include salt and fluid restriction, intermittent or continuous administration of loop diuretics, or more rigorous approaches such as continuous or intermittent renal replacement therapy.56 In the emergency setting, however, a more reasonable approach may be to pursue diuresis or natriuresis by augmenting RV contractility, cardiac output, and, by extension, renal perfusion.

**Antiarrhythmics**
The importance of maintaining sinus rhythm and heart rate control during an episode of acute right heart failure cannot be overstated. Atrial tachyarrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation or flutter, are the most common ectopic rhythms observed in RV failure and can increase morbidity and mortality.47 Although no randomized, controlled data exist to guide the management of unstable atrial arrhythmias, consensus guidelines characterize unstable patients as those with ventricular rates >150 accompanied by ongoing chest pain or poor perfusion (a systolic blood pressure <90, heart failure, or reduced level of consciousness).57,58 Patients with hemodynamic instability due to a tachyarrhythmia,
regardless of the presence of RV strain, should receive direct current cardioversion for restoration of sinus rhythm. For those deemed appropriate for rate control or pharmacologic therapy, evidence for specific treatment in RVF is once again sparse. Digoxin, although not a first-line agent in those who can tolerate calcium channel blockers or beta-blockers, may be useful in decompensated heart failure given its modest inotropic properties and ability to slow conduction velocity. PH patients with evidence of RV dysfunction in sinus rhythm have demonstrated improvements in cardiac output following the administration of this agent. Figure 15.4 summarizes a therapeutic approach to the patient with RV failure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 15.3 Common Agents Used in the Treatment of RV Failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agent/Class</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catecholamines</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epinephrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norepinephrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dobutamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., milrinone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasopressin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium-sensitizing agents (e.g., levosimendan)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

Sepsis
The current accepted definition of sepsis-induced myocardial dysfunction requires only a reduced LV ejection fraction—in the absence of cardiac disease—that demonstrates reversibility on the correction of the septic state. Sepsis-induced cardiomyopathy affects both ventricles and causes dilation, diminished ejection fraction, and poor response to fluid resuscitation and catecholamines. The underlying pathophysiologic mechanisms are myriad; however, increased concentrations of myocardial suppressant substances such as bacterial toxins, cytokines, tumor necrosis factor–alpha, interleukin–1, and nitric oxide have been implicated. Key treatment strategies involve correction of the underlying infectious disease while providing adequate fluid resuscitation and vasopressor support so as to optimize mean arterial pressure and organ perfusion.

Severe Pulmonary Hypertension
Whether idiopathic or originating from a known cause, this disease group may require consideration of specialized therapies such as prostacyclin derivatives (e.g., epoprostenol, iloprost), endothelin receptor antagonists (e.g., bosentan), and phosphodiesterase inhibitors.
inhibitors (e.g., sildenafil) due to marked elevations in pulmonary vascular resistance. However, such advanced pharmacologic interventions can usually be delayed until clinical stability and transfer to an intensive care setting has occurred. Enlisting specialist consultation early in the clinical course should always be considered.

**Massive Pulmonary Embolism**

The defining characteristics of massive PE include arterial hypotension (systolic arterial pressure <90 mm Hg or a drop in systolic arterial pressure of at least 40 mm Hg for at least 15 minutes) and cardiogenic shock. Diagnosis is suggested by RV strain demonstrated on ECG as well as RV dilation on echocardiogram. Following diagnosis, aggressive interventions such as thrombolysis or thrombectomy (performed via surgical or interventional radiologic methods) in addition to systemic anticoagulation may become necessary. A detailed discussion of massive PE is provided in Chapter 11.

**Mechanical Ventilation**

In the event that intubation and mechanical ventilation become necessary, the physiologic characteristics of RV dysfunction should be carefully considered. High tidal volumes \( V_T \) and positive end-expiratory pressures (PEEP) can increase pulmonary arterial and right atrial pressures, worsen tricuspid regurgitation, increase RV afterload, and decrease preload. This contrasts with the influence of positive pressure ventilation on the failing left ventricle, where reductions in preload and afterload can be a welcome effect. As such, the lowest \( V_T \) and PEEP settings should be sought in order to help preserve adequate oxygenation and ventilation. It is equally important to avoid excessive hypercapnia, which can exacerbate pulmonary vasoconstriction and lead to an increase in RV afterload. This can be attenuated with some measure of hyperventilation, although care must be taken to avoid air trapping (especially in those with a history of obstructive lung disease) that can lead to elevated pleural and pericardial pressures and impaired diastolic filling.

**Pregnancy**

Maternal and fetal mortality risk is increased in the presence of cardiac disease. Pregnancy in the setting of PH, for example, is associated with a combined mortality rate that approaches 50%. In general, the goals of treatment in pregnant patients are similar to those in nonpregnant patients. Periods of greatest risk include the second trimester and active labor and delivery. Consultation with a cardiologist, and if available, a maternal–fetal medicine specialist, is warranted early in the clinical course.

**Advanced Mechanical Support**

In more severe cases of circulatory collapse, advanced mechanical support devices, including ventricular assist devices or extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, may have clinical utility. These interventions as well as measures such as intraaortic balloon counterpulsation and atrial septostomy have been implemented successfully in cases of severe PH and massive PE and as a bridge to lung transplantation. Although only low-grade evidence exists for their use, such salvage therapies merit consideration, especially in centers with advanced cardiothoracic surgical capability.
CONCLUSION

Recognizing and successfully treating acute right heart failure require the consideration of a unique collection of illnesses and thoughtful integration of critical care resources. Although some of the available strategies and pharmacotherapies differ from those used in left ventricular disease, the underlying treatment principles are much the same. All clinical efforts should be aimed at preserving and aiding myocardial function, while maintaining focus on correction of precipitating illness and contributing systemic comorbidities. Historically, right ventricular dysfunction has been the subject of less academic study than left ventricular disorders. Future investigation, from both the clinical and basic science realms, will be needed to delineate the optimal therapeutic approach. At present, clinicians faced with the acutely failing RV may still draw upon a broad armamentarium to achieve hemodynamic and respiratory stability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Piazza et al., Chest. 2005</td>
<td>Review article</td>
<td>Excellent summary of pathophysiology of RV failure and mechanisms of successful treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simonneau et al., J Am Coll Cardiol. 2009</td>
<td>The classification of PAH as developed at the World Conference on PH in Dana Point, CA, in 2008</td>
<td>PH classification has undergone a number of revisions since the initial WHO-endorsed meeting in 1973. This latest symposium addressed changes to the definitions of familial PAH, schistosomiasis, hemolytic anemia, and chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension (CTEPH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zehender et al., N Engl J Med. 1993</td>
<td>Prospective 5-y study of 200 patients with acute inferior MIs</td>
<td>ST-segment elevation in V4R found to be a reliable indicator of RV involvement during acute inferior MI. Patients with ST-segment elevations in V4R had higher in-hospital mortality (31% vs. 6%, ( p &lt; 0.001 )), and a higher incidence of major complications (64% vs. 28%, ( p &lt; 0.001 )) than those without ST-segment elevation in V4R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giannitsis et al., Circulation. 2000</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective study of troponin T levels in 56 patients with confirmed PE</td>
<td>Elevated troponin found in 32%, In-hospital death (OR 23.6, 95% CI 3.3–265.3), prolonged hypotension and cardiogenic shock (OR 11.4, 95% CI 2.1–63.4), and need for resuscitation (OR 18.0, 95% CI 2.6–124.3) were more prevalent in patients with elevated troponin T. The presence of troponin elevation, in the absence of coronary artery disease, underscored the hypothesis of ischemic injury to the RV in acute PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruszczyk et al., Eur Respir J. 2003</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective study of 79 patients with acute PE: Compared NT-proBNP to echocardiography for assessment of severity of RV overload</td>
<td>16.5% of patients had normal NT-proBNP values and had an uncomplicated clinical course, whereas all in-hospital deaths and serious events occurred in the group with elevated levels. Additionally, RV to left ventricular ratio and IVC dimension correlated with NT-proBNP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price et al., Crit Care. 2010</td>
<td>Systematic literature review from 1980 to 2010 of over 200 studies regarding intensive care management of pulmonary vascular dysfunction</td>
<td>Evidence level recommendations made regarding management of volume use, specific vaspressors/inotropes, pulmonary vasodilators, and mechanical therapies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio.
REFERENCES

Hypertensive Crises
Anand Swaminathan and Michael P. Jones

BACKGROUND
Hypertension affects an estimated 50 million individuals in the United States.\(^1\) Management of this largely preventable disease focuses on chronic reduction of blood pressure through dietary and lifestyle modifications and, when necessary, pharmacologic management. Patients with hypertension frequently seek emergency care, and hypertension is one of the most common primary diagnoses of patients admitted with critical illness.

Hypertensive emergency refers to the presence of end-organ damage directly attributable to uncontrolled elevations in blood pressure and requires immediate administration of antihypertensive medications to prevent irreversible injury. Hypertensive urgency, a more benign diagnosis, is defined as symptomatic (e.g., headache, shortness of breath, anxiety) hypertension without evidence of end-organ damage. The most common presentations of hypertensive emergency include cerebral infarction or hemorrhage (24.5%), acute pulmonary edema (APE) (22.5%), and hypertensive encephalopathy (16.3%). Other complications include acute coronary syndrome (ACS), aortic dissection (AD), preeclampsia and eclampsia, acute renal failure, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, and hypertensive retinopathy.

This chapter presents an approach to the management of severe hypertension in the setting of four important emergency department (ED) diagnostic concerns: APE, hypertensive encephalopathy, ACS, and AD. Stroke—the most common of all hypertensive emergencies—is addressed in detail in Chapter 20. A review of antihypertensive agents used in the management of these four conditions is provided in Tables 16.1 and 16.2.

ACUTE PULMONARY EDEMA

History and Physical Exam
Cardiogenic APE is a relatively common clinical entity in the ED and carries a mortality rate of 15% to 20%. The most common presenting complaints are dyspnea, tachypnea, and, in severe cases, cough productive of frothy sputum.

The history and physical exam in patients with APE should focus on determining the etiology of the heart failure causing the edema. Potential etiologies include myocardial infarction (MI), exacerbation of chronic CHF, mitral/aortic valve dysfunction, and
infection. Eliciting a history of chronic renal failure is also important, as these patients, if volume overloaded, will often require hemodialysis to remove excess fluid. Physical exam will reveal findings—such as tachypnea and abnormal lung sounds—common to other disease processes such as pneumonia. Findings more specific to APE include elevated jugular venous pressure and an S₃ gallop.²³ New murmurs are also important to note as these may suggest rupture of a valve leaflet—a critical finding that can require surgical management.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

There is no single test that confirms the diagnosis of APE. Diagnostic evaluation commonly employs laboratory testing, electrocardiogram (ECG), chest radiography (CXR), and bedside ultrasound (US). Serum B-type natriuretic peptide is a relatively sensitive marker for APE (90%), but lacks specificity (76%).⁴ Cardiac-specific troponin (cTnT) assays can be helpful in establishing myocardial ischemia or infarction as the underlying cause of APE, but troponin levels may also be elevated secondary to increased right ventricular wall stress, rate-related or stress ischemia, or underlying end-stage renal disease (ESRD).⁵ As a result, many patients with CHF will have chronically mild troponin elevations. A number of trials have found a correlation between an elevated cTnT and increased mortality in acute heart failure patients.⁶⁷

The ECG is an essential diagnostic test in APE, as it can reveal precipitating ischemia or dysrhythmias that require additional interventions (cardiac catheterization or rate/rhythm control, respectively). The CXR is equally important; in diagnosing APE, its findings of cephalization, interstitial edema, and alveolar edema are highly specific (96%, 98%, and 99%, respectively) but have low sensitivity (41%, 27%, and 6%, respectively). Up to 18% of CXRs in patients with APE will demonstrate no vascular congestion.⁸⁹ Finally, bedside ultrasonography is a relatively new but valuable tool for evaluation of patients with suspected APE. Bedside transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) can be used to estimate left ventricular (LV) function and diagnose valvular rupture; it can also reveal B-lines, a highly sensitive and specific finding (97% and 95%, respectively) for interstitial edema. In trained hands, lung ultrasonography is more accurate than plain radiography for the diagnosis of APE.¹⁰¹¹

**Management Guidelines**

In patients with APE, treatment focuses on reducing the work of breathing (and thus the risk of respiratory failure) and shifting fluid out of the interstitial and alveolar spaces through reduction of preload and afterload. Respiratory support for patients with APE traditionally necessitated intubation and mechanical ventilation. In the last 10 years, the use of noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) using continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) and bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) has become increasingly common. NIPPV, by increasing intrathoracic pressure, effects a reduction in preload, thereby decreasing blood flow into the pulmonary vasculature and reducing pulmonary capillary pressures. Although not shown to reduce mortality, NIPPV has been associated with decreased need for intubation, fewer critical care unit admissions, and fewer overall treatment failures.¹²⁻¹⁶

Pharmacologic treatment of increased preload emphasizes use of nitrates (specifically nitroglycerin), morphine sulfate, and loop diuretics (furosemide).
Nitroglycerin (sublingual, topical, or intravenous) is a potent vasodilator, and small studies have shown it to be capable of producing rapid, significant decreases in LV pressure. Sublingual nitroglycerin (SLNTG) should be started immediately upon recognition of APE and followed by a continuous IV infusion. A 400-mcg tab of SLNTG provides a dose equivalent to an intravenous infusion of 80 mcg/min for 5 minutes, so the IV infusion should be started at this or a similar infusion rate and rapidly titrated to effect. Morphine and loop diuretics have been used for decades in the treatment of APE, but the physiologic rationale for their efficacy is flawed, and there is little evidence to support their use. The ADHERE study group found that APE patients receiving morphine had increased rates of mechanical ventilation (15.4% vs. 2.8%), ICU admissions (38.7% vs. 14.4%), and mortality (13.0% vs. 2.4%). These results have also been reproduced in ED-based studies. Loop diuretics for the treatment of APE historically were recommended based on the cardiorenal pathogenesis model, which hypothesized that edema and decreased cardiac function result from decreased kidney function and subsequent volume overload. However, more recent studies have shown that less than half of patients with APE have total body increased volume. Furosemide was shown to initially increase PCWP in patients in the ICU with APE and did not lead to significant drops in preload until 20 minutes after administration. Additionally, loop diuretics activate the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS) and the sympathetic nervous system, leading to increased vasoconstriction and impaired cardiac function. Finally, many patients with APE also have ESRD and will not benefit from loop diuretics regardless of volume status.

Correction of elevated afterload—the result of activation of the RAAS and an increase in sympathetic drive—is equally important in the management of APE; afterload reduction improves LV function and helps restore adequate circulation. Bilevel positive airway pressure (BPAP), in addition to its ability to reduce preload and support respiratory function, produces afterload reduction; however, the mechanism of this response is not fully understood. High-dose IV nitroglycerin (>100 mcg/min) also results in arterial vasodilation and afterload reduction. The use of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) for afterload reduction in the treatment of cardiogenic APE is supported by a number of small studies. One of these demonstrated a reduced need for mechanical ventilation in patients receiving ACEI, while a second demonstrated a lower ICU admission rate (OR = 0.29) and lower intubation rates (OR = 0.16) with its use. Nicardipine is another alternative for achieving afterload reduction; it can be rapidly titrated and effects a coronary blood flow increase, which may be beneficial in systolic heart failure.

Finally, emphasis should be placed on identifying reversible causes of APE and involving subspecialty consultation—cardiac catheterization for AMI, cardiac surgery for valvular rupture, and hemodialysis for ESRD—as appropriate.

HYPERTENSIVE ENCEPHALOPATHY

History and Physical Exam

Hypertensive encephalopathy is one of the more insidious consequences of uncontrolled hypertension. It is classically defined as the triad of hypertension, altered mental status,
Chapter 16  Hypertensive Crises  211

and papilledema. Hypertensive encephalopathy must be treated immediately to prevent further end-organ damage. First described in 1928, hypertensive encephalopathy is a rare disease that leads to death if untreated.

A patient history may be difficult to obtain, as these patients may in fact be obtunded; in this case, evaluation for other life-threatening causes of altered mental status—such as hypoglycemia, hypoxia, and intracranial injury—should take precedence. Once these causes have been ruled out, hypertensive encephalopathy should be considered. Symptoms will commonly include headache, irritability and nausea. Seizures may also be reported. Physical exam should center on accurate measurement of blood pressure (using an appropriately sized cuff or arterial blood pressure monitoring) and a detailed neurologic examination looking for focal deficits. Papilledema and retinal hemorrhages may be observed. There is no set value of measured blood pressure required for hypertensive encephalopathy; a patient with long-standing hypertension may tolerate blood pressures greater than 200 mm Hg systolic and 150 mm Hg diastolic, while a pregnant woman or child can develop symptoms at diastolic blood pressures greater than 100 mm Hg.

Diagnostic Evaluation
Hypertensive encephalopathy is a diagnosis of exclusion. Its workup includes a non-contrast CT head to rule out mass lesion or hemorrhagic or ischemic stroke as well as laboratory examinations to exclude metabolic causes of altered mental status. Suggestive findings on CT include signs of edema, particularly in the posterior regions. Brain MRI will show edema of a vasogenic origin, but obtaining this degree of imaging is often neither feasible nor necessary in the ED, unless there is concern for a more subtle focal insult not visualized on CT.

Electroencephalographic (EEG) examination will show evidence of generalized slowing and epileptiform discharges as well as loss of alpha-wave rhythms, signifying an impaired consciousness. The utility of continuous EEG monitoring in the ED, however, is not well established; this is in part due to the typically rapid improvement in symptoms following initiation of aggressive therapy, and in part to the practical challenges of obtaining an EEG in the ED.

Management Guidelines
Hypertensive encephalopathy is a fully reversible condition if appropriate treatment is instituted in a timely manner. The mainstay of treatment is a rapid, but controlled, decline in blood pressure, with adequate maintenance of cerebral perfusion pressure. Most experts recommend a reduction in mean arterial pressure of no more than 20% to 25% in the first hour of therapy guided by an arterial blood pressure monitor for more timely and accurate monitoring. In a busy emergency department, at a minimum, the blood pressure should be noninvasively monitored every 3 to 5 minutes until more invasive monitoring can be made available. Preferred antihypertensive agents include sodium nitroprusside, labetalol, and nicardipine.

Literature suggests that labetalol, in particular, has minimal impact on cerebral perfusion pressure—making it optimal for treating hypertensive encephalopathy. Unlike pure beta-blocking agents (e.g., esmolol) that reduce cardiac
output, labetalol reduces systemic vascular resistance (SVR) without reducing total peripheral blood flow, which is essential in maintaining cerebral, renal, and cardiac perfusion.\textsuperscript{29–32}

\section*{ACUTE CORONARY SYNDROME}

\textbf{History and Physical Exam}

Hypertension is a known risk factor for the development of coronary artery disease.\textsuperscript{1,33} Acute elevations in blood pressure can lead to increased LV demand without a proportionate increase in myocardial perfusion, resulting in ischemia. In all patients with elevated blood pressure who complain of chest pain or chest pain equivalents (e.g., shortness of breath), ACS should be considered.

The physical exam in the patient with ACS is nonspecific but plays an important role in ruling out the alternative diagnoses of AD and APE. The presence, in particular, of pulse deficits, aortic insufficiency murmurs, and neurologic deficits points to AD.\textsuperscript{26} The presence of jugular venous distension, lower extremity edema, severe dyspnea, and crackles on pulmonary exam points to APE.

\textbf{Diagnostic Evaluation}

ECG, CXR, bedside echocardiography, and serum cardiac enzyme testing are essential to the evaluation of ACS in the setting of hypertensive emergency. An ECG should be performed immediately and evaluated for the presence of an ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI) necessitating emergent cardiac catheterization. While CXR rarely establishes a diagnosis of ACS on its own, it is helpful in identifying alternative hypertensive emergencies (e.g., AD or APE). Similarly, echocardiography may reveal LV wall motion abnormalities consistent with MI, but may also show findings consistent with AD (pericardial effusion, proximal dissection flap) or APE (B-lines, flail leaflet). An elevated serum cardiac troponin (cTn) supports a diagnosis of ACS; however, it is important to note that cTn may be elevated in a number of disease processes including pericarditis/myocarditis, pulmonary embolism, tachydysrhythmias, takotsubo cardiomyopathy, ESRD, sepsis, stroke, and rhabdomyolysis.\textsuperscript{5}

\textbf{Management Guidelines}

The treatment of ACS in the setting of hypertensive emergency requires the use of pharmacologic agents directed both at blood pressure control—to reduce shear forces, LV strain, and platelet activation—and platelet inhibition. Antiplatelet agent recommendations can be found in the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) guidelines.\textsuperscript{34,35} For rapid reduction in blood pressure, nitroglycerin and beta-blockers are the most commonly recommended agents.\textsuperscript{34,35} Nitroglycerin (sublingual or intravenous) reduces both LV filling pressure and SVR, thereby decreasing both myocardial oxygen demand and the likelihood of further ischemia.\textsuperscript{36} At higher doses, nitroglycerin produces coronary artery vasodilation.\textsuperscript{36} These factors, along with its short half-life and ease in titration, make it an ideal therapeutic agent in hypertension-associated ACS.
Beta-blockers are beneficial both for blood pressure reduction and for prevention of ventricular dysrythmias in ACS. The ACC/AHA recommends beta-blockers be given within 24 hours of presentation, with a goal of 20% to 30% blood pressure reduction. Although both labetalol and esmolol are commonly recommended, esmolol has a more favorable profile with rapid onset, short half-life, and ease of titration. Beta-blocking agents should, however, be used with caution in the setting of ACS, as these agents can exacerbate LV failure. The COMMIT trial found that patients with acute MI given beta-blockers early in their clinical course had higher rates of cardiogenic shock and recommended beta-blocker therapy be considered only after a patient’s hemodynamic condition had stabilized. In patients at risk for cardiogenic shock, it is advisable to obtain an echocardiogram to further assess cardiac function prior to the administration of intravenous beta-blockers.

AORTIC DISSECTION

History and Physical Exam
AD represents one of the most challenging diagnoses to make in the emergency department. The disease carries a high mortality rate (Stanford type A, 34.9%, and Stanford type B, 14.9%) and should be considered in any patient with hypertension and a complaint of chest or back pain. The majority of patients with AD complain of chest pain (72.7%), abrupt onset of pain (84.8%), and severe pain at onset (90.6%). The classic presentation—sudden onset of sharp or tearing chest pain radiating to the back—is, however, rarely observed. Patients with Stanford type B dissections (descending aorta only) can present with isolated back pain.

Commonly described physical exam findings are equally unreliable in ruling out AD. While the majority of patients (72.1%) have a history of hypertension, only 50% will be hypertensive on presentation (in the patient in whom an ascending dissection has resulted in a pericardial effusion, hypotension may actually be observed). Other exam findings, including a murmur of aortic insufficiency (31.6%) and pulse deficit (15.1%), are equally unlikely to be found. However, in a patient with chest pain that has one of these findings, the diagnosis of AD should be more seriously considered.

Diagnostic Evaluation
The most important diagnostic modalities in AD are the ECG, CXR, and chest CT with IV contrast. An ECG will frequently demonstrate either no abnormal findings or nonspecific findings (31.3% and 41.4%, respectively); about 3.2%, however, will show findings consistent with an STEMI. An STEMI can be observed in the setting of an ascending AD when the dissection extends into either the right or left coronary ostium, leading to occlusion of any of the major coronary arteries. The most common coronary artery involvement occurs via extension into the right coronary artery leading to an inferior wall infarction. In patients with evidence of STEMI on ECG, a diagnosis of AD should be considered if the patient’s symptoms or presentation are atypical for ACS.

Chest radiography may reveal a widened mediastinum (61.6%) or abnormal aortic contour (49.6%), but is normal in up to 15% of patients. Chest CT with IV contrast,
which has a high sensitivity (95%) and specificity (87% to 100%) and can be performed rapidly, is the primary diagnostic modality for AD in the ED. Transesophageal echocardiography is an effective alternative imaging modality (sensitivity of 98%, specificity of 95%) for patients that cannot tolerate CT, but may not be available in the ED and/or may delay diagnosis. Although TTE is rarely adequate to make a definitive diagnosis of AD, it can help identify pericardial effusions or tamponade that provide indirect evidence of AD.

Management Guidelines

Once AD is diagnosed, all efforts should be made to obtain emergent cardiothoracic surgery consultation for operative repair. Mortality increases by 1% to 2% for every hour from symptom onset to definitive treatment. ED management should focus on “anti-impulse therapy,” that is, control of blood pressure and heart rate in order to reduce the shear forces of LV ejection (dP/dT). Elevated shear forces result in a forceful flow of blood against the dissection flap that can cause the flap to extend. AD is the only hypertensive emergency in which rapid lowering of blood pressure (ideally within 5 to 10 minutes) is indicated. The recommended target systolic blood pressure is 100 to 110 mm Hg, with some experts advocating lowering to subnormal numbers (SBP = 90 to 100). Heart rate should be lowered to less than 60 bpm.

First-line agents for anti-impulse therapy are beta-blockers, as they have the ability to lower heart rate and blood pressure simultaneously. Although there is no consensus on a preferred beta blocker, esmolol’s rapid onset and ease of titration make it an ideal agent. Labetalol can be used, but has a slower onset of action and a longer half-life and is more difficult to titrate. If beta-blockers are contraindicated, calcium channel blockers (CCBs) (e.g., diltiazem) are acceptable alternatives.

Once goal heart rate is achieved, an arterial vasodilator should be added to achieve an SBP <110 mm Hg. Historically, sodium nitroprusside was the vasodilator of choice, but this agent has multiple limitations, including labile blood pressure and reflex tachycardia. Clevidipine and nicardipine offer more reliable effects on blood pressure. Both agents are dihydropyridine CCBs and pure afterload reducers that have a rapid onset and a short half-life, are easily titratable, and have been demonstrated safe to use concurrently with intravenous beta-1-selective agents. An ED-based study found that 89% of patients with hypertensive emergencies who received clevidipine reached goal BP targets within 30 minutes. If neither of these agents is available, intravenous nitroglycerin at higher doses may provide adequate blood pressure control, however use as a solo agent can produce a reflex tachycardia.

Finally, bedside US should be performed in all patients with AD to determine whether the patient has cardiac tamponade and requires immediate pericardiocentesis.

CONCLUSION

Hypertensive crisis requires prompt intervention. Recognition of the common complications of severe hypertension and appreciation of optimal antihypertensive agents enable the emergency physician to respond to these emergencies in a timely and effective manner.
### TABLE 16.1
Common Antihypertensive Agents—Preferred Use, Starting Dose, Side Effects, and Contraindications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antihypertensive Agent</th>
<th>Preferred Use</th>
<th>Starting Dose</th>
<th>Side Effects and Contraindications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium nitroprusside</td>
<td>Hypertensive encephalopathy, AD†</td>
<td>0.25–10 mcg/kg/min IV gtt</td>
<td>Reflex tachycardia, coronary steal, methemoglobinemia. Is metabolized to cyanide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitroglycerin</td>
<td>MI, CHF, LV dysfunction</td>
<td>5–100 mcg/min IV gtt</td>
<td>Hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contraindicated in severe aortic stenosis, LV outflow obstruction, and inferior wall MI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicardipine</td>
<td>Hypertensive encephalopathy, MI, CHF, cerebral infarction/hemorrhage</td>
<td>5 mg/h IV gtt, increasing by 2.5 mg/h IV every 5 min to a maximum of 30 mg/h IV gtt</td>
<td>Hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contraindicated in severe aortic stenosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reflex tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labetalol</td>
<td>Hypertensive encephalopathy, MI, preeclampsia/eclampsia, cerebral infarction/hemorrhage</td>
<td>20–80 mg IV bolus every 10 min, 0.5–2 mg/min IV gtt</td>
<td>Hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contraindicated in acute asthma, COPD, acute CHF, heart block, and sympathomimetic intoxication (e.g., cocaine)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esmolol</td>
<td>Hypertensive encephalopathy, MI, eclampsia, cerebral infarction/hemorrhage</td>
<td>Loading dose 500 mcg/kg IV over 1 min, 25–50 mcg/kg/min IV gtt</td>
<td>See labetalol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenoldopam</td>
<td>Acute renal failure, CHF</td>
<td>0.1–0.6 mcg/kg/min IV gtt</td>
<td>Contraindicated in increased intraocular pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enalaprilat</td>
<td>CHF, active renin–angiotensin system</td>
<td>1.25–5 mg IV every 6 h</td>
<td>Contraindicated in pregnancy and ACEI-related angioedema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydralazine</td>
<td>Preeclampsia/eclampsia</td>
<td>5–10 mg IV bolus can be repeated every 10–15 min</td>
<td>Reflex tachycardia, CNS, and myocardial ischemia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

†Should be administered with a beta-blocker to avoid reflex tachycardia.

### TABLE 16.2
Common Antihypertensive Agents—Pharmacology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antihypertensive Agent</th>
<th>Pharmacology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Nitroprusside</td>
<td>An arterial and venous vasodilator that decreases both afterload and preload. It results in decreased cerebral blood flow while increasing intracranial pressure, making it a poor agent for patients with acute neurological conditions (e.g., hypertensive encephalopathy). Nitroprusside has a quick onset of action (seconds) and a short half life of 3–4 minutes. Coronary steal can occur in patients with coronary artery disease leading to reduction in regional blood flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitroglycerin</td>
<td>A potent vasodilator that acts mainly on the venous system. It decreases preload and also increases coronary blood flow to the subendocardium. Nitroglycerin can be administered as a paste, sublingual spray, dissolvable tablet, or an infusion. It has a rapid onset and is considered the drug of choice in hypertensive emergencies in patients with cardiac ischemia, LV dysfunction, and pulmonary edema. It is not recommended in patients with severe aortic stenosis, LV outflow obstruction, or inferior wall MI because of the potential to precipitate cardiovascular collapse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Nicardipine | A dihydropyridine CCB. It may have unique benefits in hypertensive encephalopathy as it crosses the blood–brain barrier to vasorelax the cerebrovascular smooth muscle and minimize vasospasm, especially in subarachnoid hemorrhage. Nicardipine is contraindicated in patients with advanced aortic stenosis. The principal adverse effect is abrupt reduction in blood pressure and reflex tachycardia, which can be harmful in patients with coronary heart disease.

Labetolol | A combined selective alpha-1 and nonselective beta-adrenergic receptor blocker. Its alpha:beta blocking ratio is 1:7. Labetalol begins to act in lowering blood pressure 2–5 minutes after administration and reaches it’s peak within 5–15 minutes. It reduces systemic vascular resistance without compromising cardiac output or decreasing cerebral, renal or coronary artery blood flow.

Esmolol | A short-acting selective beta-1–adrenergic blocker. It has a rapid onset and short duration of action. These properties make it easy to titrate. Esmolol is effective in blunting the reflex tachycardia induced by nitroprusside. It carries the same contraindications as other beta-blockers (see Labetalol).

Fenoldopam | A selective peripheral dopamine type 1 (D1) agonist that has recently been added to the list of medications used in the treatment of hypertensive emergencies. It causes both vasodilation and natriuresis. It has the advantage of increasing renal blood flow and improving creatinine clearance. As a result, fenoldopam may be the drug of choice in treating hypertensive emergencies in the setting of impaired renal function. It is contraindicated in patients with increased intracranial pressure.

Enalaprilat | It is the active IV form of enalapril, an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor. Enalaprilat lowers SVR, pulmonary capillary pressure, and heart rate while increasing coronary vasodilation. It has minimal effect on cerebral perfusion pressure. Some studies have found enalaprilat to be particularly useful in hypertensive emergency with APE. ACE inhibitors are contraindicated in pregnancy.

Hydralazine | Lowers blood pressure by a direct vasodilatory effect on arteriolar smooth muscle. The exact mechanism of this effect is unknown. It is the preferred agent for treatment of preeclampsia/eclampsia, but has fallen out of favor for treatment of hypertension in other conditions. Hydralazine can cause reflex tachycardia as well as CNS and myocardial ischemia. An additional downside of hydralazine is that while its half-life is 3–6 h, the total duration of effect is unpredictable and extend to 36 h.

---

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mehta and Jay. Crit Care Med. 1997</td>
<td>27 patients presenting with APE, characterized by dyspnea, tachypnea, tachycardia, accessory muscle use, bilateral rales, and typical findings of congestion on a CXR. Randomized to receive nasal CPAP vs. nasal BiPAP</td>
<td>After 30 min, significant reductions in breathing frequency, heart rate, blood pressure, and PaCO2 were observed in the BiPAP group, as were significant improvements in arterial pH and dyspnea scores. BiPAP improves ventilation and vital signs more rapidly than does CPAP in patients with APE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bussmann and Schupp. Am J Card. 1978</td>
<td>22 patients with the classical clinical signs of pulmonary edema (orthopnea, cyanosis, sweating, and rales heard at a distance) were divided into those observed clinically and those given 0.9–2.4 mg nitroglycerin sublingually one to six times at 5–10 min intervals</td>
<td>This early study showed qualitatively that the use of nitroglycerin leads to marked improvement in dyspnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMIT collaborative group. Lancet. 2005</td>
<td>Randomized placebo-controlled trial of early intravenous followed by oral metoprolol in 45,852 patients with acute MI. Prespecified co-primary outcomes were (1) composite of death, reinfection, or cardiac arrest; and (2) death from any cause during the treatment period</td>
<td>Use of early beta-blocker therapy in acute MI reduces the risk of reinfection (2.0% metoprolol vs. 2.5% placebo; OR 0.82, 0.72–0.92; p = 0.001) and ventricular fibrillation (2.5% vs. 3.0%; OR 0.83, 0.75–0.93; p = 0.001), but increases the risk of cardiogenic shock (5.0% vs. 3.9%; OR 1.30, 1.19–1.41; p &lt; 0.00001), especially during days 0–1 after admission. No difference in mortality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES


Controversies in Arrhythmia Management

Sam Senturia

BACKGROUND

Emergency physicians are tasked with managing a wide range of arrhythmias. Rather than reviewing the management of all common arrhythmias, this chapter addresses three controversies of arrhythmia management encountered by emergency and critical care physicians: (1) rate control versus rhythm control in atrial fibrillation (AF), (2) the use of adenosine for the diagnosis and treatment of undifferentiated wide complex tachycardia (WCT), and (3) the use of procainamide versus amiodarone for the treatment of ventricular tachycardia (VT). A review of the evidence relevant to these topics will help physicians make informed evidence-based decisions when these dilemmas arise.

There are no evidence-based guidelines to help the emergency physician decide when to involve critical care services in the management of arrhythmias. It is reasonable to do so when there is concern that an arrhythmia may cause hemodynamic deterioration. Whether an arrhythmia will cause hemodynamic deterioration will depend on both the electrical properties of the arrhythmia and the physiologic reserve of the patient. Many patients, for example, tolerate supraventricular tachyarrhythmias with minimal symptoms, whereas in others with compromised cardiac function, the addition of a supraventricular arrhythmia may lead to life-threatening deterioration. Ventricular arrhythmias always are considered capable of producing hemodynamic deterioration because of the risk of degenerating into pulseless VT or ventricular fibrillation. For example, AF with a wide QRS complex and a ventricular rate exceeding 200 beats per minute may represent atrioventricular (AV) conduction over an accessory pathway, which can precipitate ventricular fibrillation. A commonsense approach to arrhythmia management should involve critical care services in the following situations:

1. Patients with any arrhythmia for which there is concern about the possibility of associated hemodynamic deterioration
2. Patients with ventricular arrhythmias
3. Patients with AF, a wide QRS complex, and a ventricular rate exceeding 200 beats per minute
4. Patients with high-grade AV block, complete heart block, or bradyarrhythmias that require transvenous pacing
5. Patients successfully resuscitated from cardiac arrest
Controversy exists regarding whether rate control or rhythm control is the best management strategy for recent-onset atrial fibrillation (ROAF), a condition commonly defined as AF of <48 hours’ duration. Rate control is defined as ventricular rate control without an attempt to convert the patient to sinus rhythm. Rhythm control requires either pharmacologic or electrical cardioversion to sinus rhythm. In a recent survey of members of national emergency medicine associations, 94% (234/249) of American emergency physician respondents indicated that they use rate control, and 26% (65/249) indicated that they use rhythm control. In Canada, 71% of respondents indicated that they use rate control, and 66% indicated that they use rhythm control. In the United Kingdom and Australasia, 50% of respondents indicated that they use rhythm control. The American College of Cardiology (ACC)/American Heart Association (AHA)/European Society of Cardiology (ESC) Guidelines for the Management of Patients with AF do not provide recommendations for management in the emergency department (ED).

Large Multicenter Randomized Trials
Several multicenter randomized controlled trials (AFFIRM, RACE, PIAF, STAF, HOT CAFÉ) have compared rate and rhythm control in the general population of patients with AF and have demonstrated equivalent outcomes, including rates of death and thromboembolism. The largest of these was the AFFIRM trial, which compared outcomes in 4,060 patients aged 65 or older with AF and risk factors for stroke who were randomized to rate control (RaC) or rhythm control (RhC). After a mean follow-up of 3.5 years, the rhythm control group had an almost significant trend toward increase in the primary endpoint of death (25.9% RaC vs. 26.7% RhC). There was no significant difference between the groups in a composite secondary endpoint composed of death, disabling stroke, disabling anoxic encephalopathy, major bleeding, and cardiac arrest (32.7% RaC vs. 32.0% RhC). There also was no difference in overall frequency of central nervous system events (7.4% RaC vs. 8.9% RhC) or ischemic strokes (5.5% RaC vs. 7.1% RhC). In both groups, the majority of strokes occurred in patients who had discontinued warfarin or had a subtherapeutic international normalized ratio (INR). The rhythm control group had higher hospitalization rates during follow-up (73.0% RaC vs. 80.1% RhC). A subsequent analysis suggested that adverse effects of antiarrhythmic drugs could explain the trend toward increased mortality in the rhythm control group. In this analysis, the use of antiarrhythmic drugs was associated with increased mortality (hazard ratio 1.49), and the presence of sinus rhythm was associated with reduced mortality (hazard ratio 0.53).

The AFFIRM trial and the other large trials comparing rate control and rhythm control included very few patients with ROAF. As a result, these studies may have limited applicability to the management of ROAF in the ED. In the AFFIRM trial, the qualifying episode of AF had a duration >48 hours in more than 69% of patients and was the first episode of AF in only 36% of patients. The RACE trial included only patients who had persistent AF after a previous cardioversion. The median duration of the qualifying episode of AF was >30 days, and the median duration of AF was >300 days. An Annals of Emergency Medicine systematic review abstract reported on a
Cochrane review of the RACE, STAF, and HOT CAFÉ trials and found that the mean age in these studies was more than 60 years and the mean duration of AF was more than 200 days. The report concluded that the Cochrane review provided little evidence on which to base decisions in the ED.11

**ED Studies Comparing Rate Control with Rhythm Control**

Although the large RCTs have provided only limited information relevant to ED management, several studies of ED patients with ROAF support the efficacy and safety of rhythm control. A 2004 multicenter retrospective cohort study reported on 388 stable patients with ROAF who were electrically cardioverted in the ED.12 Eighty-six percent (332/388) were successfully converted to sinus rhythm; of these, 91% (301/332) were discharged from the ED. All patients received IV procedural sedation before cardioversion. Chemical cardioversion was attempted before electrical cardioversion in 29%. Twenty-five cardioversion attempts (6%) were associated with 28 complications: 22 complications from procedural sedation (oxygen desaturation below 90% in 12 patients, use of bag-valve-mask device in 6 patients, and emesis, hypotension, bradycardia, and agitation each in 1 patient) and 6 complications from the cardioversion itself (three minor burns, two episodes of VT, and one episode of bradycardia). Ten percent (39/388) of patients returned to the ED within 7 days, including 6% (25/388) for relapse of AF.

A 2008 prospective controlled study from the Mayo Clinic reported on 153 patients with ROAF who were randomly assigned to either protocolized treatment in an ED observation unit or hospital admission with usual care.13 The ED observation unit protocol consisted of administration of a calcium channel blocker or beta blocker for rate control followed by procedural sedation and electrical cardioversion if AF persisted at 6 hours, followed by observation for an additional 2 hours. Among the ED observation unit cohort, 32% (24/75) reverted to sinus rhythm after rate control, and 51% (38/75) required electrical cardioversion, creating an 85% (64/75) conversion rate. Nine patients (12%) of the ED cohort were admitted. The median length of stay was 10 hours for the ED observation unit group versus 25 hours for the inpatient group. During 6 months of follow-up, there were no differences between the two groups in rates of recurrent AF (10%) or MI, congestive heart failure, stroke, or death (zero patients with each diagnosis except for one MI in the inpatient group).

A recent review considered five ED studies that specifically examined the outcome of patients discharged after cardioversion in the ED.14 No patient in any of the studies suffered a thromboembolic event. Among all five studies, there were only three cardioversion-related complications that resulted in a disposition change, and each of these was an arrhythmia that resolved in the ED.

In Ontario, Canada, emergency physicians have long followed a protocolized management of ROAF called the Ottawa Aggressive Protocol.15 The protocol consists of chemical cardioversion followed, in case of failure, by electrical cardioversion and discharge from the ED (see Table 17.1). A 2010 retrospective cohort study at a university hospital in Ontario evaluated the effectiveness and safety of this protocol. Of 660 ED visits in which the protocol was applied, 40% (261/660) received rate control drugs, 100% (660/660) received IV procainamide, and 37% (243/660) subsequently underwent electrical cardioversion. The rate of conversion to sinus rhythm was 58% (385/660)
for procainamide and 92% (223/243) for electrical cardioversion. 97% (639/660) were discharged from the ED, and 90% (595/660) were discharged in normal sinus rhythm. The median lengths of stay from ED arrival to discharge were 4.9 hours (all patients), 3.9 hours (cardioversion with procainamide), and 6.5 hours (electrical cardioversion).

Adverse ED events occurred in 7.6% (50/660): 6.6% (44/660) experienced transient hypotension, and 1% (7/660) experienced either bradycardia, AV block, or atrial or ventricular tachyarrhythmia. 3.2% (21/660) required admission. During the 7 day follow-up period, 8.6% (57/660) had relapse of AF. There was no stroke or death.

Arguments for Rate Control
Arguments for rate control include the following. The large, randomized controlled trials (AFFIRM, RACE, etc.) have shown that—over the long term—outcomes with rate control are as good as (or better than) outcomes with rhythm control.4–8 In the AFFIRM trial, rhythm control was associated with a higher mortality than rate control among older patients.4 Achieving rate control in the ED may be faster and less operationally complicated than cardioversion.16 Rate control does not expose the patient to the risk of procedural sedation associated with electrical cardioversion. Finally, many patients will spontaneously convert to sinus rhythm. In one study, 32% (24/75) of patients spontaneously converted in the ED within 6 hours of arrival.13 In another study, 29% (59/206) of patients spontaneously converted in the ED, and an additional 11/16 patients discharged in AF returned the next day having converted to sinus rhythm.17

Arguments for Rhythm Control
Arguments for rhythm control include the following. The mean age in the AFFIRM trial was 70 years.4 Younger, more physically active patients would be expected to show benefit from conversion to sinus rhythm. It seems reasonable to offer rhythm control to those patients having a first episode of AF and no known cardiac structural abnormality. There is mounting evidence that AF itself leads to electrical and structural remodeling
of the atria that, in turn, make the arrhythmia intractable. Current theory suggests that rhythm control should be established as soon as possible to improve the chances of remaining in sinus rhythm. Rhythm control strategies allow for high rates of discharge from the ED, usually without warfarin or rate control medication. In contrast, patients treated with rate control usually require rate control medications and often warfarin; this frequently requires hospital admission and chronic INR monitoring and carries a risk of serious bleeding.

**ADENOSINE IN THE MANAGEMENT OF WIDE-COMPLEX TACHYCARDIA**

The 2010 AHA Guidelines for Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support (ACLS) recommend adenosine for the diagnosis and treatment of stable undifferentiated regular WCT. The principal effect of adenosine is transient AV nodal blockade. Thus, if a WCT is caused by a supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), administration of adenosine will do one of two things: (1) Terminate the arrhythmia if the AV node is part of a reentry loop, or (2) block AV nodal conduction and reveal the previously hidden atrial activity. If the WCT is VT, administration of adenosine is expected to have no effect on the rhythm (in most cases) and no adverse hemodynamic effect. The AHA executive summary emphasizes that this dual diagnostic/treatment capability is an important change for the 2010 guidelines.

**Early Studies of Adenosine for WCT**

Several small studies in the late 1980s and 1990s attempted to clarify the efficacy and safety of adenosine administration for WCT. In a 1994 prospective study of ED patients, adenosine was administered (maximum dose 18 mg) to 12 patients during 29 episodes of WCT. Adenosine terminated 59% (17/29) of episodes, all of which were identified as atrioventricular reentry tachycardia (AVRT). Transient AV block occurred in 10% (3/29) of episodes, revealing atrial flutter or AF. No response occurred in 31% (9/29) of episodes, which were identified as AVRT (5) and VT (4). In a second, prospective, study in 2001—also of emergency patients—adenosine was administered (maximum dose 18 mg) to 26 patients with WCT. Adenosine terminated 27% (7/26) of episodes. Transient AV block occurred in 42% (11/26) allowing diagnosis of the underlying arrhythmia. No response occurred in 31% (8/26), all of which were VT. No patient suffered serious hemodynamic deterioration in either study.

Two electrophysiology studies, performed in a more controlled lab setting, supported the findings of the ED-based studies. In a 1988 study, adenosine was administered to 26 consecutive patients with WCT. Of these, 35% (9/26) were SVT, and 65% (17/26) were VT. Adenosine terminated 67% (6/9) of SVTs and 6% (1/17) of VTs. As a diagnostic test for supraventricular origin of a regular WCT, the investigators calculated that adenosine administration had 89% (8/9) sensitivity and 94% (16/17) specificity. In a 1990 electrophysiology study, adenosine was administered to 34 consecutive patients with WCT. Adenosine terminated 7/10 arrhythmias using reentry mechanisms involving the AV node, 1/10 atrial arrhythmias, and 1/14 VTs. As with the ED studies, no patients in the electrophysiology studies experienced adverse hemodynamic effects after adenosine administration.
Studies Demonstrating Adenosine Terminates VT

The studies noted above demonstrate that adenosine can terminate VT. Additional studies have clarified that the episodes of VT terminated by adenosine are predominately exercise-induced VT caused by triggered automaticity in patients with structurally normal hearts and not reentry-related VT in patients with structural (including ischemic) heart disease.27–30 The only known mechanism of adenosine activity on ventricular conduction is antagonism of catecholamine-induced stimulation of intracellular cAMP production. Based on these findings, the authors of one study postulated that the mechanism underlying this form of exercised-induced VT is mediated by cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP).27 Since then, this form of VT has been documented in multiple studies, where it manifests with left bundle branch block (LBBB) pattern in most cases.27–30 In a subsequent retrospective study of patients with WCT who received adenosine, 10/18 patients had VT, and 50% of these (5/10) were terminated with adenosine.30 Four of the five patients whose VT was terminated by adenosine had structurally normal hearts, exercise-induced VT, and LBBB VT pattern consistent with the group of patients described in the initial study.

Concerns About Safety of Adenosine

Concerns have been raised about the safety of adenosine administration because of case reports of persistent bradycardia or asystole, induction of AF, ventricular fibrillation, torsades de pointes, and accelerated ventricular response in patients with AF or atrial flutter with and without preexcitation.31,32 In the 2001 study discussed above, 160 consecutive ED patients were treated with adenosine for narrow complex tachycardia and WCT in order to determine the prevalence of arrhythmogenic effects.24 Of these, 84% (134/160) had narrow complex tachycardia, and 16% (26/160) had WCT. In the narrow complex group, the adenosine-related arrhythmias observed included the following: prolonged AV block (>4 seconds) in 6% (8/134), AF in 1.5% (2/134), and nonsustained VT in 6% (8/134). In the wide complex group, the only adenosine-related arrhythmia observed was prolonged AV block (>4 seconds) in 11% (3/26). All arrhythmias were transient and resolved spontaneously; none required treatment. In a 2001 retrospective study of 187 episodes of tachycardia treated with adenosine in 127 ED patients, VT occurred following successful termination of an arrhythmia of supraventricular origin in 19% (31/160) of episodes.33 All adenosine-related episodes of VT were brief (mean duration 6.0 beats, range 3 to 26 beats) and spontaneously resolved. AF was induced in 5% (8/160) of episodes. There is only one case report of degeneration of VT to ventricular fibrillation (VF) after administration of adenosine for WCT.34

Perhaps the greatest safety concern is that adenosine will accelerate conduction over an accessory pathway in patients with AF or atrial flutter, leading to hemodynamic deterioration or ventricular fibrillation. Neither of the two electrophysiology studies of adenosine use in WCT discussed above reported any adverse hemodynamic effects on patients with AF and preexcitation.25,26 In the first of these two studies, there was also no effect on the mean RR interval.25 In the second of these studies, antegrade accessory pathway conduction was transiently enhanced in all nine patients, and the average RR interval and the shortest RR interval shortened but again without hemodynamic consequence.26 Similarly, in a study of 30 patients with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (WPW), adenosine administration was shown to lead to shortened antegrade refractoriness of the accessory pathway, but again, the effects were brief and no patient suffered clinical deterioration.35
There have been, however, isolated case reports of VF after administration of adenosine to patients with AF and preexcitation.\textsuperscript{36–38} In one study, four patients who presented to the ED with preexcited AF degenerated to VF after administration of adenosine.\textsuperscript{38} These four patients were compared to five control patients with preexcitation who underwent induction of AF and administration of adenosine in the electrophysiology lab and did not develop VF. The four patients who developed VF in response to adenosine demonstrated a shorter RR interval during AF and a shorter antegrade effective refractory period of the accessory tract than the five who did not develop VF.

A recently published investigation has attempted to clarify the efficacy and safety of adenosine administered for WCT in ED patients.\textsuperscript{39} This was a retrospective observational study at nine hospitals in five cities of 197 patients with WCT who received adenosine. Adenosine terminated 15\% (29/197) of the WCTs. Overall, 59\% (116/197) of the WCTs were diagnosed as SVT, and 41\% (81/197) were diagnosed as VT. There was a positive response to adenosine, defined as termination of the WCT or temporary AV block or any other change in rhythm except for retrograde ventriculoatrial block, in 90\% (104/116) of patients with SVT and in 2\% (2/81) of patients with VT. The investigators calculated that a positive response to adenosine increased the odds of SVT by a factor of 36. A negative response to adenosine, defined as no apparent change in rhythm or transient retrograde ventriculoatrial block, increased the odds of VT by a factor of 9. The rate of primary adverse events, defined as need for emergent electrical or medical intervention in response to adenosine administration, was 0\% (0/116) of patients with SVT and 0\% (0/81) of patients with VT. In 48\% (56/116) of patients diagnosed as SVT, the diagnosis was determined by a positive response to adenosine. As a result, there may have been cases of VT terminated by adenosine that were misdiagnosed as SVT. Therefore, a positive response to adenosine may increase the odds of VT by less than the factor of 36 calculated by the investigators. Since the calculation that adenosine distinguishes SVT from VT was itself determined by the response to adenosine, this limits the validity of the odds calculation.

Administration of adenosine to patients with stable undifferentiated regular WCT appears to be relatively safe. Except for isolated case reports, no patients in the above studies developed significant arrhythmic or hemodynamic deterioration or required electrical or pharmacologic resuscitation after administration of adenosine. Adenosine is not recommended for irregular WCT, but it is worth noting that none of the 15 patients with WPW and AF in the two electrophysiology studies discussed developed VF or hemodynamic deterioration after administration of adenosine. Some caution needs to be exercised as these observations were based on a very small number of subjects. Because of the possibility of arrhythmic deterioration, defibrillator pads should be attached to patients receiving adenosine for undifferentiated WCT. According to the AHA 2010 guidelines, when faced with a stable WCT, if the mechanism cannot be determined and the rate is regular and the QRS is monomorphic, adenosine is recommended for both diagnosis and treatment.\textsuperscript{21}

The diagnostic use of adenosine to distinguish SVT from VT does have one notable drawback. As a diagnostic test for supraventricular origin of a regular WCT, studies have calculated that adenosine administration has 89\% to 90\% sensitivity and 93\% to 94\% specificity.\textsuperscript{25,40} The less-than-perfect specificity reflects the false-positive VTs that terminated with adenosine. If termination of a WCT by adenosine is accepted as proof
of supraventricular origin, some patients with VT will be mislabeled as SVT, with the consequence of not receiving the appropriate workup and treatment for VT (e.g., electrophysiology studies, ablation, implantable cardioverter defibrillator placement). The best approach for the emergency physician probably is to avoid labeling WCTs that terminate with adenosine as SVT and to have these patients receive consultation by a cardiologist. Although SVT is the most likely explanation, a definitive electrophysiologic explanation is warranted.

**PROCAINAMIDE VERSUS AMIODARONE FOR TERMINATION OF VENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA**

In the 2010 AHA Guidelines for ACLS, procainamide is the preferred drug for the treatment of stable monomorphic VT. Procainamide is rated class IIa (administration is reasonable), whereas amiodarone is now rated class IIb (administration may be considered). Arguments against procainamide have included a long administration time, QT prolongation and hypotension, and a contraindication for use in patients with depressed left ventricular function. Thus, situational variables often dictate pharmacologic choice. Additional agents that have been used in VT include lidocaine and sotalol. The latter agents will be reviewed briefly, followed by a more extensive consideration of evidence surrounding procainamide and amiodarone.

**Lidocaine and Sotalol**

Lidocaine is mentioned in the 2010 ACLS guidelines as a second-line agent for treatment of VT. In multiple studies, lidocaine had poor efficacy in terminating VT, with success ranging between 19% and 29%. This termination rate is inferior to that seen with sotalol, procainamide, and amiodarone. Sotalol was shown in a single randomized double-blind crossover study of 33 conscious patients with sustained VT to terminate VT in 69% of patients. Hypotension required electrical cardioversion in 10% of patients. Since this 1994 study, there appears to be no high-quality evidence addressing the efficacy and safety of IV sotalol for termination of acute hemodynamically stable VT. Until recently, sotalol had little use in the emergency management of VT in the United States because it was not available in intravenous form. The FDA approved an intravenous form of sotalol in July 2009. Sotalol received a class IIb recommendation in the 2010 ACLS guidelines.

**Early Studies of Procainamide**

Studies of procainamide in the 1990s reported rates of termination of VT as high as 80% to 90%. A 2002 randomized crossover study compared procainamide (10 mg/kg at 100 mg/min) and lidocaine (1.5 mg/kg over 2 minutes) in 29 consecutive patients with hemodynamically stable monomorphic VT. The investigators excluded patients with severe heart failure or hypotension during VT (mean LV ejection fraction (LVEF) = 30%; mean systolic BP during VT = 115 mm Hg). When VT did not terminate within 15 minutes of the first drug, the crossover drug was administered. Initial treatment was successful in 80% (12/15) of patients receiving procainamide and in 21% (3/14) of patients receiving lidocaine. After 25 episodes of recurrent VT and 24 episodes that crossed over to the second agent, a total of 79 drug infusions for VT were given; procainamide terminated 79% (38/48), and lidocaine terminated 19% (6/31).
Administration of procainamide was associated with prolongation of the QRS width and QT interval, whereas administration of lidocaine was not. Adverse events requiring termination of the protocol occurred in 13% (2/15) of patients receiving procainamide (hypotension in one patient and acceleration of VT in one patient) and were quickly reversible. The procainamide infusion rate of 100 mg/min in this study is at least double the current 2010 AHA ACLS recommended 20 to 50 mg/min. In this study, a 70-kg patient received the total infusion in 7 minutes, and termination of VT occurred within 15 minutes of finishing the infusion. While this study is limited by the small sample size, the crossover design allowed the testing of the second drug during the same episode when the first was not effective. Procainamide still terminated 70% to 80% of episodes after lidocaine was ineffective. When administered sequentially, a carryover effect of one drug to the other cannot be excluded because only 15 minutes elapsed between the first and second drugs. The authors considered the likelihood of significant crossover effect to be small because lidocaine remained less effective after procainamide. If there had been an interaction between the two drugs, a greater effect would be expected for lidocaine after procainamide than the reverse because of the longer half-life of procainamide.

In a 1992 electrophysiology study, VT was induced by programmed electrical stimulation in 15 patients with prior myocardial infarction (12 with recurrent hemodynamically tolerated VT, 1 with syncope, 2 with history of cardiac arrest and inducible VT). Infusion of procainamide at 50 mg/min terminated VT in 93% (14/15) of patients. The total dose of procainamide required to terminate the tachycardia ranged from 100 to 1,080 mg (median 600 mg). The systolic BP during VT was >100 mm Hg in all patients and remained >80 mm Hg in all patients during and after infusion of procainamide. No patients had symptoms related to hypotension.

Early Studies of Amiodarone
The benefit of IV amiodarone in terminating acute hemodynamically stable VT has been extrapolated from studies of prolonged infusions to suppress recurrent unstable ventricular tachyarrhythmias. In a 1996 randomized controlled double-blind dose-range study of amiodarone by continuous infusion in 273 patients with recurrent hypotensive ventricular tachyarrhythmias refractory to lidocaine, procainamide, and bretylium, subjects received 525, 1,050, or 2,100 mg of amiodarone by continuous infusion over 24 hours. During VT, all patients had systolic BP <80 mm Hg with clinical signs or symptoms of shock. All patients had at least two episodes (mean 5.9) of hypotensive tachyarrhythmias in the 24 hours before admission to the study or were in incessant VT despite attempts at cardioversion. While on continuous amiodarone infusion, 40% (110/273) of patients survived 24 hours without another episode of hypotensive ventricular arrhythmia. There was no clear dose–response relationship with respect to success rate. In a second study that administered prolonged amiodarone infusions to 46 patients with recurrent life-threatening VT or VF that had failed to respond to at least two other antiarrhythmic agents, amiodarone was administered as 5 mg/kg over 30 minutes followed by continuous infusion of 1 g/24 hours for 72 hours, followed by oral amiodarone. This protocol led to resolution of recurrent VT or VF in 33% (15/46) of patients within 2 hours and 58.5% (27/46) of patients within 84 hours.

Until recently, few studies examined the use of IV amiodarone to terminate discrete episodes of hemodynamically stable VT. One study in 1989 examined the efficacy of
IV amiodarone to terminate sustained VT in 19 patients with depressed LV function (mean EF = 30.1%) who had suffered recurrent sustained VT and VF. All patients were hemodynamically stable during VT. Amiodarone was administered as 5 mg/kg over 20 minutes followed by continuous infusion of 1,050 mg over 24 hours. Amiodarone terminated sustained VT in 42% (8/19) of patients within a mean effect time of 31 ± 20 minutes.

Recent Studies of Amiodarone and Procainamide

In the past several years, two important studies have provided evidence that neither amiodarone nor procainamide is effective for termination of VT. A retrospective review in 2008 evaluated 41 consecutive patients with hemodynamically tolerated sustained monomorphic VT who were administered bolus dose amiodarone 300 mg IV. Amiodarone was administered over <30 minutes in 36 patients and over 30 to 60 minutes in 5 patients. The mean LVEF was 31%, and the mean systolic BP was 112 mm Hg. The median VT duration was 70 min (range 15 to 6,000). VT termination occurred within 20 minutes of the start of the amiodarone infusion in 15% (6/41) and within 1 hour in 29% (12/41). Hemodynamic deterioration requiring emergency cardioversion occurred in 17% (7/41).

A 2010 multicenter historical cohort study evaluated consecutive patients with stable VT treated with IV amiodarone or procainamide. Response to the medication was defined as termination of VT within 20 minutes of initiation of the infusion. Rates of termination of VT were 25% (13/53) and 30% (9/30) for amiodarone and procainamide, respectively. The adjusted odds of termination with procainamide compared with amiodarone was 1.2. Eventually, electrical therapy was required to terminate VT in 53% (35/66) of patients receiving amiodarone and 42% (13/31) of patients receiving procainamide. Hypotension requiring cessation of infusion or immediate electrical cardioversion occurred in 6% (4/66) of amiodarone patients and in 19% (6/31) of procainamide patients. The investigators note that the retrospective design of the study, limited data set, and potential for confounders limit the ability to draw firm conclusions about the relative effectiveness of amiodarone and procainamide. The 21-mg/min mean rate of infusion of procainamide is also lower than the 50- to 100-mg/min rate used in other studies and may have limited both the efficacy and the adverse effects of procainamide.

Based on these more recent studies, it appears that neither procainamide nor amiodarone is highly effective or safe in terminating hemodynamically stable VT. The authors of the 2010 study note several limitations that highlight the difficulty of performing their retrospective study, including limited use of procainamide by the physicians at the study hospitals, potential bias in the choice of medicine, and the 20-minute treatment interval allowed for successful termination of VT, which might bias against procainamide since it is often infused over 1 hour. The current 2010 AHA Guidelines for ACLS cite the 2008 study, but not the 2010 study, which was likely unavailable at time of publication. Given the unclear effectiveness and risk of significant hypotension associated with procainamide administration, procedural sedation and electrical cardioversion remain the currently recommended approach to hemodynamically stable VT. An early study published in 1973 demonstrated a 98% success rate of electrical cardioversion of 116 episodes of VT in 39 patients, and the incidence of significant complications of electrical cardioversion was low.
Among American emergency physicians, the most common strategy for managing ROAF is rate control. Several studies have, however, demonstrated the efficacy and safety of rhythm control, which offers the advantage of high rates of discharge from the ED, usually without warfarin or rate control medication. No patient in any of the rhythm control studies reviewed suffered a thromboembolic event. The use of adenosine for the diagnosis and treatment of stable undifferentiated regular WCT appears to be safe. Termination of a WCT by adenosine should not be accepted as proof of supraventricular origin because adenosine also can terminate VT. The optimal approach is to consult an electrophysiologist for all episodes of undifferentiated WCT terminated by adenosine. Recent studies have provided evidence that neither amiodarone nor procainamide is highly effective or safe in terminating hemodynamically stable VT. Procedural sedation and electrical cardioversion appears to be the safest and most effective approach.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wyse et al. <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2002¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van Gelder et al. <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2002²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burton et al. <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2004¹²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decker et al. <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2008¹³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stiell et al. <em>CJEM.</em> 2010¹⁵</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adenosine for regular wide complex tachycardia (WCT)**

| Domanovits et al. *Eur Heart J.* 1994¹⁵ | Prospective study, 29 episodes of WCT in 12 ED patients. Diagnosis based on ECG and/or EP study | Effect of adenosine on WCT: terminated WCT in 59% (17/29). Transient AVB in 10% (3/29). No response in 31% (9/29) |

(Continued)


**LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camaiti et al. <em>Eur J Emerg Med.</em> 2001&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective study, 26 ED patients with WCT. Diagnosis based on 12-lead ECG and esophageal ECG</td>
<td>Effect of adenosine on WCT: terminated WCT in 27% (7/26). Transient AVB in 42% (11/26). No response in 31% (8/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Griffith et al. <em>Lancet.</em> 1988&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>EP study of 26 patients with WCT</td>
<td>Adenosine terminated 67% (6/9) of SVTs and 6% (1/17) of VTs. VT terminated by adenosine in one pt. In six patients with AF and preexcitation: no adverse effect of adenosine. Adenosine as diagnostic test for supraventricular origin of WCT: 89% sensitivity, 94% specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hina et al. <em>Jpn Heart J.</em> 1996&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective EP study of 18 patients with WCT</td>
<td>Adenosine terminated 50% (5/10) of VTs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maill et al. <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2009&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective observational study of 197 patients with WCT</td>
<td>Effect of adenosine on WCT: positive response (termination of WCT or transient AVB) in 90% (104/116) of SVTs and in 2% (2/81) of VTs. Positive response increased odds of SVT by factor of 36. Negative response increased odds of VT by factor of 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Procarainamide vs. amiodarone for VT**

| Gorgels et al. *Am J Cardiol.* 1996<sup>5</sup> | Randomized crossover study of procarainamide vs. lidocaine in 29 patients with stable VT resulting in 79 drug infusions. Procarainamide infusion rate 100 mg/min | Procarainamide terminated 79% (38/48); lidocaine terminated 19% (6/31) (p < 0.001). Procarainamide adverse events in 13% (2/15): hypotension in 1 patient, acceleration of VT in 1 patient |
| Schutzenberger et al. *Br Heart J.* 1989<sup>6</sup> | 19 patients with stable VT, given amiodarone 5 mg/kg over 20 min followed by 1,050-mg infusion over 24 h | Amiodarone terminated VT in 42% (8/19) within a mean of 31 min |
| Tomlinson et al. *Emerg Med J.* 2008<sup>7</sup> | Retrospective case series of 41 patients with stable VT given amiodarone 300 mg IV | Amiodarone terminated 15% (6/41) within 20 min and 23% (12/41) within 1 h. Hypotension requiring cardioversion in 17% (7/41) |
| Maill et al. *Acad Emerg Med.* 2010<sup>8</sup> | Multicenter historical cohort study comparing amiodarone and procarainamide in 30 patients with stable VT. Amiodarone mean dose 186 mg. Procarainamide mean infusion rate 21 mg/min | Amiodarone terminated 25% (13/53) within 20 min. Procarainamide terminated 30% (9/30) within 20 min. Hypotension required cessation of infusion or immediate cardioversion in 6% (4/66) of amiodarone patients and in 19% (6/31) of procarainamide pts |

RCT, randomized controlled trial; pts, patients; AF, atrial fibrillation; CHF, congestive heart failure; ED, emergency department; WCT, wide-complex tachycardia; EP, electrophysiology; AVB, atrioventricular block; sens, sensitivity; spec, specificity; VT, ventricular tachycardia; SVT, supraventricular tachycardia; CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio.

**REFERENCES**


Heart failure affects over 6 million people in the United States and accounts for 1 million hospital admissions annually.\(^1\)\(^2\) Despite this prevalence, the number of hearts transplanted annually in the United States has remained fixed over the past decade at approximately 2,000 per year.\(^3\) In response to the disparity between need for transplantation and organ availability, in 1994, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved the use of left ventricular assist devices (LVADs) for patients awaiting heart transplantation and more recently for long-term support (i.e., destination therapy) in 2010. Although left ventricular (LV) assist technology to provide mechanical circulatory assistance for the failing heart has existed since 1963, it has only been in the last decade, with the advent of a continuous-flow pump, that these devices have become capable of providing reliable long-term support.\(^4\)\(^5\) Based on data from the Interagency Registry for Mechanically Assisted Circulatory Support (INTERMACS), the number of LVADs implanted increased nearly sixfold from 276 in 2006 to an estimated 1,600 patients in 2011.\(^6\) Among the 5,407 patients with LVADs registered in INTERMACS, approximately ¾ had devices placed as a bridge to transplant, and ¼ had them placed as a destination therapy.\(^6\) As the number of patients with LVADs continues to rise and as their survival improves, the emergency physician will increasingly be tasked with their acute care. This review focuses on a single LVAD system, the HeartMate II (Thoratec, Pleasanton, CA); this is the most commonly-installed assist device worldwide, and knowledge of this system is applicable to the management of other continuous-flow systems. This chapter addresses (1) the evolution of the LVAD, (2) the management of LVAD-associated complications, and (3) the use of radiographic imaging in diagnosing these complications.

**EVOLUTION AND GENERAL FUNCTION OF LEFT VENTRICULAR ASSIST DEVICES**

The two main groups of LVADs are distinguished by pump type: pulsatile and continuous flow (Fig. 18.1). Pulsatile pumps are analogous to the heart: a pumping chamber, once filled, activates a pusher plate technology.\(^7\) Newer continuous-flow pumps utilize a valveless system, in which centrifugal or axial pumping propels blood forward (Fig. 18.1B). Compared to the pulsatile system, continuous-flow pumps are smaller, lighter (0.75 vs. 2.6 pounds), and quieter. The Randomized
Evaluation of Mechanical Assistance for Congestive Heart Failure (REMATCH) trial demonstrated the pulsatile LVAD HeartMate XVE superior to medical therapy. Patients with the HeartMate XVE had a 1-year survival rate of 52% and a 2-year survival rate of 23%; patients with medical therapy had a 1-year survival of 25% and a 2-year survival rate of 8%. A follow-up trial compared the HeartMate XVE to the continuous-flow HeartMate II for use as destination therapy. Patients with the pulsatile-flow pump had a 1-year survival rate of 55% and a 2-year survival rate of 24%; patients with the continuous-flow pump had a 1-year survival rate of 68% and a 2-year survival rate of 58%. Continuous-flow devices outperformed pulsatile pumps in rates of rehospitalization, pump replacement, and LVAD- and non-LVAD–related infections. Adverse events associated with continuous-flow devices included hemorrhagic stroke (9%), right heart failure (5%), sepsis (4%), and bleeding (3%); the rate of these complications was, however, not significantly different from that of pulsatile-flow devices. This trial highlighted the primary advantages of continuous-flow over pulsatile devices, namely, improved reliability and decreased pump wear, a lighter weight and less cumbersome design, and lower infection risk. Newer second-generation LVADs include the HeartWare system (HeartWare, Framingham, MA, approved for bridge to transplant); this smaller “wearless” device is implantable within the pericardium, suspended by a passive magnet and a hydrodynamic thrust-bearing system.

**FIGURE 18.1** Pulsatile pump and continuous-flow pump. A: Pulsatile (HeartMate XVE, left) and continuous flow (HeartMate II, right). B: Internal mechanics of HeartMate II. Reprinted with the permission of Thoratec Corporation.
**PUMP PARAMETERS**

**General Considerations**

All LVAD flow parameters are set at the time of implantation; for the emergency physician needing to diagnose and manage acute illness and device-related complications in LVAD users, understanding the parameters displayed and their significance is essential. The HeartMate II control monitor displays the following parameters: pump speed (revolutions per minute [RPM]), pump power (watts [W]), flow estimate (liters per minute [LPM]), and pulse index (dimensionless value). Commonly, clinicians inexperienced with LVAD management will make decisions based on single parameters (e.g., decreased flow), failing to understand the significance of this parameter in the context of an acute change in condition. Instead, when troubleshooting a patient with an LVAD, clinicians should gather data from the whole patient, assessing volume status, presence of arrhythmias, mean arterial pressure (MAP), date of LVAD placement, recent echocardiography results, pump parameters, and history of LVAD alarms (e.g., suction events). Deviation from a functional baseline is more significant than the specific value of each parameter. Acquisition of additional hemodynamic data often requires use of echocardiography and pulmonary artery catheters (PACs).

**Pump Speed**

Pump speed is a fixed value set intraoperatively and often reassessed prior to hospital discharge in a process known as a “ramp study.” This involves empirically adjusting pump speed under echocardiographic guidance to determine the patient’s optimal LV cavity size and output at a given speed. Pump speed governs flow through the device and is a measure of assistance provided to the patient. Only an experienced VAD clinician should adjust pump speed, and always under echocardiographic guidance. Excessive pump speeds may be associated with ventricular arrhythmias.

**Pump Power**

The HeartMate II controller directly measures the amount of power delivered to maintain pump speed. This parameter is analogous to myocardial workload in normal individuals. An increase in speed, preload, or afterload will increase power consumption. In the absence of these conditions, a gradual increase in power use may indicate the formation of clot on the rotor (see Thrombotic Complications). Conversely, a decrease in afterload, preload, or speed as well as a blockage of inflow or outflow cannula will decrease power consumption. There is no generalizable power level, as it can vary from patient to patient; rather, it is the change (>2 W) from a previous level that may indicate a change in device or patient status.

**Flow Estimate**

The flow on the HeartMate II is derived from power and speed. Flow is not directly measured but rather is an estimate of the amount of fluid passing through the pump, assuming normal pump function. Using an ultrasonic probe, one study evaluated the differences between the “flow estimate,” as reported on the HeartMate II control monitor, and the “absolute flow” measured by the probe. The study showed that at a flow of 4 to 6 LPM, there was a variable 15% to 20% difference between the estimated and absolute flow values. Several factors affect “absolute flow” for continuous pumps; these include preload (LV preload and right ventricular [RV] function), speed, and afterload...
(the difference between outlet cannula and inlet cannula pressure). Thus, hypervolemia, increased LV contractility, increased speed, and decreased pressure difference across the pump will increase flow. As mentioned, situations such as a clot on the rotor will cause power to increase, resulting in an erroneously high flow displayed as “+++. Flows displayed as “+++” or “−−−” (for high and low flows, respectively) are considered outside the range of the expected physiologic limits based on speed. The HeartMate II low-flow alarm will signal when flow is <2.5 LPM. It is important to recognize that “flow estimate” is not analogous to cardiac output or “absolute flow” through the LVAD and thus should be used as a trended, directional value rather than a diagnostic tool to be used alone and without other patient and LVAD values.

**Pulse Index**

Pulse index refers to the amount of flow that passes through the pump during a cardiac cycle as averaged over 15 seconds. It is calculated as \[ \frac{(\text{flow max} - \text{flow minimum})}{\text{flow average}} \times 10 \]. It is a dimensionless value that is derived from the LVAD estimated flow. The degree of LVAD support is the primary variable that correlates with pulse index, and the two are inversely related. During LV systole, the flow through the pump increases due to an increased pressure at the pump inlet approximating the pressure at the outlet cannula (aortic pressure). During cardiac diastole, this inlet pressure drops, while the outlet pressure remains high (increased pressure difference) and, consequently, flow decreases. Therefore, pulse index is directly proportional to LV contractility (increases in which are due to preload, inotropic support, and myocardial recovery) and inversely proportional to the assistance provided by the pump.

**ADVERSE EVENTS AND COMPLICATIONS**

Common LVAD-related complications include hemorrhage, arrhythmias, infections, hemodynamic instability, and thrombosis (Table 18.1). When any of these are encountered in an LVAD-supported patient, a multidisciplinary approach to management is required; the patient’s cardiologist and/or VAD coordinator should be contacted to discuss the plan of care. If hospitalization is indicated, then the patient should be transferred to a VAD center when stable for transport.

**Infections**

Infections are common in LVAD patients and are a leading cause of hospital readmission and mortality. Based on an analysis of 2,006 patients registered in the INTERMACS database, nearly 19% of patients will develop a percutaneous site infection within 1 year. The percutaneous lead acts as a portal of entry for pathogens, which can progress to the subcutaneous tunnel, pump pocket, device, heart (i.e., endocarditis), and bloodstream (Figs. 18.2 and 18.3). Recommendations for the evaluation of an LVAD patient with suspected infection are outlined in Table 18.1. Patients with suspected LVAD-related infections should be treated with empiric broad-spectrum antimicrobials to cover nosocomial pathogens, including Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Fungemia has also been reported in LVAD-supported patients. Surgical consultation should be obtained, as incision and drainage, debridement, and/or percutaneous lead revision may be required. The ongoing development of LVADs that do not require a percutaneous lead should reduce the risk of these infections.
## TABLE 18.1 Diagnosis and Management of Adverse Events and Complications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Clinical Features</th>
<th>LVAD Parameters</th>
<th>Diagnostic Studies</th>
<th>CT Findings</th>
<th>Management Strategies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inflow cannula complications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinking of inflow cannula</td>
<td>↑ Cardiac pulse pressure, hypotension</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power, variable flow</td>
<td>Coagulation parameters (INR 1.5–2.5), CT</td>
<td>Kinking of inflow cannula Cannula malposition (Fig. 18.4)</td>
<td>Surgical consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticoagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maintain adequate volume status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombus in cannula</td>
<td>↑ Cardiac pulse pressure, acute anemia (due to hemolysis), hypotension</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power</td>
<td>Evaluate for hemolysis: ↑ cell-free plasma Hgb, indirect bilirubin, LDH; ↓ haptoglobin, CT</td>
<td>Low-attenuation lesion in inflow/outflow cannula</td>
<td>Surgical consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticoagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outflow cannula complications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tearing of aortic anastomosis</td>
<td>Hypotension, hemorrhage</td>
<td>No specific change</td>
<td>Serial Hgb, TEE, CT</td>
<td>Extravasation of contrast material at anastomosis</td>
<td>Emergent surgical consultation Can occur over time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinking of outflow cannula</td>
<td>↑ Cardiac pulse pressure, hypotension</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power, variable flow (positional)</td>
<td>Coagulation parameters (INR 1.5–2.5), CT</td>
<td>Kinking of outflow cannula Disruption of cannula patency</td>
<td>Surgical consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticoagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemodynamic complications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrhythmia</td>
<td>±Hemodynamic instability, symptoms of ↓ perfusion</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power</td>
<td>ECG, electrolyte panel, TTE/TEE (to assess LV geometry, fluid status, and cannula position)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Control arrhythmia and defibrillation Evaluate for suction events-VT Watch for RVF External chest compression only if in extremis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right ventricular failure</td>
<td>Hypotension, ↑ CVP, PVR</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power, suction events</td>
<td>TTE, TEE, CT CVC ± PAC</td>
<td>Interventricular septum bowed leftward RV dilated Dilatation of IVC</td>
<td>RV contractility: inotropes (milrinone) Decrease PVR Avoid hypercapnia, hypoxemia, and pulmonary vasodilators (INO) Avoid overfilling Control arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial tamponade</td>
<td>↑ CVP, hypotension, preload dependent</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power, suction events</td>
<td>TTE, TEE (pericardial effusion may not be visualized on TTE), CT</td>
<td>Dilatation of IVC Compression of RV or atrium, flattening of heart border Pericardial effusion</td>
<td>Pericardiocectesis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Clinical Features</th>
<th>LVAD Parameters</th>
<th>Diagnostic Studies</th>
<th>CT Findings</th>
<th>Management Strategies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aortic valve insufficiency</td>
<td>Decompensated heart failure, ↓ systemic perfusion, cardiogenic shock</td>
<td>↑ High flow</td>
<td>TTE ramp study to evaluate speed, ECG-gated CT</td>
<td>Presence of valvular thickening Aortic valve visualized on ECG-gated CT</td>
<td>May develop over time Consult cardiology and cardiac surgery Diuretics, afterload reduction AI may improve with decreased pump speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coagulation-related complications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombus on rotor</td>
<td>Acute anemia (due to hemolysis)</td>
<td>&quot;+++&quot; flow, ↑ Cardiac pulse pressure</td>
<td>Evaluate for hemolysis: ↑ cell-free plasma Hgb, indirect bilirubin, LDH; ↓ haptoglobin, CT</td>
<td>Low-attenuation lesion near inflow</td>
<td>Surgical consultation Anticoagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
<td>Primarily GI also: epistaxis, hematuria, mediastinal, thoracic, ICH</td>
<td>↓ Flow, power, suction events</td>
<td>TTE, TEE, EGD, serial CBC, coagulation parameters, CT Evaluate for acquired vWD, vWF antigen, vWF activity, and factor VIII activity. Evaluate for hemolysis: ↓ cell-free plasma Hgb, indirect bilirubin, LDH; ↓ haptoglobin.</td>
<td>Evidence of bleed (e.g., ICH on CT head)</td>
<td>PRBC and procoagulant factors and vWF as indicated Avoid excessive transfusions in: • Bridge to transplant • History of RVF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infectious complications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVAD specific</td>
<td>Fever, chills, hypotension 2/2 sepsis, sequela of embolic events</td>
<td>Variable effect on LVAD</td>
<td>CBC with differential, lactate Exit site wound Cx, plus fungal Cx if risk factors TEE, if TTE negative Blood cultures, if + CVC obtain &quot;time to positivity&quot; Cx Imaging: ultrasound, CT (c/a/p)</td>
<td>Gas or fluid collection around pump components, percutaneous lead Figure 18.2, pocket infection Figure 18.3, percutaneous lead infection</td>
<td>Broad-spectrum antimicrobials for nosocomial pathogens ± fungal coverage based on risk factors EGDT Surgical consultation for incision and drainage, debridement, device exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVAD related</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CVC, central venous catheter; CVP, central venous pressure; Cx, culture; EGDT, early goal-directed therapy; GI, gastrointestinal; Hgb, hemoglobin; ICH, intracranial hemorrhage; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase; PAC, pulmonary artery catheter; PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; RV, right ventricle; RVF, right ventricular failure; TEE, transesophageal echocardiogram; TTE, transthoracic echocardiogram; vWD, von Willebrand disease; vWF, von Willebrand factor; W, watts.
Hypotension and Hemodynamic Instability

Continuous-flow pumps unload the LV throughout the cardiac cycle, resulting in a diminished or absent pulse pressure. Thus, noninvasive measurement of blood pressure and pulse oximetry are often unreliable. Blood pressure is best measured as a mean arterial pressure (MAP) obtained by Doppler and sphygmomanometer or, alternatively, by placement of an arterial catheter. Goal MAP in most LVAD patients is 70 to 80 mm Hg. In general, MAP should not exceed 90 mm Hg; LVAD patients are sensitive to increases in afterload, and higher blood pressures increase their risk for adverse neurological events.

For the hypertensive LVAD patient, beta-blockers and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors are generally used for blood pressure control. For the hypotensive patient, the etiology should be identified (hypovolemic, vasodilatory, or cardiogenic shock due to RV or LV failure) and treated accordingly with volume repletion, vasopressor, and/or inotropic medications. Echocardiography and pulmonary artery catheterization may provide valuable data for diagnosis and management. Additionally,
problems intrinsic to the device, such as oversuctioning, may contribute to diminished blood flow and should be considered when evaluating the hypotensive LVAD patient.

**Right Ventricular Failure**

Right ventricular failure (RVF) is one of the more dreaded etiologies of hypotension after LVAD placement. RVF is estimated to occur in up to 20% of LVAD patients and is associated with a 1-year mortality of 83%. While this condition is usually recognized in the immediate perioperative period, the emergency physician may have to contend with the management of LVAD patients with RV dysfunction. Because of the complexity of managing an LVAD patient with RVF, early consultation with a VAD specialist or a cardiologist is recommended, as the patient may require more advanced mechanical circulatory assistance. Causes of RVF specific to LVADs include (1) leftward bowing of the intraventricular septum due to LVAD-related LV emptying, reducing its capacity to participate in RV contractility, and (2) increased venous return from the LVAD,
outmatching the capacity of a failing right heart.\textsuperscript{23} Table 18.1 details the management strategy for patients with RVF, including transfer to a critical care unit for placement of a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) and/or transesophageal echocardiography. Among inotropes, milrinone is particularly beneficial because it decreases pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) and improves RV contractility and matching of RV and LVAD outputs.\textsuperscript{24} Additional therapies for RVF include pulmonary vasodilators, such as inhaled nitric oxide (iNO) and/or aerosolized prostacyclin, that lower PVR. Avoidance of conditions that aggravate pulmonary vasoconstriction, such as hypercapnia and hypoxemia, is also essential. In a randomized trial of 11 patients with increased PVR after LVAD placement, iNO significantly reduced PVR and increased LVAD flow in patients with pulmonary hypertension.\textsuperscript{25} Avoidance of excessive preload is also important in the management of patients with RVF; thus, particular caution should be paid to the LVAD patient with a history of RVF who presents to the emergency department with hemorrhagic shock and who may require large-volume blood and factor transfusions. Patients who do not respond to these medical therapies for RVF (e.g., iNO, inotropes) may require more advanced mechanical circulatory support including the placement of a right ventricular assist device (RVAD). Risk factors that predict the need for an RVAD placement include female gender, low right ventricular stroke work index, history of pulmonary hypertension, and intraoperative high central venous pressure.\textsuperscript{21,22,26,27}

\section*{Suction Events}

A suction event occurs when there is excessive LV unloading due to a pump speed that is too high relative to LV volume. Suction events may manifest as a decrease in pump flow, arrhythmias, or transient and intermittent decreases in the pump speed to the low-speed limit (a result of LVAD auto-correction). During a suction event, echocardiography will demonstrate a leftward shift of the intraventricular septum with an underfilled LV. Other potential causes of poor LV filling include hypovolemia, RVF, pulmonary hypertension, and malposition of the inflow cannula toward the intraventricular septum or the lateral wall (Fig. 18.4). Suction events can be alleviated by volume repletion or by decreasing the pump speed, tasks best performed by an LVAD specialist using echocardiographic guidance.

\section*{Arrhythmias}

Patients with advanced heart failure have a high prevalence of cardiac arrhythmias both prior to and following LVAD placement.\textsuperscript{28} When patients develop new arrhythmias postimplantation, an underlying etiology, such as ischemia, suction events, or electrolyte imbalances, should be excluded. Although the LVAD continues to unload the LV during arrhythmic events, the right heart is unsupported and is at risk of acute dysfunction. The management of most arrhythmias in LVAD patients is similar to that of patients with advanced heart failure.

\section*{Atrial Fibrillation}

Medications used for rate and rhythm control in patients with advanced heart failure are also appropriate for LVAD-supported patients. In addition to impairing right heart function (resulting in decreased LVAD preload), atrial fibrillation increases the risk of thromboembolism. Due to the risk of embolic events, which may occur peripherally or within the LVAD pump itself, warfarin is typically dosed to achieve a target INR of 2 to 2.5.\textsuperscript{29}
FIGURE 18.4 Inflow cannula malposition. CT images depicting malposition of the inflow cannula toward the posterior-lateral cardiac wall (arrows). Cannula orientation depicted by rectangle.
Chapter 18  Left Ventricular Assist Devices  243

Ventricular Arrhythmias
Because the LVAD continues to function during otherwise life-threatening arrhythmias, patients with these arrhythmias may present with hemodynamic stability. However, the unsupported RV is at high risk of failure, placing the patient at risk of cardiogenic shock or sudden cardiac death. All ventricular arrhythmias require immediate treatment. Beta-blockers and other antiarrhythmic medications may be beneficial; however, defibrillation is indicated in patients with persistent ventricular arrhythmias or arrhythmia-induced hypotension. Given the high prevalence of ventricular arrhythmias in end-stage heart failure patients, the majority of LVAD patients will have implanted cardiac defibrillators (ICDs). Patients who do not have ICDs should be considered for this intervention.

Cardiac Arrest
External chest compressions may disrupt the aortic anastomosis or LVAD inflow tract and are generally contraindicated, particularly shortly after implant when the sternum has not healed; however, they may be helpful in patients in extremis. Prior to mediastinal wound healing, direct cardiac massage by a qualified surgeon may be effective in patients with recent device implantation. External defibrillation should be performed with the pump running and the system controller connected to the percutaneous lead. The system controller should be disconnected only if open-chest defibrillation is required. All drugs routinely given per advanced cardiac life support (ACLS) protocols may be administered.

Thrombotic Complications
The routine use of systemic anticoagulation and antiplatelet therapy has resulted in a low incidence of device thrombosis and thromboembolism. Current guidelines recommend administering warfarin with a target INR of 1.5 to 2.5 alongside daily aspirin. In a study of 331 HeartMate II patients treated with warfarin and antiplatelet therapy, ischemic strokes occurred in 2.4% of patients and pump thrombosis in 0.9%. The risk of thrombosis was highest when the INR was <1.5. Hemorrhagic complications, including hemorrhagic stroke or blood loss requiring transfusions of ≥2 units PRBC or surgical intervention, were more common than thrombotic events (2.1%, 15.4%, and 1.2%, respectively) particularly in patients with an INR >2.5. Pump thrombus is a rare but serious complication, as it may result in obstruction of blood flow. Gradual increases in pump power (often >10 to 12 W) occurring over hours to days may herald a thrombus in contact with the rotor or bearings. Thrombus may be initially noted as unexplained hemolysis (see Hemolysis).

Blood Loss and Coagulopathy
Acute anemia in an LVAD patient may be due to hemorrhage caused by anticoagulation and/or acquired coagulopathies and hemolysis. In some cases, hemorrhage may be severe enough to require blood transfusions or surgery. The gastrointestinal (GI) tract is a particularly common source of bleeding, and in a retrospective study of 154 LVAD patients, GI bleeds were most often due to peptic ulcer disease and vascular malformations. Endoscopic evaluation of the upper GI tract is a reasonable first diagnostic study in most LVAD patients with a suspected upper GI bleed, as it is well tolerated, diagnostic,
and therapeutic. Bleeding may also manifest as epistaxis, hematuria, or mediastinal, tho-
racic, or intracranial hemorrhage. Depending on the severity and location of the hemor-
rhage, anticoagulants should be reduced or withheld. Patients should be transfused as
clinically indicated with packed red blood cells and procoagulant factors. Unnecessary
or excessive transfusions in candidates for heart transplantation should be avoided, as
there is an increased risk of graft rejection due to transfusion-related allosensitization.
As previously discussed, invasive monitoring (e.g., PAC) may be useful to avoid exacer-
bating RV dysfunction in patients requiring large-volume transfusions.

**Acquired von Willebrand Disease**

In addition to bleeding due to therapeutic anticoagulation, other derangements in
hemostasis are associated with LVADs. Acquired von Willebrand disease (vWD) may
occur following continuous-flow LVAD placement. A postulated mechanism involves
excessive cleavage of high molecular weight von Willebrand factor (vWF) multimers by
continuous-flow, pump–related shear stress forces, a process analogous to the acquired
vWD associated with severe aortic stenosis. At this time, no studies have clarified the
potential benefits of vWF replacement therapy for LVAD patients with active hemor-
rhage. Generally, empiric use of desmopressin is both appropriate and efficacious in
reducing hemorrhage with acquired vWD.

**Hemolysis**

Acute anemia in the LVAD patient may also be the result of hemolysis. Hemolysis may
be diagnosed by laboratory findings, including increased cell-free plasma hemoglobin,
indirect bilirubin, and lactate dehydrogenase, and decreased haptoglobin. Although the
incidence of hemolysis due to mechanical shearing from the pump is low (3%), it may be
observed with pump-related thrombus. Thus, the observation of hemolysis should
prompt a workup for a pump or cannula-related thrombus.

**Aortic Insufficiency**

Aortic insufficiency (AI) adversely affects pump function by causing rapid LV filling
and high pump flow. Studies have demonstrated the development of de novo AI, as
well as the progression of AI to at least moderate severity, in up to 64% of patients
within 18 months after HeartMate II implantation. The patient with clinically sig-
nificant AI may present with decompensated heart failure, decreased systemic perfusion,
cardiogenic shock, and high pump flow. Mild AI can often be managed with diuretics
and afterload reduction. As long as systemic perfusion is not compromised, decreasing
pump speed may reduce regurgitant flow across the valve. Moderate or severe symptom-
atic AI after LVAD implantation requires surgical repair, including bioprosthetic aortic
valve replacement, coaptation of the aortic valve leaflets, or complete oversewing of the
aortic valve outflow tract.

**RADIOGRAPHIC EVALUATION OF THE HEARTMATE II**

For the emergency physician, radiographic imaging is one of the most accessible and
useful tools for diagnosing potential problems in an LVAD patient (Figs. 18.5 and
18.6). Figure 18.6 depicts the typical contrast computed tomography (CT) appearance
of the LVAD in situ. CT imaging can inform diagnoses both anatomic (e.g., pocket and percutaneous lead infections, Figs. 18.2 and 18.3, respectively) and, with ECG gating, dynamic (e.g., AI). The HeartMate II is implanted anterior to the rectus sheath, preperitoneally. The distal end is attached via an end-to-side anastomosis to the ascending aorta (Fig. 18.6A). Both the inflow and outflow cannula can be visualized using CT with intravenous contrast and should be patent without evidence of kinking or obstruction (Fig. 18.6B and C). The inflow cannula attaches to the LV apex (Fig. 18.6C). A bend relief allows the inflow cannula to attach to the pump in the upper abdomen pocket without kinking. Similarly, the outflow cannula attaches to the pump with a bend relief. The pump itself cannot be visualized on CT (Fig. 18.6D). Table 18.1 lists potential complications and their characteristic CT findings.

**CONCLUSION**

As the prevalence of LVADs increases, more of these patients will present to the emergency department, challenging the emergency physician to recognize and manage the complications that can arise in this complex group of patients. An emergency medical service (EMS) LVAD guide, produced by the Mechanical Circulatory Support Organization, provides instructions and important facts for the emergency personnel (www.mylvad.com). For the HeartMate II, 24-hour clinical and technical support and manuals with information pertaining to routine operating procedures, alarms, and emergencies are available to clinicians via the Thoratec website (www.thoratec.com). A multidisciplinary approach including the patient’s cardiologist, VAD coordinator, and, when indicated, cardiothoracic surgeon and/or infectious disease specialist, is necessary for successful clinical outcomes in this patient population.
FIGURE 18.6 Computed tomography images of HeartMate II pump. Cross-sectional CT images of HeartMate II pump, in situ. **A:** Aortic anastomosis: end-to-side anastomosis of outflow cannula to ascending aorta. **B:** Outflow cannula: Cannula is patent without evidence of obstruction or kinking. **C:** Outflow and inflow cannula: Note position at ventricular apex oriented toward mitral valve. **D:** Pump itself cannot be visualized. HeartMate II graphic images reprinted with the permission of Thoratec Corporation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slaughter et al., NEJM 2009(^5)</td>
<td>Multicenter randomized trial of 200 patients with advanced heart failure compared continuous-flow vs. pulsatile-flow LVADs for destination therapy.</td>
<td>2-year survival continuous- vs. pulsatile-flow LVADs (58% and 24%, respectively, (p = 0.008)). Both devices improved quality of life and functional capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rose et al., NEJM 2001(^5)</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 129 NYHA class IV heart failure patients for destination therapy</td>
<td>Pulsatile LVAD compared to optimal medical management resulted in improved survival and quality of life. The study demonstrated a 48% reduction in risk of death from any cause for the device group vs. the medical therapy group (relative risk 0.52; 95% CI 0.34–0.78, (p = 0.001)). One- and two-year survival rates in the device group vs. medical therapy group were 52% vs. 25% ((p = 0.002)) and 23% vs. 9% ((p = 0.09)), respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topkara et al., Ann Thoracic Surg 2010(^15)</td>
<td>Retrospective, single-center study of 81 patients with continuous-flow LVADs</td>
<td>51.9% of patients diagnosed with ≥1 infection. Mean follow-up period of 9.2 mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyle et al., J Heart Lung Transplant 2009(^8)</td>
<td>Cohort study of 331 patients with HeartMate II LVADs</td>
<td>Low rate of thromboembolism in anticoagulated patients. Increased bleeding if INR &gt; 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller et al., NEJM 2007(^13)</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter study of 133 patients with end-stage heart failure after implantation of continuous-flow LVADs for bridge to transplant</td>
<td>LVADs survival: 75% at 6 mo, 68% at 12 mo. Improved quality of life and functional status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Dipanjan Banerjee, MD, MS; Greg Rosselini, MD; and Robert Smith, CCP, RN, for their careful review of the manuscript. We would also like to thank Dominik Fleischmann, MD for providing radiographic images used in the figures.

REFERENCES

Management of the Post–Cardiac Arrest Patient
Cappi Lay

BACKGROUND
In the United States, out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA) affects roughly 300,000 people each year. Although heroic efforts in improving outcome, mortality from cardiac arrest remains high, with only 8% to 10% of these patients surviving to hospital discharge. Between 35% and 61% of OHCA victims will have return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) either in the prehospital setting or in the emergency department (ED); of those, between 36% and 79% will re-arrest in the acute care setting. Anoxic brain injury is the leading cause of morbidity in patients with cardiac arrest who survive to hospital admission. Over the last decade, the development and use of therapeutic hypothermia has made neuroprotection the cornerstone of therapy for hemodynamically stable survivors of cardiac arrest. Sustained reperfusion is also fundamental to neurologic salvage, and identifying and addressing the initial cause of cardiac failure is essential if further episodes of hemodynamic instability are to be prevented.

ACUTE CARE AND DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION
A sense of relief often comes over ED staff in the aftermath of successful ROSC, once the flurry of CPR activity has subsided and the patient has regained a pulse. However, a continued sense of urgency is required for the phases of evaluation and treatment that follow. As with all critically injured patients, the first priorities of management for a post–cardiac arrest patient are to secure and confirm the placement of a definitive airway and obtain intravenous access for the delivery of fluid and vasoactive medications. Although multiple large-bore peripheral IVs are acceptable initially, a central venous catheter (CVC) is preferred, in order to accommodate potential vasopressor administration. The goals of post–cardiac arrest management in the ED are subsequently organized along two parallel paths: identifying and treating the primary cause of the arrest; and initiating therapeutic cooling in appropriate candidates.

Understanding the context of the arrest can be critical in determining its cause. Witnesses—whether emergency medical services (EMS), family members, or bystanders—should be questioned about symptoms that preceded the collapse, such as chest pain, shortness of breath, dizziness, or severe headache. It is equally important to identify preexisting
conditions that predispose to cardiac events, including coronary artery disease (CAD), congestive heart failure (CHF), deep venous thrombosis (DVT), or renal disease.

A twelve-lead electrocardiogram (ECG) should be obtained as early as possible to look for evidence of cardiac ischemia. Multiple studies have shown that acute coronary thrombosis is the single most common cause of sudden atraumatic cardiac arrest. Other potential causes include primary arrhythmia, electrolyte disturbances, dilated cardiomyopathy, pulmonary embolus, hypoglycemia, accidental hypothermia, tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, toxic overdose, and subarachnoid hemorrhage. Of these, several can be eliminated based on history and physical exam. A basic metabolic panel or an arterial blood gas can be used to identify dangerous electrolyte abnormalities, while pneumothorax and tamponade, although uncommon in the absence of trauma, can be identified with chest radiography and bedside cardiac ultrasound.

Given the diagnostic uncertainty that can be present after ROSC, the International Liaison Committee On Resuscitation (ILCOR) has emphasized the importance of a comprehensive search for reversible causes of OHCA. A recent study retrospectively reviewed 896 cases of OHCA in PROCAT, a cardiac arrest registry in Paris, France, in which all patients received a diagnostic procedure to identify the cause of arrest. The authors describe an algorithm in which, following ROSC, patients suspected of underlying cardiac etiology were taken for immediate cardiac catheterization regardless of initial rhythm and ECG changes. For patients suspected of having a noncardiac etiology, brain computed tomography (CT) and chest CT angiography (CTA) could be performed to assess for intracranial hemorrhage or pulmonary embolism (PE), respectively. When cardiac catheterization did not reveal a culprit lesion, the patient could then be taken for CT; similarly, if an initial CT did not reveal a cause of arrest, the patient could be taken for cardiac catheterization. Out of 896 patients without an obvious cause of OHCA, 729 (81%) received an immediate diagnostic coronary angiogram. In approximately 39% of patients taken to the catheterization lab initially, no culprit lesion could be identified. Following a negative coronary angiogram, 188 patients underwent CT, which revealed a diagnosis in 33 cases (17.6%). Conversely, 167 patients underwent initial CT at the time of hospital admission that demonstrated a cause of arrest in 39 cases (23.4%). Sixteen of the patients whose initial CT was negative went on to receive a cardiac catheterization, which revealed a cause of arrest in 5 cases. Overall, using this approach, physicians were able to identify a cause of cardiac arrest in 524 of 896 cases based on the results of 452 cardiac catheterizations and 72 CT studies. The most common extracardiac cause of OHCA identified by CT was stroke, followed by PE.

The routine use of head CT is not endorsed in established guidelines on the management of cardiac arrest after ROSC; however, CT effectively rules out brain hemorrhage, which, if detected, would affect the decision to treat the patient with anticoagulants fundamental to therapy for both coronary and pulmonary thrombosis.

**CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION**

The single most common cause of OHCA is myocardial infarction due to acute coronary artery occlusion. Because of neurologic injury, survivors of OHCA are often unresponsive after CPR and/or are heavily sedated and paralyzed. Few physicians would disagree
that in the presence of true ST-segment elevation >0.5 mm in two or more contiguous leads, patients should be taken emergently for cardiac catheterization and percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) regardless of the patient’s mental status. Considerably more controversy exists regarding the proper course of action for the comatose patient for whom a twelve-lead ECG is nondiagnostic following ROSC. In one study, among survivors of OHCA without a history of chest pain or diagnostic ECG changes, 26% had evidence of recent coronary occlusion on angiography.6 Similar rates of significant coronary occlusion have been demonstrated in other cohorts of patients lacking diagnostic ECG findings. In a study of OHCA patients with angiographic evidence of acute myocardial infarction (MI), 12% were without evidence of ST-segment elevation on their postresuscitation ECG.9

The high rate of electrographically silent myocardial ischemia in cardiac arrest patients has led some authors to suggest that all survivors of OHCA should be taken for coronary angiography, regardless of ECG findings. Others reason that such aggressive screening has not been shown to improve outcomes in this group of patients; not only is their prognosis frequently dictated by the degree of neurologic damage rather than that of myocardial necrosis, but also, unselected angiography of all OHCA patients is economically wasteful. Proponents counter by pointing out that neurologic prognosis based on clinical exam and imaging is unreliable immediately after ROSC, and that the potential for lethal, untreated coronary artery occlusion necessitates immediate investigation and treatment in patients with amenable lesions, in order to limit myocardial damage.

A 2012 study of 240 patients after resuscitation from cardiac arrest found improved survival to discharge among the 25% of patients who were taken for coronary angiography within 6 hours of reaching the hospital compared to patients who were taken later or not at all (72% vs. 49% discharged alive).10 In another report of 72 angiograms performed on survivors of OHCA (at an institution that performed cardiac catheterization on all OHCA patients with successful ROSC), the diagnosis of acute MI was made in 37.5% of all patients. ST-segment elevation on admission ECG yielded a positive predictive value (PPV) for a final diagnosis of acute MI of 82.6% and a negative predictive value (NPV) of 83.7%. In this study, the roughly 16% of missed MI in patients with a normal ECG strongly suggests that ECG alone is not a sufficiently sensitive test to rely on in a potentially lethal disease process.11

Another recent study attempted to analyze the impact of emergency cardiac catheterization on in-hospital outcome among unconscious survivors of OHCA. The study reviewed the outcomes of 93 patients with OHCA and ROSC after <20 minutes; of these, 66 received a cardiac catheterization, and of those, 52% were found to have an acute or recent culprit lesion. Forty-two percent of those with an acute or recent culprit lesion identified did not demonstrate ST-segment elevation on their post-ROSC ECG. Sixty percent of patients who received emergency coronary angiography were discharged from the hospital alive compared to 54% overall.12

A large prospective cohort study completed in 2012 analyzed the 1- and 5-year outcomes of 5,958 patients with OHCA who were admitted alive to the hospital. One thousand and one (16.8%) were discharged alive; of these, 384 (38.4%) received cardiac catheterization, 80% of whom had PCI performed. Therapeutic hypothermia (TH) was performed in 241 of 941 (25.6%) patients comatose at hospital admission. Patient
outcomes were analyzed in groups according to whether they received PCI, therapeutic hypothermia, both therapies, or neither. At 1 and 5 years after discharge, survival was highest in those patients who had received both PCI and TH.13

CARDIAC ARREST WITH MASSIVE PULMONARY EMBOLISM

The percentage of OHCA caused by PE is estimated to be between 0.2% and 13.3%.14–16 Differentiating between PE and other causes of cardiac arrest has profound implications for patient treatment, since PE may be amenable to treatment with thrombolytics and catheter or surgical embolectomy. In a 2008 study, patients with OHCA and a suspected cardiac etiology (without a confirmed ST segment elevation myocardial infarction [STEMI]) were randomized to empiric intravenous tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) or placebo; there was no demonstrable benefit from tPA, effectively limiting this therapy to cardiac arrest cases with a strong suspicion of PE etiology.17 Making this distinction, however, is challenging and complicated by considerable overlap of symptoms among arrest-inducing etiologies. In the ED, CTA of the chest is the optimal diagnostic test for PE, and should be considered in all patients without an obvious etiology for their arrest.7 Echocardiography is another useful diagnostic modality in massive PE (discussed in detail in Chapter 11), and will typically demonstrate right ventricular dysfunction, including RV/LV end-diastolic diameter ratio ≥1 in four-chamber view, paradoxical septal motion, and pulmonary hypertension with RV/atrial gradient ≥30 mm Hg.

Intravenous tPA is the standard of care for a massive PE that results in hemodynamic instability or cardiac arrest, and is given in a dose of 100 mg, with 10 mg given as a bolus and the remaining 90 mg infused over a period of 2 hours.18 Catheter-directed embolectomy and open thoracotomy are other, albeit less well-researched, interventions for massive PE. Catheter-directed embolectomy is performed using a combination of aspiration, clot fragmentation, rheolysis, and direct administered thrombolysis at the site of the clot. In a cohort of patients with persistent hemodynamic instability after receiving thrombolytics for PE, one study observed that patients who received a rescue embolectomy with a catheter-based approach had lower mortality (7% vs. 38%) and lower risk of recurrent PE (0% versus 35%).19 Catheter-directed embolectomy is still rarely performed in most medical centers and should be considered only when cardiothoracic surgical services exist to manage the potential vascular complications. ED staff who suspect PE as the cause of cardiac arrest or hemodynamic instability should involve interventional radiology and cardiothoracic surgery early in the decision-making process.

THERAPEUTIC HYPOTHERMIA

As already noted, mortality and long-term disability resulting from cardiac arrest are frequently due to severe neurologic injury during and after the ischemic period of the arrest. To date, most experiments with neuroprotective strategies aimed at improving clinical outcome after cardiac arrest have failed, with the notable exception of therapeutic hypothermia (TH). The benefit of postarrest hypothermia is likely mediated though multiple pathways. Neuronal injury after cardiac arrest is the result of disrupted calcium homeostasis, inflammatory cell migration, excitatory neurotransmission, and the activation of proteolytic and apoptotic pathways.20 Several investigators have shown
that for every 1°C drop in body temperature, the cerebral metabolic rate decreases by approximately 7%, effectively blunting the effects of neuronal injury. Hypothermia is also thought to protect the integrity of the blood–brain barrier, which may attenuate ischemia–related cerebral edema.

Two randomized trials of therapeutic hypothermia after OHCA were published in 2002; both demonstrated benefits in neurologic outcome and survival. Both sets of investigators randomly assigned survivors of OHCA to a target temperature of between 32°C and 34°C after ROSC, for a duration of 12 to 24 hours. The first study showed a significant reduction in neurological morbidity in patients receiving TH; this finding was confirmed by the second study, performed by the Hypothermia After Cardiac Arrest (HACA) investigators. In addition, HACA also found a significant reduction in 30-day mortality associated with TH. Although it has been more than a decade since these and many confirmatory follow-up studies have been published, recent surveys show that TH is still underutilized. Based on the initial two studies, six patients need to be treated (NNT) to prevent one poor neurologic outcome, and seven treated to prevent one death. To put this statistic into perspective, the NNT to prevent one poor neurologic outcome using tissue plasminogen activator in stroke is eight. For thrombolytics in acute myocardial infarction, the NNT to save one life is between 20 and 33.

Current recommendations that guide which patient groups should receive therapeutic hypothermia are based on the populations included in the original two studies, and include those comatose patients with successful ROSC following ventricular fibrillation (VF) and pulseless ventricular tachycardia (VT). Patients with an initial rhythm of pulseless electrical activity have a poorer prognosis than do those with rhythms responsive to defibrillation; however, it is likely that once ROSC is established, these patients will benefit from the neuroprotective effect of TH as well. Treatment should thus be initiated as soon as possible in all nontraumatic cardiac arrest patients with significantly altered mental status or coma. TH should probably be withheld in those patients with significant ongoing hemorrhage or sepsis. Although the original trials demonstrating benefit for TH excluded patients with cardiogenic shock, more recent studies have confirmed that these patients also derive a mortality benefit from TH, and that cooling in fact decreases vasopressor requirements.

In the setting of STEMI, immediate PCI or thrombolysis can be lifesaving; several reports have shown that both procedures are compatible with cooling. Early TH should be instituted prior to hospital transfer and continued throughout the catheterization procedure. Several published reports have demonstrated the compatibility of TH with anticoagulation, thrombolytics, and PCI without a significant increase in complications. When compared with historical controls that were not cooled, rates of bleeding complications in patients receiving TH were identical, even in those patients receiving clopidogrel, GPII/IIIB inhibitors, and heparin. Studies have also reported that TH can be initiated prior to cardiac catheterization with no impact on door-to-balloon time. To effectively implement early TH in cardiac arrest patients who need immediate PCI, the ED and the catheterization team must collaboratively create standing protocols on TH indications and method of use, and discern how best to achieve rapid goal temperature without sacrificing door-to-balloon time.

Therapeutic hypothermia should be initiated as soon as possible after ROSC is achieved. Animal models of VF arrest have shown that even a 15-minute delay in the initiation of
cooling results in markedly worse neurologic outcome and more severe histologic damage of brain tissue.\textsuperscript{27,28} If ROSC is achieved in the field, induction of hypothermia should begin with EMS providers and continue through transfer to the ED. The application of therapeutic hypothermia consists of three phases: (1) the induction phase, during which core body temperature is actively decreased; (2) the maintenance phase; and (3) the rewarming phase, when body temperature is allowed to return to its physiologic baseline.

At the end of 2013, a randomized controlled trial of patients with OHCA compared therapeutic hypothermia with a standard target temperature of 33° Celsius to that with a target temperature of 36°.\textsuperscript{29} This multi-center trial enrolled 939 patients and demonstrated no significant difference in mortality or neurological outcome between management strategies, raising questions about the optimal target temperature for TH after OSCA. Patients in both arms of the study received bystander CPR roughly 73% of the time and had a median ROSC time of 25 minutes. The trial leaves unanswered whether patients surviving arrest under different circumstances would still benefit from more aggressive temperature lowering. Patients were eligible for inclusion in the trial if they were screened within 4 hours of their arrest. It is at least possible that more aggressive cooling has a larger beneficial impact when initiated earlier in the course, after reperfusion has occurred. The study has also been criticized for failing to test for subtle differences in cognitive ability between the groups and for failing to control for differing sedation strategies that may have influenced outcomes. Further research is warranted to determine which subgroups of cardiac arrest patient can safely be treated with therapeutic hypothermia using this less aggressive strategy.

**Cooling Methods**

Therapeutic hypothermia may be initiated via several methods, including surface cooling, endovascular cooling, and infusions of iced saline. Surface cooling employs ice packs, evaporative sprays, cooling blankets, or fitted pads with circulating cold water to lower temperature. Both of the original TH studies demonstrated profound clinical benefit using surface cooling alone, often only with the use of ice packs. Cold intravenous saline, which is easy to apply and provides for rapid induction of TH at low cost, is being utilized with increasing frequency. In healthy anesthetized volunteers, one study found that rapid infusion of 40\textsuperscript{mL/kg of 4°C normal saline via a CVC resulted in a drop in core temperature of 2.5°C in 30 minutes.\textsuperscript{30} This drop was greater than expected due to peripheral vasoconstriction, which caused relative isolation of the core and peripheral body compartments. Conversely, peripheral vasoconstriction decreases the efficacy of cooling when surface techniques are used. In another study, OHCA victims were randomized to cold saline infusion of up to 2 L upon ROSC while still in the care of EMS providers. Field cooling was associated with a mean drop in temperature of 1.2°C from initiation of infusion to arrival in the ED.\textsuperscript{31} No significant differences were found between groups in the PaO\textsubscript{2}, vasopressor requirements, or pulmonary edema on initial chest radiograph. In a study examining the effects of large-volume cold saline infusion on respiratory function after cardiac arrest, 52 patients who received an average of 3 L of cold saline experienced only a small decrease in their PaO\textsubscript{2} to FiO\textsubscript{2} ratio—from 290 at admission to the intensive care unit (ICU) to 247.5—while maintaining oxygen saturation in the normal range.\textsuperscript{32}

A 2005 prospective study reported on 134 cardiac arrest patients, including those with cardiogenic shock, who received 4°C saline in addition to surface cooling for the
induction of hypothermia. On average, patients without shock received approximately 2 L of cold fluid in 60 minutes and experienced a drop in temperature from 36.9°C to 32.9°C. In the patients with cardiogenic shock, a more conservative protocol with slower fluid administration was used, but still resulted in a change in core temperature from 36.8°C to 33.1°C over 120 minutes. Only 8 of 134 patients in the study required modest increases in positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) to maintain PaO₂ during fluid administration, of which 5 demonstrated evidence of cardiogenic shock prior to fluid infusion. Overall, the data support the routine use of large volume (30 mL/kg) of ice-cold (4°C) saline for the induction of HACA.

**Physiologic Effects of Hypothermia**

Induction of mild hypothermia alters normal cardiac, pulmonary, endocrine, and renal functions and carries a risk of adverse effects. At temperatures between 32°C and 34°C, myocardial contractility increases and heart rate declines as a result of decreased spontaneous depolarization of pacemaker cells. Peripheral vasoconstriction causes an increase in systemic vascular resistance that may manifest as an increased blood pressure during induction. Metabolic rate decreases by 7% to 8% for every 1°C decrease in core body temperature, so decreases in cardiac output as a result of induced bradycardia do not usually result in unmet oxygen demand or tissue ischemia. A brisk diuresis occurs in response to an expansion of central blood volume and may require aggressive fluid repletion to maintain cardiac filling pressures. Below 30°C, the risk of clinically relevant arrhythmias increases steeply, with atrial fibrillation occurring most commonly, and ventricular tachycardia and fibrillation becoming more likely as temperature drops further. Careful observation of body temperature during induction is important to avoid overcooling and the associated risk of malignant arrhythmia.

As core body temperature drops, observed changes in serum electrolytes are due to intracellular shifts in potassium, magnesium, calcium, and phosphate. Hourly monitoring of electrolytes, with repletion as needed, is recommended during the induction phase of cooling to maintain normal levels. Later on, as rewarming is started, potassium that shifted into cells during the induction phase may suddenly exit the cells, creating a risk of rebound hyperkalemia. Ensuring slow rates of rewarming—no faster than 0.25°C per hour—helps minimize this complication, as well the risk of rebound cerebral edema. Mild hypothermia causes decreased insulin secretion and insulin resistance, which may result in hyperglycemia and increased insulin requirements during the induction and maintenance phases of cooling. In brain-injured patients, the optimal serum glucose level has not been determined, but maintaining levels between 100 and 180 mg/dL is reasonable.

Platelet function is impaired and clotting times are increased with TH. These effects however, have not been associated with increased rates of clinically significant bleeding after OHCA, even when TH is used in conjunction with antiplatelet drugs, anticoagulants, and thrombolytics.

Hypothermia also impairs leukocyte migration and the production of inflammatory mediators, thereby reducing the body’s ability to fight off infection. The HACA trial demonstrated a trend toward increased risk of pneumonia and sepsis with cooling, and other studies have confirmed the association between TH and increased rates of infection. Close observation for signs of evolving infection should be maintained throughout the cooling process. During active cooling, fever may not reliably be observed, but
the work required to achieve cooling goals—a measure indicated on multiple newer devices—can be used as a surrogate for the development of fever.

**Shivering**
The normal shivering response is the greatest obstacle to rapid cooling; if not aggressively controlled, shivering can contribute to increased metabolic demand and undermine the beneficial effects of TH. Management follows a stepwise protocol that begins with measures to decrease the shivering threshold, and proceeds to include nonvolatile anesthetics such as propofol and, rarely, paralytics for severe refractory shivering. Initial agents used for shivering control include buspirone, meperidine, magnesium sulfate, and alpha-2 agonists. Buspirone, a serotonin (5HT)-1A partial agonist, is thought to lower the shivering threshold by activating hypothalamic heat loss mechanisms. Meperidine, which acts synergistically with buspirone, is a unique opiate agonist of both kappa and mu receptors shown to be effective in decreasing shivering. Magnesium sulfate, when targeted to a serum level of between 3 and 4 mg/dL, reduces shivering by promoting peripheral vasodilation and muscle relaxation. Alpha-2 agonists, such as clonidine and dexmedetomidine, are thought to inhibit neuronal firing related to thermosensitivity. Finally, skin surface rewarming, although counterintuitive, has also been shown to decrease the core temperature shivering threshold by 1°C for every 4°C rise in skin temperature.40

When the above therapies fail, fentanyl and propofol infusions can be employed to suppress refractory shivering. During the rapid induction phase of cooling, a bolus dose of a long acting paralytic such as rocuronium or vecuronium is encouraged; however, because of the concern for critical illness myopathy, ongoing infusions of paralytic medications to suppress shivering are discouraged for all but the most refractory cases.

**Continuous EEG**
Seizure activity is common in victims of anoxic brain injury but may be easily missed in the setting of therapeutic hypothermia where deep sedation or paralysis is required. Nonconvulsive status epilepticus (NCSE), defined as unremitting epileptiform activity in the absence of clinical seizures, has been reported in 8% to 9% of patients in undifferentiated coma.41–43 The presence of NCSE has been associated with increased risk of mortality and severe disability at hospital discharge. In one study, 10% of comatose patients in the ICU had continuous seizure activity on cEEG, 68% of which was not detected clinically. Seizure activity was associated with a 19-fold increase in the odds of death or severe disability.44 It is not clear whether seizures are the direct cause of poor outcome or merely a marker of severe brain injury; nevertheless, in those patients for whom aggressive care is appropriate, it is reasonable to monitor and treat seizures in the immediate postarrest period under the assumption that unceasing epileptiform discharges inhibit neurologic recovery.

**PERCUTANEOUS HEMODYNAMIC SUPPORT**
Following resuscitation from cardiac arrest, many patients will experience significant hemodynamic instability requiring varying degrees of vasoressor and inotropic support. In patients with cardiogenic shock from acute myocardial infarction or other cardiac insult,
high-dose vasopressors and inotropes may be required. By augmenting cardiac contractility and afterload, however, these medications can increase myocardial oxygen consumption and exacerbate cardiac ischemia. In patients requiring cardiac catheterization, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) and intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) are two temporizing percutaneous interventions that may be used to maintain hemodynamic stability.

As percutaneous hemodynamic support devices have become smaller, they have begun to gain wider use in the management of acute cardiogenic shock. Unlike veno-veno ECMO that can only be used to support oxygenation, venoarterial (VA) ECMO can be used to provide hemodynamic support. These devices typically consist of two 18-gauge French catheters that are inserted into the femoral artery and vein, essentially creating a right atrial-to-aortic shunt. Blood is removed through the femoral vein catheter where it enters the ECMO circuit for oxygenation and is returned via pump in retrograde fashion to the aorta. A side-port is inserted into the distal femoral artery to prevent limb ischemia.

A 2011 study described the creation of an Extracorporeal life support (ECLS) team capable of quickly establishing a VA ECMO circuit to provide rapid hemodynamic support, and demonstrated that ECLS could be used to facilitate CT imaging and PCI in survivors of cardiac arrest. Over the course of 6 years, the ECLS team was activated for 144 patients, 58 of whom had ECLS established. Overall survival in the ECLS group was 38%. A 2012 study described initiating percutaneous hemodynamic support with a VA ECMO circuit in a combination of 28 patients with cardiac arrest from acute myocardial infarction (AMI) or PE. In all AMI patients, hemodynamic support was initiated while the patient was still in arrest; in the patients with PE, 10 of 12 survived, 70% with good neurologic outcome. A similar study of 22 patients who received VA ECMO initiated during cardiac arrest reported that 41% were discharged home from the hospital with no disability. In the last two studies, an IABP was frequently used in conjunction with VA ECMO to reduce LV afterload.

Percutaneous hemodynamic support of the type described above requires a cardiothoracic surgeon or interventional cardiologist to establish the perfusion circuit, and is only being used in a minority of academic medical centers. To date, no randomized trials of this technology in selected cardiac arrest patients have been performed.

**CONCLUSION**

OHCA remains a catastrophic event that continues to claim tens of thousands of lives each year in the U.S. alone. Rapidly identifying the etiology of the arrest is essential to initiating the correct treatment. Myocardial infarction is the single most common cause of OHCA and may present in approximately 10% of patients without characteristic ECG changes. Diagnostic algorithms that combine CT imaging and cardiac catheterization will increase accurate diagnosis of the etiology of cardiac arrest and may improve outcomes by prompting early identification and treatment. Therapeutic hypothermia is still the only therapy proven to have a mortality benefit after cardiac arrest and should be initiated as soon as possible in all eligible patients. Therapeutic hypothermia has been shown to be compatible with anticoagulants, thrombolytics, and cardiac catheterization, and should not be delayed for any of these treatments.
REFERENCES


BACKGROUND

Stroke is the fourth leading cause of mortality in the United States and incurs an estimated cost of 38.6 billion dollars annually. Although the overall mortality from this disease has declined over the last decade, 50% of individuals who suffer a stroke at an age of >65 will die within 5 years. Traditionally a clinical diagnosis, evaluation of stroke is now highly reliant on imaging. While new multimodality radiologic technologies are being developed to determine brain ischemia and penumbral tissue, the most important imaging for acute care remains the noncontrast computed tomography (CT) of the head. With this in mind, this chapter reviews both the pathogenesis and clinical manifestation of stroke as well as a basic approach to its image interpretation in the acute setting.

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

Patient History
Obtaining a quick and accurate history in patients with stroke facilitates optimal clinical care. It is essential to determine the exact time at which brain ischemia started. Because this can be a difficult task unless bystanders are present at the onset of symptoms, the practitioner should rely on the time of “last seen normal,” as opposed to when the patient was first witnessed having symptoms. For example, if a patient were to wake up with symptoms of a stroke, his or her time last seen normal would be the night before when he went to sleep. This information is required to determine a patient’s eligibility to receive specific interventions, including intravenous tissue plasminogen activator (IV tPA) or endovascular intra-arterial (IA) thrombolysis/thrombectomy. In addition to the time of onset and duration of symptoms, delineating the progression of neurologic findings is also important. Most vascular events result in immediate deficits; exceptions to this include stuttering transient ischemic attacks and flow related symptoms caused by an intracranial or extracranial stenosis.

The emergency provider should also attempt to identify nonstroke conditions, referred to as “stroke mimics” that can produce focal neurologic deficits (Table 20.1).
A thorough history and exam can help distinguish brain infarction from stroke mimics, and, in the event of a true central ischemic process, help pinpoint the specific etiology of the neurologic insult. Stroke symptoms accompanied by severe chest pain radiating to neck are suggestive of a myocardial infarction with associated cardiac emboli. Stroke symptoms accompanied by severe chest and back pain can suggest an aortic dissection with extension into the carotid or the vertebral arteries. Such combinations...
of findings not only help identify a specific pathologic process but also may dramatically alter patient management by avoiding hemorrhagic complications of thrombolytic therapy in patients with specific contraindications, for example, an intracerebral tumor.

The diagnosis of stroke mimics can often be difficult during the acute phase. Studies show anywhere between 3% and 16% of patients treated with tPA are stroke mimics.2,3 Fortunately, multiple studies have reported stroke mimics treated with tPA to have no increased rate of symptomatic intracranial bleeds.³ The pathogenesis of intracranial hemorrhage after tPA is secondary to reperfusion hemorrhage into a region of infarcted brain tissue. Because stroke mimics do not have actual brain ischemia, they are less likely to have hemorrhage after tPA. The exception to this is patients with intracranial tumors, but these are typically visualized on a CT scan prior to IV tPA administration.

In addition to accompanying symptoms, the patient’s past medical and surgical history needs to be quickly established, focusing on exclusion and inclusion criteria for administration of IV tPA. IV tPA is the current standard of care for patients who present within 3 hours of symptoms and is recommended in patients up to 4.5 hours if they meet the criteria (Table 20.2).⁴

### Physical Exam
Assessment of the ABCs (airway, breathing, circulation) and vital signs may also provide clues as to the nature and cause of the stroke (whether hemorrhagic or ischemic). Tachycardia with an irregular heartbeat may support a cardioembolic ischemic stroke. Elevated blood pressure in the setting of headache, nausea/vomiting, and obtundation is more likely to be indicative of a hemorrhagic stroke, although posterior circulation strokes (e.g., a basilar artery occlusion) can present similarly. Once the ABCs are stabilized, a rapid neurologic examination using the National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS) should be obtained (Table 20.3).⁵,⁶

The NIHSS is easy to perform, helps predict short-term and long-term outcomes, and can help identify large-vessel occlusion (LVO) strokes.⁷,⁸ The scale has been demonstrated to be reliable and reproducible, but proper use requires training and certification, which can be obtained through the American Stroke Association’s Web site (www.strokeassociation.org).⁹,¹⁰

Common clinical syndromes ascribed to specific subtypes of stroke are listed in Table 20.4.¹¹⁻¹³ While not an exhaustive list, familiarity with these signs and symptoms
### TABLE 20.3 NIHSS (National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Scores</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a. Level of consciousness</td>
<td>0 = Alert, 1 = Not alert, arousable, 2 = Not alert, obtunded, 3 = Unresponsive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b. Questions</td>
<td>0 = Answers both correctly, 1 = Answers one correctly, 2 = Answers neither correctly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c. Commands</td>
<td>0 = Performs both tasks correctly, 1 = Performs one task correctly, 2 = Performs neither task</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gaze</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Partial gaze palsy, 2 = Total gaze palsy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Visual fields</td>
<td>0 = No visual loss, 1 = Partial hemianopsia, 2 = Complete hemianopsia, 3 = Bilateral hemianopsia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Facial palsy</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Minor paralysis, 2 = Partial paralysis, 3 = Complete paralysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a. Left motor arm</td>
<td>0 = No drift, 1 = Drift before 10 s, 2 = Falls before 10 s, 3 = No effort against gravity, 4 = No movement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5b. Right motor arm</td>
<td>Scored in same fashion as left arm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6a. Left motor leg</td>
<td>0 = No drift, 1 = Drift before 5 s, 2 = Falls before 5 s, 3 = No effort against gravity, 4 = No movement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b. Right motor leg</td>
<td>Scored in same fashion as right arm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Ataxia</td>
<td>0 = Absent, 1 = One limb, 2 = Two limbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Sensory</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Mild loss, 2 = Severe loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Language</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Mild aphasia, 2 = Severe aphasia, 3 = Mute or global aphasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Dysarthria</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Mild, 2 = Severe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Extinction/inattention</td>
<td>0 = Normal, 1 = Mild, 2 = Severe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Available at www.ninds.nih.gov/doctors/NIH_Stroke_Scale.pdf*
can help providers localize the region of ischemia. Stroke patients often present with dramatic findings, such as hemiparesis; in isolation, however, weakness can be representative of both large- and small-territory strokes. The presence of cortical signs, such as aphasia, visual field deficits, or a gradient in weakness (face and arm greater than leg involvement), suggests a LVO that may eventually require endovascular therapy. The presence of cranial nerve deficits or cerebellar findings, such as ataxia or dysmetria, may help localize a stroke to the brainstem or posterior fossa.14

**PATHOGENESIS**

Ischemic stroke is commonly classified according to the following subtypes: small-vessel atherosclerosis, large-artery atherosclerosis, cardioembolic, cryptogenic, or other.15 Other known causes include arterial dissections, infections, trauma, sickle cell disease, and hypercoagulable states. A patient’s particular diagnostic course will depend in part on his or her history of illness and clinical presentation. For example, a patient who presents with heart palpitations followed by stroke symptoms will require a cardiac evaluation for arrhythmias; whereas a patient with stroke symptoms who has sustained neck trauma would need vascular imaging of the chest, neck, and head to identify potential arterial dissections.
The initial ED diagnostic workup should consist of a focused history, exam, labs, and imaging. Per the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association (AHA/ASA) guidelines, only a noncontrast CT of the head is required, even though advanced imaging, if available, may help delineate the stroke.\(^4\) The rationale for this recommendation is that a noncontrast head CT is sufficient to determine a patient’s eligibility for IV tPA, provided that clinical criteria are already met. Although other imaging such as CT angiogram or MRI may ultimately be required, the decision to give tPA should be made immediately following noncontrast CT so as to avoid delays that can lessen benefit from IV tPA (Table 20.5).

Recommended initial orders and labs include (per AHA/ASA guidelines):

- **Vital Signs**
- **ECG and cardiac enzymes**
- **INR, PT, PTT, BMP, CBC, troponin, urinalysis, and toxicology** (urine studies help in identification of stroke mimics such as hypo/hyperglycemia, DKA, infection, metabolic encephalopathy)
- **Noncontrast CT of the head**

The noncontrast CT allows a radiologist to distinguish hemorrhagic from ischemic stroke; the relative acuteness of an ischemic stroke; the presence of mass effect or imminent midline shift that would necessitate more aggressive treatment; and the degree of brain parenchyma that is unsalvageable. In patients with stroke onset >3 hours, a hypodensity of greater than or equal to one-third of middle cerebral artery (MCA) territory excludes use of tPA. For ischemic stroke, the emergency physician should be aware of the following radiographic findings indicative of a stroke (Fig. 20.1); these findings may sway the decision to administer IV tPA based on the presumed degree of infarcted brain tissue:

- A hyperdense MCA
- Blurring of the insular ribbon
- Sulcal effacement
- Blurring of the gray–white junction, especially of the deep structures of the caudate, internal capsule, and putamen

### TABLE 20.5 Diagnostic Approach by Time Line

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time(^a)</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 0–10 min  | Check vital signs  
Get history: symptoms, time of onset, recent surgeries  
Draw labs: Glucose, INR/PTT, BMP, CBC, troponin |
| 10–20 min | Review vital signs again  
Conduct neurologic exam and record the NIHSS score |
| 20–40 min | Acute imaging—noncontrast CT, CTA, CTP, or MRI\(^b\) |
| 40–60 min | Decide on treatment course in consultation with neurology service |

\(^a\)This is a relative time scale and defines the maximum allotted time to complete each step.  
\(^b\)Imaging will differ depending on the institution. Only CT of the head is required.
FIGURE 20.1 A: A hyperdense left MCA with blurring of the insular ribbon and sulcal effacement of the left temporal lobe. B: Blurring of the gray–white junction involving the right caudate, internal capsule, and putamen. C: Sulcal effacement and blurring of the gray–white junction over the entire left MCA territory.

In addition to the subtle findings above, one should evaluate for midline shift, masses/mass effect, blood (in the brain or at the base of the skull), cerebral edema, or herniation. A frequently used tool for the evaluation of ischemic stroke on a head CT is the Alberta Stroke Program Early CT Score (ASPECTS). The ASPECTS tool evaluates 10 commonly viewed areas of the MCA territory. Every area of hypodensity is subtracted from 10; a lower composite score indicates more areas of infarcted brain. This tool can be used to evaluate functional outcome (a score of 7 or less associated with poor functional outcome) as well as to estimate the size of any MCA stroke (Fig. 20.2).

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

The treatment of acute ischemic stroke centers on urgent revascularization of occluded vessels or augmentation of collateral cerebral blood flow in order to minimize brain infarct size and salvage penumbra. Equally important is the provision of supportive care to minimize stroke complications, including intracerebral hemorrhage, increasing stroke size, and brain herniation, as well as identification of concomitant disease processes such as myocardial infarction, aortic dissection, aspiration pneumonia, or drug intoxication. Management aims to provide appropriate treatment, and to proceed as rapidly as possible to improve neurologic outcome with an acceptably low risk of complications. A decision tree for the management of ischemic stroke is provided in Figure 20.3. Guidelines for standard medical management are detailed in Table 20.6. Potential complications of stroke therapy and their management are reviewed in Table 20.7. Additional standard ischemic stroke protocols, criteria, and order sets are provided in Table 20.8. Indications and contraindications to IV tPA are listed in Table 20.9.

Intravenous Tissue Plasminogen Activator (IV t-PA)

The most commonly asked questions regarding the acute management of ischemic stroke relate to the risks and benefits of IV tPA. Major clinical trials evaluating the efficacy of IV tPA include ECASS 3, NINDS 2, and IST 3. In order to better
FIGURE 20.2 ASPECTS stroke regions (10 regions assessed). (A) Lower cross-sectional region of interest with deep structures. (B) Higher cross-sectional region of interest for cortex evaluation. C, caudate; L, lentiform nucleus; IC, internal capsule; I, insula; M1–6, corresponding regions of the MCA territory.

### TABLE 20.6  Medical Management of Ischemic Stroke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Guidelines/Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous (IV) tPA</td>
<td>Ischemic stroke within 3 or 4.5 h if meets ECASS 3 criteria. Given as 0.9 mg/kg, maximum dose 90 mg, 10% as bolus and rest over 1 h</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence A and B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra-arterial (IA) tPA</td>
<td>Major stroke of &lt;8h duration due to occlusions of the MCA and are not otherwise candidates for IV tPA</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA mechanical thrombectomy</td>
<td>Large MCA stroke &lt;8 h</td>
<td>Class IIb, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet</td>
<td>All ischemic stroke unless otherwise contraindicated. Oral administration of aspirin (initial dose 325 mg) within 24–48 h</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulation</td>
<td>Not indicated. More bleeds in all trials</td>
<td>Class III, Level of Evidence A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute blood pressure/maintain CPP</td>
<td>If the patient does not receive tPA, BP goal should be &lt;220/120 in order to maintain brain perfusion and to reverse and preserve hypoxic brain tissue</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the patient receives tPA, BP goal should be &lt;185/110 to decrease the risk of intracranial hemorrhage</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper/hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Treat BG &gt; 140 mg/dL consistently (goal 140–185). Nonrandomized studies showed worse recovery in patients with hyperglycemia</td>
<td>Class IIa, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expert consensus, hypoglycemia should be treated when &lt;60 mg/dL</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airway/oxygenation/and aspiration precautions</td>
<td>Use supplemental oxygen if SpO₂ &lt; 94%. Consider early intubation if the patient is not protecting his or her airway</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac monitoring for 24 h</td>
<td>Screen for atrial fibrillation and other potential cardiac arrhythmias that would necessitate urgent cardiac interventions, that is, rate/rhythm control and prompt anticoagulation</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antipyretics</td>
<td>Fever. Attempt to identify and treat the source</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Age >80, combination of previous stroke and diabetes, NIHSS >25, >1/3 MCA infarct on CT are the exclusions for 3–4.5 h as these patients were not in trial. From Hacke W, Kaste M, Bluhmki E, et al. Thrombolysis with alteplase 3 to 4.5 hours after acute ischemic stroke. N Engl J Med. 2008;359(13):1317–1329. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0804656.

### TABLE 20.7  Potential Complications and Treatment of Stroke Therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>To do</th>
<th>Guidelines/Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Post-tPA: headache, worsening exam, acute hypertension, nausea/vomiting</td>
<td>Stop tPA and obtain immediate CT of the head. If hemorrhagic conversion, proceed with your institution’s tPA reversal protocol</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angioedema</td>
<td>Occurs in 1.3%–5.1% of patients who receive IV tPA. Stabilize the airway and initiate treatment with ranitidine, diphenhydramine, methylprednisolone, and ephedrine as needed</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar reperfusion hemorrhage/brainstem compression</td>
<td>Neurosurgical consult for occipital craniectomy or EVD. Life-saving technique with good outcomes</td>
<td>Class I, Level of Evidence B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 20.8  Important Ischemic Stroke Protocols, Criteria, and Order Sets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tPA Reversal Protocola</th>
<th>Hemispheric Decompression Inclusion Criteria</th>
<th>Post-tPA Orders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Stop tPA</td>
<td>• Age 18–60 y</td>
<td>• Neurologic checks and blood pressure q 15 min × 2 h, then q 30 min × 6 h, and then hourly for first 24 h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Goal: fibrinogen level &gt; 100 mg/dL with cryoprecipitate</td>
<td>• Clinical deficits suggestive of the MCA with an NIHSS &gt; 15</td>
<td>• Defer NG, Foley, arterial line for 24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Type and cross</td>
<td>• Decrease in the level of consciousness to a score of 1 or greater on item 1a of the NIHSS</td>
<td>• CT scan at 24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Check fibrinogen level immediately and every 6 h</td>
<td>• CT with infarct of &gt;50% of the MCA, with or without additional infarction in the ACA or PCA on the same side, or infarct volume &gt;145 cm³ as shown on diffusion-weighted MRI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Give 10–20 units cryoprecipitate before level returns</td>
<td>• Neurosurgical consult for possible hemicraniectomy. Hemicraniectomy can be a life-saving procedure when performed within 48 h of stroke in patients who are &lt;60 y of age and present with an NIHSS &lt; 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Do not use steroids for edema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 20.9 Indications and Contraindications for IV tPA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications</th>
<th>Contraindications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Diagnosis of ischemic stroke causing measurable neurologic deficit</td>
<td>• Significant head trauma or prior stroke in previous 3 mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Onset of symptoms &lt;3 h before beginning treatment</td>
<td>• Symptoms suggest subarachnoid hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Aged ≥18 y</td>
<td>• Arterial puncture at a noncompressible site in previous 7 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Symptoms suggest subarachnoid hemorrhage</td>
<td>• History of previous intracranial hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Intracranial neoplasm, arteriovenous malformation, or aneurysm</td>
<td>• Recent intracranial or intraspinal surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Recent acute myocardial infarction (within previous 3 mo)</td>
<td>• Elevated blood pressure (systolic &gt;185 mm Hg or diastolic &gt;110 mm Hg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Contraindications*</td>
<td>• Active internal bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Only minor or rapidly improving stroke symptoms (clearing spontaneously)</td>
<td>• Acute bleeding diathesis, including but not limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pregnancy</td>
<td>1. To Platelet count &lt;100,000/mm³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Seizure at onset with postictal residual neurologic impairments</td>
<td>2. Heparin received within 48 h, resulting in abnormally elevated aPTT greater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Major surgery or serious trauma within previous 14 d</td>
<td>than the upper limit of normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Recent gastrointestinal or urinary tract hemorrhage (within previous 21 d)</td>
<td>3. Current use of anticoagulant with INR &gt;1.7 or PT &gt;15 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Recent acute myocardial infarction (within previous 3 mo)</td>
<td>4. Current use of direct thrombin inhibitors or direct factor Xa inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Exclusions 3–4.5 h</td>
<td>• Blood glucose concentration &lt;50 mg/dL (2.7 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Age &gt;80 y</td>
<td>• CT demonstrates multilobar infarction (hypodensity &gt;1/3 cerebral hemisphere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Combined history of diabetes and prior stroke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Any use of anticoagulation regardless of INR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• NIHSS &gt;25 or CT with &gt;1/3 MCA territory hypodensity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Under some circumstances, patients may receive fibrinolytic therapy despite one or more relative contraindications. Consider risk to benefit of IV tPA carefully if any of the relative contraindications are present. Based on the 2013 AHA/ASA Guidelines. From Jauch EC, Saver JL, Adams HP, et al. Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke. 2013;44(3):870–947. doi: 10.1161/STR.0b013e318284056a

understand the results of these trials, it is important to recognize the outcome parameters being measured. The modified Rankin Scale (mRS) is a 6-point functional outcome parameter that ranges from no disability (0) to death (6). It is typically obtained 90 days after a patient has a stroke. The NIHSS, which is not a functional outcome scale but rather a 42-point measure of neurologic deficit, is more valuable during the initial evaluation. There is some controversy regarding these IV tPA trials, because in none of them were NIHSS scores at 24 hours different following IV tPA. At 3 months, however, the NIHSS and mRS demonstrated a significant benefit in patients treated within the 3-hour time window. These benefits were replicated in the 3- to 4.5-hour time window in the ECASS 3 trial. Importantly, earlier trials that extended IV tPA therapy to 6 hours revealed no difference in outcome and potential harm, and a 2010 meta-analysis of the ECASS, ATLANTIS, NINDS 2, and EPITHET trials demonstrated the same findings (no difference/potential harm) for IV tPA given after 4.5 hours.33 Because of this, it is imperative to determine the time of onset of a patient’s symptoms as well as to abide by the contraindications to therapy. The following is a summary of IV tPA outcome data:

- In patients receiving IV tPA within a 3-hour window, there is an absolute increase of 13% (39% vs. 26%) and a relative increase of 50% in an excellent outcome (mRS 0 to 1) versus placebo. In patients receiving IV tPA at the 3- to 4.5-hour mark, there is an absolute increase of 7% and a relative increase of 12% for this same outcome. The percentage of
individuals with a bad outcome (mRS 4 to 5) or dead (mRS 6) is also reduced for patients in both windows, even if patients with hemorrhagic conversion are included.\textsuperscript{20,34,35}

- The odds ratio of a good outcome is 1.7 (95% confidence interval [CI] 1.2 to 2.6) when treated with IV tPA within 3 hours and is 1.3 (95% CI 1.0 to 1.7) when treated from 3 to 4.5 hours.\textsuperscript{20}
- For IV tPA given within the 3-hour window, the number needed to treat (NNT) is 3; for IV tPA given with within the 3- to 4.5-hour window, the NNT is 6.\textsuperscript{34,35}
- For IV tPA given within the 3-hour window, the number needed to harm (NNH) is 33; for IV tPA given with within the 3- to 4.5-hour window, the NNH is 37.\textsuperscript{34,35}
- The risk of hemorrhagic conversion after IV tPA is 6%.\textsuperscript{20}

**Endovascular Therapy**

Intra-arterial tPA (IA-tPA) and mechanical thrombectomy (IA-thrombectomy) are two endovascular therapeutic options that may be considered in patients with large vessel occlusions and NIHSS $\geq 8$. The latest trial of endovascular therapy, in which patients within the IV tPA time window received either IV tPA alone or IV tPA and an endovascular intervention, did not show a significant difference in the outcome.\textsuperscript{31} This study, however, did not use advanced perfusion imaging to confirm a large vessel clot, and nearly 20% of cases proved to have no large vessel occlusion. In addition, the majority of devices used in this trial are no longer used because of their inferior recanalization rates compared to newer models. Improved recanalization rates with the Trevo and Solitaire devices\textsuperscript{24,25} have lead to continued research—not available at the time of this publication—regarding the benefits of endovascular therapy in large vessel occlusion (SWIFT PRIME and POSITIVE Trials). At this time, IA-tPA and IA—thrombectomy cannot be considered standard of care, but may be considered for patients with an NIHSS $\geq 8$ who are either not candidates for IV tPA or who show no improvement following IV tPA.

**Large MCA Stroke**

For patients with a large MCA stroke seen on CT (>1/3 of MCA), admission to the ICU and neurosurgical consultation for consideration of hemicraniectomy may be considered, provided family members favor aggressive care. Hemicraniectomy trials have universally shown a significant mortality benefit, but have not demonstrated consistent improvement in functional status.\textsuperscript{19} In patients with large MCA strokes, if signs or symptoms of herniation are encountered in the ED, ICP management should be implemented (see Table 20.7), including definitive airway management. Other potential complications that can arise in this setting include seizures and acute hydrocephalus.

**CONCLUSION**

Ischemic stroke continues to increase in prevalence, and is the cause of considerable morbidity in the United States. Fortunately, advances in diagnosis and in the armamentarium of therapeutic options, such as IV tPA and endovascular therapy, make stroke a highly treatable disease in the acute care setting. The protocols reviewed in this chapter can help guide a rapid diagnostic workup and facilitate the time-sensitive interventions necessary to minimize death and disability from to this devastating disease.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IV tPA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group. NEJM. 1995&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt; NINDS 2</td>
<td>Randomized, double-blind trial (RCT) of 333 patients comparing IV tPA vs. placebo</td>
<td>Ninety-day functional outcome significantly better for all four outcome measures (OR 1.7, 95% CI, 1.2–2.6; &lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.008) despite symptomatic bleed (SB) rate of 6.4% vs. 0.6% (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hacke et al., NEJM. 2008&lt;sup&gt;21&lt;/sup&gt; ECASS 3</td>
<td>RCT of 821 patients comparing IV tPA vs. placebo 3 to 4.5 h</td>
<td>More patients with favorable outcome in the tPA group (52.4% vs. 45.2%; OR 1.34; 95% CI, 1.02–1.76; &lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.04). SB, 2.4% treatment vs. 0.2% control; (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.008). No mortality difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandercock et al., Lancet. 2012&lt;sup&gt;22&lt;/sup&gt; IST 3</td>
<td>RCT of 3,035 patients comparing IV tPA vs. placebo 0–6 h</td>
<td>Alive and favorable outcome (Oxford Handicap Scale (0–1)) at 6 mo 24% in the intervention group vs. 21% in controls (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.018). More deaths occurred between 7 d and 6 mo in tPA group, but both groups had the same mortality at 6 mo (27%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endovascular Therapy: IA-tPA and IA-Thrombectomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furlan et al., JAMA. 1999&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt; PROACT 2</td>
<td>Randomized, controlled, open-label trial with blinded follow-up of 180 patients comparing IA tPA vs. no treatment at 3 to 6 h</td>
<td>Forty percent in treatment group vs. 25% in control group had a mRS of 2 or less (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.04). Recanalization occurred in 66% of treatment group vs. 18% of control group (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.001). SB 10% in treatment group vs. 2% in control (&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.06). No difference in mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saver et al., Lancet. 2012&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt; SWIFT</td>
<td>RCT of 113 patients comparing Solitaire Stent vs. Merci device for large stroke</td>
<td>Recanalization rate, neurologic outcome, and mortality at 3 mo all statistically better then Merci device by a landslide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nogueira et al., Lancet. 2012&lt;sup&gt;25&lt;/sup&gt; TREVO</td>
<td>RCT of 178 patients comparing Trevo Stent vs. Merci device for large clot stroke</td>
<td>Recanalization rate of 86% in Trevo vs. 60% in Merci group (OR 4.22, 95% CI 1.92–9.69; &lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; superiority &lt;0.0001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broderick et al., NEJM. 2013&lt;sup&gt;26&lt;/sup&gt; IMS 3</td>
<td>RCT of 656 patients who received either IV tPA alone or IV tPA and endovascular therapy (IA-tPA or IA-thrombectomy) within 3 h of stroke onset</td>
<td>No difference in 90-day mRS. No difference in SB or mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemicraniectomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vahedi et al., Lancet Neurol. 2007&lt;sup&gt;27&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Pooled analysis of three RCT of medical treatment vs. craniectomy for large MCA strokes with in 48 h</td>
<td>Surgery improved survival with mRS ≤4 (NNT= 2) and survival with mRS ≤3 (NNT = 4), and survival irrespective of functional outcome (NNT = 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vahedi et al., Stroke. 2007&lt;sup&gt;28&lt;/sup&gt; DECIMAL</td>
<td>RCT of 38 patients comparing medical therapy vs. hemicraniectomy for MCA stroke with shift</td>
<td>Early decompressive craniectomy increased by more than half the number of patients with moderate disability and significantly reduced the mortality rate compared with medical therapy (absolute mortality reduction of 52.8% in surgical group compared to medical therapy, &lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.0001).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jüttler et al., N Eng J Med. 2014&lt;sup&gt;29&lt;/sup&gt; DESTINY 2</td>
<td>Medical therapy vs. craniectomy for malignant MCA stroke in patients 60 y of age or older</td>
<td>Hemicraniectomy increased survival without severe disability among patients 61 y of age or older with a malignant middle-cerebral-artery infarction (38% surgery vs. 18% control, OR, 2.91; 95% CI, 1.06–7.49; &lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt; = 0.04)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio; SB, symptomatic bleed; NNT, number needed to treat.
REFERENCES


Subarachnoid and Intracerebral Hemorrhage
A.L.O. Manoel, Cappy Lay, D. Turkel-Parrella, Joshua Stillman, and Alberto Goffi

BACKGROUND
Cerebrovascular disease is the fourth leading cause of death in North America and accounts for approximately 130,000 deaths per year. Eighty percent of strokes are ischemic; the remaining 20% are hemorrhagic. Hemorrhagic stroke is subdivided into spontaneous intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) (15%) and subarachnoid hemorrhage (5%). Although less common, hemorrhagic stroke has markedly worse outcomes than ischemic stroke, including higher mortality and poorer functional outcomes. This chapter reviews the management of both spontaneous ICH and aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage.

SPONTANEOUS INTRACEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE
The estimated incidence of spontaneous ICH worldwide is 24.6/100,000 person-years; 67,000 cases are reported annually in the United States. Among strokes, ICH carries the poorest prognosis for survival and functional recovery, with high rates of early mortality (median 30-day mortality 40.4%, with 50% of these deaths occurring within the first 2 days); poor long-term survival; and moderate to severe persistent deficits among survivors (<40% ever achieve independent function). Recent population-based studies, however, suggest that more than half of all patients present with small ICHs, where excellent and timely medical care can have a powerful, positive impact on morbidity and mortality. In fact, observational reports suggest that misguided prognostic pessimism has led to withdrawal of life support in patients who would have had acceptable clinical outcomes if properly managed. ICH must therefore be considered an acute neurologic emergency with potential interventions that may significantly mitigate primary and subsequent secondary brain injury. The following discussion focuses exclusively on spontaneous (i.e., not traumatic) ICH.

Etiology and Risk Factors for ICH
An increased incidence of spontaneous ICH is associated with many underlying conditions, including hypertension, advanced age, and male gender. Other conditions associated with a poorer prognosis—after controlling for age and gender—include
diabetes mellitus and a posterior fossa location (Table 21.1). The most common risk factor associated with spontaneous ICH is chronic arterial hypertension, which is present in approximately 75% of all patients with ICH and is associated with deep hemorrhage. The most common sites for hypertensive bleeds are deep perforator arteries in the pons, midbrain, thalamus, basal ganglia, and the deep cerebellar nuclei.7 The lobar region is the second most common location for ICH (45%). It is more common in the elderly and is associated with cerebral amyloid angiopathy. Posterior fossa hemorrhage accounts for the remaining 10% of ICH and carries the worst prognosis.

Important risk factors for secondary ICH are myriad: coagulopathies (resulting from the use of antithrombotic or thrombolytic agents or from congenital or acquired factor deficiencies); systemic diseases such as thrombocytopenia; lymphoproliferative disorders; and hepatic and renal failure. The increasing use of oral anticoagulants, especially vitamin K inhibitors (such as warfarin) and newer oral anticoagulants (such as dabigatran), has resulted in a surge of coagulopathy-associated ICH in recent years and now accounts for more than 15% of all cases of ICH.8 Other identified risk factors for ICH are advanced age, high alcohol intake, low cholesterol, and low triglyceride levels.9,10 Socioeconomic and ethnic factors also appear to play a role in the prevalence of cerebral hemorrhage. ICH is twice as common in low-income and middle-income countries when compared with high-income countries; Asians, African Americans, and Hispanics are at higher risk than Caucasians.11,12

Causes of ICH include intracranial aneurysms and arteriovenous malformations (AVMs). Aneurysms most commonly rupture into the subarachnoid space but may also cause intraparenchymal hematomas. AVMs typically remain asymptomatic; however, ICH is their most common presentation (60% of AVMs present with intraparenchymal hemorrhage).13 Hemorrhage due to an AVM may occur at any location within the cerebrum, brainstem, or cerebellum.

Brain tumors are a rare cause of intracerebral hemorrhage and account for <5% of all cases.14 These may be primary tumors, most commonly glioblastoma multiforme (GBM) or oligodendrogliomas, or they may be metastatic brain tumors. Lung cancer, because of its high prevalence, is the most common source for brain metastases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 21.1 Etiology and Risk Factors for ICH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Hypertensive vasculopathy (leading cause for ICH; &gt;50% of all ICHs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebral amyloid angiopathy (most common cause of lobar ICH, especially in the elderly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Coagulopathy (bleeding disorders, antithrombotic agents, thrombolytic therapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Underlying structural lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brain tumor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vascular malformations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemorrhagic transformation of ischemic stroke</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infections (especially “mycotic” aneurysms, endocarditis-related septic cerebral emboli, aspergillosis, and herpes simplex encephalitis)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary or secondary CNS vasculitis (rare cause)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moyamoya disease (rare cause)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dural venous sinus thrombosis (hemorrhagic venous infarction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Post-reperfusion (e.g., post-carotid endarterectomy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Drugs (e.g., cocaine, amphetamines)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 The lobar region is the second most common location for ICH (45%).

8 Other identified risk factors for ICH are advanced age, high alcohol intake, low cholesterol, and low triglyceride levels.8,10

9 Socioeconomic and ethnic factors also appear to play a role in the prevalence of cerebral hemorrhage. ICH is twice as common in low-income and middle-income countries when compared with high-income countries; Asians, African Americans, and Hispanics are at higher risk than Caucasians.11,12

10 Socioeconomic and ethnic factors also appear to play a role in the prevalence of cerebral hemorrhage. ICH is twice as common in low-income and middle-income countries when compared with high-income countries; Asians, African Americans, and Hispanics are at higher risk than Caucasians.11,12

13 Hemorrhage due to an AVM may occur at any location within the cerebrum, brainstem, or cerebellum.
causing ICH. Other sources of brain metastasis causing ICH include melanoma, renal cell carcinoma, thyroid carcinoma, and choriocarcinoma.15

Less frequent causes of secondary ICH include infections, vasculitis, sinus venous thrombosis, carotid endarterectomy, Moyamoya disease, and drug use (e.g., cocaine). Finally, it should be noted that hemorrhagic transformation of acute ischemic stroke is relatively common, but in the absence of anticoagulation or thrombolytic therapy, is most often asymptomatic.

Mechanisms of Brain Injury
Acute neurologic injuries cause immediate damage (primary brain injury) and delayed damage (secondary brain injury). In ICH, primary injury is defined by local tissue destruction, which results from the rupture of a blood vessel into the brain parenchyma and ensuing ischemia and elevated intracranial pressure (ICP). In more than one-third of patients, substantial expansion of the hemorrhage is observed during the first few hours, resulting in further mechanical injury and early clinical deterioration.16 It is thought that much of this initial damage cannot be reversed.

Primary brain injury initiates a cascade of biochemical events at the cellular level, including ischemic and apoptotic cell injury cascades, edema, and excitotoxicity, resulting in delayed and often progressive secondary brain injury. Unlike primary injury, secondary brain injury is considered preventable or reversible in the first hours to days following the initial hemorrhagic event. If present, conditions that decrease cerebral oxygen and glucose delivery (e.g., hypotension, hypoxia, anemia, and hypoglycemia) or increase cerebral metabolic demand (e.g., fever, seizures, and hyperglycemia) exacerbate secondary brain injury.17 Minimization of secondary brain injury requires an early, aggressive, and well-structured approach to patient care and may result in improved long-term functional outcomes.

History and Physical Exam
Classically, ICH presents as a sudden onset of a focal neurologic deficit that evolves over minutes to hours. Clinical assessment, however, cannot reliably distinguish intracerebral hemorrhage from ischemic stroke.18 Neurologic signs and symptoms can help indicate the location of the hemorrhage: (1) hemiplegia/hemiparesis, hemisensory loss, or homonymous hemianopsia suggest putaminal and thalamic ICH; (2) ataxia, vomiting, headache, and coma indicate brainstem compression in cerebellar bleeding; (3) deep coma, total paralysis, and pinpoint pupils suggest pontine bleeding.

Common symptoms for all types of ICH include headache (~40%), nausea and vomiting (~40% to 50%), and alteration in level of consciousness (LOC) (~50%), particularly for large ICH. Seizures occur in up to one-third of patients and often reflect an expanding hemorrhage, an underlying vascular or neoplastic etiology, or a lobar hemorrhage affecting cortical tissue.19

Blood pressure (BP) is typically elevated in ICH. Nonspecific EKG abnormalities are common (e.g., prolonged QT interval, depressed ST segments, flat or inverted T waves) and are thought to result from a centrally mediated release of catecholamines. Ventricular arrhythmias have also been described with brainstem compression.
Progression of neurologic deficits with deterioration of LOC during the first 48 hours after hospital admission has been described in 22% to 50% of patients with ICH.\textsuperscript{20,21}

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

Recently published Emergency Neurological Life Support (ENLS) protocols\textsuperscript{22} emphasize the following aspects of emergent clinical assessment for patients presenting with suspicion of ICH: (1) a concise and targeted assessment of the patient’s clinical condition and (2) rapid and accurate diagnosis using neuroimaging to define ICH characteristics (i.e., location, volume, and possible etiology). Clinical assessment proceeds as follows:

1. **ABCs.** Immediate assessment and stabilization of airway, breathing, and circulation.
2. **Evaluate all vital signs, oxygen saturation, and blood glucose.** Almost any alteration in vital signs can contribute to secondary brain injury.
3. **Perform and document a standardized neurologic stroke severity scale during the initial encounter.** This allows for easy communication about the initial level of disability and for comparison over time. The most common rating scales include the National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS)—appropriate for patients who are awake or drowsy—and the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)—for the obtunded or comatose patient. Often, both scales are used.
4. **Evaluate for bleeding disorders.** Investigate current anticoagulant use and any history of coagulopathy. Determine when the last dose of antithrombotic medication was taken. Measure the platelets count, partial thromboplastin time (PTT), and international normalized ratio (INR).
5. **Perform frequent neurologic assessments.** Ideally every 15 to 30 minutes, for rapid detection of clinical deterioration and signs of increased ICP.

The clinical presentation of ICH is indistinguishable from ischemic stroke, but its management can be very different; therefore, rapid neuroimaging is essential. Noncontrast computed tomography (CT) is the most commonly used imaging modality for emergency diagnosis and characterization of ICH (location and extent of the hematoma). Noncontrast CT is highly sensitive and specific for acute bleeding, which will appear hyperdense, then, over weeks, become isodense, and may have a ring-enhancing appearance. In addition to the location of the primary hematoma, the degree of bleeding (including volume, the presence of intraventricular hemorrhage [IVH], and signs of increased ICP or herniation) is among the strongest predictors of long-term outcome.

A rapid estimate of ICH volume helps determine stroke severity and delineate treatment options. A simple and validated method that can be used in the emergency department (ED) is the ABC/2 formula,\textsuperscript{23} where A is the greatest hemorrhage diameter on the CT slice with the largest area of ICH, B is the largest perpendicular diameter on the same CT slice, and C is the approximate number of CT slices with hemorrhage multiplied by the slice thickness in centimeters, which is often 0.5 cm. For calculation of C, a slice is counted as 1 if the hemorrhage area is >75% of the largest hematoma area on the reference slice; as 0.5 if the hemorrhage area is approximately 25% to 75%; and not counted if the area is <25%. ABC/2 gives the ICH volume in cm\textsuperscript{3}. In children, the ABC/XYZ has been proposed, where X, Y, and Z are perpendicular measures of the supratentorial intracranial space (% of total brain volume).\textsuperscript{24}
Recently, it has been suggested that identification of active extravasation of intravenous contrast into the hematoma, called the “spot sign,” during contrast-enhanced CT and/or CT angiography (CTA) may predict hematoma expansion.\textsuperscript{25,26}

In patients with confirmed acute ICH, CT or MR angiography, or catheter angiography is recommended to exclude an underlying lesion such as an aneurysm, AVM, or tumor. However, in hypertensive patients with a well-circumscribed hematoma in a typical location for hypertensive bleeding (thalamus, basal ganglia, pons, and cerebellum), the yield of such studies is extremely low, and a decision not to proceed with these additional diagnostic tests is reasonable.\textsuperscript{27} At the other extreme, young, nonhypertensive patients with isolated intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH) deserve aggressive workup.

**Risk Stratification and Prognostication**

Several clinical grading scales have been developed to assist with risk stratification and prognostication. An easy-to-use and well-validated model is the ICH score\textsuperscript{28} (Table 21.2), which is based on patient demographics (age), clinical condition (GCS), and neuroimaging findings (ICH volume, presence of IVH, and supratentorial or infratentorial origin of ICH). The ICH score has been validated for stratification of 30-day mortality\textsuperscript{28} and 12-month functional outcome\textsuperscript{29}; each point increase is associated with increased mortality risk and poorer functional outcome. However,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glasgow coma scale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–12</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–15</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥80</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;80</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICH volume (mL)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥30</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;30</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of intraventricular hemorrhage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infratentorial origin of ICH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total ICH score</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0–6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

it has been shown that withdrawal of life support in patients likely to have a poor outcome may significantly bias these predictive models. In the ED, clinical grading scales should be used only for communication about a patient’s condition, or for research purposes, and not to limit interventions in the initial management of patients with ICH.  

**Management Guidelines**

Emergency Department management of patients with acute ICH entails (1) initial stabilization of airway and hemodynamics, (2) minimization of primary injury and (3) prevention of secondary brain injury. The most recent American Heart Association/American Stroke Association guidelines and the recently published ENLS protocols are reviewed in the following sections.

**Initial Stabilization**

Management of ICH begins by ensuring adequate patient airway, breathing, and circulation. Early endotracheal intubation is essential for patients with a depressed LOC who are unable to protect their airway. Classically, a GCS ≤ 8, rapidly deteriorating LOC, and uncontrolled seizures are indications for intubation. Stable patients requiring transfer to another medical facility should be carefully assessed for the possibility of airway compromise in the near term, and, if the risk is deemed high, be intubated prior to leaving the referring center. Whenever possible, a rapid and concise neurologic assessment should precede intubation in order to document the patient’s baseline functioning before the exam is confounded by use of sedative or paralytic drugs.

Maintenance of both brain perfusion and oxygenation is critical for prevention of secondary brain injury. To this end, steps should be taken to prevent elevations in ICP, including minimization of airway manipulation and use of ICP lowering medications. Oxygen saturation should be maintained >94% and carbon dioxide (PaCO₂) levels should be kept in the normal range (35–45 mm Hg). In mechanically ventilated patients, use of lung-protective ventilation strategies (pressure- and volume-limited mechanical ventilation) is appropriate. In a setting of increased ICP and/or signs of acute brain herniation, hyperventilation to a goal PaCO₂ of 28 to 32 mm Hg may be used. Hyperventilation is not a definitive treatment for elevated ICP because of the risk of increased brain ischemia and rebound elevations in ICP; a normal PaCO₂ should be reinstituted as soon as definitive treatments to control ICP are in place.

**Minimization of Primary Injury**

**Blood Pressure Management** Arterial blood pressure is elevated in the majority of patients who present with ICH. Mean arterial pressure (MAP) is >120 mm Hg in over two-thirds of ICH patients and >140 mm Hg in over one-third. Such acute elevations in BP have been implicated as a cause of bleeding and as a normal physiologic response to maintain cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP). Although there is general agreement that low BP levels are associated with poorer outcome and must be corrected, it is not clear at this time whether this observation simply reflects the fact that low BP levels occur more often in severe cases.
Current guidelines\textsuperscript{30} recommend the following BP targets in patients with spontaneous ICH:

- SBP $> 200$ mm Hg or MAP $> 150$ mm Hg: Aggressive reduction of BP with target MAP of 110 mm Hg or BP 160/90 mm Hg
- SBP $> 180$ mm Hg or MAP $> 130$ mm Hg and no clinical evidence of elevated ICP: Target MAP of 110 mm Hg or BP 160/90 mm Hg
- SBP $> 180$ mm Hg or MAP $> 130$ mm Hg with clinical evidence of ICP elevation on exam, CT, or ICP monitor; If ICP monitoring is available, target a CPP of $\geq 60$ mm Hg (50 to 70 mm Hg); if ICP monitoring is not available, target a MAP of 80 to 90 mm Hg (assuming an ICP of 20 to 30 mm Hg)

The evidence underlying these guidelines is controversial. In the recent, large multicenter trial “Intracerebral Hemorrhage Acutely Decreasing Arterial Pressure Trial 2” (INTERACT 2), 2,839 patients with spontaneous ICH were randomized to rapid blood pressure lowering with a target SBP $= 140$ mm Hg within 1 hour; or to the standard guideline-recommended target SBP of 180 mm Hg. Analysis of a composite outcome of death and severe disability on the modified Rankin scale (mRS $= 3$ to 6) showed an 8% benefit in the more aggressive treatment group; however, the result was not statistically significant. Although the safety of this lower-BP target has been demonstrated, an evidence-based benefit in clinical outcome has yet to be confirmed. More answers are expected from the Antihypertensive Treatment of Acute Cerebral Hemorrhage (ATACH) II trial.

If a decision is made to lower blood pressure, management should be started immediately. A short-acting, titratable, intravenous agent should be used to achieve the target quickly and with minimal risk for overshoot. Labetalol (initial bolus dose 5 to 20 mg titrated every 10 minutes to effect) is a reasonable agent if there are no contraindications. Nicardipine is another excellent option (initial dose 5 mg/hour, with titration by 2.5 mg/hour every 15 minutes as needed; maximum dose 15 mg/hour). Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (e.g., enalapril) and hydralazine may be used. Sodium nitroprusside and nitroglycerin increase ICP and lower cerebral blood flow and should be avoided.

Twenty-four to forty-eight hours following brain injury, oral/enteral antihypertensive medications should be initiated to help achieve individualized blood pressure targets for secondary stroke prevention.

**Correction of Coagulopathy**

Coagulopathy in patients with ICH is most commonly due to use of therapeutic anticoagulation; other risk factors include acquired or congenital coagulation factor deficiencies and qualitative or quantitative platelet abnormalities. Coagulopathies in ICH are associated with poor prognosis because of prolonged bleeding and hematoma expansion; whenever possible, these deficits should be immediately corrected.

**Specific Anticoagulants**

1. Vitamin K antagonists (VKAs, e.g., warfarin) are currently the most commonly prescribed oral anticoagulants. ICH occurs 8 to 10 times more frequently in VKA anticoagulated patients than in non-anticoagulated patients, with a twofold
higher mortality rate. Therapy includes withholding anticoagulants and treating to rapidly normalize the INR with IV vitamin K (5 to 10 mg) and replacement of vitamin K–dependent factors. Debate continues over the optimal strategy for replacing vitamin K–dependent factors; currently both fresh frozen plasma (FFP; 10 to 15 mL/kg) and prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs—25 to 50 IU/kg) are used. AHA/ASA guidelines recommend PCCs because of their smaller infusion volume and subsequently lower risk of volume overload and pulmonary edema. PCCs have the added advantages of rapid reconstitution and administration and result in the correction of INR within minutes. The most recent American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines recommend using PCCs rather than FFP to reverse significant warfarin-associated ICH.

2. Novel oral anticoagulants (direct thrombin inhibitors, e.g., dabigatran, and Xa inhibitors, e.g., rivaroxaban) have also been associated with ICH. Clinical experience in reversing coagulopathy from these agents is limited, and no specific reversal protocols or agents currently exist; inhibitors for dabigatran and rivaroxaban are under development, but not yet commercially available. There is some evidence that hemodialysis may be effective in dabigatran–associated bleeding, and, within 2 hours of ingestion, there may be a role for oral activated charcoal (also suggested for rivaroxaban). PCCs may have a role in treating ICH related to rivaroxaban, but not to dabigatran. In the case of patients treated with one of these newer oral anticoagulants, urgent hematologic consultation is recommended.

3. For patients receiving unfractionated heparin (UFH), protamine sulfate is the reversal agent of choice. Standard dosing is 1 mg of protamine for every 100 units of heparin administered (maximum dose 50 mg). When UFH is given as continuous infusion, only the UFH given in the preceding 2 hours should be considered when estimating the quantity of heparin to be reversed. If more than 4 hours have elapsed since the last dose of UFH, reversal is unlikely to be necessary (PTT should still be documented). With low molecular weight heparin (LMWH), full reversal is not possible, although protamine may still be used in an attempt at partial reversal (provides a maximum of 60% to 75% inhibition of the anti-Xa activity).

**Antiplatelet Agents**  Conflicting results have been published regarding the impact of antiplatelet agents on hematoma expansion and clinical outcomes. There is a small increased risk of ICH with the use of antiplatelet agents (0.2 events per 1,000 patient-years). Some centers support empiric use of platelet transfusion, while others discourage this practice, or suggest assaying for platelet function to guide transfusion. Current guidelines highlight a lack of evidence and consider platelet transfusion in ICH patients with a history of antiplatelet use as experimental. Additionally, some authors suggest the use of desmopressin (DDAVP, 0.3 mcg/kg), as has been used in the treatment of uremia–associated bleeding.

**Fibrinolytic Agents**  Symptomatic ICH is one of the most life–threatening complications of thrombolytic therapy. The incidence of symptomatic ICH following recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rt-PA) therapy for ischemic stroke is approximately 6%; of interest, symptomatic ICH following thrombolysis for myocardial infarction (MI),
for which a higher dose of rt-PA is used than in stroke (1.1 mg/kg in MI vs. 0.9 mg/kg in stroke), is quite rare (0.4% to 1.3%). The difference is thought to reflect the fact that healthy cerebral vessels do not readily bleed from thrombolysis. Management of suspected ICH during or after fibrinolytic infusion begins with immediate cessation of the infusion, clinical stabilization (ABCs), and emergent noncontrast CT head. The NINDS rt-PA study protocol recommends empiric treatment in these cases with 6 to 8 units of cryoprecipitate or FFP and 6 to 8 units of platelets; however, evidence on the most effective treatment in this situation is lacking.

Even patients without evidence of coagulopathy may experience hematoma expansion, especially in the first 24 hours. Because hematoma expansion is one of the major risk factors for poor outcome, it has been hypothesized that use of procoagulant agents could improve outcomes after ICH. Five randomized trials tested this hypothesis using recombinant factor VIIa (rFVIIa) (NovoSeven® RT) in non-coagulopathic patients with ICH (spontaneous and traumatic ICH). A meta-analysis of these studies showed significant reduction in hematoma growth, but an increased rate of thromboembolic events and no overall net difference in mortality or long-term disability. Current guidelines do not recommend the use of rFVIIa in the treatment of ICH. However, rFVIIa might benefit specific subsets of patients in whom the risk of hematoma expansion outweighs the risk of thromboembolic events. Two ongoing trials address this question in patients thought to be at high risk for hematoma expansion. The SPOTLIGHT trial (Spot Sign Selection of Intracerebral Hemorrhage to Guide Hemostatic Therapy) and the STOP-IT trial (Spot Sign for Predicting and Treating ICH Growth Study) are both addressing the role of rFVIIa in patients identified on CTA as having a positive “spot sign,” a finding indicative of extravasation of contrast into the hematoma and suggestive of significant risk for imminent hematoma expansion.

Surgical Interventions Based on current evidence and guidelines, surgical intervention may be considered in the following conditions.

Infratentorial ICH Although no randomized controlled trials (RCTs) of cerebellar hematoma evacuation have been undertaken, several case series suggest that surgical evacuation with cerebellar decompression is associated with improved outcomes in patients with ICH > 3 cm in diameter and clinical deterioration, or radiographic evidence of either brainstem compression or hydrocephalus. Treatment with external ventricular drainage (EVD) alone without posterior fossa decompression is not recommended because of the theoretical risk of upward herniation. Patients with cerebellar hemorrhage should be always referred for urgent neurosurgical consultation.

Supratentorial ICH Current guidelines suggest that surgical evacuation of supratentorial ICH should be considered only in patients presenting with lobar clots >30 mL that are within 1 cm of the surface. The recently published Surgical Trial in Intracerebral Hemorrhage (STICH) II did not show any difference in unfavorable outcomes at 6 months when comparing early surgery to conservative treatment in this specific subgroup of patients. The trial showed a slight survival advantage (OR = 0.86) for surgery within a few hours of the onset of hemorrhage in conscious patients with a modestly decreased
GCS (9 to 12) and with lobar hematomas, but the survival advantage was far from achieving statistical significance. Expert consensus is that surgery should be considered as a life-saving procedure for treatment of refractory increased ICP, especially in patients with ongoing clinical deterioration, recent onset of hemorrhage, involvement of the nondominant hemisphere, and relatively accessible hematomas.

**Intraventricular Hemorrhage and Hydrocephalus** IVH is quite common in spontaneous ICH (45% of patients), especially in patients with hypertensive hemorrhages involving the basal ganglia and the thalamus. Acute hydrocephalus may develop after ICH, either in association with IVH or because of direct mass effect on ventricles. Patients with acute hydrocephalus require urgent neurosurgical consultation for possible EVD placement. Unfortunately, ventriculostomy in the setting of IVH is difficult to manage because of frequent obstruction secondary to blood clots. Flushing the catheter helps remove the thrombus but may cause ventriculitis. Recently, use of intraventricular thrombolytic agents has been suggested as adjunct to EVD for accelerating blood clearance and clot lysis. The safety phase 2 trial of the CLEAR-IVH trial (Clot Lysis: Evaluating Accelerated Resolution of IVH) prospectively evaluated the safety of intraventricular use of 3 mg rt-PA versus placebo in 48 patients. Results from this study suggest that intraventricular rt-PA is safe and can have a significant benefit on clot clearance. However, pending results of the ongoing phase III CLEAR-IVH trial, current guidelines consider this treatment experimental.

**Prevention of Secondary Injury** Although this chapter focuses on the initial evaluation and management of patients with ICH, it is reasonable for the emergency physician to implement early interventions that can help minimize secondary injury in the ensuing 24 to 72 hours.

**Intracranial Pressure Monitoring** Few studies have addressed the incidence, management, and impact of elevated ICP on outcomes of ICH patients. Current guidelines are based on the principles and goals of traumatic brain injury (TBI) management.

- **Indications for ICP monitoring:** GCS ≤ 8, large hematoma with mass effect suggestive of elevated ICP, or hydrocephalus
- **Goals:** ICP < 20 mm Hg, CPP 50 to 70 mm Hg (if possible, adjustments based on the patient’s cerebral autoregulatory status)
- **Interventions:** Initial measures: elevate the patient’s head (30 to 45 degrees), drain cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) using an EVD; provide analgesia and sedation to achieve a motionless state, and maintain normal body temperature
- **Advanced measures:** hypertonic solutions (e.g., mannitol and hypertonic saline); hyperventilation (as bridge to further management); neuromuscular blockade; hematoma evacuation/decompressive craniectomy; mild hypothermia; barbiturate coma

**Seizure Prophylaxis** Seizures frequently complicate ICH; however, their incidence varies widely depending on diagnostic criteria, duration of follow-up, and the population studied. The estimated incidence of clinical seizures in patients with ICH...
is 4.2% to 20%, subclinical seizures 29% to 31%, and status epilepticus 0.3% to 21.4%. About 50% to 70% of seizures will occur within the first 24 hours, and 90% in the first 3 days. Predisposing factors include ICH with a lobar location (typically nonoccipital and subcortical hemorrhages), large hematoma size, hydrocephalus, midline shift, and low GCS. Although seizures theoretically may exacerbate brain injury, conflicting results have been reported on seizure association with clinical outcome and mortality. No RCTs exist to guide decision making for seizure prophylaxis or treatment specifically in patients with ICH.

As in traumatic brain injury, prophylactic anticonvulsants in patients with lobar ICH may reduce the risk of early seizures but do not affect long-term risk of developing epilepsy. In addition, two recent studies found their use to be associated with worse functional outcomes. Based on available data, current guidelines do not recommend routine use of prophylactic anticonvulsants. However, if a patient with ICH develops clinical seizures, or there is a change in mental status associated with EEG evidence of seizures, experts recommend initiation of treatment with antiepileptic agents. The choice of initial drug should depend on individual patient characteristics (i.e., medical comorbidities, concurrent drugs, and contraindications). Initial treatment typically begins with an intravenous benzodiazepine (e.g., lorazepam 0.05 to 0.10 mg/kg), followed by a loading dose of an IV agent (e.g., phenytoin 15 to 20 mg/kg, valproic acid 15 to 45 mg/kg, levetiracetam 500 to 1,500 mg, or phenobarbital 10 to 20 mg/kg).

Glycemic Control  A high proportion of patients with ICH (~60%) will develop stress hyperglycemia in the first 72 hours, even in the absence of a previous history of diabetes mellitus. Multiple studies have associated increased serum glucose in the acute phase of ICH with higher risk of poor outcome (hematoma expansion, increased edema, and death or severe disability). However, clear causality between hyperglycemia and poor outcome and, more interestingly, evidence of improved outcome with glycemic control have not been proven. Recent microdialysis studies have demonstrated increased cerebral hypoglycemic events in patients treated with tight glucose control strategy, and a large multicenter RCT in a general ICU population found increased mortality with intensive glucose control. Current guidelines recommend close glucose monitoring and avoidance of both hypoglycemia (<70 mg/dL) and hyperglycemia (>180 mg/dL); most experts agree that an insulin infusion should aim for a serum glucose of 140 to 180 mg/dL. By contrast, tight control (80 to 110 mg/dL) has been shown to increase mortality.

Temperature Control  Fever is relatively common in patients with ICH (up to 40%), and it has been independently associated with poor outcome. However, no RCT has yet demonstrated improved clinical outcome with induced normothermia. Despite a lack of evidence, there is general agreement that the presence of fever should prompt an appropriately broad workup; infectious sources should be identified and treated, and hyperthermia should be corrected (target core temperature below 38°C–37.5°C).

Venous Thromboembolism Prophylaxis  Patients with ICH are at high risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE). Independent risk factors for thromboembolic disease in patients with ICH include greater severity of stroke, prolonged immobilization, advanced
age, female gender, African–American ethnicity, and thrombophilia. Discontinuation of antithrombotic agents is itself, of course, associated with an increased risk of deep vein thrombosis (DVT). Guidelines suggest the use of intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC) devices in addition to elastic stockings in patients admitted for ICH, based on an RCT showing a reduced occurrence of asymptomatic DVT (4.7% vs. 15.9%). Evidence regarding use of prophylactic UFH or LMWH is less definitive. Based on small studies showing safety of pharmacologic prophylaxis (no increased risk of hematoma expansion or further bleeding), current guidelines suggest consideration of LMWH starting 1 to 4 days after ICH, provided follow-up imaging has documented cessation of bleeding.

**Disposition**

Patients with ICH are frequently medically and neurologically unstable and are at significant risk for sudden clinical deterioration, particularly in the immediate poststroke period. Care of ICH patients in highly specialized stroke or neurointensive intensive care units has been associated with lower mortality and better functional outcome, and admission to such a unit is considered standard of care. An institutional algorithm for referral protocol and/or transfer to centers with higher levels of care is recommended.

**ANEURYSMAL SUBARACHNOID HEMORRHAGE**

The challenge of emergency medicine lies in identifying those patients who can be treated and released and those patients whose complaints represent a life-threatening process requiring urgent intervention. Among the diseases with the greatest potential for catastrophic consequence when undiagnosed is subarachnoid hemorrhage from a ruptured cerebral aneurysm. When an emergency department patient presents with headache due to aneurysmal rupture, timely diagnosis by the emergency physician is the best chance for avoiding the devastating effects of rebleeding that so often result in severe disability or death.

Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage (aSAH) accounts for only a small proportion of patients who present to the ED with a complaint of headache. Unfortunately, despite our awareness of the severity of this disease, 12% of aSAH patients are misdiagnosed on initial presentation. Misdiagnosed patients are more likely to have normal mental status, to present more than a day after the onset of symptoms, be unmarried, less educated, and speak English as a second language.

**Epidemiology**

Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) is classified as either traumatic or spontaneous. Ruptured intracranial aneurysms are the leading cause of spontaneous SAH, followed by AVMs and nonaneurysmal “perimesencephalic” bleeding (characterized by a typical CT pattern and a benign clinical course). Cerebral aneurysms are vascular outpouchings that occur most frequently in the circle of Willis, where they typically form at branch points of the major cerebral arteries. Although cerebral aneurysms may be found at any arterial location in the cerebral circulation, the most common sites are the anterior communicating artery (30%), the posterior communicating artery (25%), the middle cerebral artery (20%), internal carotid bifurcation (7.5%), basilar tip (7%), and the posterior–inferior cerebellar artery (3%).
Autopsy studies have shown that 6% to 8% of the general population harbors a cerebral aneurysm. The risk of rupture depends on many factors, including aneurysm location, size, and previous history of rupture. In the United States, aSAH affects 30,000 persons per year and is twice as common in women (average age of 55 years old). Although aSAH accounts for only 5% of all types of stroke, it is responsible for 27% of productive years of life lost from cerebrovascular diseases.

Hypertension and smoking have a causative role in both aneurysm formation and rupture. A recent study reported that smoking increased the odds of aneurysm rupture threefold. Several heritable conditions are associated with the development of cerebral artery aneurysms, including a first-degree relative with aSAH, autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (PKD), neurofibromatosis type I, Marfan syndrome, multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) type I, pseudoxanthoma elasticum, hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome type II and IV. Family history and PKD account for 10% and 1% of all cases of aSAH, respectively.

**History and Physical Exam**

Aneurysmal SAH patients typically present with a sudden onset of severe headache. It is commonly described as the “worst headache of life,” but unfortunately, this description is given by more than 78% of all patients with headache of any etiology who present to the ED. The development of pain from aSAH is almost always rapid, though not instantaneous, and will usually reach peak intensity within 30 minutes of onset. Pain can be accompanied by loss of consciousness, vomiting, and neck pain or stiffness. Clinical grading scales have been developed to classify the severity and to predict the long-term outcome of aSAH (Table 21.3).

Although SAH represents only 2% of acute headaches in the ED, its potential for devastating outcomes makes accurate diagnosis essential. A clinical decision rule was recently developed to rule out aSAH in patients with acute headache (Ottawa SAH rule). In patients presenting to the ED with an acute headache and normal neurologic exam, any of the following factors raises the likelihood of aSAH and mandates additional workup (Table 21.4): age ≥ 40 years, neck pain or stiffness, witnessed loss of consciousness, onset during exertion, thunderclap headache (instantly peaking pain), and limited neck flexion on examination. This rule showed a sensitivity of 100% for detecting spontaneous SAH.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

In a series of 482 patients with aSAH admitted to a tertiary hospital between 1996 and 2001, 56 patients (12%) of cases were initially misdiagnosed. In 43% of cases, the misdiagnosis occurred in the ED. Most commonly, these patients received the diagnosis of tension headache or migraine (36%). The most common diagnostic error was the failure to acquire a head CT prior to discharge (73%). Three factors that were independently associated with misdiagnosis were normal mental status, small aSAH volume, and right-sided aneurysm location. Patients presenting with a normal mental status had higher rates of misdiagnosis (19%) than those with altered mental status.
The diagnostic workup for aSAH has traditionally included emergent noncontrast CT imaging followed by a lumbar puncture (LP) to evaluate for red blood cells or xanthochromia in the CSF if CT imaging is negative. Early studies of CT for detection of SAH demonstrated a sensitivity of 93% to 95% in the first 24 hours following onset of symptoms, dropping to 85% 3 days after, and 50% a week after symptom onset. More recent studies have reported sensitivities close to 100% in the first 72 hours using more advanced CT technology, raising question of whether lumbar puncture is always required to rule out the diagnosis. A recent prospective study of 3,132 patients with nontraumatic acute headache reported the sensitivity and negative predictive value of CT for the detection of SAH in the first 6 hours after symptom onset to be 100%. All studies were performed on third-generation CT scanners and were interpreted by a trained radiologist. These results suggest that lumbar puncture may not be necessary to rule out the diagnosis of aSAH when a patient presents to an ED within 6 hours of ictus. Another less invasive diagnostic approach that has been proposed is noncontrast CT followed by CTA. The CT/CTA approach excludes aSAH with a >99% post-test probability. The disadvantages of this last approach lie in the radiation dose and the need for iodinated contrast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 21.3</th>
<th>Clinical Grading Scales</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hunt and Hess</strong>&lt;sup&gt;63&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><strong>WFNS</strong>&lt;sup&gt;64&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Asymptomatic or mild headache and slight nuchal rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Moderate to severe headache, nuchal rigidity, no focal neurologic deficit other than cranial nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Confusion, lethargy, or mild focal neurologic deficit other than cranial nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Stupor or moderate to severe hemiparesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Coma, extensor posturing, moribund appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WFNS, World Federation of Neurosurgical Societies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 21.4</th>
<th>Ottawa SAH Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients presenting with acute nontraumatic headache that reaches maximum intensity within 1 h and normal neurologic examination should undergo further workup, if one of the following is present:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Age ≥ 40 y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Neck pain or stiffness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Witnessed loss of consciousness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Onset during exertion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Thunderclap headache (instantly peaking pain)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Limited neck flexion on examination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rule not applicable for the patient with neurologic deficits, previous aneurysms/SAH, brain tumors, or history of recurrent headaches (≥3 episodes over the course of ≥ 6 months)

SAH, Subarachnoid Hemorrhage.

On CT, acute SAH appears as hyperdense material, most often filling the suprasellar, ambient, quadrigeminal, and prepontine cisterns, with extension into the sylvian fissures and interhemispheric fissure. IVH is common and is a risk for the development of communicating hydrocephalus. Thicker cisternal clots and IVH have been associated with the development of delayed cerebral ischemia (DCI) in the course of aSAH (Table 21.5).

Less frequently, aneurysmal rupture can occur directly into brain parenchyma, resulting in intracerebral hemorrhage in addition to SAH and IVH. Depending on the location of the ICH, this is often accompanied by clinical hemiplegia or hemiparesis. Global cerebral edema may also be present on initial head CT and is more commonly seen in patients with Hunt and Hess scores of 4 or 5.

Management Guidelines

Approximately 12% of aSAH patients will die immediately. For patients who survive to reach medical attention, rebleeding is the most life-threatening entity, with mortality rates close to 70%. Traditionally, the risk of rebleeding after SAH has been quoted as 4% in the first 24 hours, 1% to 2% per day for the next 14 days, 50% risk during the initial 6 months after ictus, and 3% yearly thereafter. This is now believed to be an underestimate, with ultra-early rebleeding occurring in up to 17% of cases. Proper initial management therefore includes taking steps to prevent rebleeding and to ensure transfer of patients to high-volume centers for definitive treatment. Other key interventions include implementation of strategies to prevent secondary complications, such as DCI. The following sections reference the most recent American Heart Association/American Stroke Association guidelines, the recommendations from the Neurocritical Care Society’s Multidisciplinary Consensus Conference, and the recently published ENLS protocols.

Initial Stabilization

As with any medical emergency, initial management focuses on the ABCs. Cardiopulmonary complications are not uncommon following aSAH and are likely

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 21.5</th>
<th>CT Grading Scales</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fisher Scale</strong></td>
<td><strong>Modified Fisher Scale</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No SAH or IVH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No SAH or IVH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Diffuse deposition of thin layer; all vertical layers of blood (interhemispheric fissure, insular cistern, or ambient cistern) &lt;1 mm thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Vertical layers of blood ≥1 mm in thickness and/or localized clots (defined as &gt;3 × 5 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Intracerebral or intraventricular clots with diffuse or no subarachnoid blood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SAH, subarachnoid hemorrhage; IVH, intraventricular hemorrhage.
related to catecholamine discharge. Troponin elevation, arrhythmias (prolonged QT, ventricular arrhythmias, ST-segment changes), and wall motion abnormalities on echocardiography (stress-induced cardiomyopathy) are observed in 25% to 35% of patients. Severe cardiac compromise can occur and results in sudden death, cardiogenic shock, and pulmonary edema. Neurogenic pulmonary edema has also been described. These manifestations are usually transient and tend to resolve during the first week after hospitalization.85

**Prevention of Rebleeding**

**Blood Pressure Management** Blood pressure control is one of the most important early interventions in patients with aSAH. However, unlike for ICH, limited data exist to guide BP management in acute aSAH patients with an unsecured aneurysm (i.e., prior to either neurosurgical clipping or endovascular coiling). Lowering BP may decrease the risk of rebleeding but increases the risk of cerebral infarction in patients with impaired autoregulation. In a series of 134 patients with aSAH, a lower incidence of rebleeding (15% vs. 33%) but a higher incidence of infarction (43% vs. 22%) was reported in patients given antihypertensive therapy.86 Randomized controlled studies are lacking. Current guidelines acknowledge the paucity of data and recommend balancing the risk of hypertensive-induced rebleeding with the risk of ischemia from reduced CPP. Maintaining an SBP below 160 mm Hg or a MAP below 110 mm Hg is considered reasonable.82,84 Labetalol and nicardipine, both fast-acting and titratable drugs, are the preferred agents; as in ICH patients, the use of nitroprusside or nitroglycerine should be avoided because of the risk of increased ICP secondary to increased cerebral blood volume.87

**Pain and Anxiety Management** Pain (especially headache) and anxiety are common complaints after aSAH. Management of pain or anxiety in this population is challenging because of the difficult balance between effective management and avoidance of oversedation. There is no medication of choice; acetaminophen (1 g orally every 6 hours) along with an opioid agent (e.g., fentanyl, morphine, or hydromorphone) is a common strategy. Prior to the aneurysm being secured, NSAIDS should be avoided given their anti-platelet activity. Once the aneurysm is secured, the use of nonsteroid anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) as adjunctive opioid-sparing therapy may be considered. However, NSAID use has to be carefully considered because of potential detrimental effect on CPP and brain tissue hypoxia.88 Small doses of benzodiazepines may help in a significantly anxious patient. However, agitation, confusion, and delirium can be insidious signs of symptomatic DCI and have to be carefully addressed in this population.89

**Antifibrinolytic Agents** Definitive aneurysm treatment often requires transfer to specialized centers (see Transfer to High-Volume Center); this strategy, however, can be associated with delay and potential increased risk of rebleeding. Antifibrinolytic therapy (e.g., tranexamic acid, aminocaproic acid) has therefore gained interest for its potential role in this group of patients at risk of ultraearly rebleeding. In one randomized trial, 254 patients with ruptured aneurysms received tranexamic acid (1 g IV immediately after CT diagnosis, followed by 1 g IV every 6 hours until aneurysm obliteration—for
Neurological Critical Care

a maximum of 72 hours); 251 patients served as controls. Patients receiving tranexamic acid—70% of whom had the aneurysm secured within 24 hours—showed a reduction in the rebleeding rate from 10.8% to 2.4% and an inferred 80% reduction in the mortality rate due to early rebleeding. Current recommendations suggest consideration of early (at diagnosis) and short (<72 hours) course of antifibrinolytic therapy (tranexamic acid or aminocaproic acid) for prevention of early rebleeding when definitive treatment of the aneurysm is unavoidably delayed and no risk factors for VTE are identified. Delayed (>48 hours after the ictus) or prolonged (>72 hours) treatment with these agents is not recommended because of the associated risk of complications (VTE and cerebral ischemia).

Correction of Coagulopathy

The same principles of coagulopathy management discussed in the ICH section apply to spontaneous SAH. Although there are limited data available to support this guideline, most experts recommend reversal of all antithrombotic agents in patients with aSAH until definitive obliteration of the aneurysm has been achieved.

Monitoring of Neurologic Status

Acute Hydrocephalus

Acute hydrocephalus is one of the most common complications of aSAH (seen in 9% to 67% of patients), causing increased ICP and rapid neurologic deterioration. Hydrocephalus in aSAH develops as a result of accumulation of subarachnoid blood on the arachnoid granulations, preventing the reabsorption of CSF. In addition, blood can obstruct the ventricular system, causing obstructive or noncommunicating hydrocephalus. Patients with aSAH and good neurologic grade (e.g., a WFNS of 1 to 3) require only frequent neurologic assessments. If clinical deterioration occurs (usually within 72 hours), an emergent noncontrast CT should be performed and, if hydrocephalus is confirmed, an EVD should be inserted. Patients with poor-grade (WFNS 4 and 5) and CT evidence of hydrocephalus require immediate EVD placement. Approximately 30% of these patients will demonstrate clinical improvement after EVD insertion. While EVD insertion theoretically can cause rebleeding in unsecured ruptured aneurysms, observational studies have not confirmed this concern.

Elevated ICP

Elevated ICP secondary to acute hydrocephalus and reactive hyperemia/cerebral edema is common in patients suffering from high-grade aSAH, and is associated with poor outcomes. Definitive evidence is lacking in this population, and most of strategies, as in ICH, are derived from TBI management (see ICH section).

Seizure

Seizures are uncommon after aSAH (<20%), usually follow aneurysm re-rupture and are associated with poor outcomes. Risk factors for seizures at onset are presence of intraparenchymal clot, middle cerebral artery aneurysm, and surgical clipping. There is, however, disagreement among experts regarding the routine use of anticonvulsants, and observational studies have shown worse cognitive and functional outcomes with prophylactic use of phenytoin. If a decision to use seizure prophylaxis is
undertaken, a very short course (3 to 7 days) with an agent other than phenytoin is advised. For patients with documented clinical or electrographic seizures, treatment with an anticonvulsant is advised.

**Transfer to High-Volume Center**
Once a patient has been stabilized, transfer to a specialized high-volume center (>35 aSAH/year), with experienced neurovascular surgeons, endovascular specialists, and multidisciplinary neurointensive care services, is recommended. Unfortunately, despite evidence of improved outcome, only a minority of aSAH patients are managed in these centers.

**Definitive Treatment of a Ruptured Aneurysm**
Definitive treatment of a ruptured aneurysm involves either neurosurgical clipping or endovascular coiling to mechanically secure the lesion and isolate it from the intracranial circulation. The International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) compared these two interventions in patients with aSAH, and showed that endovascular coiling resulted in significantly better disability-free survival at 1 year. However, debate still persists as to the superiority of one treatment over another. There is general agreement that, regardless of modality, early treatment confers a clinical benefit.

**Postobliteration Management**
**Prevention of Delayed Cerebral Ischemia**
In the first 2 weeks following bleeding, patients with aSAH are at risk of deterioration as a result of cerebral vasospasm and DCI. The use of nimodipine (60 mg orally every 4 hours), started on ICU admission and continued for 21 days, is the only strategy currently available to decrease the risk of DCI and to improve functional outcomes. Interestingly, oral nimodipine does not decrease the incidence of angiographic vasospasm, traditionally considered the primary cause of DCI. The most common complication of nimodipine use is hypotension, considered detrimental in aSAH patients because of the risk of cerebral hypoperfusion. In case of hypotension related to nimodipine, the dose can be changed to 30 mg every 2 hours.

Maintenance of euvoolemia and normonatremia is fundamental in the management of patients suffering from aSAH. Typically, after aSAH, patients experience increased natriuresis and urine output, with subsequent hyponatremia and hypovolemia, respectively. Both entities are associated with increased risk of DCI and worse functional outcomes. Unfortunately, routine fluid balance and vital signs are poor markers of intravascular fluid status in this population, and advanced hemodynamic monitoring may be required. Strategies currently advocated are avoidance of hypotonic solutions; the use of isotonic (e.g., normal saline) or hypertonic solutions (e.g., 3% saline—especially if hyponatremia is present); and consideration of fludrocortisone in patients with persistent negative fluid balance. Finally, once the ruptured aneurysm has been secured, BP should not be reduced in the subsequent weeks.
Monitoring and Management of Symptomatic Vasospasm/Delayed Cerebral Ischemia

More than 60% of patients with aSAH will demonstrate vasospasm on CT or ultrasound, but only about 30% will become symptomatic. Many monitoring techniques, including frequent neurologic examinations, daily transcranial Doppler, CTA and CT perfusion, and multimodal physiologic monitoring (brain tissue oxygenation, microdialysis, jugular oximetry, continuous EEG), are currently available and should be implemented during the first 2 weeks after aSAH.

In case of acute neurologic deterioration (decrease in two or more GCS points or increase in two or more NIHSS points), confounding factors—such as fever, hyponatremia, infection, or seizures—should be immediately ruled out, and the patient should be promptly treated for presumptive DCI. Historically, triple-H therapy (hypertension, hypervolemia, and hemodilution) was considered standard of care for these patients; recent studies, however, have shown no additional benefit, and an increased complication rate, with hypervolemia when compared to euvoemla. Therefore, current guidelines suggest maintenance of euvoemla followed by induced hypertension with vasopressors (hemodynamic augmentation). No specific BP level has been defined; each patient should be managed in a stepwise approach with assessment of neurologic function at each SBP or MAP level. If the neurologic deficit does not reverse with aggressive hemodynamic augmentation, urgent angiography should be considered for angioplasty and/or intra-arterial infusion of vasodilators.

Identification and Management of Medical Complications

Finally, systemic complications are very common in the aSAH population, including fever (54%), anemia (36%), hyperglycemia (30%), pneumonia (20%), and pulmonary edema (14%). Hyperglycemia, fever, and anemia are significantly associated with higher mortality and worse functional outcome. Interestingly, there is considerable uncertainty regarding anemia management in aSAH. Some studies suggest a risk of worsened outcomes with packed RBC transfusion, and there is no agreement on optimal transfusion threshold. Transfusion criteria for general medical patients (Hgb < 7 g/dL) are, however, considered inadequate, and guidelines support packed RBC transfusion to maintain hemoglobin concentration above 8 g/dL.

CONCLUSION

ICH and SAH are diseases that both result in a high rate of morbidity and mortality. In the case of ICH, early, aggressive, and structured management of factors that cause secondary brain injury is essential for optimizing outcomes. Although there is much that is unknown, optimal outcomes result from management in experienced ICUs and, in particular, ICUs dedicated to neurocritical care. In the case of aSAH, the greatest challenges are avoiding misdiagnosis and preventing complications of vasospasm. Accurate diagnosis has improved with advanced imaging (CTA and MRI) but still requires a low threshold for lumbar puncture. Perhaps, someday there will be a “troponin” for SAH, but until then, vigilance and aggressive pursuit of the diagnosis are essential.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ICH-Blood Pressure Management</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anderson et al., <em>Lancet Neurol.</em> 2008103</td>
<td>RCT of 203 patients with ICH and elevated BP (150–220 mm Hg). Patients assigned either to an early intensive BP-lowering strategy (target SBP = 140 mm Hg) or to a standard approach (target SBP = 180 mm Hg). Primary end point: proportional change in hematoma volume at 24 h</td>
<td>Trend toward lower growth in hematoma volumes at 24 h in the intensive treatment group (difference 22.6%, 95% CI 0.6%–44.5%; ( p = 0.04 ); absolute difference in volume 1.7 mL, 95% CI 0.5–3.9 mL, ( p = 0.13 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Antihypertensive Treatment of Acute Cerebral Hemorrhage (ATACH) investigators, <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2010104</td>
<td>Multicenter prospective study of 60 patients with spontaneous ICH and elevated SBP (&gt;170 mm Hg) presenting to the ED within 6 h of symptom onset. Patients assigned to one of three levels of antihypertensive treatment goals (tier 1, SBP ≥ 170 and &lt;200 mm Hg; tier 2, SBP ≥ 140 and &lt;170 mm Hg; tier 3, SBP ≥ 110 and &lt;140 mm Hg). Primary outcomes: (1) treatment feasibility (achieving and maintaining the SBP goals for 18–24 h); (2) neurologic deterioration within 24 h; and (3) serious adverse events within 72 h</td>
<td>9 patients in tier 3 had treatment failure. A total of 7 patients had neurologic deterioration (1, 2, and 4 in tier 1, 2, and 3, respectively). One subject in tier 2 and three in tier 3 had serious adverse events; however, the safety-stopping rule was not activated in any of the tiers. Results confirmed the feasibility and safety of early rapid lowering of BP in ICH and formed the basis for the larger randomized ATACH II trial (ongoing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butcher et al., <em>Stroke.</em> 2013105</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, RCT of 75 patients with spontaneous ICH diagnosed &lt;24 h after onset and SBP ≥ 150 mm Hg. Patients randomized to an SBP target of &lt;150 mm Hg or &lt;180 mm Hg to be achieved within 1 h of randomization. Primary end point: difference in perihematoma cerebral blood flow (CBF) between treatment groups as assessed by CT perfusion imaging 2 h postrandomization</td>
<td>After adjustment for baseline intraparenchymal hematoma volume and time to randomization, perihematoma CBF not significantly lower in patients randomized to SBP &lt;150 mm Hg compared with &lt;180 mm Hg (absolute difference, 0.03; 95% CI, −0.018–0.078, ( p = 0.18 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anderson et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2013106</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, RCT of 2,839 patients with spontaneous ICH and elevated BP (150–220 mm Hg)</td>
<td>No statistically significant difference in primary outcome between the two groups (52% vs. 55.6%; OR with intensive treatment 0.87; 95% CI, 0.75–1.01; ( p = 0.06 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ICH-Coagulopathy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayer et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2008107</td>
<td>Multicenter, RCT of 841 patients with spontaneous ICH documented by CT within 3 h after onset of symptoms. Patients randomized to single intravenous dose of rFVIIa (20 or 80 μg/kg) or placebo within 4 h from onset of symptoms. Primary outcome: death or severe disability (modified Rankin scale 5–6 at 90 d)</td>
<td>80 μg/kg of rFVIIa associated with significant reduction in ICH expansion (mean estimated increase in volume of ICH: 26% placebo; 18% 20 μg/kg; 11% 80 μg/kg). Despite reduction in bleeding, there was no significant difference in the proportion of patients with poor outcome (24% placebo; 26% 20 μg/kg; 29% 80 μg/kg). More arterial thromboembolic events occurred in the group receiving rFVII 80 μg/kg vs. placebo (9% vs. 4%; ( p = 0.04 ))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
## LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ICH–Surgical Treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendelow et al., <em>Lancet</em>. 2013⁴⁴</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, RCT of 601 patients with spontaneous lobar ICH ≤ 1 cm from the cortical surface of the brain, blood volume between 10 and 100 mL, admitted within 48 h of onset of ictus. Patients randomized to early surgery (evacuation of hematoma within 12 h of randomization) or initial conservative treatment (delayed evacuation permitted if judged clinically appropriate). Primary outcome: prognosis-based favorable or unfavorable outcome dichotomized from the Extended Glasgow Outcome Scale at 6 mo after randomization</td>
<td>No difference in the primary outcome (absolute difference 3.7%; 95% CI, −4.3 to 11.6%; OR 0.86, CI 95%, 0.62–1.20; ( p = 0.37 )). In the subgroup of patients with a poor expected prognosis at enrollment (lower GCS, greater age, and larger ICH volume), early surgical intervention was associated with a more favorable outcome (OR, 0.49, CI 95%, 0.26–0.92; ( p = 0.02 )). No advantage for surgery in the good prognosis group (OR 1.2, 95% CI, 0.75–1.68; ( p = 0.57 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendelow et al., <em>Lancet</em>. 2005¹⁰⁸</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, RCT of 1,033 patients with spontaneous supratentorial ICH randomized to early surgery (hematoma evacuated within 24 h of randomization by the method of choice of the responsible neurosurgeon, combined with the best medical treatment) or to initial conservative management (best medical treatment; later surgical evacuation allowed in case of neurologic deterioration). Primary outcome: death or disability using the extended Glasgow Outcome Scale 6 mo after ictus</td>
<td>Of the 468 patients randomized to early surgery analyzed at 6 mo, 122 (26%) had a favorable outcome compared with 118 (24%) of 496 patients randomized to initial conservative treatment (OR 0.89; 95% CI, 0.66–1.19; ( p = 0.414 ); absolute benefit 2.3%; relative benefit 10%) suggesting no benefit from early surgery compared with initial conservative treatment Subjects with lobar ICH within 1 cm of the cortical surface who underwent surgery had a statistically significant increase in good outcomes compared with similar subjects in the medical arm (8% absolute increase; ( p = 0.02 ))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **SAH–Detection** | | |
| Perry et al., *JAMA*. 2013⁶⁸ | Multicenter cohort study of 2,131 ED patients with acute onset of nontraumatic headache peaking within 1 h, with no neurologic deficits (Table 21.4). Study tested clinical decision rules for detection of SAH | 132 patients (6.2%) had subarachnoid hemorrhage. Ottawa SAH decision rule had 100% sensitivity (95% CI, 97.2%–100.0%) and 15.3% specificity (95% CI, 13.8%–16.9%) for SAH |

| **SAH–Prevention of Rebleeding** | | |
| Hillman et al., *J Neurosurg*. 2002⁹⁰ | Multicenter, RCT of 596 patients with rSAH. Patients received tranexamic acid 1 g, given in the referring hospital, followed by 1 g every 6 h, until aneurysm treatment or for a maximum of 72 h. Control group did not receive any intervention. Primary end point: early rebleeding | Reduction from 10.8% to 2.4% in rebleeding rate in the tranexamic group (80% reduction in the mortality from early rebleeding). No difference in DCI or favorable functional outcomes |

| **SAH–Aneurysm Treatment** | | |
| Molyneux et al., *Lancet*. 2002⁹⁶ | Multicenter, RCT of 2,143 patients with SAH and an intracranial aneurysm assigned to either endovascular coiling or surgical clipping. Primary end point: dependency (modified Rankin scale) or death at 1 y | 23.7% of patients allocated to the endovascular clipping group were dependent or dead at 1 y vs. 30.6% of patients who underwent neurosurgical clipping (\( p = 0.0019 \)). Relative risk reduction 22.6% (95% CI, 8.9–34.2) |
Chapter 21  ■  Subarachnoid and Intracerebral Hemorrhage  297

LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SAH–DCI Prophylaxis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pickard et al., BMJ. 198910</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, RCT of 554 patients with aSAH admitted within 96 h of symptoms onset. Patients assigned to either nimodipine 60 mg orally every 4 h for 21 d, or placebo. Primary outcomes: (1) incidence of cerebral infarction and DCI; and (2) functional outcome at 3 mo</td>
<td>22% of patients in the nimodipine group had cerebral infarction vs. 33% in the placebo (relative risk reduction, 34%; 95% CI, 13%–50%). Poor functional outcomes significantly reduced in the nimodipine group as well (20% in patients given nimodipine vs. 33% for placebo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SAH–Triple-H Therapy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lennihan et al., Stroke. 2000</td>
<td>Prospective, RCT of 82 patients with surgical clipping on or before SAH day 6 and no symptomatic vasospasm. Patients given 80 mL/h of isotonic crystalloid + 290 mL of 5% albumin solution every 2 h to maintain normovolemia or hypervolemia</td>
<td>No difference between groups in mean global cerebral blood flow or in symptomatic vasospasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egge et al., Neurosurgery. 2001</td>
<td>Prospective, RCT of 32 patients with aSAH surgically treated within 72 h of hemorrhage. Patients assigned to either normovolemia or hypervolemia</td>
<td>No difference between groups in vasospasm, regional cerebral blood flow, or functional outcome. Patients in the hypervolemia group experienced more complications ($p &lt; 0.001$), including congestive heart failure (CHF), bleeding, and extradural hematomas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES


Section 6  Neurological Critical Care


Seizure is a common emergency department (ED) presentation. Seizing patients may arrive actively convulsing, with a depressed level of consciousness, or comatose. In these patients, the emergency physician’s challenges are to provide immediate and appropriate treatment, to evaluate for ongoing seizures or status epilepticus (SE), and to assess for seizure cause. The adage “time is brain” is as relevant to the treatment of seizure as it is in stroke therapy; early identification and control of ongoing seizures minimizes neurologic injury, reduces complications, and improves patient outcomes.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Based on a nationwide sample, seizures account for an estimated 1.1 million visits to US EDs each year. Just over 11% of the population will experience a seizure in the course of a lifetime, and approximately 1% of the population carries a diagnosis of epilepsy or recurrent unprovoked seizures. Worldwide, the age-adjusted incidence of unprovoked seizures is around 60/100,000 person-years. Approximately one-third of these are first-time seizures occurring in patients who otherwise will not develop epilepsy. Acute symptomatic seizures (also called provoked seizures) result from a clear underlying acute cause such as trauma, stroke, or hypoglycemia and have an age-adjusted incidence between 20 and 40/100,000 person-years.

The majority of patients evaluated in the ED for seizures arrive by ambulance; one-quarter of these patients require advanced life support (ALS) management by paramedics. Over 25% of patients who present with seizures will be admitted to the hospital, and 1% will require endotracheal intubation for mechanical ventilation. Mortality varies based on etiology, and while seizure patients rarely die in the ED, the short-term 30-day mortality following an acute symptomatic seizure is reported to be as high as 19%.

SE occurs when seizures are prolonged (>5 minutes) or recur before the patient fully recovers. Any patient who arrives to the ED seizing should be considered in SE. SE is diagnosed in up to 6% of all ED seizure presentations, and has been estimated to occur in up to 152,000 patients annually in the United States alone.

Nonconvulsive seizures are those in which the patient has only subtle or no overt clinical signs of ongoing seizures (other than depressed level of consciousness), but
electroencephalography (EEG) demonstrates ongoing electrographic seizure activity. Nonconvulsive SE is seen in nearly half of patients who remain comatose after apparent control of initial convulsive SE. While the incidence of nonconvulsive SE is reported to occur in one-quarter of all SE, this is likely an underestimate because continuous EEG monitoring is not immediately available in many medical centers.

SE is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Overall mortality is estimated to be 20%, and this number climbs substantially when SE is associated with an acute symptomatic cause, advanced age, concurrent medical illness, and/or prolonged time to achieve seizure control. Of these factors, only the duration of SE is modifiable, and it correlates with outcome: when SE resolves within 30 minutes, the reported mortality is 3%, compared to 19% with resolution after 30 minutes, and 32% with resolution after 60 minutes. Of those patients that survive SE, 41% will develop epilepsy.

PREHOSPITAL EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT

In the vast majority of cases, seizures will have resolved by the time paramedics arrive on the scene. Once in the ED, timely gathering of patient information—including a history of prior epilepsy or neurologic injury/disorder, an accurate medication list, and a point-of-care glucose—will facilitate appropriate care.

Patients in whom seizures have resolved may be safely transported to the ED by emergency medical services (EMS) for further evaluation without advanced life support (ALS) monitoring (i.e., a basic life support, or BLS unit). However, one-quarter of patients with a chief complaint of seizure will have evidence of a serious concurrent illness/injury or neurologic/cardiopulmonary instability, often due to ongoing seizures or SE. Given the delays associated with the resuscitation of the patient, transportation, and triage upon arrival, it is essential to initiate early and adequate treatment of seizures prior to arrival to the ED. In addition to providing basic support, evidence supports the prompt administration of benzodiazepines (e.g., lorazepam, midazolam, or diazepam) in the prehospital setting by ALS providers, as these agents have been shown to terminate seizures and SE more effectively than placebo or phenytoin alone. Adequate benzodiazepine dosing in the field also results in significantly fewer seizure-related complications including respiratory failure requiring intubation (Table 22.1).

Because intravenous (IV) lorazepam requires IV access and must be refrigerated in order to maintain stability in solution, rectal diazepam—despite its inferiority in a prospective, population-based study—has long been used in the home and acute care settings for children or adults with epilepsy who experience recurrent seizures. In 2010, a meta-analysis of seizure control in children and young adults demonstrated intramuscular (IM), intranasal, or buccal midazolam also provides faster and more efficacious treatment when compared to diazepam by any route. In 2012, a randomized controlled trial of IM midazolam versus IV lorazepam (the RAMPART trial) demonstrated IM midazolam to be more rapidly administered and at least as effective as IV lorazepam in terminating seizures and SE in adults, making IM midazolam an ideal choice for EMS or ED providers. Evidence for the use of buccal and intranasal forms of midazolam in the adult population is lacking (Fig. 22.1).
EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Seizures and SE resolve in approximately 70% of patients who are promptly treated with adequately dosed benzodiazepines, either en route to or upon arrival to the ED.16,17,22,25 Once a patient demonstrates an improving level of consciousness, further treatment for the initial seizure may not be required. The emergency physician should continue the initial prehospital investigation into the cause of the seizures or SE and concurrently manage any recurrent seizures and associated illnesses (Table 22.2).

Patients with History of Epilepsy

If the patient takes antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) and/or has a known history of epilepsy, a careful history and evaluation should assess for a reason that the patient’s seizure threshold might be reduced (e.g., missed medications, excessive sleep deprivation or alcohol intake, concurrent illness). The patient’s neurologist should be contacted for further information and recommendations. If the patient has fully recovered, a safe discharge plan often can be made in conjunction with the patient’s outpatient neurologist. If there is a history of missed medication doses, the neurologist may advise a partial “loading” dose in the ED. If there is no history of noncompliance, an increase in the standing AED dose may be advised. A brief low-dose benzodiazepine taper, such as lorazepam 0.5 to 1 mg once or twice daily for 1 to 3 days, may also be recommended in order to minimize the risk of seizure recurrence over the next few days as AED dosage adjustments are made. It is important to ensure that while the patient is being observed in the ED, he or she is administered all of his/her regularly scheduled AED doses. Of note, some of the newer AEDs are nonformulary in many hospitals; AEDs cannot be substituted for one

### TABLE 22.1  Prehospital Evaluation of Seizures or SE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prehospital Evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vital signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate, blood pressure, and oxygen saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left lateral decubitus; avoid placing objects inside mouth. If uncomplicated by other injury, no cervical stabilization is necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of prior epilepsy or neurologic injury/disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If available, should include the name or contact information for the patient’s neurologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concurrent illnesses or injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active medications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Including any available pill bottles (both full and empty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary injury screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures, hematoma, or burns may be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point-of-care glucose testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low glucose should be treated with 100 mg IV thiamine prior to administration of 50% dextrose to prevent acute thiamine deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Should not delay treatment in the case of ongoing seizures or status epilepticus. IM midazolam should be given if an IV site cannot be established immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED activation by EMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any patient in status epilepticus, notification to prepare for incoming emergency by the ED is appropriate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ED, emergency department; EMS, emergency medical service; IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous.
another (e.g., the patient who is taking lacosamide [LCS] should not be given phenytoin or carbamazepine because LCS is unavailable).

As emergency physicians often function as the default primary physician for many community patients, they should be alert for patients who repeatedly visit the ED for seizures. Patients with recurrent unprovoked seizures despite compliance with AEDs have refractory or pharmacoresistant epilepsy. Refractory epilepsy patients should be referred to a comprehensive epilepsy center, where optimal management of AEDs may improve seizure control; these patients may also be evaluated for potentially curative epilepsy surgery, which has been shown to be more effective than medication in many patients.
Patients with a Resolved Seizure Episode

Patients who present after a first-time unprovoked seizure should have a complete ED evaluation as outlined in Table 22.2. Prompt imaging is important, as approximately 10% of patients with a first-time unprovoked seizure will be found to have abnormality on head CT or brain MRI that warrants further evaluation.\textsuperscript{28} If the patient has no risk factors for epilepsy (i.e., no history of neurologic injury, significant head trauma, CNS infection, or family history of epilepsy), and the neurologic examination and brain imaging (noncontrast head CT or brain MRI) are normal, an AED does not need to be started in the ED. These patients have a risk of seizure recurrence of approximately 40% over the next 2 years,\textsuperscript{29} and consequently, many opt to defer AED treatment until a second definite unprovoked seizure occurs. However, an outpatient EEG should be arranged, as approximately one-third will have an EEG with epileptiform discharges, effectively doubling the risk for seizure recurrence.\textsuperscript{28} Because of the risk of seizure recurrence, patients with a first-time unprovoked seizure should be advised against driving, and both patients and their families should be educated about seizure precautions and seizure first aid. An outpatient neurology consultation can help guide further diagnostic evaluation and discussions about prognosis with regard to risk of seizure recurrence, AEDs, and activity restrictions.

Importantly, the patient who has recovered to baseline following an isolated seizure does not require administration of IV/IM benzodiazepines, or the rapid IV loading dose of an AED, such as phenytoin. These may needlessly sedate the patient or cause unwarranted complications such as respiratory depression or hemodynamic instability.

Patients with acute symptomatic seizures (seizures provoked by systemic illness or brain injury, as opposed to seizures without a clear underlying cause) are typically admitted for evaluation and management of the underlying etiology (e.g., intracranial hemorrhage,
CNS infection) uncovered during their evaluation, as well as for observation for seizure recurrence. Depending upon the cause of the seizure, treatment with an AED may be indicated in order to minimize the risk of recurrent seizures and their associated complications. Consultation with a neurologist is always warranted in these cases.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

**First-Time or Resolved Seizure**

Patients with a first-time seizure found to be at risk for seizure recurrence based on diagnostic evaluation (e.g., abnormal neuroimaging or epileptiform abnormalities on EEG) warrant treatment initiation with an AED. Consultation with a neurologist is advisable in order to guide the selection of the AED. However, if a neurologist is not available, the emergency physician should consider both the adverse effects and drug–drug interactions of the AED that is chosen. Although phenytoin (PHT) has traditionally been considered a default AED, current consensus recommends against PHT as a first-line agent because of its relatively unfavorable adverse effect profile, pharmacokinetics, and prominent drug–drug interactions. Newer-generation AEDs, such as levetiracetam (LEV), may be more appropriate for several reasons: broad-spectrum action (e.g., effective for both partial and generalized-onset seizures), renal excretion, lack of hepatic induction, and absence of drug–drug interactions. Importantly, the emergency physician should also consider individual medical and psychiatric comorbidities. Patients should be educated on potential adverse medication effects, such as allergic reactions, and arrangements should be made for neurology follow-up evaluation within a few weeks.

**Status Epilepticus**

For the patients who arrive to the ED seizing, or those who develop recurrent, ongoing seizures while in the ED, rapid and aggressive treatment to stop seizures is critical. Current laboratory evidence suggests that within minutes, seizure activity produces changes in the synaptic membrane receptors, altering the balance between inhibitory and excitatory neurotransmission, followed by changes in neuropeptide expression. The excitotoxicity that results culminates in neuronal death, which may be widespread after prolonged (or self-sustaining) SE. Human data are limited, but seminal primate studies have clearly shown that even in the absence of the systemic effects of SE (e.g., hyperthermia, hypoxia), prolonged SE can cause ischemic neuronal loss, likely related to cerebral metabolic supply–demand mismatch. In humans, even very focal seizures visible only using intracranial electrodes but lasting longer than 5 minutes create clear changes in brain and systemic physiology, suggesting that seizures create a dangerous environment for sensitive neurons.

Response to medication can drop by as much as 50% when medications are either underdosed or given in a delayed manner such that SE is prolonged beyond 120 minutes. Reducing the time to initial adequate treatment is challenging, as EMS run times average between 20 and 40 minutes, and patients may experience subsequent delays to hospital triage and treatment of up to 50 minutes. If SE continues from the ambulance to the hospital, adherence to an established ED clinical protocol may be the most important factor in shortening the duration of SE,
minimizing the likelihood of conversion to refractory SE, and reducing the intensive care unit (ICU) length of stay25 (Fig. 22.2).

Unfortunately, studies to date have demonstrated poor adherence to established ED protocols, including both dosage and timing of medications.15,25,35 In one study, no patient received an adequate dose of phenytoin.16 In another, more than 50% of patients received initial treatment more than 1 hour after the onset of SE.35 The inclusion of both prehospital- and ED-based management as part of a unified treatment protocol for SE has not yet been studied adequately. A recently proposed Emergency Neurological Life Support protocol builds upon data showing improved outcomes with reduced treatment time in patients with acute myocardial infarction and highlights the importance of continuity in care from the ambulance to the hospital bed.36

FIGURE 22.2 A sample protocol for the ED management of generalized convulsive SE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medications</th>
<th>Concurrent Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td>- ABCs: Obtain IV access (if possible); point-of-care glucose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Begin hemodynamic monitoring; O2, HR, BP, ECG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Blood tests for CBC, BMP, Ca, Mg, PO4, LFTs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Tropin, AEDs and an AIG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Thiamine 100 mg IV × 1 followed by 50 mL D50W IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If glucose low or unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If no rapid IV access, can give midazolam 10 mg IM or diazepam 20 mg PR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fosphenytoin 20 mg/kg</td>
<td>- These two steps can be performed simultaneously if needed;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproate 20–40 mg/kg</td>
<td>consider slowing infusion rate of Fosphenytoin to reduce the risk of hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam 0.2 mg/kg</td>
<td>- If fosphenytoin/valproate are contraindicated, consider levetiracetam 3000 mg IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproate &gt;30 minutes</td>
<td>- Call neurology stat for consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgent cEEG Monitoring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admit to ICU</td>
<td>If seizure persists &gt;30 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Phenytoin may be used if Fosphenytoin is not available. Ensure quality IV access and reduce infusion rates to no more than 50 mg/min to reduce hypotension and cardiac dysrhythmias.

ABCs, airway, breathing, and circulation; ABG, arterial blood gas; AEDs, antiepileptic drugs; BMP, basic metabolic panel; BP, blood pressure; Ca, calcium; CBC, complete blood count; cEEG, continuous electroencephalographic monitoring; ECG, electrocardiogram; HR, heart rate; ICU, intensive care unit; LFTs, liver function tests; Mg, magnesium; PO4, phosphorous. Modified from Foreman B, Hirsch IJ. Epilepsy emergencies: diagnosis and management. Neurol Clin. 2012;30:11–41.
Medical Therapy

For the patient in SE (i.e., arrived to the ED seizing or with recurrent ongoing seizure in the ED), IV benzodiazepines are the first line of treatment. If IV access is available, lorazepam 4 mg IV over 2 minutes should be administered immediately. If IV access cannot be obtained rapidly, midazolam 10 mg IM should instead be administered. Rectal diazepam 15 to 20 mg is an alternative if IM midazolam is not immediately available. If the patient continues to have clinical seizures, benzodiazepine dosing may be repeated; at this point, the patient will likely require airway support. If not already done in the pre-hospital setting, point-of-care glucose testing should be performed immediately. Low or borderline low serum glucose should be treated with thiamine 100 mg IV followed by 50 mL D50W (given together to prevent acute thiamine deficiency).

Second-Line Agents

All patients presenting with SE should be started on a second-line AED following the administration of initial benzodiazepines—even if seizure activity is terminated—in order to prevent seizure recurrence as the effect of the benzodiazepines wanes over the next several hours. For patients who continue to seize, or who do not regain consciousness despite adequate benzodiazepine dosing (in the field and/or in the ED), rapid initiation of a second-line agent is critical. If benzodiazepines were given in the pre-hospital setting, second-line agents should be initiated at the same time as the first-line ED benzodiazepine therapy.

Phenytoin (PHT) is the traditional second-line agent. PHT is frequently underdosed (the usual 1,000 mg IV load is only adequate for a 50-kg person); the appropriate dosing is 20 mg/kg at a rate of 50 mg/min. For this dose, cardiac monitoring is required; hypotension is a common side effect requiring slower infusion rates. Of note, PHT solvent extravasation from a peripheral IV can cause significant tissue injury. A rare idiosyncratic reaction causing digital ischemia, known as the “purple glove syndrome,” has also been reported with IV PHT.

Fosphenytoin, a water-soluble PHT prodrug, avoids these complications, is associated with fewer hypotensive episodes, and may be infused more rapidly (up to 150 mg/min). However, fosphenytoin is substantially more expensive, costing nearly eight times as much as PHT. Cardiac arrhythmias and respiratory depression can occur with both medications. PHT is highly protein bound, induces the hepatic cytochrome P450 enzymatic system (specifically CYP3A and CYP2C), and may interact with other medications or AEDs. As such, PHT may cause problematic drug–drug interactions in patients with HIV, cancer, or solid organ transplants.

Valproic acid (VPA) has been studied in five randomized controlled trials recently included in a meta-analysis and appears to be at least as effective as PHT with fewer overall adverse effects. VPA loading doses range between 20 and 40 mg/kg over 10 minutes. Side effects include hyperammonemia and pancreatitis and an increased risk of bleeding due to diminished platelet activation, prolonged thrombin time, and dose-dependent thrombocytopenia. Importantly, cardiac arrhythmias and hypotension are rare, even among the elderly or critically ill. VPA is protein bound like PHT, but acts as an inhibitor of CYP2C9, increasing the bioavailability of medications such as warfarin, amitriptyline, and clopidogrel. For both PHT and VPA, free and total serum drug levels should be drawn for the initial monitoring of these medications given their protein binding and pharmacokinetics.
**Other Second-Line Agents**

LEV, LCS, and phenobarbital are three additional second-line agents that may be considered in special circumstances. Intravenous LEV is negligibly protein bound and does not interact with hepatically cleared medications. Loading doses of 1,000 to 3,000 mg infused over 15 minutes are associated with minimal side effects. However, studies of LEV as a second-line agent are lacking: Only one prospective study randomized patients to LEV either as a first-line or a second-line agent, and most were treated without benzodiazepines. In a prospective observational study comparing LEV to phenobarbital and VPA as second-line agents in the treatment of SE, LEV demonstrated a higher risk for treatment failure compared to VPA when controlled for the severity of SE and potentially fatal underlying causes (odds ratio 2.69). LCS is a relatively new IV agent with limited data available regarding efficacy. Like LEV, LCS has limited drug–drug interactions, and safety has been demonstrated with IV loading doses up to 400 mg over 15 minutes. Adverse effects include dizziness, nausea, and a dose-dependent prolongation of the PR interval on electrocardiography of unclear clinical significance. Because of the lack of drug interactions, LCS and LEV may be considered as options in patients being treated for HIV, cancer, or solid organ transplants, although studies regarding this are lacking. Phenobarbital, an early antiepileptic agent limited by adverse effects, is administered as a 20 mg/kg load at 50 mg/min (similar to phenobarbital). Although its use in SE was comparable to lorazepam in a randomized clinical trial, it requires a slow load time to avoid well-documented side effects including hypotension and respiratory depression. Airway support and possibly mechanical ventilation should be instituted prior to administration of an IV phenobarbital load. Phenobarbital should be considered only if other agents are unavailable, or if a patient on phenobarbital as an outpatient presents with subtherapeutic levels.

**Refractory Status Epilepticus**

SE usually stops after adequate dosages of first- and second-line medications. If not responsive to first- and second-line agents, SE is considered refractory. When SE has truly stopped, a postictal state frequently develops, characterized by alterations in consciousness or cognition, behavior, or motor function. The postictal state is related to the type and duration of seizures: After focal seizures lasting a mean of 128 seconds recorded on video-EEG, one study documented postictal periods consisting of confusion, aphasia, or subtle nonpurposeful movements that lasted on average for 89 seconds. In another study, following generalized convulsions captured on video, patients appeared unresponsive for up to 20 minutes (mean time of ~4 minutes) prior to first nonrespiratory movement. Therefore, if seizures have stopped and the patient has not begun to improve neurologically within 20 minutes, or has not returned to baseline by 60 minutes, nonconvulsive SE should be considered.

Aggressive treatment for refractory generalized convulsive SE should begin in the ED. Close cardiopulmonary monitoring and support is crucial to reduce the risk for complications and ensure safe transition to the ICU. Endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation is frequently required. Paralytics often given for intubation mask motor symptoms of generalized convulsive SE, and once paralysis has occurred, treatment decisions should be made with the assumption that the patient is very likely still seizing electrographically. Reviews of treatment for refractory SE are myriad.
however, available high-level evidence is currently limited to one randomized controlled trial that compared propofol and thiopental in a heterogeneous group of patients with refractory SE. Questions remain regarding optimal approaches to treatment, and available evidence does not support any preference between midazolam, propofol, and pentobarbital. Use of these medications, particularly if paralytics have been used for intubation, requires continuous EEG monitoring to guide therapy.

In patients with suspected nonconvulsive SE, the decision to intubate and/or begin anesthetic medications in the ED is complicated and requires consideration of underlying etiology, the risks of aggressive treatment, and the efficacy of nonaggressive treatment. Similarly difficult situations include elderly patients with do-not-resuscitate/intubate orders and patients with focal motor SE and a preserved level of consciousness. In both of these groups, further treatment with second-line non-anesthetic agents (or even oral administration of AEDs) while avoiding associated hypotension or respiratory failure is preferred. Early consultation with a neurologist experienced in treating SE is required, and all patients with refractory SE or nonconvulsive SE should be admitted to an ICU for initiation of continuous EEG monitoring (or promptly transferred to an EEG-capable center).

CONCLUSION

Patients with seizures and SE are commonly encountered in the ED. As a frontline provider, emergency physicians play a crucial role in the management of these patients. Most seizure patients present in noncritical condition following isolated seizures; in these patients, cautious management and avoidance of overly aggressive treatment can minimize complications, such as medication toxicity and sedation. A minority of patients will present in SE, and in these patients, early and aggressive protocol-based treatment is critical to terminating seizures and improving overall outcome.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hauser et al., Epilepsia. 1993³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeLorenzo et al., Neurology. 1996⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeLorenzo et al., Epilepsia. 1998⁹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hesdorffer et al., Ann Neurol. 1998¹⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kwan and Brodie, <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2009</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective observational study of 525 patients that described the likelihood of seizure freedom in patients who do not respond to initial treatment</td>
<td>47% of previously untreated patients will respond with first epilepsy medicine compared to 14% who respond to second or third medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiebe et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2001</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trial of epilepsy surgery vs. medical treatment in 80 patients with temporal lobe epilepsy</td>
<td>58% of the surgery arm was free from seizures compared with 8% with epilepsy medication (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novy et al., <em>Epilepsia.</em> 2010</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 525 patients that described the frequency of refractory SE over a 2-y period in Lausanne, Switzerland</td>
<td>22.6% of all SE is refractory to first- and second-line therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Treatment

| Alldredge et al., *N Engl J Med.* 2001 | A randomized, double-blind controlled trial of 205 patients that compared lorazepam, diazepam, or placebo in the prehospital setting for SE | SE was aborted in 59.1% of the patients who received lorazepam compared with 21.1% of those who received placebo (p = 0.001). Rates of respiratory failure were significantly lower in the benzodiazepine groups: 10.6% for lorazepam, 10.3% for diazepam, and 22.5% for placebo (p = 0.08) |
| Treiman et al., *N Engl J Med.* 1998 | A randomized, double-blind controlled trial of 384 patients that compared diazepam, lorazepam, PHT, and phenobarbital as first-line treatment for SE | Lorazepam was superior to PHT in overt generalized convulsive SE. There was no difference in seizure cessation overall between drugs; lorazepam was noted to be easier to administer |
| Silbergleit et al., *N Engl J Med.* 2012 | A randomized, double-blind controlled noninferiority trial of 448 patients that compared IM midazolam to IV lorazepam | IM midazolam aborted seizures in 73.4% compared to 63.4% in the IV lorazepam group (95% CI, 4.0–16.1; p < 0.001 for both noninferiority and superiority). Study concluded IM midazolam to be at least as safe and effective as IV lorazepam for prehospital seizure cessation |
| Alvarez et al., *Epilepsia.* 2011 | A prospective, observational study of 167 patients that compared PHT, VPA, and LEV as second-line agents in SE | LEV controlled SE less effectively than VPA when controlling for etiology and SE severity (OR 2.65; 95% CI 1.19–6.08). PHT was not statistically different from the other two compounds |
| Rossetti et al., *Neurocrit Care.* 2011 | A randomized, single-blind controlled trial of 24 patients that compared propofol to barbiturates for refractory SE | Although no differences were observed, the study was stopped early due to underenrollment |

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES

Myasthenic Crisis and Peripheral Neuromuscular Disorders

Christina Ulane

BACKGROUND
The diagnosis and management of peripheral neuromuscular disorders are generally the purview of neurologists in the outpatient setting. However, when these disorders present acutely, they can require the expertise of the emergency physician. This chapter discusses the clinical features, diagnosis, and treatment of the two peripheral neuromuscular disorders most commonly encountered in the emergency department (ED) setting: myasthenia gravis (MG) and Guillain-Barre syndrome (GBS), also known as acute inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy, or AIDP.

The incidence of MG is approximately 20 per 100,000; it is equally prevalent in men and women over age 40, but under the age of 40 is three times more common in women. The incidence of GBS is approximately 0.6 to 1.9 per 100,000; it is equally prevalent in men and women, with people over age 50 at greatest risk. Both MG and GBS are immune-mediated diseases. In MG, autoantibodies against the acetylcholine receptor (AchR) compete with acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction. This blocks synaptic transmission and causes fluctuating motor weakness, the hallmark clinical feature of MG. MG may also result from antibodies acting against muscle-specific kinase; and finally, MG may be seronegative (lacking an antibody). GBS is an immune-mediated, often postinfectious polyradiculoneuropathy that produces both cellular and humoral responses. The exact pathophysiologic mechanisms of GBS are not completely understood, but it is thought that an antecedent infection or other stimulus activates an immune response, which, through molecular mimicry, cross-reacts with epitopes (the part of an antigen to which the antibody attaches) on the myelin and/or axon of peripheral nerves and nerve roots. Immune reaction to myelin components results in multifocal inflammatory demyelination that starts at the level of the nerve roots. Antibodies against gangliosides (which share antigens with Campylobacter jejuni, a commonly associated preceding infection) and complement deposition along axons are found in patients with acute axonal neuropathy variants.

CLINICAL PRESENTATION AND DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Myasthenia Gravis
Patients with MG may present to the ED for different reasons. They may (1) have stable MG but have an unrelated acute problem, (2) have an MG exacerbation or crisis,
(3) present with new symptom onset for yet undiagnosed MG, and (4) present with cholinergic crisis as a result of acetylcholinesterase inhibitor use (this problem has lessened as the use of acetylcholinesterase inhibitor therapy has been replaced by immunosuppressive therapy). The classic clinical features of MG include:

- Weakness: proximal, fluctuating, usually worse after activity and at night, and improved after sleep and rest
- Ptosis (often asymmetric)
- Diplopia (with any combination of extraocular muscle palsies), fatigable upgaze
- Bulbar weakness (nasal speech, dysarthria, dysphagia)
- Respiratory muscle weakness (dyspnea, hypoxia, hypercapnia)
- Absence of any sensory deficits, normal reflexes

The diagnosis of MG is generally accomplished in the outpatient setting with laboratory and electrodiagnostic tests, such as repetitive nerve stimulation (demonstrating decrement in motor response) and single-fiber electromyography (demonstrating increased muscle fiber jitter). Myasthenic crisis—myasthenic weakness sufficient to cause respiratory failure requiring mechanical ventilation—is a true emergency that requires rapid assessment, diagnosis, and treatment. Myasthenic crisis and exacerbations can be triggered by infections, surgery, and medications (see Table 23.1). In the past 60 to 70 years, advances in pulmonary critical care and in the diagnosis of MG have reduced mortality rates for myasthenic crisis from 70% to 80% to approximately 4%.

In the ED, for a patient without established MG, making a clinical diagnosis is most practical; two easily administered tests—the ice test and the edrophonium, or Tensilon, test—can help confirm a diagnosis. The ice test is performed at bedside on patients with ptosis: A pack of ice is placed over the ptotic eye for 1 to 2 minutes; resolution or improvement in the ptosis is considered a positive result and is highly specific for MG.1 In the Tensilon test, the short-acting acetylcholinesterase inhibitor edrophonium is administered in an intravenous (IV) dose of 2 mg, followed by up to 8 mg.

### TABLE 23.1 Medications Exacerbating Myasthenia Gravis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraindicated</th>
<th>Alpha-interferon</th>
<th>Penicillamine</th>
<th>Telithromycin</th>
<th>Botulinum toxin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use with caution (may worsen MG)</td>
<td>Cardiac medications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Beta-blockers (propranolol, timolol maleate eye drops)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Calcium channel blockers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Quinine, quinidine, procainamide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuromuscular blocking agents</td>
<td>Succinylcholine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D-Tubocurarine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Aminoglycosides (gentamicin, kanamycin, streptomycin, neomycin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Macrolides (erythromycin, azithromycin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quinolones (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, norfloxacin, ofloxacin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnesium salts (laxatives, antacids)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
weak from MG will respond within 30 to 45 seconds, with a response lasting up to 5 minutes; an objective improvement in muscle strength is considered a positive result. The sensitivity of the Tensilon test, however, is only 60%, and false positives can occur in motor neuron and other diseases. The Tensilon test carries a low risk of serious cardiac complication, but life-threatening bradyrhythmias and ventricular fibrillation can occur, so the test should be done in a monitored setting with atropine at the bedside. Patients are also at risk for acute decompensation due to edrophonium-induced cholinergic crisis, which may result in excessive secretions and worsening neuromuscular weakness.

**Guillain-Barre Syndrome**

Guillain-Barre Syndrome and its variants (Miller Fisher syndrome, acute motor axonal neuropathy, acute motor and sensory axonal neuropathy) most often present with a subacute onset of progressive weakness, ascending sensory loss, and areflexia. Many patients will also have dysautonomia (with resultant fluctuations in heart rate and blood pressure), pain (often in the mid-back), and respiratory insufficiency. In the ED, the diagnosis of GBS is primarily made clinically; however, a cerebrospinal fluid analysis showing cytoalbuminologic dissociation (elevated protein in the absence of white blood cells) strongly supports the diagnosis and is recommended in patients with suspected GBS.

**Differential Diagnosis**

The primary alternative diagnostic considerations for MG and GBS are summarized in Table 23.2. While the differential diagnosis for acute weakness of unclear etiology is broad, alternative peripheral neuromuscular disorders such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis are rarely encountered in the ED setting. Myopathies, which are slowly progressive, also rarely present to the ED, although fulminant cases with bulbar weakness and respiratory failure do occur.

**Neuromuscular Respiratory Failure**

In the ED, MG and GBS are the most common causes for neuromuscular respiratory failure. Twenty-five to fifty percent of GBS patients and 15% to 27% of MG patients will ultimately require intubation though not necessarily upon arrival in the ED. Neuromuscular respiratory failure in both conditions is due to the following:

- Facial, laryngeal, and oropharyngeal muscle weakness (resulting in mechanical obstruction, especially when patient is supine, and increasing aspiration risk)
- Inspiratory muscle weakness (resulting in insufficient lung expansion and hypoxemia)
- Expiratory muscle weakness (resulting in hypoventilation, inadequate cough, and impaired secretion clearance)

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

**Assessment and Monitoring of Pulmonary Function**

Because neuromuscular weakness can result in respiratory muscle fatigue and rapid progression to respiratory failure, early identification of MG or GBS patients who will require intubation is important. Complicating this, however, are two factors: First, overt signs of respiratory distress may be absent; second, patients with known MG who are
experiencing an exacerbation or crisis may be taking higher doses of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors as symptomatic treatment for increasing weakness, the cholinergic side-effects of which can lead to increased oral secretions. Clinical assessment should focus on identifying clear indications for intubation, such as an inability to protect the airway, failure of ventilation or oxygenation, expected rapid deterioration, and paradoxical breathing, whereby the abdomen contracts and moves inward (rather than outward) with respiration, due to diaphragmatic weakness. Hypoxia, measured by pulse oximetry, is a late finding.

Tests of respiratory muscle strength (pulmonary function tests, or PFTs) and gas exchange (arterial blood gas, or ABG) are predictive of outcome in patients with neuromuscular weakness and are necessary to complement the clinical assessment.
and monitoring of respiratory function. Note that while the ABG is often abnormal in patients with MG, it can be normal even when respiratory fatigue and failure are imminent. Bedside PFTs include negative inspiratory force (NIF) or the similar measure maximal inspiratory pressure (MIP), vital capacity (VC), maximal expiratory pressure (MEP), and maximal single-breath count (normal ~50, impaired <30, very impaired <15). MIP and NIF reflect diaphragmatic and other inspiratory muscle strength, while MEP reflects the strength of expiratory muscles (intercostal and abdominal muscles) and indirectly the ability to cough and clear secretions. A normal MIP is $>-100$ cm H$_2$O in men and $>-70$ cm H$_2$O in women, with a critical cutoff value for all patients of $-25$ cm H$_2$O. A normal MEP is $>200$ cm H$_2$O in men and $>140$ cm H$_2$O in women, with a critical value of 40 cm H$_2$O. Depending on the particular manometer utilized, MIP, NIF, and MEP values are reported as either negative or positive pressures, but it is the absolute value in cm H$_2$O that is most significant. Normal VC is 40 to 70 mL/kg, with a critical cutoff value of 15 to 20 mL/kg. In a normal person, the VC decreases by $<10\%$ in the supine position; decreases $>10\%$ suggest diaphragmatic weakness (a 25% decrease is 79% sensitive and 90% specific for diaphragmatic weakness).$^2$ MIP and VC demonstrate a linear relationship in both acute and chronic neuromuscular respiratory failure.$^3$ In ED patients with suspected MG or GBS, a respiratory technician should be called to document respiratory function including PFTs. If a technician is not available, maximal single-breath count is an effective semiquantitative bedside test for VC and expiratory flow rate, with normal values in the range of 30 to 50.

A retrospective review of mechanically ventilated patients with neuromuscular diseases (of all types) found that (a) pre–mechanical ventilation ABGs with lower pH and pO$_2$ and higher pCO$_2$ were associated with poor functional outcome, (b) mechanical ventilation was required for more than 7 days if MIP was $>-28$ cm H$_2$O and/or MEP was $\leq 30$ cm H$_2$O, and (c) death during hospitalization was predicted by pH $<7.30$, serum bicarbonate $>30$ mg/dL, and pCO$_2$ $>50$ mm Hg.$^4$

**Predicting the Need for Intubation**

Several studies have attempted to identify predictors of the need for intubation and mechanical ventilation in patients with MG or GBS. A retrospective review of 55 patients admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU) for MG identified three respiratory function parameters in patients unlikely to require mechanical ventilation: VC $>20$ mL/kg, MEP $>40$ cm H$_2$O, or MIP $<-40$ cm H$_2$O. Patients with a $>30\%$ decline in MIP and hypercapnia (pCO$_2$ $>50$ mm Hg) were more likely to require mechanical ventilation.$^5$

A number of retrospective and prospective studies have evaluated the factors predicting the need for mechanical ventilation in patients with GBS and report similar findings. The most reliable bedside PFT predictors of the need for intubation are VC $<20$ mL/kg and an MIP $<-30$ cm H$_2$O. Other suggestive predictors include VC $<60\%$ of predicted and reduction of PFT values by $>30\%$ from baseline, inability to lift the head from the bed (a surrogate marker for neck flexor and extensor weakness), rapid disease progression (defined as reaching clinical nadir or worst neurologic status before clinical stabilization, within 7 days), bulbar dysfunction (identified by impaired gag reflex, dysarthria,
and/or dysphagia), and dysautonomia (identified by unexplained dysrhythmias, blood pressure fluctuations, and/or bowel and bladder dysfunction). Elevated liver enzymes and inability to stand or cough are also predictive, but are considered less regularly in practice.6–8 Indicators of impending respiratory failure in neuromuscular respiratory weakness are summarized in Table 23.3.

Unfortunately, no single clinical or laboratory finding adequately predicts the need for intubation in GBS and MG. The efficacy of bedside PFTs can be limited due to oropharyngeal weakness, and the usual signs of impending respiratory failure—such as distress, hypoxia, and ABG abnormalities—may not be present in patients with neuromuscular weakness. Finally, onset of respiratory muscle fatigue is unpredictable in patients with neuromuscular weakness. Because of this, serial functional and laboratory testing is essential to the management of these patients.

### Noninvasive Ventilation

Because mechanical ventilation is, in general, associated with increased morbidity, mortality, and hospital length of stay, several studies have explored the benefits of noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) for patients with MG and GBS. NIPPV delivers continuous positive pressure in adjustable degrees: higher during inspiration (to overcome upper airway resistance and reduce the work of breathing) and lower during expiration (to prevent airway collapse and atelectasis). Two retrospective studies of myasthenic crisis found that more than half of patients placed on NIPPV avoided eventual intubation and that hypercapnia (pCO₂ > 50 mm Hg) was the only predictor of NIPPV failure.9–12 There are less robust data regarding NIPPV for GBS, but one case report suggests it may not be sufficient to prevent intubation.13

### Intubation and Neuromuscular Blockade

Neuromuscular blocking agents should be avoided, if possible, in patients with MG who require intubation and mechanical ventilation. Depolarizing agents such as
succinylcholine can be used safely, but because MG patients have reduced functional AchRs, more than twice the normal dose may be required. Nondepolarizing agents such as rocuronium should be avoided; they act as competitive inhibitors of postsynaptic AchR and may cause prolonged neuromuscular blockade because they imitate and thus enhance the effects of existing pathogenic antibodies.

In patients with GBS, because dysautonomia carries the risk of blood pressure and heart rate instability and arrhythmia, succinylcholine should not be used, as it increases the risk of life-threatening hyperkalemia. Succinylcholine should also be avoided in patients with myopathies or with hyperkalemia susceptibility (such as those with periodic paralyses). Only nondepolarizing agents such as rocuronium should be used in GBS, and even these with caution.14

Immunomodulatory Treatment

It is beyond the scope of this chapter to discuss immunomodulatory treatment of peripheral neuromuscular disorders in detail; however, certain general principles relevant to the emergency physician are worth mentioning. The treatment of acute MG exacerbations or crises entails the use of corticosteroids, intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg), and plasma exchange (PE). If the exacerbation is mild, corticosteroids can be started in the ambulatory setting. It is important to note, however, that corticosteroids are known to cause an acute worsening of myasthenic symptoms within the first 2 weeks of initiating treatment. Thus, they should be administered with caution in the ambulatory setting, especially if the patient exhibits any bulbar weakness or respiratory symptoms. If the patient is in a closely monitored setting or already intubated and receiving mechanical ventilation, high-dose corticosteroids may be initiated, and doses of 60 to 80 mg of oral prednisone are commonly used. After remission is achieved (usually in 1 to 2 months), prednisone is slowly tapered over several months.

Numerous studies demonstrate the efficacy of IVIg and PE for treatment of myasthenic crisis.15,16 These therapies are often given in conjunction with high-dose prednisone to achieve successful remission. As discussed, high-dose prednisone can cause an initial worsening of myasthenic weakness and thus should be initiated only after respiratory status is stabilized. Similarly, while IVIg or PE should begin as soon as possible, stable respiratory status is the first priority, and these definitive treatments can be initiated after admission to the hospital rather than in the ED. Long-term management of MG usually involves maintaining remission with low-dose prednisone and/or steroid-sparing immunosuppressants, such as azathioprine and mycophenolate mofetil.

Treatment of GBS also involves IVIg or PE17 and may require more than one treatment in the acute setting, but long-term therapy is unnecessary as it is a monophasic illness. Similar to MG, IVIg or PE should be initiated after patient stabilization and admission to the hospital. Corticosteroids are not beneficial for GBS and should not be used.18

CONCLUSION

MG and GBS are the peripheral neuromuscular disorders most commonly encountered in the ED setting. Both diseases are associated with rapid respiratory muscle fatigue and respiratory failure. Early identification of these patients and accurate assessment of their need for ventilatory support are essential steps in optimizing patient outcomes.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Thieben et al., *Muscle Nerve*. 2005 | Retrospective review of utility of PFTs and ABGs in predicting need for mechanical ventilation in patients with MG | Patients unlikely to require mechanical ventilation if:  
- VC > 20 mL/kg  
- MEP > 40 cm H₂O or  
- MIP < −40 cm H₂O  
Higher risk for mechanical ventilation if:  
- >30% decline in MIP and  
- Hypercapnia (pCO₂ > 50 mm Hg) |
| Walgaard et al., *Ann Neurol*. 2010 | Prospective study of predictors of respiratory insufficiency in GBS | MV within 1 wk of hospital admission predicted by:  
- Rapid disease progression  
- Bulbar dysfunction  
- Bilateral facial weakness  
- Dysautonomia |
| Lawn et al., *Arch Neurol*. 2001 | Retrospective review of features associated with progression to respiratory failure patients with severe GBS | Progression to respiratory failure associated with:  
**Clinical features**  
- Rapid disease progression  
- Bulbar dysfunction  
- Bilateral facial weakness  
- Dysautonomia  
**PFTs**  
- VC < 20 mL/kg  
- MIP < 30 cm H₂O  
- MEP < 40 cm H₂O  
- PFT values reduced by >30% |
| Sharshar et al., *Crit Care Med*. 2003 | RCT of 722 patients to assess early predictors of need for mechanical ventilation in GBS | MV predicted by:  
- Symptom onset to hospital admission < 7 d (OR 2.51)  
- Inability to lift head above the bed (OR 4.34)  
- Inability to stand or cough (OR 2.63 and 9.09 respectively)  
- Elevated liver enzymes (OR 2.09)  
- VC < 60% predicted (OR 2.86) |
| Seneviratne et al., *Arch Neurol*. 2008 | Retrospective review of predictors of need for mechanical ventilation and utility of NIPPV in patients with myasthenic crisis | More than half of patients placed on NIPPV avoided eventual intubation. Only hypercapnia (pCO₂ > 45 mm Hg, p = 0.04) predicted intubation |
| Wu et al., *Neurocrit Care*. 2009 | Retrospective review of utility of NIPPV in patients with myasthenic crisis | More than half of patients placed on NIPPV avoided eventual intubation |
| Zinman et al., *Neurology*. 2007 | RCT of 51 patients to determine effectiveness of IVlg in MG | Clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvement in patients with moderate to severe exacerbations of MG treated with IVlg over 2 d |
| Barth et al., *Neurology*. 2011 | RCT of 84 patients comparing IVlg vs. PE for treatment of MG | Both IVlg and PE are effective for treating patients with worsening MG with similar duration of benefit and safety profile |
| Plasma Exchange/Sandoglobulin Guillain-Barré Syndrome Trial Group. Lancet. 1997 | RCT of 383 patients comparing PE, IVlg, or PE followed by IVlg for treatment of GBS | Both PE and IVlg are effective for treating patients with GBS in the first 2 wk of symptoms. The combination of PE with IVlg did not confer significant benefit |
| Hughes et al., 2006 | Meta-analysis of utility of corticosteroids for treatment of GBS | Steroids should not be used for GBS; there is no significant difference in disability outcome compared to control |

**RCT**, randomized controlled trial; **OR**, odds ratio.
REFERENCES


LOWER GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

Background
Lower gastrointestinal bleeding (LGIB), defined as bleeding below the ligament of Treitz, accounts for 20% of all acute GI bleeding. In the United States, the incidence of LGIB ranges from 20.5 to 27 cases per 100,000 adults. Compared to acute upper GI bleeding, patients with acute LGIB experience less shock, require fewer blood transfusions, and have a significantly higher hemoglobin level. The mortality rate of acute LGIB is 2% to 4%, and bleeding stops spontaneously in 80% to 85% of patients.

Epidemiology
The causes of hemodynamically significant hematochezia include diverticular bleeding (17% to 40%), angiodysplasia (9% to 21%), colitis (including ischemic, infectious, chronic inflammatory bowel disease [IBD], or radiation injury) (2% to 30%), neoplasia and postpolypectomy bleeding (11% to 14%), anorectal disease (4% to 10%), upper GI bleeding (1% to 11%), and small bowel bleeding (2% to 9%).

Diverticular Bleeding
Diverticular bleeding is typically due to arterial bleeding, presents as painless hematochezia, and increases in prevalence with age. Most diverticula are in the left colon, but the majority of bleeding diverticula are in the right colon. Although diverticular bleeding stops spontaneously in 80% of cases, the cumulative rebleeding rate is approximately 25% after 4 years.

Angiodysplasia
Angiodysplasias (or vascular ectasias/angioectasias) appear as red, mucosal lesions on colonoscopy and account for up to 30% of LGIB. They commonly occur in the right colon and increase in frequency with age. Most angiodysplasias do not bleed; bleeding...
is precipitated by platelet dysfunction and coagulopathy and is more frequent in patients with renal failure. Radiation proctopathy can result in telangiectasias, which can lead to rectal bleeding that is typically low volume and chronic. In a minority of patients, telangiectasias are due to hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia.

**Ischemic Colitis**

Ischemic colitis classically presents with mild abdominal pain associated with self-limited hematochezia. The etiology of ischemic colitis is frequently a decrease in mesenteric blood flow in a watershed distribution due to low blood pressure or vasospasm. Ischemic colitis risk factors include underlying cardiovascular disease, atherosclerosis, and advanced age. Endoscopically, the colonic mucosa appears edematous and can show areas of submucosal hemorrhage or necrosis.

**Mucosal Inflammation**

Mucosal inflammation can be caused by IBD or an infectious colitis. In 50% of patients with inflammation-associated bleeding, bleeding will stop spontaneously; however, 35% will rebleed. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) use has been noted to greatly increase the risk of bleeding in these conditions.

**Neoplasia and Postpolypectomy Bleeding**

Two to nine percent of hematochezia is due to colon cancer and presents most commonly as occult or low-volume bleeding. Bleeding may occur up to 14 days after colonoscopic polypectomy, usually because of arterial bleeding from the stalk of the polyp. Postpolypectomy bleeding accounts for 2% to 8% of acute LGIB.

**Anorectal Diseases**

Hemorrhoids account for 2% to 9% of hemodynamically significant LGIB. Solitary rectal ulcers resulting from internal rectal prolapse can also produce rectal bleeding. Rectal varices (enlarged blood vessels) can also cause hematochezia and significant GI bleeding.

**Dieulafoy Lesion**

A Dieulafoy lesion is an artery that is exposed through a colonic mucosal defect and can bleed profusely. They are classically observed in the proximal stomach but can occur anywhere in the GI tract including the colon and rectum. These lesions can be difficult to locate endoscopically.

**Initial Evaluation and Risk Stratification**

A complete patient history and physical exam are essential during the initial emergency department (ED) evaluation. The reported color of the stool—maroon, bright red, or black and tarry (melena)—and confirmatory rectal exam are key to determining if the bleeding stems from an upper or lower gastrointestinal (UGI or LGI) source. The rectal exam also helps to assess rate of bleeding and the presence of anorectal pathology. Patient history should note duration and frequency of bleeding, associated symptoms (light-headedness, dizziness, palpitations, syncope, abdominal pain, and fevers), sick contacts, travel history, and prior episodes of GI bleeding. The use of NSAIDs, family or personal history of colon cancer, prior radiation exposure, IBD history, liver disease,
coagulopathy, and weight loss are important details to obtain.\textsuperscript{5} In the setting of brisk hematochezia, clinicians must always maintain a high index of suspicion for the presence of a brisk upper GI bleed (UGIB), as 11\% to 15\% of patients with hematochezia are bleeding due to massive UGIB.\textsuperscript{9}

Patients with brisk bleeding or showing signs of hemodynamic instability including orthostatic hypotension, chest pain, dyspnea, and tachypnea should be monitored in the intensive care unit (ICU). ICU placement should also be considered for LGIB patients with significant comorbidities or those requiring two or more units of packed red blood cells (PRBCs). Initial laboratory studies should include a complete blood count, serum chemistry including BUN and creatinine, and an international normalized ratio (INR).\textsuperscript{5} In addition to volume resuscitation, patients with active bleeding and an INR > 1.5 or a platelet count <50,000/μL will require transfusion of fresh frozen plasma or platelets, respectively.\textsuperscript{5} A recent randomized clinical trial (RCT) in patients with acute UGIB suggests that a restrictive strategy of transfusion for hemoglobin <7 g/dL may be optimal.\textsuperscript{10} This study provides new guidelines for blood transfusion in the setting of GI bleeding and represents a departure from previous recommendations for transfusion in critically ill patients established by the Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care (TRICC) Investigators study.\textsuperscript{11} Patients with underlying cardiac disease should still be transfused when the hemoglobin drops below 9 g/dL.\textsuperscript{2}

To help identify patients with severe LGIB, the following validated risk factors should be assessed: heart rate > 100, systolic blood pressure < 115 mm Hg, syncope, nontender abdominal exam, bleeding within the first 4 hours of evaluation, aspirin use, and greater than two comorbid conditions (Charlson Comorbidity Index).\textsuperscript{12,13} In a patient with a LGIB and hemodynamic instability, placement of a nasogastric tube (NGT) and evaluation of the aspirate for bile or blood help identify whether brisk UGIB is the cause of the patient’s rectal bleeding. If NGT aspirate is clear, and an esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) is not deemed necessary, colonoscopy should be planned within 12 to 48 hours of arrival to the ED. All patients should have a clear liquid diet until 4 hours before the procedure. Four liters of GoLytely or an equivalent polyethylene glycol solution should be administered at a rate of a liter per hour until 4 hours before the procedure.

**Management Guidelines**

**Colonoscopy**

Colonoscopy is the preferred modality for identifying the source of an LGIB and achieving hemostasis with the fewest complications.\textsuperscript{5} The risk of serious complications from a colonoscopy is approximately 1 in 1,000 procedures.\textsuperscript{5} In patients with severe LGIB due to diverticular bleeding, colonoscopic treatment may prevent recurrent bleeding and decrease the need for surgery.\textsuperscript{9}

**Timing of Colonoscopy**

The timing of colonoscopy has been the subject of several RCTs.\textsuperscript{8,14} The most recent considered 85 patients with hematochezia with the following attributes: heart rate > 100 bpm, systolic blood pressure < 100 mm Hg, orthostatic change in heart rate or blood pressure > 20 mm Hg, hemoglobin drop > 1.5 g/dL, or requiring blood transfusion. These patients all underwent EGD within 6 hours to exclude brisk UGI bleeding; 13 (15\%) were found to have an UGI source. Of the remainder, 36 patients were randomized to an urgent colonoscopy group (<12 hours).
and 36 were randomized to an elective colonoscopy group (36 to 60 hours). There were no differences in clinical outcomes, including recurrent bleeding, units of blood transfused, hospital days, need for subsequent interventions, treatment of bleeding, hospital charges, or length of stay. The study concluded that the timing of colonoscopy between 12 and 60 hours from initial ED evaluation made no difference in clinical or economic outcomes.

In patients with brisk LGIBs unable to undergo colonoscopy due to hemodynamic instability or with bleeding that is too brisk to permit successful colon preparation, immediate angiography, radionucleotide scintigraphy (tagged red blood cell [RBC] scan), computed tomography (CT), or surgery may be necessary.

**Angiography**

A minimum colonic bleeding rate of 0.5 to 1 mL/min is required to be detected by angiography; the higher the bleeding rate, the more likely the study will be able to localize its source. A spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) < 90 and the need for more than 5 units of PRBCs in 24 hours are also predictors that angiography will locate the source of bleeding. Therapeutically, angiography works by embolization of the arterial branches that feed the bleeding site. Embolization has been demonstrated to be more effective than vasoconstrictor infusion and carries a lower risk of bowel infarction. Complications of angiography include contrast allergies, nephrotoxicity, hematomas, thrombosis, and vascular dissections.

**Radionucleotide Scintigraphy**

Radionucleotide scintigraphy, or tagged RBC scanning, detects LGIB at rates as low as 0.05 to 0.1 mL/min; source detection is improved when the scans are positive within 2 hours. No randomized trials have compared tagged RBC scanning to angiography, and studies regarding the diagnostic advantage of performing tagged RBC scans prior to angiography are equivocal. One RCT compared colonoscopy with tagged RBC scan following angiography and demonstrated colonoscopy to be the superior diagnostic test. A tagged RBC scan has the advantage of being noninvasive and not requiring special patient preparation; its disadvantage, however, is that it provides no therapeutic option for controlling a bleeding site once identified. In the setting of a brisk LGI bleed, tagged RBC scans remain valuable when time-consuming colonoscopy preparation prevents urgent localization of the bleeding source. RBC scans are also useful at the time of colonoscopy if the bleeding site cannot be identified or hemostasis cannot be achieved endoscopically. In this setting, the tagged RBC scan would be used to localize the site of bleeding, followed by angiography for hemostasis.

**Computed Tomography**

Multidetector CTs have improved imaging time and the ability to detect arterial bleeds; in animal models, they have detected bleeding rates as low as 0.3 to 0.5 mL/min. The main disadvantage of CT, as with the tagged RBC scan, is the inability to provide therapeutic options. Other disadvantages include radiation exposure, false-positive rates, contrast allergies, and potential contrast-induced nephrotoxicity. CT appears to be highly effective in detecting vascular ectasias.
Surgery
Surgery is performed when LGIB is recurrent and other measures, such as colonoscopy or angiography, have proven unsuccessful. Preoperative angiography can localize the bleeding source and appears to be associated with decreased rebleeding rates.15

NONVARICEAL UPPER GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

Background
Nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding (NVUGIB) has a mortality rate of 10% to 14%18 and imposes a significant clinical and economical burden on the U.S. health care system. Cases range from 48 to 160 per 100,000 adults per year,19 with an associated mean length of hospital stay of 2.7 to 4.4 days.20

Initial Evaluation and Risk Stratification
Initial evaluation—as with any critically ill patient—begins with an assessment of airway, breathing, and circulation (ABC). Once the ABCs are attended to, patients may be stratified as either high- or low-risk for re-bleeding and mortality using clinical assessment, laboratory data, and endoscopic criteria for risk of rebleeding. This type of risk stratification can help the emergency physician and gastroenterologist determine the appropriate timing of endoscopy. Clinical predictors of increased risk include age over 65, multiple comorbidities, hemodynamic instability, melena, poor overall functional status, hematochezia, hematemesis, and bloody nasogastric aspirate. Concerning laboratory data include a low initial hemoglobin, and/or elevated BUN, creatinine, or serum aminotransferase.19 Endoscopic predictors of increased risk for rebleeding include arterial bleeding, nonbleeding visible vessel or adherent clot, ulcer size greater than 2 cm, ulcer location in the posterior lesser gastric curvature or posterior duodenal wall, and varices or cancer.19

Management Guidelines
PPI Therapy
Initiation of intravenous proton pump inhibitor (PPI) therapy with an 80-mg bolus followed by an 8 mg/hour infusion rate is recommended for all NVUGIB. High-dose PPI therapy decreases the proportion of patients that will present with endoscopic findings that place them at risk of significant hemorrhage and/or in need of therapeutic intervention (e.g., active bleeding, nonbleeding visible vessel, or adherent clot). High-dose PPI therapy in NVUGIB does not reduce mortality, rebleeding rate, the need for blood transfusions, or the need for surgery.21,22

Blood Transfusion
The TRICC trial is a landmark study that has historically guided ICU blood transfusion strategies. This study stratified ICU-admitted patients who had been given blood transfusions into a restrictive (transfused when hemoglobin dropped below 7 g/dL) versus liberal (when hemoglobin dropped below 10 g/dL) transfusion strategy. The trial found that less critically ill patients (Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation II score < 20) and patients under the age of 55 had significantly decreased mortality rates when transfused with the restrictive transfusion strategy. Patients with significant underlying cardiac disease had improved mortality rates with the liberal transfusion strategy.11
A 2013 landmark RCT has provided strong new evidence, and established a new standard, for blood transfusion in patients with active GI bleeding. Unlike the TRICC trial, which surveyed ICU-admitted patients requiring blood transfusions for all causes, this trial was performed exclusively in patients with acute UGI bleeding. Furthermore, the 2013 trial studied a lower hemoglobin cutoff for the liberal transfusion strategy. Of the 921 patients enrolled in the trial, 421 patients were randomized to a restrictive transfusion strategy when the hemoglobin dropped below 7 g/dL; and 460 patients were randomized to a liberal transfusion strategy when the hemoglobin dropped below 9 g/dL. Patients in the restrictive group had higher probability of survival at 6 weeks, lower recurrence of further bleeding, and lower risks of adverse events. Patients with cardiovascular disease, hypotension (systolic blood pressure < 90 mm Hg), or thought to be hemoconcentrated due to low systemic volume should still be considered for more liberal transfusion strategies.

Prokinetic Therapy
Infusion of erythromycin 250 mg 30 minutes before endoscopy stimulates gastric emptying and has been known to increase endoscopic visualization, increase diagnostic yield, and decrease the need for repeat endoscopy in randomized trials. Only two small studies have evaluated the benefit of metoclopramide, with no significant benefits noted.

Correction of Coagulopathy
Correction of coagulopathy is recommended but should not delay early endoscopy. Data on the correction of coagulopathy for patients with NVUGIB are sparse and often contradictory. For patients on anticoagulation therapy, the threshold for correcting the INR varies widely in different studies. The International Consensus on Nonvariceal Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding, which stresses the importance of early endoscopic intervention in NVUGIB, provides a general recommendation to correct supratherapeutic INRs prior to endoscopy.

Endoscopy
Endoscopic findings are useful in predicting an individual patients’ risk of rebleeding. Initial endoscopic findings that place a patient at highest risk for rebleed and warrant intervention include ulcers with active bleeding, nonbleeding visible vessels, and adherent clot with an underlying vessel visualized after clot removal. Current guidelines recommend the use of clips or thermal coagulation alone and in combination with epinephrine; monotherapy with epinephrine alone is no longer recommended. Patients with flat pigmented spots and clean-based ulcers are at low risk and generally do not benefit from endoscopic treatment.

Timing of Endoscopy  In patients who are hemodynamically stable with no significant comorbidities, endoscopy should be performed within 24 hours, following which patients can often be discharged home if demonstrated to have low-risk endoscopic findings (clean-based ulcers or ulcers with flat pigmented spots). In patients with a more concerning clinical profile (tachycardia, hypotension, bloody emesis on NG lavage), endoscopy within 12 hours is recommended, as this may improve clinical outcomes. In low-risk hemodynamically stable patients, expedited endoscopy resulted in earlier hospital discharge and lowered costs. No clinical outcome data exist, however, to support emergent endoscopy in the low-risk group.
Discharge of Low-Risk Patients from the ED

Multiple assessment scoring systems exist to risk-stratify patients and to predict mortality and the need for clinical intervention such as blood transfusions, endoscopic treatment, or surgery. Some of these systems, such as the Rockall system, require endoscopic criteria to risk-stratify patients, making them less helpful in the ED; others, such as Glasgow-Blatchford Bleeding Score (GBS), require only clinical and laboratory data. A prospective study performed in the United Kingdom compared the GBS to the Rockall system for predicting mortality and need for clinical intervention (blood transfusions, endoscopic treatment, or surgery). Of the 676 patients presenting with acute GI bleeding, 105 received a GBS score of 0, indicating a low risk of need for intervention and an ability to be safely discharged from the ED without endoscopy if they meet the following additional criteria: urea nitrogen $< 18.2$ mg/dL, hemoglobin $> 13.0$ g/dL for men and $12.0$ g/dL for women, systolic blood pressure $> 100$ mm Hg, pulse $< 100$ bpm, and absence of melena, syncope, cardiac failure, and liver disease. The study used receiver operator characteristic (ROC) scores to compare each score’s ability to predict mortality and the need for clinical intervention. The GBS outperformed the Rockall system in predicting both measures. A follow-up study tested the GBS in clinical practice; of 123 patients with UGI bleeding, 84 (68%) were characterized as low risk (GBS score of 0) and were successfully managed in the outpatient setting. No clinical interventions were required and no deaths occurred.

VARICEAL UPPER GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

Background

Patients with suspected acute gastroesophageal variceal bleeding should be admitted to an ICU for management and resuscitation. Gastric and esophageal varices are formed as an end result of cirrhosis. Cirrhosis results from advanced liver disease and is characterized by hepatic tissue fibrosis, which leads to a structural resistance to hepatic blood flow and intrahepatic vasoconstriction due to an associated decrease in nitric oxide production. These changes result in portal venous system hypertension and the formation of a collateral (gastric and esophageal) circulation. Elevated portal pressures persist, however, because of resistance to portal flow within the collateral circulation and increased portal venous blood flow from concurrent splanchnic vasodilation. Fifty percent of patients with cirrhosis will have gastroesophageal varices, and variceal wall tension is the primary determinant of variceal rupture. Variceal hemorrhage typically occurs when the hepatovenous portal gradient is over 12 mm Hg.

Management Guidelines

Blood Transfusions

Based on the findings of the 2013 trial discussed above, blood transfusions should now target a hemoglobin of 7 to 8 g/dL; excessive transfusion and vigorous saline infusion should be avoided because of resulting increases in portal pressures and increased risk of variceal rebleed. Data from the 2013 study recommended a similar restrictive transfusion strategy for cirrhotics with variceal bleeding as for patients with NVUGIB. Survival improved in all patients assigned to the lower transfusion threshold ($< 7$ g/dL compared to $9$ g/dL); this benefit was magnified in the subgroup of patients with cirrhosis and...
a Child-Pugh class A or B disease. Compared to the restrictive strategy group, cirrhotics in the liberal transfusion strategy had significantly higher portal pressure gradients.

Octreotide
Octreotide causes splanchnic vasoconstriction and is thought to decrease vasodilatory peptides such as glucagon, thereby helping to counteract the increased portal venous blood flow from splanchnic vasodilation seen in cirrhotics. Current guidelines recommend octreotide be given as an initial 50-μg bolus followed by a 50 μg/h infusion for 3 to 5 days following initial presentation of variceal bleeding.

Antibiotic Prophylaxis
Patients with cirrhosis with gastroesophageal variceal bleeding are at high risk of bacterial infections including SBP and bacterial peritonitis, which cause increased risk of variceal rebleed and increased overall mortality. Current guidelines recommend that patients receive antibiotics pre-endoscopy to cover gram-negative bacteria and for a total of 7 days after initial GI bleed. Recommended antimicrobials include norfloxacin 400 mg PO BID or ciprofloxacin 500 mg IV BID for patients unable to tolerate oral intake. In areas of high fluoroquinolone resistance, ceftriaxone 1 g/day is preferred.

Endoscopy
There are two endoscopic methods for treating esophageal varices. The first, endoscopic variceal band ligation (EVL), deploys bands across varices with stigmata of recent hemorrhage with subsequent necrosis and sloughing of the varix. The second, sclerotherapy, injects a sclerosing agent such as cyanoacrylate into a bleeding varix to obtain hemostasis. A meta-analysis of 10 RCTs demonstrated EVL to be superior in overall outcomes when compared to sclerotherapy (pooled relative risk of 0.53). When EVL is not available or technically infeasible, sclerotherapy should be used.

Data on endoscopic management of bleeding gastric varices are minimal. In contrast to esophageal varices, sclerotherapy is recommended over EVL. TIPS should be considered when bleeding continues despite endoscopic attempts for hemostasis.

Transjugular Intrahepatic Portosystemic Shunt
Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) is a procedure performed by interventional radiology. It utilizes an expandable metal stent that creates a connection between the hepatic vein and the intrahepatic portal vein to help decrease portal pressure in the setting of acute variceal GI bleeding. TIPS may be considered in patients who are Child-Pugh class A or B with variceal bleeding and have failed endoscopic and medical therapy.

CONCLUSION
The management of gastroesophageal bleeding requires a focused patient history and physical exam, close hemodynamic monitoring, rapid resuscitation using a restrictive transfusion strategy, and prompt endoscopic evaluation. In variceal bleeding, an octreotide infusion to promote splanchnic vasoconstriction and prophylactic antibiotics to prevent bacterial translocation are also recommended. EVL, sclerotherapy, and TIPS are three validated management options for refractory variceal bleeding.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lower GI Bleeding</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laine et al., Am J Gastroenterol. 2008</td>
<td>RCT of 72 patients with LGIB who received either urgent (&lt;12 h) or elective (36–60 h) colonoscopy</td>
<td>No difference between urgent colonoscopy (&lt;12 h) and routine colonoscopy (36–60 h) in further bleeding, transfusion requirement, or hospital stay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green et al., Am J Gastroenterol. 2005</td>
<td>RCT of 100 patients comparing urgent colonoscopy to standard care (red cell scan followed by angiography for positive scan and colonoscopy within 4 days for negative scan)</td>
<td>Urgent colonoscopy identified a definite source of bleeding more often than the standard care group (OR = 2.6, 95% CI [1.1–6.2]), but there was no difference in mortality (2% vs. 4%), hospital stay (5.8 vs. 6.6 days), ICU stay (1.8 vs. 2.4 days), transfusion requirement (4.2 vs. 5 units), early rebleeding (22% vs. 35%), or need for surgery (14% vs. 12%).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-Variceal Upper GI Bleeding</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villanueva et al., N Engl J Med. 2013</td>
<td>RCT of 921 patients comparing a restrictive transfusion strategy (hemoglobin &lt; 7) to a liberal transfusion strategy (hemoglobin &lt; 9)</td>
<td>Patients in the restrictive group had higher probability of survival at 6 weeks (95% vs. 91%, hazard ratio of death in the restrictive strategy 0.55, 95% CI [0.33–0.92]), less recurrent bleeding (10% vs. 16%, p = 0.01), fewer adverse events (40% vs. 48%, p = 0.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leontiadis et al., Mayo Clin Proc. 2007</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 24 RCTs evaluating the efficacy of PPIs in the treatment of peptic ulcer disease</td>
<td>Treatment with PPI did not affect mortality (OR = 1.01, 95% CI [0.74–1.40]) but did decrease the need for surgery (OR = 0.61, 95% CI [0.48–0.78] NNT 34), rebleeding rate (OR = 0.49, 95% CI [0.37–0.65] NNT 13), and need for repeat endoscopic treatment (OR = 0.32, 95% CI [0.20–0.51] NNT 10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lau et al., N Engl J Med. 2007</td>
<td>RCT 638 patients comparing IV omeprazole (80-mg bolus followed by 8 mg/h) to placebo prior to endoscopy</td>
<td>Fewer patients in the omeprazole group required endoscopic treatment (19% in the omeprazole group vs. 28.4% in the placebo group, p = 0.007). No difference in transfusion requirements, recurrent bleeding, or need for surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barkun et al., Gastrointest Endosc. 2010</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of five RCTs, three studies using erythromycin and two studies using metoclopramide</td>
<td>Erythromycin 250 mg or 3 mg/kg given prior to endoscopy decreased the need for repeat endoscopy (OR = 0.55, 95% CI [0.32–0.94]), but there was no difference in the number of blood transfusions given, length of hospital stay, or need for surgery. No benefits of using metoclopramide were noted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stanley et al., Lancet. 2009</td>
<td>Prospective multicenter observational study comparing the use of the GBS to the Rockall system to determine which model better predicted mortality and/or the need for clinical intervention (blood transfusion, endoscopic treatment, or surgery)</td>
<td>The ROC score was used to compare ability to predict mortality and the need for clinical intervention. The GBS was superior to the Rockall system to predict both outcome measures (ROC = 0.9, 95% CI [0.88–0.93]) compared to the admission Rockall score (ROC = 0.70, 95% CI [0.65–0.75])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; NNT, number needed to treat; OR, odds ratio.

### REFERENCES


Acute Liver Failure and Hepatic Encephalopathy

Robert J. Wong and Glen A. Lutchman

BACKGROUND

Acute liver failure (ALF) is a rare condition characterized by a rapid decline in hepatic synthetic function, marked hepatocellular inflammation, and a high mortality rate. The incidence of ALF is approximately 2,000 cases per year in the United States; it accounts for 6% of all liver-related deaths and 6% of liver transplantations.\(^1\) Differentiating acute from acute-on-chronic liver failure can be difficult, but is important when assessing patient prognosis and need for transfer to a liver transplant center. Early recognition of ALF allows for targeted supportive therapy, early evaluation for liver transplantation, and timely involvement of multidisciplinary specialties, including hepatologists, intensivists, and transplant surgeons.

DEFINITIONS

ALF is a general term used to define the development of jaundice, hepatic encephalopathy, and coagulopathy (International normalized ratio [INR] \(\geq 1.5\)) in an individual without underlying liver disease with a disease course of \(<26\) weeks. More accurate subclassifications are differentiated by elapsed time from development of jaundice to development of hepatic encephalopathy\(^1\):\(^3:\)

- **Hyperacute liver failure:** development of hepatic encephalopathy 0 to 7 days after the onset of jaundice
- **Acute liver failure:** development of hepatic encephalopathy 8 to 21 days after the onset of jaundice
- **Subacute liver failure:** development of hepatic encephalopathy 21 days to \(<26\) weeks after the onset of jaundice

While popular, these terms are not particularly useful since they do not have prognostic significance. For example, “hyperacute” disease generally carries a better prognosis because of a high prevalence in this cohort of acetaminophen-related disease, which tends to have better outcomes.\(^1\)\(^3\)\(^-\)\(^5\) For the remainder of this chapter, we will use the more general definition of ALF.
DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

The initial approach to ALF (Fig. 25.1) involves determining the underlying etiology of disease and the implementing etiology-specific targeted therapy (Tables 25.1 and 25.2). A thorough patient history, including interviews with family and friends, can provide clues to specific ingestions, drugs, or toxins that may be implicated in the patient’s disease and enables a review of the patient’s prescribed medications for

- Endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation if needed
- Volume resuscitation and consider vaspressors to maintain MAP > 80 mm Hg if needed
- ICP monitoring and treatment goals of ICP < 20 mm Hg, CPP > 60 mm Hg after consultation with hepatologist and intensivist
- Correction of coagulopathy if signs of active bleeding
- Acid suppression therapy for stress ulcer prophylaxis
- Hemodialysis for worsening renal failure
- Correction of electrolyte and metabolic derangements
- Lactulose and rifaximin for hepatic encephalopathy
- Low threshold to start antibiotic therapy
- Social worker and psychological assessment

FIGURE 25.1 Initial evaluation of ALF.
possible drug–drug interactions. The physical exam should focus on an assessment of the patient’s mental status and degree of encephalopathy, with specific attention paid to airway patency and need for early intubation for airway protection. This is particularly important if transfer to another hospital is being considered. Initial emergency department (ED) evaluation includes comprehensive laboratory testing aimed at assessing the severity and identifying the underlying etiology of the liver failure (Table 25.3).

Abdominal ultrasound with Doppler flow, if available, is helpful in the evaluation of vascular etiologies of ALF (i.e., Budd-Chiari syndrome) and should also be initiated in the ED. Finally, if possible, a social worker should interview the patient and family in the ED, especially if transfer to a liver transplant center is being considered, as

### TABLE 25.1 Common Etiologies of Acute Liver Failure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Etiology of ALF</th>
<th>Specific Targeted Therapy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drug-induced liver injury</td>
<td>1. Acetaminophen (46%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Other drug-induced liver injury (12%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute viral hepatitis</td>
<td>1. Hepatitis A infection (2.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Hepatitis B infection (7.7%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>1. Acute ischemic hepatitis (4.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Budd-Chiari syndrome (0.9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic</td>
<td>1. Wilson disease (1.4%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1. Autoimmune hepatitis (5.9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Pregnancy-related liver failure (0.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Indeterminate (14%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Other toxins (e.g., Amanita)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Etiology of ALF</th>
<th>Specific Targeted Therapy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td>N-acetylcysteine: Intravenous:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loading dose of 150 mg/kg over 15 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12.5 mg/kg/h × 4 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.25 mg/kg/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enteral:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loading dose of 140 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70 mg/kg every 4 h × 17 doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mushroom poisoning (e.g., Amanita)</td>
<td>Silibinin 30–40 gm/kg/d IV (not available in the United States)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Penicillin G 300,000—1 million units/kg/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute hepatitis B</td>
<td>Tenofovir 300 mg/d or entecavir 0.5 mg/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes simplex virus</td>
<td>IV acyclovir 5–10 mg/kg/8 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicella zoster virus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune hepatitis</td>
<td>Prednisone 40–60 mg/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute fatty liver of pregnancy</td>
<td>Delivery of the fetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HELLP syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
information gained in these interviews can have significant bearing on liver transplant candidacy (e.g., recent alcohol or drug use, social support mechanisms, financial/insurance information).

**SYSTEM-SPECIFIC CLINICAL COMPLICATIONS**

**Respiratory Complications**
A common presenting symptom of ALF is hepatic encephalopathy (see Hepatic Encephalopathy). With more severe forms of encephalopathy, maintenance of airway protection may be compromised, necessitating endotracheal intubation. As a result, all patients presenting with ALF should be assessed for the need for ventilatory support. In addition to providing airway protection in patients with severe hepatic encephalopathy, mechanical ventilation also allows for targeted hyperventilation (i.e., hypocapnia) for treatment of cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension (see Neurologic Complications). There are currently insufficient data to recommend a standard mode of mechanical ventilation in ALF patients. However, tidal volume and plateau pressure should be limited to prevent development of acute lung injury. As a result, respiratory rate should be adjusted to ensure adequate minute ventilation to prevent increasing PCO₂, which can further exacerbate intracranial hypertension.

**Neurologic Complications**
One of the most feared complications of ALF, and a leading cause of mortality among these patients, is neurologic impairment—specifically, cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension. Both of these conditions are more common among patients with hyperacute liver failure and can result in hypoxic brain injury, permanent neurologic deficits, and death. Failure to clinically recognize cerebral edema can lead to treatment delays and progression of neurologic complications, including uncal herniation. While the exact etiology of cerebral edema is unclear, it is hypothesized that ALF-induced systemic inflammation and hormonal dysregulation lead to osmotic disturbances in the brain and to heightened cerebral blood flow from autoregulation. The risk of cerebral
edema and subsequent herniation has been shown to correlate with both the severity of a patient’s hepatic encephalopathy and the degree of serum ammonia elevation (see Hepatic Encephalopathy).10–12

Patients with ALF and evidence of neurologic impairments (e.g., cerebral edema) should be monitored in the intensive care unit (ICU). Management of cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension consists of endotracheal intubation when indicated for mental status compromise, close monitoring of intracranial pressure (ICP), and medical therapy to minimize further elevation in ICP. ICP should be maintained at <20 mm Hg and cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) at >60 mm Hg. CPP is determined by the difference between mean arterial pressure (MAP) and ICP. The role of invasive ICP monitoring in ALF is under study and is only to be undertaken in collaboration with an intensivist and transplant hepatologist.1,13–15 Alternative methods of ICP monitoring, such as transcranial Doppler, are under evaluation.16

In patients with ALF suspected of developing intracranial hypertension, several steps can be taken to treat the elevated pressures and prevent further deterioration. Minimizing patient stimuli, elevating the head of bed to 30°, and avoiding placement of central access in the neck region are initial precautions that can be taken.1,8,9 Medical intervention includes osmotic therapy with either mannitol or hypertonic saline; this increases blood osmolality and induces fluid shift from the brain intracellular space to the intravascular space, thereby decreasing brain edema and pressure. An early randomized control trial of 34 patients with ALF evaluated the effect of intravenous mannitol (given as a rapid infusion of 1 g/kg body weight) in the treatment of patients with intracranial hypertension (ICP ≥30 mm Hg for >5 minutes). Compared to the 17 patients who did not receive mannitol therapy, those who underwent mannitol infusions had significantly higher overall survival (47.1% vs. 5.9%).17 In a randomized controlled trial of 30% hypertonic saline in the management of 45 patients with ALF (using a target serum sodium level of between 145 and 150 mmol/L), a significantly lower incidence of intracranial hypertension was seen among the treatment group.18

For patients requiring mechanical ventilation, hyperventilation to a goal PaCO₂ of 25 to 30 mm Hg results in vasoconstriction and decreased ICP and cerebral edema. While mechanical hyperventilation has not been proven effective in the prevention of cerebral edema, it is commonly used for treatment of acute rises in ICP/cerebral edema.6,7

The role of hypothermia in the management of ALF patients is complex; it likely affects multiple factors responsible for the development of encephalopathy and intracranial hypertension.19–21 An early clinical study evaluated the role of hypothermia in seven patients with uncontrolled intracranial hypertension despite the aforementioned therapies. Patients who were cooled to 32°C demonstrated a significant decline in ICP, from 45 to 16 mm Hg, with subsequent improvements in CPP.21 Other studies have reported that hypothermia used as adjunct to standard therapy may be helpful in patients with persistent uncontrolled intracranial hypertension, especially as a bridge toward liver transplantation19–21; however, well-designed randomized clinical trials for this application are lacking.

Pharmacologic coma and sedation, another adjunctive therapy, reduce ICP by suppressing cerebral metabolic activity and decreasing CPP. Phenobarbital has been traditionally used for this purpose, but propofol has become the preferred sedative agent in many centers.22,23
Hepatic Encephalopathy

Hepatic encephalopathy is a neurologic complication of ALF that requires early identification and aggressive treatment. Accurate assessment (see grading system, below) of degree of encephalopathy helps inform the decision to initiate definitive ventilatory support and protect the patient’s airway; prompt treatment helps prevent worsening cerebral edema. Serum ammonia will be elevated in ALF and is hypothesized play a role in the pathogenesis of worsening cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension. Lowering ammonia levels with lactulose and early dialysis may help treat or prevent the development of cerebral edema.1,11,24,25 The U.S. Acute Liver Failure Study Group retrospectively evaluated the role of lactulose in the management of encephalopathy among ALF patients.25 While the severity of encephalopathy did not differ between patients in the treated and untreated groups, overall survival was slightly higher for patients receiving lactulose therapy.25 Care should be taken, however, to avoid lactulose therapy–associated dehydration and electrolyte disturbances. The role of nonabsorbable antibiotics (e.g., rifaximin) in the management of encephalopathy in patients with ALF is not well studied26; as a result, rifaximin is not considered standard of care, but may be considered on a case-by-case scenario in consultation with the hepatology service.

Hepatic Encephalopathy Grading System
- **Grade 1**—changes in behavior, minimal change in consciousness
- **Grade 2**—gross disorientation, drowsiness, asterixis, slowness of mentation
- **Grade 3**—marked confusions, incoherent speech, sleeping, arousable to vocal stimuli
- **Grade 4**—comatose, unresponsive to pain, decorticate or decerebrate positioning

Cardiovascular Complications

The systemic inflammation and hormonal dysregulation that result from ALF can lead to systemic vasodilation, contributing to decreased MAP and CPP. Adequate maintenance of cardiovascular perfusion directly affects the CPP and overall neurologic complications. Initial management with intravascular volume repletion is aimed at maintaining MAP > 80 mm Hg and CPP > 60 mm Hg. Patients should be resuscitated with normal saline first and switched to half-normal saline with 75 mEq/L of sodium bicarbonate if acidosis is present. Adjunctive therapy with vasopressor therapy may be needed to maintain/reach MAP and CPP targets. Norepinephrine is the vasopressor of choice, with the addition of vasopressin to permit titration of the norepinephrine infusion.1,4

Hematologic Complications

Coagulopathy is another common feature of ALF and correlates with a patient’s degree of hepatic synthetic dysfunction. Aggressive correction of thrombocytopenia and elevated INR is not necessary if there is no evidence of bleeding.27 Prior to invasive diagnostic or therapeutic interventions, however, coagulopathy may be corrected with fresh frozen plasma and platelets; goals for correction, however, are not well established.

In the setting of active gastrointestinal bleeding, more aggressive transfusion of cryoprecipitate may also be instituted. Recombinant factor VIIa is an option for life-threatening bleeding but carries risk of thrombosis.28 Given the increased risk of gastrointestinal tract bleeding in the setting of coagulopathy and the risk of developing stress-induced ulcers, routine prophylactic acid suppression therapy is indicated. In a
multicenter, randomized placebo-controlled trial of 1,200 mechanically ventilated patients, acid suppression therapy was associated with significantly reduced risk of gastrointestinal bleeding (relative risk 0.44). While the study cohort was not limited to patients with ALF, the findings of this study have been used to support the routine use of acid suppression in ALF.

Renal Complications

Acute renal failure is a common complication in ALF. Hemodynamic alterations affecting adequate renal perfusion coupled with the direct nephrotoxicity of drugs and toxins such as acetaminophen and amanita poisoning contribute to worsening renal function. ALF-induced acidosis, electrolyte abnormalities, and uremia can further contribute to renal impairment. The renal failure, in turn, can exacerbate the systemic inflammatory response triggered by the ALF.

Fluid resuscitation to achieve optimal intravascular volume, coupled with vasopressor therapy to achieve MAP goals, can improve hypoperfusion-induced renal failure. Early recognition of renal failure and, when indicated, initiation of renal replacement therapy with continuous venovenous hemodialysis (CVVH) can also assist significantly in the overall management of ALF. Early initiation of dialysis allows for more aggressive management of encephalopathy and elevated ICP by forced hypernatremia and lowering of blood ammonia levels. Furthermore, CVVH has been demonstrated to improve cardiovascular stability in patients with ALF. In one study, 32 critically ill patients with ALF and acute renal failure were randomized to receive either intermittent or continuous modes of renal replacement therapy. Patients treated with CVVH had improved overall cardiovascular parameters, as measured by cardiac output and tissue oxygen delivery.

Infectious Complications

Ninety percent of ALF patients develop some degree of infection, a result of the confluence of invasive monitoring and immune system dysfunction. Severe bacterial or fungal infections can preclude liver transplantation and/or complicate the posttransplantation recovery. Pneumonia is the most common infection experienced by ALF patients, followed by urinary tract infections and catheter-related infections. Gram-positive organisms are the most common infectious culprits, followed by gram-negative organisms and fungi.

Surveillance cultures of blood, urine, and sputum and chest radiography should be routinely evaluated in patients with ALF. In the absence of suspected infection, empiric prophylactic antibiotic or antifungal therapy has not been shown to provide a survival benefit. In one study, ALF patients without evidence of acute infection were randomized to receive or not to receive prophylactic parenteral and enteral antimicrobial therapy. While the treated group showed a significant reduction in the development of infections, overall survival was not significantly different between the treated and untreated groups. Gut decontamination with poorly absorbable antibiotics has also not been shown to improve survival outcomes among ALF patients. Antibiotic or antifungal therapy should, however, be initiated if there is a clinical suspicion of infection or deteriorating clinical status (e.g., worsening hepatic encephalopathy or systemic inflammatory response syndrome).
Metabolic Complications
Severe metabolic and electrolyte abnormalities are common in patients with ALF, a result of multiorgan dysfunction. Early recognition and correction of these derangements can prevent further deterioration.1 Some of the common metabolic complications that result from ALF include the following:

- **Acidemia and alkalemia**: Both are important predictors of mortality and need for liver transplantation. Acid–base status is also an important component of the King’s College criteria (Table 25.4),37 which is used to guide prognostication in patients with ALF.
- **Hypoglycemia**: Patients with ALF experience hypoglycemia because of impaired glucose metabolism. When hypoglycemia is identified, a continuous glucose infusion (e.g., 5% dextrose, half-normal saline) should be administered.
- **Hypophosphatemia, hypokalemia, and hypomagnesemia**: These electrolyte disturbances are commonly encountered in the ALF. Frequent monitoring of electrolytes with prompt repletion is needed to avoid associated complications.
- **Inadequate nutrition**: As with other ICU patients, early initiation of enteral nutrition is preferred over parenteral nutrition in patients with ALF.40

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

**Acetaminophen**
Acetaminophen toxicity is by far the most common cause of ALF in the United States, accounting for over 50% of all cases in the United States.1,3,5 A detailed patient history is essential to diagnosing a deliberate or accidental overdose, especially given the multitude of both prescription and nonprescription medications that include acetaminophen. Acetaminophen-related hepatotoxicity is a dose-related adverse event; while ingestion of >10 to 15 g over a period of 24 hours is typically needed to induce ALF, concurrent disease or individual variations in hepatic metabolism may allow significant damage from ingestion of only 3 to 4 g.41–43

In toxic acetaminophen ingestions, aminotransferase levels are characteristically elevated several hundred-fold above normal values, with a peak in the rise of aminotransferases typically occurring 48 to 72 hours following ingestion. Use of the Rumack–Matthew acetaminophen nomogram can assist in prognosticating the risk of ALF in patients with less severe aminotransferase abnormalities.3,4 The nomogram plots the serum concentration of acetaminophen against last known ingestion time in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acetaminophen-Related ALF</th>
<th>Non-Acetaminophen-Related ALF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• pH &lt; 7.30, or</td>
<td>• INR &gt; 6.5 (PT &gt; 100 s), or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All three of the following:</td>
<td>Any three of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• INR &gt; 6.5 (PT &gt; 100 s), creatinine &gt; 3.4 mg/dL, and grade 3–4 hepatic encephalopathy</td>
<td>• Age &lt; 10 or age &gt; 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-A, non-B hepatitis, drug-induced, or indeterminate etiology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• &gt;7 d of jaundice prior to encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• INR &gt; 3.5 (PT &gt; 50 s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Bilirubin &gt; 17.6 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

an attempt to prognosticate hepatotoxicity and guide administration of therapy with N-acetylcysteine (NAC). Recently, acetaminophen–protein adducts, which have a longer half-life than acetaminophen, have been proposed as a means of identifying the cause of ALF in patients presenting without an identifiable etiology or undetectable acetaminophen levels.\textsuperscript{43,44} A recent study evaluated sera from 110 subjects with indeterminate ALF enrolled in the Acute Liver Failure Study Group.\textsuperscript{43} The sera of these patients, along with 199 positive controls of sera from patients with known acetaminophen-related ALF, were evaluated for acetaminophen–cysteine adducts. Over 94.5% of controls demonstrated levels of adducts that confirmed acetaminophen toxicity; 18% of the indeterminate cases tested positive, which confirmed previous reports citing the high prevalence of unrecognized acetaminophen toxicity among patients with indeterminate liver failure.\textsuperscript{43}

If ingestion occurs within 3 to 4 hours, administration of activated charcoal at a dose of 1 g/kg orally may be of some benefit,\textsuperscript{45} however, NAC therapy remains the most beneficial intervention.\textsuperscript{46,47} One of the original studies evaluating the benefit of NAC in the treatment of acetaminophen-related ALF described the outcomes of 2,540 acetaminophen–toxic patients treated with oral NAC.\textsuperscript{47} Patients treated with oral NAC had significantly lower rates of hepatotoxicity and significantly reduced mortality; patients treated within 8 hours of last ingestion had better outcomes than those who were treated at later intervals. NAC can be administered orally or intravenously; however, the intravenous route is preferred given the lower risk of aspiration. The dosing regimen for both oral and intravenous NAC is presented in Table 25.2.

**Nonacetaminophen Drug/Toxins**

Given the multitude of potentially hepatotoxic prescription and nonprescription drugs, a thorough patient history is essential. Common culprits of mixed-etiologic ALF include antibiotics, antifungals, antituberculosis medications, sulfa-containing drugs, and psychiatric and neurologic medications including antiepileptics. In addition to pharmaceutical agents, nutritional and herbal supplements need to be carefully evaluated for potential hepatotoxicity. Early identification and removal of the offending agent, along with supportive care, are the mainstay of therapy in these cases.\textsuperscript{48,49}

While NAC therapy has demonstrated greatest utility in patients with acetaminophen toxicity, it may also benefit patients with non-acetaminophen-related ALF.\textsuperscript{50} In a prospective, double-blinded trial of 173 ALF patients without evidence of acetaminophen toxicity, a 72-hour infusion of NAC was compared to placebo (dextrose) in affecting survival outcomes. While there was no statistically significant difference in overall 3-week survival seen between the NAC group and the placebo group (70% vs. 66%), patients treated with NAC had significantly better 3-week transplant-free survival (40% vs. 27%).\textsuperscript{50} The survival advantage was, however, limited to patients with less severe hepatic encephalopathy (grade 1 to 2).

Mushroom poisoning with *Amanita* toxin is a potentially lethal cause of ALF. As there is no serologic test to confirm exposure, a careful patient/observer history is essential, both to identify the fungus and to estimate the timing of exposure. Patients presenting with recent ingestion may benefit from nasogastric lavage to attempt removal of remaining toxic material. Silibinin and penicillin are accepted antidotes to mushroom
poisoning. While greater evidence supports the efficacy of silibinin, this treatment is not available as a licensed drug in the United States. However, when *Amanita* poisoning is suspected, an application to the Food and Drug Administration for emergency use of this agent is possible. Silibinin is administered orally or intravenously at a dose of 30 to 40 mg/kg/d for 3 to 4 days. Penicillin is an acceptable alternative in conjunction with NAC treatment. *Amanita* toxin is excreted in the bile, and the use of nasobiliary drainage or aspiration of the second portion of the duodenum (ideally performed in an ICU) may decrease enterohepatic circulation of the toxin.

**Viral Hepatitis**

Acute viral hepatitis accounts for approximately 12% of all cases of ALF in the United States. Several viruses have the potential to induce liver failure, each with its own unique risk factors, routes of transmission, diagnostic workup, and targeted treatment regimen. Acute hepatitis A infection (HAV) is a common ailment spread primarily through fecal–oral transmission. The diagnosis can be confirmed with positive anti-HAV IgM. Most HAV infections resolve with supportive therapy that includes fluid resuscitation and correction of electrolyte disturbances. However, any signs of hepatic dysfunction, including encephalopathy or coagulopathy, or signs of multiorgan dysfunction (e.g., renal failure or respiratory failure) require hospital admission and monitoring for development of ALF.

Acute hepatitis B infection (HBV) most often occurs as a result of intravenous drug use or sexual transmission. Acute HBV is confirmed by the presence of anti-HBV core Ab IgM. HBV antigen and HBV viral DNA may also be present. As in acute HAV, patient evaluation in acute HBV centers on assessment of organ function and identification of early symptoms of ALF that would require hospital admission. Following an initial diagnostic workup and appropriate resuscitation in the ED, inpatient treatment is generally guided by the hepatology service. First-line treatment for HBV consists of tenofovir 300 mg/d or entecavir 0.5 mg/d. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of patients with ALF secondary to HBV demonstrated that treatment with tenofovir was associated with significantly lower HBV viral DNA levels and improved liver disease severity, as measured by the model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score and Child-Pugh score. In addition, patients who were treated with tenofovir had significantly higher 3-month survival compared to patients who received placebo (57% vs. 15%).

Acute hepatitis C infection (HCV) in the United States is associated primarily with intravenous drug use in the United States; the diagnosis can be confirmed with anti-HCV Ab and HCV viral RNA. ALF secondary to acute HCV is rare. The timing of antiviral therapy for acute HCV is unclear; current studies lack definitive data, and recently developed anti-HCV therapies have not undergone well-designed clinical trials. In patients with uncomplicated acute HCV, monitoring for spontaneous clearance of HCV RNA over a 12- to 16-week period is reasonable. The evidence for antiviral therapy in the setting of HCV-induced ALF is less clear, and general supportive measures should be instituted instead.

Acute hepatitis D infection (HDV) is rare and occurs either as a coinfection with HBV or as superimposed acute HDV in a patient with chronic HBV. Diagnosis is conferred with the anti-HDV Ab and HDV antigen; supportive care occurs concurrently...
with treatment of the HBV infection. Acute hepatitis E infection (HEV) is transmitted via fecal–oral route, and diagnosis is confirmed with anti-HEV IgM and IgG. Treatment is supportive. With all the acute viral hepatitis infections, the initial evaluation and management in the ED focus on supportive care, including fluid and electrolyte resuscitation. The appropriate laboratory workup as previously described should be initiated; treatment is usually guided by the diagnosis and initiated by the inpatient team.

**Autoimmune Hepatitis**

Autoimmune hepatitis can present with a wide spectrum of clinical disease severity. While it is often diagnosed in the workup of mild elevations in aminotransferase levels and vague systemic complaints, autoimmune hepatitis can also present in a fulminant course with ALF.\(^58,59\) A suspicion for autoimmune hepatitis is gleaned from a complete patient history of potential comorbid autoimmune disease states. Initial evaluation in the ED should include antinuclear antibodies (ANA), anti–smooth muscle antibodies (ASMA), and total serum IgG.

A thorough workup to exclude viral hepatitis and alcoholic liver disease further supports the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. In patients with negative serologic markers in whom the suspicion for this etiology remains, liver biopsy may help to confirm diagnosis. Once ALF secondary to autoimmune hepatitis is confirmed, timely initiation of immunosuppressive therapy is critical and may reduce the progression of disease and need for liver transplantation.\(^59\) The initial evaluation in the ED should focus on ensuring that the diagnostic workup is sufficient to evaluate for this process.

**Wilson Disease**

Wilson disease is a rare cause of liver disease; it is caused by a defect in copper metabolism and characterized by Kayser–Fleischer rings (secondary to copper deposition at the corneoscleral junction of the eye) and neuropsychiatric disease (secondary to copper deposition in the brain). Coombs-negative hemolytic anemia is a common associated presentation. A characteristic biochemical finding is an extremely low alkaline phosphatase (ALK) in the setting of marked elevation of aminotransferases. Early identification is important for prompt initiation of liver transplant evaluation. Initial diagnostic tests that can be sent from the ED include serum ceruloplasmin and routine liver function tests. Further diagnostic testing with urinary copper levels and liver biopsy with quantitative copper concentration in patients with high suspicion of Wilson disease can help confirm the diagnosis. The hepatology service should be consulted to evaluate the need for liver biopsy. In the setting of ALF, treatment in the ED should be supportive while the patient is rapidly evaluated for liver transplantation.\(^1\)

**Vascular Disease**

“Shock liver” is a relatively common syndrome of ischemic hepatitis, characterized by acute elevation of aminotransferase levels. Precipitated by severe hypotension or hypovolemia resulting in hepatic ischemia, this syndrome is common in patients with underlying cardiac disease or severe congestive heart failure. Post–cardiac arrest patients who experience a period of hepatic hypoperfusion will often present with some degree of
ischemic hepatitis. Correction of the underlying etiology and prompt initiation of cardiovascular support generally lead to recovery of hepatic function and usually prevent the need for liver transplant.\(^1,60\) Overall prognosis, however, depends on the etiologies that precipitate the ischemic event.

Budd-Chiari syndrome is a rare disease precipitated by hepatic venous outflow obstruction resulting in hepatic decompensation and ALF.\(^60,61\) Hepatic vein obstruction is generally secondary to thrombosis, and an underlying hypercoagulable state should be evaluated for. Acute abdominal pain, new-onset ascites, and marked hepatomegaly are often found on clinical presentation. The diagnostic approach relies on radiographic evidence of obstructive disease, preferably obtained through abdominal ultrasonography with Doppler flow. Contrast-enhanced computed tomography and magnetic resonance venography are alternative diagnostic tools, but should be used with caution, as many patients presenting with ALF have impaired renal function.

A diagnosis of Budd-Chiari requires a comprehensive workup to determine the underlying prothrombotic disorder. Potential culprits include hematologic disorders and hematologic malignancy (which, if diagnosed, may preclude the option of transplantation). Anticoagulation therapy and venous decompression (i.e., transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunting) have a role in the management of Budd-Chiari syndrome, but patients presenting with ALF as a result of this disease have a poorer prognosis, and liver transplantation may be the preferred therapeutic option.\(^60,61\) In the ED, initial workup involves early resuscitation and the initiation of appropriate laboratory and radiographic diagnostic evaluation.

**Pregnancy-Related Disease**

Pregnancy-related liver disease is relatively rare, and the development of ALF in pregnant patients is even more rare.\(^62\) Both acute fatty liver of pregnancy and HELLP syndrome (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets) generally occur during the third trimester of pregnancy and can result in progressive hepatic injury leading to liver failure. In addition to abnormal aminotransferase levels and thrombocytopenia, jaundice, coagulopathy, preeclampsia, and hypoglycemia are often seen in the setting of pregnancy-related ALF. Treatment is supportive, and prompt delivery of the fetus in consultation with a high-risk obstetrics team generally results in rapid recovery of hepatic function.\(^62\) While rare, liver transplantation may need to be considered in postpartum patients with persistent or progressively worsening hepatic dysfunction.

**CONCLUSION**

ALF is a significant cause of morbidity and mortality in the United States. Prompt recognition of ALF is important to initiate the appropriate diagnostic workup and to triage the patient toward an appropriate critical care setting. While the diagnostic evaluation and subsequent management of ALF are complicated, the emergency physician plays a key role in assessing the severity of disease and initiating the appropriate diagnostic testing required to confirm the underlying etiology. Severely ill ALF patients should always be admitted to an ICU or transferred to a liver transplantation center as needed.
REFERENCES


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostapowicz et al., Ann Intern Med. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaquero et al., Liver Transpl. 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook et al., N Engl J Med. 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolando et al., Hepatology. 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O’Grady et al., Gastroenterology. 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keays et al., BMJ. 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lee et al., Gastroenterology. 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garg et al., Hepatology. 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; RR, relative risk.
Chapter 25  Acute Liver Failure and Hepatic Encephalopathy

BACKGROUND

The pancreas is approximately 6 to 10 inches long, is located directly behind the stomach, and has distinct endocrine and exocrine functions. The endocrine portion of the pancreas is composed of islets of Langerhans cells that constitute about 2% of the organ. These cells produce and secrete hormones including insulin, glucagon, and somatostatin. The exocrine portion of the pancreas is composed of acinar cells (80% of the organ) and ductal cells (18% of the organ). Acinar cells produce digestive enzymes that are sequestered until physiologic impulses stimulate their release into the pancreatic ductal system where they are transported to the small intestine. The digestive enzymes are enzymatically inert until activated in the small intestine by various peptides. Disruption of this physiologic process, by any of a variety of etiologies, is the basis for our current understanding of acute and chronic pancreatitis. This chapter primarily focuses on acute pancreatitis, which is more commonly seen in emergency care. Pertinent aspects of chronic pancreatitis are also addressed.

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

The incidence of acute pancreatitis is estimated to be as high as 38 per 100,000 patients and accounts for more than 220,000 hospital admissions in the United States annually. Most cases are clinically mild and self-limited; a minority of cases are severe and are associated with critical illness, prolonged hospitalization, infection, organ failure, and death.

Acute pancreatitis occurs from premature activation of digestive enzymes within the pancreatic parenchyma leading to an autodigestive and inflammatory process. Evolution into a life-threatening systemic process begins when acinar cell injury leads to expression of endothelial adhesion molecules that further potentiates the inflammatory response. Local microcirculatory failure and ischemia–reperfusion injury ensue, with some patients developing systemic complications such as systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), acute respiratory distress syndrome, and multiorgan failure.

The most common causes of acute pancreatitis are gallstones and excess alcohol ingestion. These account for about 45% and 35% of cases, respectively. Hypertriglyceridemia accounts for up to 5% of cases. Other causes include hypercalcemia, autoimmune diseases, infections, medications, trauma, and complications after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) (Table 26.1). Controversial etiologies include...
pancreatic divisum and sphincter of Oddi dysfunction. Idiopathic pancreatitis occurs in up to 20% of patients, and by definition, the cause is not established by history, physical exam, routine laboratory tests, or imaging.

**History and Physical Exam**
The typical presentation includes a constant (as opposed to waxing and waning) upper abdominal pain located primarily in the epigastric area with radiation to the back. The onset of pain is rapid and typically reaches maximum intensity within 10 to 20 minutes. Pain that lasts only a few hours is unlikely to be pancreatitis. About 90% of patients will also complain of nausea and vomiting.

Mild pancreatitis may involve minimal abdominal tenderness without guarding. In severe disease, abdominal tenderness can be elicited with superficial palpation. Abdominal distention and reduced bowel sounds can occur secondary to ileus. Extravasation of hemorrhagic pancreatic exudate can lead to ecchymosis in one or both flanks (Turner sign) or the periumbilical regions (Cullen sign). Severe disease should be suspected with abnormal vital signs that can include fever, tachycardia, tachypnea, and hypotension. These signs represent a transition from localized retroperitoneal inflammation to one of systemic inflammation. Pleural effusions and mental status changes are also hallmarks of severe disease. The presence of jaundice may suggest an underlying alcoholism or cholelithiasis.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**
Acute pancreatitis is diagnosed when two of the following three criteria are met: (1) characteristic abdominal pain, (2) serum amylase or lipase greater than three times the upper limit of normal, and, if needed, (3) radiologic imaging consistent with the diagnosis. Amylase and lipase are the most frequently used serum-based tests for pancreatitis. The most common source of amylase is not the pancreas, but salivary glands. In contrast, 90% of lipase is made from the pancreas, making it a more specific marker. Amylase rises within 6 to 24 hours of acute pancreatitis and peaks in 48 hours, normalizing in 3 to 7 days. Lipase has a longer half-life than amylase, with levels increasing within 4 to 8 hours, peaking at 24 hours, and falling over 8 to 14 days. The degree of elevation is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of Acute Pancreatitis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obstructive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallstones, tumors, altered ductal anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toxins/drugs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, insecticides, drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metabolic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertriglyceridemia, hypercalcemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infections</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps, Coxsackie, HBV, cytomegalovirus, zoster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vascular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasculitis, emboli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trauma</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine dissection of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iatrogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERCP, surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hereditary</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRSS1, CFTR, SPINK1 mutations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Idiopathic</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 26.1 Causes of Acute Pancreatitis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obstructive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallstones, tumors, altered ductal anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toxins/drugs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, insecticides, drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metabolic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertriglyceridemia, hypercalcemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infections</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps, Coxsackie, HBV, cytomegalovirus, zoster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vascular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasculitis, emboli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trauma</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine dissection of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iatrogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERCP, surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hereditary</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRSS1, CFTR, SPINK1 mutations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Idiopathic</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

not a marker of disease severity, and mild elevation of these serum markers—less than three times the upper limit of normal—is not specific for pancreatitis.

The use of computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) should only be considered when the first two diagnostic criteria are not met and (1) the pretest probability for pancreatitis remains high or (2) there is a high pretest probability for another abdominal process. Otherwise, CT and MRI have no role and may exacerbate renal injury from use of intravenous contrast. Such imaging can be considered 7 days later should the diagnosis remain uncertain or to assess disease severity and identify complications related to severe pancreatitis. Following clinical and laboratory parameters allows adequate initial assessment of disease severity. For patients with an established history of chronic pancreatitis or recent acute pancreatitis, imaging may be considered as part of the initial emergency department assessment for specific treatable complications of pancreatitis including, but not limited to, enlarging pseudocysts, arterial pseudoaneurysms, and/or new common bile stones.

**Differential Diagnosis**

The differential diagnosis includes biliary colic, acute cholecystitis, acute cholangitis, biliary dyskinesia, peptic ulcer disease, dyspepsia, acute mesenteric ischemic, and bowel obstruction. Nongastrointestinal disorders, including acute myocardial infarction, aortic dissection, pulmonary embolism, acute spinal disorders, and renal calculi, should also be considered.

**Complications**

The majority of cases (80% to 90%) of pancreatitis are mild and self-limiting; 10% of cases, however, develop severe disease, defined as the presence of significant fluid collections, infectious complications including abscess formation, infected necrosis, and/or extrapancreatic organ failure. These patients typically exhibit SIRS or sepsis physiology.

Fluid collections around the pancreas affect over half of patients. Most will resolve, but for those that persist, a fibrogenic anti-inflammatory response will lead to containment of these fluid collections, resulting in the formation of a pseudocyst. A pancreatic pseudocyst is a fluid collection that persists beyond 4 weeks. Other complications include infections (arising from pancreatic necrosis or within pseudocysts), thrombosis (splenic, superior mesenteric, and/or portal vein), arterial pseudoaneurysms, and gastrointestinal bleeding. The mortality rate for patients with severe pancreatitis is approximately 30%. Death within the first 2 weeks of illness is usually due to multiorgan failure. Death after 2 weeks typically stems from infection.

**Management Guidelines**

Once a diagnosis of acute pancreatitis is made, a risk stratification calculation should be performed. Clinical risk scoring systems, such as Ranson’s and APACHE II, have traditionally been used. However, both are cumbersome and require 48 hours before a meaningful interpretation can be made. The Bedside Index for Severity in Acute Pancreatitis (BISAP) score is a newer validated scoring system that requires five data points of collection in the emergency room. This includes a blood urea nitrogen (BUN) >25 mg/dL,
impaired mental status, SIRS, age >60, and the presence of a pleural effusion (Table 26.2). The presence of three or more features at admission is associated with a 7- to 12-fold increase in organ failure. Such patients should be managed in the intensive care unit.

Initial treatment is primarily supportive and includes adequate fluid resuscitation, pain control, and bowel rest. Fluid resuscitation is necessary to replace intravascular volume depletion that occurs from third-space losses. The amount of fluid should be calibrated to a urine output of 0.5 mL/kg/h. Initial resuscitation may begin with 1 to 2 L of normal saline within the first several hours of presentation. Early resuscitation appears to be clinically important in reducing downstream complications. In a large retrospective analysis of 434 patients with acute pancreatitis, early compared to late resuscitation was associated with less organ failure at 72 hours (5% vs. 10%), a lower rate of admission to the intensive care unit (6% vs. 17%), and a reduced length of hospital stay (8 vs. 11 days). After early initial bolus treatment of intravenous fluids, maintenance fluids should be titrated (up or down) to urine output. In severe disease, aggressive fluid resuscitation is important to maintain adequate vascular volume in the setting of SIRS or sepsis physiology. Pain can be controlled with intravenous short-acting narcotic pain medications. Nausea and vomiting can be controlled with antiemetic medications as needed.

Acute pancreatitis is a hypercatabolic state, and initiating nutrition at 48 hours from onset is important. In mild disease, patients can be started on an oral diet. For those with severe disease, enteral nutrition by nasojejunal feeding should be started. The current rationale for nasojejunal feeding is that bypassing the duodenum minimizes pancreatic stimulation. Enteral nutrition is superior to parenteral nutrition because it carries a lower risk for infectious complications and mortality.

Documented infections associated with pancreatitis require prompt treatment with carbapenem-based antibiotics to ensure optimal penetration. Antibiotic prophylaxis, however, is not indicated. Endoscopy is indicated for removing common bile duct stones and secondary cholangitis, and cholecystectomy should be planned during hospitalization for those with gallstone-related pancreatitis identified by right upper quadrant ultrasound.

For some patients who have no clinical or laboratory evidence to suggest severe disease (i.e., a BISAP score of 0, no other laboratory abnormalities), discharge from the emergency room can be considered. These patients should also have mild enough pain to be managed with PO pain medications, have the ability to consume liquids without

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 26.2</th>
<th>Risk Stratification Scoring System for Severity of Acute Pancreatitis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong>UN &gt;25 mg/dl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong>mpaired mental status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong>IRS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong>ge &gt;60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong>leural effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Estimated in-hospital mortality by number of positive criteria met: 0 = 0.1%, 1 = 0.5%, 2 = 2.0%, 3 = 5.3%, 4 = 12.7%, 5 = 22.5%. ICU consultation should be considered for anyone with three or more met criteria.
vomiting, and be considered adequately competent and compliant to follow instructions to return to the emergency room for worsening signs and/or symptoms.

**CHRONIC PANCREATITIS**

Chronic pancreatitis is characterized by chronic inflammation and fibrosis with destruction of exocrine and endocrine cells. The incidence is estimated to be 6 cases per 100,000 people, and it affects about 0.04% of the US population. Although relatively uncommon, chronic pancreatitis is associated with a high level of morbidity and use of health care resources. In the United States, the most common cause is chronic alcohol use, accounting for nearly 70% of cases. It should be noted that only approximately 10% of heavy drinkers ever develop pancreatitis, suggesting an underlying genetic predisposition. In up to 20% of patients, the etiology is idiopathic. The remaining 10% are due to obstructive causes, metabolic derangements, autoimmune diseases, and hereditary disorders.

**History and Physical Exam**

The most common complaint is chronic abdominal pain that is often associated with nausea and vomiting. In advanced disease, maldigestion develops from pancreatic exocrine insufficiency and presents as chronic diarrhea with unintentional weight loss. The stool is particularly odorous as most is maldigested fat (also known as steatorrhea). Other late findings include symptoms and signs of diabetes.

Mild abdominal tenderness with palpation may be elicited. An abdominal mass may represent a pseudocyst or splenomegaly. Splenomegaly occurs in the setting of splenic vein thrombosis—the result of chronic (or recurrent acute) pancreatic inflammation in proximity to the splenic vein—and can compromise venous return from the spleen with subsequent splenic engorgement and splenomegaly. As alcohol is the most common precipitating cause of pancreatitis, findings of liver disease including hepatomegaly, jaundice, ascites, and hepatic encephalopathy may also be observed. Because of chronic maldigestion of fat, these patients can be fat-soluble vitamin deficient (vitamins A, D, E, and K), and this can lead to related examination findings including peripheral neuropathy, fatigue, and signs of easy bruising and bleeding.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

Diagnosis begins with an assessment of clinical symptoms, signs, and risk factors for chronic pancreatitis. CT can be used for diagnosing structural features associated with advanced disease including calcifications, atrophy, pancreatic duct dilation, and/or strictures. CT may also show common complications including pseudocysts, splenic vein thromboses, and inflammatory masses. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography may be used to evaluate the pancreatic and biliary ducts without requiring ERCP. Endoscopic ultrasound currently offers the most sensitive imaging for diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. Functional diagnostic tests for chronic pancreatitis include stool elastase, 72-hour fecal fat, and secretin stimulation test.

**Differential Diagnosis**

The differential diagnosis for chronic pancreatitis includes gastritis, dyspepsia, small bowel bacterial overgrowth, intestinal obstruction, neoplasms, mesenteric ischemia,
biliary obstruction, celiac disease, inflammatory bowel disease, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, and functional gut disorders such as irritable bowel syndrome.

**Complications**

Chronic pancreatitis is associated with a nearly fourfold increase in standardized mortality rate, which stems mostly from continued alcohol and tobacco abuse. Common complications include pseudocysts, gastrointestinal bleeding, bile duct obstruction, duodenal obstruction, and pancreatic fistula formation.

**Management Guidelines**

Management of suspected chronic pancreatitis with increased abdominal pain should include prompt and adequate analgesia (often requiring narcotic pain medications) and assessment of hydration and nutrition status. Evaluation of acute complications of chronic pancreatitis and nonpancreatic abdominal emergencies should also occur though with judicious use of imaging. When imaging suggests a main duct stricture, pancreatic ductal stones, and/or pseudocysts, an endoscopic intervention may be appropriate. During evaluation, patients should be counseled on smoking and alcohol cessation when applicable. Management of chronic pain and nutritional deficiencies from long-standing pancreatitis is primarily an outpatient issue, and a referral to gastroenterology is indicated.

**CONCLUSION**

Pancreatitis is a common presenting illness in the emergency department. Initial management centers on early aggressive fluid resuscitation, pain control, and bowel rest. All patients should be risk-stratified using a validated scoring system such as the BISAP to help direct appropriate disposition, including intensive care services. Advanced imaging, although generally not required, should be used when there is diagnostic uncertainty or when there is concern for the presence of associated complications including pseudocysts, arterial pseudoaneurysms, or common bile stones.

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognosis</th>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wu et al., Gut. 2008</td>
<td>Data collected from between 17,982 and 18,256 cases of acute pancreatitis for the purpose of developing and validating a new clinical scoring system for prediction of in-hospital mortality</td>
<td>BISAP was derived from five variables identified for prediction of in-hospital mortality: BUN &gt;25 mg/dL, impaired mental status, SIRS, age &gt;60, and presence of pleural effusion. BISAP was validated against APACHE II with BISAP AUC 0.82 (95% CI 0.79–0.84) vs. APACHE II AUC of 0.83 (95% CI 0.80–0.85)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papachristou et al., Am J Gastroenterol. 2010</td>
<td>Comparison of BISAP, Ranson’s, APACHE II, and CTSI scores in 185 patients with acute pancreatitis</td>
<td>The prognostic accuracy of BISAP is similar to those of the other scoring systems. Predictive accuracy rates as measured by AUCs for BISAP, Ranson’s, APACHE II, and CTSI in predicting SAP were 0.81 (CI 0.74–0.87), 0.94 (CI 0.89–0.97), 0.76 (CI 0.71–0.84), and 0.84 (CI 0.76–0.89), respectively</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 26  Pancreatitis  355

REFERENCES


Acute leukemia is a neoplasm of the stem cell that results in rapid accumulation of immature myeloid or lymphoid precursors (functionally inert blasts) in the bone marrow. This accumulation—termed clonal proliferation—takes up space necessary for normal hematopoiesis and causes secondary cytopenias. Leukemia affects different cell lineages in hematopoietic tissues, including erythrocytes, lymphocytes, granulocytes, and megakaryocytes. Individual leukemic cells do not divide more rapidly than do normal cells; however, at any given moment, a larger proportion of leukemic cells are dividing. Chemotherapy exploits this increase in mitotic activity. When acute leukemia is left untreated, the accumulation of $10^{12}$ cells is fatal.

The World Health Organization of Tumors of Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues defines leukemia as the presence of >20% blasts in the bone marrow or peripheral blood. Leukemia is subdivided by lineage into myeloid and lymphoid disease. Acute myeloid leukemia (AML) is further subdivided into seven subgroups based on cytology, cytogenetics, and molecular analysis. In some instances, a diagnosis of AML is made regardless of the percentage of bone marrow blasts—specifically, in patients with translocations between chromosome 8 and 21 or 15 and 17, inversions in chromosome 16, or myeloid sarcomas. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) is divided into three major subgroups based on differences in treatment and prognosis: (1) precursor B- or T-cell ALL, with further subdivision made based on recurring molecular–cytogenetic abnormalities; (2) Burkitt leukemia/lymphoma; and (3) biphenotypic acute leukemia. Approximately 90% of leukemia is of myeloid origin, with 10% of lymphoid origin.

The annual incidence of AML is 3.5 per 100,000; an estimated 13,780 patients were diagnosed in the United States in 2012. AML incidence increases with age, with a median age at diagnosis of 67 according to the National Cancer Institute’s Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results data. If untreated, AML is fatal and confers an average overall survival of <20 weeks from time of diagnosis. Six thousand and fifty total adult and pediatric cases of ALL were reported in the United States in 2012. ALL is five times more likely to occur in the pediatric population than in the adult population; it represents 30% of all childhood neoplasms, with the average age at diagnosis of 13 years. With improved treatment strategies, the 5-year overall cure rate for ALL in the pediatric population is over 80%; the lower adult cure rate of 30% to 40% is largely due to age-related adverse molecular features and resistance to therapy.
RISK FACTORS

Most cases of acute leukemia are idiopathic. Known risks include exposure to cytotoxic chemotherapy (particularly topoisomerase II inhibitors and alkylating agents), pesticides, benzene, or radiation. Genetic disorders, including trisomy 21 and inherited bone marrow failure syndromes, have also been associated with AML.

In AML, specific prognostic features guide patient survival prediction. These include, but are not limited to, advanced age; previous exposure to chemotherapy; cytogenetic features that stratify disease prognosis into favorable, intermediate, and poor; and evolution of a patient’s AML from a previous myelodysplasia or myeloproliferative neoplasms. Molecular screening investigations can further delineate prognosis, with poor outcomes conferred by the presence of the FMS-like tyrosine kinase 3 (FLT-3) and c-kit mutation, and favorable outcomes conferred by nucleophosmin-1 and CEBPA mutations. In ALL, as well, several prognostic factors—including age, leukocyte count, and molecular genotypes such as BCR-ABL1 positivity—guide selection of treatment.

PATIENT HISTORY

Patient symptoms vary according to clinical stage of acute leukemia. Symptoms on initial presentation are due to increased tumor cell mass, factors released by leukemic cells, pancytopenia, and immunologic reactions. Later symptoms are usually secondary to either the sequelae of pancytopenia or complications of chemotherapy. Table 27.1 reviews pertinent clinical history and physical exam findings of patients on their initial presentation.

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

The following studies are recommended for any patient in whom acute leukemia is suspected:

- CBC with peripheral blood film, ideally read by an experienced hematologist or pathologist. In cases of elevated blast counts, a manual platelet count should be made, as automated cell counters may erroneously count fragments of blast cells as platelets.
- Coagulation studies: PT, PTT, fibrinogen, D-dimer. Consider fibrinogen assays for the bleeding patient.
- Complete biochemical profile to assess for tumor lysis syndrome (TLS) (electrolytes, creatinine, calcium, magnesium, phosphate, uric acid, LDH).
- Liver enzymes and liver function tests.
- Viral serologies: HSV, VZV, CMV, hepatitis B and C.
- Screening for syphilis.
- In the case of fever: blood cultures, urine cultures, imaging guided by physical exam, and a complete evaluation of oral hygiene, as the mouth is a common site of bacterial seeding.
- In the case of significant CNS signs or symptoms: CT head or MRI imaging to rule out intracerebral hemorrhage, leptomeningeal disease, or extramedullary disease.
Hematology should be consulted and will typically coordinate the following studies:

- CT chest to rule out occult fungal infection
- Bone marrow aspirate and biopsy
- Cardiac function test: if anthracyclines are to be administered, MUGA nuclear imaging is preferred over echocardiography because of cardiotoxicity risk
- Lumbar puncture: provided the patient is not coagulopathic and neuroimaging is normal
- HLA typing of the patient and siblings if considering a transplant

Acute leukemia is diagnosed when the peripheral blood or bone marrow contains >20% blasts. Typically, a bone marrow aspirate and biopsy are performed to distinguish AML from ALL and high-grade myelodysplasia. Alternative diagnoses to consider in the setting of severe pancytopenia include aplastic anemia, severe $B_{12}$ deficiency, or drug-induced aplasia. In patients with blasts on peripheral blood film, myeloproliferative neoplasms, including myelofibrosis and chronic myelogenous leukemia, should also be considered.

**TABLE 27.1** Pertinent Findings on Patient History and Physical Exam with First Presentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Etiology</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Mass</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity syndrome (retinopathy, CNS symptoms, hyposia, priapism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gingival hypertrophy (prominent in monocytic AML)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatosplenomegaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arthralgias (chief complaint in 14% of pediatric leukemias)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tender sternum or long bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leukemia cutis (prominent in monocytic AML)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chloroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypermetabolism leading to fevers, sweats, weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor lysis syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurologic complaints (CNS involvement is rare; &lt;3% of cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Facticious laboratory results from increased metabolism of leukemic cells with: low PaO₂, increased K⁺, and hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Testicular recurrence of ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Factors released by leukemic cells

- APL granules induce DIC
- Muramidase causes increased creatinine and hypokalemia

Pancytopenia

- Anemia
  - Pallor, fatigue
  - With hemoglobin <5 g/dL, orbital bruits and retinal hemorrhage

- Neutropenia
  - Patients with ANC < 500/μL are predisposed to infections
    - Line infections
    - Typhlitis
    - Oral mucositis, candidiasis, herpes

- Thrombocytopenia
  - Bleeding with platelets <10,000/μL—worse if febrile or on antiplatelet drugs
  - Petechiae, mucocutaneous bleeding (epistaxis, gingival bleeding, menorrhagia)
  - Periosteal bleeding is a presenting cause in the pediatric population

Immunologic

- TRALI (transfusion-related associated lung injury)
- TA-GvHD (transfusion-associated graft versus host disease)

EMERGENCIES IN ACUTE LEUKEMIA

Hyperleukocytosis

Hyperleukocytosis is a medical emergency that typically occurs when the blast count exceeds >100,000/μL. It is seen in 5% to 18% of acute leukemia, predominantly in disease of monocytic origin. Increased blood viscosity in hyperleukocytosis is due to the rigidity of the myeloblast membrane and an up-regulation of blast adhesion molecules; this results in blasts occluding circulatory flow, with subsequent tissue hypoxia, tissue infiltration, and secondary hemorrhage. Hyperviscosity does not occur with similar elevations of neutrophils (as seen in severe infections) or lymphocytes (as seen in chronic lymphocytic leukemia). Presenting symptoms of hyperleukocytosis are variable and include respiratory distress and hypoxia, as well as seizure, confusion, abdominal pain, angina, priapism, and visual complaints. Funduscropy should be performed to rule out papilledema, dilated vessels, or hemorrhage. In circumstances of respiratory decline, it is important to consider alternative explanations, including pneumonia, volume overload, or transfusion complications, including transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI). Pulse oximetry provides a more reliable measure of oxygen saturation for the hypoxic patient than does PaO₂, which can be misleadingly low because of blast consumption of oxygen in the collection medium. If untreated, hyperleukocytosis confers a mortality of 20%; its most serious complications are pulmonary failure and intracerebral hemorrhage.

Treatment of symptomatic hyperleukocytosis (aka leukostasis) varies by institution; a standard approach includes the prompt initiation of hydroxyurea for cytoreduction, with 2 to 5 g/day administered in divided doses. The role of leukapheresis is controversial; most studies that support its impact on survival are retrospective in design. Finally, caution should be used in transfusing patients with hyperleukocytosis because of the risk of worsening blood viscosity and aggravating symptoms.

Anemia and Transfusions

No clinical trials have evaluated a specific transfusion trigger in patients with acute leukemia. In critically ill patients without cardiac disease, the TRICC trial demonstrated that a restrictive transfusion strategy in the ICU (maintaining hemoglobin values between 7 and 9 g/dL) resulted in a reduced mortality rate at 30 days. For the leukemic patient, this approach has unclear benefit; thus, the threshold for transfusion is often practice dependent, with most providers transfusing for hemoglobin levels below 8 g/dL or as warranted given clinical symptoms. Caution must be exercised when transfusing patients with high blast counts in order to avoid inciting hyperviscosity. There is no role for erythropoietin-stimulating agents.

All transfused blood products should be irradiated and leukocyte depleted to minimize risk of transfusion-associated graft versus host disease (TA-GvHD). If a patient’s cytomegalovirus (CMV) status is unknown, exclusively CMV-negative blood products should be used. TA-GvHD is seen in immunocompromised hosts, particularly those undergoing AML therapy, post–allogeneic stem cell transplantation, or post–purine analogue therapy. One to four weeks post-transfusion patients with TA-GvHD can present with severe cytopenias and with associated fever, hepatitis, rash, and/or diarrhea. A bone marrow biopsy will reveal complete bone marrow aplasia. No treatment is effective, and the mortality rate of TA-GvHD exceeds 95%; it is therefore imperative to provide these patients with blood products that are leukoreduced and irradiated.
Coagulopathy and Thrombocytopenia
All patients with leukemia should be transfused to maintain a platelet count of >10,000/μL in cases of nonactive bleeding or >50,000/μL in cases of active bleeding. All coagulopathic derangements should be promptly reversed with frozen plasma or cryoprecipitate. Note that patients with APL, acute monocytic, or myelomonocytic leukemias are at highest risk of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC); in these populations, coagulation screening should be performed at least twice daily to ensure proper replacement of platelets, coagulation factors, and fibrinogen. As with red blood cell support, all products should be irradiated and CMV negative if a patient’s CMV status is unknown.

Acute Promyelocytic Leukemia
APL is a subset of AML defined by the translocation of the retinoic acid receptor t(15;17); “PML;RAR-alpha” in 95% of patients. APL constitutes 10% of AML cases in the United States with most patients being diagnosed between ages 30 and 40. APL has an overall cure rate of 80% to 90%. Unlike other leukemias, APL poses an increased risk of fatal hemorrhage from DIC or primary hyperfibrinolysis and has a pretreatment mortality rate reported to be as high as 10% to 17%. Because of this, any patient suspected of having leukemia (i.e., blasts reported on their CBC differential) and a concurrent unexplained coagulopathy should be evaluated promptly for APL. A pathologist or hematologist should assess blast morphology; if APL is confirmed, treatment with all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA), which allows for differentiation of APL promyelocytes and restoration of coagulation, should begin immediately. Doses in children may be modified because of the potential risk of pseudotumor cerebri. Concurrent anthracycline chemotherapy is typically reserved for the patient with high-risk disease (i.e., WBC > 10,000/μL) to minimize the risk of leukocytosis, differentiation syndrome (previously ATRA syndrome), and provocation of coagulopathy—all potential risks when ATRA is administered alone. Because of the risk of fatal coagulopathy and hyperfibrinolysis, the platelet count, PT, PTT, and fibrinogen should be closely monitored. There are scant data on the optimal trigger for platelet and plasma product infusion, but consensus opinion targets a platelet count of 30,000 to 50,000/μL and a fibrinogen level of >150 mg/dL. Coagulopathy of APL can last for up to 20 days despite ATRA therapy. Placement of a central venous catheter, or invasive procedures such as lumbar punctures, should be avoided until the coagulopathy has been corrected. The hypogranular variant, a subset of APL, is conversely associated with thrombosis in up to 5% of patients and is typically managed with intravenous heparin and replacement of factor product as needed.

Tumor Lysis Syndrome
TLS occurs secondary to rapid cell death, as cellular products are excreted into the circulation. This can be observed at the time of leukemia diagnosis or after initiation of chemotherapy. TLS manifests biochemically either as increased uric acid that may result in concomitant renal failure or as marked hyperphosphatemia that leads to hypocalcemia and its attendant complications. Patients at highest risk of TLS include those with a high tumor burden, preexisting renal failure, chemotherapy-sensitive tumors with rapid lysis, and inadequate TLS prophylaxis (i.e., allopurinol). Uncontrolled TLS places patients at risk of renal failure, cardiac dysrhythmias, seizure, and death.
TLS-Associated Uric Acid Nephropathy

Treatment of TLS focuses on intravenous hydration to attain a urine output of 80 to 100 mL/m². Patients often require more than 4 L of daily intravenous fluid support to achieve this goal. Alkalization of the urine is no longer a routine treatment, as it has the potential to cause calcium phosphate or xanthine precipitation in renal tubules. Reduction in uric acid is typically achieved with renal-dosed allopurinol, a xanthine oxidase inhibitor, which generally lowers uric acid within 1 to 3 days. Rasburicase, a recombinant version of urate oxidase, has proven effective in cases of renal failure or allopurinol intolerance. Allopurinol affects only further production of uric acid; rasburicase, by contrast, can convert existing uric acid to allantoin, which is 5 to 10 times more soluble than is uric acid. The standard rasburicase dose is 0.2 mg/kg IV infusion over 30 minutes. The use of rasburicase is contraindicated in patients with G6PD deficiency because of the increased risk of oxidative hemolysis and methemoglobinemia.

TLS-Associated Metabolic Derangements

Hyperphosphatemia results in a secondary hypocalcemia. Because calcium phosphate crystals can precipitate in the renal parenchyma and lead to renal failure, calcium correction should occur only in the context of clinically severe hypocalcemia (e.g., tetany, seizures) or after correction of hyperphosphatemia. If hypercalcemia is seen in the context of acute leukemia, the diagnoses of plasma cell leukemia or adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma should be considered as alternate explanations.

Hyperkalemia should be monitored closely in the first 24 to 48 hours after initiation of chemotherapy (including hydroxyurea), when the risk of TLS is greatest. Potassium levels, however, should be interpreted with caution. Monocytic leukemias may present with significant hypokalemia due to renal tubular damage from high levels of muramidase (the lysozyme released by monoblasts), with subsequent renal potassium wasting. In addition, measurement of potassium in samples can be factitious: when blast counts are significantly high, metabolically active blasts up-take residual potassium from the serum if a blood specimen is left standing too long, resulting in pseudohypokalemia. Conversely, pseudohyperkalemia may be caused by in vitro blast lysis in the sample. Treatment of hyperkalemia should, therefore, be pursued only after obtaining a heparinized—and more truly diagnostic—plasma potassium level.

Infection

Because chemotherapy destroys dividing cells, it disproportionately affects those cells with increased mitotic potential—in the bone marrow, oral cavity, GI endothelium, nails, and hair. Chemotherapy patients thus carry a high risk of oral mucositis and ulcers, as well as enteric ulcers, resulting in multiple potential portals of entry for gram-negative bacteria.

In patients with febrile neutropenia, treatment should include broad-spectrum antibiotics including coverage for Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antifungal therapy is recommended in the event of persistent fevers despite 4 to 7 days of antibiotic coverage or in the event of persistent neutropenia. Treatment should continue throughout the duration of neutropenia until the ANC exceeds 500 cells/mm³. The use of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor varies by institution; most literature specific to AML
shows no impact or mixed results on duration of neutropenia, infection, antibiotic usage, hospitalization, or survival.\textsuperscript{47,48}

The selection of antiviral, antifungal, and antibiotic prophylaxis is dependent on local levels of invasive fungal infections and is often institution specific. The Infectious Disease Society of America recommends acyclovir prophylaxis for HSV seropositive patients.\textsuperscript{46} Posaconazole has been shown to significantly reduce fungal infections when compared to fluconazole and is increasingly being used in the leukemia population.\textsuperscript{49}

**Neutropenic Colitis/Typhlitis**

Neutropenic colitis—termed typhlitis when only the ileocecal region is involved—typically occurs 10 to 14 days after initiation of chemotherapy and presents with neutropenia, right lower quadrant pain, and fever.\textsuperscript{50} Patients may also have nausea, vomiting, and watery or bloody diarrhea. The pathogenesis of neutropenic colitis is likely related to chemotherapy-induced mucosal injury with bowel wall edema, ulceration, and secondary intestinal microbial infiltration. The cecum is particularly vulnerable because of its low blood supply. Patients will typically demonstrate gram-negative bacteremia; up to 15% of patients will have fungus isolated in blood or bowel specimens.\textsuperscript{51} Along with testing and empirical treatment for \emph{Clostridium difficile}, patients must undergo immediate CT imaging. Bowel wall thickening of $>4$ mm on imaging is consistent with the diagnosis.\textsuperscript{52} Despite aggressive treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics, bowel rest, volume resuscitation, and surgical consultation, the mortality rate of typhlitis is as high as 30% to 50%.\textsuperscript{53}

**Differentiation Syndrome of APL**

Differentiation syndrome occurs in 15% to 25% of patients receiving ATRA or arsenic trioxide (ATO) and can occur between 2 and 47 days after exposure to ATRA or ATO.\textsuperscript{54,55} Patients will present with cough, fever, or dyspnea and often with a white blood cell count of $>10,000/\mu$L. This cardiopulmonary syndrome is often mistaken for pulmonary edema or pneumonia. Patients must be monitored closely for hypoxia, pulmonary infiltrates, and pleural or pericardial effusions. In cases of APL with a WBC $>10,000/\mu$L, or suspicion for differentiation syndrome, patients should receive dexamethasone 10 mg bid for 3 to 5 days with a taper over 2 weeks.\textsuperscript{56} Treatment should commence immediately, rather than after abnormalities appear on chest radiograph. If differentiation syndrome is suspected, ATRA and/or ATO should be discontinued and not resumed until resolution of all signs and symptoms; steroid therapy should be given concurrently.\textsuperscript{37}

**Cytoreductive Therapy in AML and ALL**

AML treatment is divided into two stages: induction chemotherapy to induce a remission and subsequent consolidation (postremission) therapy. The goal of therapy is to achieve a complete response (CR)—defined as having $<5\%$ of blasts in a repeat bone marrow aspirate with a count of 200 nucleated cells. To date, the cure rates for AML excluding APL are low; only 40% of young adults and 10% of elderly patients will be cured.\textsuperscript{57} Treatment varies by institution; in patients who are transplant eligible (age $<60$ with good performance status), every effort should be made to enroll the patient into a clinical trial.
Induction chemotherapy has not changed considerably for over 30 years: it consists of anthracyclines such as daunorubicin (60 to 90 mg/m² × 3 days) and cytarabine (100 to 200 mg/m² continuous infusion × 7 days),\textsuperscript{56} known as the “3+7” strategy. Studies have shown that varying the doses of chemotherapy can improve CR rates but can also precipitate considerable toxicity. Patients who achieve remission proceed to consolidation (postremission therapy), typically with high-dose cytarabine. Treatment regimens, including subsequent hematopoietic stem cell transplant, are dependent on prognostic factors and type of leukemia.

Treatment of ALL includes multiagent chemotherapies divided into induction, consolidation, and maintenance phases of treatment, with all patients receiving CNS prophylaxis. Treatment will always include anthracyclines, vincristine, L-asparaginase, cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, cytarabine, mercaptopurine, and corticosteroids, all of which can result in significant toxicity. Imatinib is added in those patients who are Philadelphia chromosome positive. Due to their significant exposure to steroids, patients must also receive prophylaxis for \textit{Pneumocystis jiroveci} and are often placed on viral and fungal prophylaxis as well. Impressively, with this regimen, most children with ALL included in clinical trials have 5-year survival rates that approach 85%; in adults, only a 30% 5-year survival rate is achieved.\textsuperscript{57} Table 27.2 highlights the major toxicities associated with the standard chemotherapies used for AML, APL, and ALL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemotherapy</th>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Onset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Daunorubicin/idarubicin</td>
<td>Myelosuppression (risk of mucositis, colitis)</td>
<td>Onset: 7 d; nadir: 10–14 d; recovery: 21–28 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiotoxicity</td>
<td>Delayed (dose related); weeks to years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alopecia</td>
<td>2–3 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-dose cytarabine</td>
<td>Myelosuppression (risk of mucositis, colitis)</td>
<td>Onset: 7 d; nadir 10–14 d; recovery: 21–28 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iritis (must ensure steroid eye drops provided to each eye q4h until 24 h after last dose)</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytarabine Syndrome (flu, rash, myalgia, bone pain)</td>
<td>6–12 h post iv infusion (symptom resolution in 24 h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebellar toxicity (nystagmus, dysmetria, gait disturbance); neuroimaging will be normal</td>
<td>Days 3 to 8 posttherapy (symptoms may take up to 10 d to resolve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATRA (all-trans retinoic acid)</td>
<td>Differentiation syndrome Hyperleukocytosis</td>
<td>2–49 d onset Immediate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO</td>
<td>Differentiation syndrome</td>
<td>2–49 d onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vincristine</td>
<td>Jaw pain</td>
<td>Days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Constipation/paralytic ileus, neuropathy</td>
<td>Days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Asparaginase</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity reactions</td>
<td>Immediate days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pancreatitis</td>
<td>days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thrombosis</td>
<td>days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allopurinol</td>
<td>Maculopapular rash to vasculitis</td>
<td>Immediate/early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONCLUSION

Acute leukemia is a medical emergency. It should be suspected in any patient who presents with blasts on white cell differential or peripheral blood film or with undiagnosed pancytopenia. Patients should be referred promptly to the hematology service and screened for life-threatening complications (see Table 27.1). In patients with high blast counts (>100,000 μL) or symptoms of hyperleukostasis, a monitored setting should be considered, as these cases require aggressive cytoreduction with chemotherapy. Electrolytes must be also monitored with any leukemic diagnosis to rule out TLS and secondary renal failure. Coagulopathies should be aggressively reversed to avoid secondary hemorrhage, and platelet counts >10,000/μL should be maintained. Transfused blood products should be irradiated and, if possible, CMV negative. It should be emphasized that patients with acute leukemia are immunocompromised, and a full pan-culture with initiation of broad-spectrum antibiotics must be started in the event of fever or infection.

REFERENCES

Sickle Cell Disease

Richard Ward

BACKGROUND

Sickle cell disease (SCD) is one of the most common genetic disorders in North America, affecting an estimated 70,000 individuals. It results from a point mutation (valine for glutamate) at codon 6 of the beta-globin gene on chromosome 11. The most common genotype, HbSS (SCD-SS, sickle cell anemia), is due to mutation of both genes leading to the production of sickle hemoglobin (HbS) and no normal adult hemoglobin (HbA). HbSC and HbS/beta-thalassemia are two other commonly encountered genotypes of SCD.

Under physiologic stress, the HbS undergoes conformational change, creates polymers in the red blood cell (RBC), and deforms the cell to a sickle shape. This change has two consequences. First, it results in hemolysis of the RBC, which causes anemia and the release of free Hb into the circulation; this, in turn, produces a vasculopathy by triggering an abnormal increase in nitric oxide consumption and, by modulating arginine pathways, nitric oxide underproduction. Second, it results in vasoocclusion of microcirculatory organ beds and an ischemic–reperfusion pattern of injury. It is this second consequence that produces bony pain, the most common clinical presentation of SCD.

SCD is a lifelong, multisystem disorder with variable and intermittent severity. Many adult patients with SCD are not registered in a comprehensive care center and are therefore at risk of developing significant end-organ dysfunction over time. This inadequate access to care is made worse by the fact that hydroxyurea, the only U.S. FDA-approved disease-modifying treatment, is underutilized.

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

An acute sickle cell vasoocclusive episode or “crisis” (VOC) is a frequent complication of SCD and the most common reason these patients present to the emergency department (ED). Patients typically present with limb, back, or chest pain caused by vasoocclusion in the bone marrow and resultant severe generalized bony pain.

Prompt clinical assessment and provision of rapid, adequate, and sustained analgesia are key to successful treatment. Clinical assessment should focus on the location of pain, severity of pain (using an objective pain scale such as the visual analogue scale), and duration of pain; precipitating factors (extremes of temperature, dehydration, infection,
psychological distress, menstruation in females, excessive exercise); and home analgesic use. A systems-based patient history and physical exam should work to identify additional complications—related to SCD or to other general medical/surgical conditions—that may require specific treatment. Complications commonly associated with VOCs include infection (particularly respiratory tract), stroke, cholecystitis, sequestration syndrome (presenting with organomegaly), and, in males, priapism.

A detailed medical history can help identify SCD patients with severe sickle cell phenotype and should include the use of hydroxyurea, a history of multiple transfusions, previous exchange transfusion, prior acute chest syndrome (ACS), or intensive care unit admission. A thorough transfusion history will also assist the blood bank in sourcing safe units of blood, when required.

Laboratory and imaging testing rarely provide much assistance in the management algorithm of an uncomplicated VOC, with the exception of a complete blood count and reticulocyte count. The reticulocyte count is helpful in determining whether an unexpectedly severe anemia is due to marrow aplasia (usually viral in etiology) or simply brisk hemolysis. There is no indication for chest radiograph (CXR) in the absence of hypoxia or respiratory symptoms and signs. Routine biochemistry will usually confirm the hemolytic process and normal renal function. All SCD patients presenting with a fever, even if they otherwise appear well, should undergo a full septic screen, as they are predisposed to infection as a result of functional asplenia. In patients with new and unexplained hypoxia and an unremarkable CXR, a diagnosis of pulmonary embolism should be considered.

**MANAGEMENT OF AN UNCOMPLICATED PAIN EPISODE**

The mainstay of the management of an acute, uncomplicated VOC is supportive care, including analgesia, hydration, and oxygenation.

**Analgesia**

Rapid administration of adequate analgesia optimizes chances for patient discharge. Analgesia should be initiated within 30 minutes of presentation, with adequate pain control achieved ideally within 60 minutes. Pain should be reassessed, and vital signs checked, on a frequent basis until pain is controlled. Patients with SCD usually have had previous exposure to opiate analgesia and often require higher doses of opiates to achieve analgesia when compared to opiate-naive patients. Despite a paucity of supporting clinical trials, multimodal analgesia is recommended, including combination of a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) and acetaminophen with an opiate. Consultation with a pain service may be helpful for patients with difficult-to-control pain (i.e., pain that cannot be controlled without inducing significant side effects or excessive sedation).

The route and formulation of analgesia depend on local institutional policies; there is little high-quality clinical trial evidence to guide specific recommendations. Analgesics are often administered intravenously, but this can be challenging in patients with poor venous access, and subcutaneous or oral administration can be equally effective. Intramuscular administration is not recommended due to pain at the injection site and unpredictable absorption. Both morphine sulfate and hydromorphone are available for
intravenous and subcutaneous administration, as well as in both immediate-acting and slow-release oral liquid and tablet formulations. Using these agents in a combination of intravenous and oral administration allows for background analgesia with breakthrough dosing, permits patients to be discharged on a weaning dose of opiates, and removes the need to switch class of agent. If switching from one opiate to another is unavoidable, care should be taken to ensure bioequivalent dosing.

Certain analgesics have specific risks. Morphine sulfate has been weakly associated with an increased risk of developing ACS, and oxycodone has been associated with an increased risk of opiate dependency. Meperidine is contraindicated due to cerebral agitation and risk of seizure. Adjunct laxatives and an antihistamine should be prescribed as required. Acute painful episodes in pregnancy should be managed as at other times but with close monitoring of fetal movements and avoidance of NSAIDs, especially in the first trimester and after 32 weeks’ gestation.

**Fluid Replacement**

Reduced renal tubular concentrating ability is common in patients with SCD and predisposes to dehydration. Continued fluid loss without adequate replacement causes a reduction in plasma volume with an increased blood viscosity and aggravation of the sickling process. However, the concurrent use of opiates for pain control can increase vascular leak and predisposes SCD patients to pulmonary edema. The goal of hydration should, therefore, be to replace estimated deficits and provide adequate maintenance while avoiding excessive hydration. Oral hydration, if tolerated, is preferred.

**Other Measures**

Patients often feel symptomatic benefit from supplemental oxygen, even when pulse oximetry is normal. Since SCD is a prothrombotic disorder, once a patient is admitted to the hospital, or in cases of extended ED stay, pharmacologic venous thromboembolism prophylaxis should be instituted. In the absence of infection, current hydroxyurea treatment should not be withheld during a pain episode. Its efficacy in the treatment of VOC is thought to be due to its ability to increase fetal hemoglobin and reduce neutrophil and platelet activation.

Limited data have shown dexamethasone therapy to be associated with reduced hospital length of stay and trends toward improvement in oxygen and opiate use; however, because of a potential to cause rebound pain, its use is currently not recommended. Various investigational and novel therapies—such as tinzaparin, arginine, and inhaled nitric oxide—have been trialed in the setting of VOC, but there are insufficient supporting data at this time to formally recommend their use or their place in a treatment algorithm (see literature summary table for details of recent trials). These therapies remain an area of active research in SCD.

Common infectious organisms in SCD include *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Salmonella* spp., while atypical organisms such as *Mycoplasma*, *Chlamydia*, and *Legionella* spp. are common in patients with ACS. If there are signs of a lower respiratory tract infection, a macrolide antibiotic should be added to a broad-spectrum, third-generation cephalosporin. In suspected sepsis, hydroxyurea and iron chelation therapy should be avoided due to the risk of cytopenia and promoting growth of siderophore organisms, respectively. Transfusion therapy carries specific risks in patients...
with SCD, and in the great majority of cases, there is no role for transfusion therapy in management of uncomplicated acute pain.

Patients may be discharged from the ED if their pain can be adequately controlled with oral analgesia. Due to the complex interrelationship between pain and psychosocial stressors in patients with SCD, a social work consultation can be very useful in coordinating patient disposition.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF AN UNCOMPPLICATED PAIN EPISODE

Patients presenting with features other than simple bone pain should be referred to internal medicine and/or hematology.

Acute Chest Syndrome

ACS is an acute illness characterized by fever (>38.5°C), respiratory symptoms, and new pulmonary infiltrates on CXR. Precipitants are commonly infection, postoperative atelectasis, and pulmonary fat emboli (a known complication of marrow infarction in patients with SCD). ACS is the second most common cause of hospitalization in SCD and carries a mortality of approximately 5%. Previous pulmonary events, including prior ACS, are risk factors. The pain of ACS is characterized by a “T-shirt” distribution; its severity will usually cause splinting of the diaphragm, further impairing oxygenation and resulting in progressive hypoxia. Signs of lung consolidation may varyingly accompany tachycardia and tachypnea; cough is a late symptom.

If ACS is suspected, the following laboratory tests should be ordered in addition to routine investigations and chest radiography: RBC transfusion crossmatch, hemoglobin electrophoresis, arterial blood gas, pan-culture, and an atypical organism infectious disease serology screen. Specific management of ACS should incorporate inspired O₂ to maintain oxygen saturations >96%, bronchodilators if there is history of obstructive/reversible airways disease or in the presence of bronchospasm or wheeze, antimicrobials, incentive spirometry, and blood transfusion. Early transfusion is appropriate and can prevent the need for ventilator support. The purpose of transfusion is to enhance oxygen-carrying capacity, improve tissue oxygen delivery, and reduce HbS concentration and RBC sickling, all of which can together help prevent progression to acute respiratory failure. Transfusion commonly results in impressive improvement within hours. Patients presenting with mild or moderate ACS, or severe anemia, can be managed with a simple transfusion, aiming for a maximum Hb level of no more than 10 g/dL. For severe ACS, or in the presence of rapid or significant clinical deterioration, worsening chest radiography, a pO₂ < 70 mm Hg, or baseline Hb > 9 g/dL that precludes use of simple transfusion due to risk of hyperviscosity, consensus opinion is that an exchange transfusion is indicated. Under these circumstances, critical care support is advised. A randomized control trial on the use of exchange transfusion in this setting is still needed to provide more definitive evidence-based guidelines. To ensure that the most appropriate units of blood are selected (given the prevalence of alloimmunization in patients with SCD who have received multiple transfusions), it is imperative that the patient’s diagnosis of SCD be communicated to the blood bank with any transfusion request.
Additional information may be available if the patient is carrying an antibody warning card documenting clinically significant antibodies whose titers have fallen below currently detectable levels.

**Acute Stroke**
Ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke is a common complication of SCD, and the diagnosis should be confirmed with a CT or MRI of the brain. The management of acute stroke in patients with SCD should include most aspects of care provided for non-SCD patients, including aggressive control of blood pressure, administration of antiplatelet therapy, and deep venous thrombosis (DVT) prophylaxis. Thrombolysis, however, is generally not used due to the increased risk of intracerebral hemorrhage. SCD patients with stroke should also undergo immediate exchange transfusion. The goal of exchange transfusion support is to increase the HbA to 70% while keeping total Hb < 11 g/dL.

**Gallbladder Disease**
Chronic hemolysis with accelerated bilirubin turnover leads to a high incidence of pigment gallstones. Certain antimicrobials, such as ceftriaxone, are also known to promote biliary sludge formation and should be used with caution in patients with SCD. Management of acute cholecystitis in SCD patients is the same as for the general population.

**Acute Sequestration**
Hepatic sequestration presents as a rapidly enlarging liver with a significant drop in hemoglobin, accompanied by reticulocytosis. Exchange transfusion may be required, and simple transfusion should be performed judiciously as it carries a risk of hyperviscosity due to desequestering of the RBCs when the episode resolves. Splenic sequestration is less common in adults.

**Priapism**
Priapism—a sustained, painful, and unwanted erection of the penis—may go unrecognized by patients as a complication of SCD; they may be reluctant to discuss it and/or may present late to ED. Priapism is caused by vasoocclusion obstructing venous drainage of the penis and typically affects the corpora cavernosa. Penile ischemia and acidosis begin to occur approximately 6 hours into a sustained priapic episode, and recurrent episodes can result in fibrosis and impotence. Treatment centers on management of the underlying sickling process should include urologic consultation for penile aspiration and epinephrine irrigation if the condition persists beyond 6 hours. There is little evidence to support transfusion for priapism, and there has been a reported association between priapism, exchange transfusion, and adverse neurologic events.

**CONCLUSION**
SCD is a multisystem, inherited blood disorder characterized by ischemia–reperfusion injury and vasculopathy. The most common ED presentation is simple VOC causing generalized bone pain. Assessment of the patient is targeted to detection of complications that may warrant blood transfusion. Management of a VOC should be focused on rapid, adequate, and sustained multimodal analgesia.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acute pain episode</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qari et al., Thromb Haemost. 2007&lt;sup&gt;14&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT of 253 patients treated with adjuvant tinzaparin 175 IU/kg or placebo with acute pain</td>
<td>Tinzaparin-treated patients had significantly fewer total hospital days, overall days of pain, and pain declined or resolved more rapidly during the first 4 d of treatment in the tinzaparin group ($p = 0.05$ for each comparison)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gladwin et al., JAMA. 2011&lt;sup&gt;15&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT of inhaled nitric oxide for up to 72 h vs. nitrogen placebo for acute pain in SCD</td>
<td>Inhaled nitric oxide had no effect on the time to VQc resolution (primary outcome) or on length of hospitalization, change in VAS pain score, and total opioid use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellet et al., N Engl J Med. 1995&lt;sup&gt;16&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT of 29 patients with acute chest or thoracic back pain</td>
<td>Incentive Spirometer with 10 maximal inspirations every 2 h from 8 am to 10 pm and when the patients were awake at night significantly decreased the incidence of pulmonary complications ($p = 0.019$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dampier et al., Am J Hematol. 2001&lt;sup&gt;17&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT comparing 2 different opioid PCA therapies for acute pain in 38 subjects</td>
<td>Low demand, high basal infusion demonstrated faster, larger improvements in various measures of pain than did the high demand, low basal infusion strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al., Haematologica. 2013&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT of 38 children hospitalized with 56 pain episodes treated with arginine or placebo for acute pain</td>
<td>54% reduction in total opiate requirement during admission in intervention arm ($p = 0.02$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acute chest syndrome</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinn et al., BJH. 2011&lt;sup&gt;18&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>RCT of oral dexamethasone in 12 patients with ACS</td>
<td>Dexamethasone significantly reduced duration of hospitalization ($p = 0.024$) and trends toward reduced use of supplemental oxygen, hypoxemia, and total opioid usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knight-Madden and Hambleton, Cochrane. 2003&lt;sup&gt;21&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Cochrane systematic review of inhaled bronchodilators for ACS</td>
<td>Lack of trials, but bronchodilators are likely to be helpful in those with ACS who have a history of asthma or wheezing during the episode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blood transfusion</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turner et al., Transfusion. 2009&lt;sup&gt;22&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study of consecutive patients admitted with ACS who received simple transfusion or exchange transfusion</td>
<td>No meaningful benefit from exchange, relative to simple transfusion, including primary outcome of length of stay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RCT, randomized controlled trial.

### REFERENCES

Platelet Disorders and Hemostatic Emergencies

Shawn K. Kaku and Catherine T. Jamin

BACKGROUND

Hemostasis is the process by which a blood clot is formed at a site of vessel injury. For simplicity, this process may be thought of as occurring in two steps. The first step, primary hemostasis, is the formation of a platelet aggregate at the site of injury. The second step, termed secondary hemostasis, is the activation of the coagulation cascade, which results in the formation of cross-linked fibrin that strengthens the platelet aggregate. The fibrinolysis system limits the coagulation cascade, thus preventing excess clot formation. A properly functioning hemostatic system requires a functioning liver to synthesize coagulation factors, a sufficient number of platelets and cofactors, and appropriate coordination between the coagulation and fibrinolysis systems. This chapter provides an overview of the etiology and management of hemostatic dysfunction.

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

A thorough history and physical will help to identify the etiology of the hemostatic or platelet disorder. In addition to a standard patient history, the provider should review the details of any bleeding events, including triggers, location, frequency, duration, and severity.\(^1\) The physical exam should assess for bruising and petechiae, liver size and stigmata of cirrhosis, joint hemarthrosis, signs of anemia, and evidence of an infection. Details of the history and physical can indicate a primary or secondary hemostatic disorder. Petechiae, bruising, mucosal bleeding, epistaxis, menorrhagia, and persistent bleeding are suggestive of disorders of platelets or primary hemostasis. Bleeding into soft tissues, muscles, and joints, or delayed bleeding, implies the presence of a coagulation factor deficiency or a disorder of secondary hemostasis.\(^2\)

PLATELET DISORDERS

Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura

Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) is an autoimmune disorder that results in the destruction of platelets through an IgG-mediated antibody. Platelets coated with the antibody are rapidly cleared by macrophages in the liver and spleen.\(^3\) ITP is characterized by an isolated thrombocytopenia, defined as a platelet count <100 × 10^9/L, in the absence of...
an obvious initiating or underlying cause.\textsuperscript{4,5} As there is no gold standard for the diagnosis of ITP, it is considered a diagnosis of exclusion.\textsuperscript{4,6} Therefore, a myriad of potential causes of thrombocytopenia must be evaluated prior to diagnosis, including systemic diseases, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), drug reactions, primary hematologic disorders, liver dysfunction, infections, and recent transfusions.\textsuperscript{6} A secondary form of ITP may also occur in association with underlying conditions such as human immunodeficiency virus, systemic lupus erythematosus, lymphoproliferative disorder, and antiphospholipid syndrome.\textsuperscript{3}

In contrast to the self-limited presentation of ITP that is typical in children, ITP in adults is generally chronic, with a gradual onset.\textsuperscript{3} Mucocutaneous bleeding, purpura, petechiae, epistaxis, and gum bleeding are the most common initial manifestations.\textsuperscript{4}

No definitive evidence exists to guide an exact threshold at which to initiate medical therapy, such as glucocorticoids, in adults with ITP. Most patients will not require therapy; however, it is generally accepted that a platelet count $< 30 \times 10^9/L$ should be treated, regardless of the presence of bleeding.\textsuperscript{5} Therapy must be individually tailored, and the decision to treat should weigh the patient’s risk of bleeding—that is, previous bleeding episodes, age, presence of other comorbidities, level of activity, etc.\textsuperscript{6}

In the critically ill patient with ITP and hemorrhage, initial therapy consists of high-dose intravenous steroids, such as methylprednisolone (30 mg/kg/d $\times$ 3 days for children and 1 g/day $\times$ 3 days for adults). Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) 1 g/kg and transfusions may also be used.\textsuperscript{5,6} Although the exact mechanism of IVIG in treating ITP remains to be elucidated, it is thought to play a role in preventing the uptake of antibody-coated platelets through the blockage of the Fc receptor on macrophages.\textsuperscript{7} Platelet transfusion is not typically advised in the treatment of ITP, since any transfused platelets will eventually also be destroyed by circulating autoantibodies. However, platelet transfusions have been shown to help sustain the treatment response and may temporarily aid hemostasis in the bleeding patient.\textsuperscript{3,8} The use of anti-Rho(D) immune globulin (anti-D) has been shown to be effective, though only in Rh-positive patients who have not had a splenectomy.\textsuperscript{9} The anti-D binds Rh-positive erythrocytes, occupying the receptor in the splenic macrophages that would otherwise be used for removal of platelets. Emergency splenectomy may also be considered. As a nonemergent second-line therapy, splenectomy is associated with an 80% response rate.\textsuperscript{6} Its use in an emergency situation must be individualized, as the bleeding thrombocytopenic patient makes a challenging ideal surgical candidate.

**Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia**

Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) is a life-threatening disorder caused by antibodies against complexes of heparin bound to platelet factor IV. It should be suspected when a patient has a low platelet count, or at least a 50% drop in the platelet count, approximately 5 to 10 days after heparin exposure.\textsuperscript{10,11} The frequency of HIT is 1% to 5% when unfractionated heparin is used and $<$1% with low molecular weight heparin (LMWH).\textsuperscript{10} Although HIT causes thrombocytopenia, thrombosis—not bleeding—is the major clinical concern.\textsuperscript{10} This is due to platelet activation and the generation of platelet microparticles that leads to thrombin generation and thrombosis.\textsuperscript{11,12} Thrombotic complications develop in approximately 20% to 50% of patients and can persist for days to weeks after heparin therapy is stopped.\textsuperscript{11} Complications include arterial and venous thrombosis, limb ischemia, and cerebral venous sinus thrombosis.\textsuperscript{11}
The laboratory testing for HIT includes a heparin–platelet factor 4 (H-PF4) ELISA antibody test and functional assay tests. The H-PF4 test is widely available and often the first diagnostic test sent. The functional assay tests, while becoming more common, are not always available and are often send-out tests that require up to a week to result. The H-PF4 test has a high sensitivity (>97%) but a poor specificity (74% to 86%), as only a subset of these detected antibodies can cause HIT. This is especially true in surgical patients; up to 20% to 50% of postoperative cardiac patients and 81% of surgical ICU patients can have a false positive H-PF4. Given the high negative predictive value of the H-PF4 test, patients deemed to have a high to intermediate risk of HIT with a negative H-PF4 should be evaluated for alternative diagnoses of their thrombocytopenia.

The heparin-induced platelet aggregation test is a functional assay test, with a sensitivity of >90% and a specificity ranging from 77% to 100%. The c-serotonin functional assay test measures serotonin release from activated platelets and is considered the “gold standard” for the diagnosis of HIT, with a sensitivity and specificity of >95%. Unfortunately, this test is often not available in the emergency department (ED).

Waiting for the send-out test to confirm a diagnosis of HIT can be problematic, given both the dangers of treatment delay and the potentially serious side effects of the treatment itself. The “4Ts” clinical scoring system shown in Table 29.1 provides a real-time evaluation of HIT. A recent meta-analysis confirmed its utility in a wide range of patient population, demonstrating a negative predictive value of 99.8% for those with a low score.

Treatment of HIT—to suppress thrombotic events—consists of stopping all sources of heparin, including LMWH, and initiating an alternate form of systemic anticoagulation. There are currently three FDA–approved medications for the treatment of HIT:

**TABLE 29.1 4T's Pretest Scoring System for HIT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4T's</th>
<th>2 Points</th>
<th>1 Point</th>
<th>0 Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thrombocytopenia</td>
<td>Platelet count fall &gt;50% and nadir ≥ 20 x 10⁹/L</td>
<td>Platelet count fall 30%–50% or platelet nadir 10–19 x 10⁹/L</td>
<td>Platelet count fall &lt;30% or platelet nadir &lt;10 x 10⁹/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing of platelet count fall</td>
<td>Platelet count fall between days 5 and 10 after heparin exposure or Platelet count fall ≤1 d and prior heparin exposure within 30 d</td>
<td>Consistent with fall 5–10 d after heparin exposure, but not clear (e.g., missing platelet counts) or Platelet count fall &gt; day 10 or Platelet count fall ≤1 d and prior heparin exposure within 30–100 d</td>
<td>Platelet count fall ≤4 d without recent heparin exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombosis or other sequelae</td>
<td>New thrombosis (confirmed); skin necrosis; acute systemic reaction postintravenous unfractionated heparin bolus</td>
<td>Progressive or recurrent thrombosis; nonnecrotizing (erythematous) skin lesions; suspected thrombosis (not proven)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other causes of thrombocytopenia</td>
<td>None apparent</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Definite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Test interpretation: 0 to 3, low probability; 4 to 5, intermediate probability; 6 to 8, high probability.
argatroban, bivalirudin, and lepirudin; however, the manufacture of lepirudin has recently been discontinued. While there are no prospective randomized studies examining their efficacy, argatroban has shown superior efficacy in two prospective trials compared to historical controls in reducing thrombotic events and death from thrombosis without an increase in bleeding rates.\textsuperscript{18,19} Argatroban should be dose adjusted in patients with hepatic dysfunction. Bivalirudin is approved only for patients with HIT undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention. The American College of Chest Physician (ACCP) guidelines notes that fondaparinux may have a theoretical role in treating HIT; at this time, however, it is not approved for this use.\textsuperscript{20}

Patients with HIT are in a prothrombotic state and should remain on anticoagulation for 4 to 12 weeks after diagnosis; this may be accomplished via transition to warfarin therapy.\textsuperscript{20} The initiation of warfarin must be done cautiously, as warfarin rapidly decreases protein C levels, which can exacerbate the prothrombotic state and lead to skin necrosis and limb gangrene.\textsuperscript{20} The 2012 ACCP guidelines recommend starting warfarin only after the patient shows platelet recovery of at least 150 $\times$ 10\(^9\)/L and stable anticoagulation on thrombin inhibitors; if warfarin has already been started when a patient is diagnosed with HIT, then vitamin K should be administered until the above criteria are met.\textsuperscript{20} Finally, since spontaneous bleeding is uncommon with HIT, platelets should be transfused only in patients who are bleeding or during the performance of an invasive procedure with a high risk of bleeding.\textsuperscript{20}

**HELLP Syndrome**

HELLP syndrome is a serious complication of pregnancy, characterized by hemolysis (H), elevated liver enzymes (EL), and low platelets (LP). Controversy exists as to whether HELLP is a severe manifestation of preeclampsia or a separate disease process. Although it can occur earlier, HELLP syndrome usually presents after 28 weeks’ gestation.\textsuperscript{10} Classic symptoms include epigastric or right upper quadrant abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting.\textsuperscript{21,22} Patients also may have nonspecific symptoms, such as malaise or headache, which can be mistaken for a viral syndrome.\textsuperscript{21,22} Although there is no consensus on laboratory values for the diagnosis of HELLP syndrome, patients ideally should demonstrate all components of its acronym, namely, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia (MAHA), EL, and decreased platelets.\textsuperscript{10,21,22}

HELLP syndrome increases the chance of maternal death and is associated with disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, abruptio placentae, severe postpartum bleeding, pulmonary and cerebral edema, liver infarct and rupture, and cerebral infarcts and hemorrhages.\textsuperscript{21,22} While delivery of the fetus is the cornerstone of treatment, the exact timing of delivery is unclear and is dependent on the gestational age as well as the stability and condition of the mother and fetus.\textsuperscript{21,22} Laboratory abnormalities may reverse in a subgroup of patients who are managed expectantly; however, this approach needs to be more rigorously investigated.\textsuperscript{23,24} All patients with HELLP syndrome should be admitted to the hospital and treated for severe preeclampsia, with intravenous magnesium as prophylaxis against convulsions and antihypertensive medications to keep systolic blood pressure below 160 mm Hg, diastolic blood pressure below 105 mmHg, or both.\textsuperscript{22} Corticosteroid administration to aid fetal lung maturation is often recommended if the fetus is between 24 and 34 weeks’ gestational age.\textsuperscript{22} Platelets should be transfused...
The use of corticosteroids to improve maternal outcome remains controversial and experimental, as the benefits seen by early small randomized and observational studies could not be reproduced in two larger, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials.25,26

**Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura and Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome**

TTP and hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS) describe two diseases of a broader category called thrombotic microangiopathies. The thrombotic microangiopathies are microvascular occlusive disorders characterized by aggregation of platelets, thrombocytopenia, and mechanical injury to erythrocytes.27 While sharing similar characteristics, the adult form of TTP and the childhood form of diarrheal HUS are two separate disorders.

TTP is thought to be due to a deficiency of the ADAMTS13 enzyme, with an inhibitory antibody being the cause in the majority of the classic cases.10 The ADAMTS13 enzyme is responsible for cleaving the newly synthesized von Willebrand factor (vWF) multimer. When not cleaved, these unusually large vWF multimers lead to spontaneous platelet aggregation and the clinical syndrome of TTP.10 TTP can be both congenital and acquired, with the congenital form being extremely rare. While the majority of acquired causes are idiopathic, examples of secondary causes of TTP include medications, infections, pregnancy, lupus, malignancy, and transplantation.28

The classic pentad of TTP is thrombocytopenia, MAHA, fluctuating neurologic signs, renal impairment, and fever.27 MAHA is caused by erythrocytes passing through areas of the microcirculation that are partially occluded by aggregated platelets.27 This causes fragmented erythrocytes, termed schistocytes or helmet cells, as well as elevated lactate dehydrogenate and indirect bilirubin.27,28 Some patients, however, may not present with neurologic symptoms, renal failure, or fever. Therefore, the diagnosis of TTP may be made in the presence of an MAHA and thrombocytopenia in the absence of any other identifiable cause.28

Treatment for TTP should be initiated even if diagnostic uncertainty exists, as the untreated mortality rate can be as high as 95% to 100%.29–31 Plasma exchange, or the removal of a patient’s plasma and replacement with another fluid (donor plasma, colloid, etc.), is the mainstay of treatment, as it removes the inhibitory antibody and supplies new ADAMTS13. Plasma exchange has decreased the TTP mortality rate to <20%.10,27–31 While not as effective as plasma exchange, plasma infusion alone has been shown to decrease the mortality rate to 37%.28,32 Therefore, plasma infusion (30 mL/kg/d) may be indicated as the initial treatment if there is to be an unavoidable delay in plasma exchange.28 Although steroids have been widely used for TTP as an adjunctive immunosuppressive treatment, there is minimal evidence for their efficacy and no consensus on dosing or route.28 Since patients may benefit from their use, steroids can be given as adjuvant therapy. A reasonable approach is methylprednisolone 2 mg/kg/d, although pulse doses of 1 g/day × 3 days may also be used.28 Rituximab, an anti-CD20 antibody, should be considered for patients refractory to plasma exchange.31,34 Platelet transfusions are contraindicated as they can worsen the platelet aggregation and effects of TTP. They should be reserved for life-threatening hemorrhage or for invasive procedure preparation.28
HUS is characterized by MAHA, thrombocytopenia, and acute renal failure. HUS is commonly associated with a prodrome of bloody diarrhea caused by the Shiga toxin–producing *Escherichia coli* 0157:H7. The toxin damages endothelial cells, causing platelet aggregation and intravascular thrombogenesis. Much of the treatment for HUS is supportive in nature. The optimal care requires careful management of fluid and electrolyte balance and blood pressure. The use of hemodialysis may be required if renal failure is severe. Antibiotics and antimotility agents should be avoided as they can worsen the outcome. Two prospective studies on plasma infusion in HUS failed to show any outcome benefit. There are no randomized controlled prospective studies evaluating the use of therapeutic plasma exchange for HUS caused by Shiga toxin–producing *Escherichia coli*, and it is currently reserved only for severe cases, often those involving the nervous system. As in the case of TTP, blood transfusion for HUS should be given based on clinical evaluation and need, rather than on a strict hemoglobin threshold; platelet transfusions should be avoided if possible.

**DISORDERS OF COAGULATION**

**Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation**

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is characterized by the widespread activation of the coagulation cascade, which results in fibrin formation, thrombotic occlusion of small and midsize vessels, and subsequent organ failure. Simultaneously, the consumption of platelets and coagulation proteins can induce severe bleeding. DIC is not a disease in itself but is instead a complication of an underlying disorder. These disorders include sepsis, trauma, organ dysfunction (pancreatitis), obstetric emergencies, malignancy, and toxic and transfusion reactions.

No single laboratory test can diagnose or rule out DIC. Instead, in a patient at risk for DIC, a combination of test results can be used to diagnose the disorder with reasonable certainty. Common laboratory abnormalities include thrombocytopenia, elevated fibrin degradation products, prolongation of clotting times including the prothrombin time (PT) and the activated partial thromboplastin time (PTT), and a low fibrinogen. Schistocytes may also be present on the blood smear. Caution must be exercised when interpreting fibrinogen levels, as it is an acute-phase reactant that can remain within the normal range or elevated for a long period of time.

The cornerstone of treatment of DIC is treatment of the precipitating condition. Transfusion of platelets or plasma should be reserved for patients with active or high risk of bleeding. Platelet transfusion is indicated in bleeding patients with platelet counts \(<50 \times 10^9/L\) and in nonbleeding patients with platelet counts \(<10 \times 20 \times 10^9/L\). Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) and/or cryoprecipitate are recommended for patients who are bleeding with an INR > 2 or a fibrinogen level \(<100\ mg/dL\). In cases of DIC where a thrombotic picture predominates (e.g., arterial or venous thromboembolism, severe purpura fulminans, or vascular skin infarctions), therapeutic doses of heparin should be considered. In critically ill, nonbleeding patients with DIC, prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism with heparin or LMWH is recommended. The use of antithrombin (formerly antithrombin III) has not improved outcomes in DIC, and further investigation is warranted in the use of recombinant human factor VIIa. For patients with inherited or acquired protein C deficiencies, protein C concentrate has demonstrated some benefit.
HEMOPHILIA

Hemophilia is an X-linked heritable coagulopathy, most often referring to a deficiency of factor VIII (hemophilia A) or factor IX (hemophilia B, Christmas disease). While these deficiencies are difficult to distinguish clinically, factor VIII deficiency comprises approximately 80% of cases and factor IX deficiency the remaining 20%. The severity of hemophilia is defined by the level of serum clotting factors as compared to the general population: <1% of normal is defined as severe, 1% to 5% of normal as moderate, and >5% of normal as mild. Patients with hemophilia are at risk for hemarthrosis (especially knee, ankle, and elbow joints), soft tissue hematomas, bruising, retroperitoneal bleed, intracranial hemorrhage, and postsurgical bleeding.

Due to the heritability of the disease, a family history of hemophilia or abnormal bleeding is extremely helpful in making the diagnosis. Approximately 30% of cases, however, have no known family history and are caused by spontaneous mutations. Laboratory values for patients with hemophilia A and B will demonstrate normal platelets and PT, with a prolonged PTT. Specific assays for each factor can be used to identify the type of hemophilia.

Administration of the deficient factor is needed to limit or stop an episode of bleeding. The amount of factor replaced is dependent on the location of the bleeding. According to the guideline from the World Federation of Hemophilia, a factor level of 40% to 60% is recommended for deep lacerations, joint, and most muscle bleeding, and a factor level of 80% to 100% is recommended for CNS, throat and neck, GI, and iliopsoas muscle bleeding. The formulas for estimating the dose of factor required to be administered are shown in Table 29.2. If unknown, the baseline factor should be presumed to be 0%. The patient’s replaced factor level should be measured approximately 15 minutes after infusion to verify calculated doses. The half-life of factors VIII and IX is 8 to 12 hours and 18 to 24 hours, respectively. Redosing will be needed at that time.

When specific factor replacement is unavailable, other options do exist. FFP contains all coagulation factors, in a concentration of 1 unit of factor in 1 mL, and can be used for both hemophilia A and B. Concerns with use of FFP include the large volume required and the inherent risks of transfusion (e.g., transfusion reaction, volume overload, and TRALI). Cryoprecipitate contains about 70 to 80 units of factor VIII and can be used as an alternative for treatment of hemophilia A. However, similar safety concerns make it second-line therapy. Other treatment options include prothrombin
complex concentrates, recombinant factor VII, and antifibrinolytic agents. These treatments should be used in consultation with a hematologist.

**LIVER DISEASE**

The liver’s essential contribution to maintenance of normal hemostasis is severely disrupted in advanced liver disease, which can lead to coagulopathy and severe bleeding. The loss of hepatic parenchymal cells leads to decreased production of the hemostatic factors II, V, VII, IX, X, XI, XII, and fibrinogen (both the liver and endothelium synthesize factor VIII, allowing for a normal to elevated level in liver disease). Impaired bile production decreases the absorption of vitamin K, an essential cofactor for factors II, VII, IX, and X. Although its clinical significance is unclear, vitamin K deficiency may also contribute to the coagulopathy. Finally, decreased clearance of tissue plasminogen activator and diminished production of fibrinolytic inhibitors are thought to be responsible for the low-grade fibrinolysis found in 30% to 46% of patients with end-stage liver disease. Platelet number and function are also affected in advanced liver disease. Thrombocytopenia (in the setting of liver disease) is thought to be multifactorial, with factors including excessive trapping and clearing of platelets from portal hypertension–induced hypersplenism; impaired platelet production from decreased synthesis of thrombopoietin; and immune and nonimmune platelet destruction. Immune-mediated platelet destruction is often seen with chronic liver disease, and particularly in hepatitis C, a disease state associated with antiplatelet antibodies, including the glycoprotein autoantibody associated with ITP.

In addition to decreasing the quantity of platelets, advanced liver disease impairs platelet function through a variety of mechanisms. Increased circulating platelet inhibitors, excess nitric oxide synthesis, a deficiency of platelet receptors, defective signal transduction, and impaired thromboxane A2 synthesis all contribute to impaired platelet aggregation, defective platelet–vessel wall interaction, and enhanced platelet inhibition associated with liver disease.

While liver disease is most often associated with bleeding disorders, hypercoagulability can also be present. Liver disease results in the decreased production of anticoagulation factors such as antithrombin and proteins C and S; in turn, this may either balance the disruption of the pro- and anticoagulation systems or may result in a hypercoagulable state. In fact, the notion that elevated PT/INR levels in patients with liver disease reflect “autoanticoagulation” may be unfounded. An elevated PT does not necessarily reflect a uniform decrease in vitamin K clotting factors, as in warfarin therapy; it can also reflect an unbalanced decrease of the short-lived factor VII without the concomitant protection from thrombosis. Moreover, INR and PT results vary widely in patients with liver disease based on the reagent and device used. Thus, clinical context—such as sepsis, recent surgery, or bleeding—is more important than any single laboratory value in assessing coagulation balance in these patients.

In the acutely bleeding patient with liver disease, aggressive treatment of hemostatic deficits is essential. Therapy should be aimed not at complete correction of abnormal laboratory values but at achieving hemostatic competence. To guide therapy, laboratory testing should include PT/INR, PTT, platelet count, and fibrinogen level. FFP
Platelet Disorders and Hemostatic Emergencies

should be administered to correct an elevated PT/INR and PTT levels as it contains all coagulation factors; however, this correction can be difficult to achieve and may have only transient effect.\textsuperscript{50,51} Also, note again that an elevated PT/INR may not reflect an increased bleeding risk; and transfusion of FFP may lead to volume overload and other transfusion-related complications. Cryoprecipitate should be used to keep the fibrinogen level $>100$ mg/dL, and platelets transfused to keep a level $>50 \times 10^9$/L.\textsuperscript{51} A trial of desmopressin may be used to aid platelet function in cases of refractory bleeding.\textsuperscript{51} The mechanism of action of desmopressin is unclear, but it is thought to improve platelet adhesiveness through its release of vWF.\textsuperscript{51} As previously noted, vitamin K deficiency may also contribute to coagulopathy, and a 3-day trial of vitamin K (5 to 10 mg/day) may be given.\textsuperscript{51} The efficacy and safety of recombinant factor VIIa is currently under study, and it should be reserved as a rescue therapy.\textsuperscript{50,51}

**CONCLUSION**

Emergency departments and intensive care units frequently admit patient with platelet disorders and hemostatic emergencies. While many of these conditions share common laboratory values, they vary widely in pathology and appropriate course of treatment. Proper identification of, and tailored therapy for, the platelet disorders ITP, HIT, HELLP, HUS, and TTP, as well as the coagulopathies of hemophilia, DIC, and liver disease, is an essential skill for the emergency physician.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lo et al., <em>J Thromb Haemost</em>. 2006\textsuperscript{14}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuker et al., <em>Blood</em>. 2012\textsuperscript{17}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis et al., <em>Arch Intern Med</em>. 2003\textsuperscript{18}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis et al., <em>Circulation</em>. 2001\textsuperscript{19}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HELLP Syndrome</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fonseca et al., <em>Am J Obstet Gynecol</em>. 2005\textsuperscript{20}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Katz et al., Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2008 10</td>
<td>Prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of 105 patients with HELLP treated with dexamethasone vs. placebo</td>
<td>No difference in mortality, duration of hospital stay, platelet recovery, aspartate aminotransferase, lactate dehydrogenase, hemoglobin, or diuresis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura

| Rock et al., N Engl J Med. 1991 11 | Randomized prospective study of 102 patients with TTP treated with plasma exchange vs. infusion | 6-mo mortality for plasma exchange was 22% vs. 37% (p = 0.038) for plasma infusion. 6-mo response rate for plasma exchange was 78% vs. 49% for plasma infusion (p = 0.002). Historical control mortality of 95% |

Liver Disease

| Dabbagh, Chest. 2010 12 | Retrospective cohort study. Evaluated incidence of VTE in 190 patients admitted with a primary diagnosis of chronic liver disease over a 7-y period | An elevated INR in the setting of chronic liver disease does not appear to protect against the development of hospital-acquired VTE |
| Northup, Am J Gastroenterol. 2006 14 | Retrospective case-control study. 113 hospitalized patients with cirrhosis with a documented new venous thromboembolism were compared to controls | Approximately 0.5% of admissions involving cirrhosis patients resulted in a new thromboembolic event, with INR and platelet counts not predictive of events |

D, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES

BACKGROUND

The use of blood product transfusion in the critically ill is commonplace, with more than 40% of all ICU admissions receiving some form of transfusion therapy. Patients with acute hemorrhage from trauma or gastrointestinal bleed, with severe coagulopathy, sepsis, and toxicologic syndromes may all require blood product administration. While blood products may confer benefit to the critically ill patient, the emergency physician and intensivist must also consider the potential risks of transfusion—which are numerous—when choosing to employ this therapy. This chapter reviews the indications and associated complications of the most commonly transfused blood products, namely packed red blood cells (PRBCs) and whole-blood derivatives such as fresh frozen plasma (FFP), cryoprecipitate, and platelets. Use of the synthetic antifibrinolytic tranexamic acid is also discussed.

INDICATIONS FOR BLOOD PRODUCT TRANSFUSION

Packed Red Blood Cells

The use of red blood cells in the critically ill patient has evolved in recent years. Prior to the Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care (TRICC) trial, PRBCs transfusion was used aggressively in patients with a hemoglobin (Hgb) concentration below 10 g/dL; this cutoff was based largely on physiologic and clinical assumptions and lacked significant evidentiary support. The results of the TRICC trial and subsequent follow-up studies suggested a more restrictive threshold of 7 g/dL for PRBC transfusion. The TRICC trial was a multicenter randomized controlled trial (RCT) of 838 patients admitted to the ICU (without evidence of active bleeding) and randomized to a restrictive (Hgb goal 7–9) or liberal (Hgb goal 10–12) transfusion strategy. Enrolled patients were euvolemic and had Hgb levels of <9 within 72 hours. The primary outcome, 30-day mortality, was similar in the two groups; however, the restrictive group’s 30-day mortality was significantly lower among a subset of less acutely ill patients (APACHE II scores = <20, 8.7% vs. 16.1%) as well as among patients older than 55 years. There was also a significant reduction in in-hospital mortality for the restrictive group (22.2% vs. 28.1%).

Exceptions to the restrictive transfusion strategy recommendation include patients with acute hemorrhage and hemodynamic instability; and septic patients with evidence of inadequate tissue oxygen delivery (guided by trauma and sepsis literature respectively).
The optimal transfusion threshold for patients with acute myocardial ischemia or unstable angina is unknown, as these patients have typically been excluded from these trials. In a subgroup analysis of the TRICC trial, however, patients with active ischemic cardiac disease had better outcomes when a transfusion threshold of <10 g/dL was used.

Plasma Products: Fresh Frozen Plasma and Cryoprecipitate

Plasma products, including FFP and cryoprecipitate, represent the liquid portion of human blood that remains after cellular components such as red and white blood cells have been removed. Guidelines for plasma use in critically ill patients are poorly established due to a paucity of data. Based on clinical experience and biologic rationale, plasma transfusion is generally recommended in patients with inadequate hemostasis, particularly in those with known or suspected coagulation abnormalities. The current accepted indication for plasma is: any abnormality on coagulation tests (prothrombin time, international normalized ratio (INR), or partial thromboplastin time) in patients slated for invasive procedures carrying a high risk of bleeding complications; and severe coagulation abnormality in patients slated for invasive procedures carrying a low risk of bleeding complications. Additionally, any patient with abnormal coagulation tests and life-threatening bleeding should receive FFP.

Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) is a plasma product that contains all coagulation factors in normal concentrations. In the average patient, 1 unit of FFP will raise coagulation factors by 5% to 8% and fibrinogen by 13 mg/dL. FFP is used to reverse severe coagulopathy or excessive anticoagulation resulting from warfarin use in patients with active bleeding or in need of immediate invasive procedures. FFP is not effective at reversing minor elevations in the INR (1.3 to 1.8).

Cryoprecipitate, also derived from plasma, contains fibrinogen, von Willebrand factor, factor VIII, and factor XIII. It is packaged in six concentrated units, each unit taken from a separate donor. Cryoprecipitate is indicated for patients with severe hypofibrinogenemia (<100 mg/dL) immediately prior to any invasive procedure. Its chief advantage is that it provides these factors in substantially less volume than an equivalent transfusion of FFP. Cryoprecipitate is not commonly used in patients with von Willebrand disease or hemophilia A (factor VIII deficiency), as other therapies, such as desmopressin (DDAVP) and concentrated factor VII, are more specifically targeted to these conditions.

Platelets

Platelet transfusion in the critically ill may be used to help stop or prevent bleeding in patients with thrombocytopenia. Current guidelines recommend platelet transfusions in patients with platelet counts <10,000/μL for the prevention of spontaneous bleeding; in patients with counts <50,000/μL with active bleeding or requiring invasive procedures; and in those with counts <100,000/μL with central nervous system (CNS) injury, major trauma, or requiring neurosurgical intervention.

Tranexamic Acid

Tranexamic acid is a synthetic derivative of the amino acid lysine and an antifibrinolytic that inhibits the activation of plasminogen to plasmin. It is commonly used in surgeries with high risk of blood loss. Several recent studies have advocated its use in acute care.
settings; data suggest that when given to trauma patients within 3 hours of acute injury, tranexamic acid confers a mortality benefit. In the CRASH–2 study—an RCT of 20,211 adult trauma patients with, or at risk of, significant bleeding—patients received either tranexamic acid (loading dose 1 g over 10 minutes and then infusion of 1 g over 8 hours) or matching placebo. Tranexamic acid was associated with a 1.5% absolute reduction in mortality (14.5% vs. 16%) compared to placebo. A separately published but prespecified subgroup analysis demonstrated that early administration of tranexamic acid (within 1 hour of injury) was associated with greater reductions in death due to bleeding, while delayed administration (>3 hours from injury) was associated with increased bleeding deaths. All-cause mortality was reduced in the <1 hour and 1–3 hour strata, but not in the >3 hour stratum. Further studies are needed to clarify these results, as this trial did not specifically measure innate fibrinolytic activity of participants and lacked complete data in the subgroup of all-cause mortality.

Transfusion in Massive Hemorrhage
Several recent and ongoing studies advocate for a more balanced approach to the ratio of blood product transfusion in the acutely hemorrhaging patient, specifically in cases of hemorrhage due to trauma. Hemorrhaging patients lose red cells, platelets, and coagulation factors, so replacement with PRBCs alone can lead to a dilution of platelets and coagulation factors, blunting the effects of the clotting cascade. A more appropriate strategy in these patients is to replace red blood cells, platelets, and plasma simultaneously. The exact ratio of these products is the subject of ongoing clinical trials, but data suggest a ratio of 1:1:1 confers a survival benefit at 24 hours and 30 days (Table 30.1).

COMPLICATIONS
Blood product transfusion is not without risk; however, adverse reactions with significant morbidity and mortality have steadily declined, due in large part to advances in screening techniques for infectious disease. Transmission of serious infectious disease, once the most common cause of blood transfusion mortality, has been supplanted in frequency by transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI), transfusion-related circulatory overload (TACO), and transfusion-associated immunologic complications.
Transfusion-Transmitted Infection

Transfusion-transmitted infections have a variety of bacterial and viral etiologies. Platelet transfusions carry the highest risk of bacterial contamination because they are stored at room temperature. If bacteremia—which may present with typical findings of fever, rigors, tachycardia, and hypotension—is suspected, the transfusion should be stopped, and the patient and blood products broadly cultured and evaluated for an immunologic-related transfusion reaction (discussed below). HIV infection from blood transfusions has steadily declined, mostly because of donor behavior screening and sophisticated testing of blood products for HIV antibody and nucleic acid. However, HIV contamination may occur if the donor is tested during the window period of infection or is infected with a variant strain that eludes current assays. The risk of HIV transmission from transfusion is estimated to be 1 in 1.4 million units.16

Transmission of the hepatitis C virus via blood transfusion once accounted for 0.5% to 10% of HCV infections; now, with increasingly sensitive blood donor screening assays (including nucleic acid testing) and with behavioral screening, the transmission rate from transfusion is estimated to be 1 per 2 million units.17

Transfusion-Related Acute Lung Injury

Transfusion Related Acute Lung Injury (TRALI) is a rare but serious complication of blood transfusion. The diagnosis of TRALI is made in patients receiving transfusions who develop hypoxemia, fever, and bilateral infiltrate on chest radiograph within 2 to 6 hours of blood product transfusion. The condition must be determined not to be the result of circulatory overload or preexisting acute lung injury. TRALI is considered a form of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), caused when HLA antibodies in the donor serum trigger activation of the complement system and result in lung injury. Aggressive respiratory support is warranted in these patients and may include noninvasive positive pressure ventilation; most patients eventually require intubation and mechanical ventilation.18,19 With appropriate supportive care, complete recovery is usually made within 24 to 48 hours.

Transfusion-Associated Circulatory Overload

Transfusion-Associated Circulatory Overload (TACO) occurs following large-volume blood transfusion and is more common in the elderly, children, and those with preexisting cardiac dysfunction. Clinical presentation is similar to TRALI and includes acute dyspnea and hypoxemia, but TACO is uniquely accompanied by hypertension, which can help distinguish the two entities. Additionally, B-type natriuretic peptide levels are likely to be elevated in TACO. Prevention is paramount and includes slow transfusion rates and smaller volumes of transfusion. TACO should be treated similarly to cardiogenic pulmonary edema, with noninvasive ventilatory support and diuresis.20

Immunologic Complications

Immunologic complications of blood transfusion include acute and delayed hemolytic reactions, febrile nonhemolytic transfusion reactions (FNHTR), transfusion-associated graft versus host disease (TA-GvHD) and allergic reactions.
Hemolytic reactions are rare, and occur in <0.01% of transfusions. These reactions, caused most often by ABO-incompatible blood, may be immediate or delayed. Immediate reaction is characterized by fevers, hypotension, pain, and oliguria; delayed reactions by fever, Coombs-positive hemolytic anemia, jaundice, and lack of expected rise in Hgb levels. Treatment includes immediate cessation of transfusion, aggressive hydration, supportive care, and blood bank notification.

FNHTRs, caused by the presence of leukocyte debris and cytokines in the donated blood, are more common and occur in up to 7% of red blood cell transfusions. Patients will present with a spectrum of symptoms including fevers, pain at the infusion site, hypotension, mental status changes, and bleeding diathesis. Laboratory tests used to differentiate hemolytic reaction from nonhemolytic reaction include a peripheral blood smear, haptoglobin, and Coombs’ testing. Mainstays of therapy include acetaminophen and diphenhydramine. In patients who have had FNHTRs, future transfusions require use of leukoreduced blood specimens.

TA-GvHD is a rare and commonly fatal complication of blood transfusion. TA-GvHD results when donor lymphocytes mount an immune response to the blood recipient’s antigen presenting tissues. TA-GvHD is typically limited to immunosuppressed patients (e.g., Hodgkin disease and leukemia, but notably not with HIV), and presents with dysfunction of the liver, skin, and bone marrow 4 to 30 days following blood transfusion. Since no effective therapy exists, prevention in susceptible patients—achieved by use of leukoreduced or irradiated blood products—is essential.

Allergic reactions are also common in blood product transfusion and do not require previous sensitization to blood products. Like all allergic reactions, they range from urticaria to bronchospasm to anaphylaxis, and should be treated with the immediate cessation of transfusion and antihistamines, steroids, volume replacement, and, when necessary, epinephrine.

**Citrate Toxicity**

Citrate toxicity may occur following large-volume blood transfusion. Citrate is an anticoagulant added to preserved PRBCs in order to chelate calcium and prevent clotting. Large-volume infusions can cause a metabolic alkalosis from citrate metabolism, as well as a reduction in ionized calcium resulting from calcium complex formation. Symptoms of severe hypocalcemia include tetany, cardiac dysrhythmias, and hypotension, and require treatment with calcium gluconate or calcium chloride. Importantly, if required, calcium therapy should be administered in a separate vein from the transfusion line to prevent clotting.

**CONCLUSION**

Transfusion therapy, while commonplace in the critically ill population, is not without its accompanying risks. Adherence to established guidelines for transfusion enables appropriate patient care and minimization of adverse outcome.
REFERENCES


BACKGROUND
Approximately 650,000 cases of sepsis are diagnosed each year in the United States, making it one of the most common causes of critical illness encountered by the emergency physician. Despite significant advances in management, more than 200,000 patients die annually from this devastating disease. It is therefore imperative that the emergency physician be expert in the recognition and treatment of patients with sepsis, severe sepsis, and septic shock.

DEFINITIONS
The most widely used definition of sepsis is the presence of infection (presumed or confirmed) combined with signs of a systemic inflammatory response. Traditionally, an inflammatory response is diagnosed by the presence of at least two of the four criteria for the systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS). Recently, updated international guidelines for the management of severe sepsis and septic shock expand upon the traditional SIRS criteria (Table 31.1). The clinical spectrum of sepsis includes patients with severe sepsis and septic shock. Severe sepsis is defined as sepsis with evidence of organ dysfunction or tissue hypoperfusion (Table 31.2). The simplest and most objective marker of the onset of severe sepsis is an elevated lactate level. Lactate levels >4 mmol/L suggest significant tissue hypoperfusion and warrant aggressive resuscitation. Although an elevated lactate level is not specific to sepsis, it has been used as an inclusion criterion for severe sepsis in the majority of studies of patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. Septic shock is defined as the presence of arterial hypotension despite adequate fluid resuscitation, commonly defined as at least 20 to 30 mL/kg of a crystalloid solution.
**TABLE 31.1** Criteria for Sepsis

Presumed or documented infection plus some of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>Inflammatory Variables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Temperature &gt;38.3°C or &lt;36°C</td>
<td>• WBC count &gt;12,000 cells/μL or &lt;4,000 cells/μL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Heart rate &gt;90 beats/min (or more than two standard deviations above normal rate for age)</td>
<td>• Normal WBC count with &gt;10% immature forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tachypnea</td>
<td>• C-reactive protein more than two standard deviations above the normal value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Altered mental status</td>
<td>• Procalcitonin more than two standard deviations above the normal value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 31.2** Markers of Severe Sepsis (Sepsis-Induced Organ Dysfunction and Tissue Hypoperfusion)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hemodynamic Variable</th>
<th>Organ Dysfunction Variables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Arterial hypotension (SBP &lt; 90 mm Hg, MAP &lt; 70 mm Hg, or SBP decrease &gt;40 mm Hg from the patient’s baseline)</td>
<td>• Acute lung injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PaO₂/FiO₂ &lt; 250 in the absence of pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PaO₂/FiO₂ &lt; 200 in the presence of pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Acute oliguria (urine output &lt;0.5 mL/kg/h for at least 2 h despite IVFs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Acute kidney injury (creatinine &gt; 2.0 mg/dL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Thrombocytopenia (platelets &lt; 100,000 cells/μL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hyperbilirubinemia (total bilirubin &gt; 2 mg/dL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Coagulopathy (INR &gt; 1.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue Hypoperfusion Variable</td>
<td>• Elevated lactate (above upper limits of laboratory normal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM**

The clinical presentation of patients with sepsis depends on the source of infection. For patients with suspected sepsis, the history and physical exam should be directed toward the most common sources of infection (Table 31.3). Patients with sepsis do not always present with overt signs of arterial hypotension and shock. Many, notably the elderly, will present with more subtle signs of illness, including altered mental status, fatigue, and lethargy. A complete physical exam, including assessment of mental status, a thorough skin examination, and complete neurologic examination, should be performed in any patient with suspected infection. Septic shock is a form of distributive shock. Patients in the early stages of this illness may have warm, seemingly well-perfused extremities rather than the cool, dusky appearance of patients with other forms of circulatory shock.
DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Initial laboratory and radiographic testing should be directed toward the most likely source of infection (Table 31.3). Current guidelines recommend obtaining at least two sets of blood cultures before initiating antimicrobial therapy, provided that the time needed to draw these cultures does not delay the initiation of therapy more than 45 minutes. For patients with indwelling catheters, at least one blood culture should be obtained from the vascular device. Obtaining timely blood cultures is essential for identifying the pathogenic organism and narrowing the spectrum of antimicrobial therapy. Additional blood samples should be sent for a complete blood count, a comprehensive metabolic panel, a coagulation profile, serum lactate measurement, venous blood gas analysis to determine pH, and central venous oxygen saturation if an internal jugular or subclavian central line has been placed. In addition to blood work, urinalysis and urine culture should also be obtained in any patient with suspected sepsis.

Radiographic studies should be obtained to determine if source control of an infection is required. Because the pulmonary system is the most common source of infection in patients with sepsis, unless there is another clear location of infection, a chest radiograph is essential. Additional testing, such as computed tomography or ultrasound, may be obtained based on the suspected location of infection. In critically ill patients without an obvious source of infection, an intra-abdominal infection is likely, and diagnostic testing with computed tomography or ultrasound should be considered.

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Management of the critically ill ED patient with sepsis includes early administration of antimicrobial therapy; quantitative, protocol-guided hemodynamic resuscitation; and critical adjunctive therapy, including the use of corticosteroids, blood product transfusion, glucose control, and mechanical ventilation. The recently updated international guidelines for the management of patients with severe sepsis and septic shock are summarized in the following sections.

Antimicrobial Therapy and Source Control

Early administration of appropriate antibiotics is paramount to improving survival in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. In 2006, a landmark study demonstrated a 7.6% decrease in mortality for every hour delay in administering effective antimicrobial therapy for patients with septic shock. As a result of this study and
several others demonstrating similar findings, current guidelines recommend that effective antimicrobial therapy be administered within 1 hour after the recognition of septic shock and severe sepsis. Initial antimicrobial therapy should be broad spectrum and effective against the most likely causative organism. When selecting empiric antimicrobial medications, the emergency physician must take into account the site of infection, local hospital and community susceptibility patterns, the presence of comorbid illnesses, recent antibiotic exposure (within the previous 3 months), and the patient’s medical history. Despite the fact that many patients with severe sepsis or septic shock have evidence of acute kidney injury (AKI), all patients should receive an initial full loading dose of antimicrobial medications. For neutropenic patients or those with multidrug-resistant organisms, combination antimicrobial therapy (i.e., a beta-lactam antibiotic and either an aminoglycoside or fluoroquinolone) is recommended. Combination therapy is also recommended for patients with septic shock and respiratory failure. A confirmed nidus of infection (e.g., intra-abdominal abscess, empyema, infected device, or necrotizing soft tissue infection) may be resistant to antimicrobial agents. In these cases, source control is essential and should be undertaken within 12 hours of diagnosis, provided the patient can safely undergo the required procedure.

Protocol-Guided Hemodynamic Resuscitation

In 2001, a landmark study demonstrated significantly reduced mortality with use of a protocol-guided resuscitation with quantitative endpoints, delivered to patients with sepsis-induced hypotension within 6 hours of their presentation to an emergency department. The hemodynamic targets of their study were central venous pressure (CVP), mean arterial pressure (MAP), urine output, and central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO2). While the findings of the study are still being debated, current guidelines have remained consistent in their recommended hemodynamic targets (Table 31.4) within the first 6 hours of therapy for patients with sepsis-induced hypotension.

Though current guidelines recommend protocol-guided therapy for patients with severe sepsis and septic shock, a recently published multi-center trial has questioned the utility of this approach. The ProCESS trial was a randomized, controlled, multi-center study designed to evaluate three treatment groups in patients with severe sepsis and septic shock: 1) protocol-based early goal-directed therapy (identical to the original EGDT protocol), 2) protocol-based standard therapy (derived from current literature and expert consensus), and 3) standard therapy (no predetermined resuscitation protocol). In the standard therapy group, care was left to the discretion of the treating physician. Importantly, investigators found no difference in 60-day, 90-day, and 1-year mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 31.4</th>
<th>Initial Resuscitation Targets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Central venous pressure 8–12 mm Hg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mean arterial pressure ≥ 65 mm Hg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Urine output ≥ 0.5 mL/kg/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Central venous oxygen saturation ≥ 70%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

between the three groups. While many clinicians have cited this trial to debate the utility of early goal-directed therapy, it is important to note that ProCESS was carried out in large, academic centers throughout the United States. These centers were required to adhere to the non-resuscitative aspects of care recommended by the Surviving Sepsis Campaign (e.g., prompt administration of antibiotics). Furthermore, baseline mortality was significant different between these two trials. Given these limitations, it is unclear whether “standard therapy” can be expected to be the same at centers outside of those involved in the ProCESS trial. Pending the publication of two additional trials (ARISE and PROMISE), protocol-based resuscitation should focus on early identification of patients with sepsis, early antibiotics, adequate fluid administration, and an appropriate assessment of the adequacy of circulation.

The continuous assessment of tissue perfusion is another essential component of the initial resuscitation of septic patients. In recent years, significant emphasis has been placed on global markers of tissue perfusion, namely, serum lactate and ScvO\textsubscript{2}. Current guidelines continue to recommend continuous or intermittent monitoring of ScvO\textsubscript{2} as a marker of tissue perfusion\textsuperscript{3} using either a subclavian or internal jugular central venous catheter. Depending on the patient and resources available to the emergency physician, central venous access may not be feasible. In these patients, guidelines recommend monitoring serial serum lactate values.\textsuperscript{3} In patients with elevated values (i.e., lactate >4 mmol/L), resuscitation should target the normalization of serum lactate. Currently, there is no consensus on the optimal interval to measure serial lactate values. It is the authors’ opinion that serum lactate (venous or arterial) should be measured every 2 to 3 hours in the septic patient.

**Intravenous Fluids**

The administration of intravenous fluids to restore intravascular volume is central to the hemodynamic resuscitation of the septic patient. Currently, isotonic crystalloid solutions are the fluid of choice for patients with severe sepsis or septic shock.\textsuperscript{3} For patients with sepsis-induced hypoperfusion, a minimum of 30 mL/kg of crystalloids should be administered.\textsuperscript{3} While there is no evidence that clearly demonstrates the superiority of a particular crystalloid fluid, there is mounting evidence of the harm of normal saline. The supra-physiologic concentration of chloride in normal saline has been associated with increased kidney injury and need for renal replacement therapy (RRT).\textsuperscript{7} Recent literature has focused on the use of “balanced” fluids (e.g., lactated Ringer’s, Plasma-Lyte) for resuscitation in sepsis, particularly in patients with significant acidosis.\textsuperscript{8} When large amounts of crystalloid solution are required, guidelines allow for the consideration of albumin. The addition of albumin to crystalloid fluid resuscitation is based on the results of the 2004 SAFE trial, in which the use of albumin in a subgroup of patients with severe sepsis demonstrated a trend toward an improved mortality rate.\textsuperscript{9} Hydroxyethyl starch solutions are not recommended as a result of several studies demonstrating their harmful effects.\textsuperscript{3,10–12}

Current guidelines recommend titration of intravenous fluids to achieve a CVP of 8 to 12 mm Hg—with a higher goal of 12 to 15 mm Hg for those receiving mechanical ventilation—as a physiologic target for resuscitation in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock.\textsuperscript{3} CVP, however, is a poor marker of fluid status and responsiveness in the critically ill patient. Recent studies have focused on the use of dynamic markers...
of fluid responsiveness, such as pulse pressure variation, stroke volume variation, passive leg raise, and respirophasic changes in the diameter of the inferior vena cava as measured by bedside ultrasound. While no one dynamic technique has been proven superior, most provide better assessment of fluid responsiveness than the CVP. For this reason, current guidelines do allow for the use of dynamic indices to guide intravenous fluid therapy.3

Vasopressors
When intravenous fluid therapy fails to maintain adequate arterial perfusion pressure (MAP ≥ 65 mm Hg), a vaspressor medication should be administered. Historically, norepinephrine and dopamine have been the most common first-line agents. However, recent publications suggest that dopamine is associated with a higher rate of tachyarrhythmias and may result in increased mortality when given to patients in cardiogenic shock.13 A subsequent related meta-analysis demonstrated that for patients in septic shock, dopamine is associated with increased mortality when compared with norepinephrine.14 As a result of these reports, norepinephrine is recommended as the initial vasopressor agent of choice for patients with fluid-refractory septic shock.3 When an additional vasopressor agent is required to maintain sufficient perfusion pressure, either epinephrine or vasopressin is recommended.3 Vasopressin should not be used as a single agent. Rather, it should be used in combination with norepinephrine and maintained at a stable dose of 0.03 to 0.04 units/min. Because of its higher incidence of tachyarrhythmias and association with an increased mortality rate, dopamine should be avoided, except in patients with absolute or relative bradycardia.3 Phenylephrine is another popular vasopressor used to maintain adequate perfusion pressure in patients with a number of critical illnesses, especially given its presumed decreased risk of adverse events compared to other vasopressor medications when given peripherally. However, its use in patients with septic shock is not recommended, except as salvage therapy or in those with documented high cardiac output and low MAP.3

Inotropes
Inotropic therapy should be considered in the presence of myocardial dysfunction (i.e., elevated cardiac filling pressures with a low cardiac output) or when evidence suggests persistent tissue hypoperfusion (i.e., rising or unchanged serum lactate, low ScvO₂) despite augmentation of intravascular volume and optimization of MAP. With studies suggesting the rate of sepsis-induced myocardial dysfunction to be as high as 44%,15 the availability of rapid assessment with bedside ultrasound allows the early institution of appropriate inotropic therapy. Dobutamine is the initial inotropic agent of choice, up to a maximum dose of 20 μg/kg/min. Titration to a predefined, supranormal level of cardiac output is not recommended.3

Glucocorticoids
Research findings differ as to the effect of glucocorticoids on mortality rates in patients with sepsis. Current guidelines recommend low-dose glucocorticoids (hydrocortisone 200 mg/d) in patients with persistent hypotension despite optimal fluid and vaspressor therapy.1 This recommendation is based on the drug’s benefit in earlier reversal of
Sepsis and Septic Shock

Continuous (rather than intermittent) administration of hydrocortisone is recommended to decrease the incidence of hypernatremia and hyperglycemia, both of which are associated with increased morbidity and mortality. A patient’s response to an adrenocorticotropic hormone stimulation test has not been found to be predictive of his/her response to glucocorticoids; therefore, this test is not recommended.

Blood Transfusion

In the early goal-directed therapy (EGDT) protocol, administration of blood transfusion to a goal hemoglobin of 10 g/dL was an important step in the management of patients with persistent tissue hypoperfusion (low ScvO₂) despite achieving the goals for CVP and MAP. The use of this transfusion threshold has become one of the most controversial components of the protocol. Currently, there are several ongoing trials evaluating individual components of the EGDT protocol including blood transfusion. The results of these studies are not available at the time of this publication. While the optimal hemoglobin during early resuscitation of the patient with severe sepsis or septic shock has not been clearly defined, it is clear that blood transfusions in the critically ill patient can be harmful. As a result, guidelines recommend maintaining a hemoglobin concentration between 7 and 9 g/dL in patients who have been resuscitated and no longer have evidence of tissue hypoperfusion. It may be reasonable to target a higher hemoglobin level for those with active myocardial ischemia or hemorrhage.

Mechanical Ventilation

Patients with severe sepsis and septic shock are at significant risk for developing acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Guidelines strongly recommend the use of low tidal volume ventilation in patients who have sepsis-induced ARDS and who require mechanical ventilation. Specifically, an initial tidal volume of 6 mL/kg of predicted body weight should be used, and plateau pressures should be kept under 30 cm H₂O.

NEW DIRECTIONS

Historically, the pathophysiology of severe sepsis and septic shock was thought to result primarily from inflammatory mediators that, on a macrovascular level, cause a maldistribution of blood flow, resulting in impaired tissue oxygen delivery. Recent research, focusing on microcirculatory and mitochondrial dysfunction, suggests that it is, rather, the ability to increase oxygen consumption in response to increased oxygen delivery that best predicts which patients with septic shock will survive and which will not.

Microcirculatory dysfunction in sepsis is thought to result from two distinct mechanisms. First, sepsis produces significant heterogeneity in blood flow even within a particular tissue, organ, or vascular bed. This maldistribution at the microcirculatory level can result in significant cellular hypoxia, despite a seemingly normal systemic perfusion pressure. Second, sepsis is associated with endothelial damage. Whether due to the direct effect of select microorganisms or to inflammatory mediators, endothelial dysfunction inhibits the ability of oxygen to move from the vessel lumen to the tissues. The result is a relative hypoxia despite adequate blood flow. Endothelial dysfunction has been the target of recent sepsis research, though no promising therapies have yet proved beneficial.
Markers of microcirculatory dysfunction, such as elevated lactate levels, have been shown to correlate with poor outcomes in patients with sepsis.\(^{17,18}\) It also appears that microvascular resuscitation (i.e., increased capillary recruitment) correlates with improved global perfusion (e.g., decreased lactate levels) despite little to no improvement in macrovascular assessments (e.g., improved MAP). These results have led to investigations of a variety of microcirculatory monitoring and resuscitative techniques.\(^{19,20}\)

Evidence indicates that sepsis also results in mitochondrial dysfunction,\(^{21}\) leading to impaired oxidative phosphorylation. This results in “cytopathic hypoxia,” the inability to use delivered oxygen and produce adenosine triphosphate. Sepsis-induced mitochondrial dysfunction is another emerging area of study.\(^{22}\)

**CONCLUSION**

The past decade has seen great leaps forward in the management of sepsis, although this disease continues to impose a tremendous burden in terms of mortality rates. Many of these advances apply directly to the emergency physician’s management of these patients. It is vital that emergency physicians continue to embrace their role as the frontline managers of this deadly disease.

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dellinger et al., Crit Care Med. 2013(^3) Surviving Sepsis Campaign Guidelines</td>
<td>Consensus committee of 68 international experts representing 30 international organizations, providing an update of existing guidelines for the management of severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
<td>Developed key recommendations and suggestions based on existing evidence for the management of patients with severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumar et al., Crit Care Med. 2006(^4)</td>
<td>Multicenter retrospective cohort study of 2,154 patients with septic shock, who received antimicrobial therapy after the onset of shock; evaluated the relationship between timing of appropriate antimicrobial administration and survival</td>
<td>Each hour delay to initiation of appropriate antimicrobials in the first 6 h after shock increased the mortality rate by a mean of 7.6%. Adjusted OR for death of 1.119/h of delay to appropriate therapy (95% CI, 1.103–1.136, (p &lt; 0.001)). Delay to appropriate antimicrobial therapy was more strongly associated with outcome than APACHE II score at admission or amount of fluids received in the first hour of hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivers et al., N Engl J Med. 2001(^5)</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective, randomized controlled trial of 263 patients with severe sepsis or septic shock; compared standard care with early goal-directed therapy for the first 6 h prior to admission to an intensive care unit</td>
<td>The early goal-directed therapy group had a 16% absolute reduction in in-hospital mortality compared with the control group (30.5% vs. 46.5%, (p = 0.009))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yealy et al., N Engl J Med. 2014(^6) ProCESS</td>
<td>Multi-center, randomized controlled trial comparing protocol-based Early Goal Directed Therapy, protocol-based standard therapy, and usual care in treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
<td>No difference in 60-day in-hospital mortality between the three groups (21.0% in the EGDT group vs. 16.2% in the protocol-based standard therapy vs. 18.8% in the usual care group, (p = 0.83) for the two protocol-based groups compared to usual care)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yunos et al., JAMA. 2012(^7)</td>
<td>Prospective, sequential period single-center pilot study; during study period, patients received chloride rich fluids (0.9% saline, 4% succinylated gelatin solution, or 4% albumin solution) only given with attending-specialist approval</td>
<td>During study period (limitation of chloride-rich fluids), lower incidence of AKI (8.4% vs. 14%, (p &lt; 0.001)) and use of RRT (6.3% vs. 10%, (p = 0.005)) compared with control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Raghunathan et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2014&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study comparing ICU patients with sepsis treated with “balanced” crystalloid solutions (e.g., lactated Ringer’s) and “no-balanced” fluids (e.g., normal saline)</td>
<td>Group treated with balanced solutions had significantly lower in-hospital mortality (19.6% vs. 22.8%, relative risk, 0.86; 95% CI, 0.78–0.94)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finfer et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2004&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt; SAFE</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind trial of 6,997 patients; compared the use of saline with albumin for fluid resuscitation of ICU patients</td>
<td>No significant differences in primary (28-day mortality, RR 0.99, 95% CI, 0.91–1.09, p = 0.87) or secondary outcomes between the two groups. However, predefined subgroup analysis of patients with severe sepsis suggested a trend toward improved survival with albumin (absolute mortality reduction of 4.6%, p = 0.09)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myburgh et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2012&lt;sup&gt;10&lt;/sup&gt; CHEST</td>
<td>Multicenter, randomized controlled trial comparing use of 6% hydroxyethyl starch (molecular weight 130 kD) in 0.9% normal saline to 0.9% normal saline alone for fluid resuscitation in 7,000 ICU patients</td>
<td>No significant difference in mortality between hydroxyethyl starch and normal saline group (18% vs. 17%, p = 0.26), but higher rate of need for renal replacement therapy in starch group (7% vs. 5.8%, p = 0.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perner et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2012&lt;sup&gt;11&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter, randomized controlled trial comparing the use of Ringer acetate to hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 for fluid resuscitation in 804 ICU patients with severe sepsis</td>
<td>Ringer acetate group had lower 90-d mortality (43% vs. 51%, p = 0.03) and lower rates of renal replacement therapy (16% vs. 22%, p = 0.04) compared to hydroxyethyl starch group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeBacker et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2012&lt;sup&gt;14&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of trials comparing outcomes after the use of dopamine vs. norepinephrine in patients with septic shock</td>
<td>In pooled randomized trials and in observational trials lacking heterogeneity, dopamine use was associated with increased risk of death (RR 1.23, 95% CI, 1.05–1.43, p &lt; 0.01 in observational trials, RR 1.12, CI 1.01–1.2, p = 0.035 in randomized trials). In the two trials reporting rate of arrhythmias, dopamine was associated with an increased rate of arrhythmias (RR 2.34, 95% CI, 1.46–3.77, p = 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprung et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2008&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt; CORTICUS</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind study of 499 patients; compared the use of hydrocortisone (50 mg IV every 6 h) with placebo</td>
<td>No difference in mortality rate between the two groups (39.2% vs. 36.1%, p = 0.69). The hydrocortisone group had faster resolution of shock compared with placebo but higher rates of superinfection. Response or lack of response to corticotropin stimulation had no significant effect on response to hydrocortisone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russell et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 2008&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt; VASST</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind study of 778 patients with septic shock requiring at least 5 μg/min of norepinephrine; compared the addition of low-dose vasopressin with the addition of norepinephrine</td>
<td>No difference in mortality rates between the two groups (35.4% vs. 39.3%, p = 0.28 for 28-day mortality). The vasopressin group saw a rapid decrease in the total norepinephrine dose while maintaining the same MAP. The norepinephrine group showed a trend toward higher rate of cardiac arrest; the vasopressin group showed a trend toward higher rate of digital ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jones et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2010&lt;sup&gt;25&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter, randomized, noninferiority trial of 300 patients; compared central venous oxygen saturation to lactate clearance as the third resuscitation goal in patients with severe sepsis and evidence of hypoperfusion or septic shock</td>
<td>Use of lactate clearance as a treatment goal was found to be noninferior to ScvO₂ (mortality rates of 17% and 23%, respectively)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; RR, relative risk.
REFERENCES


Vasopressors and Inotropes
Matthew C. Strehlow

BACKGROUND
Vasopressors and inotropes are vasoactive agents used to improve cardiac output and distribution of blood flow in patients suffering from shock. Vasopressors act by inducing vasoconstriction, while inotropes increase cardiac contractility; many vasoactive agents exhibit properties of both. Vasopressors and inotropes have been in widespread use since the 1940s, when Dr. Raymond Ahlquist differentiated alpha- and beta-adrenergic receptors, but to date, there is surprisingly little high-quality evidence demonstrating that vasoactive agents improve outcomes. Vasopressors and inotropes nevertheless continue to be fundamental to shock management, and an understanding of their individual pharmacodynamics is crucial for appropriate drug selection in critically ill patients.

Historically, vasopressors and inotropes have been used to improve global markers of hypoperfusion. Recent advances in tissue perfusion monitoring and use of biomarkers have expanded both the targeted goals of resuscitation and, consequently, the range of clinical scenarios in which vasoactive agents are employed. As our understanding of the physiologic response to shock states improves, tailoring resuscitative therapy to specific clinical scenarios and individual patients will become feasible.

PHYSIOLOGY
The categories of receptors targeted by vasopressors and inotropes include alpha-1, beta-1, and beta-2 adrenergic receptors and dopamine receptors (see Table 32.1). Alpha-1 receptor activation in vascular smooth muscle causes a rise in intracellular calcium and, correspondingly, smooth muscle contraction; the latter is manifested by vasoconstriction, mydriasis, and contraction of GI and urinary bladder sphincters. Beta-1 receptors are located primarily in the heart; activation of beta-1 receptors increases intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), which augments cardiac chronotropy, dromotropy, and inotropy. Beta-2 receptor activation in vascular smooth muscle leads to an elevation in cAMP and relaxation of vascular smooth muscle, producing peripheral vasodilation. Dopamine receptors exist in many body tissues; stimulation of these receptors causes vasodilation and increased blood flow to cerebral, coronary, renal, and mesenteric tissues, among others.
SPECIFIC VASOPRESSORS

Norepinephrine
Norepinephrine is recommended as the first-line vasopressor for septic shock once volume resuscitation has been achieved and for severe cardiogenic shock. It causes potent vasoconstriction with a corresponding increase in systolic, diastolic, and pulse pressure and has minimal net impact on cardiac output and heart rate. Coronary perfusion is augmented by elevated diastolic blood pressure and indirect release of local vasodilators. Prolonged use of exogenous norepinephrine can have direct toxic effects on cardiac myocytes (see Table 32.2).

Epinephrine
Epinephrine is recommended as the first-line vasopressor for cardiac arrest and anaphylaxis and as a second-line agent for septic shock. At low doses, epinephrine stimulates beta-1 receptors, subsequently increasing cardiac output by augmenting cardiac contractility and heart rate. Peripherally, epinephrine’s alpha-1 and beta-2 stimulation offset. Epinephrine enhances coronary blood flow by dilating coronary vessels and increasing diastolic blood pressure. At higher doses, epinephrine produces potent alpha-adrenergic stimulation, in addition to the increase in cardiac output, leading to peripheral vasoconstriction and an increase in systemic vascular resistance. Prolonged use of epinephrine can cause cardiac dysrhythmias and direct cardiac toxicity. Epinephrine also produces splanchnic vasoconstriction—to a greater degree than equipotent doses of norepinephrine and dopamine—although the clinical importance of this feature is unknown.

Dopamine
Dopamine is recommended for symptomatic bradycardia unresponsive to atropine and as a second-line agent for septic shock in patients who are at a low risk for dysrhythmias. Additionally, dopamine is an alternative to norepinephrine in patients with acute decompensated heart failure who have persistent hypotension and corresponding end-organ dysfunction. All patients receiving dopamine should be monitored for cardiac dysrhythmias; therapy should be discontinued if dysrhythmia is present.
### TABLE 32.2  Commonly Used Vasopressors and Inotropes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Clinical Indication</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Clinical Effect</th>
<th>Major Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catecholamines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dobutamine</td>
<td>Low cardiac output (decompensated heart failure, cardiogenic shock, septic shock with ongoing hypoperfusion despite fluid and vasopressor therapy)</td>
<td>Infusion: 2–20 μg/kg/min (max 40 μg/kg/min)</td>
<td>Increases cardiac output by increasing contractility and a less dramatic increase in heart rate</td>
<td>Tachycardia, Ventricular arrhythmias, Cardiac ischemia, Hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine</td>
<td>Symptomatic bradycardia, Shock (septic, cardiogenic, neurogenic)</td>
<td>Infusion: 2–20 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>Moderate doses increase cardiac output and systemic vascular resistance and higher doses provide an additional increase in systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>Ventricular arrhythmias, Cardiac ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epinephrine</td>
<td>Shock (anaphylactic, septic, cardiogenic, neurogenic), Cardiac arrest, Bronchospasm</td>
<td>Infusion: 0.01–0.1 μg/kg/min Bolus: 1 mg IV every 3–5 min (max 0.2 mg/kg) IM: (1:1,000): 0.1–0.5 mg (max 1 mg)</td>
<td>Lower doses increase cardiac output and higher doses add an increase in systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>Ventricular arrhythmias, Cardiac ischemia, Sudden cardiac death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoproterenol</td>
<td>Symptomatic bradycardia, Polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (torsades de pointes), Brugada syndrome</td>
<td>Infusion: 0.01–0.05 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>Increases heart rate and contractility and decreases systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>Ventricular arrhythmias, Cardiac ischemia, Hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norepinephrine</td>
<td>Shock (septic, cardiogenic, neurogenic, undifferentiated)</td>
<td>Infusion: 0.01–3 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>Increase in systemic vascular resistance with a net neutral effect on cardiac output and heart rate</td>
<td>Arrhythmias, Bradycardia, Peripheral ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine</td>
<td>Severe hypotension (vagally mediated or medication induced), Shock (septic or spinal) with a low systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>Infusion: 0.4–9.1 μg/kg/min Bolus: 0.1–0.5 mg IV every 10–15 min</td>
<td>Increase in systemic vascular resistance with a neutral to small increase in cardiac output if preserved cardiac function (decrease if preexisting cardiac dysfunction)</td>
<td>Reflex bradycardia, Severe peripheral and visceral vasoconstriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PDEs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milrinone</td>
<td>Low cardiac output (decompensated heart failure, cardiogenic shock)</td>
<td>Bolus: 50 μg/kg over 10–30 min Infusion: 0.375–0.75 μg/kg/min (adjust dose for renal impairment)</td>
<td>Increase in cardiac output with a reduction in preload, afterload, and systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>Ventricular arrhythmias (including torsades des pointes), Cardiac ischemia, Hypotension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
When administered therapeutically, dopamine acts on dopaminergic and adrenergic receptors to elicit a multitude of distinct clinical effects, depending on the dose given. At lower doses (0.5 to 3 mcg/kg/min), dopamine causes selective vasodilation of the renal, mesenteric, cerebral, and coronary vascular beds through its action on dopamine receptors. Note that when dopamine is used at these low doses, hypotension can occur. The clinical benefit of this “renal dose” dopamine has not been demonstrated, and use for renal protection is not recommended. At moderate doses (3 to 10 mcg/kg/min), dopamine predominantly stimulates beta-1 adrenergic receptors, augmenting cardiac output by increasing stroke volume and, somewhat variably, heart rate. Systemic vascular resistance is minimally elevated, and the overall effect is an increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP). At higher doses (>10 mcg/kg/min), stimulation of alpha-adrenergic receptors dominates, leading to vasoconstriction and increased systemic vascular resistance. Note that higher doses of dopamine can result in rapid development of tachyphylaxis.

Vasopressin

Vasopressin and its analog, terlipressin, are used primarily as second-line agents for refractory vasodilatory shock that is poorly responsive to epinephrine. In addition, sepsis management guidelines indicate that low-dose vasopressin can be added to norepinephrine, either to increase MAP or to decrease the required dose of norepinephrine. Vasopressin use as a single agent for septic shock, however, is not recommended. Vasopressin is a nonadrenergic peripheral vasoconstrictor that acts on V1 and V2 receptors, located in vascular smooth muscle and the renal collecting system, respectively. Administration of vasopressin causes marked vasoconstriction and increased systemic vascular resistance, with a neutral effect on cardiac output and a decrease in heart rate. Potential advantages of vasopressin include less direct cerebral vasoconstriction than...
with the use of catecholamines and relatively preserved vasopressor effects during hypoxemic and acidemic conditions. A fixed dose of vasopressin at 0.03 units/min is recommended; higher doses, while potentially more effective at restoring blood pressure, have been associated with coronary and mesenteric ischemia and skin necrosis. Since rapid withdrawal from vasopressin can result in rebound hypotension, a slow taper of 0.01 units/min every 30 minutes should be employed.

**Phenylephrine**
Phenylephrine is used in patients suffering severe hypotension with a low systemic vascular resistance (SVR < 700 dynes × sec/cm⁵), as seen in hyperdynamic sepsis and traumatic neurogenic shock. International sepsis guidelines, however, do not recommend phenylephrine unless other combinations of vasopressors are ineffective or cannot be used due to serious dysrhythmias. Phenylephrine is also recommended in patients with severe aortic stenosis and significant hypotension or to decrease the outflow tract gradient in patients with obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. In the setting of anesthetic or other iatrogenic-induced hypotension, bolus administration is often used for rapid blood pressure correction.

Phenylephrine causes potent vasoconstriction and a rise in systemic vascular resistance through alpha-adrenergic receptor activation. It produces almost no stimulation of beta-adrenergic receptors, and as a result, cardiac stroke volume may be decreased. Severe peripheral and visceral vasoconstriction can occur, and phenylephrine is contraindicated in patients with an elevated systemic vascular resistance (> 1,200 dyne × sec/cm⁵).

**SPECIFIC INOTROPES**

**Dobutamine**
Dobutamine is primarily used for three indications: (a) acute decompensated heart failure due to systolic dysfunction with signs of hypoperfusion and mild to moderate hypotension; (b) low-output cardiogenic shock, most often secondary to an acute myocardial infarction; and (c) septic shock patients who have ongoing signs of hypoperfusion despite appropriate fluid resuscitation and vasopressors. Surviving Sepsis Campaign Guidelines specifically recommend a trial of dobutamine for patients with myocardial dysfunction (demonstrated by an elevated cardiac filling pressure and persistently low cardiac output) or for patients with ongoing signs of hypoperfusion (e.g., low ScVO₂ or high lactate) despite adequate intravascular volume and MAP.

Dobutamine primarily stimulates beta-1 adrenergic receptors, which leads to increased inotropy and moderately increased chronotropy. The result is a rise in cardiac output. At low doses, ≤ 5 mcg/kg/min, dobutamine also produces beta-2 and mild alpha-1 receptor stimulation, which leads to a mild net peripheral vasodilation. Higher doses of 5 to 15 mcg/kg/min have a minimal net effect on systemic vascular resistance, and at doses > 15 mcg/kg/min, alpha-mediated vasoconstriction predominates peripherally—in addition to the primary effect of beta-1 stimulation. Even at low doses, dobutamine markedly increases myocardial oxygen consumption, and myocardial ischemia may result. Furthermore, dobutamine can lead to critical dysrhythmias. Likely as a result of these adverse side effects, dobutamine has never been demonstrated to decrease mortality in heart failure patients. It does, however, remain first-line therapy in low-output cardiogenic shock patients when inotropy is required.
Phosphodiesterase Inhibitors
Milrinone and inamrinone are used comparably to dobutamine in patients with acute decompensated heart failure due to systolic dysfunction with signs of hypoperfusion and mild to moderate hypotension and in patients with low-output cardiogenic shock. These agents, termed phosphodiesterase inhibitors (PDIs), act by blocking an enzyme that degrades cAMP in the cell, augmenting myocardial contractility, systemic vasodilation, and diastolic relaxation. The net clinical effect is a rise in cardiac output with a reduction in preload, afterload, and systemic vascular resistance. Milrinone is the most commonly used parenteral PDI, due in part to inamrinone’s significant side effects, including dose-related thrombocytopenia. To date, PDIs have not been shown to improve mortality in acute decompensated heart failure or cardiogenic shock. PDIs are second-line inotropic agents in most emergency settings, but may be considered in cases where dobutamine is not effective due to downregulation or desensitization of adrenergic receptors, as seen in (1) chronic heart failure patients, (2) chronic beta-agonist administration, or (3) outpatient beta-antagonist therapy.

Isoproterenol
Isoproterenol is infrequently administered; its use is primarily limited to second-line therapy for symptomatic bradycardia. It can be considered, however, for patients with polymorphic ventricular tachycardia, specifically for torsades de pointes associated with bradycardia and drug-induced QT prolongation, or Brugada syndrome. Isoproterenol should be avoided in polymorphic ventricular tachycardia associated with familial long QT syndrome. Through its isolated beta-adrenergic stimulation, isoproterenol causes increased heart rate and contractility and decreased systemic vascular resistance.

Calcium-Sensitizing Agents
Calcium sensitizers (e.g., levosimendan) are not approved for use in the United States, but are used in multiple other countries for acute decompensated heart failure. They act by increasing the responsiveness of contractile proteins to calcium without increasing intracellular calcium levels and by opening adenosine triphosphate–dependent potassium channels. Clinically, this leads to increased myocardial contractility, arterial and venous dilation, and preserved diastolic relaxation. The result is increased cardiac output and decreased preload, afterload, and systemic vascular resistance. Studies of levosimendan have not demonstrated a consistent mortality or other major outcome benefit when compared to dobutamine or placebo.

THERAPEUTIC APPROACH IN SHOCK
The majority of patients suffering shock in the emergency department are undifferentiated (e.g., septic shock vs. cardiogenic shock) at the time of their arrival. Caring for these patients requires immediate intervention to restore perfusion to critical organs and rapid identification of the underlying etiology of the patient’s illness. In patients who do not present with obvious signs of pulmonary edema, initial resuscitation focuses on rapid fluid administration to restore intravascular volume. If patients continue to display signs of shock following adequate fluid resuscitation, vasoactive agents should be initiated. Generally, vasopressors are indicated if the MAP is <60 mm Hg or the systolic blood pressure is >30 mm Hg below baseline in patients with signs of end-organ dysfunction.
due to hypoperfusion. In patients with severe hypotension and impending cardiopulmonary arrest, it is appropriate to begin vasopressors concurrently with fluid administration.

For patients presenting with undifferentiated or septic shock, norepinephrine is recommended as first-line therapy. Meta-analysis of six studies comparing norepinephrine to dopamine in septic shock patients demonstrated a modest improvement in survival in the norepinephrine group and an increase in cardiac dysrhythmias in the dopamine cohort. In contrast, multiple studies comparing benefits of other vasopressors in shock states have demonstrated equivalence in terms of mortality and length of stay.18–23

An estimate of cardiac output can help to guide therapy in patients that remain hypotensive despite norepinephrine administration. If cardiac output is persistently low (i.e., “cold shock”), dobutamine should be added as a second agent or therapy switched to epinephrine to improve cardiac performance.35 If cardiac output is normal or high (i.e., “warm shock”), vasopressin or phenylephrine can be added to norepinephrine therapy. Phenylephrine is also appropriate for patients who have significant tachycardia or dysrhythmias that preclude the use of norepinephrine or other agents with beta-adrenergic activity. Patients unresponsive to two vasopressors rarely benefit from the addition of a third. Instead, switching to alternative vasopressors is recommended.

If other forms of shock are suspected, the choice of vasoactive agent should be tailored appropriately. In cardiogenic shock patients, norepinephrine is the preferred initial agent if patients are significantly hypotensive (systolic blood pressure <80 mm Hg). In patients who respond to norepinephrine or whose systolic blood pressure is low but >80 mm Hg, a trial of dobutamine is indicated. Anaphylactic shock should be treated with epinephrine, while patients with neurogenic shock due to spinal cord injury should be treated with an agent that has both alpha-1 and beta-1 adrenergic activities (e.g., norepinephrine, epinephrine, dopamine).36

CONCLUSION

Vasopressors and inotropes are used to improve tissue perfusion during shock when volume resuscitation alone proves insufficient. Norepinephrine is the initial vasopressor of choice in most forms of shock, including patients lacking a clear etiology. When a low cardiac output exists and inotropy is desired, dobutamine is the recommended first-line therapy. Vasoactive agents should be titrated based on bedside and laboratory markers of tissue perfusion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasopressors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Backer et al., NEJM. 201019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patel et al., Shock 201021</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
REFERENCES


BACKGROUND
In the past several decades, advances in the development of antimicrobial agents have supplied the physician with dozens of drugs effective against bacterial, fungal, and viral pathogens. Unfortunately, these advances have been paralleled by increasing antibiotic resistance and the emergence of new pathogens. More than half of *Staphylococcus aureus* bloodstream infections in the United States now derive from methicillin-resistant strains, and hospitalizations due to vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE) infections doubled between 2003 and 2006.\(^1,2\) In recent years, infections due to extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL)–producing gram-negative organisms and *Clostridium difficile* have increased in frequency, while carbapenemase–producing pathogens have emerged and spread worldwide.\(^3-5\) The incidence of sepsis also appears to be increasing,\(^6-9\) driven by an aging population and an intensified use of immunosuppressive medications. Overall, the prevalence and complexity of infectious diseases are greater than ever. The appropriate, rational use of antibiotics in the emergency department and intensive care unit requires a thorough understanding of principles of therapy and our current arsenal of antibiotics.

CHOOSING AN INITIAL EMPIRIC REGIMEN

Clinical Factors to Consider
Presumptive Diagnosis
Because microbiologic data generally take 24 to 72 hours to return, clinicians are usually forced to choose an empiric antibiotic regimen when encountering a patient with a likely infection. Making a presumptive infectious disease diagnosis is a critical step in deciding on an antimicrobial regimen, as many diagnoses tend to be associated with a predictable set of pathogens. The clinician should take into account the patient’s signs and symptoms, physical exam, and basic workup including labs, urinalysis, chest x-ray, and other imaging studies as appropriate. Suggested empiric regimens for common serious infectious syndromes are described in Table 33.1.

Comorbidities
The choice of antibiotics depends in large part on the presence of comorbidities, especially the degree of immunosuppression. A history of HIV, corticosteroid or immunomodulator therapy, chemotherapy, organ transplant, malignancy, or congenital immunodeficiency
### TABLE 33.1 Recommendations for Initial Empiric Therapy for Common Serious Infections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Likely Pathogens</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens and Dose (For Normal Renal/Hepatic Function)</th>
<th>Typical Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulmonary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community-acquired pneumonia</td>
<td><em>Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, intracellular atypical organisms (Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydophila pneumoniae, Legionella), respiratory viruses</em>&lt;br&gt;<strong>S. aureus</strong> if IV drug user, recent influenza&lt;br&gt;<em>Pseudomonas</em> if structural lung disease (e.g., bronchiectasis, chronic obstructive lung disease [COPD] with frequent steroid use)</td>
<td>1. Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h + azithromycin 500 mg, then 250 mg PO/IV q24h, or&lt;br&gt;2. Moxifloxacin 400 mg PO/IV or Levofloxacin 750 mg PO/IV q24h (switch to PO as soon as can tolerate)&lt;br&gt;*For severely ill patients, consider adding vancomycin or linezolid for MRSA coverage&lt;br&gt;*Consider antipseudomonal coverage if risk factors present&lt;br&gt;*Consider adding oseltamivir if flu-like syndrome</td>
<td>7–10 d&lt;br&gt;Antithromycin can be given for 5 d, but longer if confirmed Legionella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital, health care–associated, or ventilator-associated pneumonia</td>
<td><em>S. aureus</em> (including MRSA) and aerobic GNRs, including <em>Pseudomonas, E. coli, K. pneumoniae,</em> and <em>Enterobacter</em>. Multidrug-resistant gram-negatives are common in ICU patients&lt;br&gt;*Role of anaerobes, even in nosocomial aspiration pneumonia, is unclear (but reasonable to add anaerobic coverage in that scenario)</td>
<td>1. Anti-MRSA agent: Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h or linezolid 600 mg PO/IV q12h&lt;br&gt;2. Antipseudomonal beta-lactam: Ceftazidime 2 g IV q8h, cefepime 2 g IV q8h, piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h, imipenem 500 mg IV q6h, or meropenem 1–2 g IV q8h; aztreonam 1–2 g IV q6h if severe penicillin allergy&lt;br&gt;*For severely ill patients, or if high risk of resistant gram-negative infection, also consider addition of “double coverage” with antipseudomonal fluoroquinolone (ciprofloxacin or levofloxacin), or aminoglycoside</td>
<td>7–8 d, but potentially longer for MRSA or <em>Pseudomonas</em> or immunocompromised&lt;br&gt;15-d course for <em>Pseudomonas</em> associated with decreased recurrence of disease (vs. 8 d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspiration pneumonia</td>
<td>Oral anaerobes, enteric GNRs, <em>S. aureus,</em> <em>Streptococcus</em> species</td>
<td>1. Levofloxacin 750 mg PO/IV q24h + metronidazole 500 mg PO/IV q8h, or&lt;br&gt;2. Clindamycin 600 mg PO/IV q8h (add levofloxacin if concern for community-acquired pneumonia), or&lt;br&gt;3. Ampicillin/Sulbactam 3 g IV q8h&lt;br&gt;*If nosocomial—treat as hospital-acquired pneumonia, with preference for piperacillin/tazobactam, imipenem, or meropenem for anaerobic coverage, or add clindamycin or metronidazole</td>
<td>7–10 d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Gastrointestinal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Microbiota Description</th>
<th>Treatment Options</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendicitis, diverticulitis, intra-abdominal abscess, secondary peritonitis</td>
<td>Polymicrobial GI flora including GNRs (especially <em>E. coli</em>) and anaerobes (especially <em>Bacteroides</em>)&lt;br&gt;For bowel perforation, microbiology depends on site. Upper GI tract (e.g., perforated duodenal ulcer) mainly <em>Streptococcus</em> species. Lower GI tract mainly GNRs and anaerobes&lt;br&gt;<em>Enterococcus</em> and <em>Candida</em> species usually less important, except in health care–associated cases.</td>
<td>1. Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h + metronidazole 500 mg IV q8h, or&lt;br&gt;2. Ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h or levofloxacin 500 mg IV q24h + Metronidazole (caution with Cipro due to poor <em>Streptococcus</em> coverage), or&lt;br&gt;3. Piperacillin/tazobactam 3.375 g IV q8h, or&lt;br&gt;4. Imipenem 500 mg IV q6h or meropenem 1 g IV q8h (if high risk for resistant infections)&lt;br&gt;*For severely ill or health care–/hospital-acquired disease, consider addition of <em>Enterococcal</em> and <em>Candida</em> coverage (especially if not responding to therapy)&lt;br&gt;*Caution with ampicillin/sulbactam alone due to high rates of <em>E. coli</em> resistance at some institutions.</td>
<td>4–7 d for appendicitis or diverticulitis&lt;br&gt;Duration for abscesses depends on adequate drainage, but typically minimum 4–7 d after drainage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) in patients with ascites</td>
<td>GNRs including <em>E. coli</em>, <em>Klebsiella</em>, <em>Enterobacter</em>. Also, enteric <em>Streptococcus</em> species and <em>Enterococcus</em>.</td>
<td>Cefotaxime 2 g IV q8h or ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h&lt;br&gt;+ Albumin 1.5 g/kg on day 1 and 1 g/kg on day 3 (shown to reduce renal failure and mortality)</td>
<td>5–7 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholangitis</td>
<td>Polymicrobial GI flora. Anaerobes if biliary-enteric anastomosis&lt;br&gt;<em>Enterococcus</em> coverage usually not required</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h, ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h, or levofloxacin 500 mg IV q24h&lt;br&gt;+ Metronidazole 500 mg IV q8h if biliary–enteric anastomosis&lt;br&gt;If severe or health care–associated infection, consider piperacillin/tazobactam or imipenem or meropenem.</td>
<td>4–7 d assuming adequate source control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Urinary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Microbiota Description</th>
<th>Treatment Options</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute pyelonephritis</td>
<td><em>E. coli</em> is most common, followed by other gram-negatives (<em>Proteus</em>, <em>Klebsiella</em>, <em>Escherichia</em>, <em>Enterobacter</em>) and <em>Staphylococcus saprophyticus</em></td>
<td>1. Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h, or&lt;br&gt;2. Ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h or levofloxacin 500 mg IV q24h (caution due to rising <em>E. coli</em> resistance), or&lt;br&gt;3. Cefepime 1–2 g IV q12h (especially if prior resistant organisms or <em>Pseudomonas</em>)</td>
<td>7–10 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complicated UTI (defined by presence of anatomic or functional abnormality in the genitourinary tract, or urinary catheter)</td>
<td>More likely to be due to resistant gram-negatives, including ESBLs and <em>Pseudomonas</em>. <em>S. aureus</em> is possible if chronic urinary catheters or stents. Also: <em>Enterococcus</em>, <em>Candida</em></td>
<td>1. If mildly ill—ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h or ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h or levofloxacin 500 mg IV q24h&lt;br&gt;2. If severely ill—cefepime 1–2 g IV q12h, or cefotaxime 1 g IV q8h, or carbapenem if high risk for ESBL, or history of prior infections. Consider adding vancomycin especially if history of prior MRSA infection, chronic urinary catheters, or stents.</td>
<td>10–14 d (longer if suspect prostatitis)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
TABLE 33.1 Recommendations for Initial Empiric Therapy for Common Serious Infections (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Likely Pathogens</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens and Dose (For Normal Renal/Hepatic Function)</th>
<th>Typical Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skin and Soft Tissue</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cellulitis | *Streptococcus* species (most commonly Group A), *S. aureus* including MRSA  
More unusual pathogens are possible depending on risk factors (i.e., water exposures, animal bites, neutropenia) | 1. IV options for *Streptococcus*, low suspicion for MRSA: cefazolin 2 g IV q8h, clindamycin 600 mg IV q8h  
2. IV options with MRSA coverage: vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h, linezolid 600 mg PO/IV q12h, daptomycin 4–6 mg/kg IV q24h, clindamycin 600 mg IV/PO q8h (but MRSA often resistant) | 7–14 d |
| Infected diabetic foot ulcer | *Streptococcus* species, *S. aureus* including MRSA, GNRs (*E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas*), anaerobes | 1. Moderate disease—ceftriaxone 2 g IV q24h, levofloxacin 750 mg PO/IV q24h, or cefepime 1–2 g IV q8h, all with metronidazole 500 mg PO/IV q8h  
2. Severe disease: vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h with antipseudomonal beta-lactam (ceftriaxone 2 g IV q8h, cefepime 2 g IV q12h), or aztreonam 2 g IV q8h with metronidazole 500 mg q8h, or piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h, imipenem 500 mg IV q6h, or meropenem 1 g IV q8h) | 7–21 d if no evidence of osteomyelitis |
| Necrotizing fasciitis | Type I is polymicrobial (gram-positives, gram-negatives and anaerobes)  
Type II is due to beta-hemolytic streptococci (usually group A *Streptococcus*), less commonly community-acquired MRSA | In addition to emergent surgical debridement:  
1. Anti-MRSA agent: Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h, consider loading dose of 2.5–30 mg/kg, or linezolid 600 mg IV q12h, or daptomycin 6 mg/kg IV q24h  
2. Broad-spectrum beta-lactam:  
   Piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h, imipenem 500 mg IV q6h, meropenem 1 g IV q8h alone, or  
   Cefepime 2 g IV q8–12 h + metronidazole 500 mg IV q8h  
* Consider addition of clindamycin 600–900 mg IV q8h for antitoxin effect versus *streptococci* and *staphylococci*. Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) may be beneficial in cases due to group A *Streptococcus* | Depends on clinical course but should continue at least until no more surgical debridement necessary and minimum of 10–14 d |
### Musculoskeletal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Empiric Antibiotics</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Septic arthritis                   | *S. aureus* including MRSA, *Streptococcus* species (especially group B *Streptococcus* in diabetics), *N. gonorrhoeae* (triad of pustular skin lesions, tenosynovitis, and arthritis), GNRs (Pseudomonas if IVDU) | 1. **Gram-positive cocci in clusters**: likely *S. aureus*, Vancomycin 15–20 mg IV q12h  
2. **Gram-negative cocci**: likely *Neisseria*, Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h  
3. GNRs: Cefepime 2 g IV q8–12h or ceftazidime 2 g IV q8h  
4. Negative Gram stain: Vancomycin + ceftriaxone, or vancomycin + cefepime or ceftazidime if risk factors for *Pseudomonas* | 2–4 wk   |

### Central Nervous System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Empiric Antibiotics</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Bacterial meningitis, community acquired | *S. pneumoniae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, *H. influenzae* species, *Listeria* if risk factors: Immuno compromised or age > 50, *Pseudomonas* if immuno compromised | Ceftriaxone 2 g IV q12h + vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q8h (target trough ~20 mcg/mL)  
*Add ampicillin 2 g IV q4h if at risk for *Listeria*  
*Substitute Ceftriaxone with cefepime 2 g IV q8h or meropenem 2 g IV q8h if immuno compromised  
*If severe beta-lactam allergies: Vancomycin + moxifloxacin or chloramphenicol (+ bacitracin if risk for *Listeria*)  
*Consider dexamethasone 0.15 mg/kg IV q6h, 15–20 min prior to antibiotics, in adults with suspected pneumococcal meningitis | Duration depends on pathogen (range 7–21 d)  
Steroids should be stopped after 4 d, or if the patient found to have another organism |
| Nosocomial meningitis               | *S. aureus*, coagulase-negative staphylococci, GNRs including *P. aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter* sp | Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q8h  
+ Cefepime 2 g IV q8h or Ceftazidime 2 g IV q8h or Meropenem 2 g IV q8h (Meropenem preferred over Imipenem due to less risk of seizures) | Duration depends on pathogen |

### Bloodstream

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Empiric Antibiotics</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Catheter-associated bloodstream infection | *S. aureus*, coagulase-negative staphylococci, Enterococci, GNRs (more likely with femoral lines or ICU patient), *Candida* (especially if receiving total parenteral nutrition) | Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h  
*Consider adding cefepime 1–2 g IV q8–12h, piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h, Imipenem 500 mg IV q8h, or meropenem 1 g IV q8h if severely ill, if suspected source is a femoral line, or otherwise at risk for resistant gram negatives  
*Consider echinocandins (Caspofungin, Micafungin, or Anidulafungin) if severely ill and high risk of *Candida* (e.g., TPN, immuno compromised, prolonged exposure to antibiotics) | Depends on pathogen and clinical course usually 7 d for Coag-neg Staph, 14 d for most other pathogens, 14 d is a minimum for *S. aureus* infections |

*(Continued)*
### TABLE 33.1 Recommendations for Initial Empiric Therapy for Common Serious Infections (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Likely Pathogens</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens and Dose (For Normal Renal/Hepatic Function)</th>
<th>Typical Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Neutropenic fever                | Oral and enteric streptococci, gram-negative rods including *Pseudomonas*, *Candida*, *S. aureus*, or coagulase-negative staphylococci in patients with indwelling lines | 1. Cefepime 2 g IV q8h  
2. Alternatives: Piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h, imipenem 500 mg IV q6h, or meropenem 1 g IV q8h  
*If severe beta-lactam allergy: Levofloxacin + aztreonam  
*Add Vancomycin if hypotensive or severely ill, pneumonia, suspected catheter-related infection, known colonization with MRSA or penicillin-resistant streptococci, recent prophylaxis with fluoroquinolones. Discontinue vancomycin if no evidence of MRSA after 48h  
*Add antifungal (Echinocandin, Voriconazole, or Amphotericin B) if persistently febrile after 4–7 d despite antibacterial therapy | Depends on duration of neutropenia and resolution of fever |
| Severe sepsis of unknown source  | Target both gram-positive and gram-negative organisms                           | Anti-MRSA agent: Vancomycin 15–20 mg IV q12h with loading dose of 25–30 mg/kg IV, or linezolid 600 mg PO/IV if contraindication to vancomycin. Alternative is daptomycin 6 mg/kg IV q24h if pulmonary source unlikely  
+ Anti-pseudomonal beta-lactam (ceftazidime 2 g IV q8h, cefepime 2 g IV q8h, piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h, imipenem 500 mg IV q6h, or meropenem 1 g IV q8h)  
+/- Anti-pseudomonal fluoroquinolone (ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h or levofloxacin 750 mg IV q24h), or aminoglycoside, or aztreonam 1–2 g IV q8h | Depends on clinical course and identification of source |

Organism Abbreviations: MSSA, methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; CA-MRSA, community-acquired MRSA; ESBL, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase producer; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*. 

---
drastically increases the range of pathogens that could be causing disease. Infections in immunocompromised hosts are discussed in detail in a separate chapter.

**Clinical Setting and Local Resistance Patterns**
It is important to determine whether the patient is likely to have a community-acquired or hospital-/health care–associated infection, as the latter is associated with more resistant organisms. For example, methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) and *Pseudomonas* are leading causes of hospital-acquired pneumonia, while they are rare in community-acquired cases. For patients with a health care–associated infection, knowledge of local resistance patterns can be very helpful in choosing an appropriate regimen.

**Recent Antibiotic Exposure**
A history of the patient’s recent antibiotic exposure should be elicited. A recent study of critically ill patients with gram-negative sepsis showed that patients who received antibiotics within the past 90 days were more likely to have resistant organisms, receive inappropriate initial therapy, and die. In particular, recent broad-spectrum antibiotic exposure is a risk factor for MRSA and multidrug-resistant *Pseudomonas, Acinetobacter,* and *Enterobacteriaceae.*

**Known History of Resistant Organism**
A history of colonization (or prior infection) with resistant pathogens should also be noted. Patients colonized with MRSA are at higher risk for developing MRSA-invasive infection. In one study of patients in whom nares cultures were obtained on hospital admission, 19% of those colonized with MRSA developed MRSA infection in the following year, compared to 2% whose were not colonized. Similar results have been noted in patients colonized with VRE.

**Level of Illness**
The acuity of the presentation dictates the breadth of coverage of the initial regimen, as well as the timing of therapy (discussed later in this chapter). Inappropriate initial antibiotic therapy (i.e., when the pathogen is later shown to be resistant in vitro) in patients with severe sepsis is associated with a fivefold increase in mortality risk. Therefore, when patients are severely ill, it is preferable to start with a broad-spectrum regimen; de-escalation can and should occur later as guided by microbiologic data. Conversely, a patient with a very mild presentation of an infection may not warrant broad-spectrum antibiotics at the onset.

**Antibiotic Allergies**
Taking an accurate allergy history prior to administration of antibiotics is necessary to avoid serious iatrogenic events. When assessing allergies, be sure to determine the severity of reaction and how long ago it occurred. For example, a history of anaphylaxis usually precludes reexposure under any circumstance, but patients with a remote history of mild rash or other vague symptoms can often be safely rechallenged. Penicillin allergies are common examples of this phenomenon, as fewer than 10% of patients who report penicillin allergies have a positive skin test. Avoid inappropriately labeling mild toxicities (e.g., gastrointestinal [GI] upset) as drug “allergies,” as this may prevent
future providers from administering drugs that may be vitally important. Skin testing and desensitization are not typically practical in the acute setting, and so with a history of a potential allergy, the clinician must weigh the risks and benefits of administering that antibiotic. In most scenarios, however, a reasonable alternate choice is available.

Pharmacologic Factors to Consider

Bactericidal Versus Bacteriostatic Therapy

A common distinction is made based on the mechanism of action of antimicrobial agents. Agents that act on the cell wall tend to be bactericidal and cause cell death; beta-lactams are the classic example. Other bactericidal drugs include daptomycin (which causes cell membrane depolarization) and fluoroquinolones (which disrupt bacterial DNA). Drugs that act on protein synthesis, such as tetracyclines, macrolides, and clindamycin, tend to be bacteriostatic and inhibit growth of the organism without killing it. However, these distinctions are not absolute, and clinical outcomes do not necessarily parallel the mechanism of action. Furthermore, the relative bactericidal or static nature of an antibiotic depends on the organism and the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC), defined as the lowest concentration of an antibiotic that inhibits growth of the organism. For example, vancomycin is considered to be a slowly bactericidal agent but is generally considered bacteriostatic against *Enterococcus*. As a general rule, bactericidal agents are preferred for serious infections such as endocarditis and meningitis.16

Mechanism of Killing

The two major types of “killing” exhibited by antibiotics are time-dependent killing, where efficacy depends on maximizing the time the antibiotic concentration is above the MIC, and concentration-dependent killing, where efficacy depends on achieving peak concentrations far above the MIC. Drugs that act via time-dependent killing include beta-lactams and vancomycin; those that act via concentration-dependent killing include aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, metronidazole, and daptomycin. The mechanism of killing has implications for dosing strategies. For time-dependent beta-lactams, there is increasing evidence that continuous or prolonged infusion strategies (to maximize time above the MIC) may lead to better microbiologic and possibly clinical outcomes in critically ill patients with resistant organisms.17–19 For concentration-dependent aminoglycosides, once-daily dosing strategies are in many circumstances as efficacious and less toxic than traditional q8h dosing.20

Sites of Penetration

Choosing an initial appropriate regimen requires knowledge of the distribution and penetration of antibiotics into different tissue compartments, as well as determination of the patient’s most likely site of infection. A particular antibiotic may match a pathogen under most circumstances, but if it does not act at the site of the infection, it will be clinically ineffective. Important examples of deficiencies in site penetration include the following:

- **Central nervous system**: First- and second-generation cephalosporins, macrolides, clindamycin, daptomycin, and aminoglycosides tend to have poor penetration and
are suboptimal for treatment of meningitis. Third-generation cephalosporins and carbapenems are better choices.

- **Lungs**: Daptomycin is inactivated by surfactant, making it ineffective for pneumonia. Beta-lactams and fluoroquinolones are better choices.

- **Urine**: Moxifloxacin does not achieve adequate levels in the urine, making it ineffective for urinary tract infections (UTIs). Levofloxacin and ciprofloxacin are better choices among the fluoroquinolones.

### Antibiotic Metabolism

The kidneys or the liver metabolize most antibiotics, and dysfunction in those organs may affect the dose or force the clinician to choose another drug class entirely. Dose adjustment for renal dysfunction in particular is frequently necessary; in these cases, creatinine should be routinely checked prior to antibiotic administration. Antibiotics whose dosing is dependent on renal function include vancomycin, aminoglycosides, and some beta-lactams; failure to account for this can lead to serious toxicities.

### Combination Therapy

In critically ill patients, it is common to use two or more antibiotics in an empiric regimen to cover a broad range of pathogens (e.g., combining vancomycin and cefepime to cover gram-positive and gram-negative infections). Other than this, the reasons to consider combination therapy are as follows:

- **To increase the likelihood of empiric therapy being active against the pathogen**: In severely ill patients in whom microbiologic data are still pending and who are at risk for resistant organisms, administration of two antibiotics with similar spectrum of activity (typically gram-negative activity) increases the chance that at least one antibiotic will be active against the suspected organism. This is the rationale for the use of two gram-negative agents in nosocomial pneumonia and is often considered in patients in whom *Pseudomonas* is suspected (see “Empiric *Pseudomonas* Therapy” below).

- **To achieve synergistic activity against an organism**: Combinations of antibiotics can be synergistic in vitro, where the combined effect of the agents is greater than each alone. This scenario, however, is relatively uncommon in clinical practice and is mainly limited to endocarditis due to aminoglycoside-susceptible strains of *Enterococcus* and some streptococci (the synergistic agents in those cases are beta-lactams and aminoglycosides). Use of aminoglycosides for synergy in *S. aureus* infections and endocarditis was more common in the past, but is used less commonly now due to weak evidence of benefit and strong evidence of nephrotoxicity.

- **To prevent emergence of resistance**: Certain organisms are prone to develop resistance when exposed to antimicrobial agents, and the simultaneous administration of several antimicrobials can decrease this risk. Examples include HIV and tuberculosis. This practice tends to be the exception rather than the norm in cases of routine bacterial pathogens, although it is often considered for *Pseudomonas*.

When combination therapy is used, antibiotics should be chosen from different classes (e.g., a beta-lactam plus a fluoroquinolone) in order to minimize overlapping
toxicities as well as possible pharmacologic antagonism. In particular, double beta-lactams should be avoided whenever possible.

**Empiric Pseudomonas Therapy**

An important consideration in choosing an empiric antimicrobial regimen is the need to cover *Pseudomonas*, a nonfermenting gram-negative bacillus notorious for both its inherent resistance to most antibiotics as well as its propensity to develop resistance. *Pseudomonas* is responsible for many nosocomial infections, including pneumonia, catheter-related infections, UTIs, and postsurgical infections. It also commonly affects immunocompromised patients (commonly causing neutropenic fever), those with cystic fibrosis, and burn patients. For immunocompetent patients, invasive *Pseudomonas* bacteremia at the time of hospital admission is rare. Based on a review of 4,114 episodes of gram-negative rod (GNR) bacteremia on admission, empiric antipseudomonal treatment in patients without immunodeficiency is warranted for patients with two or more of the following predictors: age >90 years, antimicrobial therapy within the preceding 30 days, presence of a central venous catheter, or presence of a urinary device. In this study, the percentage of episodes of GNR bacteremia that were due to *Pseudomonas* was 2% with no risk factors, 8% with one risk factor, and 28% with two risk factors.

For serious infections due to suspected *Pseudomonas*, it is generally recommended to “double cover” empirically with two antibiotics from different classes until susceptibilities are available, and then narrow to one drug. The rationale (as discussed in the “Combination Therapy” section above) is to increase the chance that one of the agents will be active against the isolate; this approach has been associated with improved mortality in patients with severe sepsis and gram-negative bacteremia.

The benefit of continuing double coverage after antibiotic susceptibilities are identified for *Pseudomonas* remains a long-standing point of controversy. Two meta-analyses published in 2004 reached conflicting results for the combination of beta-lactams and aminoglycosides in gram-negative and pseudomonal infections. One study showed no clinical benefit and increased nephrotoxicity; the other showed a mortality benefit in the subset of GNR bacteremia due to *Pseudomonas*. Despite this uncertainty, several experts do recommend continuing combination therapy for serious infections due to *Pseudomonas*, including bacteremia in neutropenic patients, endocarditis, meningitis, and possibly pneumonia. If double coverage is utilized, as either empiric or definitive therapy, the regimen should include a beta-lactam plus either a fluoroquinolone or an aminoglycoside. The antibiotics with activity against *Pseudomonas* are described in further detail later in this chapter.

**Empiric MRSA Therapy**

Choice of an appropriate empiric regimen is often driven by the need to cover MRSA, which is feared for both its virulence and its resistance to many antibiotics. Failure to initially include an agent with activity against MRSA, in those who turn out to have a MRSA infection, is associated with increased mortality. MRSA is typically categorized as community acquired or health-care associated; the two strains have different genetics and epidemiology, although the difference between them has begun to
blur. Risk factors for MRSA include known colonization or prior disease with MRSA, indwelling lines or hardware, prior antibiotic use, residence in a long-term care facility, immunosuppression, injection drug use, hemodialysis, and prolonged hospital stay. Therapy directed at MRSA should be considered in patients with risk factors, as well as in patients presenting with severe illness. Specific drugs with MRSA activity are detailed later in this chapter.

**Timing of Antimicrobial Therapy**

In critically ill patients, timely administration of antibiotics is essential. A retrospective study of 2,731 patients with septic shock found that time to appropriate antibiotic therapy was the factor most strongly associated with survival; each hour of delay after the onset of hypotension until administration of effective antibiotic therapy increased mortality by 7.6%. Similar results were reported in a recent single-center prospective cohort study of patients with severe sepsis or septic shock, where a delay in starting antibiotics more than 1 hour from hospital triage, or from the moment the patient qualified for early goal-directed therapy, increased in-hospital mortality risk by more than 50%. Administration of appropriate antibiotic therapy is also a medical emergency in bacterial meningitis and neutropenic fever. Practitioners should make every effort to obtain diagnostic blood (+/- cerebrospinal fluid, sputum, and urine) cultures prior to initiating antibiotics, but not at the cost of significant delay in starting antibiotics for critically ill individuals. In contrast, for stable patients, especially those for whom prolonged antimicrobial therapy is likely, it is crucial to obtain adequate specimen cultures prior to antibiotics. This sometimes requires invasive diagnostic tests and biopsies. Classic examples include subacute bacterial endocarditis and osteomyelitis, where symptoms have usually been present for weeks to months. In these situations, starting antibiotics before obtaining specimens for culture ultimately proves harmful, as the lack of a microbiologic diagnosis may lead to long treatment courses of excessively broad-spectrum antibiotics.

**CONTINUING ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY**

**Definitive Therapy and De-escalation**

Once the organism causing an infection has been identified, the antibiotic regimen should be narrowed in order to reduce costs, toxicities, and emergence of resistance. Failure to de-escalate antibiotics is unfortunately common in clinical practice, and in certain scenarios, such as hospital-acquired pneumonia, it may be associated with worse outcomes. The decision to de-escalate for a specific infection may be complicated by other concurrent infections; in the absence of multiple infections, every effort should be made to narrow to the simplest regimen possible.

An important principle of therapy is the appropriate discontinuation of anti-MRSA therapy after 48 to 72 hours of negative cultures, assuming that adequate cultures were drawn prior to antibiotics. MRSA is a pathogen that grows easily on culture medium, so failure to recover MRSA strongly suggests an alternate organism. A similar rationale should be used to discontinue or narrow broad-spectrum gram-negative agents, such as the carbapenems, in the absence of positive cultures.
**Interpretation of Antibiotic Susceptibility Results**

After a pathogenic organism is identified on culture, it is usually subjected to antimicrobial susceptibility testing, whereby the ability of the organism to grow in the presence of various antibiotics in vitro is measured and interpreted using guidelines established by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. A report of "susceptible" indicates likely inhibition of the organism when the antimicrobial agent is used at the recommended dosage; a report of "resistant" indicates the opposite. A report of "intermediate" indicates that the MIC of the drug falls within attainable blood and tissue levels, but the response rates may be reduced compared to susceptible organisms (and may even be ineffective in sequestered body sites). MICs of different agents for an organism are not directly comparable; an antibiotic with an MIC of 1 is not necessarily superior to a different antibiotic with a reported MIC of 2. The susceptibility data are very useful but are subject to important limitations:

- **Not all antibiotics to which an organism is susceptible are equally effective:** Although an organism may be susceptible to multiple antibiotics, clinical evidence often points to a superior match. For example, methicillin-susceptible *S. aureus* (MSSA) is susceptible to both vancomycin and nafcillin; however, nafcillin (and cefazolin) has a much higher clinical success rate than vancomycin for serious infections. Only in the case of a severe beta-lactam allergy should vancomycin be used over nafcillin or cefazolin. Similarly, *C. difficile* is uniformly susceptible to intravenous or oral metronidazole and oral vancomycin; however, oral vancomycin is associated with superior cure rates, especially in severe infections.

- **Some organisms carry enzymes that mediate resistance in vivo to antibiotics that are active in vitro:** For example, ESBLs, which are enzymes that confer resistance to almost all beta-lactams except carbapenems, may not be apparent on routine testing. One prospective study of patients with bacteremia from ESBL *Klebsiella pneumoniae* showed that use of carbapenems was associated with significantly lower short-term mortality than was use of other antibiotics that were active in vitro.

- **Inducible chromosomal resistance may not be detected on initial susceptibility testing:** Some Enterobacteriaceae produce an inducible chromosomal beta-lactamase that can be expressed during antimicrobial therapy. Although initial tests may report susceptibility, clinical failure and development of resistance to beta-lactams occasionally occur with agents other than fourth-generation cephalosporins and carbapenems. This is a risk with the so-called “SPICE A” group of organisms: *Serratia, Pseudomonas, Indole-positive Proteus, Citrobacter, Enterobacter,* and *Acinetobacter.*

**Duration of Therapy**

The optimal duration of therapy for many types of infections is based on expert opinion rather than well-designed studies. There are, however, several important publications that have defined optimal courses of therapy, usually with an emphasis on shorter courses. One frequently cited study compared 8 versus 15 days of therapy for ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) diagnosed by bronchoalveolar lavage and found similar outcomes between the courses. Another meta-analysis of studies examining antibiotic courses for community-acquired pneumonia reported successful treatment of mild
to moderate cases within 7 days or fewer. The appropriate duration of therapy will ultimately be determined by the clinical response to therapy, pathogen-specific factors, and host factors. For example, the study that examined the 8-day course of antibiotics for VAP excluded immunocompromised patients, and the optimal duration of therapy for this population remains unknown. Furthermore, patients in that study with Pseudomonas as the pathogen causing VAP had increased recurrence rates with the shorter course; this has led to recommendations that longer courses of therapy be used in this scenario. Although many studies have emphasized short durations of therapy, certain deep-seated infections (such as endocarditis and osteomyelitis) clearly require prolonged courses of therapy to minimize relapse and treatment failure.

Clinical improvement is usually monitored by resolution of symptoms and normalization of laboratory values. Radiologic improvement can sometimes be misleading and lag behind clinical improvement. The importance of microbiologic cure depends on the type of infection; it is a crucial factor in bacteremia where failure to clear blood cultures generally indicates inadequate antimicrobial therapy and/or source control.

**Route of Administration**

For critically ill patients, an initial intravenous route of administration is generally preferable. However, several antibiotic classes have excellent bioavailability, making transition to oral therapy easy. These include fluoroquinolones, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, metronidazole, clindamycin, azithromycin, and linezolid. Beta-lactams tend to have poor bioavailability, making the oral route for this class inappropriate for most serious or deep-seated infections. Even for those drugs with good bioavailability, an oral route is generally considered to be less effective than intravenous therapy for certain serious infections such as endocarditis, meningitis, and S. aureus bacteremia.

**OVERVIEW OF MAJOR ANTIBIOTIC CLASSES**

An overview of the mechanism, spectrum, common indications, and side effects of the major antibiotic classes is presented in Tables 33.2 to 33.5.

**CONCLUSION**

Today, our armamentarium of antibiotics is greater than ever, but so is the diversity of pathogens and their resistance to many common antibiotics. Choosing an empiric initial regimen and subsequently deciding on appropriate therapy can be complicated, but both are vital in determining patient outcome. After making a presumptive diagnosis, the physician must consider factors such as the patient's setting (community vs. nosocomial), degree of immunosuppression, level of illness, prior history of infections or colonization with resistant organisms, and recent antibiotic exposure. Knowledge of the pharmacologic characteristics of available antimicrobial agents may mean the difference between life and death, particularly in critically ill patients with sepsis. Although infectious disease problems are rarely straightforward, there are few things in medicine more satisfying than seeing a sick patient rapidly brought back to health by wise and informed decisions on the use of antimicrobial therapy.
TABLE 33.2  Major Antibiotic Classes: Beta-Lactams

- Mechanism: bind penicillin-binding proteins in the cell membrane and inhibit cell wall cross-linking (bactericidal). Beta-lactams exhibit time-dependent killing.
- Highly variable spectrum depending on antibiotic, but in general none have activity against MRSA (except Ceftaroline), and none have activity against atypical intracellular organisms (e.g., Legionella, Mycoplasma, Chlamydia).
- Most oral beta-lactams have poor bioavailability and achieve low serum concentrations. Intravenous therapy should be given for serious or deep-seated infections.
- Clinical cross-reactivity with penicillin and cephalosporins/carbapenems is very low: of those with a positive penicillin skin test, ~2% will have a cephalosporin reaction, and <1% will have a carbapenem reaction.
- There is no cross-reactivity between penicillin and aztreonam; however, cross-reactivity between aztreonam and ceftazidime has been reported (due to an identical side chain).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penicillins</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin (IV or PO)</td>
<td>Gram positives (many strains of streptococci, minority of staphylococci, some Enterococci), most oral anaerobes, syphilis. Limited gram-negative coverage</td>
<td>Strep throat and other infections due to group A Streptococci, Syphilis, bacteremia/endocarditis due to sensitive Streptococci, Enterococci, or S. aureus (&lt;10% of S. aureus strains are penicillin sensitive)</td>
<td>For most situations, generally start with broader antibiotics until pathogen and susceptibilities identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aminopenicillins:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin (PO)</td>
<td>Some gram-positives (Streptococci, Enterococci, Listeria) but not S. aureus, and limited gram-negative coverage</td>
<td>Upper respiratory infections, sinusitis, otitis media, cellulitis, Listeria infections, UTIs, early Lyme disease (alternative to Doxycycline), and more. Drug of choice for most enterococcal infections</td>
<td>Often combined with aminoglycosides for synergy in serious enterococcal infections and endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antistaphylococcal Penicillins:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nafcillin, Oxacillin (IV)</td>
<td>Gram positives (MSSA and streptococci). Drug of choice for MSSA infections. No MRSA coverage and coagulase-negative staphylococci are usually resistant. No gram-negative or anaerobic coverage</td>
<td>Cellulitis, other infections from MSSA (osteomyelitis, endocarditis, bacteremia, etc.)</td>
<td>For all serious MSSA infections, the entire course of therapy should be given intravenously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penicillin/Beta-Lactamase Inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin/Clavulanate (PO)</td>
<td>Gram positives (MSSA, streptococci, enterococci), some gram negatives, and anaerobes. Notable lack of activity against Pseudomonas and Acinetobacter</td>
<td>Sinusitis, respiratory infections, otitis media, some skin/soft tissue infections (including bite wounds), and more</td>
<td>Fairly broad-spectrum oral agent with good bioavailability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 33

#### Principles of Antimicrobial Therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug Combination</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Indications</th>
<th>Precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin/Sulbactam (IV)</td>
<td>Similar spectrum to amoxicillin/clavulanate, except has activity against most Acinetobacter (sulbactam component has activity)</td>
<td>Similar situations as for amoxicillin/clavulanate but where IV form is desirable; also, some intra-abdominal and GYN infections, aspiration pneumonia and lung abscesses, and more</td>
<td>Caution for polymicrobial intra-abdominal infections due to high rate of resistance of E. coli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperacillin/Tazobactam (IV)</td>
<td>Similar spectrum to ampicillin/sulbactam (gram-positive, gram-negative, anaerobic coverage), but better overall gram-negative coverage, including Pseudomonas</td>
<td>Hospital-acquired/health care–associated pneumonia, severe skin/soft tissue infections, including diabetic foot ulcers, intra-abdominal infections, and severe UTIs, due to suspected resistant organisms</td>
<td>Note higher dosing for Pseudomonas coverage: 4.5 g q6h (vs. 3.375 g q6h for other indications)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cephalosporins

*Note: No cephalosporin covers Enterococcus (except Ceftaroline). Only ceftazidime and cefepime cover Pseudomonas. Only cefoxitin and ceftetan have good anaerobic coverage.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generation</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Coverage</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>Cefazolin (IV)</td>
<td>Good gram-positive coverage (MSSA and streptococci). Limited gram negative (Proteus, E. coli, Klebsiella). No anaerobic activity</td>
<td>Mild–moderate nonpurulent cellulitis (if MRSA not suspected). Cefazolin often used for prophylaxis prior to surgery. Can be used for UTIs (especially during pregnancy)</td>
<td>Cefazolin is first-line option for severe MSSA infections in patients allergic to nafcillin (for non-severe allergies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cephalexin (PO)</td>
<td>Good gram-positive coverage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Cefuroxime (PO or IV)</td>
<td>Gram positives and more gram-negatives than first generation (gains activity against H. influenzae, Enterobacter, Neisseria). No anaerobic activity</td>
<td>Respiratory infections (upper and lower tract), gonorrhea, UTIs, Lyme disease (alternative to doxycycline)</td>
<td>Useful oral option for community-acquired pneumonia caused by penicillin-susceptible S. pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cephalexin (IV)</td>
<td>Gram negatives and anaerobes, but no Pseudomonas and poor gram-positive coverage</td>
<td>UTIs, nonsevere intra-abdominal infections, pelvic/gynecologic infections</td>
<td>Bacteroides fragilis has high rates of resistance, so avoid for serious intra-abdominal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefotetan (IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone (IV)</td>
<td>Gram-positives (MSSA, streptococci) and good gram-negative coverage (but not Pseudomonas). Limited anaerobic activity</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone used for community-acquired pneumonia (with azithromycin), community-acquired meningitis, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, some skin/soft tissue infections, bacteremia/endocarditis from susceptible streptococci, UTIs and pyelonephritis, bone and joint infections, late Lyme disease, gonorrhea, pelvic infections, and more</td>
<td>Small but important rate of resistance in S. pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefotaxime (IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ceftriaxone usually once-daily dosing (1–2 g) except for meningitis (2 g IV q12h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefpodoxime (PO)</td>
<td>Covers Pseudomonas and other gram negatives. Virtually no gram-positive or anaerobic coverage</td>
<td>Used for many situations where Pseudomonas infection is suspected</td>
<td>Option for empiric neutropenic fever treatment, but lack of streptococcal and staphylococcal coverage makes cefepime a better choice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Third/Fourth | Ceftazidime (IV) | Covers Pseudomonas and other gram negatives. Virtually no gram-positive or anaerobic coverage | Used for many situations where Pseudomonas infection is suspected | | (Continued) |
### TABLE 33.2: Major Antibiotic Classes: Beta-Lactams (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fourth Generation</th>
<th>Cefepime (IV)</th>
<th>Broad spectrum: Gram positives (MSSA, streptococci) and gram-negatives (including <em>Pseudomonas</em>), but lacks anaerobic coverage</th>
<th>Empiric neutropenic fever, hospital-acquired pneumonia, complicated UTIs, nosocomial meningitis, and more</th>
<th>Beware central nervous system (CNS) toxicity: encephalopathy, altered mental status, and seizures in the elderly and those with renal failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fifth Generation</td>
<td>Ceftacline (IV)</td>
<td>Broad gram-positive coverage, including MRSA, vancomycin-intermediate and vancomycin-resistant <em>S. aureus</em>, streptococci, and <em>Enterococcus faecalis</em> including vancomycin-resistant strains (less activity against <em>E. faecium</em>). Similar gram-negative coverage as ceftiraxone (no <em>Pseudomonas</em>). Limited anaerobic activity</td>
<td>FDA approved only for complicated skin/soft tissue infections and community-acquired pneumonia (but increasingly being used for other indications—bone/joint infections, refractory MRSA bacteremia, etc.)</td>
<td>Newest cephalosporin (approved in 2010) and only beta-lactam with activity against MRSA. Only cephalosporin with activity versus <em>Enterococcus</em> (but rarely used for this purpose)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbapenems</td>
<td>Imipenem/Cilastin</td>
<td>Broadest-spectrum antibiotics that cover gram positives (MSSA, streptococci, some enterococci), gram-negatives including <em>Pseudomonas</em> (except Ertapenem) and ESBLs, and anaerobes</td>
<td>Many serious infections due to resistant gram negatives including hospital and health care-associated pneumonia, meningitis, intra-abdominal infections, complicated skin and soft tissue infections. The most reliable class of antibiotics against ESBL organisms</td>
<td>Ertapenem has no activity against <em>Pseudomonas</em> but has the advantage of once-daily dosing. Imipenem has highest risk of seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meropenem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doripenem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ertapenem (all IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monobactam</td>
<td>Aztreonam (IV)</td>
<td>Active against aerobic gram negatives including <em>Pseudomonas</em> (but high rates of resistance). No activity against gram positives or anaerobes</td>
<td>Hospital-acquired/health care–associated pneumonia, UTIs, intra-abdominal infections, sepsis, skin and soft tissue infections. Often used in combination with other agents with gram-positive activity</td>
<td>No cross-reactivity with penicillin allergy and minimal toxicity. Consider second agent for empiric double coverage for <em>Pseudomonas</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side effects for all beta-lactams: Hypersensitivity reactions including anaphylaxis and rash, bone marrow suppression, interstitial nephritis, GI effects (nausea, diarrhea, and *C. difficile*), and seizures (mainly with high doses in renal failure).

Organism Abbreviations: MSSA, methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; CA-MRSA, community-acquired MRSA; ESBL, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase producer; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*. 
Table 33.3: Major Antibiotic Classes: Non–Beta Lactam Antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macrolides</strong>—Mechanism: Reversibly bind to the 50S ribosomal subunit (static)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azithromycin</td>
<td>Excellent for atypical intracellular organisms (Chlamydia, Mycoplasma, Legionella). Limited activity against gram-positives (staphylococci, streptococci), some gram-negatives, and syphilis. Also have activity against some nontuberculous mycobacteria</td>
<td>Azithromycin most commonly used: bronchitis, COPD exacerbations, community-acquired pneumonia (combined with ceftriaxone for patients ill enough to require hospitalization), sinusitis, strep throat in penicillin-allergic patients, and more</td>
<td>Azithromycin is the drug of choice for atypical organisms. Erythromycin now used mostly as GI motility agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythromycin</td>
<td>(PO or IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarithromycin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(PO or IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side effects: QT prolongation, GI side effects, and rash

**Tetracyclines and Glycylcycline**—Mechanism: Reversibly bind to 30S ribosomal subunit (static)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>Gram positives (MSSA and community-acquired MRSA), some gram-negative coverage, and atypical organisms. Active against many unusual pathogens (Rickettsia, Lyme disease, Tularemia, Vibrio, Q fever, Anthrax)</td>
<td>Skin and soft tissue infections when suspect community-acquired MRSA, respiratory tract infections, early Lyme disease, and other unusual infections. Often part of empiric therapy in toxic-appearing patients with fever and rash</td>
<td>Poor streptococcal coverage, combine with beta-lactam when using for cellulitis. Doxycycline is generally the preferred tetracycline due to bid dosing, and no food interactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
<td>(PO or IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minocycline</td>
<td>Member of glycylcycline class that is structurally similar to tetracyclines. Broad coverage—gram positives (including streptococci, MRSA and vancomycin-resistant enterococci [VRE], gram-negatives, anaerobes, and atypicals). Lacks activity against Pseudomonas, Proteus, and Providencia.</td>
<td>Complicated intra-abdominal infections, skin/soft tissue infections, and pneumonia. Can occasionally be used against multidrug-resistant gram-negative pathogens, including some ESBL and carbapenemase-producing strains (check sensitivities).</td>
<td>Caution: Overall increased risk of death when used for severe infections, and high rate of failure for hospital-acquired and VAP. Low serum concentration (distributes widely into tissues)—poor choice for bacteremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side effects: Photosensitivity, GI discomfort, teeth discoloration, inhibition of bone growth in children, teratogenicity, hepatosteatosis, and hepatotoxicity

**Lincosamide**—Mechanism: Reversibly binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit (static)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>Excellent activity against anaerobes (but resistance common in Bacteroides) and gram-positive cocci (streptococci and staphylococci), including some community-acquired MRSA, but not enterococci. No gram-negative activity</td>
<td>Skin/soft tissue infections, pelvic infections, lung abscesses, sinusitis. Also used often for its antitoxin effect in toxic shock syndrome or necrotizing fasciitis due to group A Streptococcus (less evidence for MRSA).</td>
<td>High rate of resistance among Bacteroides so avoid for intra-abdominal infections. Check D-test for S. aureus infections to rule out inducible resistance. No CNS penetration, so avoid for brain abscesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(PO or IV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side effects: GI intolerance and high rate of C. difficile

(Continued)
### TABLE 33.3 Major Antibiotic Classes: Non–Beta Lactam Antibiotics (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aminoglycosides—Mechanism: Irreversibly bind to the 30S ribosomal subunit (cidal)</td>
<td>Gentamicin: Aerobic gram negatives including <em>Pseudomonas</em>. No activity against gram positives (except when used for synergy) or anaerobes</td>
<td>Usually used in combination with other agents for serious gram-negative infections, especially when <em>Pseudomonas</em> is suspected (pneumonia, bacteremia, UTIs). Used with beta-lactams against gram-positive organisms for synergistic effect (mainly endocarditis)</td>
<td>Avoid as monotherapy for <em>Pseudomonas</em> bacteremia due to associated high mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tobramycin: Same as above.</td>
<td>Multiple dosing strategies exist (once/daily, traditional multiple times/daily, synergy dosing)</td>
<td>Evidence for synergy is best for enterococcal and streptococcal infections (depending on the MIC), Weak clinical evidence for synergy against <em>S. aureus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amikacin: All IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoroquinolones—Mechanism: DNA gyrase and topoisomerase inhibitors (bactericidal)</td>
<td>Ciprofloxacin: Best gram-negative coverage of quinolones (including <em>Pseudomonas</em>), but virtually no gram-positive coverage. Lacks anaerobic coverage. Good atypical coverage</td>
<td>UTIs and pyelonephritis, double coverage of <em>Pseudomonas</em> including for hospital-acquired pneumonia, bone and joint infections, prostatitis, GI/intra-abdominal coverage (often with Flagyl), traveler’s diarrhea. Also effective against anthrax</td>
<td>Not used for community-acquired pneumonia due to lack of <em>S. pneumoniae</em> coverage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Due to availability of alternate agents (fosfomycin, nitrofurantoin), should be second line for uncomplicated UTIs (also due to rising <em>E. coli</em> resistance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Levofloxacin: Gram-positive coverage: mainly <em>streptococci</em> (especially <em>S. pneumoniae</em>), limited staphylococcal coverage. Good gram-negative coverage including <em>Pseudomonas</em>. Excellent for atypicals</td>
<td>Used for community-acquired pneumonia (can use as monotherapy), sinusitis/bronchitis, UTIs, pyelonephritis, and double coverage of <em>Pseudomonas</em> including hospital-acquired pneumonia</td>
<td>Gram-negative coverage is comparable to ciprofloxacin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dose at 750 mg PO/IV for pneumonia to increase <em>S. pneumoniae</em> coverage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moxifloxacin: Similar to levofloxin but no <em>Pseudomonas</em> activity</td>
<td>Community-acquired pneumonia as monotherapy, sinusitis/bronchitis</td>
<td>Although approved for intra-abdominal infections, rising resistance in <em>Bacteroides</em>. Therefore, do not use as monotherapy for intra-abdominal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Best gram-positive, atypical, and anaerobic coverage out of the quinolones</td>
<td>Cannot use for UTIs due to poor urine penetration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side effects: Nephrotoxicity (manifests after 3–5 d, usually reversible), vestibular and oto toxicity (irreversible). If using long-term, check baseline audiology test and q2 wk.

Ciprofloxacin: PO or IV
Levofloxacin: PO or IV
Moxifloxacin: PO or IV

Side effects: QT prolongation, tendon rupture (especially if on steroids), GI intolerance, cartilage damage, rare dysglycemias, diziness/HAs, rashes, teratogenicity, transaminitis. Fluoroquinolones also recently associated with increased risk of retinal detachment. High rate of *C. difficile*
Sulfonamides—Mechanism: Inhibit sequential steps in folate synthesis. Individually, components are static, but combination often cidal.

| **Trimethoprim/Sulfamethoxazole** (PO or IV) | **Gram positives** (S. aureus including most CA-MRSA, some S. pneumoniae, and some gram-negatives, but not Pseudomonas). No anaerobic activity. Notable differences from other agents are its activity against *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (PCP), *Nocardia*, *Toxoplasma*, *Listeria*, *bosispora*, and *Stenotrophomonas*. | **Many purposes including PCP pneumonia (drug of choice, both for treatment and prophylaxis), CA-MRSA skin/soft tissue infections, UTIs, nocardiosis, *Listeria* infections in penicillin-allergic patients, *Salmonella* infections, traveler's diarrhea, acute bronchitis, and otitis media** | **Best oral agent for CA-MRSA (except for Linezolid), but for empiric cellulitis, consider combining with a beta-lactam due to poor streptococcal coverage.**

Side effects: Common—hypersensitivity (sulfas) and rashes, GI side effects, dose-dependent bone marrow suppression, increased creatinine (both from pseudocreatinine elevation due to blocked creatinine secretion into tubules, and true kidney injury from interstitial nephritis and acute tubular necrosis), hyperkalemia (dose dependent, especially in chronic kidney disease). Uncommon—aseptic meningitis, methemoglobinemia and hemolysis in glucose-6-phosphate deficiency, transaminitis and cholestasis, and pancreatitis.

| **Nitroimidazole**—Mechanism: selectively taken up by anaerobic bacteria and reduced by proteins in the electron transport chain, leading to DNA disruption (cidal) | **Anaerobes (including C. difficile), and protozoa: Giardia, Trichomonas, Entamoeba histolytica, also Helicobacter pylori (part of triple therapy). No activity against aerobic gram-positive or gram-negative organisms** | **Anaerobic infections, usually in conjunction with other agents (since anaerobes generally part of a polymicrobial infection). Also used for mild-moderate *C. difficile*, and for the listed protozoal infections** | **Excellent anaerobic drug, but with notable lack of activity against *Propionibacterium acnes*. Excellent oral bioavailability. Not well tolerated long term due to side effects.**

Side effects: Nausea, diarrhea, metallic taste, dose-dependent and possibly cumulative peripheral neuropathy; and also disulfiram effect with ethanol.

Organism Abbreviations: MSSA, methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; CA-MRSA, community-acquired MRSA; ESBL, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase producer; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*. 
### Major Antibiotic Classes: Anti-MRSA Antibiotics

- Other intravenous antibiotics with activity against MRSA, but not listed in the table, include ceftaroline, tigecycline, quinupristin–dalfopristin, and telavancin
- In general, community-acquired MRSA has broader susceptibility to antibiotics, including trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline, and clindamycin
- The antibiotics listed below also have reliable activity against coagulase-negative staphylococci. Daptomycin, linezolid, tigecycline, and quinupristin–dalfopristin also have activity against most vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Common Indications</th>
<th>Authors’ Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glycopeptide</strong>—Mechanism: Inhibits cell wall synthesis in gram positives by binding to a protein that is distinct from the penicillin-binding proteins (cidal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vancomycin (IV)</td>
<td>Purely gram-positive agent with activity against staphylococci (including MRSA), streptococci, and non-VRE Enterococcus. Considered the gold standard for MRSA infections. Oral form is not absorbed and is used for severe C. difficile. No activity against gram negatives or anaerobes</td>
<td>Many situations with suspected or proven gram-positive infections including bacteremia, meningitis, pneumonia, skin/soft tissue, and more. Drug of choice for gram-positive infections in patients with severe beta-lactam allergy</td>
<td>Slowly bactericidal drug that is inferior to nafcillin and cefazolin for MSSA infection. Avoid for MRSA if MIC ≥2 (increased treatment failure). Typical dosing = 15–20 mg/kg q12h (actual body weight), higher in critically ill patients. Adjust for renal function. Goal trough for serious infection 15–20 mg/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side effects: Red man syndrome due to histamine release, nephrotoxicity (acute tubular necrosis), otoxicity (reversible), and bone marrow suppression (leukopenia &gt; thrombocytopenia)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Oxazolidinone**—Mechanism: Ribosomal inhibitor—different site than other protein synthesis inhibitors (static) |
| Linezolid (PO or IV) | Virtually all gram positives including streptococci, MRSA, and VRE. Also has good activity against tuberculosis. No gram-negative coverage. Limited anaerobic activity | Skin/soft tissue infections, hospital-acquired pneumonia with proven or suspected MRSA, and various VRE infections. Sometimes used as part of a second-line regimen for tuberculosis | Oral form is virtually 100% bioavailable. Cost of drug and long-term toxicity is often prohibitive for outpatient use |
| Side effects: Bone marrow suppression, especially thrombocytopenia. Linezolid is a monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitor—risk of serotonin syndrome with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), so avoid coadministration. Long-term usage can lead to mitochondrial toxicity (lactic acidosis, peripheral neuropathy, optic neuritis, and blindness). |

| **Lipopeptide**—Mechanism: Forms transmembrane channels and depolarizes cells (cidal). |
| Daptomycin (IV) | Purely gram-positive activity including MRSA, streptococci, and Enterococcus including VRE. No activity against gram negatives or anaerobes | Complicated skin/soft tissue infections, also being used more for MRSA bacteremia/ endocarditis, and various infections due to VRE | Cannot use for pneumonia (lacks activity in lung parenchyma due to inactivation by surfactant) |
| Side effects: Muscle toxicity (myalgias, rhabdomyolysis) so need to check baseline and weekly creatine kinase level, and discontinue statins. Also, peripheral neuropathy, GI side effects, and pain at injection site |

Organism Abbreviations: MSSA, methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; CA-MRSA, community-acquired MRSA; ESBL, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase producer; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*. 
Chapter 33  ■  Principles of Antimicrobial Therapy  433

TABLE 33.5  Major Antibiotic Classes: Antipseudomonal Antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antipseudomonal Beta-Lactams</th>
<th>Non–Beta Lactam Antipseudomonal Drugs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Piperacillin/Tazobactam and Ticarcillin/Clavulanate</td>
<td>Fluoroquinolones—Ciprofloxacin and Levofloxacin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note higher rates of resistance to ticarcillin than piperacillin</td>
<td>Moxifloxacin does not have activity against <em>Pseudomonas</em>. Ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin are usually used as second agents, not as monotherapy for empiric <em>Pseudomonas</em> treatment due to relatively high rates of resistance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbapenems (Meropenem, Imipenem, Doripenem)</th>
<th>Aminoglycosides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Note: Ertapenem has no pseudomonal activity. Doripenem has greater in vitro potency against <em>Pseudomonas</em>, but clear clinical benefit has yet to be demonstrated</td>
<td>On average, amikacin &gt; tobramycin &gt; gentamicin for antipseudomonal activity. Should not be used as monotherapy for serious <em>Pseudomonas</em> infections due to worse outcomes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ceftazidime, Cefepime</th>
<th>Polymyxins—Colistin (Polymyxin E) and Polymyxin B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Both have reliable activity against <em>Pseudomonas</em></td>
<td>Generally last-line agents when the pathogen has become resistant to all other options (historically high rates of renal and neurologic toxicities)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aztreonam

| High rates of resistance at most institutions, so use only if penicillin allergic, and empirically double-cover with a second agent (fluoroquinolone or aminoglycoside) |

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kumar et al., <em>Chest</em>. 2009</td>
<td>Multicenter retrospective cohort study of 5,715 patients with septic shock</td>
<td>Survival in the group that received initial appropriate antimicrobial therapy was five times as high as in the initial inappropriate antimicrobial therapy group; inappropriateness of initial antimicrobial therapy was the factor most highly associated with death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumar et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2006</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study of 2,731 adult patients with septic shock in 14 ICUs</td>
<td>Effective antimicrobial administration within the first hour of documented hypotension was associated with increased survival, with each hour of delay over the ensuing 6 h associated with an increase in mortality of 7.6% per hour. Time to initiation of effective antimicrobial therapy was the single strongest predictor of outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaieski et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Single-center prospective cohort study of 261 patients with severe sepsis or septic shock undergoing early goal-directed therapy</td>
<td>A delay of 1 h or more from triage or time from qualification for early goal-directed therapy to appropriate antibiotics was associated with an increase in mortality risk by &gt;50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
**LITERATURE TABLE** (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gram-Negative Infections: Combination Therapy, Resistance, and Risk Factors for Pseudomonas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johnson et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em> 2011&lt;sup&gt;11&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective single-center cohort study of 754 consecutive patients with gram-negative bacteremia complicated by severe sepsis or septic shock</td>
<td>Patients with recent antibiotic exposure (within 90 days) had significantly higher rates of resistance to broad-spectrum gram-negative agents, with greater rates of inappropriate initial antimicrobial therapy (45% vs. 21%, $p &lt; 0.001$) and hospital mortality (51% vs. 34%, $p &lt; 0.001$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schechner et al., <em>Clin Infect Dis.</em> 2009&lt;sup&gt;26&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter retrospective study of 4,114 episodes of GNR bacteremia upon hospital admission</td>
<td>Predictors of <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em> bacteremia in patients without severe immunodeficiency presenting with GNR bacteremia were age &gt;90 years, receipt of antimicrobial therapy within the past 30 d, central venous catheter, or urinary device. With zero risk factors, the risk was 2%; one risk factor—8%; two risk factors—28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micek et al., <em>Antimicrob Agents Chemother.</em> 2010&lt;sup&gt;27&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective single-center cohort study of 760 patients with severe sepsis or septic shock associated with gram-negative bacteremia</td>
<td>Patients treated with an empiric combination antibiotic regimen were less likely to receive inappropriate initial antimicrobial therapy compared to monotherapy (22% vs. 36%, $p &lt; 0.001$), which was an independent predictor of hospital mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optimal Therapy for Specific Infections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MSSA bacteremia:</strong> Schweizer et al., <em>BMC Infect Dis.</em> 2011&lt;sup&gt;34&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study of 267 patients with MSSA bacteremia, examining outcomes with vancomycin, nafcillin, and cefazolin</td>
<td>Patients receiving nafcillin or cefazolin had 79% lower mortality compared to those who received vancomycin alone (adjusted hazard ratio 0.21, 95% CI 0.09, 0.47). Those who initially received vancomycin empirically but were switched to nafcillin or cefazolin still had 69% lower mortality than those who remained on vancomycin (adjusted HR 0.31, 95% CI 0.10, 0.95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clostridium difficile:</strong> Zar et al., <em>Clin Infect Dis.</em> 2007&lt;sup&gt;35&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Single-center randomized trial of 172 patients with <em>C. difficile</em>-associated diarrhea comparing oral metronidazole versus oral vancomycin for 10 days. Patients were stratified by disease severity</td>
<td>No significant difference in those with mild-moderate disease, but in the predefined subgroup of patients with severe disease, oral vancomycin was associated with superior clinical cure rates compared to metronidazole (97% vs. 76%, $p = 0.02$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ESBL-Producing Organisms:</strong> Paterson et al., <em>Clin Infect Dis.</em> 2004&lt;sup&gt;36&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter prospective study of 455 consecutive episodes of <em>Klebsiella pneumoniae</em> bacteremia (85 due to ESBL-producing organisms)</td>
<td>Use of a carbapenem was associated with significantly lower 14-d mortality than use of other antibiotics active in vitro (4.8% vs. 27.6%, $p = 0.012$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MRSA pneumonia:</strong> Wunderink et al., <em>Clin Infect Dis.</em> 2012&lt;sup&gt;37&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective, double-blind, controlled, multicenter trial involving hospitalized adult patients with hospital-acquired or health care–associated MRSA pneumonia, randomized to intravenous linezolid or vancomycin (adjusted on the basis of trough levels)</td>
<td>Linezolid was associated with a higher rate of clinical and microbiologic cure with lower rate of nephrotoxicity on per protocol analysis. However, no difference in clinical cure, microbiologic cure, or 60-d mortality on intention-to-treat analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duration of Therapy in VAP</strong> Chastre et al., <em>JAMA</em> 2003&lt;sup&gt;38&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective, randomized, double-blind trial in 51 French ICUs of 481 patients with VAP as diagnosed by quantitative culture results of bronchosopic specimens, comparing 8 vs. 15 d of therapy</td>
<td>No difference in mortality or 28-d recurrence in the 8-d group, with increased antibiotic-free days. The exception was in those with <em>P. aeruginosa</em> who had a higher recurrence rate in the 8 day group (40.6% vs. 25.4%; difference of 15.2%, 90% CI 3.9–26.6%) although still no difference in mortality. Multiresistant pathogens emerged less frequently in those who received 8 days of antibiotics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio.
REFERENCES


Infections in the Immunocompromised Host

M. Cristina Vazquez-Guillamet, Joshua J. Mooney, and Joe L. Hsu

BACKGROUND

Recent decades have challenged the emergency physician to manage an evolving spectrum of infections in immune-compromised patients. This comes as a result of an increased use of immune suppression and infectious disease prophylaxis, as well as the improved survival of patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), cancer, and following solid organ transplant (SOT) and hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). Early diagnosis and treatment of these individuals with appropriate antimicrobial agents are essential for successful clinical outcomes.

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

The frequent absence of early signs and symptoms traditionally used to define infection presents a major challenge in the care of immune-compromised patients. Cultures—the gold standard for guiding choice of antimicrobial agents—are positive in <50% of patients with invasive fungal diseases (IFDs) or febrile neutropenia and take several days for detection.\(^1\)\(^2\) This diagnostic uncertainty is particularly concerning since delay in starting appropriate antimicrobial therapy is well established as a cause of increased mortality.\(^3\)

When performing a targeted evaluation of an immune-compromised patient, the emergency physician should begin with an assessment of the "net state of immune suppression," including an evaluation of the type of immune suppression, current immune suppressive therapy, level of immune suppression (myeloablative vs. nonmyeloablative regimen prior to HSCT, ongoing immune suppressive therapy), duration (transplant date, last chemotherapy, time from diagnosis of underlying malignancy), and anti-infective prophylaxis. Immune-suppressed patients will typically have unique pathogen susceptibilities based on their underlying immune defect (e.g., defects in T and/or B cells, neutropenia). A thorough patient history should document recent infections, including multidrug-resistant infections (MDRIs), latent and opportunistic infections, and recent surgical procedures including indwelling central venous catheters (CVC). In the patients with HIV, knowledge of a recent CD4 cell count and the use or lack of use of antiretroviral therapy (ART) and anti-infective prophylaxis is essential. The immune-compromised patient may have multiple potential infectious sources including donor
acquired, nosocomial, reactivation, and environmental, and community acquired, all of which should be investigated.

In addition to standard infectious laboratory testing, non–culture-based methods including polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays, antigen and antibody capture assays (Aspergillus galactomannan [GM], (1–3)-β-D-glucan, direct fluorescent antibody [DFA] stains), and microscopy with special stains, if available, should be ordered in consultation with infectious disease. Early use of computed tomography (CT) to identify an infectious source is also indicated since plain radiographs are known to lack sensitivity in the detection of infections in immune-suppressed patients.

INFECTIONS IN PATIENTS WITH HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS

The mortality of critically ill HIV-infected patients has decreased to the point that survival rates now approach those seen in non–HIV patients. Although survival in critically ill patients is independent of ART at the time of admission, the use of ART is associated with higher CD4 counts, increased virologic suppression, and lower rates of opportunistic infections (such as Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia [PJP] and others) that independently correlate with survival. These changes have shifted the epidemiology of critically ill HIV-infected patients beyond opportunistic infections to include nosocomial and community-acquired infections, comorbid chronic diseases, and medication-related toxicities, including the immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS). In general, ART should be continued in critically ill HIV-infected patients with known prior virologic suppression; at the same time, these patients should be monitored for drug side effects (although rare, nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors can cause lactic acidosis), proper dosing, and pharmacologic interactions.

Sepsis in HIV-Positive Patients

The incidence of sepsis in ICU admissions of HIV-infected patients increased from 12% in 1995 to 20% in 2000, but mortality continues to improve. More than half of these septic episodes were due to respiratory infections, followed by bacteremia, catheter-related blood stream infections (CRBSIs), and urinary tract infections (UTIs). Nosocomial pathogens, including Staphylococcus aureus and Pseudomonas aeruginosa, were the organisms implicated in up to 60% of all infections, followed by opportunistic and community-acquired pathogens. Sepsis-associated mortality among HIV-infected patients is correlated to illness severity, rather than degree of immune deficiency; however, an increased risk of nosocomial and opportunistic pathogen infection is observed with CD4 cell counts <200 cells/mm³ and with the absence of ART.

Treatment of Infection in the HIV-Positive Patient

Treatment of infection in any immune-compromised patient includes goal-directed therapy and broad-spectrum antimicrobials, including empiric coverage for nosocomial organisms in patients at risk for severe sepsis. In HIV-infected patients with suspected sepsis and recent initiation of ART, the possibility of IRIS should be considered. IRIS presents as either a localized or systemic inflammatory reaction that develops after
initiation of ART (typically 90 d later) and is due to recovery of the patient’s immune response. The syndrome results from either the inflammatory reaction to a recognized preexisting infection (e.g., *Pneumocystis jirovecii*) or the unmasking of an unrecognized preexisting infection (e.g., *Mycobacterium avium complex* [MAC], *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* [MTB], endemic fungal infections) with clinical features related to the prior infection. The diagnosis is one of exclusion. Active infection and drug reaction (e.g., abacavir hypersensitivity) must first be excluded. Management of IRIS is supportive, with continued treatment of the underlying infection and ART. In moderate to severe cases of IRIS, the use of prednisone (1 mg/kg/d) has been employed, although no controlled trials definitively support its benefit.

**Respiratory Infections in HIV-Positive Patients**

Respiratory infections are the most common reason HIV-infected patients are admitted to the ICU. The clinical presentation, radiographic appearance, and CD4 count help narrow the differential diagnosis (Table 34.1). *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is the most common etiologic agent.35 Risk factors for MDRIs include CD4 cell counts <200 cells/mm³, underlying lung disease, neutropenia, and recent health care exposures.15

The incidence of PJP has declined with the use of prophylactic antibiotics and ART, but it remains the most common opportunistic respiratory infection and should be considered in those with a CD4 cell count <200 cells/mm³. The sputum immunofluorescent antibody (IFA) test, the presence of ground-glass opacities on high-resolution chest CT scan, and/or elevated serum (1,3)-β-D-glucan36 are reliable noninvasive tests for diagnosing PJP.19,20,22 All patients should undergo arterial blood gas (ABG) sampling on ambient air to determine if adjunct corticosteroids (typically prednisone 40 mg q12h) and low tidal volume ventilation (employed in mechanically ventilated patients to minimize the risk for pneumothorax) are indicated. A PaO₂ < 70 mm Hg on ABG or an alveolar–arterial difference (A-a gradient) of >35 mm Hg is the standard cutoff used for corticosteroid initiation.37

HIV-infected patients are also at an increased risk of primary and reactivation of MTB infection. Those with a clinical syndrome suggestive of MTB should be placed in respiratory isolation, and three serial acid-fast bacillus (AFB) sputum samples should be collected. Common radiographic patterns of MTB include upper lung cavitation at higher CD4 cell counts and middle-to-lower lobe infiltrates at lower CD4 cell counts, but any radiographic pattern may be encountered. Severely immune-compromised HIV-infected patients (CD4 cell count <50 to 100 cells/mm³) are also at risk for pulmonary infections from endemic (e.g., *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Coccidioides immitis*) and geographic (e.g., *Cryptococcus neoformans*) fungi and *M. avium complex*.

**Altered Mental Status in HIV-Positive Patients**

Altered mental status is a common presenting symptom in critically ill HIV-infected patients and results from both infectious and noninfectious etiologies. The following factors can help narrow the differential diagnosis: level of CD4 cell count, status of virologic suppression, toxoplasma serology, and ART regimen and timeline (Table 34.1).

While any infection may result in an altered sensorium, dangerous infections of the central nervous system (CNS) include meningitis (bacterial, cryptococcal, tuberculous, syphilitic), viral encephalitis (Cytomegalovirus [CMV], herpes simplex virus
## TABLE 34.1 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients Infected with Human Immunodeficiency Virus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>CD4 Cell Count (Cells/mm³)</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens¹ ¹⁶</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulmonary Infections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>Any CD4 count</td>
<td>Acute onset</td>
<td>Blood, sputum culture</td>
<td>1. Ceftriaxone 1 g IV q24h + azithromycin 500 mg PO q24h or levofloxacin 750 mg PO q24h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Purulent sputum</td>
<td></td>
<td>2. If nosocomial risk factors, CD4 count &lt;200, or critically ill: Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q12h or linezolid 600 mg IV q12h + piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h or cefepime 1 g IV q8h + levofloxacin 750 mg IV q24h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fever, chills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dyspnea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Imaging: CXR—unilateral focal, segmental, or lobar consolidation ± pleural effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumocystis pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>&lt;200</td>
<td>Subacute onset</td>
<td>(1,3β-D-glucan 92%/65%)¹²</td>
<td>1. TMP–SMX 15–20 mg/kg/d IV divided q6–8 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nonpugent cough</td>
<td>• ABG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dyspnea</td>
<td>• Induced sputum (&gt;55%/&gt;90%)¹³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>• IFA sputum (91%–100%)/95%–100%)¹³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• IFA BAL (&gt;90%/98%)¹³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Imaging:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CXR—normal or diffuse interstitial pattern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• High-resolution CT—bilateral ground-glass opacities (100%/89%)²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M. tuberculosis Pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>Any CD4 count</td>
<td>Subacute onset</td>
<td>Sputum AFB smear and culture</td>
<td>Isoniazid, rifabutin or rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol at weight-based dosing⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>• Imaging:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CXR—alveolar infiltrates and adenopathy, nodules, or pleural effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lower CD4: lower lobe opacity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Higher CD4: upper lobe, cavitary opacity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumonia due to severe immune suppression</strong></td>
<td>&lt;50–100</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>1. MAC: Clarithromycin 500 mg PO q12h, ethambutol (weight-based dosing)⁸ and rifabutin 450 mg q24h¹⁰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>• AFB smear/culture/ nucleic acids hybridization tests—sputum and blood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• CMV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dyspnea</td>
<td>• CMV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Endemic fungi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Night sweats</td>
<td>• CMV quantitative PCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cryptococcus</td>
<td></td>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td>• Histoplasma Blastomycetes antibodies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Blastomyces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Sputum culture (75%–86%)¹⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Urine antigen (89%–93%/79%)¹⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cryptococcus Blastomycetes antigen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Coccidioidomyces antibodies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Histoplasma Blastomycetes antigen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cryptococcus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Serum Cryptococcus Blastomycetes antigen (56%–96%/93%–100%)¹⁶,¹⁷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Fungal culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific test and patient population.

² Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific fungal species and patient population.

³ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific mycobacterial species and patient population.

⁴ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific CMV strain and patient population.

⁵ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific endemic fungal species and patient population.

⁶ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific cryptococcal species and patient population.

⁷ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific MAC strain and patient population.

⁸ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific CMV strain and patient population.

⁹ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific histoplasma species and patient population.

¹⁰ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific blastomyces species and patient population.

¹¹ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific coccidioides species and patient population.

¹² Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific histoplasma species and patient population.

¹³ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific blastomyces species and patient population.

¹⁴ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific coccidioides species and patient population.

¹⁵ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific histoplasma species and patient population.

¹⁶ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific blastomyces species and patient population.

¹⁷ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific coccidioides species and patient population.

¹⁸ Sensitivity and specificity may vary depending on the specific histoplasma species and patient population.
### CNS Infections

**Bacterial meningitis**  
Any CD4 count  
Acute onset  
Headache  
Fever  
Meningismus  

- Blood cultures  
- LP: Neutrophilic pleocytosis, elevated protein, low glucose, positive Gram stain or culture  
- Imaging: Head CT/MRI—Should be performed in HIV-infected patients prior to LP

1. Ceftriaxone 2 g IV q12h + Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q8–12 h + Ampicillin 2 g IV q8h  
   Prior to antibiotics: Dexamethasone 0.15 mg/kg IV q6h × 4 d if suspected or proven pneumococcal infection

**Cryptococcal meningitis**  
<100  
Subacute onset  
Headache  
Fever  
Malaise  
Confusion  
Coma  

- Serum Cryptococcal antigen (83%–97%/93%–100%)  
- LP: CSF studies may be normal. CSF Cryptococcal antigen (93%–100%/93%–98%), check opening pressure, India ink stain  
- Imaging: Head CT/MRI—normal, hydrocephalus or edema

1. Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h + flucytosine 25 mg/kg/dose PO q6h  
   2. If CSF pressure > 25 cm reduce opening pressure by 50% or to normal pressure of <20 cm

**Toxoplasmosis**  
<100  
Subacute onset  
Seizure  
Focal neurologic deficit  
Headache  
Confusion, stupor  
Coma  

- Serum toxoplasma IgG positive  
- LP: CSF toxoplasma PCR (>33%/100%)  
- Imaging: Head CT and or MRI: Ring-enhancing lesions with surrounding edema

1. Pyrimethamine 200 mg PO once, then 75 mg PO q4h + sulfadiazine 1 g (<60 kg) or 1.5 g (>60 kg) PO q6h + leucovorin 10–25 mg PO q24h

**Syphilitic meningitis**  
Any CD4 count  
Subacute to chronic onset  
Headache  
Confusion  
Impaired visual acuity  
Seizure  
Focal cerebral symptoms  

- Serum RPR, VDRL, FTA-ABS  
- LP: lymphocytic pleocytosis (>20 cell/mL), elevated protein, CSF VDRL (53%–70%/>99%)  
- Imaging: Head CT/MRI—Normal, basilar, or temporal enhancement

1. Penicillin G 3–4 million units IV q4h, or penicillin 24 million units as a continuous infusion

**Tuberculous meningitis**  
Any CD4 count  
<200, poor prognosis  
Subacute  
Headache  
Fever  
Confusion  
Cranial nerve involvement  

- LP: Bland or mild neutrophilic pleocytosis (early) lymphocytic pleocytosis (later), elevated protein, low glucose  
- Serial LPs: AFB and culture  
- MTB PCR CSF (66%/98%)  
- Imaging: Head CT/MRI—Hydrocephalus, basilar enhancement, cerebral infarct, tuberculoma

1. Isoniazid, rifampin or rifabutin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol at weight-based dosing  
   2. Dexamethasone 12 mg/d or Prednisone 60 mg/d

---

*Dosage based on normal renal and hepatic function.  
†Initiate in conjunction with an ID specialist or pharmacist due to drug interactions.  
BAL, bronchoalveolar lavage; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; FTA-ABS, fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption; IFA, immunofluorescence assay; LP, lumbar puncture; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; RPR, rapid plasma reagin; TMP–SMX, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole; VDRL, venereal disease research laboratory.

From *The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy*. Sperryville, VA: Antimicrobial Therapy; 2012. Ref. 34
(HSV), or parenchymal lesions including parasitic infection (toxoplasmosis) and brain abscess (bacterial, fungal). All patients with CD4 cell counts <200 cells/mm³ and focal findings should undergo a CT head with intravenous enhancing contrast to evaluate for presence of cerebral toxoplasmosis (characterized by ring-enhancing lesions on CT imaging), CNS lymphoma (usually single lesion), and progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (plaques in the white matter). Following head imaging, lumbar puncture should be performed to evaluate for bacterial and fungal meningitis or more indolent CNS processes such as syphilitic and tuberculous meningitis.

Noninfectious etiologies in HIV-infected patients with mental status changes include primary CNS lymphoma, HIV-associated dementia, toxins or medication-side effects (e.g., efavirenz), IRIS, and metabolic encephalopathy.

### INFECTIONS IN PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC MALIGNANCIES AND FOLLOWING HEMATOPOIETIC STEM CELL TRANSPLANTATION

For patients with hematologic malignancies, the primary malignancy dictates the immune defect and pathogen susceptibilities. For example, patients with acute lymphoblastic leukemia have more profound cellular defects than those with acute myeloid leukemia. Multiple myeloma is associated with a reduced humoral immunity. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia is characterized by a prolonged course of T-cell and antibody deficiency. Chemotherapy for hematologic malignancies is uniformly myelosuppressive, resulting in profound neutropenia, which increases susceptibility to bacterial and fungal pathogens. Among chemotherapeutic agents, daunorubicin and cytarabine can produce severe, prolonged neutropenia, while fludarabine and alemtuzumab decrease the T- (especially CD4 cells) and B-cell function.38

For HSCT patients, the preparative regimen for transplantation determines the level of immune suppression. Myeloablative regimens completely suppress the host bone marrow, resulting in profound immune compromise; nonmyeloablative regimens are less suppressive. Posttransplant hematopoietic immune recovery follows a predictable sequence: pre-engraftment (0–1 month), early postengraftment (1 to 3 months) with gradual return of the host’s humoral response, and late postengraftment (>3 months) during which cellular immunity returns. In some patients, cellular immune defects may persist 1 to 2 years posttransplant. If graft versus host disease (GVHD) ensues, prolonged and aggressive immune suppression will be required, increasing the risk of infections.

### Febrile Neutropenia

Neutropenia is defined as an absolute neutrophil count (ANC) < 1,500 cells/mm³; severe neutropenia as an ANC < 500 cells/mm³ (ANC = [% Neutrophils + % Bands] × [WBC]/100). Febrile neutropenia is defined as one episode of fever >38.3°C or fever >38°C for ≥1 hour with an absolute neutrophil count (ANC) <500 cells/mm³ or with an expected ANC drop to <500 cells/mm³ within 48 hours. The ANC nadir, duration of neutropenia, and rapidity of decline determine infection risk. Table 34.2 provides criteria for risk-stratifying patients with febrile neutropenia.39,40
Patients with febrile neutropenia are susceptible to CRBSI, as well as infections that originate in the gastrointestinal tract (most commonly due to bacterial translocation in the setting of mucositis or enterocolitis), lung, kidneys, or soft tissues. The epidemiology of these infections has shifted from gram-negative rods (GNRs) to gram-positive cocci (GPCs, 60% to 75% of positive blood cultures) due to widespread use of antimicrobial prophylaxis that targets GNRs. Common pathogens include coagulase-negative Staphylococcus, S. aureus, Streptococcus spp, Enterococcus, Corynebacterium jeikeium, P. aeruginosa, and Enterobacteriaceae. For patients with enterocolitis, potential pathogens include anaerobes (Clostridium septicum, Clostridium tertium, and Bacillus cereus). Neutropenic patients are also at risk for breakthrough infections, resulting from a gap in the pathogen coverage of prophylactic antibiotics (typically fluoroquinolones) leading to infections with Streptococcus spp and anaerobic spp. Breakthrough infection, for example, from Streptococcus viridans, can rapidly lead to severe sepsis and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

**Diagnostic Evaluation for Febrile Neutropenia**

**Laboratory Studies** Although only 30% to 40% of neutropenic fever episodes will prove to have a documented infection, the clinician must assume an infectious etiology, even when the patient presents with no signs of inflammation (e.g., no meningeal signs, nonproductive cough, no leukocytosis). Table 34.3 highlights diagnostic tests to consider based on the clinical presentation. In a neutropenic host with sepsis, a procalcitonin level may be useful in considering a bacterial etiology (serum cutoff level >0.5 μg/L); it should not be used in localized bacterial or fungal infections, or those due to viral pathogens. The serum concentration of procalcitonin peaks at 24 hours after development of fever.

**Imaging** CT imaging should be obtained for patients with focal CNS findings and respiratory or abdominal complaints. For patients with lower quadrant abdominal symptoms, typhlitis, also known as neutropenic enterocolitis, should be suspected. Typhlitis is a chemotherapy-related colonic inflammation that leads to bacterial translocation, resulting in diffuse wall edema and perforation. Abdominal CT imaging determines the extent of typhlitis and the presence of local complications.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens</th>
<th>Noninfectious Mimics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7 d after chemotherapy, 2 wk after HSCT</td>
<td>GI: neutropenic enterocolitis CRBSI Skin Mucositis Pneumonia UTI</td>
<td>• GNRs • GPCs • Anaerobes • Candida spp</td>
<td>• Blood, sputum, urine, CSF cultures, as appropriate&lt;br&gt;• Non-culture-based tests, as appropriate&lt;br&gt;• Procalcitonin (cut-off &gt; 0.5 μg/L)&lt;br&gt;• Imaging: CT—imaging method of choice, plain radiograph insensitive</td>
<td>1. Meropenem 1 g IV q8h or Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h + Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h or Linezolid 600 mg IV q12h + echinocandin&lt;br&gt;2. Vancomycin for CRBSI, pneumonia, severe sepsis, mucositis, known colonization with MRSA&lt;br&gt;3. Echinocandin (e.g., Micafungin 100 mg IV q24 or Caspofungin 75 mg IV x 1 then 50 mg IV q24h) for prolonged use of CVC, TPN, or prior antibiotic use</td>
<td>Engraftment syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early postengraftment (1–3 mo)</td>
<td>Bacterial pneumonia</td>
<td>• Community acquired&lt;br&gt;• Necesional&lt;br&gt;• MRSA&lt;br&gt;• P. aeruginosa&lt;br&gt;• Legionella&lt;br&gt;• M. tuberculosis</td>
<td>• Blood, Sputum culture&lt;br&gt;• Legionella urine antigen for serotype 1 (85% in severe pneumonia; 99% in late disease)&lt;br&gt;• AFB smear and culture&lt;br&gt;• Imaging: CXR—Focal, segmental, or lobar consolidation ± pleural effusion</td>
<td>1. Vancomycin 15–20 mg/kg IV q 8–12h + Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h / Meropenem 1 g IV q8h + Azithromycin 500 mg IV q24h&lt;br&gt;• Consider double coverage with ciprofloxacin/ gentamicin until susceptibilities are known&lt;br&gt;2. M. tuberculosis: Isoniazid, Rifampin or Rifabutin, Pyrazinamide, and Ethambutol at weight based dosing</td>
<td>Diffuse Alveolar Hemorrhage Drug toxicity Radiation pneumonitis Idiopathic pneumonia syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungal pneumonia</td>
<td>• Aspergillus&lt;br&gt;• Non-Aspergillus molds&lt;br&gt;• P. jirovecii</td>
<td>• Aspergillus GM serum (70%–82%/86%–92%) BAL (88%/87%)/&lt;br&gt;• Imaging: CT—nODULES (&gt;1 cm) with “halo,” crescent sign</td>
<td>1. Voriconazole 6 mg/kg IV q12h × 2 doses then 4 mg/L IV q12h&lt;br&gt;2. Liposomal Amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h</td>
<td>See Tables 1 and 4, section on Pneumocystis pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral pneumonia</td>
<td>• CMV</td>
<td>• Serum CMV quantitative PCR&lt;br&gt;• BAL CMV immunohistochemical stain and culture&lt;br&gt;• Imaging: CT—reticular infiltrates, ground glass opacities, small nodules</td>
<td>1. Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Respiratory viruses
- **RSV**
- **Influenza**
- **Parainfluenza**
- **Human metapneumovirus**

### Nasopharyngeal viral swab:
- DFA RSV (15%/97%)<sup>49</sup>
- DFA Influenza (84%/98%)<sup>50</sup>

### Specific Viral PCR
- Imaging: CT—diffuse ground glass opacities

### Influenza
- Oseltamivir 75 or 150 mg PO q12h depending on severity

### RSV, human metapneumovirus, ± parainfluenza
- Inhaled Ribavirin 2 g nebulized over 2 h q8h

### Late postengraftment (>3 mo)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacterial Pneumonia</th>
<th>As above (Early postengraftment section on bacterial pneumonia)</th>
<th>BOS (bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nicardia</td>
<td>Gram stain and modified AFB stain of sputum, biopsy specimens, wounds, cultures (invasive specimens: 85%–90% positive)&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt; and PCR or 16S rRNA-based PCR (90%–100%).&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Radiation fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRSA, P. aeruginosa</td>
<td>Imaging: CT—nodular lesions with cavitation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 34.3 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients with Hematologic Malignancies and after Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens[^43]</th>
<th>Noninfectious Mimics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early postengraftment</strong></td>
<td>gLFTs</td>
<td>• CMV, HSV, VZV adenovirus • Hepatosplenic Candida • Bacterial sepsis • Rare: EBV, Ehrlichia in summer • HCV</td>
<td>• CMV, HSV, VZV PCR: serum • Adenovirus: serum PCR, stool antigen • Blood cultures • Ehrlichia PCR • Imaging: CT—nodular lesions in the liver and spleen in hepatosplenic candidiasis</td>
<td>1. CMV: Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h</td>
<td>GHVD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1–3 mo)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. HSV, VZV: Acyclovir 10 mg/kg IV q8h</td>
<td>Medication side effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Ganciclov/ Echinocandin (e.g., micafungin 100 mg IV q24 or caspofungin 75 mg IV x 1 then 50 mg IV q24)</td>
<td>Malignancy recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Antibiotics as appropriate in bacterial sepsis: Meropenem 1 g IV q8h or piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h ± vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h or linezolid 600 mg IV q12h</td>
<td>VOD—early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late postengraftment</strong></td>
<td>gLFTs</td>
<td>• Accelerated cirrhosis with HCV • Same as above</td>
<td>• Imaging: Ultrasound Doppler—liver nodularity, evaluate for hepatocellular cancer</td>
<td>1. Multiple drug–drug interactions, ID consultation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(&gt;3 mo)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Genitourinary Infections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens[^43]</th>
<th>Noninfectious Mimics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early postengraftment</strong></td>
<td>Hematuria</td>
<td>BK virus</td>
<td>• BK PCR in urine and serum • Decoy cells in urine sediment • Urinalysis, microscopy, and urine culture</td>
<td>1. Bladder irrigation</td>
<td>Cyclophosphamide toxicity (usually in the first 2 wk posttransplant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1–3 mo)</td>
<td>Dysuria</td>
<td>Gram Negative Rods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Adenovirus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>CMV, HSV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late postengraftment</strong></td>
<td>Hematuria</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(&gt;3 mo)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CNS Infections

#### Early postengraftment (1–3 mo)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altered mental status</th>
<th>Focal deficits</th>
<th>± Meningeal signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HSV</td>
<td>Fungal</td>
<td>Listeria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Community-acquired bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HHV6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VZV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- LP with opening pressure, WBC, gram stain, bacterial and AFB cultures, HSV PCR, cryptococcal CSF antigen, HHV6 PCR
- Imaging: CT—encephalitis (especially temporal lobe involvement in HSV), nodular parenchymal lesions with fungal etiologies

1. Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h + ceftriaxone 2 g IV q12h + acyclovir 10 mg/kg IV q8h + ampicillin 2 g IV q8h
2. Cryptococcal meningitis: Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h + Fluconazole 25 mg/kg/dose PO q24h

#### Late postengraftment (>3 mo)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altered mental status</th>
<th>Focal deficits</th>
<th>Seizures</th>
<th>± Meningeal signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H. influenzae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nocardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Toxoplasmosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brain Abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cryptococcus spp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- LP with opening pressure, cells, Gram stain, bacterial and AFB cultures, HSV PCR, cryptococcal CSF antigen
- Toxoplasma PCR CSF, toxoplasma serology
- Imaging: CT, MRI—encephalitis, focal lesions (± enhancement) with Nocardia, brain abscess, toxoplasmosis, and fungal etiologies

1. Nocardia: TMP–SMX 5 mg/kg IV q8h + imipenem 500 mg IV q6h
2. Toxoplasmosis: Pyrimethamine 200 mg PO once then 75 mg PO q24h + sulfadiazine 1 g (<80 kg) or 1.5 g (>80 kg) PO q6h + leucovorin 10–50 mg PO q24h

Same as above

| Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (drug toxicity—calcineurin inhibitors) |

| Malignancy recurrence |

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dosing based on normal renal and hepatic function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VZV infection may disseminate, causing hepatitis, pneumonitis, encephalitis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and thrombocytopenia without necessarily causing a rash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV6 causes PALE (posttransplant acute limbic encephalitis) characterized by antegrade amnesia, clinical or subclinical seizures, and syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAL, bronchoalveolar lavage; CMV, cytomegalovirus virus; CRBSI, catheter-related blood stream infection; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; DFA, direct fluorescent antibody; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; EIA, enzyme immunoassay; GNRs, gram-negative rods; GPCs, gram-positive cocci; GVHD, graft versus host disease; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HHV6, human herpes virus 6; HSV, herpes simplex virus; MRSA, methicillin-resistant S. aureus; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus; TMP–SMX: trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole; VOD, venoocclusive disease; VZV, varicella-zoster virus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Treatment of Infection in Patients with HSCT

Antibacterial Therapy

Initial workup and antibiotic administration should occur as soon as possible after presentation to the emergency department. The Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) guidelines recommend an antipseudomonal β-lactam as the initial regimen. Cefepime should be avoided, as it is associated with (a) higher all-cause mortality compared with other β-lactams; (b) inferior efficacy compared with piperacillin–tazobactam or carbapenems; and (c) a failure to cover relevant anaerobic pathogens (Bacteroides spp). If there is a low index of suspicion for multidrug-resistant GNRs (e.g., extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL) producing organisms), piperacillin–tazobactam is favored over carbapenems, as carbapenems are associated with higher rates of antibiotic- and C. difficile-associated diarrhea. Among the carbapenems, ertapenem should be avoided as it fails to cover P. aeruginosa. The addition of an aminoglycoside, typically gentamicin, to any of the initial β-lactam regimens may be considered for the neutropenic patient in septic shock until culture results are available that will allow more selective antibiotic choice. Vancomycin should be initiated in HSCT critically ill patients or in those with risk factors for resistant GPC infections (oral mucositis, an indwelling catheter, or colonization with methicillin-resistant S. aureus [MRSA]).

Antifungal Therapy

Antifungals are added for HSCT patients at high risk for candidemia; risk factors include prolonged neutropenia, frequent hospitalizations, a protracted antibiotic course, and the presence of CVC, particularly for the administration of total parenteral nutrition. Antifungals are also indicated if fever persists after 5 days of adequate antimicrobial treatment and negative cultures. To date, there are no compelling studies favoring a specific antifungal agent. The initial use of an echinocandin, however, is now recommended given the rising incidence of azole-resistant Candida spp (Candida glabrata, Candida krusei) and the safer side effect profile of echinocandins compared to liposomal amphotericin. A suitable alternative would be voriconazole. Both drugs also cover Aspergillus.

Generally, CVCs should be replaced upon presentation in severe sepsis or septic shock, given the paucity of symptoms in CRBSI. In the presence of barriers to immediate line exchange, emergency physicians may consider sending blood cultures before antibiotic administration to assess “time-to-positivity” cultures (see CRBSIs in Patients with Solid Tumors).

Adjunctive Therapies

If treatment with colony-stimulating factors has already been initiated, it should be continued. However, a recent meta-analysis did not demonstrate a benefit of colony-stimulating factors in established febrile neutropenia. Current guidelines suggest their use in high-risk patients: age >65 years, prolonged and severe neutropenia, and septic shock. Surgical consultation should be obtained promptly in enterocolitis, biliary sepsis, necrotizing fasciitis, and gynecologic sepsis.

Timing of Infections Following HSCT

Knowledge of the time since transplantation, use of ongoing immune suppression, and previous antimicrobial prophylaxis can help the emergency physician differentiate...
between noninfectious and infectious etiologies, as well as identify likely pathogens (Fig. 34.1).

**Early Postengraftment Period After HSCT**

Since the preengraftment period occurs while admitted to the hospital, we will only review the following stages in HSCT that are more relevant to the emergency physician. In the immediate postengraftment period, if no GVHD is encountered, immune suppression is gradually tapered. During this period, respiratory infections predominate. In addition to community-acquired pathogens, HSCT patients are at increased risk from respiratory viruses, including respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), influenza, parainfluenza, and human metapneumovirus. Prompt diagnosis is essential in initiating respiratory isolation and appropriate antiviral therapy (e.g., ribavirin or oseltamivir). For RSV and influenza, rapid viral antigen tests are recommended, in conjunction with PCR-based detection (Table 34.3). Prophylaxis for CMV with ganciclovir delays the presentation of CMV syndromes. In addition to fever, interstitial pneumonia, and enteritis, CMV reactivation may manifest indirectly (e.g., concurrent infection such as PJP). If CMV is suspected, PCR testing for quantitative CMV viral load is recommended. Adenovirus infection is also encountered in the early postengraftment period and may result in fulminant hepatitis, pneumonitis, and encephalitis.

**Fungal Infections in the Early Postengraftment Period**

Hepatosplenic candidiasis (chronic disseminated candidiasis) can develop in patients not receiving antifungal prophylaxis and should be considered in a patient recovering from neutropenia who presents with abdominal pain, fever, and increased alkaline phosphatase.
Aspergillosis should be suspected in a clinically stable patient with persistent fevers despite prolonged courses of antibiotics and fluconazole. Typical symptoms include a nonproductive cough and pleuritic chest pain. While fungal blood cultures typically do not improve the diagnostic yield over standard blood cultures, they may be helpful in isolating endemic fungi like *Histoplasma* or molds such as *Fusarium*. Aspergillus GM testing in serum and/or bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) can also help make the diagnosis. Chest CT imaging in patients with pulmonary *Aspergillus* typically demonstrates multiple, poorly defined macronodules (>1 cm) with or without “halo,” cavitation, or “air-crescent” sign. First-line treatment for invasive pulmonary aspergillosis is voriconazole. Other invasive molds (*Fusarium*, *Scedosporium*, and agents of mucormycosis) can cause pulmonary, CNS, rhino-orbital, skin, and disseminated disease, and require treatment with liposomal amphotericin.

**Late Postengraftment Period After HSCT**
Approximately 50% of HSCT patients will develop chronic GVHD and will require prolonged immune suppression. The incidence of bacterial infection decreases substantially in the late posttransplant period, with the exception of infection by encapsulated organisms (e.g., *S. pneumoniae*). Varicella zoster virus (VZV) and PJP also commonly occur in patients receiving corticosteroids for GVHD. Without trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (TMP–SMX) prophylaxis, patients are at risk for *Nocardia* and *Toxoplasma* infection. Failure of TMP–SMX prophylaxis also can occur (Table 34.3).

**INFECTIONS IN PATIENTS WITH SOLID TUMORS**

**Immune Defect in Patients with Solid Tumors**
While at a lower overall risk for infection than those with hematologic malignancies, patients with solid tumors are at risk from infections due to tumor-related immune dysfunction (e.g., mucocutaneous barrier disruption, cellular or humoral deficiencies) or treatment-related immune deficiency resulting from chemotherapy, radiation, or other immune-modulating therapy. Advanced age, malnutrition, comorbid conditions (e.g., chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]), and frequent health care exposures also increase infection risk.

**Catheter-Related Blood Stream Infections in Patients with Solid Tumors**
CVCs are essential for the administration of chemotherapeutic agents, but may result in CRBSIs. Local inflammatory changes (e.g., warmth, erythema, or purulent exudate) are unreliable (sensitivity <3%); confirmation with a “time-to-positivity” microbiologic culture, simultaneously drawn from a peripheral site and the CVC, is recommended. The “time-to-positivity” diagnosis is established either quantitatively by a greater than threefold bacterial colony-forming unit (CFU) yield from the catheter versus the peripheral culture or temporally by catheter culture positivity ≤120 minutes before peripheral culture. Typical infecting organisms include coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* (31%), *S. aureus* (20%) with increasing rates of methicillin resistance, *Candida* (9%), and enterococci (9%) with increasing rates of vancomycin resistance.
**Treatment of CRBSIs**

**Antibiotic Therapy**  
Antibiotic therapy should include vancomycin or daptomycin, and, in the presence of neutropenic fever and/or severe illness, an antipseudomonal β-lactam, such as a carbapenem (recommended if the patient has a history of ESBL infection). Based on risk factors for candidemia, empiric treatment may also include an echinocandin.

**Catheter Management**  
Per the IDSA guidelines, long-term CVCs should be removed in the setting of infection with *S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa*, or *Candida*. However, in the presence of alternative organisms (coagulase-negative *S. aureus*, *Enterococcus*) and in the absence of severe sepsis or complicating tunnel or exit-site infection, a trial of antibiotic lock therapy (ALT) and systemic antibiotics may allow for catheter salvage.

**Neutropenic Fever in Patients with Solid Tumors**  
In patients with solid tumors, repeated chemotherapy cycles lead to milder and briefer periods of neutropenia, compared to those with hematologic malignancies. Patients with solid tumors have a lower incidence of fungal infections, including *Candida* and *Aspergillus*, compared to patients with hematologic malignancies.

**Corticosteroid Use and Risk of Opportunistic Infections in Patients with Solid Tumors**  
Prolonged corticosteroid use is common among solid tumor patients, particularly those with CNS lesions, increasing the risk for opportunistic infections including oropharyngeal candidiasis, *Nocardia*, *Legionella*, *MTB*, *Aspergillus*, endemic fungi, and *P. jirovecii*. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia occurs in <2% of non-HIV, solid tumor patients and is associated with daily prednisone doses (or corticosteroid equivalent) >15 mg for 4 weeks’ duration.

**Diagnosis of PJP in HIV-Negative Patients with Solid Tumors**  
Due to a decreased *P. jiroveci* burden in HIV-Negative patients, the diagnostic yield of induced sputum, even with indirect fluorescent antibody (IFA) staining, is low. Recommended initial screening tests include (1–3)-β-D-glucan, PCR-based assays, and high-resolution chest CT imaging evaluating for ground-glass opacities. BAL is the gold standard for obtaining diagnostic samples and should be performed in patients with a high clinical suspicion for PJP.

**PJP Treatment in HIV-Negative Patients with Solid Tumors**  
TMP–SMX is the treatment of choice for non–HIV-infected PJP patients. Despite limited evidence in HIV-negative patients, adjunctive corticosteroids (prednisone 40 mg q12h) are recommended in patients with moderate to severe PJP characterized by PaO₂ ≤ 70 mm Hg on ambient air.

**Sepsis in Patients with Solid Tumors**  
Sepsis is a common cause for ICU admission in patients with solid tumors, particularly in the presence of neutropenia caused by respiratory, blood stream, abdominal, and urinary infections. Although these patients do benefit from ICU admission, it is important to note that common prognostic models, including APACHE II or III and...
the Simplified Acute Physiology Score (SAPS) II, generally underestimate hospital mortality in cancer patients.\(^7\) In patients with advanced cancer, preferences regarding the extent of therapeutic intervention(s) should be elicited early in their ICU course.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS BY TYPE OF SOLID TUMOR

Infections in nonneutropenic cancer patients include community-acquired and nosocomial infections with specific predilections by the type of malignancy (Table 34.4).

**Lung Cancer**

Pneumonia occurs in up to 24% of patients with lung cancer; 27% of these are postobstructive.\(^7\) Postobstructive pneumonias are generally polymicrobial; however, there is an increasing incidence of *S. aureus* and enteric GNR infections due to nosocomial exposures. Antimicrobial treatment should include staphylococcal, anaerobic, and GNR coverage (e.g., vancomycin + piperacillin–tazobactam) to minimize progression to lung abscess or empyema.\(^8\)

**Breast Cancer**

Patients with breast cancer are at risk for postoperative skin and soft tissue infections (incidence of 4% to 12%). Lymphedema can also cause delayed episodes of streptococcal cellulitis.\(^8,1\)\(^2\) Antimicrobial treatment should include vancomycin, with consideration of antipseudomonal coverage for those with recent chemotherapy or neutropenia. Ultrasound evaluation for an underlying fluid collection should be considered if there is no clinical improvement within 72 hours of antibiotic treatment.

**Gastrointestinal Cancer**

Persons with gastrointestinal cancers are at risk for bowel obstruction and postsurgical complications, including anastomotic leaks, intra-abdominal abscesses, and peritonitis. Anaerobes (*Bacteroides, Clostridium*) are common copathogens. Antimicrobial treatment should include broad-spectrum GNR and anaerobic coverage (e.g., piperacillin–tazobactam or a carbapenem). Empiric coverage of *Candida* with an echinocandin is also recommended. When infectious collections are recognized, percutaneous or surgical drainage (source control) should be initiated within 12 hours.

**Genitourinary Cancer**

Genitourinary cancer patients have lower rates of infection (<5%); infections in this group are often related to urinary obstruction and/or diversion. Antimicrobial treatment should include coverage of GNRs, including ESBL organisms and vancomycin-resistant enterococci in those with risk factors (urinary procedures, uncontrolled diabetes, colonization with VRE). Urine cultures obtained from ileal conduit are rarely useful. These patients also may experience postsurgical wound infections, ranging from localized cellulitis to extensive infections resulting in pyometra and tuboovarian, intra-abdominal, or pelvic abscesses.

**Head and Neck Cancer**

For patients with head and neck cancers, wound infections secondary to loss of the protective oral mucosa barrier and subsequent oral anaerobic flora contamination
### TABLE 34.4 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients with Solid Tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens</th>
<th>Non-infectious Mimics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catheter-Related Blood Stream Infections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacteremia</strong></td>
<td>Coagulase-negative Staphylococcus (31%)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;S. aureus (20%) including MRSA&lt;br&gt;Enterococci (9%) including VRE&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;</td>
<td>&quot;Time-to-positivity&quot; blood/CVC culture, positive defined by&lt;br&gt;Threefold CFU: CVC versus peripheral (75%–93%/97%–100%)&lt;sup&gt;47,48&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;CVC culture &quot;+&quot; &lt; 120 min prior to + peripheral culture (81%–93%/75%–92%)&lt;sup&gt;30,44&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1. Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h or daptomycin 4–6 mg/kg q24h (if vancomycin MIC ≥ 2 mcg/ml)&lt;br&gt;2. Consider piperacillin-tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h or meropenem 1 g IV q8h (based on risk factors for MDRI)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fungemia</strong></td>
<td>Candida (9%)&lt;br&gt;</td>
<td>Workup for endocarditis based on surveillance cultures or organism</td>
<td>1. Echinocandin (e.g., caspofungin 75 mg IV once then 50 mg IV q24h)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neutropenic Fever (see Table 34.3)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infections Associated with Corticosteroid Use</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>P. jirovecii&lt;br&gt;β-glucan &gt; 31.1 pg/mL (92%/86%)&lt;sup&gt;19&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;ABG&lt;br&gt;Induced sputum IFA (50%–67%)&lt;sup&gt;19&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;BAL IFA performance less than in HIV patients&lt;br&gt;Imaging:&lt;br&gt;− CXR—Normal or diffuse interstitial pattern&lt;br&gt;− High-resolution CT—bilateral ground-glass opacities &lt; HIV-positive, focal consolidations</td>
<td>See Table 34.1 Pulmonary infections section on Pneumocystis pneumonia</td>
<td>Radiation Pneumonitis Lymphangitic tumor spread Drug toxicity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>− Aspergillus/non-Aspergillus molds</td>
<td>See Table 34.3 Pulmonary infections, Early postengraftment section on Fungal pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endemic fungal infections</strong></td>
<td>H. capsulatum&lt;br&gt;Coccidioides immitis&lt;br&gt;Blastomyces dermatitidis</td>
<td>Endemic fungi&lt;br&gt;− Histoplasma urine antigen (75%–97%)&lt;sup&gt;19&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;Coccidioidomycosis antibodies&lt;br&gt;− Blastomycosis&lt;br&gt;− Sputum culture (75%–86%)&lt;sup&gt;34&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;− Urine antigen (89%–93%/79%)&lt;sup&gt;35&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1. Mild to moderate: Fluconazole 400 mg PO/IV q24h or itraconazole 200 mg PO q8h for 3 d followed by q12h&lt;br&gt;2. Severe: Liposomal amphotericin 3–5 mg/kg IV q24h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>− Nocardia</td>
<td>See Table 34.3 Pulmonary infections, Late postengraftment section on Bacterial pneumonia, Nocardia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| − M. tuberculosis | See Table 34.1 Pulmonary infections section on M. tuberculosis pneumonia | | | (Continued)
### TABLE 34.4 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients with Solid Tumors (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens(^{\text{a,b}})</th>
<th>Non-infectious Mimics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lung Cancer–Related Infections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>• Polymicrobial • <em>S. aureus</em> • <em>S. pneumoniae</em> • Enteric GNRs</td>
<td>• Blood culture • Sputum culture • Imaging: ◆◆CXR—Recurrent lobar consolidation ◆◆CT—lobar Consolidation + bronchial “cutoff sign”</td>
<td>Health care–associated pneumonia: Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h + piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h. Consider double coverage with ciprofloxacin/gentamicin until susceptibilities are known 1. Community-acquired: Ceftriaxone 1 g IV q24h + azithromycin 500 mg IV q24h or levofloxacin 750 mg PO q24h</td>
<td>Radiation Pneumonitis Lymphangitic Tumor Spread Drug Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breast Cancer–Related Infections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cellulitis</strong></td>
<td>• <em>S. aureus</em> • <em>Streptococcus</em> • Nosocomial ◆◆MRSA ◆◆<em>P. aeruginosa</em></td>
<td>• Blood culture • Imaging: Ultrasound—evidence of fluid collection or persistence despite 72 h of antibiotics</td>
<td>1. Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h 2. Add piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h if <em>P. aeruginosa</em> risk factors, specifically neutropenia 3. Surgical consultation for incision and drainage (as needed)</td>
<td>Radiation Skin Damage Lymphedema Inflammatory Breast Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gastrointestinal Cancer–Related Infections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary peritonitis</strong></td>
<td>• Polymicrobial • Enteric GNRs</td>
<td>• Blood cultures • Abdominal fluid culture (ascites, abscess) • Imaging: CT abdominal/pelvic</td>
<td>1. Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h + metronidazole 500 mg IV q8h, or 2. Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h, or meropenem 1 g IV q8h 3. Percutaneous catheter or surgical drainage</td>
<td>Bowel Obstruction/ Ileus Anastomotic Stricture(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intra-abdominal abscess</strong></td>
<td>• Anaerobic (<em>Bacteroides, Clostridium</em>) • <em>S. bovis</em> • Candida, in neutropenic or health care–associated cases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{\text{a,b}}\) See Table 34.3 for additional details.
### Genitourinary Cancer–Related Infections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cystitis</th>
<th>Pyelonephritis</th>
<th>Prostatitis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Urine culture</td>
<td>• Blood culture</td>
<td>• Urine culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gram negatives</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Urine culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E. Coli</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P. aeruginosa</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proteus</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Enterococcus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Klebsiella</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Candida</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enterobacter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ESBL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complicated UTI or pyelonephritis:
1. Mild—ceftriaxone 1–2 g IV q24h or ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h or levofloxacin 500 mg IV q24 h
2. Severe—cefepime 1 g IV q8h, or ceftazidime 1 g IV q8h, or carbapenem (imipenem 500 mg IV q6h or meropenem 1 g IV q8h) if high risk for ESBL, or history of prior ESBL infections
3. Consider adding vancomycin (15 mg/kg IV q12h) if history of prior susceptible enterococcus infection, chronic urinary catheters, or stents

#### Head and Neck Cancer–Related Infections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wound infection</th>
<th>Odontogenic infection</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Blood culture</td>
<td>• Wound culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Immune competent—ampicillin–sulbactam 3 g IV q6h
2. Immune compromised—vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h + piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q8h
3. Surgical debridement and/or drainage

Airway obstruction
Osteoradionecrosis
Skin abscess
Vascular injury

ESBL, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*; UTI, urinary tract infection.

From *The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy*. Sperryville, VA: Antimicrobial Therapy; 2012. Ref. 34
commonly occur (6% to 20% incidence). Management includes antimicrobials against oral flora and, where indicated, surgical drainage, which provides diagnostic culture and source control. Pneumonia, from oropharyngeal aspiration, remains a leading cause of death and should be tested for with routine chest radiography.

INFECTIONS IN PATIENTS AFTER SOLID ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

Immune Defect in Patients After SOT
For SOT recipients, intensified immune suppression has improved survival by reducing rejection, but it also increased the risk for infectious complications. Immune suppression may be divided into discrete phases: induction (high-dose corticosteroids ± antilymphocyte antibodies/IL-2 receptor antibodies), maintenance (corticosteroids, antimetabolites, calcineurin inhibitors), and treatment for episodes of rejection (high-dose corticosteroids, plasmapheresis, antilymphocyte antibodies). During the maintenance phase, immune suppression is gradually tapered; however, continued high levels may be required for transplanted organs with increased environmental exposure, such as the small bowel and lung. Despite continued high level of immune suppression, small bowel and lung recipients still experience the highest rates of acute rejection during the first year (70% and 30%, respectively). Treatment for acute rejection greatly increases the risk for infection. Plasmapheresis, for example, removes antibodies, increasing the risk for encapsulated bacterial infections. Lymphocyte-depleting therapies result in prolonged B- and T-cell defects, increasing the risk for viral and fungal infections. In general, SOT patients are rarely neutropenic, unless they are receiving chemotherapy for posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease.

Timeline of Infections in SOT
As is the case with patients post-HSCT, knowledge of the timing since transplantation, intensity of immune suppression, and prophylaxis will allow clinicians to differentiate among likely infectious pathogens for solid organ recipients (Fig. 34.2). Typical prophylaxis includes TMP–SMX against *P. jiroveci*, *Nocardia*, *Listeria*, and *Toxoplasma* and valganciclovir against CMV and HSV. Lung transplant patients often receive antimold prophylaxis withitraconazole or voriconazole.

Early to Intermediate Posttransplantation Period
The early posttransplant period (1 month) is dominated by donor-derived infections, nosocomial pathogens (MRSA, *P. aeruginosa*, *Candida*, *C. difficile*), and surgical complications. Postoperative infectious complications may persist into the intermediate posttransplantation period, requiring prolonged antimicrobial treatment. During the intermediate posttransplant period (1 to 6 months), patients are the most vulnerable to opportunistic pathogens, as they are recovering from major surgery and are increasingly immune suppressed as induction therapy is taking effect.
Fungal Infections in the Early to Intermediate Posttransplant Period

For SOT recipients, the incidence of IFD varies by the organ transplanted. Incidence is highest in lung, small bowel, and liver transplant patients and is lowest in renal transplant patients. In liver transplants, the incidence of *Candida* infections ranges from 62% to 91% with risk factors including multiple surgical interventions, use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, and the use of TPN. In small bowel transplants, the incidence of *Candida* infections is 85%. In lung transplants, *Aspergillus* is the most common fungal infection, affecting up to 44% of patients and portending a high mortality (65% to 80%). Among heart transplant patients, the rate of IFD is 3%. During the intermediate post-transplant period, the clinician also must consider geographic and endemic mycoses. For example, disseminated cryptococcus with brain and lung manifestations; disseminated histoplasmosis to the lung, bone marrow, liver, and spleen; and disseminated coccidioidomycosis to the skin, skeletal system, and brain. The incidence of *P. jiroveci* has decreased with TMP–SMX prophylaxis but can present atypically with negative BAL, requiring biopsy for diagnosis in patients taking non–TMP-SMX–based prophylaxis. Infections caused by *Aspergillus* spp tend to be localized to the lung compared to non-*Aspergillus* molds that will disseminate in 50% of the cases.

Diagnosis of Invasive Fungal Diseases

The diagnosis of IFD is particularly difficult in lung transplant patients, who are frequently colonized with *Aspergillus*. Antifungal treatment is initiated based on clinical presentation, radiographic findings, and results of culture and non–culture–based assays (Table 34.5). *Aspergillus* (GM) from serum, with an index cutoff of 0.5 in SOT recipients, is not a reliable test to rule out infection. *Aspergillus* GM from BAL has a higher
TABLE 34.5  Common Infectious Conditions for Patients After Solid Organ Transplantation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogen</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacterial Infections in SOT Recipients</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative complications</td>
<td>MRSA, P. aeruginosa, GNRs, Candida</td>
<td>Fever, cough, AMS, Abdominal pain, Surgical wound infection, dehiscence</td>
<td>Blood, sputum or wound culture, Check donor cultures, Imaging—CXR or CT scan chest and/or abdomen</td>
<td>1. Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q 8–12h or linezolid 600 mg IV q 12h + Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q 8h or meropenem 1 g IV q 8h ± echinocandin (micafungin 100 mg IV daily or caspofungin 70 mg IV X 1 then 50 mg IV q 24h)</td>
<td>Nosocomial and donor-derived pathogens predominate early to intermediate posttransplant. Community-acquired pathogens predominate late posttransplant. May evolve rapidly to respiratory failure and septic shock. Evaluate for surgical complications: airway dehiscence, biliary leak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosocomial infections</td>
<td>C. difficile</td>
<td>Diarrhea ± ileus, Abdominal pain, Severe—high fever, marked leukocytosis, poor nutritional state, and acute kidney injury</td>
<td>C. difficile toxin detection PCR or EIA, Imaging: CT—colitis, colonic distension</td>
<td>1. Mild—metronidazole 500 mg PO q 8h 2. Severe—vancomycin 125 mg PO q 6h 3. Septic shock—vancomycin 500 mg PO every 6 h + metronidazole PO or IV</td>
<td>May not be preceded by antibiotics as also associated with MMF. May present with abdominal distension and pain without diarrhea. Early surgical consultation: 13% of SOT recipients require colectomy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI infection—fulminant colitis (13%)</td>
<td>C. difficile</td>
<td>Cough ± sputum, Late posttransplant Course: Subacute (weeks)</td>
<td>Blood cultures, Sputum: stain and culture: modified AFB for Nocardia, Nocardia PCR, Imaging: CT—macronodules ± cavities</td>
<td>1. Hospital-acquired: Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q 8–12h or linezolid 600 mg IV q 12h + Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q 8h or meropenem 1 g IV q 8h. Consider double coverage with ciprofloxacin/gentamicin until susceptibilities are known 2. Nocardia: TMP–SMX 5 mg/kg IV q 8h + imipenem 500 mg IV q 6h</td>
<td>Always evaluate for CNS involvement with CT/MRI (50% of pulmonary Nocardia disseminates to the brain). Other sites: Cutaneous. Nocardiosis can develop despite bactrim prophylaxis: Increase. TMP–SMX dose to 5 mg/kg IV q 8h and add imipenem 500 mg IV q 6h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>Hospital-acquired pathogens (MRSA, P. aeruginosa, K. pneumoniae), Nocardia</td>
<td>Cough ± sputum, Late posttransplant Course: Subacute (weeks)</td>
<td>Blood cultures, Sputum: stain and culture: modified AFB for Nocardia, Nocardia PCR, Imaging: CT—macronodules ± cavities</td>
<td>1. Hospital-acquired: Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q 8–12h or linezolid 600 mg IV q 12h + Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q 8h or meropenem 1 g IV q 8h. Consider double coverage with ciprofloxacin/gentamicin until susceptibilities are known 2. Nocardia: TMP–SMX 5 mg/kg IV q 8h + imipenem 500 mg IV q 6h</td>
<td>Always evaluate for CNS involvement with CT/MRI (50% of pulmonary Nocardia disseminates to the brain). Other sites: Cutaneous. Nocardiosis can develop despite bactrim prophylaxis: Increase. TMP–SMX dose to 5 mg/kg IV q 8h and add imipenem 500 mg IV q 6h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>M. tuberculosis</td>
<td>Fever, night sweats, weight loss, cough 6–12 mo posttransplant Course: Subacute</td>
<td>AFB × 3 smear and culture, M. tuberculosis PCR, Tissue biopsy (e.g., pleura) for pathology, smear and cultures, Imaging: CT—miliary pattern, consolidation, rarely cavities, pleural effusion</td>
<td>Rifampin, isoniazid, pyrazinamide, ethambutol at weight-based dosing</td>
<td>Suspect in immigrants from M. tuberculosis endemic area or previous M. tuberculosis exposure. Skin test not useful. Frequent disseminated disease: lymph nodes, skin, CNS, bone marrow, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fungal Infections in SOT Recipients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fungal pneumonia</th>
<th>Invasive mold infections:</th>
<th>Dry cough, fever, pleuritic chest pain</th>
<th>No complaints</th>
<th>Course: Subacute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated infection</td>
<td>Aspergillus spp</td>
<td>Aspergillus GM: serum &gt; 0.5 (22%/84%)46</td>
<td>Aspergillus GM: BAL (88%/87%)19</td>
<td>Fungal cultures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-Aspergillus molds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Aspergillus spp: Voriconazole 6 mg/kg IV q12 × 2 doses then 4 mg/kg IV q12h46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Non-Aspergillus molds: Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated infection</td>
<td>Candida spp</td>
<td>Blood cultures; do not need fungal isolator</td>
<td>Ophthalmology evaluation for fungal endophthalmitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungal pneumonia</td>
<td>Disseminated infections</td>
<td>See Table 34.4 Infections associated with corticosteroid use, Pneumonia, section on Endemic fungal infections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated infection</td>
<td>Geographical fungal infections:</td>
<td>Cryptococcus</td>
<td>Cryptococcus antigen (&gt;90% especially in disseminated disease)94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. neoformans</td>
<td>Fungal CSF culture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. gattii</td>
<td>1. Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h + flucytosine 25 mg/kg/dose PO q6h.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>Pulmonary disease: Asymptomatic to ARDS CNS disease: AMS, fever, headache, focal deficits, meningal signs may be absent</td>
<td>Cryptococcus</td>
<td>2. If CSF pressure &gt; 25 cm, reduce opening pressure by 50% or to normal pressure of &lt;20 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated infection (CNS—see below)</td>
<td>Geographic fungal infections:</td>
<td>Cryptococcus</td>
<td>Cryptococcus antigen (&gt;90% especially in disseminated disease)94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. neoformans</td>
<td>Fungal CSF culture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. gattii</td>
<td>1. Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h + flucytosine 25 mg/kg/dose PO q6h.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumocystis pneumonia</td>
<td>P. jiroveci</td>
<td>See Table 34.4 Infections associated with corticosteroid use section on Pneumonia, Pneumocystis jiroveci</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral Infections in SOT Recipients</td>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Dry cough, low-grade fever, shortness of breath</td>
<td>CMV PCR—serum, BAL—standardization across laboratories in progress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BMV:</td>
<td>Bronchoscopy (shell vial culture) ± biopsy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imaging: CT—reticular infiltrates, ground-glass opacities, small nodules</td>
<td>Mild to moderate: Valganciclovir 900 mg PO q12h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Severe disease: Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h ± CMV kg</td>
<td>CMV triggers rejection and reactivates with rejection.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMV may promote opportunistic infections.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMV: Donor positive/recipient negative have the highest risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### TABLE 34.5 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients after Solid Organ Transplantation (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogen</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens[^a,b]</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>• Influenza</td>
<td>URI symptoms</td>
<td>For diagnosis and treatment see Table 34.3 Viral pneumonia section on Respiratory viruses</td>
<td></td>
<td>Influenza vaccine decreased efficacy in lung transplant recipients. 25% of the patients will have bacterial superinfection. Inhaled ribavirin can cause bronchospasm. See <a href="http://www.cdc.gov">www.cdc.gov</a> for updated yearly influenza susceptibilities. Initiate droplet isolation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Parainfluenza</td>
<td>Mild to severe shortness of breath</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RSV</td>
<td>Seasonality except for parainfluenza</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Human metapneumovirus</td>
<td>Late post transplanted Course: Acute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CNS Infections in SOT Recipients</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meningitis</strong></td>
<td>• S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>• LP: Opening pressure, glucose, protein, WBC, gram stain, cultures, cryptococcal antigen, HSV and VZV PCR-CF, AFB smear and cultures, Blood cultures</td>
<td>1. Empiric therapy: Cefepime 2 g IV q8h or meropenem 2 g IV q8h + vancomycin 15 mg IV q12h + acyclovir 10 mg/kg IV q8h + ampicillin 2 g IV q12h 2. Dexamethasone 0.15 mg/kg IV q6h × 4 d if suspected or proven pneumococcal infection 3. See Table 34.1 for treatment of Cryptococcus or M. tuberculosis meningitis</td>
<td>Consider GNRs (e.g., P. aeruginosa). Cryptococcal antigen has 2–3 h turnaround time. Consider tacrolimus side effects as alternative cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Listeria</td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cryptococcus</td>
<td>Meningeal signs may be absent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H. influenzae</td>
<td>Basilar meningitis with cranial nerve deficits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• M. tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Encephalitis</strong></td>
<td>• HSV</td>
<td>AMS</td>
<td>• LP: Opening pressure, glucose, protein, cell count, HSV and VZV PCR-CSF, CT, MRI: Temporal lobe involvement</td>
<td>1. Acyclovir 10 mg/kg IV q8h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VZV</td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspergillus spp†</td>
<td>Headache</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-Aspergillus molds</td>
<td>Focal deficits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nocardia</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td>Altered mental status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parenchymal lesions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspergillus spp</td>
<td>Brain biopsy if feasible</td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Aspergillus spp: Voriconazole 6 mg/kg IV q12h × 2 doses then 4 mg/kg IV q12h + echinocandin (e.g., caspofungin 75 mg IV × 1, then 50 mg IV q24h) 2. Non-Aspergillus molds: Liposomal amphotericin 5 mg/kg IV q24h 3. Nocardia: TMP-SMX 5 mg/kg IV q8h + imipenem 500 mg IV q8h 4. Toxoplasmosis: Pyrimethamine 200 mg PO once then 75 mg PO q24h + sulfadiazine 1 g (&lt;60 kg) or 1.5 g (&gt;60 kg) PO q8h + folic acid 10–25 mg PO q24h</td>
<td>CNS involvement in aspergillosis has a high mortality. Voriconazole is superior to liposomal amphotericin. Toxoplasma reactivation can occur after stopping TMP-SMX prophylaxis. Toxoplasmosis presents usually without focal neurologic findings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-Aspergillus molds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nocardia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Infections Specific for Liver Transplant Recipients

1. Intra-abdominal abscesses
2. Bacteremia especially in patients on HD
3. Viral hepatitis
4. HCV recurrence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>Flora</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Diagnostics</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2</td>
<td>GI flora including Candida, VRE</td>
<td>Abdominal pain, fever, chills, diarrhea</td>
<td>Blood cultures, cultures from aspirates, drains, CMV PCR, HHV6 PCR, HCV PCR, imaging: CT abdomen</td>
<td>Daptomycin 8–10 mg/kg IV q24h + meropenem 1 g q8h ± echinocandin (e.g., caspofungin 70 mg IV once then 50 mg IV q24h or micafungin 100 mg IV q24h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Increased LFTs</td>
<td>CMV PCR, HHV6 PCR</td>
<td>Valganciclovir 900 mg PO q12h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>HCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>HCV PCR</td>
<td>Nonsevere: Valganciclovir 900 mg PO q12h, severe: Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Always consider VRE and Candida. CMV, HHV6 can accelerate HCV recurrence. HCV recurs in 90% of patients during the first year.

## Infections Specific for Renal Transplant Recipients

1. 50% have UTIs
2. Bacteremia from urinary source
3. CMV colitis
4. Hepatitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>Flora</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Diagnostics</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2</td>
<td>GNRs, Enterococcus, Candida</td>
<td>Asymptomatic to pyelonephritis, increased creatinine</td>
<td>UA, microscopy (decoy cells with BK), urine culture, BK PCR: urine and blood, imaging: Ultrasound: evaluate for anatomic defects: obstruction, leak, CMV/HHV6 PCR</td>
<td>Cefepime 1 g IV q8h, VRE: Daptomycin 8 mg/kg IV q24h, Candiduria: Fluconazole 200–400 mg PO q24h or liposomal amphotericin 3 mg/kg IV q24h, severe: Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C. urealyticum</td>
<td></td>
<td>CMV PCR serum, Colonoscopy with biopsy</td>
<td>Nonsevere: Valganciclovir 900 mg PO q12h, severe: Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV q12h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

High mortality with Candida pyelonephritis. Linezolid and echinocandin (e.g., micafungin, caspofungin) have poor urinary penetration. Avoid urinary catheters.

## Infections Specific for Pancreatic Transplant Recipients

1. UTIs 2/2 alkaline urine
2. Pancreatic pseudocyst
3. Peritonitis
4. Anastomotic bowel leak

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>Flora</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Diagnostics</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1, 2, &amp; 3</td>
<td>GNRs, GPCs, Candida</td>
<td>Abdominal pain, pneumonia, rise in amylase and creatinine</td>
<td>UA, urine microscopy, urine culture, Paracentesis with WBC, amylase, gram stain, and cultures, CMV/HHV6 PCR serum, Colonoscopy with biopsy</td>
<td>Vancomycin 15 mg/kg IV q12h + piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h + fluconazole 400 mg PO q24h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2, &amp; 3</td>
<td>C. difficile</td>
<td>Increase in amylase and creatinine</td>
<td>CMV serum PCR, C. difficile toxin PCR, Stool for ova and parasites, Blood cultures, Paracentesis, Endoscopy with biopsy, imaging: CT abdomen with IV contrast</td>
<td>Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h or (cefepime 1 g IV q8h and metronidazole 500 mg IV q6h) + echinocandin (e.g., caspofungin 70 mg IV x 1 then 50 mg IV q24h or micafungin 100 mg IV q24h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pancreas exocrine secretions are drained in the bladder or small bowel. Aspirate pseudocyst if considered infected. Fluconazole has excellent penetration in the peritoneal cavity.

## Infections Specific for Small Bowel Transplant Recipients

1. Enteritis
2. Bacteremia secondary to bacterial translocation
3. Peritonitis due to leak

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>Flora</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Diagnostics</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CMV, Adenovirus, C. difficile, Cryptosporidium</td>
<td>Abdominal pain, fever, chills, increased ostomy output</td>
<td>CMV serum PCR, C. difficile toxin PCR, Stool for ova and parasites, Blood cultures, Paracentesis, Endoscopy with biopsy, imaging: CT abdomen with IV contrast</td>
<td>Piperacillin–tazobactam 4.5 g IV q6h or (cefepime 1 g IV q8h and metronidazole 500 mg IV q6h) + echinocandin (e.g., caspofungin 70 mg IV x 1 then 50 mg IV q24h or micafungin 100 mg IV q24h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### TABLE 34.5 Common Infectious Conditions for Patients after Solid Organ Transplantation (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogen</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
<th>Diagnostic Tests (Sensitivity/Specificity)</th>
<th>Recommended Antibiotic Regimens</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infections Specific for Heart Transplant Recipients</td>
<td>1. Pneumonia</td>
<td>1. Bacteria: S. aureus, Pseudomonas spp., MDR GNRs, Burkholderia cepacia, Streptococcus pneumoniae, M. hominis, C. pneumoniae</td>
<td>Dyspnea, Cough, Chest pain, Fever, chills, Wound drainage/ dehiscence, Diarrhea, Abdominal pain</td>
<td>Sputum cultures, Galactomannan antigen from serum and BAL, Viral naso-pharyngeal DFA, Throacoanalysis with fluid analysis and cultures, Wound cultures, C. difficile PCR, Imaging: CT thorax</td>
<td>See bacterial, viral, and fungal pneumonia treatment, See C. difficile treatment based on severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Pleural space infections</td>
<td>Same bacteria + Candida spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Anastomotic site infections</td>
<td>Aspergillus spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. C. difficile colitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cystic fibrosis patients are colonized with S. aureus (especially MRSA), Pseudomonas, and Burkholderia spp. so empiric antibiotics should be based on prior susceptibility patterns. Double coverage for MDR GNR is often warranted. Rejection can mimic pneumonia. Consider CNS and sinuses imaging in fungal pneumonias.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infections Specific for Heart Transplant Recipients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Pathogen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Pneumonia</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2: MRSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Wound infections including mediastinitis</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2: MRSA, 1 &amp; 2: P. aeruginosa, 1 &amp; 2: E. coli, 2: CMV, 1 &amp; 2: Aspergillus spp, 2: P. jirovecii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cough, Dyspnea, Fever, chills, Chest pain, Wound drainage/dehiscence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sputum cultures, Serum CMV PCR, P. jirovecii DFA sputum, Imaging: CT thorax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See treatment of bacterial, viral and fungal pneumonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Much lower infectious risk than in heart-lung transplant recipients</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a**Dosing based on normal renal and hepatic function.  
**b**Initiate in conjunction with an ID specialist or pharmacist due to drug interactions: Voriconazole may interact with tacrolimus and antiepileptic medications.

ARV, acid-fast bacilli; AMS, altered mental status; BAL, bronchoalveolar lavage; CMV, cytomegalovirus; CNS, central nervous system; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; ELISA, enzyme-linked immunoassay; GI, gastrointestinal; GM, galactomannan; GNRs, gram-negative rods (e.g., K. pneumonia, E. Coli); GPCs, gram-positive cocci; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HD, hemodialysis; HIV, human herpes virus 6; HSV, herpes simplex virus; IS, immune suppression; LFT, liver function tests; LP, lumbar puncture; MMF, mycophenolate mofetil; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; MRSA, methicillin-resistant S. aureus; Non-Aspergillus molds, mucormycosis, Scedosporium, Fusarium; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus; SOT, solid organ transplant; TMP–SMX, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole; UA, urinalysis; URI, upper respiratory infection; URTI, urinary tract infection; VRE, vancomycin-resistant enterococcus; VZV, varicella zoster virus.  
From The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy. Sperryville, VA: Antimicrobial Therapy; 2012. Ref. 34.
diagnostic yield. For pulmonary aspergillosis, noncontrast CT scans of the thorax often demonstrate multiple pulmonary nodules with or without a “halo sign,” cavitation, or consolidation. For endemc mycoses, such as Cryptococcus and PJP, non–culture-based techniques are available and generally have good test performance (Table 34.5)\textsuperscript{19}

**Treatment of Invasive Fungal Diseases**

*Candida* prophylaxis is reserved for high-risk patients, including patients with a history of multiple abdominal surgeries and recipients of small bowel, pancreas, and liver transplants. Lung transplant centers differ in their use of antimold prophylaxis with triazoles, which are thought to promote infections with resistant molds (mucormycosis, *Scedosporium*).\textsuperscript{93} Non-*Aspergillus* molds account for 27% of the mycelial infections in SOTs.\textsuperscript{93} Rapid microbiologic diagnosis of invasive mold infections is key, given the high mortality rates, medication interactions, and variable susceptibility patterns. Voriconazole is the drug of choice in treating *Aspergillus* spp. Liposomal amphotericin should be used for almost all other non-*Aspergillus* molds. Transplant pharmacy consultation should be considered before initiating therapy with antifungal agents, macrolides, metronidazole, and norfloxacin, given significant drug interactions with the immunosuppressive medications.

**Clostridium difficile Infections in the Early to Intermediate Posttransplant Period**

*C. difficile* can persist into the intermediate posttransplant period, producing diarrhea and fulminant colitis in 13% of patients.\textsuperscript{97} The incidence of *C. difficile* infections varies by type of SOT ranging from 6% in kidney transplants to as high as 15% in heart and lung recipients.\textsuperscript{43,98,99} Since mycophenolate mofetil (MMF)—an immunosuppressant used extensively in transplant patients—has antibacterial properties and has been associated with *C. difficile* infections, prior antibiotic exposure is not mandatory. The clinical symptoms (diarrhea, abdominal pain ± fever, ± ileus) can occur while receiving antimicrobials or even weeks after stopping them. Diagnosis is based upon *C. difficile* toxin detection in the stool using an enzyme immunoassay (EIA) or PCR assay coupled with EIA for *C. difficile* glutamate dehydrogenase. In the atypical presentation of *C. difficile* with induced ileus, abdominal CT imaging can demonstrate colitis. In mild cases, metronidazole PO can be used while monitoring for signs of colonic distension. In severe disease characterized by high fever, marked leukocytosis, poor nutritional state, and acute kidney injury, vancomycin PO should be started. For patients with septic shock, treatment requires both high-dose vancomycin PO and metronidazole either PO or IV.\textsuperscript{100} Surgical consultation should be obtained, as 13% of SOT recipients with *C. difficile* colitis will require colectomy.\textsuperscript{101}

**Viral Infections in the Early to Intermediate Posttransplant Period**

**Respiratory Viruses**

Weeks after transplant, most patients have returned to the community and are exposed to respiratory viruses. Potential pathogens include parainfluenza (no seasonality), influenza, RSV, and human metapneumovirus, but virtually any respiratory virus can cause pneumonia. Incidence of community-acquired respiratory virus disease ranges from
2% to 16%. Symptoms vary from a mild viral prodrome to respiratory failure. The protective antibody response to influenza vaccination is not as robust as in immune-competent hosts, and transplant patients can develop respiratory disease even after vaccination. For RSV, influenza, and parainfluenza, rapid viral antigen tests are recommended, in conjunction with PCR-based detection (Table 34.5). The yield is higher with samples obtained from lower in the respiratory tract, and a negative DFA from a nasopharyngeal swab does not rule out viral pneumonia (DFA nasal swab sensitivity is 15%). Respiratory viruses also may contribute to bacterial superinfection and rejection. Appropriate antiviral therapy (oseltamivir for influenza and inhaled ribavirin for RSV and human metapneumovirus) should be started and respiratory isolation initiated. Ribavirin therapy in parainfluenza infections remains controversial; however, its use in lung and heart–lung transplant patients in conjunction with methylprednisolone and IVIG has been associated with improved maintenance of lung function.

**Cytomegalovirus Infections**

Posttransplantation, most patients receive prophylaxis with valganciclovir to prevent CMV disease. For SOT patients, a donor with a history of CMV and a recipient without previous exposure to CMV (donor positive/recipient negative (D+/R−)) is the combination that carries the highest risk of reactivating CMV. In contrast among HSCT patients, D−/R+ has the highest risk because the recipient loses his or her previous immunity against CMV after bone marrow transplantation. CMV “infection” is viral replication detected in the serum. CMV “disease” is defined as end-organ dysfunction attributed to the virus. This may involve invasive disease (colitis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, retinitis) or CMV viral syndrome (fever, malaise, leukopenia, or thrombocytopenia). Patients treated with both universal and preemptive prophylactic therapy can develop late-onset CMV disease. After stopping the prophylactic regimen (usually 3 to 6 months posttransplantation), 25% of the D+/R− SOT patients will develop active CMV infection. Because CMV may affect the allograft, it can cause nephropathy in kidney recipients and pneumonitis in lung recipients. Because of its immune modulatory effects, CMV increases the risk of bacterial and fungal infection, as well as graft rejection and loss.

**Diagnosis of CMV** CMV infection (viremia without end-organ damage) is characterized by nonspecific symptoms of fatigue and low-grade fever. CMV pneumonitis often manifests with dry cough and shortness of breath. CMV colitis presents with abdominal pain and diarrhea. Quantitative PCR-CMV viral load should be obtained in patients at risk for infection (D+/R−, D+/R+, D−/R+). Some patients may require invasive testing and biopsy in cases of normal serum PCR (commonly seen in CMV colitis) or to identify invasive disease.

**Treatment and Follow-up of CMV Disease** Based on severity, patients may receive outpatient treatment with oral valganciclovir or inpatient therapy with IV ganciclovir. In a patient with stable or worsening viremia after >2 weeks of adequate CMV treatment, infection with a ganciclovir-resistant virus should be suspected and CMV genotype sent.
Reactivation Infections in the Intermediate Posttransplantation Period

Given a patient’s intense state of immune suppression during this period, latent infections may reactivate, including MTB, toxoplasmosis (if not on prophylaxis), and leishmaniasis. The risk of MTB varies widely depending on the country of origin, with an incidence (1.2% to 15%) approximately 50 times higher than in the immune-competent population.\(^{108}\) Tuberculosis presents with dry cough, fevers, night sweats, and weight loss, with frequent dissemination to the skin, soft tissues, and lymph nodes. Given that the mortality rate of MTB is 30%, these symptoms demand high suspicion in certain epidemiologic scenarios. The efficacy of pretransplant skin testing and interferon (IFN)-\(\gamma\) release assays is under investigation in transplant patients. Diagnosis of MTB is made by AFB smear and culture. Four-drug therapy is recommended along with immediate respiratory isolation (Table 34.5).

Leishmaniasis is a very uncommon disease in SOT population (62 cases reported)\(^{109}\) and usually arises from reactivation (but can also be transmitted by blood transfusion or organs).

Toxoplasmosis may be acquired via transplanted organs (especially the heart), reactivation, or from exposure to feline excrements. It develops in patients not on TMP–SMX prophylaxis. Infection can occur in the CNS (4% to 29% of the CNS lesions in transplant patients can be attributed to toxoplasmosis),\(^{110}\) heart (myocarditis), lung (pneumonitis), and retina (choroiditis). Fever is present along with headache and altered mental status. Diagnosis relies on positive serologies, presence of the parasite in the histologic specimen, and/or PCR technology.

Late Posttransplantation Period

The late posttransplantation period begins >6 months postoperatively. During this time, most infections are community acquired, with typical pathogens including \(S.\) pneumoniae and respiratory viruses. Community-acquired pneumonia presents similarly in both immune-compromised and immune-competent hosts, but in transplant patients, it can evolve rapidly into respiratory failure. The initial antimicrobial regimen should cover nosocomial pathogens (MRSA, \(P.\) aeruginosa, Klebsiella pneumoniae) until finalized sputum cultures and blood cultures allow de-escalation or until the patient is clinically improving. This period is also characterized by late-onset infections with CMV, Nocardia, and/or PJP after the discontinuation of prophylaxis, but while the patient is still receiving active immune suppression. Cryptococcosis, with a prevalence of 0.2% to 5% and a mortality of 40%, is an important IFD in the transplant population.\(^{89}\) It usually occurs at approximately 1.5 years posttransplantation.\(^{90}\) Patients can present with localized pulmonary disease (cough and shortness of breath) or with disseminated disease affecting the CNS. Because of the lack of inflammation, meningeal signs may be absent; fever, headache, and altered mentation may be the only findings. Lumbar puncture studies should include a record of the opening pressure and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) cryptococcal antigen. Cryptococcal meningitis is treated as disseminated disease with liposomal amphotericin and 5-flucytosine for the first 2 weeks. In endemic regions of the United States, emergency physicians should also evaluate for endemic mycoses: histoplasmosis in the Ohio and Mississippi river valleys, coccidioidomycosis in the Southwest, and blastomycosis in the Midwest, Southeast, and South Central states. Serologic studies and antigens along with histopathologic examination provide the diagnosis.
CONCLUSION

Immune-compromised persons are a highly specialized patient subset whose management is increasingly being returned to community-based physicians. This chapter serves as a guide to their initial management, but the emergency physician is encouraged to consult with infectious disease specialists, oncologists, and transplant physicians familiar with ongoing disease management. In addition, the early involvement of pulmonologists, gastroenterologists, and surgeons may facilitate early diagnosis and improve targeted therapy. Optimization of patient outcomes requires an understanding of pathogen susceptibilities, appropriate empiric anti-infective regimens, and a multidisciplinary approach to patient care.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infections in Patients with Human Immune Deficiency Virus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gruden et al., <em>Am J Roentgenol.</em> 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hirschtick et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bozzette et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 1990</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Infections in Patients with Hematologic Malignancies and After HSCT** |
| **TRIAL** | **DESIGN** | **RESULT** |
| Paul et al., *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2010 | Analysis of all RCTs (only two double-blinded) published up to 2010 that compared antipseudomonal beta-lactams (cefepime, ceftazidime, piperacillin–tazobactam, imipenem, meropenem). Primary outcome was all-cause mortality | There was a higher risk of mortality when using cefepime compared to other beta-lactams (RR, 1.39, 95% CI, 1.04–1.86). There was a higher rate of bacterial superinfections with cefepime. Piperacillin–tazobactam had a lower mortality compared to other antibiotics (RR, 0.56, 95% CI, 0.34–0.92). Carbapenems had a higher rate of *C. difficile* diarrhea |
| Walsh et al., *N Engl J Med.* 2004 | Randomized, double-blinded multicenter trial evaluating caspofungin vs. amphotericin B in patients with persistent febrile neutropenia. Outcome was a composite clinical end point | In the caspofungin group, there was a statistically significant better response if baseline fungal infection present (51.9% vs. 25.9%, p = 0.04) and better survival at 7 d into treatment (92.6% vs. 89.2%, p = 0.05). They also had less treatment discontinuation (10.3% vs. 14.5%, p = 0.03) and experienced less nephrotoxicity (2.6% vs. 11.5%, p < 0.001) |
| Freifeld et al., *N Engl J Med.* 1999 | Singe-center, randomized controlled, double-blinded placebo trial in patients with low-risk febrile neutropenia randomized to PO antibiotics (ciprofloxacin + amoxicillin–clavulanate) or IV antibiotics (ceftazidime) | Adjusted data showed that treatment was successful in 71% of the episodes in the oral therapy group and 67% of the episodes in the intravenous therapy group. Failure resulted from addition of a second drug in the IV group (32% vs. 13%, p < 0.0001) and intolerance to the PO regimen (16% vs. 8%, p = 0.07). Extrapolated current guidelines recommend PO outpatient antibiotics in low-risk febrile neutropenia |
### Infections in Patients with Solid Tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasaka et al., <em>Chest.</em> 2007</td>
<td>Single-center retrospective study of 295 patients who underwent BAL for diagnosis of PJP with 57 PJP-positive (77% non–HIV-infected) and 222 PJP-negative patients</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(1,3)-β-D-glucan is the most reliable serum marker and, when using a cutoff of 31.1 pg/mL, has a sensitivity of 92.3% and a specificity of 86.1% for PJP |
| Raad et al., *Ann Intern Med.* 2004 | Single-center prospective study evaluating the differential time to positivity of 191 patients with identification of the same organism from blood cultures drawn from CVC and peripheral vein. Catheter-tip colonization or quantitative blood cultures were used as the gold standard to define CRBSIs |
| A differential time to positivity of 120 min or more between the CVC blood culture and the peripheral vein blood culture has an 81% sensitivity and 92% specificity for short-term CRBSI and 93% sensitivity and 75% specificity for long-term CRBSI |
| Fernandez-Hidalgo et al., *J Antimicrob Chemother.* 2006 | Single-center, mixed retrospective and prospective study of 98 patients with 115 episodes of CRBSI were studied to assess the effectiveness of ALT. Primary outcome was evidence of negative blood cultures at 1 mo |
| ALT combined with systemic antibiotics resulted in an 82% cure rate and was particularly effective in treating coagulase-negative staphylococci CRBSI (84% cure rate). ALT was less effective in treating *S. aureus* CRBSI with only a 55% cure rate |

### Infections in Patients After Solid Organ Transplantation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asberg et al., <em>Am J Transplant.</em> 2007</td>
<td>Randomized, open-label, parallel-group, active drug-controlled, multicenter trial to assess the noninferiority of valganciclovir compared to ganciclovir in adult SOT recipients with CMV disease. Primary outcome was treatment success: eradication of viremia at day 21. After that, both groups were treated with valganciclovir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321 patients randomized to either ganciclovir 5 mg/kg IV or valganciclovir 900 mg PO q12h. More than 70% of the patients were kidney transplant recipients who had gastrointestinal CMV disease (28%–29%). In the intention-to-treat analysis, viral eradication was achieved in 45.1% of the ganciclovir-treated patients and in 48.4% of the ganciclovir group. Treatment success at day 49 was 85.4% vs. 84.1%. Side effects were also comparable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**REFERENCES**


34. The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy. Sperryville, VA: Antimicrobial Therapy; 2012.


75. Hardak E, Brook O, Yigla M. Radiological features of Pneumocystis jirovecii Pneumonia in immunocompromised patients with and without AIDS. Lung. 2010;188:159–163.


Burns and Soft Tissue Infections
Carla M. Carvalho and Paul Maggio

BURNS

Background
Each year in the United States, 450,000 people require medical treatment for burns, with 40,000 requiring hospitalization and 30,000 requiring specialty care in a Burn Center. 2012 data estimated the number of deaths from thermal injuries at 3,400 per year. The three most common causes of residential fire deaths are believed to be careless smoking, arson, and defective or improperly used heating devices. Factors affecting mortality include patient age >60 years, total body surface area (TBSA%) burned >40%, and the presence of inhalation injury (IHI).

Diagnostic Evaluation
The size and depth of a thermal injury are often challenging to accurately determine, but these parameters are important in guiding in the resuscitation and triage of the injured patient. The depth of injury is typically heterogeneous, and the extent of tissue injury may not be visually apparent, particularly in the acute setting. In addition, the extent of a burn injury may deepen over time in a process known as burn wound progression.

Traditionally, burns were classified as first, second, third, and fourth degree. While this nomenclature still exists, a clinically more meaningful classification consists of superficial (or epidermal), superficial partial thickness, deep partial thickness, and full thickness (Table 35.1). Both classifications are based on the depth of skin penetration of the burn. Superficial, or first-degree burns, involve only the epidermis. Second-degree burns include superficial partial thickness and deep partial-thickness burns, which extend, respectively, into the superficial and deep layers of the hypodermis. Full-thickness, or third-degree, burns involve the epidermis, hypodermis, and the subcutaneous fat beneath the skin.

Calculating the TBSA involved in a burn injury helps to identify patients who require a higher level of care. This can be done using the “rule of nines” for adults and the Lund-Browder chart for children and infants. For smaller or patchy burns, the patient’s palmar surface can be used. The patient’s palmar surface, including fingers, represents approximately 1% TBSA. Table 35.2 outlines the American Burn Association criteria for burn center referral.

IHI—which has a reported incidence of 1.5% to 19.6% among all burn patients—is an independent predictor of mortality and a leading cause of death in burn patients.
IHI should be suspected in burn patients presenting with persistent cough, stridor, facial burns, or singed nasal hair, particularly if the patient was injured in an enclosed space. Injury to the upper airway from direct thermal exposure or chemical irritation results in upper airway edema and may lead to early airway obstruction. This differs from the parenchymal lung injury seen in patients with IHI, which is the result of chemical by-products of combustion transported to the lower airways on particles of soot. Airway injury varies from mild desquamation to complete disruption of the epithelial lining, cast formation, and airway obstruction. Fiberoptic laryngoscopy and bronchoscopy are the standard for diagnosing injury to the upper airway, and findings include soot, erythema, edema, and inflammation.

Management Guidelines
The management of burns is complex and involves integrated and prolonged care from teams, including physicians, nurses, therapists, and nutritionists. In the acute setting,

**TABLE 35.1** Burn Depth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Appearance</th>
<th>Sensation</th>
<th>Healing Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial</td>
<td>Ultraviolet exposure</td>
<td>Skin intact, pink or red Blanches with pressure</td>
<td>Painful</td>
<td>3–6 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial partial thickness</td>
<td>Scald (spill or splash) Contact</td>
<td>Blisters (intact or ruptured) Moist, weeping Blanches with pressure</td>
<td>Painful to temperature and air</td>
<td>7–14 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep partial thickness</td>
<td>Scald (spill) Flame Contact Oil/Grease Chemical Electrical</td>
<td>Blisters (easily unroofed) Weeping or dry Variable color (patchy to cheesy white to red) No color change with pressure</td>
<td>Mostly perceptive of pressure only, may have pain</td>
<td>&gt;14 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full thickness</td>
<td>Water immersion Flame Contact Oil/Grease Chemical Electrical</td>
<td>Waxy white to leathery gray to charred and black Dry and inelastic Does not blanch with pressure</td>
<td>Deep pressure only</td>
<td>Never (if &gt;2% TBSA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**TABLE 35.2** American Burn Association Criteria for Referral to a Burn Center

1. Partial-thickness burns >10% TBSA
2. Burns that involve the face, hands, feet, genitalia, perineum, or major joints
3. Third-degree burns in any age group
4. Electrical burns, including lightning injury
5. Chemical burns
6. Inhalation injury
7. Burn injury in patients with preexisting medical disorders that could complicate management, prolong recovery, or affect mortality
8. Any patient with burns and trauma injury in whom the burns present the most life-threatening injury. In patients where the trauma is most life threatening, the patient is first stabilized
9. Burned children in hospitals without qualified personnel or equipment for the care of children
10. Burn injury in patients who will require special social, emotional, or rehabilitative intervention

Burn Center Referral Criteria. American Burn Association.
treatment strategies must incorporate a high suspicion for an IHI, maintenance of normal hemodynamics, and appropriate volume resuscitation.

IHI may result in the rapid compromise of a patient’s airway. Early endotracheal intubation is indicated in the following situations: if upper airway patency is threatened; if gas exchange or compliance is impaired; if there are significant signs of worsening airway edema (e.g., new hoarseness); if there is clinical expectation of worsening edema (e.g., circumferential neck burns); or if the patient’s mental status precludes airway protection. There is no indication in inhalational injury for prophylactic steroids or antibiotics.

Patients who suffer IHI are at higher risk of pneumonia, which is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in the ICU. Correctly diagnosing pneumonia in a patient with IHI can be challenging; chest radiographs can be hard to interpret, and carbonaceous sputum can mask purulent secretions, so careful consideration of white blood cell count (WBC), patient temperature, chest radiograph findings, and sputum culture results is required. Antibiotics are likely overprescribed in IHI. In one study, a 20% false-positive rate for pneumonia was observed in IHI patients whose pneumonia diagnosis was established using the Clinical Pulmonary Infection Score. Patients with IHI who develop ventilator-associated pneumonia are at higher risk of acquiring multidrug-resistant (MDR) pathogens. Routine surveillance cultures from endotracheal aspirates have been shown to predict MDR etiology in IHI-associated ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) with a sensitivity and specificity of 83% and 96.2%, respectively.

In patients suffering significant thermal injury, total body water typically remains constant, although fluid shifts result in greater intracellular and interstitial volumes and decreased circulating plasma volume. Initial volume resuscitation of burn patients with >20% TBSA should be guided by one of several well-known formulas that address the need to replace sequestered fluid. The commonly used Parkland formula calls for 4 mL of crystalloid per kilogram per percent TBSA burned, with half of the required 24-hour volume given in the first 8 hours, and the remaining half is given in the second 16 hours.

Although formulas help to establish initial goals for resuscitation in the acute setting, administered fluids should ultimately be titrated based on organ perfusion. Military guidelines for burn resuscitation that incorporate hourly fluid input and output significantly improve the combined outcome of mortality and abdominal compartment syndrome. Use of the electronic medical record to guide resuscitation has been shown to decrease total IV crystalloid volumes infused and better maintain targeted urine output.

Recent studies have looked at the role of B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) in guiding volume resuscitation. A recent prospective study studied 38 burn patients prospectively and followed BNP levels. Those patients with higher BNP levels at day 3 received less fluid resuscitation and had significantly lower Sequential Organ Failure Assessment (SOFA) scores. The study suggested this finding could be explained by lower capillary leakage in these patients, resulting in greater intravascular fluid retention and consequently higher levels of BNP. These findings suggest a potential role for markers such as BNP to help adjust volume infused during resuscitation.

Burn patients epitomize the physiologic stress response because burn injury is often of longer duration and of greater severity than other critical illness. Alterations in immunologic and endocrinologic function characterize the intense stress response in burn injury, and glucose control has emerged as an important early management strategy in this setting. Recently, preliminary results from a prospective study of 40 burn
patients (24 diabetic and 16 nondiabetic) showed delayed closure of index burn wounds, despite grafting, in diabetic patients. The NICE-SUGAR study, which showed an increase in 90-day mortality for those patients receiving insulin therapy to maintain a target blood glucose level of 81 to 108 mg/dL compared to those with a goal blood glucose level of <180 mg/dL, provides a useful guide for glucose management in burn patients.

A patient with chemical burns presents unique challenges for the treating physician. In addition to skin damage or loss, there is potential for systemic toxicity. For most acids, copious fluid irrigation, often hours in duration, is indicated. Evaluation of skin pH at onset and periodically during irrigation treatment may or may not be useful. In the case of hydrofluoric acid, fluoride ions may be absorbed systemically and bind with positive ions such as calcium, causing potentially lethal effects. Treatment depends on clinical scenario; for patients with signs of locally isolated symptoms, a calcium gluconate slurry applied topically may suffice. In patients with signs of systemic toxicity, intra-arterial injection of calcium gluconate is necessary (see Chapter 49).

SKIN AND SOFT TISSUE INJURY

Background
Skin and soft tissue infections (SSTIs) account for more than 14 million outpatient visits and 869,000 hospital admissions in the United States each year. The number of hospital admissions related to SSTIs increased by 29% between 2000 and 2004, a fact likely explained by the emergence of community-acquired methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA). Surveillance of MRSA is carried out by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and this information is accessible online.

SSTIs include a spectrum of diseases, ranging from superficial cellulitis to life-threatening necrotizing soft tissue infection (NSTI). A classification scheme developed in 1998 by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) divided SSTIs into two broad categories: uncomplicated skin and soft tissue infections and complicated skin and soft tissue infections. In general, uncomplicated infections could be treated with antibiotics or surgical drainage alone. Complicated infections were those that penetrated tissues more deeply and required more extensive surgery. Although the terms uncomplicated and complicated continue to be used, the FDA revised its classification in 2010. These infections are now known as, respectively, milder skin infections and acute bacterial skin and skin structure infections (ABSSSI). Milder skin infections include superficial cutaneous abscesses and impetigo; ABSSSI include cellulitis, major cutaneous abscesses, wound infections, and burn infections and are defined by a minimum of 75 cm² of redness, induration, or erythema.

Another important classification for SSTIs differentiates non–NSTIs from NSTIs. NSTIs include necrotizing fasciitis, synergistic necrotizing cellulitis, clostridial myonecrosis, and Fournier gangrene. A diagnosis of NSTI need not be preceded by a diagnosis of SSSI, as patients sometimes present to emergency departments with infections that have progressed beyond the superficial tissue. NSTIs progress rapidly and can lead to severe sepsis, multiorgan failure, and death, and carry mortality rates of 20% to 60%. Although the factors that lead to higher mortality rates remain incompletely defined, WBC > 30 and patient transfer from an outside institution (e.g., skilled nursing facility)
prior to delivery of definitive therapy have been shown to be independent predictors of mortality by multivariable analysis.26

Diagnostic Evaluation

ABSSSIs and milder skin infections are often identified in emergency departments. Cellulitis is a common mild skin infection characterized by spreading erythema localized to the skin or superficial soft tissues. It is typically the result of a break in the skin or superficial wound, and patients are usually afebrile. Common pathogens include beta-hemolytic streptococci and, less commonly, *Staphylococcus aureus*. Treatment consists of antibiotics alone. Cutaneous or deep abscesses are pockets of pus within the dermis or soft tissues, which may or may not have associated cellulitis or erythema. Abscesses may develop spontaneously, particularly in the immunocompromised patient, or they may represent the progression of a superficial bite wound, skin injury, or surgical incision. Abscesses are typically polymicrobial, with *S. aureus* occurring as a single pathogen in only 25% of cases. Treatment consists of incision and drainage and antibiotics.

Inadequate drainage places the patient at risk of developing NSTI. The diagnosis of NSTIs can be difficult, and clinical suspicion should be high in a patient with risk factors such as IV drug use, obesity, diabetes, immunosuppression, malignancy, and cirrhosis. Clinical findings may be subtle and nonspecific, and the classic symptoms of crepitus, epidermolysis, and erythema may not occur in the first 24 to 48 hours of the disease. In subacute forms of NSTIs, symptoms may be mild and limited to drainage from the wound’s edge. Pain, edema, fever, and an elevated WBC often manifest as the disease progresses and are the findings commonly reported in large series. Pain may be out of proportion to examination, or it may be blunted in patients with diabetic or other associated neuropathies.

NSTIs require immediate and aggressive surgical intervention, making rapid diagnosis essential to optimize outcomes. Because “hard signs” of NSTI (bullae, crepitus, skin necrosis, gas on radiograph) may be absent in over 50% of patients, several laboratory adjuncts are useful in establishing the diagnosis. One study comparing patients with non-NSTIs and NSTIs found a WBC > 15,400 and a serum sodium < 135 mmol/L to be associated with NSTIs.26 In this study, these values were highly sensitive, with a negative predictive value (NPV) of 99%, but poorly specific, with a positive predictive value (PPV) of only 26%. In 2004, the Laboratory Risk Indicator for Necrotizing Fasciitis (LRINEC) score was developed as an adjunct to clinical evaluation for establishing a diagnosis of NSTI.27 The LRINEC score is based on independent laboratory variables associated with NSTI: C-reactive protein, WBC, hemoglobin, sodium, glucose, and serum creatinine. A LRINEC score of ≥6 had a PPV of 92% and a NPV of 96% for NSTI. These results have been subsequently validated in other studies, including a multicenter study of 209 patients that showed a higher rate of mortality and amputation in patients with LRINEC scores of ≥6.28,29

Imaging may be helpful in diagnosing NSTI and in delineating the extent of infection, particularly in the stable patient with subtle findings. Plain radiographs uncommonly show subcutaneous gas, and these studies must be interpreted with caution. Computed tomography may also be helpful, but magnetic resonance imaging remains the most sensitive imaging modality.30 Importantly, since a diagnosis of NSTI can often be made by clinical exam and laboratory data, imaging should not delay operative intervention.
Management Guidelines
The successful treatment of patients with SSTIs relies on four management principles: (a) prompt diagnosis with differentiation between nonnecrotizing and necrotizing SSTI; (b) early initiation of empiric broad-spectrum antibiotics, with coverage for specific pathogens based on risk and coverage for MRSA for all patients; (c) early debridement of NSTIs and surgical drainage for abscesses; and (d) definition of pathogen (by culture) and subsequent de-escalation of antimicrobial therapy.31

MRSA has emerged as the most common identifiable cause of severe SSTIs.32 A multi-institutional study across the United States recently reported MRSA in 320 out of 422 enrolled patients who arrived in emergency departments with skin infections. Community-acquired MRSA (CA-MRSA) is now commonly responsible for SSTIs and NSTIs seen in emergency departments. In one study, SSTIs accounted for 74% of all CA-MRSA infections.33 Timely treatment with empiric anti-MRSA antimicrobials such as vancomycin, linezolid, or daptomycin is warranted in all cases of severe SSTIs and improves outcomes.34 Several other SSTI and NSTI pathogens have been associated with rapid clinical deterioration. These include \textit{Streptococcus pyogenes}, \textit{Clostridium} spp., and \textit{Vibrio} spp.35 SSTIs and NSTIs can also be polymicrobial. Specific antibiotic regimens for non-MRSA organisms have not been studied rigorously, but treatment should cover gram-positive, gram-negative, and anaerobic organisms. Typical antibiotics for these cases (combined with an anti-MRSA agent) include imipenem, meropenem, and piperacillin–tazobactam. Finally, streptococcal and staphylococcal infections are associated with toxin production, and the addition of antitoxin antimicrobials such as linezolid or clindamycin should be incorporated in all patients with severe SSTIs or NSTIs.

The mainstay of treatment for NSTIs has been surgical debridement. Multiple studies support early aggressive debridement as predictive of better outcome.36,37 A recent retrospective study showed a median 8.6-hour time to operation when NSTI patients were treated by the emergency general surgery service, and an overall mortality of 9.6% in 52 patients.38 Both the time to operation and mortality rate were lower than in other studies, which may suggest that early identification and surgical intervention of NSTI could reduce mortality. Surgical debridement includes excision of all nonviable tissue to achieve adequate source control; however, no prospective data exist to guide specific surgical therapy as pertains to number or size of incisions. The fundamental principles that guide surgical therapy include (a) the extent of the resection, which is usually determined intraoperatively upon gross inspection of the tissues; (b) full-thickness soft tissue or fascial excision for necrotizing fasciitis; (c) serial wound inspections and debridements; and (d) fecal diversion (e.g., colostomy) if there is involvement of the perineum and scrotum. Several authors advocate for return to the operating room within 24 hours for further debridement, if necessary, of devitalized tissue.39 In patients with NSTIs, serial operations are not uncommon.

For patients with NSTIs, critical care management is an important component in treatment. Patients often present with accompanying severe sepsis or septic shock. In addition to antibiotic and surgical therapy, early goal-directed therapy, including aggressive resuscitation, appropriate hemodynamic monitoring, and glucose control, is recommended.40,41
CONCLUSION

Thermal injuries and soft tissue infections present unique challenges for the treating physician. The true extent of the burn injury may be difficult to ascertain at initial presentation and its treatment remains complex. Targeted resuscitation, early excision of burn wounds, topical antimicrobials, advances in ICU care, and a multidisciplinary integrated treatment approach have all contributed to a steady improvement in the survival rate of burn patients over the last half century.

Early diagnosis of soft tissue infections, and the differentiation of non-NSTIs from NSTIs, is essential in guiding management. Whereas the treatment of non-NSTIs requires an understanding of the microbiology to guide antibiotic therapy, treatment of NSTIs requires immediate and aggressive surgical intervention.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Burns</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryan et al., N Engl J Med. 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brusselaers et al., Burns. 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salinas et al., Crit Care Med. 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SSTIs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wong et al., Crit Care Med. 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
REFERENCES


---

**LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moet et al., <em>Diag Microbiol Infect Dis</em>. 2007</td>
<td>Report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (1998–2004). Pathogens from SSTIs of hospitalized patients from three continents (Europe, Latin America, and North America) collected and analyzed prospectively</td>
<td>Predominant pathogens identified were <em>S. aureus</em> (most common pathogen in all regions), <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, and <em>Enterococcus</em> spp. Considerable variation in MRSA rate between continents, with the highest rate of MRSA noted in North America (35.9%), followed by Latin America (29.4%) and Europe (22.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moran et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2006</td>
<td>Prospective, multicenter trial of 422 patients presenting to emergency departments with SSTIs</td>
<td>MRSA was the most common pathogen identified in emergency room patients with SSTIs. <em>S. aureus</em> was isolated from 320 of 422 patients (76%) with SSTI. 249 of the <em>S. aureus</em> isolates (78%) were MRSA. Overall, MRSA was isolated from 59% of patients</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Biomarkers in Sepsis

David M. Maslove

BACKGROUND
According to the Biomarkers Definition Working Group, a biomarker is any “...characteristic that is objectively measured and evaluated as an indicator of normal biological processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention.” While this definition admits such basic signs as fever and leukocytosis, it most commonly refers to a blood test or histologic finding that can be used to suggest a particular diagnosis, estimate disease severity, or inform the decision to prescribe specific treatments. In cardiology, for instance, an elevated serum troponin level indicates myocardial injury, while in cancer care, a breast tumor biopsy that is positive for the HER2 receptor indicates disease that is more likely to respond to treatment with trastuzumab.

The role of biomarkers in sepsis is not as well established as in cardiology and oncology, but has garnered increasing attention in recent years. In 2001, the revised consensus conference definition of sepsis was expanded to acknowledge the utility of certain biomarkers, including C-reactive protein (CRP) and procalcitonin (PCT). More recently, biomarkers have been used to stratify septic patients according to disease severity and to direct the timing and duration of fluid administration, antibiotic therapy, and other treatments. There are now more than 170 proposed biomarkers for sepsis, although only a few have been studied adequately in prospective clinical trials.

Biomarkers may prove to play an important role in the diagnosis of sepsis, a syndrome that is traditionally defined by a set of highly sensitive but nonspecific clinical parameters. Current clinical criteria have shown a limited capacity to unambiguously identify patients with sepsis or to provide risk stratification. Ultimately, the goal of using biomarkers in sepsis is to bring quantification and exactitude to a diagnostic task that remains in many ways subjective. Toward this end, more than 2 dozen clinical trials investigating the role of biomarkers in sepsis are currently under way, with more still examining their use in guiding therapy.

SPECIFIC BIOMARKERS IN SEPSIS

Lactate
Lactate is widely used as a biomarker to identify septic patients in need of fluid resuscitation. The mechanism by which serum lactate levels increase in sepsis is multifaceted; it includes stimulation of glycolysis, increases in cytokine and catecholamine activity, and up-regulation of lactate production by bacterial endotoxin.
In septic shock, inadequate tissue oxygen delivery results in anaerobic cellular metabolism, in which glycolysis terminates in the conversion of pyruvate to lactic acid, rather than its entry into the tricarboxylic acid cycle. Hyperlactatemia can also be seen in sepsis despite adequate tissue oxygenation because of thiamine deficiency, the presence of bacterial endotoxin, and diminished lactate clearance secondary to liver failure. On its own, hyperlactatemia is a nonspecific finding, as it can occur in other shock states, including hemorrhagic and cardiogenic shock.

Arterial blood lactate levels reflect the weighted sum of lactate production from all tissue sources. Venous lactate samples are easier to collect and have been shown to correlate well with arterial samples drawn simultaneously, being on average higher by about 0.18 mmol/L. In patients with infection, there is a linear relationship between serum lactate level and mortality. The current Surviving Sepsis guidelines recommend fluid resuscitation in patients with blood lactate levels \( \geq 4 \text{ mmol/L} \), a value beyond which mortality risk has been shown to increase precipitously. More recent studies have suggested that lactate levels are prognostic for 28-day mortality even within the range considered normal.

A recent systematic review of the role of lactate in predicting outcome examined 28 studies, concluding that although elevated lactate levels were associated with sequential organ failure and 28-day mortality, the overlap in lactate values between survivors and nonsurvivors meant that a specific cutoff with adequate performance characteristics could not be defined. Of greater prognostic value in the emergency management of sepsis is the rate of lactate clearance, usually defined as

\[
\frac{\text{Lactate}_{\text{admission}} - \text{Lactate}_{\text{follow-up}}}{\text{Lactate}_{\text{admission}}}
\]

In one retrospective study of prospectively collected data, mortality was 19% among patients with lactate clearance of at least 10% after 6 hours, compared to 60% in those whose lactate remained elevated. A prospective study of lactate clearance found that a decrease of \( \geq 10\% \) following 6 hours of resuscitation significantly predicted survival, with every 10% reduction corresponding to an 11% reduction in mortality. As such, serial lactate levels are often used as part of a “quantitative” resuscitation strategy, in which intravenous fluid boluses are given serially until lactate levels normalize. One study has shown this strategy to be noninferior to a resuscitation strategy that targets normalization of central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO\(_2\)). Patients in the lactate clearance arm of this trial still had central venous lines placed and received most elements of early goal-directed therapy, including a target central venous pressure of \( \geq 8 \text{ mm Hg} \). Lactate clearance may correlate better with survival in septic shock than with survival in other shock states.

**Cortisol**

As a physiologically stressful state, sepsis is associated with activation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis, leading to an increase in cortisol levels. In a prospective study designed specifically to assess the predictive value of cortisol levels in sepsis, three prognostic groups were defined based on baseline cortisol levels and on patient response to a short adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) stimulation test (250 μg). Patients with a favorable prognosis (26% mortality) had low baseline cortisol levels, which responded
appropriately (increase of >9 μg/dL) to ACTH stimulation, while those with the worst prognosis (82% mortality) had high baseline cortisol levels that did not respond to ACTH. Patients in the intermediate group (67% mortality) had either low baseline levels without adequate ACTH response or high baseline levels with adequate ACTH response.

A subsequent study demonstrated that in patients with septic shock, ACTH nonresponders benefited from treatment with hydrocortisone and fludrocortisone (mortality rate 63% vs. 53%, \( p = 0.02 \))\(^\text{23}\); however, the subsequent CORTICUS trial, which included patients who were less sick overall, failed to reproduce this result.\(^\text{24}\) Current Surviving Sepsis guidelines recommend against the routine use of ACTH stimulation to identify patients likely to respond to glucocorticoids, but do recommend administering steroids to patients who remain hypotensive despite adequate fluid resuscitation and vasopressor support.\(^\text{13}\)

**C-Reactive Protein**

C-reactive protein is a pentameric protein secreted mostly by the liver, that activates the complement cascade and stimulates cell-mediated immunity.\(^\text{25}\) As an acute-phase reactant, CRP is nonspecifically increased in the setting of acute or chronic inflammation. Thus in addition to sepsis, other causes of elevated CRP levels include trauma, burns, surgery, chronic immune-mediated inflammatory diseases, and cancer.\(^\text{25}\)

In diagnosing sepsis, a number of small, older studies have shown CRP levels to be sensitive (71% to 100%) but to lack specificity (40% to 85%).\(^\text{25}\) CRP levels begin to rise within 4 to 6 hours of an inflammatory stimulus and, in the case of sepsis, track the effectiveness of antimicrobial therapy.\(^\text{25,26}\) Early, adequate antibiotics produce a sharp decrease in CRP levels, which predicts a positive outcome; an increase, or even a slow decrease, should prompt consideration of broader spectrum coverage and a search for an uncontrolled source of infection.\(^\text{25,26,28}\)

CRP levels have been shown to correlate with severity of sepsis, differing significantly in the settings of systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), sepsis, severe sepsis, and septic shock.\(^\text{25,29}\) In a prospective study of patients admitted to the ICU, increasing CRP levels correlated directly with length of stay, number of failing organ systems, incidence of infection, and mortality. Compared to patients with a CRP level <1 mg/dL on admission, those with levels >10 mg/dL had higher incidences of respiratory failure (65% vs. 28.8%), renal failure (16.6% vs. 3.6%), coagulopathy (6.4% vs. 0.9%), and death (36% vs. 21%).\(^\text{30}\)

CRP levels have greater diagnostic performance than traditional signs of infection, such as fever and leukocytosis, and may be of particular value in elderly patients.\(^\text{27,28,31}\)

**Procalcitonin**

Calcitonin, a hormone central to skeletal homeostasis that is expressed in the thyroid gland, is not known to play a significant role in infection and inflammation.\(^\text{32}\) By contrast, its larger precursor PCT has been shown to be ubiquitously expressed throughout the body in response to bacterial infection.\(^\text{33,34}\) Under such conditions, production of this “hormokine” can increase up to several thousandfold, a finding that has led to extensive investigation of its potential use as a sepsis biomarker.\(^\text{32}\)

In experimental models, PCT levels rise within 3 hours of exposure to endotoxin, peak at around 24 hours, and persist in the circulation for up to 1 week.\(^\text{35}\) Importantly, PCT levels stabilize and then decrease in response to adequate antimicrobial therapy, while a failure to normalize reflects inadequate coverage and portends a worse outcome.\(^\text{36,37}\)
In the setting of renal failure, PCT levels may be elevated in the absence of sepsis, but decrease with initiation of hemodialysis. Unlike other nonspecific markers of inflammation, such as white blood cells, CRP, and erythrocyte sedimentation rate, PCT levels are not typically affected in the settings of chronic inflammation or glucocorticoid use, but may be elevated in shock states, whether or not these are related to infection. Certain drugs can interfere with the measurement of PCT levels, most notably poly- and monoclonal antibody preparations. PCT levels typically are measured from serum samples, by means of an automated immunohistochemistry method. Healthy individuals typically have undetectable plasma PCT values (<0.05 μg/L). Infection is suggested by a level >0.25 μg/L to >0.5 μg/L, depending on the patient population and assay used. In severe sepsis and septic shock, levels in excess of 10 μg/L can be seen.

Some of the first clinical studies on PCT focused on its use in differentiating sepsis from noninfectious SIRS. A meta-analysis of these early works pooled 18 studies and showed that in critically ill adult patients, PCT had poor diagnostic performance. The value of both sensitivity and specificity was 71%, with an area under the summary receiver operating characteristic curve of 0.78. Likelihood ratios (LR + = 3.03, LR − = 0.43) were insufficient to confidently rule in or out a diagnosis of sepsis, based on a moderate pretest probability.

Despite these early findings, newer studies have correlated PCT levels with severity of illness in sepsis. One prospective study of 255 patients admitted to the ICU found that PCT levels were significantly correlated with the clinical subtypes of sepsis (median PCT = 1.5 μg/L), severe sepsis (median PCT = 4.5 μg/L), and septic shock (median PCT = 13.1 μg/L). A multicenter study of 1,156 immunocompetent hospital inpatients with sepsis, including patients admitted to the emergency department (ED), showed that PCT levels correlated with mortality both outside the ICU (8% vs. 20% for PCT < vs. > 0.12 μg/L) and in the ICU (26% vs. 45% for PCT < vs. > 0.85 μg/L). PCT has also been shown to be useful in identifying sepsis among immunocompromised ICU patients (sensitivity 100% and specificity 63% for PCT >0.5 μg/L).

The finding that PCT directly reflects the effectiveness of antimicrobial therapy has led to an exploration of its role within a broader movement toward antibiotic stewardship in the ICU. Large studies, such as the PRORATA trial, provided evidence that basing the timing and duration of antibiotic administration on daily PCT levels could reduce the overall duration of therapy. In this study, 630 medical and surgical ICU patients with suspected bacterial infections were randomized to have antibiotics started and stopped either according to PCT levels (see Fig. 36.1) or at the discretion of the supervising clinician using local and international guidelines. Noninferiority analysis revealed no difference in 28-day and 60-day mortality between groups. Patients receiving PCT-guided antibiotic therapy received antibiotics for a total of 10.3 days (SD 7.7) and those in the control group for 13.3 days (SD 7.6) (23% relative reduction in days of antibiotic exposure). Analysis of secondary endpoints showed no difference between groups in terms of relapse, superinfection, or emergence of multidrug-resistant bacteria. A systematic review of 14 randomized clinical trials (RCTs) examining PCT algorithms for prescribing antibiotics came to similar conclusions, showing no significant differences in mortality between PCT-guided therapy and standard therapy, but a significant decrease in antibiotic exposure.

The current Surviving Sepsis Campaign guidelines have been revised to reflect newer evidence regarding the use of PCT in diagnosing and managing sepsis. These guidelines...
include a weak recommendation for using low PCT levels in deciding to discontinue empiric antibiotics in patients without evidence of infection. The authors do not, however, endorse the use of PCT in distinguishing sepsis from noninfectious SIRS, citing an inadequate evidence base for its use in this regard.

**CARDIAC MARKERS**

Some degree of reversible myocardial dysfunction is known to affect up to half of all patients with sepsis and septic shock, even in the absence of preexisting cardiac disease. Cardiac biomarkers including troponin I (TnI), which is known to correlate with myocardial injury, and the brain natriuretic peptides (BNP and NT-proBNP), which are known to correlate with ventricular stretch, have therefore been studied as biomarkers in sepsis.

In a subgroup of 598 patients with severe sepsis from the PROWESS study, 75% had positive TnI levels at the time of enrollment into the trial. The multivariate logistic regression model derived showed that a positive TnI at baseline was an independent predictor of 28-day mortality (32.2% vs. 13.6%). Another prospective study found that in patients with septic shock, a positive TnI correlated with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (46% vs. 62%), greater need for inotropic or vasopressor support (94% vs. 53%), and increased mortality (56% vs. 24%).

Even in the absence of left ventricular dysfunction, BNP and NT-proBNP can be significantly increased in sepsis and, in one small study, were found to be comparable to levels seen in acute congestive heart failure. A recent meta-analysis of 12 prospective cohort studies examined the prognostic value of BNP and NT-proBNP in patients with sepsis and found that elevated levels of natriuretic peptides were a powerful predictor of all-cause mortality (OR 8.65).

EMERGING BIOMARKERS

A number of additional biomarkers have been studied in sepsis, but few of these are readily available as commercial assays. Numerous cytokines, including IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, and MCP-1, have been found to predict survival in sepsis, but offer little diagnostic advantage over PCT levels. Soluble receptors, including the receptor of advanced glycation end products (sRAGE) and the triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 1 (sTREM-1), show promise as prognostic biomarkers in sepsis, but require further study. Proadrenomedullin, which, like PCT, is derived from the calcitonin gene family, has shown promising results in studies of pneumonia, demonstrating better diagnostic performance than both CRP and PCT.

DIAGNOSTIC APPROACH

Sepsis is a physiologically complex state that is unlikely to be adequately identified and stratified by a single test. A reasoned approach, therefore, involves using clinical findings to develop a pretest probability of sepsis and then deploying the biomarker tests best suited to answer the question at hand.

In the ED, traditional markers such as hyper- or hypothermia and leukocytosis or leukopenia remain useful in distinguishing infectious from noninfectious processes, but may lack specificity in older or immunocompromised patients. In these cases, PCT levels >0.5 μg/L are suggestive of bacterial infection, with higher values being more specific and suggesting more severe disease. Since timely initiation of appropriate antibiotics is crucial, treatment decisions may have to be made in the absence of complete biomarker data. Much like the results of microbial culture samples, baseline values of PCT or CRP may play a key role in decision making over the first few days of hospital admission, and serial levels may prove useful in reassessing ED patients within the first 24 hours.

Serial lactate measurements are useful in guiding the initial resuscitation of the septic patient and in identifying those with persistently elevated lactate levels that are at risk of worse outcomes and may benefit from ICU admission. While studies on lactate clearance have used a 10% cutoff to define patients with improved survival, most survivors had clearance of approximately 40% or greater, with mortality lowest among those whose levels normalized.

In the ICU, the emergence of sepsis may be less obvious, as SIRS criteria are very frequently met. In septic patients who fail to improve or deteriorate anew, markers such as CRP and PCT may be useful in prompting either a change in antimicrobial coverage or a search for persistent or new sources of infection. The specificity of PCT in this setting, however, may be lower. ICU patients with sepsis from nosocomial infections have significantly lower PCT values than those with community-acquired infections (2.9 μg/L vs. 6.6 μg/L, respectively).
In addition to the tests described above, newer technologies are being explored for their potential in diagnosing sepsis. Examples include the computational analysis of heart rate variability,\textsuperscript{62} PCR amplification of bacterial DNA,\textsuperscript{63} and high-throughput genomic technologies.\textsuperscript{64–66} Ultimately, the most valuable use of biomarkers in sepsis will come not from their ability to predict severity of illness or mortality, but from matching individual patients with the specific therapies to which they are most likely to respond.

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lactate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nguyen et al., Crit Care Med. 2004\textsuperscript{17}</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 111 patients presenting to the ED with severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
<td>6-h lactate clearance of survivors significantly greater than nonsurvivors (38% vs. 12%, ( p = 0.005 )). 11% decrease in risk of death for every 10% decrease in lactate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jones et al., JAMA. 2010\textsuperscript{19}</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 300 patients presenting to the ED with severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
<td>No difference in mortality between resuscitation guided by lactate clearance vs. ScvO\textsubscript{2} targets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cortisol</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annane et al., JAMA 2000\textsuperscript{22}</td>
<td>Prospective cohort study to evaluate prognostic value of cortisol levels in sepsis, both before and after ACTH stimulation</td>
<td>Mortality highest for high baseline cortisol (&gt;34 ( \mu \text{g/dL} )) with minimal post-ACTH increment (&lt;9 ( \mu \text{g/dL} )) and lowest for low baseline cortisol (( \leq 34 \mu \text{g/dL} )) with increment &gt;9 ( \mu \text{g/dL} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprung et al., N Engl J Med. 2008\textsuperscript{24}</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of hydrocortisone in 499 patients with septic shock</td>
<td>No difference in mortality between hydrocortisone and placebo (34.3% vs. 31.5%, ( p = 0.51 )). Response to ACTH did not correlate with response to hydrocortisone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CRP</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobo et al., Chest. 2003\textsuperscript{30}</td>
<td>Prospective cohort study of 313 patients admitted to mixed ICU</td>
<td>Mortality higher for patients with CRP levels &gt;10 mg/dL compared to those with CRP &lt;1 mg/dL (36% vs. 21%, ( p &lt; 0.05 )). A decrease in CRP after 48 h predicted increased survival rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PCT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tang et al., Lancet. 2007\textsuperscript{41}</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 18 studies, mostly in ICU, examining role of PCT in differentiating sepsis from noninfectious SIRS</td>
<td>Diagnostic accuracy of PCT for sepsis vs. noninfectious SIRS: sensitivity 71%, specificity 71%, area under summary ROC 0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giamarellos-Bourboulis et al., J Hosp Infect. 2011\textsuperscript{45}</td>
<td>Multicenter prospective observational study of 1,156 patients in hospital, including ED, with sepsis</td>
<td>PCT levels correlated with mortality both outside the ICU (9% vs. 20% for PCT ( \leq 0.12 \mu \text{g/L} )) and in the ICU (26% vs. 45% for PCT ( \leq vs. &gt; 0.85 \mu \text{g/L} )). PCT levels were higher in the ICU, necessitating a higher cutoff value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bouzouina et al., Lancet. 2010\textsuperscript{48}</td>
<td>PCT-guided vs. clinician-guided prescribing of antibiotics in 630 ICU patients with suspected bacterial infection</td>
<td>No difference in 28-d mortality (21% vs. 20%). More days without antibiotics in PCT group (14.3 vs. 11.6, ( p &lt; 0.0001 ))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES


---

LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John et al., J Crit Care. 2010</td>
<td>Retrospective analysis of patients from the PROWESS trial, a large RCT of rhAPC (recombinant human activated protein C) vs. placebo for severe sepsis</td>
<td>588 patients (75% of total study population) had positive TnI (≥0.06 ng/mL), which was an independent predictor of 28-d mortality (OR 2.0, 95% CI 1.15–3.54, p &lt; 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wang et al., Crit Care. 2012</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 12 prospective cohort studies (n = 1,885) of patients with sepsis in the ED and ICU</td>
<td>Elevated BNP/NT-proBNP associated with increased mortality (OR 8.65, 95% CI 4.94–15.13, p &lt; 0.00001). Pooled sensitivity 79%, specificity 80%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OR, odds ratio; CI, confidence interval.


Disorders of Acid-Base, Electrolytes, and Fluid Balance

Acid–Base Disorders
Tara Scherer and Corey Slovis

BACKGROUND
Acid–base homeostasis influences protein function, which in turn affects tissue and organ performance. Disturbances of the acid–base system are common in the critically ill patient and must be promptly identified and corrected to prevent harm. Optimal cellular function occurs with a pH of 7.35 to 7.45, and the body employs several compensatory mechanisms to tightly regulate its pH. It is helpful to use accurate terminology when describing acid–base disturbances. Acidemia refers to a pH $\leq 7.35$, while alkalemia refers to a pH $\geq 7.45$. Acidosis denotes a process that increases hydrogen ion concentration, while alkalosis denotes a process that decreases hydrogen ion concentration. Patients with an acid–base disorder will either be acidemic or alkalemic or have a normal pH.¹,²

Acid–base disturbances are classified as either primarily respiratory or metabolic in origin. Respiratory disturbances are caused by changes in the partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($p\text{CO}_2$). The $p\text{CO}_2$ is elevated in a respiratory acidosis and decreased in a respiratory alkalosis. Metabolic disturbances are caused by primary changes in the bicarbonate concentration ($H\text{CO}_3^-$). The $H\text{CO}_3^-$ is elevated in a metabolic alkalosis and decreased in a metabolic acidosis. Each primary disturbance has a compensatory mechanism that leads to a change in pH opposite of the primary problem. For example, a metabolic acidosis is compensated for by hyperventilation, leading to a decrease in $p\text{CO}_2$ and a compensatory respiratory alkalosis, resulting in a corrective increase in pH. The approaches described in this chapter allow rapid detection of acid–base disturbances and identification of their underlying etiology.

AN APPROACH TO ACID–BASE PROBLEMS

Blood Gas Analysis
Analyzing blood gas results is a rapid way to determine a patient’s acid–base status. Blood gas values include pH, $p\text{CO}_2$, and partial pressure of oxygen ($p\text{O}_2$).
Traditionally, blood gases have been obtained via arterial puncture. Normal arterial blood gas (ABG) values are a pH of 7.36 to 7.44, \( \text{HCO}_3^- \) of 21 to 27 mEq/L, \( \text{pCO}_2 \) of 35 to 45 mm Hg, and \( \text{pO}_2 \) of 80 to 100 mm Hg. In an ABG, the pH, \( \text{pCO}_2 \), and \( \text{pO}_2 \) are measured directly, while the \( \text{HCO}_3^- \) is calculated using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation. Recently, venous blood gas (VBG) measurements have been suggested as a less invasive alternative to arterial blood sampling. Studies have shown that both venous pH and bicarbonate levels can serve as substitutes for arterial pH in normotensive patients.\(^3\)\(^-\)\(^8\) Values from arterial and venous samples are not identical, but their differences are thought to be minimal. In a large prospective study of 246 emergency department (ED) patients, simultaneous arterial and venous samples demonstrated high correlation between pH and bicarbonate (\( r = 0.97 \) and \( r = 0.95 \), respectively).\(^7\) In another study, arterial and central venous samples were obtained from 26 patients with normal cardiac output, 36 patients with moderate cardiac output, 5 patients with severe circulatory failure, and 38 patients in cardiac arrest. In patients with normal cardiac output, the venous pH was 0.03 less than the arterial pH, and venous \( \text{pCO}_2 \) was higher than arterial values by 5.7 mm Hg. In severe circulatory failure and cardiac arrest, there were substantial differences between pH and \( \text{pCO}_2 \).\(^5\) Observed differences were thought to be due to the divergence of the arterial and venous systems that occur as a patient becomes more hypotensive. Specifically, hypotension leads to hypoperfusion at the tissue level, which causes an increased proportion of \( \text{CO}_2 \) to enter the blood at the capillary level. In a separate study that compared arterial and venous blood gas results in 16 patients in cardiac arrest, venous pH was shown to be 0.3 less than a simultaneously drawn arterial sample.\(^9\) As a rule of thumb, arterial samples should be obtained in any patient with shock, respiratory distress leading to cardiovascular collapse, or cardiac arrest, while venous measurements can be used in all other patients, including those with diabetic or alcoholic ketoacidosis (AKA).

The \( \text{pO}_2 \) has not been shown to correlate accurately between arterial and venous samples. A prospective study of 95 pathologically diverse ED patients demonstrated venous pH, \( \text{pCO}_2 \), and \( \text{HCO}_3^- \) to be reliable substitutes for ABG analysis (pH lower by 0.02 to 0.04, \( \text{pCO}_2 \) higher by 3 to 8 mm Hg, and \( \text{HCO}_3^- \) higher by 1 to 2 mEq/L) but reported poor agreement in \( \text{pO}_2 \).\(^6\)

The following is a simple, three-step approach to the interpretation of blood gas values.\(^10\)

1. **Does the patient have an acidosis or alkalosis?**
   - A pH of 7.35 or less indicates the presence of an acidosis. A pH > 7.45 indicates the presence of an alkalosis.

2. **Is the acidosis/alkalosis a respiratory or metabolic process?**
   - If the \( \text{pCO}_2 \) and pH move in opposite directions, then there is a primary respiratory process. If the \( \text{pCO}_2 \) and pH move in the same direction, then there is a primary metabolic process.

3. **If a respiratory acidosis or alkalosis is present, is it a pure respiratory process or is there a concurrent metabolic component?**
   - In a pure acute respiratory process, for every 10 mm Hg change in \( \text{pCO}_2 \), the pH should move in the opposite direction by 0.08 ± 0.02. For example, if the \( \text{pCO}_2 \) is
50 mm Hg (a 10 mm Hg increase), the pH should be 7.32 (a decrease of 0.08). If this rule is not followed, a simultaneous metabolic process is present: If the pH is higher than expected, there is a simultaneous metabolic alkalosis; if the pH is lower than expected, there is a simultaneous metabolic acidosis.

**METABOLIC ACIDOSIS**

The rapid identification and interpretation of acid–base disorders permits optimal patient management and disposition. Historically, physicians have been poor at acid–base analysis despite multiple approaches to interpreting acid–base disorders being available. Metabolic acidosis is the most common acid–base abnormality encountered in the ED. The following is a simplified five-step approach to interpretation and management of metabolic acidoses using the basic metabolic panel (BMP) and blood gas values as described below.

1. **Identify abnormal values on the BMP**: Prior to calculating the anion gap, be sure to identify other abnormalities (e.g., hyperkalemia) that commonly accompany acid–base disorders.

2. **Calculate the anion gap**: The anion gap is the difference in the measured serum cations and anions. Using the values from the BMP, the anion gap is calculated using the following formula:

   \[
   \text{Anion Gap} = \text{Na}^+ - (\text{HCO}_3^- + \text{Cl}^-)
   \]

   A normal anion gap ranges from 8 to 12 ± 2. Values above this indicate the presence of unmeasured anions. An elevated, or wide, anion gap indicates the presence of a metabolic acidosis regardless of the serum bicarbonate or pH value.

3. **If a wide or normal gap acidosis is present, apply the Rule of 15 to evaluate for a “hidden” respiratory process**.

   When an acidosis is identified, further evaluation must be performed to determine if there is an appropriate respiratory compensatory process or a concurrent primary respiratory process. If an appropriate respiratory compensation for a metabolic acidosis is present, the respiratory rate will be increased in order to lower the pCO₂ and correct the low serum pH.

   The Rule of 15 is used to predict a patient’s expected compensatory pCO₂ and pH based on the bicarbonate concentration. The rule states that \( \text{HCO}_3^- + 15 \) should equal the pCO₂ and the last two digits of the pH as described below:

   \[
   \text{HCO}_3^- + 15 = \text{pCO}_2 \pm 2
   \]

   \[
   \text{HCO}_3^- + 15 = \text{last 2 digits of the pH} \pm 0.02
   \]

   If the pCO₂ and pH equal to the predicted values, there is a pure metabolic acidosis with appropriate secondary respiratory alkalosis. If the Rule of 15 is not followed, a simultaneous primary respiratory process must be present. If the pCO₂ is lower than predicted, a primary respiratory alkalosis exists in addition to a metabolic acidosis. If the pCO₂ is higher than predicted, a primary respiratory acidosis exists in addition to the metabolic acidosis.
The following is an example in which the Rule of 15 is satisfied:

\[ \text{HCO}_3^- = 20; \quad \text{pCO}_2 = 35; \quad \text{pH} = 7.35 \]
\[ \text{HCO}_3^- + 15 = \text{pCO}_2 \pm 2 \rightarrow 20 + 15 = 35 \]

Because the actual pCO₂ is within ±2 of predicted pCO₂ using the Rule of 15, this is a pure metabolic acidosis with appropriate respiratory compensation. The last two digits of the pH are also within 0.02 of the predicted pH.

The following is an example in which the Rule of 15 is not satisfied:

\[ \text{HCO}_3^- = 10; \quad \text{pCO}_2 = 20; \quad \text{pH} = 7.32 \]
\[ \text{HCO}_3^- + 15 = \text{pCO}_2 \pm 2 \rightarrow 10 + 15 = 25 \]

The expected pCO₂ is 25 (±2), but the actual pCO₂ is 20. Therefore, the Rule of 15 is not followed, and a simultaneous respiratory process is also present. Because the actual pCO₂ is lower than the expected pCO₂, there is a concurrent primary respiratory alkalosis in addition to the metabolic acidosis.

A corollary to the Rule of 15 is that as HCO₃⁻ falls below 10 and approaches 5, then the pCO₂ should equal 15. Recall that on an ABG, the HCO₃⁻ is estimated using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, while on a BMP, it is the directly measured total serum CO₂ that is used in lieu of HCO₃⁻ (total serum CO₂ represents both serum bicarbonate and other forms of CO₂ such as dissolved CO₂ and carbonic acid (H₂CO₃)). A bicarbonate buffering system exits to maintain the balance between CO₂ and HCO₃⁻, as described by the following equation:

\[ \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightarrow \text{H}^+ \text{HCO}_3^- \]

In a patient with metabolic acidosis (i.e., increased H⁺), this equation is driven to the left as compensatory hyperventilation increases the loss of CO₂. In a patient with a respiratory acidosis (i.e., increased CO₂), this process is driven to the right with a concomitant increase in bicarbonate. Winter’s formula (below) is used to evaluate respiratory compensation—the change in pCO₂ for a given HCO₃⁻—in the setting of a metabolic acidosis:

\[ \text{pCO}_2 = 1.5 \times \text{HCO}_3^- + 8 \pm 2 \]

The Rule of 15 is extrapolated from this formula. The maximal fall in pCO₂ in adults, however, is approximately 15; thus, once HCO₃⁻ drops below 10, the Rule of 15 can no longer be applied, and Winter’s formula should be used instead. For example, in a patient with a HCO₃⁻ of 8, the pCO₂ should be 20.

4. **If an acidosis is present, check the delta gap to evaluate for a “hidden” metabolic process.**

The next step is to evaluate for the presence of an additional primary metabolic process by calculating the delta gap. In an uncomplicated anion gap acidosis, for every 1 mmol/L rise in the anion gap, there should be a concomitant fall of 1 mmol/L in the HCO₃⁻ ± 4.21-23 The delta gap (Δ gap) is defined as the difference between the rise in the anion gap and the fall in the bicarbonate concentration24:
Acid–Base Disorders

\[ \Delta \text{gap} = \Delta \text{AG} - \Delta \text{HCO}_3^- \]
\[ \Delta \text{AG} = \text{observed anion gap} - \text{upper normal anion gap} \]
\[ \Delta \text{HCO}_3^- = \text{lower normal HCO}_3^- - \text{observed HCO}_3^- \]

For this approach, the upper normal anion gap is defined as 15 mmol/L, and the lower normal bicarbonate concentration is 25 mmol/L. If the \( \Delta \text{HCO}_3^- \) equals the \( \Delta \text{AG} \) and the delta gap is zero, then there is no hidden metabolic process. If the bicarbonate is higher than expected, leading to a positive delta gap, then there is an additional metabolic alkalosis. If the bicarbonate is lower than expected, leading to a negative delta gap, then there is a concomitant primary non–anion gap metabolic acidosis.

5. **For an unexplained wide gap metabolic acidosis, check the osmolar gap.**

In an unexplained anion gap metabolic acidosis, or in a patient with a history of toxic alcohol ingestion, the osmol gap should be calculated to determine the presence of substances with osmotic activity omitted from the calculated osmolarity, such as ethylene glycol or methanol:

\[ \text{Osmolar gap} = \text{Measured osmolarity} - \text{calculated osmolarity} \]
\[ \text{Calculated osmolarity} = (\text{Na} \times 2) + (\text{Glucose}/18) + (\text{BUN}/2.8) + (\text{EtOH}/4.6) \]

Traditional teaching is that a normal osmolar gap is 10 or less and that in the setting of an elevated anion gap metabolic acidosis, an osmol gap of >10 indicates the presence of a toxic alcohol. While this is a good general guide, a more accurate calculation of a normal osmol gap is approximately \(-2 \pm 6\), the range that accounts for 95% of the population, which has a baseline osmol gap of \(-10\) to +14. As such, a normal gap measurement can be misleading. For example, in a patient with a baseline osmol gap of \(-5\) and a calculated osmol gap of 12, the true osmol gap would be 17.\(^\text{25}\)

Since a patient’s baseline osmol gap is not known, it can be difficult to be certain whether the calculated gap is in fact elevated.

**Management Guidelines**

Metabolic acidosis is frequently seen in the ED and results from either a loss of bicarbonate or an accumulation of a nonvolatile acid. Severe acidemia can be devastating to the cardiovascular system (producing arrhythmias, decreased cardiac contractility, and arteriolar vasodilation) and the neurologic system (producing coma and seizures). Severe acidemia is often accompanied by profound hypotension and shock, which only further exacerbate acid production.

**Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis**

Anion gap acidosis results from the presence of unaccounted-for anions such as sulfate, phosphate, and organic anions or weak acid proteins not measured on a basic metabolic profile.\(^\text{26}\) Common etiologies of an elevated anion gap acidosis can be recalled using the mnemonics **KULT** (ketones, uremia, lactate, and toxins) or the more comprehensive **MUDPILES** (methanol, uremia, DKA (and AKA along with starvation ketoacidosis), phenformin (and metformin), paracetamol (acetaminophen), Isoniazid (INH) and iron, lactic acidosis, ethylene glycol, salicylates, and solvents.
Causes of Anion Gap Acidosis

1. Lactic acidosi:
   a. Type A lactic acidosis: Impaired systemic perfusion due to shock, severe hypoxemia, or severe anemia
   b. Type B lactic acidosis:
      i. Type B1 (underlying disease): Impaired clearance of lactate due to liver or renal dysfunction or increased production of lactate due to seizures, hypothermic shivering, strenuous exercise, and ischemic colitis
      ii. Type B2 (medication/intoxication): Metformin, linezolid, isoniazid (INH), HIV medications
      iii. Type B3 (inborn errors of metabolism)

2. Ketoacidosis: Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), AKA, starvation ketoacidosis

3. Renal failure: Decreased excretion of organic anions (urea, phosphates, sulfates)

4. Toxic ingestions: Methanol, ethylene glycol, toluene, salicylates

*Lactic Acidosis*  Lactic acidosis is the most common cause of an anion gap metabolic acidosis and is defined as a pH of <7.35 with a lactate concentration of >5 mmol/L.\(^{27}\) Lactate is most commonly a product of anaerobic metabolism (i.e., a type A lactic acidosis), and elevated levels can be observed in a variety of conditions, including severe hypoxia, seizures, sepsis, shock, and cyanide poisoning. Patients with severe lactic acidosis have mortality rates as high as 80% at 10 days.\(^{28}\) The mainstay of lactic acidosis treatment is correction of the underlying or precipitating illness and aggressive patient resuscitation. The role of supplemental therapeutic buffers, such as sodium bicarbonate (NaHCO\(_3\)), is controversial. In a prospective randomized study, 14 hemodynamically unstable patients with lactic acidosis were given NaHCO\(_3\)- and sodium chloride-containing infusions. While the NaHCO\(_3\) infusions helped correct the patient’s acidemia, the hemodynamic response, including response to catecholamines, was the same to both solutions.\(^{29}\) A second similarly designed study in 10 patients yielded comparable results.\(^{30}\) As a consequence of these and other studies, current guidelines recommend avoiding NaHCO\(_3\) treatment in patients with lactic acidosis unless the pH falls below 7.15 or when bicarbonate levels fall below 5 mEq/L, at point at which small changes in bicarbonate concentration can lead to profound and potentially fatal decreases in serum pH.\(^{26}\)

*Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Alcoholic Ketoacidosis*  In DKA and AKA, an anion gap metabolic acidosis occurs as the result of decreased availability of cellular glucose, leading to fatty acid metabolism and associated ketoacid production. DKA occurs because of a relative insulin deficiency; AKA is the result of a starvation state. In DKA, treatment centers on the provision of fluid resuscitation and insulin. The role of NaHCO\(_3\) in DKA management is controversial. In a prospective study, 21 patients with severe DKA (defined as pH of 6.9 to 7.14) were randomized to either receive or not receive supplemental NaHCO\(_3\).\(^{31}\) The group receiving NaHCO\(_3\) showed no benefit in terms of clinical recovery.\(^{31}\) No randomized prospective studies have examined the effect of NaHCO\(_3\) on DKA patients with a pH of <6.9. In these cases, careful, judicious NaHCO\(_3\) administration is recommended to prevent possible cardiovascular collapse.\(^{32}\)
In AKA, treatment centers on volume resuscitation; repletion of glucose, potassium, and magnesium; and provision of intravenous vitamins, most importantly thiamine. It should be noted that a similar starvation ketoacidosis can be seen early in pregnancy in women with hyperemesis gravidarum.

**Uremia** As kidneys fail, they lose their ability to excrete ammonium and hydrogen ions, leading to a non-anion gap metabolic acidosis. Ammonia is converted to urea in the liver, and the urea is subsequently excreted in the urine. As the renal dysfunction progresses, the kidneys lose the ability to effectively excrete urea, phosphates, sulfates, and other organic acids, which results in an anion gap metabolic acidosis. Treatment is hemodialysis, which corrects the acidosis by removing nitrogenous waste products.

**Toxic Alcohols** Ingestion of toxic alcohols such as methanol or ethylene glycol can result in the accumulation of toxic metabolites and an associated anion gap metabolic acidosis. The metabolism of methanol, a substance found in products such as windshield wiper fluid and “moonshine,” leads to the formation of formate, an organic acid that can cause acidosis, blindness, and pancreatic injury. The formation of formate is catalyzed by the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase. The acidosis in methanol toxicity leads to the protonation of formate to formic acid, an uncharged molecule that is more likely to penetrate tissues. Treatment begins with administration of NaHCO₃ to reverse the acidosis, which decreases formic acid production and results in less tissue penetration and damage. Another treatment modality is 4-methylpyrazole (trade name Fomepizole). Fomepizole is a competitive inhibitor of alcohol dehydrogenase, and thus serves to block the formation of formate. Hemodialysis to remove the toxic metabolite is indicated in severe cases.

Ethylene glycol, the primary ingredient of antifreeze, is another important toxic alcohol capable of producing an anion gap metabolic acidosis. Following ingestion, alcohol dehydrogenase metabolizes ethylene glycol to glycolic and oxalic acids, which result in metabolic acidosis and renal injury, respectively. The treatment for ethylene glycol ingestion is the same as for methanol (bicarbonate, 4-methylpyrazole, and hemodialysis). A recent study evaluated available treatment algorithms for toxic alcohol ingestion by combining therapeutic interventions with a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model. The study found that if administered early enough, fomepizole was more effective than hemodialysis. However, if renal injury had already occurred or toxic metabolites had already formed, then hemodialysis was the appropriate treatment.

**Other Toxins** INH, a drug used to treat tuberculosis, inhibits GABA synthesis and lowers the seizure threshold. Frequently, patients with INH overdoses will present with refractory seizures. The anion gap metabolic acidosis is a result of both the seizure activity and INH’s interference with nicotine adenine dinucleotide, an essential cofactor in the conversion of lactate to pyruvate. INH also binds to pyridoxine, making it inactive. Pyridoxine is a necessary cofactor for the production of GABA, and in the setting of an INH overdose, GABA stores are depleted, which leads to seizure activity. Treatment of INH overdoses requires pyridoxine therapy to replete the GABA stores.
Acute iron poisoning can also lead to an anion gap metabolic acidosis. This is due in part to the hydration of ferric ions, a process that results in the release of three protons. Iron also causes mitochondrial dysfunction, which leads to anaerobic metabolism and subsequent lactic acid formation. Treatment of iron overdose is chelation with deferoxamine.37

An anion gap metabolic acidosis may also be seen with salicylate overdose. Salicylates uncouple oxidative phosphorylation, which results in an increase in anaerobic metabolism and an associated lactic acidosis and ketoacidosis. Treatment focuses on administration of NaHCO₃ to alkalinize the urine and on hemodialysis when indicated. Urine alkalinization enhances the renal elimination of salicylates; in alkaline urine, salicylates will ionize and become “ion trapped,” limiting reabsorption.38

Finally, inhalation of solvents such as toluene can lead to an anion gap metabolic acidosis when they are metabolized to hippuric acid. Treatment is supportive.39

**Non–Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis**
Non–anion gap metabolic acidoses are rarely life threatening and typically resolve with correction of the underlying etiology. The most common causes of a non–anion gap acidosis are loss of base from either the kidneys or the gastrointestinal system. Etiologies of an elevated anion gap acidosis may be recalled using the mnemonic HARDUP: hyperalimentation or hyperventilation, acetazolamide, renal tubular acidosis (RTA), diarrhea, ureteral diversions, and pancreatic fistula.

**Gastrointestinal Etiologies** Gastrointestinal loss of bicarbonate-rich fluid occurs in diarrhea, ureteral diversions, and pancreatic fistulas. In severe diarrhea, excessive loss of this fluid can result in a non–anion gap metabolic acidosis. Therapy consists of fluid replacement and prevention of further loss. Ureteral diversions (e.g., ileal conduits) lead to a non–anion gap metabolic acidosis when chloride from the urine enters the colon. The colonic mucosa has an anion exchanger to reabsorb chloride in exchange for bicarbonate. This leads to increased gastrointestinal loss of bicarbonate.40 Pancreatic fluids are also high in bicarbonate, and when a pancreatic fistula is present, this fluid is lost. Treatment consists of repairing the fistula.41

**Renal Etiologies** An RTA results when the kidneys are unable to adequately manage the body’s acid. A distal, or type 1 RTA, occurs in the setting of impaired H⁺ secretion. There are many causes of a distal RTA. The most common etiologies in adults are autoimmune disorders such as lupus. In children, distal RTAs are frequently hereditary. A proximal, or type 2 RTA, occurs when there is a defect in bicarbonate reabsorption leading to excessive bicarbonate loss. Type 2 RTAs can be caused by multiple myeloma, familial disorders, amyloidosis, heavy metal toxicity, and renal transplantation. Medications, notably carbonic anhydrase inhibitors such as acetazolamide, can mimic a proximal RTA by inhibiting the renal absorption of bicarbonate.42 A type 4 RTA occurs in the setting of hypoaldosteronism and decreased ammonium secretion and is associated with electrolyte disturbances including hyperkalemia (type 3 RTA is now excluded from modern classifications). Renal losses of bicarbonate can also occur in the setting of prolonged hyperventilation—for example, in patients with severe asthma or COPD—leading to a compensatory metabolic acidosis. If the respiratory condition is corrected quickly (e.g., with sedation and mechanical ventilation), the underlying metabolic acidosis will be unmasked.43
**Iatrogenic Etiologies** Rapid administration of chloride–rich and bicarbonate–poor solutions, such as normal saline, can also produce a non–anion gap metabolic acidosis. Normal saline has a chloride concentration of 154 to 155 mmol/L and a pH of 5.5. Normal plasma has a chloride concentration of 100 mmol/L and a pH of 7.4. Administration of a large amount of normal saline during volume resuscitation can result in a hyperchloremic non–anion gap metabolic acidosis. No anion gap is seen because chloride is accounted for in the anion gap formula. Resolution occurs after stopping administration of high–chloride content fluids and/or switching to a more pH neutral alternative such as lactated Ringer’s.\(^{44,45}\) Iatrogenic addition of acids, such as hydrochloric acid and ammonium chloride, can also lead to a non–anion gap metabolic acidosis.

**METABOLIC ALKALOSIS**

Metabolic alkalosis is defined by a primary elevation in the serum bicarbonate concentration. While not as common as metabolic acidosis, severe alkalemia can be equally dangerous. Neurologic complications include altered mental status, coma, and seizures. Cardiovascular complications include increased risk of arrhythmias and arteriolar vasocostriction, which can cause decreased coronary blood flow. Alkalemia is also associated with hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and hypophosphatemia.

Metabolic alkalosis occurs in the setting of acid loss by gastrointestinal or renal routes or exogenous base administration. Metabolic alkalosis may be categorized as either chloride responsive or chloride unresponsive:

1. **Chloride responsive**
   a. GI losses: vomiting, gastric drainage
   b. Contraction alkalosis
   c. Diuretics
2. **Chloride unresponsive**
   a. Hyperaldosteronism
   b. Hypokalemia
   c. Exogenous alkali load

**Chloride-/Saline-Responsive Conditions**
Gastric fluid contains a high concentration of hydrochloric acid. Loss of this fluid through vomiting and nasogastric suctioning can lead to a metabolic alkalosis. Therapy is directed at fluid replacement and preventing future loss of gastric fluid. Potassium repletion may also be required. A rare congenital chloride–losing diarrhea results from a defect in the chloride/bicarbonate transporter; in this case, large amounts of chloride are lost in the stool, leading to a metabolic alkalosis that is refractory to antidiarrheal agents.

Contraction alkalosis can occur with the setting of thiazides or loop diuretics use. These diuretics result in enhanced sodium and chloride excretion without a proportional loss of bicarbonate. Treatment involves administration of IV fluids.

**Saline-/Chloride-Unresponsive Conditions**
Hyperaldosteronism results in renal acid loss. Aldosterone directly enhances sodium and chloride resorption in the cortical collecting tubule. This creates a more electronegative
environment promoting hydrogen and potassium secretion. It also stimulates the apical H-ATPase in the collecting tubule. Primary hyperaldosteronism is seen with adrenal hyperplasia and adrenal adenomas. Secondary hyperaldosteronism occurs in the setting of congestive heart failure, chronic renal insufficiency, and hepatic failure. Aldosterone excess is also seen in Bartter syndrome. In patients with concurrent hypokalemia, potassium repletion will improve alkalosis due to transcellular hydrogen/potassium ion exchange.

Acetazolamide decreases the proximal tubule’s reabsorption of bicarbonate and is commonly used to correct a metabolic alkalosis in critically ill patients. Case reports exist of large bicarbonate ingestions causing severe metabolic alkalosis. If a patient has a severe alkalosis with a pH > 7.7 or experiences arrhythmias, dilute hydrochloric acid is indicated. When administering hydrochloric acid, it should be given through a central line at 100 mL/h with hourly pH checks.

**RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS**

Respiratory acidosis is defined as a primary increase in pCO₂. Etiologies stem from disturbances in the airway, pulmonary system, central nervous system, and neuromuscular system. Airway causes include obstruction and spasm. Pulmonary etiologies include COPD, asthma, pulmonary edema, pneumothorax, mass, and infection. Narcotics, sedative hypnotics, and brain tumors can suppress the central respiratory center. Neuromuscular disorders, including myopathies and neuropathies, can also lead to respiratory acidosis. Treatment aims to remove or correct the underlying cause while ensuring adequate oxygenation and ventilation using either noninvasive positive pressure ventilation or orotracheal intubation.

**RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS**

Respiratory alkalosis occurs when the primary disturbance is a decrease in pCO₂. The differential diagnosis is broad and includes a variety of benign and pathologic causes. Normal pregnancy, high-altitude residence, anxiety, pain, and withdrawal can all lead to a respiratory alkalosis. Pathologic causes of respiratory alkalosis include sepsis, pulmonary embolus, hypoxia, and salicylate overdose. The respiratory alkalosis from salicylate toxicity occurs due to the stimulation of the respiratory center. Management of respiratory alkalosis is directed toward correction of its underlying cause.

**MIXED ACID–BASE DISORDERS**

There are myriad potential mixed acid–base disturbances. The most important are (1) an anion gap metabolic acidosis and primary respiratory alkalosis, (2) an anion gap metabolic acidosis and respiratory acidosis, and (3) an anion gap metabolic acidosis and metabolic alkalosis.

An anion gap metabolic acidosis accompanied by a primary respiratory alkalosis is most commonly seen in patients with hypotension from traumatic blood loss and hyperventilation due to pain. This mixed disorder can also be seen in patients with AKA and withdrawal leading to hyperventilation. Aspirin toxicity (salicylic acid) and sepsis (lactic acidosis) should also be considered with this acid–base abnormality.
An anion gap metabolic acidosis accompanied by a primary respiratory acidosis is seen in patients unable to appropriately compensate for their acidosis. This may be seen in patients with severe acidosis or cerebral edema and/or elevated intracranial pressure or in the presence of CNS depressants (e.g., opiates). Treatment focuses on correction of the underlying disease process with accompanying supportive care and, frequently, ventilatory assistance.

Finally, an anion gap metabolic acidosis accompanied by a primary metabolic alkalois is seen in patients with renal failure (RTA) or DKA and emesis (contraction alkalois) or in similarly acidic patients receiving intravenous NaHCO₃ therapy.

**CONCLUSION**

Acid–base disturbances are common in critically ill patients. The systematic approach outlined in this chapter is designed to enable prompt recognition and response to these disorders in order to optimize cellular function and improve patient outcomes.

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABG vs. VBG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gennis et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med</em>. 1985¹</td>
<td>Prospective study of 171 ED patients to determine the usefulness of peripheral venous blood gas sampling</td>
<td>Mean venous pH was 0.056 less than the mean arterial pH demonstrating a linear relationship between ABG and VBG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelly et al., <em>Emerg Med J</em>. 2001⁴</td>
<td>Prospective study of 246 ED patients to determine correlation of arterial and venous pH</td>
<td>Arterial and venous pH highly correlated ($r = 0.92$); venous pH is an acceptable substitute for arterial pH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrogue et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 1989⁶</td>
<td>Prospective study of 26 patients with normal cardiac output, 41 patients with moderate to severe circulatory failure, and 38 patients with cardiac arrest to assess arteriovenous difference</td>
<td>Patients with normal cardiac output had venous pH lower by 0.03 ($p &lt; 0.05$) and PCO₂ higher by 0.8 ($p &lt; 0.05$); patients with severe circulatory failure and cardiac arrest demonstrated large differences between arterial and venous pH and PCO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malatesha et al., <em>Emerg Med J</em>. 2007⁷</td>
<td>Prospective study of 95 ED patients to determine the agreement between arterial and venous samples</td>
<td>Venous values of pH, bicarbonate, and PCO₂ are reliable substitute for ABG analysis. Agreement in PO₂ was poor (95% limits of agreement 14.3 to −32.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brandenburg et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med</em>. 1998⁸</td>
<td>Prospective study of 38 patients with DKA to determine if VBG can replace ABG</td>
<td>Arterial and venous pH and bicarbonate results were highly correlated ($r = 0.9889$ and $r = 0.9543$, respectively) with a high measure of agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McCanny et al., <em>Am J Emerg Med</em>. 2012⁹</td>
<td>Prospective study of 89 patients with acute COPD exacerbations to investigate the correlation between ABG and VBG values</td>
<td>Moderate agreement between arterial and venous PCO₂, with average difference of 8.6 mm Hg (−7.84 to 25.05); analysis of pH showed near equivalence; insufficient agreement to determine degree of hypercarbia using VBG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weil et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 1986⁰</td>
<td>Prospective study of 16 patients with cardiac arrest to assess the difference in arterial and venous blood gas</td>
<td>Arterial pH was 7.41, while venous pH was 7.15 ($p &lt; 0.001$); arterial blood gas is not an appropriate guide for acid–base status in patients with cardiac arrest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROLE OF NaHCO3 THERAPY IN LACTIC ACIDOSIS</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cooper et al., Ann Intern Med. 1990</td>
<td>Prospective, randomized, blinded, crossover study of 14 patients with lactic acidosis to determine if NaHCO3 improves hemodynamics</td>
<td>NaHCO3 does not improve hemodynamics in patients with lactic acidosis. The mean arterial pressure was unchanged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathieu et al., Crit Care Med. 1991</td>
<td>Prospective, randomized, blinded, crossover study of 10 patients with lactic acidosis to determine if NaHCO3 improves hemodynamics and tissue oxygenation</td>
<td>NaHCO3 does not improve hemodynamics or tissue oxygenation in patients with lactic acidosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROLE OF NaHCO3 THERAPY IN DKA</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al., Ann Intern Med. 1988</td>
<td>Prospective, randomized study of 21 patients with severe diabetic ketoacidosis to determine if NaHCO3 affects recovery outcome variables</td>
<td>NaHCO3 does not increase the rate of glucose or ketone decline and does not shorten the time to resolution of DKA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES

45. Prough D, Bidani A. Hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis is a predictable consequence of intraoperative infusion of 0.9% saline. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1247–1249.
BACKGROUND
Electrolyte disorders are frequently observed in critically ill patients and are associated with increased morbidity and mortality. This chapter reviews the most common electrolyte disturbances and provides a systematic approach to their management.

DISORDERS OF SODIUM

Hyponatremia
Epidemiology
Hyponatremia is a common electrolyte abnormality and may be seen in isolation or as a complication of other medical problems. Its prevalence varies according to the patient population, clinical setting, and serum sodium level used to define it. A normal serum sodium range is generally considered to be 135 to 145 mEq/L; hyponatremia is typically defined as a serum sodium level of <135 mEq/L.

Sodium is the dominant extracellular cation and does not move freely across cell membranes. Therefore, in order for hyponatremia to occur, water intake must exceed water excretion. In healthy individuals, water intake rarely overwhelms the kidneys’ ability to excrete sodium, and hyponatremia most commonly results from either impaired renal function or inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (ADH) or vasopressin release.\(^1\)

History and Physical Exam
Manifestations of hyponatremia include headache, seizures, coma, and, if brain edema results from associated fluid shift, even death. Symptom severity correlates with the rapidity of onset and the magnitude of drop in serum sodium.\(^2\)

Diagnostic Evaluation
True hyponatremia is always hypoosmolar, but hyperosmolar and iso-osmolar hyponatremia may also occur. Hyperosmolar hyponatremia (>295 mOsm/kg) is due to the presence of another effective osmole, typically excess serum glucose or an osmotic diuretic (e.g., mannitol). Treatment includes stopping the offending infusion, and/or targeting a decrease in glucose concentration of 75 to 100 mg/dL/h. Iso-osmolar hyponatremia (280 to 295 mOsm/kg), also termed pseudohyponatremia, represents artifact due to hyperlipidemia or hyperproteinemia. It is usually asymptomatic and does not require...
specific treatment. The remainder of this review will focus on hypoosmolar hyponatremia (<280 mOsm/kg).

Hypoosmolar hyponatremia can exist in the setting of elevated (hypervolemic), normal (isovolemic), or low (hypovolemic) plasma volumes. Hypovolemic hyponatremia results from either renal or extrarenal losses of water and salt. Extrarenal hypovolemic hyponatremia typically results from vomiting and diarrhea. Other notable etiologies include burns, trauma, and pancreatitis. In cases of extrarenal losses, the body attempts to retain sodium while simultaneously releasing ADH. Ultimately, however, more water than salt is retained, resulting in low serum sodium levels as well as hypertonic urine (urine sodium <10 mEq/L). Renal causes of sodium and water loss include mineralocorticoid insufficiency, excessive use of diuretics, osmotic diuresis, and cerebral salt wasting syndrome.3

In cases of renal loss, inappropriate elevations in both urine sodium (>20 mEq/L, usually >40 mEq/L) and urine osmolality (>100 mOsm/kg, and frequently >300 mOsm/kg) exist.

Isovolemic hyponatremia results from retention of water without salt. Although a diagnosis of exclusion, the classic example of isovolemic hyponatremia is the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) secretion. SIADH is defined as hypotonic hyponatremia that occurs in the face of clinical euvolemia and in the absence of diuretic use, hypothyroidism, or adrenal insufficiency. In SIADH, both urine sodium concentration (>20 mEq/L) and urine osmolality (>100 mOsm/kg and generally >300 mOsm/kg) are elevated.4 SIADH has multiple etiologies, including meningitis, malignancy (e.g., cervical cancer, lymphoma, leukemia, bronchogenic cancers), medications (e.g., cyclophosphamide, vincristine, vinblastine, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors), and pulmonary or granulomatous diseases.5 Other less common causes of isovolemic hyponatremia include psychogenic polydipsia, hypothyroidism, and adrenal or glucocorticoid insufficiency.

Hypervolemic hyponatremia occurs when the quantity of water retained is greater than that of sodium; it most commonly occurs with congestive heart failure, cirrhosis, and nephrotic syndrome.6 In these disorders, the body attempts to retain sodium, resulting in a low urine sodium level (<20 mEq/L) and a high urine osmolality (>500 mOsm/kg). Of note, acute or chronic renal failure can also lead to hypervolemic hyponatremia, but in these cases the urine sodium level is generally elevated (>20 mEq/L) and the urine isotonic.7

Management Guidelines
Correction of hypovolemic hyponatremia requires both salt and water supplementation. Factors to consider in management include the severity and duration of symptoms. Chronic hyponatremia (or asymptomatic hyponatremia of unknown duration) should be treated with water restriction and avoidance of extra sodium, with a goal to correct the serum sodium at a rate of ≤0.5 mEq/L/h and avoid neurologic complications associated with overly rapid correction rates. In mild and acute hyponatremia, the sodium correction should not exceed 1 mEq/L/h8 or approximately 8 mEq/L/24 h.9 In acute symptomatic cases (e.g., seizures, altered mental status), hypertonic saline should be used to raise the serum sodium by 2 mEq/L/h, preserving a target increase of ≤12 mEq/L/24 h.10 The most feared consequence of overly rapid correction of chronic hyponatremia is central pontine myelinolysis (CPM), which develops when water abruptly leaves the intracellular space of brain cells to equalize intra- and extracellular osmolalities.11,12
CPM will typically present as paraparesis or quadriparesis with dysarthria and dysphagia. On autopsy, patients with CPM will often demonstrate diffuse demyelinating lesions.

Once the severity and duration of symptoms are clarified, the next steps are to calculate the sodium deficit, total body water (TBW), and the target rate of rise of sodium.

- **Sodium deficit** = TBW × (desired serum sodium – measured serum sodium)
- **TBW** = body weight (kg) × factor Y
  \( Y = 0.6 \text{ L/kg in children/adult males, 0.5 L/kg in adult females/elderly males, 0.4 L/kg in elderly females} \)

For example, in a symptomatic 50-kg female with a serum sodium of 112 mEq/L, raise the serum sodium by approximately 10 mEq in the first 24 hours (target serum sodium of 122 mEq/L). The sodium deficit is calculated as follows: (50 kg × 0.5 L/kg) × (122 mEq/L − 112 mEq/L) = 250 mEq. Because the patient is symptomatic, 3% hypertonic saline, containing 500 mEq of sodium per liter, can be used. Therefore, 500 mL (i.e., 250 mEq × [1,000 mL/500 mEq]) of 3% hypertonic saline would be given in the first 24 hours, resulting in an infusion rate of approximately 20 mL/h.

As a general guideline, the increase in serum sodium in mEq/L produced by giving 1 L of any fluid can be estimated as follows:

- **Increase in sodium with 1 L of fluid** = (infused sodium − measured sodium)/(TBW + 1)

If the above patient’s symptoms are not severe and normal saline (154 mEq/L) was used instead, the expected rise in serum sodium would be \((154 − 112)/(25 + 1) = 1.6 \text{ mEq/L}.\)

Correction of isovolemic hyponatremia is usually achieved with water restriction and correction of the underlying cause of the imbalance (e.g., SIADH, hypothyroidism, adrenal insufficiency). The use of salt tablets may be considered, and loop diuretics may be needed in cases where urine output is low. In refractory cases, vasopressin antagonists, referred to as vaptans, may be used. ADH has multiple receptors, including V1a, V1b, and V2. The V1a and V1b receptors are largely responsible for vasoconstriction, while the V2 receptors mediate the antidiuretic response.13,14 Vaptans work by selectively causing water diuresis without affecting sodium. The loss of free water corrects the hyponatremia, although the resulting increase in thirst may lead patients to drink more free water, thereby limiting the anticipated rise in sodium. Only two vaptans are currently available in the United States: tolvaptan and conivaptan. Tolvaptan, an oral formulation selective for the V2 receptors, has been shown to increase serum sodium levels significantly when compared to placebo. However, a potential significant adverse effect of tolvaptan is overly rapid correction of hyponatremia.15 In contrast, conivaptan, available either intravenously (IV) or orally (PO), blocks both the V2 and V1a receptors. Trials with the IV16 and oral17 forms have shown statistically significant increases in serum sodium when compared to placebo. Concerns, however, exist about conivaptan’s ability to lower blood pressure and potential to increase the risk of variceal bleed in cirrhotic patients via its V1a effect. More research is needed before the regular use of vaptans can be recommended. Additional treatment options include demeclocycline (600 to 1,200 mg/d), a tetracycline antibiotic that renders the collecting ducts unresponsive to ADH, effectively inducing a state of nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (DI), or diphenylhydantoin (40 mg/kg every 6 hours), which prevents the release of ADH and mimics central DI.18,19
Correction of hypervolemic hyponatremia centers on fluid restriction (600 to 1,000 mL/d), treatment of the underlying disorder (e.g., cardiac failure, renal failure, cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome), and avoidance of extra sodium. Vaptans may also be considered along with loop diuretics.20

Hypernatremia

Epidemiology

Hypernatremia occurs when sodium exceeds water in the body. As previously noted, hyponatremia can be associated with hypo-, iso-, or even hyperosmolality. Hypernatremia, on the other hand, always results in hyperosmolality.21,22 Because hyperosmolality stimulates thirst and water ingestion, hypernatremia only occurs when either a defect in the thirst mechanism or restricted water access exists. Therefore, the elderly or otherwise disabled patients, as well as critically ill hospitalized patients, are at greatest risk. Between 2% and 6% of newly admitted ICU patients are hypernatremic,23 and between 6% and 26% of patients in medical intensive care units (ICUs) and 4% to 10% of patients in surgical ICUs will become hypernatremic during the hospitalization, usually in the first week after admission. This is important because the development of hypernatremia in hospitalized patients has been shown to be an independent risk factor for mortality.24–29

History and Physical Exam

Manifestations of hypernatremia occur as a result of neuronal dehydration as intracellular water shifts to the more hypertonic extracellular space. Lethargy, altered level of consciousness, irritability, hyperreflexia, and spasticity are common. Hypernatremia may be associated with impaired glucose metabolism leading to hyperglycemia,30,31 and, in severe cases, can cause rhabdomyolysis with consequent acute renal failure.32,33 Finally, hypernatremia has been associated with a decrease in cardiac function.34

Diagnostic Evaluation

Like hyponatremia, hypernatremia can coexist with decreased, normal, or elevated plasma volumes. Hypovolemic hypernatremia occurs when the body loses hypotonic fluids (water deficit exceeds sodium deficit). This is commonly seen with gastrointestinal losses (e.g., vomiting, diarrhea) and renal losses (e.g., intrinsic renal disease, use of diuretics). Physical exam abnormalities usually are not evident until dehydration reaches ≥10% to 15% (expressed as percentage of body weight) because fluid shifts from the intracellular to the extracellular space to preserve plasma volume.

Isovolemic hypernatremia typically occurs when a patient is unable to sense thirst, usually the result of a congenital or acquired disorder of the hypothalamus (e.g., craniopharyngiomas, primary or metastatic hypothalamic tumors [usually breast or lung], vascular lesions, trauma).35 Other causes of isovolemic hypernatremia include central and nephrogenic DI. Central DI results from either impaired production or release of ADH, and it often follows head trauma or pituitary surgery. Nephrogenic DI results from a defect in the kidneys’ response to ADH. In either case, urine output can be as high as 3 mL/kg/h, and the specific gravity will usually be between 1.000 and 1.003.

Hypervolemic hypernatremia is usually iatrogenic in nature and secondary to large infusions of hypertonic fluids, such as 3% saline or sodium bicarbonate.
(NaHCO₃), as well as replacing hypotonic insensible losses (e.g., febrile illness, respiratory distress, gastrointestinal loss) with 0.9% (normal) saline. It can also be seen in accidental salt ingestions and, rarely, with mineralocorticoid excess (e.g., Cushing syndrome).

**Management Guidelines**

The first step in the management of hypernatremia is determination of volume status, as hypovolemic hypernatremia is treated differently from isovolemic or hypervolemic hypernatremia. Clinical signs of low volume status include increased thirst, sunken eyes, dry mucous membranes, resting or orthostatic tachycardia, and hypotension, as well as oliguria. Hemodynamic monitoring may reveal a very low central venous pressure, arterial pressure variation in ventilated patients, or increase in arterial pressure with passive leg raise in spontaneously breathing patients. Biochemistries may show rising hematocrit, high serum uric acid, high urine osmolarity, and low urine sodium (extra-renal cases).

Management of hypovolemic hypernatremia begins with fluid resuscitation with a balanced crystalloid solution to correct volume deficit. Fluid resuscitation should be guided by symptom resolution, including improvement in orthostasis, tachycardia, and urine output. Once the volume deficit is corrected, the next step is to calculate the free water deficit, obtained with the following formula:

\[
\text{Free Water Deficit (L)} = \text{TBW} \times [(\text{measured serum Na/140}) - 1]
\]

The free water deficit can then be corrected with 5% dextrose in water (D5W) or a low-sodium crystalloid solution (e.g., half-normal saline). As with hyponatremia, a gradual rate of replacement is essential, as overly rapid correction can cause cerebral edema. In chronic cases, or cases of unknown duration, the rate of correction should not exceed 0.5 mEq/L/h or 8 to 10 mEq/L/24 h. The diagnosis of acute hypernatremia should only be made if the rise in sodium has a documented onset within the last 48 hours prior to presentation. In these cases, rapid correction at a rate of 2 to 3 mEq/L/h or 12 mEq/L/24 h is appropriate. For example, in a 50-kg 40-year-old female patient with a serum sodium of 160 mEq/L, the TBW would be 50 kg × 0.5 L/kg = 25 L. Total water deficit would be 25 L × [(160/140) - 1] = 3.6 L. Thus, a total positive water balance of 3.6 L must be achieved for the sodium to decrease from 160 to 140 mEq/L, or by 20 mEq. However, assuming that the case is not acute, the rate of correction should be ≤0.5 mEq/h, which would require replacement of the water deficit over 40 hours, or approximately 90 mL/h, to which insensible water losses should be added—generally about 30 mL/h—for a total of 120 mL/h.

In the particular case of hypernatremia caused by DI, water loss should be replaced at a rate of 0.5 to 0.75 mL for every 1 mL of urine made. In cases of central DI, vasopressin (5 to 10 units IM q6-12h) and desmopressin acetate or DDAVP (1 to 2 mcg SC/IV q12h) may be considered. These agents are ADH analogs that increase water reabsorption by the renal collecting ducts.

In cases of isovolemic and hypervolemic hyponatremia, treatment requires only replacement of the free water (e.g., D5W) with or without the use of loop diuretics. In renal failure, dialysis may be necessary.

Sodium treatment summary: Tables 38.1 and 38.2
Epidemiology

While sodium is the major extracellular cation, potassium is the dominant intracellular one. The concentration differences of these positively charged particles create a difference in electrical potential between the inside and outside of cells, known as the membrane potential. The membrane potential allows the cells to generate an action potential, an electrical discharge, which is critical for neurotransmission and muscle contraction. For this reason, the serum potassium level is maintained within a very narrow range. In the setting of hypokalemia, where serum levels are low, potassium shifts from the intracellular to the extracellular space. As a result, the cell membranes become hyperpolarized and thus more resistant to depolarization, which makes them less likely to generate an action potential.

History and Physical Exam

Hypokalemia can manifest as generalized muscle weakness, paralytic ileus, and abnormalities in cardiac conduction. Electrocardiogram (ECG) changes that accompany
hypokalemia include ST depressions, small amplitude of T waves, and increased height of U waves. In severe cases, prolonged PR intervals and wide QRS complexes may also be seen.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**
Three broad mechanisms lead to hypokalemia: increased intracellular shifts, decreased potassium intake, and increased potassium loss. Insulin, epinephrine, β₂ agonists, and α agonists all shift potassium intracellularly; starvation and malnutrition can lead to inadequate potassium intake; and diuretics and gastrointestinal disorders increase potassium loss. Diuretic therapy is the most common cause of potassium wasting. By blocking sodium reabsorption, thiazide and loop diuretic increase sodium delivery to the collecting tubules, creating a favorable electrochemical gradient for potassium secretion in exchange for sodium reabsorption. Contrary to popular belief, hypokalemia complicating vomiting or nasogastric suctioning actually results from renal potassium loss, not gastric fluid loss. Intravascular volume depletion from gastric fluid loss stimulates the renin–angiotensin pathway and aldosterone release. Aldosterone, in turn, increases renal sodium absorption at the expense of potassium excretion, similar to other primary or secondary aldosteronism–induced hypokalemia.

**Management Guidelines**
Management of asymptomatic hypokalemia is safely achieved with slow enteral correction over several days. For patients with severe hypokalemia, parenteral replacement is preferred with a maximum recommended rate of correction of 10 to 20 mEq/h. Potassium chloride is commonly used, but potassium phosphate is also acceptable. In life-threatening cases, up to 40 mEq/h of potassium chloride can be given through a central line, preferably in an ICU setting. Because severe transient hyperkalemia can easily occur during correction of hypokalemia, care must be taken to closely monitor telemetry data as treatment proceeds. Low phosphate and magnesium levels often accompany hypokalemia and must also be treated in order for potassium levels to be successfully corrected.

**Hyperkalemia**

**Epidemiology**
Hyperkalemia is a potentially lethal electrolyte disturbance. Expeditious recognition and prompt treatment are paramount. Like hypokalemia, hyperkalemia can be caused by increased intake, intracellular-to-extracellular potassium shifts, or defects in renal excretion. Increased intake in hospitalized patients is typically iatrogenic in nature and the result of accidental overdose of IV potassium. Shifts between the intracellular and extracellular fluids occur in the setting of acidosis or cell destruction. Decreased excretion is often the result of renal failure or adrenal insufficiency.

**History and Physical Exam**
Severe hyperkalemia can present with paresthesias, muscle weakness leading to flaccid paralysis but typically with sparing of the diaphragm, and depressed deep tendon reflexes. Cranial nerves are rarely affected. Electrocardiographic changes include peaked and narrow T waves, widened QRS complexes, sine waves, and shortened
QT intervals, which, when left untreated, can progress to ventricular fibrillation and asystole.  

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

Although commonly relied upon for diagnosis, the sensitivity of the ECG to reveal changes related to hyperkalemia has been estimated at around 80%, according to one retrospective review of 90 hyperkalemic patients. ECG sensitivity for hyperkalemia increases with the severity of electrolyte derangement, but normal ECGs have been reported even with profound hyperkalemia. ECG changes should, therefore, not be considered sine qua non to initiate treatment of severe hyperkalemia.

**Management Guidelines**

Immediate treatment of hyperkalemia is needed if ECG changes are noted, irrespective of serum potassium level, or if the serum potassium level is >6.5 to 7 mEq/L. The goals of therapy are threefold: (1) antagonize the effect of potassium on excitable cell membranes; (2) shift potassium from the extracellular milieu into cells; and (3) enhance elimination of potassium from the body.

Calcium gluconate or calcium chloride should be given first to antagonize the myocardial effects of hyperkalemia and prevent dysrhythmias. Classic teaching recommends an ampule of calcium gluconate, which represents 1 g or 4.6 mEq in 10 mL of a 10% solution, infused over 2 to 5 minutes with expected effect in 2 to 3 minutes. Calcium gluconate is preferred over calcium chloride—although calcium chloride is more concentrated (13.6 mEq in 10 mL of a 10% solution)—because it is less likely to cause tissue necrosis in the event of extravasation from the peripheral IV. A second ampule may be repeated after 5 minutes if there is no improvement in the ECG or if the ECG deteriorates after an initial improvement. The duration of action of 1 ampule is 30 to 60 minutes. Of note, reports exist of sudden death in patients taking digitalis glycosides who were given IV calcium. Although these cases were anecdotal, prudence warrants either avoidance of IV calcium entirely in this subset of patients or at least very close monitoring during calcium administration.

Insulin lowers potassium levels by shifting potassium into cells. The effect is dose dependent and is mediated by the sodium/potassium ATPase pump in the plasma membrane of cells. An IV 10-unit dose of regular insulin is standard, and will shift potassium from the extracellular fluid to the intracellular fluid within 15 to 30 minutes, with the effect lasting 4 to 6 hours. Studies have shown that this dose will reduce serum potassium level by approximately 0.6 mEq/L. A bolus of 25 g of IV dextrose (50% solution) is generally given with the insulin to prevent hypoglycemia. However, because the effect of insulin on serum potassium levels peaks at 60 minutes, a single bolus of dextrose may be inadequate to prevent later hypoglycemia. For this reason, some advocate starting a dextrose infusion after the initial bolus. Insulin should be used without dextrose in hyperglycemic patients (baseline glucose level >250 mg/dL), as the hyperglycemia itself may be the cause of hyperkalemia in these patients.

NaHCO₃ use in the emergent treatment of hyperkalemia remains controversial. NaHCO₃ is typically formulated as an 8.4% solution (1 mEq/mL) and given in ampules of 50 mL (50 mEq per ampule) infused over 5 minutes. Like insulin, NaHCO₃ has been
postulated to shift potassium from the extracellular to the intracellular space. In theory, 
the administration of NaHCO₃ should prompt hydrogen ions to move out of the cells 
via the Na⁺/H⁺ exchanger. This, in turn, leads to more sodium entering the cells to 
maintain electroneutrality. In the setting of hyperkalemia, this increase in intracellular 
sodium would subsequently activate the Na⁺/K⁺ ATPase pump, driving potassium from 
the extracellular to the intracellular space. Of critical importance, the Na⁺/H⁺ exchanger 
appears to be inactive in a steady state but active in the setting of acidosis. Arguments 
for the benefit of NaHCO₃ in hyperkalemia originated with a few small clinical studies 
conducted in the 1950s and 1970s. Subsequent research has suggested that short-
term infusions or boluses of NaHCO₃ are ineffective in the acute setting, whereas 
a prolonged (4 to 6 hours) infusion of NaHCO₃ decreased potassium levels by about 
0.6 mEq/L. Given its limited efficacy acutely, while not contraindicated in hyperkale-
mic patients with acidemia, no significant or rapid change in potassium levels should be 
expected with NaHCO₃ therapy.

The effect of β₂-adrenergic stimulation effectively lowers serum potassium. β₂ 
agonists (e.g., albuterol), like insulin, stimulate the Na⁺/K⁺ ATPase pump to shift potas-
sium from the extracellular to the intracellular space. The recommended dose is 10 to 
20 mg in 4 to 8 mL of saline, nebulized over 10 to 20 minutes. IV and metered-dose 
inhaler doses are also sometimes used. The onset of action is typically within 30 minutes, 
and the effect is maintained for up to 2 hours. Serum potassium will usually decrease by 
0.5 to 1.2 mEq/L per 10- to 20-mg dose of albuterol.

Sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) is a cation-exchange resin that removes 
potassium from the body by exchanging sodium for secreted potassium in the gastroin-
estestinal tract. Kayexalate is generally given as an oral dose of 1 to 2 g/kg or as a retention 
enema with sorbitol to prevent constipation. Each gram of sodium polystyrene removes 
approximately 0.65 mEq/L of potassium, although the effect can be variable. Two 
important concerns exist with the use of Kayexalate. The first is its slow onset; when 
given orally, the onset of action is >2 hours and the maximum effect may not occur for 
6 hours. As a retention enema, the effect is more rapid, but the magnitude of effect is 
less because of a shorter transit time through the gut lumen. The second potential 
problem is the possibility of toxicity. Numerous reports of Kayexalate-induced intesti-
nal necrosis exist, both with the enema and oral forms. Although the true 
incidence of necrosis is unknown, estimates are 0.1% to 0.3% in the general popula-
tion given the medication, and it occurs almost exclusively in “at-risk” patients (i.e., 
post–abdominal surgery, bowel injury, other gastrointestinal dysfunction). The Food 
and Drug Administration (FDA) first approved Kayexalate in 1958 after a small case 
series published in 1953 showed potassium binding in the stool and a hypokalemic 
effect in four patients with renal failure and a normal volunteer. The reported effect-
tiveness of the drug, however, is largely based on the 1961 study, in which Kayexalate 
suspended in water was used orally or rectally in patients with acute and chronic kid-
ney disease. In 22 of 32 cases, the plasma potassium fell by a mean of 1 mEq/L with 
the oral formulation versus 0.8 mEq/L with the rectal. Soon after, however, it was 
recognized that Kayexalate could cause life-threatening intestinal impactions, which 
then led to the practice of concomitantly administering 70% sorbitol, an osmotic laxa-
tive. A follow-up study showed a decrease in intestinal impactions with this com-
bination; however, reports of gastrointestinal necrosis continued to accumulate.
With the precise mechanism of injury unclear, it was postulated that the 70% sorbitol rather than Kayexalate itself could be the culprit. Since 2007, the FDA has asked all manufacturers of premixed resin to reformulate their products to contain 33%, rather than 70%, sorbitol.

Studies have now called into questions the safety of even the 33% formulation. For all these reasons, consensus recommendations are to exhaust alternatives (e.g., diuretics, dialysis) before considering Kayexalate use. Importantly, Kayexalate continues to play a key role in the treatment of acute hyperkalemia under austere conditions, for example, after a natural or manmade disaster. In situations like these, where dialysis is not available, Kayexalate may be the only option for potassium removal, especially in chronic renal patients in whom diuretics are expected to have no effect. In the recent past, it was used in military facilities in Iraq, in the aftermath of Hurricane Katrina, and after the Haitian earthquake.

If the potassium levels remain elevated despite the aforementioned therapies, a trial of loop diuretics in patients with preserved renal function may be attempted. In patients with end-stage renal disease and refractory cases, dialysis should be considered. Hemodialysis against a potassium-free dialysate can decrease the serum potassium level by as much as 1.5 mEq/h. However, a rebound in serum levels will always occur following dialysis, with 35% of the decrease in potassium negated after just 1 hour and nearly 70% after 6 hours as intracellular levels equilibrate with those of the serum. The magnitude of the rebound is thought to be proportional to the predialysis potassium level. Due to the risk of ventricular dysrhythmias during dialysis for severe hyperkalemia, which may result from the substantial intravascular volume shifts in the presence of a dysrhythmogenic potassium level, such patients are recommended to undergo continuous ECG monitoring during the session.

Potassium treatment summary: Tables 38.3 and 38.4

---

**TABLE 38.3** Treatment of Hypokalemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypokalemia</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Rate of Correction or Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asymptomatic</td>
<td>PO potassium chloride</td>
<td>20–80 mEq/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptomatic</td>
<td>IV potassium chloride</td>
<td>10–20 mEq/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life-threatening</td>
<td>IV potassium chloride</td>
<td>40 mEq/h via central line</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Treat concomitant low magnesium and phosphate.

---

**TABLE 38.4** Treatment of Hyperkalemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hyperkalemia</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Rate of Correction or Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calcium gluconate</td>
<td>1 amp IV over 2–5 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulin and dextrose</td>
<td>10 units of regular insulin and 25 g of D50 IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sodium bicarbonate</td>
<td>1 amp IV over 3–5 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Albuterol</td>
<td>10 mg in 4 mL NS INH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kayexalate</td>
<td>2–3 g/kg orally or enema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
<td>Furosemide 40 mg IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dialysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CALCIUM

Hypocalcemia
Epidemiology
Calcium is the most abundant electrolyte in the body and exists in three forms: (1) a chelated form; (2) an ionized form; and (3) a protein-bound form. The ionized form is the most physiologically active form and is therefore the one needing measurement. Two hormones—parathyroid hormone (PTH) and calcitonin—are responsible for regulating the body’s calcium balance. PTH is released in response to hypocalcemia and increases calcium levels by stimulating osteoclasts, enhancing intestinal absorption, and decreasing renal excretion. Calcitonin, conversely, inhibits osteoclast activity and promotes renal excretion of calcium.

History and Physical Exam
Because calcium plays a major role in muscle contraction–excitation, nerve conduction, myocardial function, and coagulation, the effects of hypocalcemia can be varied. Paresthesias in the hands and feet, circumoral numbness, muscle spasms, seizures, anxiety, irritability, psychosis, hypotension, low cardiac output, and QT interval prolongation may all be observed. QT interval prolongation can progress to bradycardia, heart block, or ventricular fibrillation.

Diagnostic Evaluation
Hypocalcemia is diagnosed by measurement of serum levels. Because serum protein levels affect total serum calcium levels, the ionized calcium level provides a more accurate assessment of the physiologic active calcium available. Ionized calcium of <1.1 mmol/L confirms hypocalcemia (physiologic range is 1.1 to 1.4 mmol/L, or 4.5 to 5.6 mg/dL; 1 mmol/L is roughly equivalent to 4 mg/dL). Common causes of hypocalcemia include hypoparathyroidism; hyperphosphatemia, in which excess phosphate chelates circulating calcium (e.g., rhabdomyolysis, kidney disease); and massive transfusion, in which the preservative citrate binds calcium.

Management Guidelines
In severe symptomatic cases, hypocalcemia is treated with 200 mg of elemental calcium given slowly over 10 to 20 minutes. Calcium gluconate can be given through a peripheral IV, but calcium chloride infused through a central line provides three times as many ionized calcium molecules (10 mL of calcium gluconate 10% contains 94 mg of elemental calcium; 10 mL of calcium chloride 10% contains 272 mg of elemental calcium). In less emergent cases, infusions containing 0.5 to 1.5 mg elemental calcium/kg/h may also be used, diluted in dextrose or saline, and given over 4 to 6 hours.

A magnesium level must be concurrently checked and replenished because hypomagnesemia can impair PTH secretion and induce end-organ resistance to PTH, thus rendering hypocalcemia correction difficult. Finally, ionized calcium and H⁺ ions compete to bind to negatively charged sites on protein molecules, such as albumin. This binding is pH dependent, such that a sudden increase in pH—in the setting of, for example, alkali therapy—would cause proteins to release H⁺ and then bind calcium instead, potentially precipitously decreasing ionized calcium levels. For this reason, if a metabolic acidosis exists concomitantly with hypocalcemia, calcium replacement must take place before attempting to correct the acidosis.
Hypercalcemia

Epidemiology

Hypercalcemia is usually encountered in the setting of malignancy or primary hyperparathyroidism. Hyperparathyroidism is the culprit in 90% of ambulatory patients, while cancer causes 65% of hypercalcemia in hospitalized patients. Other causes of hypercalcemia include hyperthyroidism, Addison disease, and use of thiazide diuretics.

History and Physical Exam

Manifestations of hypercalcemia are varied and frequently nonspecific. Patients will often report nausea, vomiting, and constipation. Weakness and fatigue are common, and altered mental status and coma may also be observed. Dysrhythmias can result from PR interval prolongation and QT interval shortening. Reports of heart block and cardiac arrest exist but are rare.

Diagnostic Evaluation

As with hypocalcemia, hypercalcemia is generally diagnosed by measuring serum levels. Mild hypercalcemia is defined as total serum level of 12 mg/dL and is usually asymptomatic. Levels between 12 and 16 mg/dL can produce the nonspecific symptoms of weakness, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Cognitive dysfunction, personality changes, confusion, hallucinations, psychosis, stupor, and coma are expected with concentrations >16 mg/dL.

Management Guidelines

Because hypercalcemic patients are frequently volume-depleted from the associated polyuria (hypercalciuria) and poor oral intake, IV fluids are usually indicated initially. As with hypovolemic hypernatremia, the volume deficit must first be calculated and corrected using isotonic saline (generally 1 to 2 L IV over 1 hour). By increasing the glomerular filtration rate, renal calcium excretion also increases. Once the patient is determined to be euvolemic, a loop diuretic may be added to accelerate calcium excretion by the kidneys. Furosemide, 20 to 40 mg IV every 2 hours after correction of dehydration, is commonly used.

Calcitonin may also be used if first-line treatments are ineffective. A standard dose of 4 IU/kg is given either subcutaneously or intramuscularly every 12 hours. Its mechanism of action is inhibition of bone resorption and enhancement of renal excretion of calcium. Its main advantage is its fast onset of action; a response is usually noted within 2 to 4 hours. Unfortunately, its impact is mild (expected lowering in serum calcium level is 1 to 3 mg/dL after 4 to 6 hours, with a nadir within 12 to 24 hours), and tachyphylaxis is known to occur after 2 to 3 days. Bisphosphonates are good alternatives and inhibit osteoclast activity. The bisphosphonate pamidronate has been used for many years and is generally well tolerated, even in patients with renal disease. Pamidronate is a pyrophosphate analog that binds to hydroxyapatite and inhibits bone crystal dissolution as well as osteoclastic resorption. Standard dosing is 60 to 90 mg in 500 mL of isotonic saline given as an infusion over 1 to 2 hours. Unfortunately, it can take up to 48 hours to take effect, and the duration of action is 2 to 4 weeks. For these reasons, it is more appropriate for long-term rather than acute management of hypercalcemia.

Additional therapies include mithramycin, an antibiotic that works by inhibiting RNA synthesis in osteoclasts. Its calcium-lowering effect is seen after 24 to 48 hours, but its use is limited by its poor side effect profile, including hepatotoxicity, renal failure,
Disorders of Acid-Base, Electrolytes, and Fluid Balance

and bone marrow suppression. In severe or refractory cases of hypercalcemia, dialysis may be considered.

Calcium treatment summary: Tables 38.5 and 38.6

**MAGNESIUM**

**Hypomagnesemia**

Epidemiology

Hypomagnesemia is seen in as many as 12% of hospitalized patients, and 60% to 65% of critically ill patients in the ICU. Common etiologies include nutritional deficiency, intestinal losses, renal losses, as well as endocrine and metabolic derangements. Like calcium, magnesium exists in three forms: (1) ionized (61%), (2) protein-bound (33%), and (3) complexed (6%). The kidney is primarily responsible for magnesium homeostasis and, because magnesium reabsorption is proportional to urine flow, volume expansion can lead to magnesium wasting. In addition, thiazides and loop diuretics are well known for inhibiting magnesium reabsorption in the kidneys. Finally, many drugs, most notably alcohol, cause renal magnesium loss.

**History and Physical Exam**

Magnesium deficiency is often seen in conjunction with hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and metabolic alkalosis. Thus, signs and symptoms are often varied and nonspecific. Cardiac manifestations include prolonged PR and QT intervals, as well as a widened QRS complex, which can lead to dysrhythmias, notably torsades de pointes. Neuromuscular manifestations include generalized weakness, seizures, tetany, lethargy, and coma.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

A normal serum magnesium concentration is 1.7–2.1 mg/dL (1.4–1.8 mEq/L) in most cases, a diagnosis of hypomagnesemia can be made from patient history, as magnesium

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Rate of Correction or Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal saline</td>
<td>1–2-L bolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretic</td>
<td>Furosemide 20–40 mg IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcitonin</td>
<td>4 IU/kg q12h SC/IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pamidronate</td>
<td>60–90 mg in 500 mL NS over 1–2 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mithramycin</td>
<td>25–50 mcg/kg IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Correct simultaneous hypomagnesemia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Rate of Correction or Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium gluconate 10% sol (10 mL= 94 mg elemental calcium)</td>
<td>Elemental calcium 0.5–1.5 mg/kg/h IV run over 4–6 h -0.1 mL/kg/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium chloride 10% sol (10 mL= 272 mg elemental calcium)</td>
<td>Elemental calcium 200 mg (~7.5 mL) through central line over 10–20 min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
depletion is usually the result of either gastrointestinal or renal losses. In obscure cases, however, calculating the fractional excretion of magnesium or measuring the magnesium excretion over a 24-hour period can help to distinguish between the two causes of wasting. A daily excretion of more than 10 to 30 mg, or a fractional excretion of more than 2%, suggests renal wasting.123,124

Management Guidelines
If the patient is asymptomatic, oral supplementation is generally sufficient with a daily maintenance requirement of 0.4 mEq/kg/d. Magnesium oxide (49.6 mEq/g) is commonly used for repletion. If the patient is symptomatic, IV magnesium sulfate (8.12 mEq/g) is preferred at a dose of 1 to 2 mEq/kg administered over 8 to 24 hours. In the event of life-threatening dysrhythmias, the patient should be loaded with 25 to 50 mg/kg of magnesium sulfate over 3 to 5 minutes, followed by an infusion of 25 to 50 mg/kg/h for 4 to 6 hours.125

Hypermagnesemia
Epidemiology
Hypermagnesemia is rare and typically iatrogenic in nature. It tends to occur because of overzealous correction of hypomagnesemia, or in the treatment of preeclampsia and preterm labor.126 However, it may also be seen with parenteral hyperalimentation, use of laxatives and enemas, or use of antacids. Patients with kidney disease are particularly at risk.127

History and Physical Exam
Signs and symptoms of hypermagnesemia are flushing, respiratory depression, pulmonary edema, hypotension, weakness with loss of deep tendon reflexes, or paralysis. ECG manifestations associated with hypermagnesemia include prolonged PR and ST intervals, which may lead to bradycardia, complete heart block, and even cardiac arrest.

Diagnostic Evaluation
Except in severely symptomatic cases, the diagnosis of hypermagnesemia is made on laboratory evaluation. It is usually defined by a serum magnesium concentration >0.95 mmol/L, or 2.2 mg/dL.

Management Guidelines
Because most cases of hypermagnesemia are iatrogenic, the first-line treatment is to remove the exogenous source of magnesium. Diuretics can also promote renal excretion. In severe cases, calcium gluconate can temporarily antagonize the cardiac and neurologic symptoms. Dialysis may also be considered if initial therapies are unsuccessful.128

Magnesium treatment summary: Tables 38.7 and 38.8.

**TABLE 38.7** Treatment of Hypomagnesemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypomagnesemia</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Correction Rate or Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Magnesium oxide (49.6 mEq/g)</td>
<td>0.4 mEq/kg/d PO –8 mg/kg/d PO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Magnesium sulfate (8.12 mEq/g)</td>
<td>1–2 mEq/kg IV –125–250 mg/kg over 8–24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Magnesium sulfate (8.12 mEq/g)</td>
<td>Load 25 to 50 mg/kg IV over 3–5 min; then 25–50 mg/kg/h for 4–6 h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Treatment of Hypermagnesemia

**TABLE 38.8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Hypermagnesemia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Remove exogenous source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Diuretics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dialysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use of Vaptans</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schrier et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2006</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials of 448 euvolemic and hypervolemic patients; compared oral tolvaptan 15 mg, 35 mg or 50 mg daily × 30 d vs. placebo</td>
<td>Serum Na⁺ concentrations were significantly higher in the oral tolvaptan group vs. placebo in the first 4 days (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.001) and after the full 30 d (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeitser et al., <em>Am J Nephrol</em>. 2007</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 84 euvolemic and hypervolemic patients; compared 40 mg IV loading dose of conivaptan followed by 4-day infusion of either 40 mg/d or 80 mg/d vs. placebo</td>
<td>Serum Na⁺ concentrations were significantly higher with both doses of the IV conivaptan groups vs. placebo (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annane et al., <em>Am J Med Sci</em>. 2009</td>
<td>Multicenter, prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 83 euvolemic and hypervolemic patients; compared oral conivaptan 20 mg twice daily or 40 mg twice daily × 5 d vs. placebo</td>
<td>Increase in serum Na⁺ concentrations were higher, achieved significantly faster, and maintained longer with either dose of the oral conivaptan groups vs. placebo (<em>p</em> = 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicarbonate in hyperkalemia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schwarz CK et al., <em>Circulation</em>. 1999</td>
<td>Case reports of 4 uremic patients with acidosis, hyperkalemia, and ECG changes; received infusion of 5% NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Serial determinations showed fall in potassium, rise in pH, and regression of ECG changes toward normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allon et al., <em>Am J Kid Dis</em>. 1996</td>
<td>Single-center, prospective, crossover design, of 8 dialysis patients; compared potassium at 1 h after: (1) NaHCO₃ infusion, (2) saline infusion, (3) bicarbonate in D10 + insulin, (4) saline in D10 + insulin, (5) bicarbonate + nebulized albuterol, and (6) saline + nebulized albuterol</td>
<td>Neither bicarbonate nor saline decreased potassium significantly (<em>p</em> = 0.6). Insulin decreased potassium by same degree when given with bicarbonate or saline (<em>p</em> = 0.65). Nebulized albuterol decreased potassium levels by same degree with bicarbonate or saline (<em>p</em> = 0.18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blumberg A et al. <em>Kidney Int</em>. 1992</td>
<td>Observational study of 12 hyperkalemic end-stage renal disease patients on hemodialysis; received infusion of 8.4% NaHCO₃, for 1 h, followed by infusion of 1.4% for 5 h; compared bicarbonate, pH, and potassium at 1 h, 4 h, and 6 h</td>
<td>Bicarbonate and pH rose. Decline in plasma potassium noted only at 4 h (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.05) and 6 h (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.01), half of which was attributed to volume expansion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kayexalate in hyperkalemia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evans et al., <em>Lancet</em>. 1953</td>
<td>Case reports of 4 renal failure patients and 1 normal volunteer, given a sulfonate resin charged with sodium orally (precursor of modern Kayexalate)</td>
<td>Showed potassium binding in the stool and hypokalemic effect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scherr et al., <em>N Engl J Med.</em> 196110</td>
<td>Report of 32 hyperkalemic patients; 22 received a range dose 20–60 g/d of a sulfonate resin charged with sodium, orally in water, for a range period 1–6 d; 8 received a range dose 10–180 g/d rectally for a range period 1–4 d</td>
<td>Mean decline in potassium at 24 h of 1 mEq/L with the oral formulation vs. 0.8 mEq/L with the rectal. No serious toxic effects observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harel et al., <em>Am J Med.</em> 201319</td>
<td>Systematic review of adverse effects associated with Kayexalate, 1948–2011, MEDLINE, EMBASE, CENTRAL, 30 reports identified</td>
<td>58 cases described: 41 preparations with sorbitol, 17 without. Colon, the most common site injured (76%), and transmural necrosis most common lesion (62%). Mortality 33% due to gastrointestinal injury</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## REFERENCES


Rhabdomyolysis
Audrey K. Wagner and Deborah M. Stein

BACKGROUND
Rhabdomyolysis is a syndrome characterized by the necrosis of striated muscle and the subsequent release of intracellular contents—including myoglobin, electrolytes, creatine kinase (CK), and other sarcoplasmic proteins—into the systemic circulation. Rhabdomyolysis has multiple etiologies, including physical, metabolic, toxicologic, and genetic. Presentation ranges from an asymptomatic elevation in diagnostic markers to a life-threatening emergency characterized by hypovolemic shock, renal failure, severe electrolyte abnormalities, cardiac dysrhythmias, compartment syndrome, and disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC).

EPIDEMIOLOGY
While the true incidence of rhabdomyolysis is unknown, it is reported to occur in up to 85% of patients with traumatic injuries. It affects patients of all ages and does not demonstrate a gender bias. Because of their greater muscle mass, men do tend to experience a more severe clinical course and a greater alteration in diagnostic markers; however, outcomes do not differ significantly between genders. Interestingly, studies of nondisaster hospital admissions for rhabdomyolysis reveal a predominance of male patients, which likely reflects the greater incidence of traumatic injury in males.

Approximately 15% to 50% of patients with rhabdomyolysis will develop acute kidney injury (AKI), the syndrome’s most feared complication. The incidence of rhabdomyolysis-associated AKI accounts for 7% to 10% of all cases of AKI in the United States. Development of AKI in the setting of rhabdomyolysis portends a poor prognosis and is associated with a mortality of 40% to 59%. Fortunately, most of those who survive will recover renal function and not require long-term dialysis.

ETIOLOGY
Rhabdomyolysis is caused by a broad range of injuries, illnesses, toxins, and genetic influences. Table 39.1 lists the categories of common causes with representative examples of each. The five most commonly reported causes are (1) trauma, (2) drugs/alcohol, (3) compression/immobilization, (4) ischemia, and (5) seizures.
Chapter 39  Rhabdomyolysis  525

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

In patients with obvious trauma or crush injuries, the signs and symptoms concerning for the development of rhabdomyolysis are usually readily apparent. For patients with nontraumatic rhabdomyolysis, exam findings and reported symptoms may be subtler.

Classic rhabdomyolysis symptoms include muscle pain and swelling, weakness, and dark-colored urine.2,13,14 Commonly involved muscle groups include the calves, thighs, and lower back.2,16 Muscle pain may be generalized or localized to a specific muscle group. It may be mild, severe, or importantly—absent, as it is in up to 50% of patients eventually diagnosed with rhabdomyolysis.11,13 Systemic complaints can include fever, malaise, nausea, and vomiting.2,16

In patients without history of trauma, the physical exam is frequently nonspecific. Swelling, if present, may be apparent on presentation or may develop only after the patient has received fluid resuscitation.13 Patients may be tachycardic due to pain, dehydration, or fluid shifts into injured muscles. Other suggestive findings include signs of limb ischemia, such as pain, pallor, paresthesias, and pulselessness, with or without associated compartmental swelling. Dermatologic findings, including skin bruising and signs of pressure necrosis, may indicate compression injury, a frequent cause of rhabdomyolysis. Given the wide variability in presentation, it is always reasonable to consider the diagnosis of rhabdomyolysis in a patient found immobile or unresponsive for an unknown or prolonged period of time.

A special note about compartment syndrome is warranted, as it can be both the cause and the result of rhabdomyolysis. In the patient being treated for rhabdomyolysis, continued monitoring of fixed compartments is necessary as exam findings consistent with compartment syndrome may be delayed in presentation until resuscitative fluids shift into the injured muscles. Any concern for compartment syndrome should trigger the measurement of pressures and a surgical consultation for possible fasciotomy.

### TABLE 39.1 Causes of Rhabdomyolysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of Rhabdomyolysis</th>
<th>Causes of Rhabdomyolysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excessive muscle activity</td>
<td>Metabolic disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise/exertion</td>
<td>Diabetic ketoacidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Hyperosmolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Hyperglycemic state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crush injury/syndrome</td>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burns</td>
<td>Hyper/hypernatremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compartment syndrome</td>
<td>Hypokalemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular occlusion</td>
<td>Hypophosphatemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle cell disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischemia</td>
<td>Polymyositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical injury</td>
<td>Dermatomyositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lightening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical shock</td>
<td>Genetic disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardioversion</td>
<td>McArdle disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypo/hyperthermia</td>
<td>Cardiomyopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant hyperthermia</td>
<td>Phosphofructokinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroleptic malignant syndrome</td>
<td>Deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muscular dystrophies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prolonged immobilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(including long surgeries)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Idiopathic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

In patients with obvious trauma or crush injuries, the signs and symptoms concerning for the development of rhabdomyolysis are usually readily apparent. For patients with nontraumatic rhabdomyolysis, exam findings and reported symptoms may be subtler.

Classic rhabdomyolysis symptoms include muscle pain and swelling, weakness, and dark-colored urine.2,13,14 Commonly involved muscle groups include the calves, thighs, and lower back.2,16 Muscle pain may be generalized or localized to a specific muscle group. It may be mild, severe, or importantly—absent, as it is in up to 50% of patients eventually diagnosed with rhabdomyolysis.11,13 Systemic complaints can include fever, malaise, nausea, and vomiting.2,16

In patients without history of trauma, the physical exam is frequently nonspecific. Swelling, if present, may be apparent on presentation or may develop only after the patient has received fluid resuscitation.13 Patients may be tachycardic due to pain, dehydration, or fluid shifts into injured muscles. Other suggestive findings include signs of limb ischemia, such as pain, pallor, paresthesias, and pulselessness, with or without associated compartmental swelling. Dermatologic findings, including skin bruising and signs of pressure necrosis, may indicate compression injury, a frequent cause of rhabdomyolysis. Given the wide variability in presentation, it is always reasonable to consider the diagnosis of rhabdomyolysis in a patient found immobile or unresponsive for an unknown or prolonged period of time.

A special note about compartment syndrome is warranted, as it can be both the cause and the result of rhabdomyolysis. In the patient being treated for rhabdomyolysis, continued monitoring of fixed compartments is necessary as exam findings consistent with compartment syndrome may be delayed in presentation until resuscitative fluids shift into the injured muscles. Any concern for compartment syndrome should trigger the measurement of pressures and a surgical consultation for possible fasciotomy.
DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

The diagnostic challenge of rhabdomyolysis is remembering to include it as part of one’s differential. Once considered, the diagnostic workup is relatively straightforward.

**Creatine Kinase**

Serum CK—and specifically the muscle isoenzyme CK-MM—is the most sensitive marker of muscle injury and the universally accepted test for rhabdomyolysis. Serum CK begins to rise within 2 to 12 hours of the onset of muscle injury, peaks in 1 to 3 days, and declines 3 to 5 days after muscle injury has stopped. Rhabdomyolysis does not have a diagnostic CK cutoff value; however, a level five times the upper limit of normal is strongly suggestive. CK levels that do not decline as expected raise the likelihood of continued injury and compartment syndrome.

**Urinalysis**

Myoglobinuria is found almost exclusively as a result of rhabdomyolysis and begins to occur when plasma levels of myoglobin reach 0.5 to 1.5 mg/dL. When rhabdomyolysis is suspected in the emergency department (ED), the initial test of choice is a urine dipstick and microscopic analysis. A urine dipstick positive for blood, combined with an absence of red blood cells on microscopy, is suggestive of rhabdomyolysis. However, the utility of this diagnostic method is limited, as the reported sensitivities of dipsticks for blood range from 14% to 82% and because the presence of red blood cells on microscopy does not exclude concomitant myoglobinuria, especially in the setting of trauma.

**CK and Serum Myoglobin**

Although CK is generally accepted as the most sensitive test for diagnosis and monitoring of rhabdomyolysis, some investigators argue that serum myoglobin, as the pathogenic entity, is the preferred marker to follow over time. Studies correlating CK and myoglobin levels with the incidence of renal failure have had widely disparate results. Debate about their efficacy hinges on elimination kinetics; myoglobin has a half-life of 12 hours, versus 42 hours for CK. Some authors argue that the rapid clearance of myoglobin makes it a less sensitive marker for muscle injury and that longer and more consistent elevations of CK make it more reliable. Others argue that myoglobin is more accurate precisely because of its faster elimination kinetics. Test cost and availability are additional considerations; while assays exist for testing serum myoglobin directly, they are expensive and not readily available or expedient in most hospitals. For these reasons, CK remains the more commonly used diagnostic marker.

**Additional Studies**

Additional studies that assess for complications of rhabdomyolysis include an electrocardiogram (ECG), complete blood count, basic metabolic profile, calcium, phosphate, uric acid, albumin, coagulation studies, troponin, and an arterial blood gas.

**Potassium**

Hyperkalemia is a life-threatening complication of rhabdomyolysis. It is caused by the release of high levels of potassium from the intracellular space of the necrotic muscle cells. AKI and metabolic acidosis sustained as part of rhabdomyolysis may exacerbate this complication.
**Phosphate and Calcium**

In the early phase of rhabdomyolysis, phosphorus released from the cells results in hyperphosphatemia, which, in turn, causes calcium deposition in damaged tissues and subsequent hypocalcemia. Later in the course of the disease, calcium is released from the cells; this, together with secondary hyperparathyroidism from the initial hypocalcemia, may result in hypercalcemia. Consequently, calcium should not be given to treat the initial hypocalcemia—except in cases of tetany or hyperkalemia-induced ECG changes—as doing so may result in metastatic calcification.

**BUN/Creatinine**

Renal function should be monitored in all patients with either suspected or established rhabdomyolysis, as AKI is a serious and common complication of the disease. As a rule, any rise in creatinine should be interpreted as a sign of worsening renal clearance and should raise concern for AKI. It has been suggested that elevated creatinine may relate to both renal injury and to the release of preformed creatinine from damaged muscles, although several studies have failed to support this hypothesis.

**Anion Gap/Coagulation**

Other lab abnormalities may include an elevated anion gap and hypoalbuminemia. Anion gap elevations result from the release of lactate, uric acid, and other organic acids from muscle cells. A falling serum albumin, which portends a poor prognosis, occurs because of leakage of albumin from damaged capillaries into interstitial tissues. DIC is a common complication of severe rhabdomyolysis; high-risk patients should be screened for DIC with a complete blood count and coagulation studies.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

The management of rhabdomyolysis consists of (1) identifying and treating the underlying cause and (2) minimizing subsequent complications. As a complete discussion of etiologies of rhabdomyolysis lies outside the scope of this chapter, the discussion here will focus on minimizing complications.

The pathogenesis of AKI in rhabdomyolysis is a prerenal state caused by (1) the sequestration of fluid in injured muscles and an associated intravascular volume depletion and (2) intrinsic disease, caused both by myoglobin’s cytotoxic effects on the tubular epithelial cells and by the formation of obstructing casts in the distal nephrons. Patients with AKI require fluid administration not only to achieve and maintain hemodynamic stability but also to limit the myoglobinuric injury to the kidney by increasing renal perfusion, urine flow, and toxin clearance.

There is no strong evidence to guide the treatment of rhabdomyolysis as it relates to the prevention of AKI. Much of the available data come from retrospective analyses and case series. The strength of these studies is limited and the results difficult to compare because of population heterogeneity and the lack of control groups. Additionally, investigators employ differing definitions of rhabdomyolysis and renal failure (ranging from creatinine $>1.5$ mg/dL to the need for hemodialysis) and recommend significantly variable treatment approaches.
Timing and Volume of Fluids
Based on available data, it is recommended that fluid resuscitation be initiated as early as possible, ideally within 6 hours of evidence of injury and, when appropriate, in the prehospital setting. Several case series support early and aggressive hydration to lower renal failure risk. In a report of the sixteen crush victims from the 2003 earthquake in Turkey, those patients requiring hemodialysis had a significantly longer wait time between rescue and initiation of fluid resuscitation (average 9.2 hours) compared to those who did not require hemodialysis (average 3.7 hours). Victims who required hemodialysis also received significantly less fluid volume (11 ± 2.5 L vs. 21.8 ± 2.7 on day 1). Case studies of other earthquake victims have reported similar outcomes.

The optimal fluid volume for resuscitation is unknown. No controlled studies compare specific volumes or targeted urine goals, and there are no established formulas (such as the Parkland formula for burn victims) to help direct resuscitation. Guidelines for fluid administered generally advise an initial 2 to 3 L at 1 to 1.5 L per hour, followed by an ongoing infusion of 200 to 700 mL per hour until diuresis is established, at which point fluid administration should be titrated for a urine output of about 300 mL per hour.

It is important to remember that elderly patients and those suffering from congestive heart failure may not tolerate aggressive volume resuscitation and should be closely monitored for signs of volume overload. Either invasive or noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring may be useful to help guide fluid administration. All critically ill patients should have a urinary catheter placed to facilitate careful monitoring of urine output.

Choice of Fluid
The only prospective randomized single-blind study addressing the question of crystalloid choice compared the use of normal saline (NS) to lactated Ringer’s (LR) in 28 patients with rhabdomyolysis caused by doxylamine overdose (a first generation antihistamine). Although the NS group used more bicarbonate and diuretics, there was no significant difference in median time to CK normalization between the groups (96 h in LR group, 120 h in NS group). The study’s small size may, however, have left it underpowered to detect a difference. Of note, no problems with hyperkalemia were noted in the LR group, and lactate seemed to be protective against—and not causal of—metabolic acidosis.

Sodium Bicarbonate and Mannitol
The most controversial aspect of rhabdomyolysis management is the role, if any, for sodium bicarbonate and mannitol. Few studies address this question directly, in part because the majority of rhabdomyolysis studies report using both therapies and provide limited data on patients administered only crystalloid. Additionally, there are no controlled studies evaluating the efficacy of bicarbonate and mannitol individually, making it difficult to determine the relative importance of either in the prevention of AKI. Both sodium bicarbonate and mannitol have theoretical benefits in the treatment of rhabdomyolysis. Sodium bicarbonate alkalizes the urine, which is thought to minimize tubular damage and cast formation by increasing myoglobin’s solubility and limiting its precipitation with the Tamm–Horsfall protein, a principal urinary glycoprotein. A nonreabsorbed solute, sodium bicarbonate, also promotes diuresis and may be beneficial in managing the hyperkalemia often seen in rhabdomyolysis. In addition to these proposed benefits, sodium bicarbonate can ameliorate metabolic acidosis, which
may be present in patients with severe rhabdomyolysis and which may be compounded by administration of large volumes of NS.\textsuperscript{1,31}

Mannitol has been used in rhabdomyolysis management as an osmotic agent to extract fluid from injured muscles and expand plasma volume and increase urinary flow, theoretically increasing the excretion of myoglobin and limiting its blockage of renal tubules. Through its osmotic effects on muscles, mannitol may aid in the prevention and treatment of compartment syndrome.\textsuperscript{26} Studies suggest that mannitol may also protect the kidney from oxidant injury by scavenging free radicals,\textsuperscript{35} although in at least one animal model, this did not prove true.\textsuperscript{36}

There are two English-language controlled studies that have evaluated the efficacy of bicarbonate/mannitol (BIC/MAN) versus crystalloid alone. The first was a retrospective review of all adult trauma ICU admissions over 5 years at a level 1 trauma center; of these, 382 patients had a peak CK > 5,000. At the surgeon’s discretion, 154 (40%) of these patients were treated with bicarbonate and mannitol and 228 (60%) were not. There was no statistical difference in the incidence of acute renal failure (defined as creatinine >2.0 mg/dL), dialysis, or mortality between the two groups. It is notable, however, that there was a significant difference in the peak CK between the two groups, with the BIC/MAN group having an average peak CK of about 23.5 K and the no BIC/MAN group having an average peak CK of 9.8 K. A subsequent subgroup analysis of patients by peak CK level revealed no statistically significant difference in the incidence of AKI, need for dialysis, or mortality, but among patients with CK > 30 K, there was a strong trend toward improved outcomes for those treated with BIC/MAN. This finding suggests that patients with severe rhabdomyolysis may benefit from BIC/MAN; however, the authors concluded that overall, BIC/MAN does not prevent AKI, need for dialysis, or mortality in patients with CK > 5 K and recommend that its use in post-traumatic rhabdomyolysis patients be reevaluated.\textsuperscript{12}

The strengths of this study include its size and the presence of a control group. It was not, however, a randomized trial, and data regarding the type, quantity, and timing of volume resuscitation were not made available, making it difficult to draw conclusions about the relative importance of BIC/MAN versus quality of fluid resuscitation.

A second smaller study evaluated the efficacy of saline versus saline/bicarbonate/mannitol (SBM) in preventing rhabdomyolysis. This retrospective review of ICU patients at risk for developing renal failure (not defined) from rhabdomyolysis (defined as CK > 500) included only 24 patients; 15 were treated with SBM, and 9 received saline only. Both groups had similar demographics and similar average initial creatinine values, but significantly different initial CK levels (SBM’s average CK 3,351 IU/L, saline group 1,747 IU/L). Outcomes between the groups were not significantly different: No patients developed worsening AKI, and all had resolution of their mild azotemia.\textsuperscript{37} The authors concluded that the progression to renal failure can be completely avoided with prophylactic treatment and that once appropriate saline expansion is provided, the addition of mannitol and bicarbonate is unnecessary.\textsuperscript{37} However, this study reported on patients with a mild degree of rhabdomyolysis, which limits its applicability to more severe cases.

**Summary of Fluid Administration Recommendations**
The absence of a randomized controlled study addressing ideal fluid composition in the treatment of rhabdomyolysis makes it difficult to advocate for or against a specific resuscitative regimen. A 2013 systematic review of 27 studies evaluating therapies used
to prevent AKI in rhabdomyolysis concluded that no high-level evidence exists to suggest fluid therapy combined with sodium bicarbonate and/or mannitol is superior to fluid therapy alone.\textsuperscript{24} The review offers the following recommendations regarding the timing, volume, and type of fluid used in the prevention of AKI in rhabdomyolysis\textsuperscript{24}:

1. Fluid administration should be initiated as soon as possible, preferably within the first 6 hours after muscle injury.
2. Fluids should be administered at a rate that maintains a urine output of 300 mL per hour or more for at least the first 24 hours, unless a medical condition precludes giving enough fluids to meet this goal.
3. Intravenous sodium bicarbonate should only be administered if necessary to correct systemic acidosis.
4. Mannitol should only be administered when fluid administration fails to maintain a urine output of 300 mL per hour and should be discontinued in patients in whom it does not augment urine output.

Given the theoretical benefit of mannitol and bicarbonate, and the trends in some studies that suggest possible benefit, many published reviews, recommendations, and guidelines still do advocate for their use, especially in severely affected patients.\textsuperscript{1,24,31,38}

**Dosing**

There are no standardized regimens for the administration of sodium bicarbonate and mannitol. For sodium bicarbonate, a common approach is to add either 44 to 50 mEq to 1 L of 0.45% saline or 88 to 132 mEq to 1 L of 0.5% dextrose in water. Recommended infusion rates vary from 100 mL per hour\textsuperscript{17} to alternating 1 L of the above regimen with a liter of 0.9% saline but at a rate closer to 500 mL per hour.\textsuperscript{1,38} For mannitol, a 20% solution is added at a dose of 0.04 to 0.1 g/kg/h to each liter of fluid administered up to 200 g per day, with a cumulative dose of up to 800 g.\textsuperscript{1,17,38} Doses higher than this have been associated with AKI due to osmotic nephrosis.\textsuperscript{1}

**Risks**

The use of bicarbonate and/or mannitol has attendant risks. The primary risk of alcalinization is worsening of hypocalcemia in the early stages of rhabdomyolysis.\textsuperscript{34} To minimize this, it is recommended to keep serum pH below 7.5, by either administering acetazolamide or discontinuing the bicarbonate infusion. Calcium should not be administered except in cases of symptomatic hypocalcemia, as discussed above.

The use of mannitol risks the precipitation of a hyperosmolar state and requires monitoring of serum osmolality and osmolal gap. Treatment with mannitol is contraindicated in anuric patients as well as in persistently or progressively oliguric patients; mannitol should be stopped if the osmol gap rises above 55 mOsm/kg or if treatment does not effect an adequate diuresis.\textsuperscript{1}

**Renal Replacement Therapy**

There are two indications for renal replacement therapy (RRT) in the setting of rhabdomyolysis. The first is the standard indication for initiating RRT in any patient: development of oliguric AKI, symptomatic volume overload, severe electrolyte disturbances
(particularly hyperkalemia), or acidosis. The second is particular to rhabdomyolysis and involves the removal of myoglobin from the plasma, so as to reduce the injurious effects on the kidney.

Conventional hemodialysis (HD) effectively and efficiently corrects electrolyte abnormalities, metabolic acidosis, and volume overload. HD is unable, however, to effectively remove myoglobin because of its molecular weight (15.7 kDa) and its steric properties. Continuous RRT modes have been shown to successfully remove myoglobin in several case report series; this is attributable to their convective (vs. diffusive) method of filtration. The use of super high-flux or “high-cutoff” hemofilters has been shown to remove myoglobin even more effectively.

Few of these case reports, however, provide any data on outcomes. In the absence of prospective studies, it is not known whether myoglobin removal through RRT affects the clinical course of rhabdomyolysis. Complicating matters is that the metabolism of myoglobin is poorly understood; some studies suggest that renal function does not affect the rate of myoglobin clearance and point toward an extrarenal removal mechanism. While removing pathogenic myoglobin from plasma is in theory beneficial, and perhaps has a role in the prophylaxis of AKI in rhabdomyolysis, it is not currently a recommended intervention.

CONCLUSION

The diagnostic challenge of rhabdomyolysis is remembering to look for it. Once suspected, diagnosis and treatment is relatively straightforward. Given the highly variable presentation of this disease, the emergency physician should consider its presence in any patient found immobilized for a prolonged or unknown period of time. A familiarity with the therapeutic concepts discussed in this chapter, most importantly early and aggressive fluid resuscitation, will help optimize patient outcomes.

| LITERATURE TABLE |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| TRIAL             | DESIGN           | RESULT          |
| Brown et al., J Trauma. 2004 | Retrospective cohort study of 2,083 trauma ICU patients of which 1,771 had abnormal CK (>520). Patients received either crystalloid alone or together with bicarbonate and mannitol (BIC/MAN), based on surgeon’s discretion | Among patients with CK > 5,000, there was no significant difference in rates of renal failure (22% vs. 18%, p = 0.27), dialysis (7% vs. 6%, p = 0.57), or mortality (15% vs. 18%, p = 0.37) between the group who received BIC/MAN and the group that did not. However, CK levels between the groups varied significantly (24.5 K vs. 9.8 K, respectively, p < 0.0001), and among those with CK > 30,000, there was a nonsignificant trend toward better outcomes with BIC/MAN (AKI 46% vs. 63%, p = 0.41; need for dialysis 13% vs. 38%, p = 0.12; mortality 29% vs. 63%, p = 0.09) |
| Scharman and Troutman, Ann Pharmacother. 2013 | Systematic analysis of 27 studies evaluating fluid administration approaches in prevention of acute renal injury/failure in patients with rhabdomyolysis | Early fluid administration (within 6 h) is important. No evidence supporting a preferred fluid type or use of bicarbonate (with or without mannitol) over crystalloid alone. No studies evaluating appropriate volume |
REFERENCES

Acute Kidney Injury and Renal Replacement Therapy
Emilee Willhem-Leen and Glenn Chertow

BACKGROUND

Acute kidney injury (AKI) is common in critical illness. A recent, large, multinational prospective study reported that 5.7% of critically ill patients will develop AKI during their illness.1 AKI in the setting of critical illness also confers a poor prognosis. In-hospital or short-term (90-day) mortality rates for critically ill patients who develop AKI range from 45% to 60%.1–3 Fortunately, the majority of critically ill patients who develop AKI during their hospitalization and who survive to discharge do not require long-term dialysis.5 This chapter reviews common definitions and classifications of AKI, etiologies of the disease, and appropriate emergency department (ED) diagnostic and therapeutic interventions for patients with AKI.

DEFINITIONS

Critically ill patients may have AKI at presentation or may develop it during the course of their illness. While there is no consensus definition for AKI, the diagnosis is commonly made based on the following:

- Decreased urine output (<200 mL/12 hours) despite fluid resuscitation or diuresis
- Uremia (elevated serum urea nitrogen [BUN > 80 mg/dL]) or clinical signs of uremia (e.g., pericardial effusion, pericarditis, altered mental status)
- Serum creatinine (sCr) elevated above baseline. Of note, sCr may not rise for 12 to 24 hours following renal injury and may not be dramatically elevated at the time of presentation to the ED.

Classification of AKI

sCr concentration is not an optimal early marker of AKI because (1) it does not accurately reflect kidney function in patients whose glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is acutely changing and (2) it may be lowered by muscle wasting that accompanies critical illness. Given this limitation, several criteria have been proposed to classify the severity of AKI.
RIFLE Criteria
The RIFLE criteria (Risk, Injury, Failure, Loss, ESRD [end-stage renal disease]) consist of three levels of injury that are useful in ED assessment of kidney injury (R, I, and F) and two levels (L and E) that are more typically applied during inpatient evaluation:

- **RISK**: 1.5 times increase in sCr, GFR decrease by 25%, or urine output <0.5 mL/kg/h for 6 hours
- **INJURY**: 2 times increase in sCr, GFR decrease by 50%, or urine output <0.5 mL/kg/h for 12 hours
- **FAILURE**: 3 times increase in sCr, GFR decrease by 75%, or urine output <0.3 mL/kg/h for 24 hours or anuria for 12 hours
- **LOSS**: Complete loss of kidney function for more than 4 weeks
- **ESRD**: Complete loss of kidney function for more than 3 months

Acute Kidney Injury Network Criteria
The Acute Kidney Injury Network (AKIN) criteria are based on the RIFLE criteria but simplify the system for ease of use and clarity:

- **AKIN criteria definition of AKI**:
  - **Stage 1**: 1.5 times increase in sCr from baseline, ≥0.3 mg/dL increase in sCr, or urine output of <0.5 mL/kg/h for 6 hours
  - **Stage 2**: 2 times increase in sCr or urine output of <0.5 mL/kg/h for 12 hours
  - **Stage 3**: 3 times increase in sCr, sCr of ≥4 mg/dL (with an acute rise of ≥0.5 mg/dL), or urine output of <0.3 mL/kg/h for 24 hours or anuria for 12 hours
- The AKIN and RIFLE criteria compare as follows:
  - **Stage 1** equivalent to RIFLE RISK
  - **Stage 2** equivalent to RIFLE INJURY
  - **Stage 3** equivalent to RIFLE FAILURE

The Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcome Criteria
The Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcome (KDIGO) criteria consist of three levels of renal injury based on either sCr or urine output:

- **Stage 1**: 1.5 to 1.9 times increase in sCr from baseline, ≥0.3 mg/dL increase in sCr, or urine output of <0.5 mL/kg/h for 6 to 12 hours
- **Stage 2**: 2.0 to 2.9 times increase in sCr from baseline and urine output <0.5 mL/kg/h for >12 hours
- **Stage 3**: 3 times increase in sCr from baseline, increase in sCr to ≥4.0 mg/dL, or initiation of renal replacement and urine output <0.3 mL/kg/h for ≥24 hours or anuria for ≥12 hours

For simplicity, we recommend use of either the AKIN or KDIGO classification. Unfortunately, precise classification of AKI stage may not be possible in the ED setting; often, baseline sCr is not available, and observation of urine output takes 6 to 24 hours. However, providing critical care or nephrology colleagues with this information, as available, aids in rapid triage and prognosis. For example, if a patient with a known baseline sCr of 1.0 mg/dL presents to the ED with sepsis and an initial sCr of 2.5 mg/dL and makes <50 mL of urine during the first 2 hours of evaluation and management,
he or she likely has sustained at least a stage 2 AKI (per AKIN and KDIGO criteria). No stage of AKI, alone, necessitates admission to the intensive care unit, but nephrology consultation in the ED should be considered for patients presenting with likely stage 2 or 3 AKI.

**ETIOLOGY OF AKI**

AKI is a heterogeneous disease that can be caused by many factors. Typically, these factors are grouped into prerenal, intrarenal, and postrenal etiologies.

**Prerenal**

Prerenal AKI is caused by a reduction in renal perfusion. Precipitating conditions include hypovolemic shock (usually from gastrointestinal losses or severe burns), cardiogenic shock (usually from left-sided or biventricular failure), cirrhosis (including hepatorenal syndrome), and sepsis/systemic inflammatory response syndrome. Diuretic therapy and other drugs like ACE inhibitors and NSAIDs can exacerbate a prerenal state, especially in patients with additional risk factors. Typically, the urine sodium is low (<20 mmol/L), with a fractional excretion of sodium (FENa) <1% indicating a sodium-avid state in which the body is attempting to retain or replace lost volume.

**Intrarenal**

Etiologies of intrarenal AKI include vascular, glomerular, and tubular/interstitial disease. Common vascular diseases associated with AKI include atheroemboli (typically associated with angiographic or surgical/endovascular procedures), vasculitis, thromboembolic disease including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS) and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) malignant hypertension, and scleroderma renal crisis. Glomerular diseases that result in AKI include the nephritic (generally accompanied by active sediment on urinalysis [UA], i.e., red cells, white cells, and/or cellular casts) and nephrotic (generally accompanied by heavy proteinuria) syndromes (Table 40.1). Tubular and interstitial diseases are the most common causes of AKI in hospitalized patients; they include acute tubular necrosis (ATN), acute interstitial nephritis (AIN), and, less commonly, multiple myeloma cast nephropathy and tumor lysis syndrome.

ATN is the most common cause of AKI in hospitalized patients and accounts for nearly 45% of in-hospital AKI. Renal ischemia, sepsis, and nephrotoxins, including radiocontrast media, heme pigment (e.g., in patients with rhabdomyolysis or hemolysis), selected cancer chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., platinum-based agents), and antibiotics (e.g., amphotericin B, aminoglycosides), are all common causes of ATN. Because ATN can occur after prolonged or severe prerenal physiology, it can at times be difficult to distinguish the two processes. In general, prerenal disease, unless it is due to hemodynamic derangements associated with heart failure, cirrhosis, or sepsis, will resolve with the correction of hypovolemia or hypotension. When the cause of injury is uncertain, urine studies can help distinguish the two etiologies; ATN will demonstrate an FENa >1% (as opposed to <1% seen in prerenal conditions) and the presence of muddy brown casts. In the future, ATN may be more rapidly identified by the detection of urinary neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL) and other renal tubular injury markers, discussed below.
AIN is another cause of tubular/interstitial AKI, but it is significantly less common than ATN. AIN is typically the result of exposure to drugs; common offenders include NSAIDs and antibiotics, including penicillins and cephalosporins. Less commonly, AIN can result from infection or systemic illness (e.g., sarcoidosis, Sjogren’s, systemic lupus erythematosus [SLE]). A diagnosis of AIN requires the presence of pyuria and white cell casts on UA or urine microscopy.

**Postrenal**

Postrenal AKI is caused by obstruction to the flow of urine, typically from ureteral compression and occasionally from other causes (e.g., stones, papillary necrosis). Pelvic malignancies (e.g., colorectal carcinoma, ovarian or cervical carcinoma, retroperitoneal lymphadenopathy) are relatively common culprits. Generally, unless the patient has pre-existing chronic kidney disease (CKD), the obstruction must affect both kidneys in order for changes in sCr to be detected.

### HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

Because renal disease can impact all organ systems, a comprehensive history and physical exam should be taken. Special priority should be given to the assessment of urgent or emergent indications for dialysis, such as volume overload (shortness of breath, edema) and clinical uremia (myoclonus or asterixis, pericardial rub) (Table 40.2).

### DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

ED patients with AKI require the following diagnostic workup:

- Accurate measurement of urine output, including catheter placement if necessary
- Metabolic panel including sCr, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate, and urea nitrogen
EMERGING BIOMARKERS FOR AKI

Cystatin C
Cystatin C is an alternative filtration marker to sCr for the estimation of GFR that is being evaluated for its ability to improve the accuracy of prognosis and prediction of mortality in CKD. Although a recent study did not demonstrate improved estimation of GFR using cystatin C alone when compared to sCr, the combined use of the two markers did provide a more accurate estimation of GFR. Cystatin C is currently not available for clinical use in the United States.

Neutrophil Gelatinase-Associated Lipocalin
Urinary and serum NGAL is another promising potential biomarker for AKI. Produced by renal tubular epithelial cells, NGAL is released into the serum and urine in response to cellular injury; NGAL levels rise in the serum and in the urine in AKI. NGAL is currently not available for clinical use in the United States.

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Hyperkalemia
In patients with severe AKI and hyperkalemia, a rapidly rising serum potassium, or a reasonable clinical expectation of impending hyperkalemia (e.g., patients with crush injury
or an ischemic limb), medical therapy is an important, but temporizing, intervention that
is followed in the majority of cases by hemodialysis (HD) or continuous renal replace-
ment therapy (CRRT). Medical therapy includes antagonism of the effect of potassium
on the cardiac myocyte (e.g., intravenous administration of calcium), extra- to intracel-
lular flux of potassium (e.g., insulin and glucose, sodium bicarbonate, β2-agonism), and
removal of potassium from the body via the kidneys and gut (e.g., loop diuresis and use
of cation exchange resins). In some patients with hyperkalemia and AKI, these therapies
may actually perform multiple functions; for example, the use of loop diuretics helps cor-
rect hyperkalemia, hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, and volume overload.

**Volume Overload in a Patient Responsive to Diuresis**

Patients with AKI who are oliguric or anuric may present to the ED already volume
overloaded. The degree of kidney injury and associated metabolic abnormalities deter-
mine which patients require immediate dialysis. If dialysis is not immediately indicated,
the patient should be given a trial of intravenous loop diuretics; a nonresponse (urine
output of <0.5 mL/kg/h or insufficient urine output to improve volume overload) usu-
ally indicates more severe renal injury and a greater diagnostic and therapeutic urgency.
In patients with evolving renal injury, the sCr may not reflect the extent of impaired
function, and the required dose of diuretics may be higher than expected.

**Acidemia in a Nonanuric Patient**

Metabolic acidosis is a common finding in patients with AKI. The metabolic acidosis
observed in AKI can mimic that seen in genetic or chronic tubular dysfunction, with the
location of the tubular dysfunction determined by the etiology of the AKI. For example,
patients with obstructive nephropathy can develop distal (type 2) RTA. Fortunately, in
the acute setting, the treatment of the patient with AKI and metabolic acidosis is nearly
always the same.

While HD or CRRT can rapidly correct metabolic acidosis (of any etiology), patients
with AKI who develop hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis as a result of impaired acid
secretion or bicarbonate regeneration (common in the setting of low GFR) may be con-
servatively managed with intravenous sodium bicarbonate–containing solutions. For a
mild to moderate bicarbonate deficit, one strategy is to administer an isotonic solution
containing three amps of bicarbonate (150 mEq) per liter, at a rate of 1 to 2 mL/kg/h.
For patients with more severe metabolic acidosis who are awaiting dialysis, bolus admin-
istration of sodium bicarbonate may be necessary. Administering sodium bicarbonate to
patients with severe lactic acidosis is generally not advised; rather, attention should be
focused on reversing the primary cause of lactic acidosis (e.g., septic shock).

**INDICATIONS FOR DIALYSIS IN AKI**

The decision to initiate dialysis from the ED is generally made in conjunction with
a consulting nephrologist. The following are the commonly accepted indications for
dialysis in a patient with AKI:

- Hyperkalemia or rapidly rising serum potassium
- Acidemia in an oliguric or anuric patient
• Alcohol and drug toxicities
• Volume overload refractory to diuresis
• Clinical uremia (e.g., pericarditis, mental status change)

Although there are no studies comparing outcomes for patients who have dialysis initiated in the ED to those who have dialysis initiated later in their hospital course, several high-quality observational and randomized controlled trials (RCTs) suggest that earlier initiation of dialysis or hemofiltration in critically ill patients may improve short-term outcomes such as length of ICU stay and overall survival. In one study of ICU patients from several academic ICUs, the odds ratio for survival to hospital discharge was 1.85 in the group that received dialysis at a lower BUN target ($\leq 76$ mg/dL) when compared to those whose BUN was allowed to climb to a higher target ($>76$ mg/dL).

**TYPES OF RENAL REPLACEMENT**

**Hemodialysis**
HD is the most common form of renal replacement for hospitalized patients. Dialysis is an intermittent therapy; typically, it is performed three times per week, but it can be performed daily if necessitated by acute illness or other clinical indication. Electrolytes, solutes, and uremic toxins are removed via diffusion; the patient’s blood is pumped in a countercurrent fashion along a semipermeable membrane, on the other side of which flows dialysate solution containing precise concentrations of various electrolytes. Dialysis requires venous access, typically in the form of a fistula or graft, but may also be performed by means of a temporary or permanent dialysis catheter. Dialysis rapidly addresses electrolyte, acid–base, and volume derangements; however, removal of intravascular volume in large amounts may be limited by the patient’s blood pressure.

**Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy**
CRRT is a low-flow, continuous therapy used for critically ill patients when adequate volume removal cannot be achieved via a short intermittent session or for those patients who will not tolerate the large fluid shifts associated with dialysis. CRRT also may allow for adequate solute clearance in a patient who is highly catabolic, where intermittent dialysis may be insufficient. Clearance can be obtained via diffusion (dialysis), convection (hemofiltration), or a combination of the two. Access generally requires a catheter; CRRT cannot be performed via a patient’s preexisting fistula or graft. CRRT is almost always performed in an intensive care setting.

**Sustained Low-Efficiency Daily Dialysis**
Sustained low-efficiency daily dialysis (SLEDD) is a hybrid therapy that combines the long treatment times and slower blood flow rates used in CRRT with the purely diffusive clearance of HD. It is used for patients who require a therapy that can provide a slower removal of volume, reduced hemodynamic perturbation, and significant solute clearance. SLEDD is used in place of CRRT in some hospitals; clinical outcomes are generally similar between the two therapies.
SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

Contrast-Associated Nephropathy

For many ED practitioners, the perceived risk of contrast-associated nephropathy will influence the decision to limit the use of certain imaging modalities, especially for patients with CKD or AKI. However, the true risk of contrast-associated nephropathy is likely overestimated in practice, and there is evidence that patients with kidney dysfunction are being inappropriately denied necessary and potentially lifesaving diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. The decision to administer or forgo contrast in a patient with AKI should be made in conjunction with a nephrologist. If contrast is administered to patients at highest risk for contrast-associated nephropathy (e.g., patients with preexisting CKD or AKI or patients with diabetes mellitus [DM]), it is reasonable to consider prophylactic pretreatment. One strategy for pretreatment is to administer a bicarbonate-containing isotonic solution at a rate of 1 mL/kg for 6 to 12 hours prior to contrast administration, continuing for 12 hours after contrast administration. Given the lack of risk, it is also reasonable to administer acetylcysteine, either by mouth or intravenously, on the day prior to, and on the day of, contrast administration. It should be noted that the evidence for this strategy is mixed and comes with little expert consensus.

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uchino et al., JAMA. 2006¹</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 1,738 ICU patients with AKI from 54 hospitals in 23 countries</td>
<td>Severe AKI occurred in 5.7% of ICU patients. Hospital mortality among critically ill patient with AKI was 60.3%. Among survivors, dialysis dependence at hospital discharge was 13.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu et al., Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2006⁶</td>
<td>Prospective observational study comparing low blood urea nitrogen (BUN ≤ 76 mg/dL) at initiation of renal replacement therapy to high BUN (&gt;76 mg/dL) in 243 critically ill patients with AKI and no preexisting CKD</td>
<td>Relative risk for death in high BUN group was 1.85 (95% CI 1.16–2.96) after adjustment for age and severity of illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhang et al., Am J Kidney Dis. 2011⁹</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 13 studies of the use of serum and urinary cystatin C to predict AKI</td>
<td>Sensitivity of serum cystatin C to predict AKI was 86%; sensitivity was 82%. Urinary cystatin C was less useful as a predictor than serum cystatin C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elahi et al., Eur J Cardiothorac Surg. 2004¹⁰</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort of 43 consecutive cardiac surgery patients who developed postoperative AKI requiring CRRT; for analysis, cases divided into “early” CRRT (indication was urine output &lt;100 mL over 8 h despite furosemide administration) and “late” CRRT (indication was BUN &gt; 30 mmol/L, creatinine &gt;250 mmol/L, or potassium &gt;6 mEq/L)</td>
<td>“Early” CRRT patients demonstrated shorter ICU stays, shorter hospital stays, and decreased mortality (22% vs. 43%, p &lt; 0.05) when compared to “late” CRRT patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demirkilic et al., J Cardiac Surg. 2004¹¹</td>
<td>Prospective nonrandomized clinical trial of 61 postcardiac surgery patients enrolled consecutively in either an early CRRT arm (1996–2001; defined as urine output &lt;100 mL over a 8-h period despite furosemide administration) or a late CRRT arm (1992–1996; defined as sCr &gt;5.5 mg/dL or sK ≥5.5, refractory to medical management)</td>
<td>Patients who received early CRRT had shorter ICU and total hospital stays, decreased ICU mortality, and decreased overall mortality, all statistically significant. Specifically, hospital mortality for early CRRT was 24% compared to 56% in late CRRT patients (p = 0.016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugahara and Suzuki, Hemodial Int. 2004¹²</td>
<td>RCT comparing early vs. conventional initiation of CRRT in 28 post-CABG patients. Early start patients received CRRT when urine output fell below 30 mL/h for 3 consecutive hours; late-start patients received CRRT when urine output fell below 20 mL/h for 2 consecutive hours</td>
<td>Survival to 14 d in the early initiation group was 88%, compared with 14% in the conventional start group (p &lt; 0.01)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.
CONCLUSION

AKI is common in critically ill patients and confers a poor prognosis. Identifying these patients early and determining who will require HD is a priority for the emergency physician. Application of the grading systems discussed in this chapter and—since acute AKI may not mount a significant elevation in sCr in the ED—close attention to urine output can greatly expedite achieving this goal.

REFERENCES

Glycemic Control in the Critically Ill
Daniel Runde and Jarone Lee

BACKGROUND

Glycemic control is one of the most controversial topics in critical care. A large body of evidence demonstrates a clear association between elevated blood glucose levels and increased morbidity and mortality. Persistent hyperglycemia also correlates with poor outcomes in all subtypes of critically ill patients: postoperative, myocardial infarction, ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke, neurologic trauma, and sepsis. Pathophysiologic changes caused by hyperglycemia affect a wide variety of biologic responses, from immune function to wound healing. Despite extensive research, however, it is yet to be determined whether hyperglycemia is a marker of disease severity; whether it directly causes poor outcomes; and whether interventions to control and regulate blood glucose levels result in improved outcomes in critically ill patients. The controversy surrounding glycemic control is driven in large part by the fact that, in contrast to hyperglycemia, even transient hypoglycemic episodes, which commonly occur in the setting of strict blood glucose control, can have potentially disastrous consequences for the critically ill patient.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF HYPERGLYCEMIC STATES

Stress hyperglycemia is common in the acutely ill and in both diabetic and nondiabetic patients. Hyperglycemia occurs as a response to a range of events that result in physiologic stress, including, but not limited to, trauma, hemorrhage, hypoxia, myocardial ischemia, and infection. This stress response is mediated by a complex interaction of hormones and proinflammatory cytokines, including a dramatic increase in the production of cortisol, epinephrine, and norepinephrine, as well as tumor necrosis factor-alpha and interleukins 1 and 6. The hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis plays a key role, as does the sympathoadrenal system. Metabolically, these changes produce increases in gluconeogenesis, glycogenolysis, and insulin resistance.

Short-term hyperglycemia may be an adaptive response to stress, resulting in improved glucose delivery to tissue that is poorly perfused at the microvascular level. Macrophages, which play a key role in immune response, rely on glucose as a means of energy production, and adequate glucose delivery is necessary to ensure optimal
function. Furthermore, laboratory, animal, and human studies have demonstrated that hyperglycemia may initially limit ischemic myocardial injury.

In contrast, chronic hyperglycemia appears to be associated with a variety of negative effects at the cellular level. In vitro models have found that hyperglycemia inhibits glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase activity, which in turn decreases oxygen radical production by neutrophils. It has been theorized that this could result in impaired bactericidal activity and immune function. Chronic hyperglycemia is also associated with increased myocardial cell death in the setting of cardiac ischemia.

HYPERGLYCEMIA AND CLINICAL OUTCOMES

There is ample evidence that hyperglycemia is associated with poor clinical outcomes in a wide variety of patients who present to the emergency department. Among these are patients with acute coronary syndrome, neurologic injuries, and sepsis.

Acute Coronary Syndrome
In patients with acute myocardial infarction (AMI), several studies suggest that elevated serum glucose on admission is associated with increased risk of reinfarction, the development of congestive heart failure, the incidence of future cardiac events, and increased mortality. A related study tracked long-term outcomes in patients with AMI (either known diabetics or those with elevated serum glucose at the time of their event) and demonstrated a significant decrease in mortality in the group with more strict blood sugar regulation.

Neurologic Injury
In several studies of patients presenting with ischemic strokes, hyperglycemia on admission was independently associated with worse long-term neurologic outcomes and increased mortality. Hyperglycemia is also associated with an increased rate of hemorrhagic transformation in patients receiving thrombolytic therapy. Again, these findings were independent of the patient’s diabetic status at the time of the event.

Similarly, patients with traumatic brain injury with elevated blood glucose on admission experience worse neurologic outcomes and increased mortality, both in the short and in the long term. In one study of severely brain-injured patients, the degree of hyperglycemia was inversely proportional to Glasgow Coma Scale score and to favorable outcome.

Sepsis
In patients with sepsis, even moderate hyperglycemia is associated with increased rates of complication, length of stay, and unfavorable clinical outcomes.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF HYPOGLYCEMIC STATES

In contrast to hyperglycemia, whose negative effects occur over hours to days, even transient hypoglycemia can result in profound morbidity and potential mortality in the critically ill patient. The brain, in particular, is dependent on a near-continuous supply of glucose, and any interruption or decrease in glucose delivery can result in impaired judgment, confusion, seizures, coma, and even death. While there are no definitive cutoffs for the degree or duration of hypoglycemia required to produce permanent neurologic
Glycemic control in the Critically Ill

545

... damage, the correlation between the two is clear. The heart is similarly sensitive to hypoglycemia. One of the initial adaptive responses to hypoglycemia is an increase in heart rate, myocardial contractility, and stroke volume, with the end result being a dramatic increase in cardiac workload over a short period of time. This increase, while of little concern to a healthy patient, can produce demand ischemia in critically ill patients with coronary artery disease. In addition, hypoglycemia can result in cardiac conduction abnormalities, specifically a prolonged QT interval, and an increase in myocyte repolarization time. These changes are associated with an increased risk of arrhythmias, including atrial fibrillation and ventricular tachycardias.

Hypoglycemia and Clinical Outcomes

There is a convincing body of evidence, from both observational studies and randomized control trials, that even a moderate degree of hypoglycemia is associated with worse clinical outcomes and increased mortality. These findings are seen in both medical and surgical patients, and they appear to be independent of patients’ underlying pathology or reason for admission. In a recent retrospective, case–control study examining the effects of mild hypoglycemia on medical ICU patients, even a single episode of mild hypoglycemia independently predicted increased mortality (OR 2.98).

Controversy Regarding Glycemic Control in the Critically Ill

Given the observed relationship between hyperglycemia and poor clinical outcomes, the notion that strict control of a patient’s glycemic state would result in improved outcomes has been actively investigated for more than 20 years. Early studies were often limited to patients with diabetes undergoing the same treatment or procedure (e.g., therapy for acute MI or cardiac surgery). The DIGAMI study included patients with hyperglycemia, regardless of diabetic status, who presented with acute MI. This study demonstrated that patients who were randomized to receive intravenous insulin infusions during their inpatient stay and subsequently received 3 months of subcutaneous outpatient insulin therapy had dramatically improved survival at 1 year follow-up (7.5% ARR, NNT = 13 for survival). It should be noted, however, that there were no significant differences in mortality during the in-hospital period, or at 3-month follow-up, and it remains unclear the extent to which inpatient glycemic control affected outcomes. Though it did not involve glycemic targets, the CREATE-ECLA trial enrolled 20,000 subjects in a multicenter investigation of the effect of insulin and glucose infusion on patients with acute MI; it found no changes in mortality, cardiac arrest, recurrent MI, or cardiogenic shock. A similar trial randomized nearly 2,500 patients undergoing cardiac surgery to receive either continuous insulin infusion or intermittent subcutaneous insulin injections for glycemic control. While the authors did not find any mortality benefit in the intervention group, they did note a small, but statistically significant decrease in deep sternal wound infections in the intervention group (0.8 vs. 2.0%).

In 2001, the Lueven intensive insulin therapy trial enrolled 1,548 critically ill surgical ICU patients and reported a 42% relative reduction in mortality (3.4% ARR, NNT = 30 for survival) and a 46% reduction in septicemia (3.6% ARR, NNT = 28 for preventing bloodstream infection) for patients targeted to tight glycemic control (70 to 110 mg/dL).
Following the study’s publication, strict glycemic control was rapidly adopted as the standard of care in many ICUs worldwide. In 2006, the same research group enrolled 1,200 subjects and examined the effects of tight glycemic control in critically patients in the medical ICU setting. Unlike their previous trial, this investigation did not find any overall difference in mortality between the intervention and control groups, nor did it find any difference in the rate of bloodstream infections. In a subgroup analysis, the authors noted that for patients with ICU stays <3 days, there was decreased mortality in the intervention group. Unfortunately, this benefit was offset by an increase in deaths among intervention patients with ICU stays longer than 3 days.

There have been multiple subsequent attempts to reproduce the results of the original 2001 Leuven trial. Ensuing investigations failed to demonstrate any mortality benefit for patients receiving tight glycemic control. The majority of these trials did, however, again demonstrate intensive insulin therapy to be associated with an increase in hypoglycemic events, with at least one trial stopped early because of an increase in mortality in the intervention group. High-quality systematic reviews have likewise failed to demonstrate a benefit for tight glycemic control in more defined populations, such as perioperative patients with diabetes or in patients following ischemic stroke. These reviews also reinforced the finding of increased hypoglycemic events in intervention groups. As a result of these studies, there has been a trend away from tight glycemic control in the treatment of the critically ill.

Follow-up studies investigating the effect of tight glycemic control in critically ill patients culminated in the 2009 NICE-SUGAR study, a landmark multicenter trial that randomized over 6,000 medical and surgical ICU subjects expected to require ICU care for 3 or more days to either intensive (goal 80 to 110 mg/dL) or conventional (goal <180 mg/dL) glycemic control. In stark contrast to the results of the Leuven trial and in agreement with the smaller studies discussed above, all-cause mortality at 90 days (the primary endpoint) was actually higher in the intensive glucose control group (27.5% vs. 24.9%, NNH = 38 for death). The rate of severe hypoglycemic episodes was also found to be dramatically increased in the intervention group (6.9% vs. 0.5%, NNH = 15). Importantly, there was no difference in outcomes for medical or surgical patients and no difference in secondary outcomes (ICU/hospital days, days requiring mechanical ventilation, need for renal replacement therapy). As a result of this study, aggressive glucose control in the ICU to goal <110 mg/dL is definitively no longer recommended. Although an ideal target serum glucose remains unclear and prolonged hyperglycemia remains, in general, undesirable, the risks associated with hypoglycemia have led most centers to target 140 to 180 mg/dL for patients in the critically care setting.

CONCLUSION

The majority of data on glycemic control in the critically ill are derived from studies performed in an ICU setting. At this time, there are little data on glycemic control among critically ill patients in the ED. Extrapolating current evidence from the ICU-based studies, targeting a blood glucose target of 140 to 180 mg/dL is recommended. Many emergency departments, however, lack the staffing, protocols, and resources to safely ensure even this level of glycemic control. Data clearly suggest hypoglycemic events to be of greater danger to the patient than modest increases in blood glucose, and
insulin continues to be a top five “high-risk” medications, with one in three fatal medical errors being linked to insulin therapy. As such, in emergency departments in which resources are limited, targeting a more liberal blood glucose target of 160 to 220 mg/dL may be appropriate.

In summary, while an abundance of data demonstrates a clear association between hyperglycemia and worsened outcomes for critically ill patients of all types (sepsis, acute MI, ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke, postsurgical), it is unclear whether this association is causal. It remains a distinct possibility that hyperglycemia is in fact an independent marker of disease severity—similar to lactate in severe sepsis—rather than a cause of increased morbidity and mortality. Causality notwithstanding, it appears that hyperglycemia is associated with worsened outcomes when present on the scale of hours to days. In contrast, even very brief episodes of hypoglycemia may be catastrophic for a critically ill patient. Despite the development of well-defined protocols, the introduction of continuous serum glucose monitoring devices, and highly trained and attentive ICU staff, modern medicine is still unable to adequately anticipate or avoid hypoglycemic events in patients targeted to tight—or even moderate—glycemic control. Acknowledging these limitations, as well as the near-zero tolerance for harm from iatrogenic hypoglycemia, helps justify the current trend away from tight glycemic control despite the known association between hyperglycemia and poor clinical outcomes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical–surgical ICU patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NICE-SUGAR Investigators, N Engl J Med. 200945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preiser et al. Intensive Care Med. 200952 Glucontrol Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De La Rosa et al. Crit Care. 200855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treggiari et al. Crit Care. 200856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabi et al. Crit Care. 200857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical ICU patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van den Berghe et al. N Engl J Med. 200158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEDICAL ICU PATIENTS</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Park et al., Crit Care. 2012</td>
<td>Retrospective, case–control study of 313 medical ICU patients and effect of mild hypoglycemia on mortality</td>
<td>Mild hypoglycemia independently associated with increased hospital mortality (OR = 3.43). One episode of mild hypoglycemia associated with increased mortality (OR = 2.88)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brunkhorst et al., N Engl J Med. 2008</td>
<td>Prospective, multicentered, RCT of 537 patients in the medical ICU evaluating intensive vs. conventional glucose control, as well as pentastarch vs. Ringer lactate for fluid resuscitation</td>
<td>Trial stopped early for harm. 12.9% increase in hypoglycemic events in the tight glycemic control group (17% vs. 4.1%). With a 3.2% increase in life-threatening hypoglycemic events and a 2.1% increase in hypoglycemic events resulting in a prolonged hospital stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van den Bergh et al., N Engl J Med. 2008</td>
<td>Prospective, single-centered, RCT of 1,200 patients in the medical ICU evaluating intensive vs. conventional glucose control</td>
<td>No difference in mortality, reduced morbidity as defined by new kidney injury, improved weaning from ventilator, and decreased ICU and hospital LOS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDIO THORACIC ICU PATIENTS</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Furnary et al., Ann Thorac Surg. 1999</td>
<td>Prospective, intervention study of 2,467 diabetic patients undergoing open heart surgery that compared insulin infusion vs. conventional therapy to maintain glucose &lt;100 mg/dL</td>
<td>Decreased incidence of deep sternal infections (RR = 0.34) in the continuous infusion group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agus et al., N Engl J Med. 2012</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 980 children undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass surgery evaluating intensive vs. conventional glucose control</td>
<td>No difference in mortality, infection rate, LOS, organ failure scores</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RR, relative risk; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES


Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and the hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS) are two potentially devastating complications of diabetes. Although the number of patients diagnosed with DKA or HHS has nearly doubled in recent decades, the age-adjusted mortality of these patients has declined by almost half within the same time period.\(^1,2\) This improvement in outcomes is due in large part due to the early recognition and therapeutic interventions delivered in the emergency department.

DKA and HHS are characterized by an imbalance between the effective action of insulin and of counterregulatory hormones such as glucagon, cortisol, catecholamines, and growth hormone.\(^3\) This imbalance results in increased gluconeogenesis, impaired peripheral glucose utilization, lipolysis, and increased ketoacid production. In DKA, this produces the triad of hyperglycemia, ketonemia, and metabolic acidosis. In HHS, it is thought that there is sufficient effective insulin to limit lipolysis and ketogenesis, but not enough to facilitate glucose uptake in the tissues (Fig. 42.1). In both conditions, patients undergo a significant osmotic diuresis—HHS with total body water (TBW) deficit of 8 to 10 L and DKA with a TBW deficit of 3 to 6 L—resulting in dehydration and electrolyte shifts.

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM

Classically reported findings in a patient with DKA or HHS include polyuria, polydipsia, weakness, and dehydration. The onset of HHS is usually insidious, occurring over days to weeks, while DKA tends to manifest over a period of hours. Patients with DKA may complain of abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting, while HHS patients often report mental status changes or confusion. The physical exam in both conditions will reveal evidence of hypovolemia, including hypotension, tachycardia, decreased capillary refill, and poor skin turgor. Patients with DKA will commonly demonstrate deep breathing or Kussmaul respirations, a fruity odor to their breath, and abdominal tenderness. Patients with HHS may present with profound neurologic changes including focal deficits,
seizures, or coma. The most common insult precipitating both conditions is infection. Other triggers include insufficient insulin, drugs, and other severe physiologic stresses such as myocardial ischemia, stroke, and pancreatitis.³

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

When DKA or HHS is suspected, the laboratory evaluation should include plasma glucose, basic metabolic panel, serum osmolarity, venous blood gas, serum lactate, and detection of ketones. A complete blood count, urinalysis, blood and urine cultures, chest radiograph, and electrocardiogram may help detect coexisting or triggering illness.

Hyperglycemia is a cardinal feature of both conditions and is typically more profound in patients with HHS (Table 42.1). Patients with DKA may however present with serum glucose <300 mg/dL; therefore, in a patient clinically suspected of having DKA, laboratory evaluation should always include calculation of the anion gap (AG) and serum ketones.³,⁴

**Ketones**

In the patient with DKA, hepatic fatty acid oxidation produces ketone bodies, specifically acetoacetic acid, beta-hydroxybutyric acid, and acetone. The standard laboratory test used to detect serum ketones uses a nitroprusside reagent. While widely available,
this test does not detect beta-hydroxybutyric acid and thus may yield a false-negative result. To avoid false-negative results, serum beta-hydroxybutyric acid should be measured directly, when possible.

**Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis**

Patients with DKA will have a metabolic acidosis, with an arterial pH, by definition, of <7.3, and an elevated AG.

\[
AG = Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)
\]

The AG reflects the difference between measured cations and anions and is elevated in DKA due to the presence of the ketoacids. Normal AG values are 7 to 11, with >12 considered elevated. Patients with hypoalbuminemia will have a factitiously lower AG due to the partial loss of negatively charged albumin particles. The AG should be corrected in patients with hypoalbuminemia using the following calculation:

\[
\text{Corrected Anion Gap} = AG + \left[ 2.5 \times (4 - \text{Albumin}) \right]
\]

**Arterial versus Venous Blood Gas**

Recent studies demonstrate that peripheral venous blood gas (VBG) samples can be used to accurately assess the degree of acidosis in patients presenting to the emergency department. Compared with an arterial blood gas (ABG), the VBG will be lower by approximately 0.02 to 0.04 pH units. In general, VBGs and ABGs agree, but periodic
correlation should be performed if serial VBGs are being used to monitor a patient’s acid–base status.

**Osmolarity**

Unlike patients with DKA, patients with HHS will present with significantly elevated serum osmolarity. Hyperosmolarity is primarily due to the marked free water loss associated with glucose-induced osmotic diuresis. Serum osmolarity is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Serum osmolarity} = \left[ 2 \times \text{Na}^+ \text{ (meq/L)} \right] + \left[ \text{Glucose (mg/dL) / 18} \right] + \left[ \text{BUN / 2.8} \right] + \left[ \text{EtOH / 4.6} \right]$$

A serum osmolarity >320 can result in mental status changes, including stupor and coma. In patients with HHS presenting with neurologic impairment but normal serum osmolarity, a rigorous search for alternative explanations of their altered mental status is required.9,10

**Potassium**

Despite presenting with elevated serum potassium levels, patients with DKA and HHS will often have a potassium deficit ranging between 3 and 5 mg/kg.11,12 The potassium deficit is multifactorial and can be attributed to decreased intake and increased urinary and gastrointestinal losses.12 Elevated serum potassium is mechanistically related to insulin deficiency, hyperglycemia, and acidosis, which decrease its regular cellular uptake.12 As patients receive treatment for DKA and HHS, potassium uptake resumes and serum levels will rapidly fall, placing patients at risk for cardiac dysrhythmias and respiratory muscle weakness. Potassium levels should be followed closely at every stage of treatment to prevent these treatment complications.11 Protocols for management of DKA (Table 42.2) include components for potassium replacement and to withhold insulin therapy until serum potassium levels are >3.3 mEq/L.3

**Sodium**

The hyperglycemia present in both DKA and HHS will initially create an osmotic gradient that draws water from the cellular space, effectively lowering the measured serum sodium. This osmotic effect of glucose on serum sodium should be corrected using the following calculation:

$$\text{Corrected Na}^+ = \text{Measured Na}^+ + 0.016 \times (\text{Serum Glucose} – 100)$$

The finding of hypernatremia in either DKA or HHS indicates that a significant free water deficit exists.

**Phosphate**

Serum phosphate may be normal or elevated in patients with DKA or HHS due to extracellular shifts; however, patients are typically phosphate depleted due to urinary loss and decreased intake.13 As with potassium, insulin therapy will unmask this deficit as it drives phosphate back into the cells. Although phosphate replacement has yet to demonstrate clinical benefit in patients with DKA, patients should be administered
Table 42.2 Management Guidelines

**DKA diagnostic criteria:** blood glucose 250 mg/dL, arterial pH < 7.3, bicarbonate 15 mEq/L, and moderate ketonuria or ketonemia. **HHS diagnostic criteria:** glucose > 600 mg/dL, arterial pH > 7.3, serum bicarbonate > 15 mEq/L, and minimal ketonuria and ketonemia.

*15–20 mL/kg/h*

*Serum Na should be corrected for hyperglycemia (for each 100 mg/dL glucose > 100 mg/dL, add 1.6 mEq to sodium value for corrected serum value).*

Bwt, body weight; IV, intravenous; SC, subcutaneous.

phosphorus when cardiac dysfunction, anemia, or respiratory depression is present, or when phosphate levels are <1 mg/dL.\textsuperscript{3,14,15}

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Other diagnoses to consider when evaluating a patient with an elevated AG acidosis include lactic acidosis, starvation or alcoholic ketoacidosis, uremic acidosis, and toxic ingestion. Patients with DKA may produce lactate, but will have a predominance of ketone bodies and a less significant elevation of lactate when compared to patients with primary lactic acidosis (e.g., the septic patient). Patients with starvation or alcoholic ketoacidosis will have detectable ketones but without hyperglycemia or glycosuria. Patients with uremic acidosis or toxic ingestion may present with an elevated AG acidosis but will not have the accompanying hyperglycemia, ketonemia, or glycosuria.

### MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

**Fluid**

All patients with DKA or HHS will be volume depleted and require fluid resuscitation. The free water deficit should be replaced within 24 hours and is calculated as follows:

\[
\text{Free Water Deficit} = \text{Weight (kg)} \times \left[ \left( \frac{\text{Serum Na}^+}{140} - 1 \right) \times \text{Dosing Factor} \right]
\]

\[
\text{Dosing Factor} = 0.6 \text{ (Male) and } 0.5 \text{ (Female)}
\]

Fluid resuscitation alone has been shown to improve hyperglycemia, as well as decrease peripheral insulin resistance and the availability of counterregulatory hormones.\textsuperscript{16} Isotonic fluids are the recommended medium to restore intravascular volume and tissue perfusion in DKA and HHS.\textsuperscript{3} Colloids are more expensive and have not been shown to improve mortality, while hypertonic fluids have been shown to worsen hyperosmolarity, hypernatremia, and hyperchloremia.\textsuperscript{17-19} Normal saline is the initial resuscitative fluid of choice; use of other isotonic fluids such as Plasma-Lyte, lactated Ringer’s or Hartmann solution may benefit patients in whom aggressive resuscitation with normal saline has resulted in hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis; however, robust evidence compelling a switch to one of these choices is lacking.\textsuperscript{20-22}

Fluid resuscitation in both DKA and HHS should begin at a rate of 15 to 20 mL/kg/h or 1 to 1.5 L given in the first hour, with the goal of correcting free water deficits in the first 24 hours.\textsuperscript{3} For patients with a normal or elevated corrected sodium >140 mg/dL, 0.45% NaCl is an appropriate initial resuscitative fluid. For patients with a corrected sodium <140 mg/dL, 0.9% NaCl should be used.\textsuperscript{3} After the first hour, an appropriate infusion rate of saline will range between 250 and 500 mL/h and will be guided by the patient’s hemodynamic status, fluid deficit, urinary output, renal and cardiac function, electrolyte status, and osmolarity correction.\textsuperscript{3} When serum glucose levels decrease to 200 mg/dL in DKA and 300 mg/dL in HHS, 5% dextrose should be added to the replacement fluids to avoid hypoglycemia. The insulin infusion should not be stopped until the acidosis is corrected, unless potassium levels drop below 3 mg/dL (Table 42.2).
Insulin

Along with intravenous fluids, insulin is the second essential therapy in DKA and HHS. Regular insulin is typically given as a continuous infusion; a loading dose is not necessary if an initial infusion rate is at least 0.14 units/kg/h. Alternatively, a priming dose of 0.1 units/kg may be given prior to the initiation of an infusion of 0.1 units/kg/h of regular insulin. There is evidence for the administration of subcutaneous rapid-acting insulin analogs in place of intravenous insulin therapy. For patients with mild to moderate DKA without severe acidosis, shock, or coma, use of a short-acting insulin such as aspart or lispro given every 1 to 2 hours has been shown to be successful in the treatment of DKA. This approach has the advantage of enabling patient management outside of the intensive care unit; however, its use necessitates cautious patient selection, and further research is warranted before it is implemented widely.

A critical aspect in the management of DKA or HHS is the transition from continuous infusion to subcutaneous insulin. In DKA, the hyperglycemia will typically resolve earlier than the metabolic acidosis. Insulin infusion should continue until the resolution of DKA or HHS, with the addition of 5% dextrose to the replacement fluids when the glucose decreases to 200 or 300 mg/dL in DKA and HHS, respectively. According to the American Diabetes Association (ADA), resolution of DKA and HSS is defined when the following goals are achieved:

- HHS: glucose 250 to 300 mg/dL
- Normal osmolality with normal mental status
- DKA: glucose <200 mg/dL and two of the following:
  - Serum anion gap ≤12 mEq/L
  - Serum bicarbonate ≥15 mEq/L
  - Venous pH >7.30

When these criteria are achieved, the patient should be transitioned to subcutaneous insulin, with overlapping intravenous insulin for 1 to 2 hours. Patients with known diabetes can be given their usual insulin regimen while insulin naïve patients may be started at 0.5 to 0.8 units/kg/d; both regimens must be dosed according to the type of insulin that is used. Types of insulin and their onset, peak effect, duration of action, and dosing time are summarized in Table 42.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Insulin</th>
<th>Onset</th>
<th>Peak Effect</th>
<th>Duration of Action</th>
<th>Dosing Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mealtime Insulin (Short Acting)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspart (Novolog) (rapid acting)</td>
<td>5–15 min</td>
<td>1 h</td>
<td>3–5 h</td>
<td>Within 20 min, before or after a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular (Humulin R) (short acting)</td>
<td>30 min</td>
<td>2–4 h</td>
<td>5–8 h</td>
<td>30 min before a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basal Insulin (Long Acting)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glargine (Lantus) (long acting)</td>
<td>1.5–2 h</td>
<td>No peak</td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>Usually q 12 or q 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPH (Humulin N) (intermediate acting)</td>
<td>1–2 h</td>
<td>4–12 h</td>
<td>12–18 h</td>
<td>Once or Twice daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Potassium
As noted, patients with DKA or HHS may present as normokalemic or hyperkalemic, despite experiencing overall potassium depletion. The true deficit is unmasked during the treatment of DKA and HHS. Because of this, any patient with an initial serum potassium $<3.3$ mEq/L should receive potassium replacement prior to the initiation of insulin therapy to avoid triggering cardiac arrhythmias and respiratory muscle weakness.\textsuperscript{3,11,12} The ADA recommends maintaining potassium between the range of 4 and 5 mEq/L and replacing potassium for patients with initial level $<5$ mEq/L.\textsuperscript{3}

Bicarbonate
A recent randomized trial failed to show benefit from the administration of bicarbonate to DKA patients with metabolic acidosis and pH levels of 6.9 to 7.14.\textsuperscript{27} Similarly, a systematic review examining 44 studies found no evidence of improved glycemic control or clinical improvement with the use of bicarbonate therapy in DKA.\textsuperscript{28} Moreover, a retrospective analysis of bicarbonate use for DKA and HHS revealed evidence of harm, including transient paradoxical worsening of ketosis, increased need for potassium supplementation, and, in pediatric patients, increased risk of cerebral edema and prolonged hospitalization.\textsuperscript{28} Notably, no prospective randomized trials have studied the use of bicarbonate in DKA patients with pH $<6.9$. Due to concern about the effects of severe acidosis on vital organ function, the ADA continues to recommend administering 100 mmol of sodium bicarbonate in 400 mL sterile water with 20 mEq KCl at 200 mL/h for 2 hours, or until venous pH is $>7.0$.\textsuperscript{3}

Complications
Common complications in the treatment of DKA and HHS are hypoglycemia and hypokalemia. Patients with these metabolic derangements are best served in the intensive care setting, where clinicians can more easily provide close monitoring of serum electrolytes and glucose. Another common complication is a non-AG hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, which can follow aggressive resuscitation with normal saline, but is usually self-limited and rarely consequential.\textsuperscript{29}
A serious complication of treatment that occurs more frequently in pediatric patients is cerebral edema. Symptoms including headache, lethargy, and depressed mental status present within 12 to 24 hours of treatment and may rapidly progress to include seizures, incontinence, and brain herniation. The mortality associated with cerebral edema is as high as 20\% to 40\%.\textsuperscript{3} The optimal treatment is preventative, with a focus on fluid and sodium replacements in hyperosmolar patients, and the addition of 5\% dextrose once glucose levels reach 200 mg/dL (DKA) or 300 mg/dL (HHS).\textsuperscript{3} A clinical suspicion for cerebral edema should prompt immediate intensive care unit consultation.

CONCLUSION
All patients with DKA or HHS should be considered for ICU level of care at presentation and aggressively resuscitated. With proper management in the emergency department, patients who approach normalization of AG, have pH $>7.25$, and can protect their airway, may be considered for a higher-acuity floor or step-down bed.
Early ICU care should be provided in patients who are severely acidemic or hypokalemic, cannot protect their airway, cannot tolerate fluid resuscitation (e.g., renal or cardiac patients), or have another pathophysiologic process present (e.g., sepsis). In the transfer from the ED to the ICU, important communications include the patients’ comorbidities and mental status; their free water deficit and status of fluid resuscitation, insulin requirements and trajectory of AG correction; and electrolyte status and the trajectory of correction.

**REFERENCES**


**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Insulin</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitabchi et al., <em>Diabetes Care</em>. 2008²³</td>
<td>Prospective randomized study of 37 DKA patients assigned to 1) Insulin 0.07 units/kg load plus 0.07 units/kg/h infusion vs. 2) No load, insulin 0.07 units/kg/h infusion vs. 3) No load, infusion 0.14 units/kg/h</td>
<td>No significant difference in times to resolution of DKA between three groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicarbonate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al., <em>Ann Intern Med</em>. 1986²⁶</td>
<td>Prospective randomized protocol of 21 patients. Various doses of bicarbonate administered based on pH 6.9–7.14 vs. control group who did not receive bicarbonate</td>
<td>No significant difference in rate of change of pH, ketone bodies, bicarbonate, or glucose levels between the two groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chua et al., <em>Ann Intensive Care</em>. 2011²⁸</td>
<td>Systematic review of 44 studies—adults and pediatric patients with DKA, comparing outcomes of patients who received bicarbonate vs. no bicarbonate. No studies involved patients with pH &lt; 6.85</td>
<td>Two RCTs showed transient improvement in acidosis in the first 2 h with bicarbonate treatment, however there was no evidence of improved glycemic control or clinical efficacy. In pediatric patients receiving bicarbonate there was retrospective evidence of increased risk of cerebral edema and prolonged hospitalization, and weak evidence of transient worsening of ketoacidosis and increased need for potassium supplementation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adrenal Insufficiency

Thomas B. Perera

BACKGROUND

The adrenal glands are two small, irregularly shaped bodies located superior to each renal pole. Each gland contains two distinct structures, the outer adrenal medulla and the inner adrenal cortex. The adrenal cortex can be divided into three zones: the zona glomerulosa, which produces the mineralocorticoid aldosterone, and the zona fasciculata and zona reticularis, which produce the glucocorticoid cortisol as well as androgens. The outer medulla is responsible for catecholamine production, including epinephrine and norepinephrine.

Cortisol has multiple effects, including increasing blood glucose and gluconeogenesis, suppressing the immune system, decreasing bone formation, and aiding in fat, protein, and carbohydrate metabolism. Aldosterone works on the kidneys to promote reabsorption of sodium and of water and secretion of potassium. Adrenal insufficiency is defined as a condition in which the adrenal glands fail to produce an adequate amount of steroid hormones to meet the needs of the body. Adrenal insufficiency can be a devastating complication of critical illness and, in high-risk patients (e.g., those with hypotension, shock, sepsis), has an incidence of approximately 30% to 40%.

Adrenal gland production of cortisol is regulated through the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal gland axis. The hypothalamus responds to external stimuli, including low cortisol levels, by secreting corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). This causes the pituitary gland to release corticotropin (adrenocorticotropic hormone [ACTH]), which is the primary regulator of cortisol production and release. Approximately 95% of body cortisol is protein bound; it is the remaining 5% of free cortisol that produces effects in the body. In normal individuals, daily cortisol secretion ranges from 40 to 80 μmol and has a pronounced circadian rhythm. Severe physical or emotional stresses stimulate the secretion of CRH and ACTH, which results in large increases (two- or threefold) in serum cortisol concentrations.

Aldosterone production is mediated by the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS). The RAAS is involved with the regulation of vasoconstriction and extracellular blood volume. Renin is an enzyme secreted by specialized cells that encircle the arterioles at the entrance to the glomeruli of the kidneys. These specialized cells modulate renin production in response to changes in blood flow and blood pressure. Low blood flow to the kidneys from any reason, including low blood pressure, will result in increased renin production and release. Renin promotes conversion of the plasma protein
angiotensinogen into angiotensin I, which is subsequently converted into angiotensin II—a potent vasoconstrictor—by the angiotensin-converting enzyme. Angiotensin II acts on receptors in the adrenal glands to stimulate the secretion of aldosterone, which in turn promotes renal resorption of sodium and water.

The adrenal medulla makes up about 10% of the adrenal gland and is an integral part of the sympathetic nervous system. The cells of the medulla, known as chromaffin cells, house chromaffin granules that contain epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine, which are released in response to sympathetic nerve stimulation. In patients with adrenal insufficiency, the adrenal medulla is typically not dysfunctional.

**ETIOLOGY**

Recognizing adrenal insufficiency is the most challenging aspect of its treatment. The hallmark presentation of this condition is hypotension unresponsive to fluids in a patient with sepsis or another acute stressor; however, its presentation can be much subtler. The provider’s goal should be to recognize the disease and start treatment before the patient is in shock; once initiated, treatment is generally straightforward.

In subacute or chronic presentations, the symptoms of adrenal insufficiency may include fatigue, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, muscle aches, weight loss, and a low blood pressure (<110 mm Hg) that may be orthostatic. More than 90% of cases will demonstrate skin hyperpigmentation (due to increased ACTH release) in areas exposed to light, chronic friction, or pressure, as well as the palmar creases.²

There are three major types of adrenal insufficiency. Primary adrenal insufficiency is caused by destruction or dysfunction of the adrenal gland itself; this will not manifest until 90% of the gland is destroyed.³ Because there is direct damage to the gland, glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid secretion are affected; destruction of the entire gland can affect sympathetic nervous system function as well. In the United States, the most common cause (80%) of primary adrenal insufficiency is autoimmune adrenalitis (Addison disease); half of these cases exist as part of the polyglandular autoimmune syndrome type I or II, which can include diabetes and hypothyroidism in addition to adrenal insufficiency. Worldwide, the most common cause of primary adrenal insufficiency is destruction of the adrenal gland by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

Secondary (and tertiary) adrenal insufficiency results from any process involving the pituitary gland or hypothalamus that interferes with ACTH secretion. Such processes include tumors of the pituitary or hypothalamus, infiltrative processes such as sarcoid or TB, surgery, radiation, trauma, and postpartum pituitary necrosis (Sheehan syndrome). Secondary adrenal insufficiency affects only glucocorticoid production (ACTH only affects cortisol production and release). Mineralocorticoid production and sympathetic function are generally not affected.

By far, the most common etiology of secondary adrenal insufficiency is hypoaldosteronism caused by prolonged glucocorticoid therapy. When exogenous glucocorticoids are administered, the body’s production of cortisol can be suppressed, which can lead to decreased adrenal gland responsiveness and atrophy. Inhibition of ACTH secretion depends on the dose, duration, and frequency of glucocorticoid therapy. While there is variation among individual patients, adrenal insufficiency should be considered in symptomatic patients who have received doses of prednisone >7.5 mg per day or
Adrenal Insufficiency

another steroid equivalent for longer than 3 weeks. Inhaled and topical steroids are also demonstrated culprits in adrenal suppression. Patients taking medications that inhibit the cytochrome P450 enzyme CYP3A4 (diltiazem, protease inhibitors, azole antifungals, grapefruit juice) will have a prolonged biologic half-life of glucocorticoids and thus an enhanced suppression of adrenal function. The adrenal glands may require 6 to 12 months for full recovery of function following prolonged use of exogenous glucocorticoids. Tertiary adrenal insufficiency results when an insufficient amount of CRH is produced by the hypothalamus (Table 43.1).

**SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS**

**HIV and AIDS**

Adrenal insufficiency has been demonstrated in 5% to 20% of tested patients with HIV. The prevalence increases with the progression of HIV. HIV may result in primary adrenal insufficiency by itself or through associated infection (TB, cytomegalovirus [CMV], Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare [MAI] or malignancy (Kaposi sarcoma, lymphoma). HIV is also associated with secondary adrenal insufficiency through infectious agents that affect the pituitary gland (toxoplasmosis, CMV), drugs that interfere with adrenal function (ketoconazole, megestrol acetate), or drugs that increase degradation of cortisol (rifampin, phenytoin, opiates). Autopsies of patients with AIDS show adrenal injury in over 50% of cases and pituitary involvement injury in 30% of cases.

**Etomidate**

Etomidate is a first-line anesthetic used in rapid sequence intubation; it is particularly useful in critically ill patients because it is hemodynamically well tolerated. Etomidate, however, decreases available cortisol by inhibiting the 11β-hydroxylase enzyme that converts 11β-deoxy cortisol into cortisol in the adrenal gland. Use of continuous etomidate infusion in the critically ill has been associated with an increase in mortality.

---

**TABLE 43.1** Causes of Adrenal Insufficiency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary: Damage to adrenal gland (mineral and glucocorticoid production affected)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Autoimmune adrenalitis: Isolated or with Polyglandular autoimmune syndrome type I or II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ TB, CMV, Histoplasmosis, Paracoccidioidomycosis, HIV and AIDS, Syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adrenal gland destruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Hemorrhage: trauma, coagulants, sepsis, meningococcemia (Waterhouse-Friderichsen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Metastasis: lung breast, colon cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Bilateral infiltration: lymphoma, sarcoidosis, amyloidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Drug induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Etomidate, ketoconazole, suramin, rifampin, dilantin, barbiturates, Mitotane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secondary: Interference with ACTH secretion at the pituitary gland (glucocorticoid affected)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Postpartum pituitary necrosis (Sheehan’s syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pituitary tumor; trauma, surgery (Following the cure of Cushing’s syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Infiltrative diseases- sarcoidosis, TB, eosinophilic granuloma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tertiary: Interference with corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) secretion by the hypothalamus (glucocorticoid affected)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Glucocorticoid withdrawal after chronic use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypothalamic tumor; trauma, surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and thus has been curtailed. A single dose of etomidate has been shown to cause laboratory evidence of adrenal suppression for 4 to 24 hours. In one study, 80% of patients showed adrenal suppression when tested at 12 hours after a single dose of etomidate. However, the clinical effects of this effect are still in debate. A multitude of smaller and retrospective studies showed no difference in outcome with etomidate. A large 2012 meta-analysis/systemic review demonstrated that in critically ill patients, the relative risk of death with etomidate use was 1.20 (95% CI 1.04–1.42). Smaller studies have also linked etomidate to a higher risk of pneumonia (56% vs. 26%) in trauma patients. Although evidence is inconclusive, it may be prudent to consider other induction agents if they are available. While some practitioners have opted to give steroids for 24 to 48 hours after an etomidate-assisted intubation in order to compensate for the decreased adrenal function, small studies have failed to demonstrate any changes in patient outcomes with the use of adjunctive steroids.

**Sepsis**

Infection stimulates an inflammatory, coagulation, and immunologic response that works synergistically to either eliminate or control the infection and to repair associated tissue damage. If left unchecked or unregulated, however, these host defenses may themselves become counterproductive and lead to deterioration in organ function rather than to restoration of homeostasis. It is believed that in some cases of sepsis, it is overaggressive and protracted host defense, rather than the precipitating insult (e.g., pneumonia), that primarily determines outcome.

Infection also stimulates the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis, causing an increase in glucocorticoid release. Glucocorticoids exert a protective effect by restraining the host defense response at many levels, including suppression of cytokine production. Studies have shown that sepsis nonsurvivors exhibit a persistent and exaggerated increase in circulating inflammatory cytokine concentrations when compared with survivors. Research also suggests that cytokines can produce a concentration-dependent resistance to glucocorticoids in target tissues by reducing glucocorticoid receptor binding affinity for cortisol. Finally, inflammatory mediators (including cytokines) are also known to alter the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis and contribute directly to adrenal insufficiency.

Because of these associations, it was once thought that all patients with severe septic shock should be treated with exogenous steroids. Early treatment and studies used “high-dose” steroids (30 mg/kg methylprednisolone), but showed limited success; subsequent studies of “high-dose” steroids showed at first no improvement, and later, harm. The negative effects of glucocorticoid therapy included hyperglycemia, superinfection, muscular weakness, hypernatremia, upper gastrointestinal bleeding, psychosis, and poor wound healing.

More recently, studies have focused on the effect of “low-dose” steroids (e.g., 200 to 300 mg of hydrocortisone or equivalent). Patients considered for exogenous glucocorticoid therapy are those in septic shock who remain unstable after fluid and vasopressor therapy. The endpoints examined were earlier reversal of shock and effect on mortality. A representative study with “low-dose” steroids showed effect on the timing of shock reversal, but no effect at 28-day mortality. A 2002 landmark study separated patients with a normal corticotrophin stimulation (responders) from patients with an
abnormally low response (nonresponders). This study showed the 28-day mortality was decreased by corticosteroid therapy in the overall patient population (61% vs. 55%) and in the ACTH nonresponder group of patients (63% vs. 53%), with no increase in adverse events. This study led to the inclusion of steroid therapy in the Surviving Sepsis Campaign in 2004. An important follow-up trial in 2008 reopened the question of steroids in sepsis. This large study also separated septic shock patients into responders and nonresponders, but found no difference in nonresponders who received glucocorticoids from placebo (39% vs. 36%). Shock reversal did occur more quickly in the treated group (3.3 days vs. 5.8 days); however, no difference in mortality was proven, and the study showed an increase in hyperglycemia, hypernatremia, and superinfections in steroid-treated patients. Presently, the Surviving Sepsis Campaign 2012 guidelines recommend hydrocortisone at a dose of 200 mg per day for patients who remain hemodynamically unstable after adequate fluid and vasopressor therapy. An ACTH stimulation test is not a prerequisite for initiating steroid therapy (see below).

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

The diagnosis of adrenal insufficiency involves testing cortisol levels. In an unstressed patient, a single morning cortisol level can be sufficient. A level of <3 mcg/dL is diagnostic for adrenal insufficiency, a level of 4 to 10 mcg/dL is suggestive, and a level of >20 mcg/dL excludes the condition. However, as any form of stress increases cortisol levels, this metric is rarely helpful in the emergency or ICU setting. In septic patients, a random level of <10 mcg/dL has been used as an indicator of adrenal insufficiency, while a level of >33 mcg/dL makes the diagnosis unlikely. One study evaluated multiple approaches to diagnosing adrenal insufficiency in critically ill patients with septic shock and concluded that the standard 250 mcg cosyntropin (ACTH) stimulation test—with a result of ≤9 mcg/dL increase from baseline in total cortisol 60 minutes after administration—was the best predictor of decreased adrenal function. A “low-dose” 1 mcg cosyntropin (ACTH) stimulation test has also been in limited use; this more sensitive assay has been shown to be a better predictor of survival, but is not readily available and is not as widely accepted. The American College of Critical Care Medicine currently recommends that adrenal insufficiency in critically ill patients is best identified by an increase in serum cortisol level of <9 mcg/dL after a 250 mg ACTH stimulation test, or a random total cortisol level <10 mcg/dL. It also recommends that these tests be performed only in patients with suspected adrenal insufficiency. This means that not all septic shock patients who are put on steroids require testing.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

In the critical care setting, management of adrenal insufficiency focuses on treating concomitant stresses, resuscitating the patient, and giving glucocorticoids. Hydrocortisone is the glucocorticoid of choice, as it has both glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid activities; it also adequately treats associated electrolyte disturbances caused by mineralocorticoid deficiency that are seen in primary adrenal insufficiency. Fludrocortisone, a mineralocorticoid, has been studied and is not considered necessary to supplement in
the acute setting. Dexamethasone has been suggested for patients who may eventually need an ACTH stimulation test, as it does not interfere with cortisol levels; however, it is not indicated in critically ill patients, especially those with electrolyte disturbances, as it has no mineralocorticoid activity. In all patients receiving hydrocortisone, glucose should be monitored, as hyper- and hypoglycemic episodes are possible. Patients should also be monitored for hypernatremia, and hypertonic saline should generally be avoided.

In patients with acute adrenal crisis, treatment dose hydrocortisone is 50 to 100 mg IV q6h. Alternatively, a dose of hydrocortisone 50 to 100 mg followed by an infusion of 20 mg/hour has been used. Improvement is typically observed within 4 to 6 hours. In the setting of suspected adrenal insufficiency with concomitant septic shock, no standard dosing has been established; a common approach is to give hydrocortisone at a dose of either 200 to 300 mg per day or 50 mg q6h. This is often continued for 5 to 7 days with or without a taper. In patients who have a history of adrenal insufficiency who are undergoing an acute stress/procedure, a single dose of 100 mg IV of hydrocortisone has been recommended.

**CONCLUSION**

Adrenal insufficiency can be a devastating complication of critically illness and is an important entity to consider in the differential diagnosis of patients with persistent hypotension, shock, or sepsis. The use of steroids in sepsis should be strongly considered in patients with vasopressor refractory shock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Etomidate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chan et al., Crit Care Med. 2012&lt;sup&gt;15&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asehnoune et al., Intensive Care Med. 2012&lt;sup&gt;16&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sepsis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The VA Systemic Sepsis Cooperative Study Group. N Engl J Med. 1987&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annane et al., JAMA. 2002&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 43  Adrenal Insufficiency  567

LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sprung et al., N Engl J Med. 2008</td>
<td>RCT comparing hydrocortisone or placebo for 5 d and a 6-d taper in 499 patients separated into two groups by response to a standard 250 mcg ACTH stimulation test</td>
<td>No difference in survival or reversal of shock in patients with septic shock, either overall or in nonresponders. Hydrocortisone did hasten reversal of shock in patients in whom shock was reversed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fludrocortisone</td>
<td>The COIITSS Study Investigators. JAMA. 2010</td>
<td>RCT evaluating tight glycemic control and the addition of fludrocortisone in 500 septic shock patients treated with hydrocortisone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval.

REFERENCES

Thyrotoxicosis and myxedema coma are life-threatening syndromes representing the extremes of thyroid dysfunction. The rapid deterioration seen in these two conditions can result in significant morbidity and mortality if not promptly recognized. Delays in diagnosis and treatment are attributable in part to the nonspecific symptoms found in each condition. Success in management depends on developing a high level of suspicion for these disease processes, initiating early patient transfer to an intensive care setting, and delivering prompt targeted treatment.

**THYROTOXICOSIS**

Hyperthyroidism refers to any state of elevated production of thyroid hormone; thyrotoxicosis is defined as a pathologic process that results from excess hormone secretion. The overall prevalence of hyperthyroidism in the United States is approximately 1.3%. Only 0.5% of this population will demonstrate the symptoms of thyrotoxicosis. In the thyrotoxic population, 1% to 2% will progress to a severe, exaggerated, and life-threatening manifestation of thyrotoxicosis called thyrotoxic crisis or thyroid storm.

The point at which thyrotoxicosis becomes thyroid storm is controversial and somewhat subjective. Efforts to standardize a definition of thyroid storm include a scoring system that evaluates degrees of dysfunction in affected systems (thermoregulatory, cardiac, gastrointestinal, and neurologic). In clinical practice, patients presenting with symptoms of thyrotoxicosis should always be evaluated for impending thyroid storm (Table 44.1).

The most common cause of thyrotoxicosis is Graves disease, a condition in which autoantibodies bind to and stimulate thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) receptors on the surface of thyroid follicular cells, leading to unregulated release of the thyroid hormones triiodothyronine (T₃) and thyroxine (T₄). Graves disease occurs most commonly in adults 30 to 40 years of age and is associated with other autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, as well as with tobacco use, emotional stress, and infection with *Yersinia enterocolitica*. Studies in twins suggest that approximately 80% of susceptibility to Graves disease is driven by genetics. The second most common cause of thyrotoxicosis is excess hormone production by a thyroid nodule, either a solitary toxic adenoma or a toxic multinodular goiter (TMNG). The prevalence of TMNG is higher in women and increases with age.
### TABLE 44.1  Diagnostic Criteria for Thyroid Storm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic Parameters</th>
<th>Scoring System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thermoregulatory Dysfunction</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98–99.9</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–100.9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101–101.9</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102–102.9</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103–103.9</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥104</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central Nervous System effects</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild (agitation)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (delirium, psychosis, extreme lethargy)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (seizures, coma)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gastrointestinal-hepatic dysfunction</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (unexplained jaundice)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiovascular dysfunction</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachycardia (beats/min)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90–109</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110–119</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120–129</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130–139</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥140</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congestive heart failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild (pedal edema)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (bilateral rales)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (pulmonary edema)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atrial fibrillation</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Precipitating event</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scoring system: A score of 45 or greater is highly suggestive of thyroid storm; a score of 25–44 is suggestive of impending storm, and a score below 25 is unlikely to represent thyroid storm. Adapted from Burch HB, Wartofsky L. Life-threatening thyrotoxicosis. Thyroid storm. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am.* 1993;22(2):263–277.

The prevalence of both Graves disease and TMNG in a population is determined by dietary iodine content. In populations with adequate iodine intake, Graves disease represents nearly 80% of cases of thyrotoxicosis; in populations with inadequate iodine intake, the incidence of TMNG increases and can be responsible for half of all clinical cases. Approximately 10% of cases of thyrotoxicosis are linked to thyroid cell inflammation, or thyroiditis, triggers for which include radiation, drug side effects, and autoantibodies as seen with Hashimoto thyroiditis. Subacute thyroiditis, or de Quervain thyroiditis, is a transient hyperthyroid state associated with upper respiratory infections; it presents with...
Thyroid Storm and Myxedema Coma

571

neck swelling, malaise, and fatigue. Thyrotoxicosis can be seen in up to 50% of patients with de Quervain thyroiditis, and typically resolves within 8 months of the inciting illness.10 Postpartum thyroiditis—another cause of transient hyperthyroidism—affects 5% to 10% of women in the first 3 to 6 months after delivery.12 Finally, thyrotoxicosis can be attributed to exogenous thyroid hormone use in the treatment of hypothyroid disease.13,14

Of the numerous causes of thyrotoxicosis, Graves disease is the most common condition associated with thyroid storm.15 However, thyroid storm can result in any patient from excessive thyroid hormone release of any cause, including excessive iodine exposure from radiocontrast dye or iodine-containing drugs such as amiodarone.1 The only impetus required to induce thyroid storm from an otherwise stable thyrotoxic state is a stressful event, most commonly from infection or surgery.10 A recent study of Japanese hospitalized patients estimates the overall incidence of thyroid storm to be 0.2 per 100,000 patients per year; however, the true incidence remains unknown due to significant underdiagnosis.16

Physiology and Organ-Specific Effects

Pituitary-derived TSH induces the release of both T3 and T4.2 Both hormones regulate basal metabolism, but T3 is three to four times more potent than T4.3 TSH-induced release accounts for only 20% of circulating T3; the remainder occurs through peripheral conversion of T4 to T3 by the liver and kidney.5,17 The excess circulating thyroid hormone in a thyrotoxic state can produce a range of detrimental systemic effects, the degree and extent of which determine the presence of thyroid storm (Table 44.1).

Excess thyroid hormone activity produces an adrenergic state characterized by tachycardia, nervousness, and anxiety.15 This increase in metabolic activity can manifest as heat intolerance, increased perspiration, and lipolysis, eventually leading to as much as a 15% loss of basal body weight.7

Cardiovascular manifestations can include tachycardia and other atrial and ventricular arrhythmias, as well as systolic hypertension and widening of pulse pressure.18 New-onset dilated cardiomyopathy and congestive heart failure have also been reported in previously healthy patients with thyrotoxicosis.1 These hyperadrenergic effects can lead to increased myocardial oxygen demand and/or coronary artery vasospasm, producing angina and even myocardial infarctions. The thyrotoxic state may also have metabolic consequences, such as acidemia resulting from lipolysis and ketogenesis and tissue acidosis from mismatch between oxygen demand and supply.1

Respiratory signs include dyspnea and orthopnea from respiratory muscle weakness, high output cardiac failure, and engorgement of the pulmonary vasculature.15 A more common finding, however, is tachypnea at rest, which can herald impending respiratory fatigue and collapse.1,7 Higher respiratory demand may be the result of either adrenergic stimulation or compensation for acidemia.1

Gastrointestinal symptoms include hypermotility, which can lead to diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting.1 Concomitant loss of fluid can exacerbate postural hypotension and vascular collapse and can precipitate a state of shock.1 Impairment of neurologic regulation of gastric and intestinal activity can lead to gastroparesis and/or pseudo-obstruction.7

Hematologic changes include hypercoagulability, leukocytosis, and anemia. Hypercoagulability results from higher concentrations of fibrinogen, factors VIII and IX,
plasminogen activator inhibitor 1, and von Willebrand factor. Moderate leukocytosis with a left shift is common, and approximately 22% of patients will suffer from symptomatic anemia. There is also an increase in red blood cell mass secondary to increased erythropoietin levels and an augmentation of platelet plug formation. Thromboembolic complications are responsible for 18% of thyrotoxicosis–related deaths.

Thyrotoxic periodic paralysis (TPP) is an unusual complication of thyrotoxicosis seen in only 0.1% to 0.2% of thyrotoxic patients, with increased incidence in Asians (1.8% to 2.0%) and males (20:1). TPP is characterized by transient but recurrent flaccid paralysis of the proximal extremities, decreased deep tendon reflexes, and cardiac conduction abnormalities including atroventricular blocks and asystole. The specific distribution of muscular findings in TPP contrasts with the generalized myopathy affecting approximately 50% of thyrotoxic patients, where fatigability and global weakness are the main findings. Proximal muscle weakness can also be characteristic of a thyrotoxic state, but to a lesser degree than with TPP.

**History and Physical Exam**

Thyroid storm occurs most frequently in patients with either undiagnosed or poorly controlled thyrotoxicosis who are exposed to a systemic insult or stress. Infection is the most common inciting event; however, case reports have implicated nearly all known forms of physiologic stress. Regardless of the inciting event, untreated thyroid storm is uniformly fatal; even with appropriate treatment, the mortality rate is nearly 50%. The significant morbidity and mortality result from serial decompensation of multiple organ systems.

The four principle findings of thyroid storm are (1) fever out of proportion to infection accompanied by significant diaphoresis, (2) sinus tachycardia or supraventricular arrhythmia (paroxysmal atrial tachycardia or atrial flutter or atrial fibrillation) leading to congestive heart failure, (3) gastrointestinal symptoms (vomiting, diarrhea, or bowel obstruction), and (4) central nervous system symptoms (agitation, restlessness, confusion, delirium or coma). The diagnosis is made clinically, as laboratory tests and imaging are not specific.

On examination, the thyroid gland will be enlarged and, depending on the etiology of thyrotoxicosis, may contain nodules; additionally, a bruit may be present because of increased thyroid vascularity. The skin will be warm, moist, and velvety, with softening of the hair and nails often leading to nail bed separation (onycholysis) and alopecia. Significant hyperpigmentation and raised, asymmetric lesions of the skin may be present. These plaques are often located on the lower extremities and accompanied by significant pretibial myxedema. Hands and feet are frequently swollen and may be accompanied by clubbing. In Graves disease, ophthalmopathy may be observed (lid lag, lid retraction, and proptosis) leading to burning and irritation with blurring of the vision and diplopia. Difficulty with eye closure can lead to corneal ulceration or vision loss unless properly treated. Impairment of mental status, including psychosis and delirium, may also be observed. Patients may appear restless and complain of heat intolerance, palpitations, anxiety, and fatigue and may demonstrate a fine, rapid tremor at rest. Finally, patients may report weight loss despite a significant appetite (Table 44.2).
Laboratory Testing and Imaging

Emergency department (ED) laboratory testing for suspected thyrotoxicosis should include a TSH level and a free T4. TSH levels will often be undetectable (<0.01 microIU/L) due to negative feedback from excess thyroid hormone. The TSH assay is reported in a logarithmic scale, such that a small change in T4 levels can lead to a larger change in measured TSH; thus, the assay has a high sensitivity to thyroid hormone excess. If thyrotoxicosis is suspected, testing both TSH and free serum T4 improves diagnostic accuracy by allowing confirmation that the drop in TSH is due to thyroid dysfunction and not due to indirect causes (e.g., glucocorticoid or dopamine use). A rise in T4 is seen in 95% of patients suffering from thyrotoxicosis, with the remaining 5% experiencing an increased free T3 and normal T4 levels. This latter pattern can develop in early Graves disease or TMNG; thus, experts recommend checking free T3 levels to increase sensitivity if thyrotoxicosis figures prominently on the differential diagnosis. The ratio of free T3 to T4 helps distinguish increased and decreased thyroid gland metabolism. Patients with Graves disease or TMNG will have an increased ratio of free T3/T4 (>20); by contrast, patients with thyroiditis will have a decreased ratio (<20).
for total T₃ or T₄ is no longer recommended as liver disease, exogenous hormone use, or pregnancy can cause unreliable protein binding of free thyroid hormones (Fig. 44.1). Other laboratory abnormalities may include an initial hyperglycemia, mediated by increased glycogenolysis and an increase in insulin clearance; profound hypoglycemia can subsequently result from this depletion of glycogen stores. Hepatic dysfunction can lead to accumulation of lactate dehydrogenase, aspartate aminotransferase, and bilirubin. Acidemia may occur due to lipolysis and dehydration ketosis. Hypercalcemia, the result of hemocoagulation from fluid shifts and an increase in bone resorption, is also common. This increase in osteoblastic bone activity can also lead to elevations in alkaline phosphatase.

Prevention of thyroid storm is dependent on early detection of thyrotoxicosis. While thyroid storm is a clinical diagnosis, thyrotoxicosis is confirmed when laboratory findings corroborate suspicion developed from the history and physical exam. While the trigger of a patient’s thyroid storm (e.g., infection) may not be evident initially, clinical stabilization should proceed at the same time as the diagnostic evaluation. Testing for thyroid receptor antibody levels is rarely needed for evaluation of thyrotoxicosis; however, in the pregnant patient, who cannot undergo radionucleotide scanning, the level can help distinguish between Graves disease and gestational thyrotoxicosis. Additionally, maternal TSH can cross the placental barrier and have a direct effect on the fetus; it is therefore recommended that TSH levels be drawn between 22 and 26 weeks of gestation in order to determine need for aggressive neonatal monitoring. Finally, 10% of patients with proptosis will be diagnosed with Graves disease by antibody levels alone, as TSH and T₄ may not be abnormal.

Radionuclide testing and ultrasound can help differentiate between thyrotoxicosis caused by hyperthyroidism (i.e., Graves disease or TMNG) and thyrotoxicosis not caused by hyperthyroidism (i.e., thyroiditis or ingestion of exogenous thyroid hormone).\textsuperscript{3,15} Radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU) uses either technetium-99m (Tc 99m) or radioiodine\textsuperscript{29} to assess the activity of the sodium/iodide symporter on the thyroid gland.\textsuperscript{17} Each molecule has advantages in testing: radiiodine is incorporated into hormone production and is thought to be more reflective of true physiology, while Tc 99m requires less acquisition time for similar results—but at the cost of an increased exposure to radiation.\textsuperscript{10} Uptake measurements are taken at 4 hours and 24 hours after administration.\textsuperscript{29} The pattern of uptake reflects the cause of thyrotoxicosis and helps narrow the differential diagnosis.\textsuperscript{3} With ultrasonography, an increase in thyroid total area blood flow (calculated as thyroid artery blood flow/glandular area) of 4\% to 8\% can differentiate Graves disease from destructive thyroiditis with sensitivity and specificity of 84\% and 90\%, respectively.\textsuperscript{10} This diagnostic approach is operator dependent but is a viable option for patients who cannot tolerate radioactive screening, such as those who are pregnant or breast-feeding.\textsuperscript{22}

**Differential Diagnosis**

Thyroid storm should be suspected in patients with mental status changes, hyperadrenergic state, and any of the systemic manifestations noted above.\textsuperscript{8} The differential diagnosis includes generalized infections and sepsis, anxiety, depression, pheochromocytoma, atrial fibrillation/flutter, chronic fatigue syndrome, Plummer-Vinson syndrome, as well as various malignancies.\textsuperscript{2,8,11,18} Use of methamphetamine, cocaine, or other nutritional supplements can confuse the clinical picture and should be excluded.\textsuperscript{30} In most cases, thyroid testing will help narrow the differential; however, certain medical conditions, such as euthyroid sick syndrome, pregnancy, and hyperemesis gravidarum, will lower TSH levels and affect T\textsubscript{4} assays.\textsuperscript{2,7,22} Additionally, the use of glucocorticoids, dopamine, and heparin will lower the TSH level and can confound the diagnosis.\textsuperscript{22}

**Management Guidelines**

Treatment of thyrotoxicosis in the acute care setting focuses on attenuating the hyperadrenergic state, controlling the production and release of thyroid hormone, inhibiting peripheral conversion of T\textsubscript{4} to T\textsubscript{3}, and treating the precipitating cause.\textsuperscript{12,27} Definitive therapy is achieved with radioactive iodine or surgery (e.g., subtotal thyroidectomy).

Beta-blockers are the primary agents used to attenuate the cardiovascular complications of thyrotoxicosis; propranolol is a first-line agent because of its additional ability to reduce peripheral conversion of T\textsubscript{4} to T\textsubscript{3}.\textsuperscript{8} The application of adrenergic blockage leads to an improvement in heart rate and cardiac output and a decrease in cardiac oxygen consumption.\textsuperscript{27} In patients with preexisting heart failure, because of the concern for abrupt clinical deterioration, continuous cardiac monitoring and, in some cases, a screening echocardiography are required prior to initiation of beta-blocker therapy.\textsuperscript{31} When beta-blockers are used in patients with a history of obstructive lung disease, including asthma and COPD, there exists an additional risk of reactive airway disease exacerbation.\textsuperscript{15} In these patients, a beta–1–selective agent, such as metoprolol or esmolol, is a reasonable alternative to propranolol. Amiodarone should always be avoided as an antidyssrhythmic because of its iodine content.
Thionamides have been successfully used for over 70 years to decrease circulating hormone levels. Propylthiouracil (PTU) and methimazole (MMI) are available in the United States, while Carbimazole (CBZ, metabolized peripherally to MMI) is available in Europe and Asia. All three agents inhibit the intrathyroid hormone synthesis and have high oral bioavailability, leading to effects within 1 to 2 hours of ingestion. PTU has the added effect of inhibiting peripheral conversion of $T_4$ to $T_3$, reducing the concentration of the active hormone. MMI has the advantage of allowing once-daily dosing, which improves compliance, and is 10 to 12 times more potent than PTU, leading to more rapid normalization of thyroid function. All three agents also have an immunomodulatory effect and decrease both natural killer and T-cell substrates and autoantibodies, which may be relevant in patients with Graves disease.

Several randomized trials have examined the efficacy of differing doses of and combinations of these treatments. In one RCT that assessed the treatment efficacy of 10 versus 40 mg of MMI in patients with Graves disease, both groups achieved acceptable levels of euthyroidism within 6 weeks (85% and 92%, respectively), but the higher dose was associated with an increased rate of complications (25% vs. 15.5%). In another RCT of patients with newly diagnosed Graves disease, the clinical efficacy of 15 mg and 30 mg MMI versus 300 mg PTU was assessed over a period of 12 months. For mild or moderate disease ($\text{Free T}_4 (FT_4) < 7 \text{ ng/dL}$), efficacy was the same in all three groups. For severe disease ($\text{FT}_4 > 7 \text{ ng/dL}$), MMI 30 mg was more efficacious than PTU or lower-dose MMI.

Side effects of PTU and MMI occur in 14% to 52% of patients; they are dose dependent, usually limited to fever, rash, urticaria, and arthralgias, and are typically resolved by switching from one agent to the other. One severe side effect, agranulocytosis, affects 0.5% of patients treated with any of the three medications and requires immediate cessation of all thionamides. This complication usually occurs within the first 3 months of treatment, and patients are advised to monitor for oropharyngeal infections commonly associated with this development. Other, less common side effects, including hepatotoxicity and anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-mediated vasculitis, also require the cessation of thionamides. For these reasons, thionamides are used as primary treatment of thyrotoxicosis only in select populations in whom surgical resection or radiation therapy is undesirable: young patients with mild to moderate illness; patients with only a slight increase in glandular volume; pediatric or adolescent patients; and pregnant or breastfeeding patients. Otherwise, these agents are primarily used as the initial medical therapy for patients awaiting definitive treatment with radioactive iodine or surgical resection. Patients with TMNG benefit greatly from premedication (prior to RAIU or surgery) with thionamides because any delay in treatment leads to high rates of relapse. Caution should be taken with continued use of MMI or PTU in the week prior to radioiodine therapy as either medication can decrease the iodine uptake into the thyroid gland and lead to treatment failure. This decreased in iodine uptake, however, exerts a small protective effect against long-term hypothyroidism by minimizing damage to healthy thyroid tissue.

For those patients unable to tolerate the thionamides, lithium is an alternative agent that blocks thyroid hormone release. Lithium is taken up by the thyroid gland in a manner similar to iodine; however, its effects are transient, and the value of long-term use is undefined. Other medications are available for short-term symptomatic relief. Glucocorticoids may be used to inhibit the peripheral conversion of $T_4$ to $T_3$ and are useful in cases...
Thyroid Storm and Myxedema Coma

associated with secondary adrenal insufficiency. Graves ophthalmopathy is also improved with long-term (6 to 8 weeks) treatment with glucocorticoids. Cholestyramine is an anion-exchange resin that binds thyroid hormones in the enterohepatic circulation and can increase their fecal excretion. Potassium perchlorate, a competitive inhibitor of iodine transport into the thyroid, is used in patients with iodine-induced thyrotoxicosis. In extreme cases, peritoneal dialysis, plasma exchange, or hemodialysis can be utilized to abruptly lower thyroid hormone concentrations.

Essential supportive care includes antipyretics, cooling, and correction of intravascular fluid deficits. For fever, acetaminophen is the medication of choice, as salicylates decrease thyroid-binding protein and increase free thyroid levels. To avoid Wernicke encephalopathy, a condition associated with thyrotoxicosis, thiamine should be given along with a general multivitamin. Treatment of infection, myocardial injury, and other stressors should proceed according to best practices.

Special Populations

The Pregnant Patient

One in 500 pregnancies is complicated by Graves disease, which can lead to significant morbidity including miscarriage, premature labor, low birth weight, and eclampsia. Pregnant patients presenting with >5% weight loss, goiter, ophthalmopathy, or onycholysis will require a thorough evaluation for Graves disease. Normal hormonal changes in pregnancy can make diagnosis challenging: increased thyroid-binding globulin production will lower free $T_4$ levels; and human chorionic gonadotropin will lower TSH production in the first trimester. In addition, several classic signs of thyrotoxicosis may be present in normal pregnancy, including a widened pulse pressure and heat intolerance. Treatment of pregnant patients is difficult, as both PTU and MMI cross the placenta and can cause fetal hypothyroidism and goiter. Of the two, PTU is a better choice; it is more protein bound, slightly reducing its ability enter the fetal circulation and does not carry the same increased risk that MMI does of causing fetal cutis aplasia and gastrointestinal atresia. Treatment aims to use the lowest effective dose of PTU to keep $T_4$ levels in a high-normal to slightly thyrotoxic range. The level of thyrotoxicosis can wane during pregnancy, and up to 30% of women discontinue use of thionamides in the third trimester. Thyroidectomy is reserved for the second-trimester or for severely decompensated patients, as there is an increased risk of miscarriage. In women with previous thyroid dysfunction, 10% will experience thyrotoxicosis in the postpartum period. Additionally, 80% of women whose pregnancies are complicated by Graves disease will have a relapse in future pregnancies, with 50% developing permanent thyrotoxicosis.

The Elderly

Thyrotoxicosis in the elderly is difficult to diagnose because suggestive symptoms, such as hyperkinesis and ophthalmopathy, are often lacking, and because clinical manifestation is often limited to a single organ system (e.g., heart failure or atrial fibrillation). Up to 70% of elderly patients with thyrotoxicosis demonstrate no clinical signs or symptoms of a goiter and may even have depressive signs, such as apathy and fatigue. This genre of clinical symptoms is termed "apathetic hyperthyroidism" and is often diagnosed after a lengthy workup for cardiotonic-resistant cardiovascular disease.
Amiodarone

Amiodarone, an iodine-containing antiarrhythmic agent, will induce thyrotoxicosis in approximately 6% to 10% of patients.3 This condition doubles the adverse cardiac effects of the drug and can lead to even worse outcomes in patients with preexisting thyroid disease.37 Diagnosis is similar to other forms of thyrotoxicosis; however, conditions such as atrial and ventricular arrhythmias, for which the patient would normally take amiodarone, need to be carefully differentiated from thyroid hormone excess.1 There are two types of amiodarone-related thyroid disease.38 Type 1 is an iodine-induced thyrotoxicosis that occurs in individuals with preexisting nodules or autoimmune thyroid disease. Type 2 is an amiodarone-induced destruction of the thyroid gland itself.3 Type 1 is treated with thionamides and potassium perchlorate.11,37 Glucocorticoids are the preferred medication for type 2 and often lead to complete resolution.10 Since the subtype is not always apparent, experts recommend a combination of the three drugs for 6 to 12 months; ongoing consultation by cardiology and endocrinology is recommended because of the long half-life of amiodarone and the complex disease states that it treats.37

MYXEDEMA COMA

Hypothyroidism affects approximately 4.6% of the US population and is characterized by a generalized slowing of the body’s metabolic processes leading to an overall depression of both physical and mental activity.39 Myxedema coma is a rare complication of untreated hypothyroidism and describes a state of severely decompensated hypothyroidism in which the body cannot maintain thermal energetic homeostasis.40 Hypothyroidism is four times more common in women than in men, and 80% of all reported cases of myxedema coma occur in females, a majority over the age of 60.40 Hallmarks of laboratory diagnosis are severely depressed levels of T4 and T3 and an elevation in TSH41; however, lab values correlate poorly with the severity of the clinical disease.42 In the past, their poor predictive value contributed to delays in diagnosis and a mortality rate of 60% to 70%.41 More recently, advances in physician education have resulted in earlier recognition of this disease and an improved patient mortality rate of 20% to 25%.31,41 A recent review of risk factors showed higher mortality rates associated with advanced age, hemodynamic instability, severe bradycardia, respiratory failure (requiring intubation), hypothermia, sepsis, depressed Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), and an elevation in TSH41; however, lab values correlate poorly with the severity of the clinical disease.42 In the past, their poor predictive value contributed to delays in diagnosis and a mortality rate of 60% to 70%.41 More recently, advances in physician education have resulted in earlier recognition of this disease and an improved patient mortality rate of 20% to 25%.31,41 A recent review of risk factors showed higher mortality rates associated with advanced age, hemodynamic instability, severe bradycardia, respiratory failure (requiring intubation), hypothermia, sepsis, depressed Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), and a higher APACHE II score.43 This same study also showed that the sequential organ failure assessment (SOFA) score offered the most effective prediction model, with baseline and 3-day SOFA scores of 6 or greater predicting mortality with a sensitivity and specificity of 91.7% and 100%, respectively.

Myxedema coma is most commonly precipitated by a significant systemic stressor in the undiagnosed or poorly managed hypothyroid patient. Infection—notably pneumonia, urinary tract infection, and cellulitis—is the most common trigger.4 Hypothermia during the winter months is also thought to be responsible for a large number of cases.44 The seasonal pattern is explained by an age-related loss of temperature regulation coupled with the depressed heat production common to hypothyroidism.1 Other triggers of myxedema coma include cerebrovascular accidents, congestive heart failure, gastrointestinal bleeds, the use of centrally acting depressants such as sedatives and lithium, or the abrupt discontinuation of thyroid supplements in critically ill patients.14,26,45 A recent
report detailed the development of myxedema crisis following the consumption of raw bok choy, which contains cyanates, nitriles, and oxazolidines that inhibit iodine uptake in the thyroid.46

**Physiology and Organ-Specific Effects**

Thyroid hormones affect the metabolism and development of nearly every cell in the body.11 In hypothyroidism, there is both an inadequate production of thyroid hormones and decreased peripheral conversion of T₄ to the active hormone T₃.47 Patients suffering from hypothyroidism rely upon both arms of the autonomic nervous system to maintain circulatory homeostasis and a normal core temperature.39,48 Any further reduction in intravascular volume (dehydration, blood loss), compromise to ventilation (infection), or insult to the central nervous system (drugs) can overwhelm these mechanisms and lead to myxedema coma.40

Clinically, patients will demonstrate global depressed physiologic function manifested as hypothermia, bradycardia, hypertension, respiratory acidosis, and depressed mental status leading to a comatose state.44 Respiratory failure results from decreased central nervous system sensitivity to hypoxia and hypercarbia, as well as airway problems from macroglossia, respiratory muscle weakness, and nonpitting edema (myxedema) of the nasopharynx.41 Altered vascular permeability leads to effusions and ascites; renal injury leads to water retention and hyponatremia; and depressed inotropy and chronotropy lead to intractable cardiogenic collapse.41

**History and Physical Exam**

Myxedema coma can be difficult to distinguish from other life-threatening conditions, such as heart failure, hypothermia, or respiratory dysfunction, that present with similar manifestations.42 Even more difficult is recognizing this disease in an unstable, altered, or septic patient.41 Providers must maintain a high clinical suspicion, guided by a detailed patient history noting any previous use of thyroid hormones or recent discontinuation of thyroid supplements, to make the diagnosis.1

The physical exam should focus on identifying the classic features of hypothyroidism: dry skin, brittle nails, hair loss, delayed tendon reflexes, and goiter.49 Additionally, mucin deposits can lead to swelling of the hands, ptosis, periorbital edema, macroglossia, laryngeal edema, and other nondependent sites of nonpitting edema.44,48 In patients with hypothyroidism due to prior treatment for Graves disease, a subtle clue is the presence of Graves orbitopathy, which does not resolve with treatment of the thyrotoxic state and can signal that the patient has previously received thyroid depressant treatments.41 Providers should also look for signs of prior thyroid surgery, such as a midline incision in the anterior neck or documentation of a previous radioactive iodine ablation.44

A comatose state is not required for the diagnosis of myxedema coma, but all patients will demonstrate some degree of central nervous system depression, including diminished cognition, lethargy, and somnolence.3 This alteration of mental status may be worsened by the presence of concomitant hyponatremia, an electrolyte abnormality common in severe hypothyroidism.41 The pathogenesis of the depressed neurologic function is thought to be related to a depressed respiratory drive leading to hypercarbia; a decrease in cerebral blood flow; and decreased brain glucose utilization coupled with an overall hypoglycemic state.48 The depressed cerebral function, hyponatremia,
hypoglycemia, hypoxemia, and reduced cerebral blood flow can combine to result in generalized seizures that, without early intervention and treatment, can progress to status epilepticus, further clouding the clinical picture.41,44

A decreased physiologic response to hypoxia and hypercarbia results in alveolar hypoventilation in patients with previously healthy lung tissue.4 Studies have shown that both myxedema coma and brief hypothyroid states produce a depressed hypoxic ventilatory drive that reverses with thyroid hormone replacement; however, the hypercapnic respiratory depression is not affected.41 Associated hypothermia, obesity hypoventilation syndrome, and macroglossia often contribute to the need for ventilator support.44 Due to the severity of respiratory failure in myxedema coma—even following the initiation of appropriate treatment with levothyroxine—a 3- to 6-month period of mechanical ventilation may be required.41

Effects of a decompensated hypothyroid state on the cardiovascular system include bradycardia, hypertension, and narrowing of the pulse pressure.41 Common electrocardiogram findings include sinus bradycardia, complete heart blocks, QT prolongation, and nonspecific ST-segment changes.4 An early echocardiogram is recommended to evaluate for pericardial effusions.44 Despite an overall reduction in cardiac function, overt heart failure in myxedema coma is uncommon.41 In extreme cases of decompensated hypothyroidism, dilated cardiomyopathy and associated left ventricular failure may develop.41 Fortunately, improvement in both cardiac output and ejection fraction is seen with prompt initiation of thyroxine therapy.48

Gastrointestinal dysmotility can lead to constipation and, without treatment, can progress to paralytic ileus.42 The associated abdominal pain, nausea, and anorexia can mimic the appearance of a surgical abdomen.4 This devastating complication can lead to unnecessary exploratory surgery, worsening physiologic stress and precipitating further decompensation of the myxedema coma state (Table 44.3).41

**Laboratory Testing and Imaging**

ED laboratory testing in patients with suspected decompensated hypothyroidism should include a TSH level and a free T4. In early hypothyroid disease, when production of T3 is decreased, the peripheral conversion of T4 to T3 increases in an attempt to maintain physiologic levels.48 T3 and T4 are bound in the peripheral circulation by proteins, including the high-affinity thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG) and lower-affinity but more abundant albumin.2 Only the free hormone is able to bind to receptors and create biologic activity.39 In a nondiseased state, approximately 0.03% of T4 and 0.5% of T3 are unbound.48 A clinical picture consistent with hypothyroid disease coupled with low T4 levels (T3 is rarely measured directly) typically confirms the diagnosis.26 However, changes either in the quantity or in the affinity of available binding proteins can effect a pseudonormalization of thyroid hormone levels, clouding the diagnosis.48 Notably, certain infections, such as hepatitis and HIV, or any increase in estrogen (e.g., pregnancy), will result in an increase in TBG and can mimic the diagnostic criteria for hypothyroidism.2

Elevated TSH is a very specific marker of a hypothyroid state.14 However, TSH levels can be poorly sensitive for hypothyroid disease resulting from secondary or tertiary causes, also known as central hypothyroidism.49 In this state, hypothalamic–pituitary–thyroid (HPT) axis dysfunction leads to a decrease in the production of thyrotropin–releasing hormone and thus in serum TSH.48 The most common culprit is direct
damage to the pituitary gland (e.g., pituitary adenoma), although systemic diseases, including sarcoidosis and hemochromatosis may also damage the HPT axis. Central hypothyroidism accounts for approximately 5% of myxedema coma cases and may present with normal or even low levels of TSH. The use of corticosteroids and vasopressors such as dopamine can also result in decreased TSH secretion.

Other laboratory abnormalities commonly seen in hypothyroid disease include a marked reduction in the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), which occurs because of decreased renal plasma flow and increased vascular resistance in both the afferent and efferent arterioles. Reduced GFR results in creatinine elevation and an increased risk of hyponatremia. This is thought to be due to the loss of the aldosterone-like effect that T3 and T4 have on the Na–K channels of proximal tubular cells, leading to increase in sodium excretion. Renal dysfunction also results in impaired free water clearance and the development of myxedema. Thyroxine replacement has been shown to successfully reverse changes in renal function.

Decreased lipid clearance may also be present, leading to hypercholesterolemia and hypertriglyceridemia. Normocytic anemia may develop due to decreased oxygen requirements and decreased levels of erythropoietin, while alteration to von Willebrand factor

### TABLE 44.3 Clinical Manifestations of Myxedema Coma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ System</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuropsychiatric</td>
<td>Altered mental status</td>
<td>Confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delayed reflex relaxation</td>
<td>Lethargy and somnolence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Depression and psychosis</td>
<td>Coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myalgias</td>
<td>Weight gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weakness</td>
<td>Fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Memory impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular</td>
<td>Pericardial effusion</td>
<td>Hypodynamic precordium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiogenic shock</td>
<td>Bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Congestive heart failure (late)</td>
<td>Elevated diastolic pressure (early)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hypotension (late)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
<td>Pleural effusion</td>
<td>Hyperventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Myxedema of larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Decreased motility</td>
<td>Abdominal distension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paralytic ileus</td>
<td>Fecal impaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myxedema megacolon (late)</td>
<td>Constipation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ascites</td>
<td>Anorexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurogenic oropharyngeal dysphagia</td>
<td>Nausea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitourinary</td>
<td>Bladder dystonia and distension</td>
<td>Anasarca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Menorrhagia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophthalmologic</td>
<td>Ptosis</td>
<td>Diplopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periorbital edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatologic</td>
<td>Alopecia</td>
<td>Dry, cool, doughy skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Generalized swelling</td>
<td>Macroglossia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brittle nails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coarse, sparse hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nonpitting edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrine</td>
<td>Hypothermia</td>
<td>Cold intolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thyroid enlargement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Notes:**
- Table 44.3 lists the clinical manifestations of myxedema coma, categorized by organ system.
- The symptoms, signs, and laboratory abnormalities associated with myxedema coma are detailed in the table.
synthesis, caused by low thyroxine levels, can result in coagulopathies, including prolonged bleeding and clotting times, decreased platelet adhesiveness, and prolongation of aPTT. Elevations of creatinine phosphokinase, lactate dehydrogenase, and aspartate transaminase may also be seen, as can hypoglycemia due to decreased gluconeogenesis (Fig. 44.2).

**Differential Diagnosis**
Myxedema coma has no classic presentation and will often present simply as a patient with depressed mental status and hemodynamic instability. A broad differential is required on initial presentation, as adrenal insufficiency, congestive heart failure, hepatic encephalopathy, hypothermia, and septic shock can present in similar fashion. The neurologic manifestations of myxedema coma can also be caused by a cerebrovascular accident, status epilepticus, or meningitis.

**Management Guidelines**
Patients with myxedema coma require prompt admission to an intensive care unit (ICU) and aggressive hemodynamic support. Due to the mortality risks associated with delays in treatment, therapy should begin prior to laboratory confirmation. A three-tiered treatment plan is recommended: early initiation of thyroid replacement, correction of organ-specific dysfunction, and management of the inciting event (most commonly infection or hypothermia).

---

**Laboratory Evaluation of Myxedema Coma**

![Diagram of Laboratory Evaluation of Myxedema Coma]

Expert consensus is that early thyroid hormone replacement is vital for recovery in uncompensated myxedema coma, but a paucity of clinical trials and a lack of randomized controlled studies have yet to yield censuses on proper timing or dosing. Timely implementation of therapy should be balanced with close monitoring for the fatal arrhythmias and myocardial ischemia associated with increased oxygen demand from T₃ and T₄ replacement. Continuous hemodynamic monitoring is mandatory, as is early cessation of treatment at any signs of instability.

Replacement agents include levothyroxine (LT₄) or liothyronine (LT₃). Parental administration of LT₄ is preferred because unpredictable gastric absorption is common in myxedema coma. Compared to LT₃, LT₄ results in fewer cardiac complications; however, LT₄ requires activation via peripheral 5'-deiodination, a process that can become depressed in severely decompensated patients. Additionally, LT₄ is not well transported across the blood–brain barrier, resulting in slower resolution of neurologic symptoms. Therefore, in the case of a critically ill patient who may have depressed 5'-deiodination, LT₃ is preferred for its immediate bioactivity, faster therapeutic effect, and blood–brain barrier penetration. Note, however, that LT₃ increases risk of cardiac abnormalities, including ischemia and lethal arrhythmias, which are heightened in the setting of concomitant vasopressor therapy.

Some authors have advocated for the use of both agents, combining the quick onset and increased bioavailability of LT₃ with the relative cardiovascular stability associated with LT₄. This combination permits lower doses than those would be used in solo therapy, often beginning with intravenous LT₃ and LT₄ and transitioning to oral LT₄ for long-term therapy. Rates of cardiovascular complication are higher with parenteral delivery of either agent, so a prompt transition to oral dosing is advocated once the patient achieves clinical stability.

Controversy over the optimal therapeutic strategy persists, especially regarding dosing. Regardless of therapy used, restoration of hemodynamic stability typically occurs within 24 hours and of thermoregulation within 2 to 3 days. Respiratory dysfunction and kidney injury may take weeks to months to fully resolve. A decline in TSH serves as a marker of clinical recovery and helps to guide further therapy.

Supportive treatment of the patient with myxedema coma can include mechanical ventilation for correction of hypercarbia and support of diaphragmatic weakness; early broad-spectrum antibiotics; aggressive fluid resuscitation; and correction of associated electrolyte disorders (e.g., hyponatremia and hypoglycemia). Care must be taken with treatment of hypothermia, as rapid rewarming can cause peripheral vasodilation and worsening hypotension. Because thyroid hormone therapy results in increased cortisol clearance, all patients treated with LT₃ and LT₄ should be maintained on hydrocortisone until clinically stable. Moreover, the clinical features of myxedema coma and adrenal insufficiency may overlap; if an appropriate response to thyroid hormone therapy is not observed, the provider should assess for, and if present, treat, coexisting adrenal insufficiency. Hypotension typically resolves with initiation of thyroid hormone replacement; low-dose vasopressors may be added for additional support.

Special Populations

A rare complication of Hashimoto thyroiditis is Hashimoto encephalopathy. This disease presents as subacute or acute encephalopathy with seizures, stroke-like episodes, myoclonus, and tremor similar to myxedema coma. Lab testing will reveal elevations
in thyroid-specific antibodies, elevated cerebrospinal fluid protein without pleocytosis, and an abnormal electroencephalogram. The patient, however, is in a euthyroid state, and steroids are a first-line treatment.

**CONCLUSION**

Thyroid storm and myxedema coma are disease processes representing the extremes of thyroid dysfunction. Nonspecific presentations and extremely high mortality rates make early recognition essential. With early clinical suspicion, prompt laboratory evaluation, and early administration of multifaceted therapies, the morbidity and mortality for both pathologic processes can be lessened substantially. Aggressive hemodynamic and respiratory support in the ED, coupled with referral to an intensive care setting, is imperative to assure successful treatment outcome.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thyroid Storm</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollowell et al., J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burch et al., Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am. 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinwein et al., J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nakamura et al., J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walter et al., BMJ. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Myxedema Coma</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutta et al., Crit Care. 2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RR, relative risk.
REFERENCES


BACKGROUND
Numerous therapeutic options exist for medical management of dysrhythmia, heart failure, and hypertension. In 2011, more than 42.4 million patients received therapy for hypertension alone, and prescriptions for ACE inhibitors, beta-adrenergic antagonists (BAAs), calcium channel antagonists/”blockers” (CCBs), and angiotensin II inhibitors (alone or in combination) exceeded 509 million. Cardiotoxicity may occur in this setting due to intentional overdose, unintentional therapeutic misadventure, or interaction with other medications.

Cardiotoxicity may also result from noncardiovascular medications with associated sodium or potassium channel antagonism or muscarinic effects; from a variety of systemic pharmaceuticals; and from natural, occupational, or environmental exposures. In the pediatric population, there is risk of unintentional exposure to caregivers’ medication or when visiting other households. More than 90,000 incidents involving cardiovascular drugs are reported to poison control centers each year—5.7% and 2.2% of adult and pediatric exposure calls, respectively—accounting for a disproportionate 11% of fatalities. This chapter offers a guide to the diagnostic evaluation and treatment of the cardiotoxins most commonly encountered in the emergency department (ED), namely CCBs, BAAs, cardiac glycosides, and renin–angiotensin system antagonists (RASAs).

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM
The initial presentation of the cardiotoxic patient may range from asymptomatic to critically ill. Although not always available or reliable, information regarding details of the exposure (agent, intent, dose, formulation, and coingestants), as well as patient-specific factors (age, comorbidities, unique susceptibilities, etc.), should be sought. An appropriate history will consider pertinent cardiovascular symptoms (chest pain, dyspnea, palpitations, etc.) and their onset, as well as any symptoms attributable to other relevant organ systems (central nervous system [CNS], pulmonary, etc.), and more insidious complaints (weakness, nausea, anorexia, fatigue, etc.).
Physical exam should prioritize repeated assessment of vital signs, particularly heart and respiratory rate, blood pressure, and pulse oximetry. The CNS should be assessed for direct or indirect signs of poisoning and/or perfusion abnormalities (agitation, delirium, depression, coma) and seizures (e.g., from bupropion, local anesthetics, methylxanthines, sedative–hypnotic withdrawal, or sympathomimetics). Of note, CCB–poisoned patients may preserve their mental status despite severe hypotension and bradycardia. Rigorous cardiac, pulmonary, vascular, and organ system examinations should evaluate perfusion, failure, and potential reserve. Special attention should be paid to identifying specific patterns of cardiovascular and associated systemic anomalies suggestive of a particular toxidrome, including cholinergic (bradycardia with bronchorrhea, bronchospasm, diaphoresis, urination, miosis, lacrimation, emesis), antimuscarinic (tachycardia, tachypnea, mydriasis, flushed skin, urinary retention, delirium), and sympathomimetic (tachycardia, hypertension, tachypnea, hyperthermia, mydriasis, psychomotor agitation). In addition to a focused physical exam, bedside glucometry (the “sixth vital sign”) should be rapidly obtained and addressed. Hyperglycemia may suggest CCB exposure and severity, while hypoglycemia may be seen with BAAs.4

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The number of substances capable of exerting cardiotoxic effects is myriad. Cardiotoxicity is a well-described attribute of abused substances (ethanol, nicotine, etc.), biologicals (aconitine, colchicine, ricin, venoms, veratrine, etc.), chemotherapeutics (alkylators, anthracyclines, antimetabolites, monoclonal antibodies, taxanes, vinca alkaloids, etc.), environmental exposures (carbon monoxide, fluorocarbons, particulate air pollution, etc.), metals (arsenic, cadmium, cobalt, lead, etc.), nutritional toxins (thiaminases), and numerous other agents. Toxins that produce acid–base disturbances, autonomic nervous system dysfunction, electrolyte derangement, hematologic dyscrasias, or hypoxia (hypoxemic, histotoxic, or other) may secondarily compromise cardiovascular function. Cardiovascular instability may also accompany toxicologic-associated hyperthermias (anticholinergic crisis, malignant hyperthermia, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, mitochondrial uncoupling, sedative–hypnotic withdrawal, serotonin syndrome, sympathomimetic toxicity, thyroid toxicity, etc.).

Pharmaceuticals that produce hypotension and/or bradycardia include antidysrhythmics, cardiac glycosides (digoxin), BAAs, CCBs, imidazoline derivatives (clonidine, dexmedetomidine, guanfacine, guanabenz, oxymetazoline, and tetrahydrozoline), nitrates, and RASAs. Although uncommon, anticonvulsants (carbamazepine, phenytoin, etc.), barbiturates, and opioids may also cause bradycardia and hypotension. Cardiotoxicity may also arise from medications with sodium channel antagonism (carbamazepine, cocaine, cyclic antidepressants [CAs], local anesthetics, diphenhydramine, lamotrigine, venlafaxine, and others with Vaughan-Williams class IA and IC effects), potassium channel antagonism (antipsychotics, methadone, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, etc.), or direct or indirect cholinergic effects.

Sympathomimetics, including adrenergic reuptake inhibitors, amphetamines and their derivatives, catenones and their analogs, cocaine, phencyclidine (PCP), and piperazines may produce tachycardia and/or hypertension. Methylxanthines (caffeine, theophylline, theobromine), cannabinoids, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors may present similarly. Substances with antimuscarinic properties may antagonize vagal effects
on cardiac pacemakers, for example, antihistamines, CAs, and scopolamine. Vasodilators such as alpha-blockers, peripherally acting CCBs, and nitrates can result in reflex tachycardia as a compensatory response. Finally, withdrawal from sedative–hypnotics (barbiturates, benzodiazepines, ethanol, gamma hydroxybutyrate [GHB]), opioids, and antihypertensives (clonidine, BAAs, and others) can induce a presentation consistent with sympathomimetic toxicity.

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

An electrocardiogram (ECG) should be rapidly obtained for all cardiotoxic patients. Agents that delay atrial electrical transmission (e.g., quinidine) may produce notched P waves. BAAs, cardiac glycosides, CCBs, cholinergics, and magnesium impair nodal conduction leading to variable blocks. Sodium channel antagonists, such as CAs, and others that compromise myocyte depolarization and disproportionately affect right ventricular depolarization, produce a classic ECG pattern of QRS widening and terminal rightward depolarization of the last 40 milliseconds of the QRS complex, giving rise to an R wave in lead AVR and/or an S wave in leads I and AVL. Hyperkalemia and hypermagnesemia may also cause widening of the QRS complex. Potassium channel antagonism may give rise to an increased QT/QTc interval, yielding a myocardial substrate vulnerable to afterdepolarizations, ventricular tachycardia, and ventricular fibrillation. Although not necessarily indicative of toxicity, digoxin and other cardiac glycosides cause repolarization abnormalities that appear as scooping of the ST segment, or “dig effect.” Premature ventricular contractions, representing myocardial irritability, are more ominous and merit consideration for digoxin-specific Fab fragment (DSFab) administration.

Bedside ultrasound is another valuable tool in the hemodynamic status assessment of the cardiotoxic patient. Negative inotrope toxicity may result in global myocardial dysfunction and impaired cardiac output, while a hyperdynamic heart may suggest adrenergic stimulation or represent a reflex to peripherally acting agents. Contemporaneous ultrasound assessment of volume status can also be performed.

Laboratory testing should include serum electrolyte concentrations—particularly sodium, potassium, chloride, and calcium—to help guide repletion or interventions. In acute digoxin ingestions, prior to the availability of DSFab, elevations in serum potassium concentrations (a manifestation of sodium–potassium-ATPase inhibition) between 5 and 5.5 mEq/L were associated with 50% mortality; potassium concentrations above 5.5 mEq/L were associated with 100% mortality. BAA overdose may also elevate serum potassium. Assessment of renal function with urea nitrogen and creatinine may inform anticipated toxicity or duration of effect for renally cleared medications (e.g., atenolol, digoxin). Specific cardiotoxin concentrations are generally unavailable except for digoxin and theophylline, although evaluation of common coingestants (acetaminophen, salicylates, and ethanol) is often warranted.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

Management of cardiotoxic patients requires vigilance on several fronts. Ensuring adequate oxygenation, ventilation, and intravascular volume expansion is essential. Serum glucose levels also require close observation; during periods of stress, myocardial metabolic
substrate preference may shift from glucose to fatty acids, which can compromise con-
tractile performance.9 Toxin-induced hemodynamic instability is not uncommon.
Hypertension should be managed with short-acting agents such as nitroglycerine, nitro-
prusside, or phentolamine. Hypotension should be corrected with titratable, direct-acting
inotropic or vasoactive agents, such as norepinephrine, phenylephrine, and epinephrine;
these have been proved more effective than indirect agents like dopamine.10,11

Decontamination
If not already administered, more definitive antidotal therapy should be considered fol-
lowing hemodynamic stabilization. A risk–benefit assessment should guide the decision
to employ adjuncts that alter toxicant pharmacokinetics (e.g., orogastric lavage, acti-
vated charcoal, whole-bowel irrigation, urinary alkalinization, extracorporeal removal),
particularly in cases of significant gut burden, ongoing absorption, sustained release
products, or antimuscarinic or opioid coingestants. For certain potentially severe inges-
tions, aggressive decontamination with gastric lavage within 1 hour,12 activated charcoal
(1 g/kg),13 and whole-bowel irrigation (polyethylene glycol electrolyte lavage solution at
1 to 2 L/h until clear rectal effluent)14 may significantly reduce systemic absorption and
alter the disease course.

Adjunct Therapies: Cardiac Pacing, IABP, and ECMO
While atropine and transcutaneous pacing may be employed in the initial manage-
ment of toxic bradycardias, results are generally unsatisfying due to persistent negative
inotropy. As transvenous pacing may actually worsen cardiac glycoside toxicity,15 this
particular condition should be excluded or empirically treated with DSFab prior to any
attempts at transvenous pacing. While insufficient data exist regarding the role of intra-
aortic balloon pump (IABP) counterpulsation in cardiotoxicity, small series suggest
that IABP may be used to support hemodynamics and vital organ perfusion in patients
refractory to pharmacologic interventions while toxin metabolism occurs.16–18 Similarly,
case studies have documented successful application of extracorporeal membrane oxy-
genation (ECMO) cardiopulmonary bypass to treat drug-induced cardiogenic shock
and cardiac arrest refractory to traditional interventions.19

Specific Antidotes
Relative to the near-inexhaustible list of cardiotoxins, few specific antidotes exist;
those that do rarely contain a specific FDA-approved toxicologic indication (e.g., only
DSFab of the antidotes below). Given the ethical and practical difficulties in performing
randomized or case-controlled trials in overdose victims, high-level evidence is often
unavailable. Specific antidotal strategies represent a careful consideration of the medical
literature, textbooks, expert opinion, and practice guidelines, although individual and
institutional practices vary considerably.

Calcium
Based on anticipated digoxin-induced elevated intracellular Ca2+ concentrations and
calcium-associated adverse events in digoxin-poisoned canines,20 calcium should
be avoided in hyperkalemia treatment in digoxin toxicity (managed with DSFab).
Intravenous calcium is indicated to overcome the direct or indirect antagonism of L-type
calcium channels induced by CCB and BAA poisoning. Animal models demonstrate calcium salt benefit in CCB- and BAA-induced deficits in contractility, blood pressure, and cardiac output. Human case series and case reports generally support these findings, although conduction deficits and bradycardia may persist, and data for BAA toxicity are less robust. Calcium is provided intravenously as 10% calcium gluconate (4.3 mEq elemental calcium per 10 mL), or via a central vein as 10% calcium chloride (13.6 mEq elemental calcium per 10 mL). Both regimens liberate Ca$^{2+}$ rapidly. A reasonable starting dose is 1 g (10 mL) of 10% calcium chloride or 3 g (30 mL) of 10% calcium gluconate, although some practitioners initiate higher doses. To sustain therapeutic response, redosing every 20–60 minutes may be required. Ongoing diligent monitoring of calcium, serum phosphate, and hydration status is necessary to mitigate the adverse consequences of hypercalcemia.

**Digoxin-Specific Fab Fragments (DSFab)**

DSFab is a safe and effective antidote for cardiac glycoside toxicity, and prior to its availability, digoxin toxicity carried a mortality rate exceeding 23% in patients requiring cardiac pacing. Indications for DSFab therapy include:

- Adult ingestions of ≥10 mg of digoxin (4 mg by a child)
- Serum digoxin concentrations ≥15 ng/mL, or concentrations ≥10 ng/mL beyond 6 hours after acute ingestion
- Shock or hemodynamic instability
- Progressive dysrhythmia, bradydysrhythmia refractory to atropine, or evidence of new ventricular ectopy (e.g., PVCs)
- Serum potassium ≥5.0 mEq/L in acute poisoning
- End-organ manifestations (e.g., altered mental status)
- Significant gastrointestinal symptoms or renal impairment in chronic poisoning

DSFab dosing is based either on the digoxin quantity ingested or on postdistributional serum digoxin concentrations:

$$\text{DSFab vials} = \frac{(\text{mg ingested} \times 0.8)}{(0.5 \text{ mg bound/vial})}$$ or $$\text{DSFab vials} = \left[\frac{\text{digoxin (ng/mL)}}{\text{weight (in kg)}}\right] / 100$$

The number of vials is rounded up and administered IV over 30 minutes in nonemergent scenarios. Empiric dosing of 10 to 20 vials in acute ingestion, or 3 to 6 vials (1 to 2 vials in children) in chronic ingestion, may be utilized when information is limited or in unstable patients. The rebound in free digoxin concentrations following therapy likely mitigates the exacerbation of heart failure, seen in approximately 3% of patients, due to the sudden lack of inotropic support provided by digoxin. Continued monitoring of electrolytes during DSFab therapy is important, as hypokalemia can develop.

**Glucagon**

Glucagon binds to G protein receptors, facilitating the production of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and enhancing cardiac inotropy and chronotropy. An increase in cAMP following administration of glucagon occurs independently of beta-adrenergic or calcium channel blockade. In volunteers, glucagon increased heart rate, cardiac index, and mean atrial pressure, but not systemic vascular resistance. Evaluation of glucagon...
efficacy in BAA or CCB overdose is primarily limited to case series. Dosing strategies typically employ an initial IV bolus of 50 μg/kg (maximum dose, 10 mg), repeatable after 3 to 5 minutes. A continuous infusion of the reversal dose is then provided per hour (e.g., 2 to 5 mg/h to a maximum of 10 mg/h). Nausea and vomiting should be anticipated and mitigated.

High-Dose Insulin Euglycemia (HIE)

Myocardial fuel for oxidative metabolism includes free fatty acids (FFA) at rest, glucose after meals, and lactate and FFA during exercise. During myocardial ischemia, an increase in catecholamine release results in stimulation of adipose release of FFA and decreased excretion of insulin from pancreatic beta cells. Experimental findings correlate elevation of plasma FFA with increased arrhythmias and mortality; insulin and glucose infusion has been found to mitigate this effect by decreasing the uptake of FFA by the myocardium and by enhancing glucose uptake. In dogs poisoned with BAA or CCB, HIE outperformed glucagon and epinephrine in mortality benefit and enhanced myocardial contractility. Higher insulin dosing (up to 10 units/kg/h) improved mortality and cardiac output in BAA-poisoned pigs compared with placebo or vasopressin plus epinephrine. In five patients with refractory, CCB-induced cardiogenic shock, an insulin bolus, followed by infusion at 0.1 to 1.0 units/kg/h, resulted in vasopressor sparing and survival in all. A prospective observational study of seven patients with severe CCB toxicity given an insulin maintenance infusion of 0.5 to 2.0 units/kg/h, six survived; of these six, those that received an initial insulin bolus also showed improved hemodynamic parameters. A series of patients with cardiogenic shock from BAA, CA, and CCB (alone or in combination) who were treated with HIE (up to 16 units/kg/h) showed survival in 92%, with sufficient hemodynamic improvement to permit vasopressor weaning.

An initial insulin bolus of 0.5 to 1 unit/kg IV with dextrose supplementation as needed is typically followed by an insulin infusion of 1 unit/kg/h; maintenance of euglycemia with a 5% dextrose solution; careful potassium supplementation; and fingerstick glucose measurement every 30 minutes. Titration up to 10 units/kg/h has been described in clinical practice. Insulin’s inotropic effect is delayed (approximately 15–45 minutes); therefore, early initiation and concurrent inotrope/vasopressor therapy, with subsequent weaning as tolerated, are recommended. Emergency Department initiation of HIE should be followed by prompt patient transfer to an intensive care setting for rigorous and potentially protracted glucose administration and monitoring.

Intravenous Lipid Emulsion

Intravenous lipid emulsion (ILE) (typically a 20% solution) has emerged as a novel therapy for toxic exposures. ILE’s mechanism of action is uncertain, and there are several competing theories to explain its efficacy. These include: creation of an ILE “lipid sink” or “lipid conduit” that isolates xenobiotics (nonnative chemical substances) within the plasma, thereby establishing a gradient that promotes diffusion from target organs and/or enhances elimination or redistribution; alteration of myocardial metabolism resulting in increased cardiac FFA metabolism to ATP; or activation of ion channels responsible for cardiac contractility. In vitro models predict ILE efficacy in drugs with more positive partition coefficients (logP) and greater volumes of distribution.
although the distribution coefficient (logD, which accounts for ionization, particularly at physiologic pH) is a better descriptor of lipophilicity. Animal studies of ILE demonstrate mortality benefits in rats and dogs exposed to lethal doses of bupivacaine, verapamil, and selected other cardiovascular toxins. ILE rescue was first clinically used successfully in a case of seizures and refractory cardiac arrest due to intravenous local anesthetic exposure. Other adult and pediatric case reports suggest benefit in cases of cardiovascular toxicity due to antipsychotics, BAAs, bupropion, CAs, CCBs, cocaine, and local anesthetics.

Experts advocate ILE use in bupivacaine toxicity, including in the cases associated with seizures and hemodynamic instability. An ILE bolus of 1.5 mL/kg IV over 1 minute, repeated every 3 to 5 minutes in persistent cardiovascular collapse, is followed by an infusion of 0.25 mL/kg/min (which may be doubled in persistent hypotension) until hemodynamic recovery. This regimen has been generalized for treatment of severe poisoning with other local anesthetics and cardiovascular toxins.

Of note, ILE administration too early after oral poisoning has the potential to facilitate gastrointestinal tract drug absorption or redistribution, exacerbating toxicity and, in theory, compromising the efficacy of lipid-soluble antidotes and concomitant therapies. Until further evidence demonstrates ILE superiority, it is used as a last resort when conventional therapies have failed. Potential adverse effects of ILE include hypersensitivity reactions (from egg or soybean allergies), fat embolism and pulmonary toxicity, hyperamylasemia and pancreatitis, acute myocardial infarction, altered coagulation, and laboratory interference with normal serum laboratory testing.

Naloxone
Naloxone has been employed to reverse the effects of clonidine overdose. Naloxone antagonizes the effects of endogenous opioids, particularly in patients with higher baseline concentrations. Although less than half of clonidine-intoxicated patients will respond to naloxone, given the potential CNS and hemodynamic benefits, a trial dose may be warranted. High doses may be necessary and should be followed by a continuous infusion. Double-blind controlled studies demonstrate that naloxone pretreatment or coadministration mitigates acute captopril-induced hypotension. However, in cases of acute RASA ingestion or in patients with chronic hypertension, naloxone has shown inconsistent efficacy.

Sodium Bicarbonate
Sodium bicarbonate exerts two therapeutic effects on the combined sodium channel blockade and QRS widening associated with CAs and other toxins. First, supplemental sodium mitigates channel blockade (as does hypertonic saline). Second, the bicarbonate-induced alkalemia increases the nonionized drug fractions, leading to a decrease in toxin–sodium channel binding. The use of sodium bicarbonate may also mitigate hypoperfusion or seizure–induced acidemia, which can worsen channel blockade. An intravenous bolus of 1 to 2 mEq/kg of 7.5% to 8.4% sodium bicarbonate is followed by an infusion of 132 to 150 mEq in 1 L D5W at a rate of 150 to 200 mL/h, with the goal of narrowing the QRS complex to 100 milliseconds or less and targeting a serum pH 7.45 to 7.55. Rebolusing may be required for recurrent QRS widening. Alkalemia-associated hypokalemia should be anticipated with bicarbonate therapy, and treated appropriately.
Experimental Antidotes
Methylene blue, presumably functioning as a nitric oxide scavenger, has anecdotally been employed to reverse refractory vasodilatory shock from BAA and amlodipine. Dosing has ranged from 1 to 2 mg/kg over 10 to 20 minutes, followed by an infusion of 1 mg/kg/h.67,68

CONCLUSION
The treatment of critically ill cardiotoxic patients attempts to identify and reverse the effects of the responsible agent(s), to decontaminate as appropriate, and to provide aggressive supportive care with pharmacologic or adjunctive therapies. Targeted antidotal strategies include calcium, DSFab, glucagon, HIE, ILE, naloxone, or sodium bicarbonate, based on suggestive history or clinical, ECG, or laboratory findings. After initial decontamination and stabilization, patients should be admitted to an intensive care setting for continued monitoring and therapy.

| LITERATURE TABLE |
|---|---|---|
| TRIAL | DESIGN | RESULT |
| Calcium
Ramoska et al., Ann Emerg Med. 199324 | Case series of 139 CCB overdoses from three regional poison centers | Calcium was administered to 23 patients. 7/11 with sinus node suppression had an increase in heart rate. 16/20 with hypotension had an increase in blood pressure |
| Howarth et al., Hum Exp Toxicol. 199425 | Descriptive case study of 15 CCB overdoses | Of the 11 patients who received intravenous calcium, 7 responded with increased heart rate and blood pressure, 3 did not respond, and 1 died |
| Digoxin-specific Fab fragments
Antman et al., Circulation. 199029 | Multicenter open-label study in 150 cardiac glycoside–poisoned patients | 80% complete and 10% partial symptom resolution. Of 15 nonresponders, 5 were “moribund” at administration, 4 were inadequately dosed, 5 were absent digoxin toxicity, and 1 was a true nonresponder |
| Glucagon
Parmley et al., N Engl J Med. 196832 | Open-label study of glucagon in 21 volunteers undergoing cardiac catheterization | Increases in heart rate, arterial pressure, and cardiac index were noted after glucagon administration within 1–3 min |
| Love et al., Chest. 199833 | Case series of 9 bradycardic patients refractory to atropine | 8/9 patients responded to IV glucagon. One who did not was digoxin toxic |
| High-dose insulin euglycemia
Kerns et al., Ann Emerg Med. 199736 | RCT of 27 canines given a propanolol infusion and treated with glucagon, epinephrine, HIE, or saline control | Survival: 6/6 (100%) with HIE, 4/6 with glucagon, 1/6 with epinephrine. HIE increased cardiac contractility |
| Holger et al., Chin Toxicol. 200737 | RCT of 10 pigs given IV propanolol and treated with HIE or vasopressin plus epinephrine | Survival: 5/5 (100%) with HIE as high as 10 units/kg/h, 5/5 (10%) with vasopressin and epinephrine past 1.6 h. Cardiac output and heart rate were higher in the HIE group |
REFERENCES


Pulmonary Toxins

Hong K. Kim and Rama B. Rao

BACKGROUND

The pulmonary system has multiple important physiologic functions. The most essential—oxygenation of hemoglobin—occurs across a layer of endothelial cells in the pulmonary alveoli. Toxins that displace oxygen are termed simple asphyxiants. This group of gases includes hydrocarbons, noble gases, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide. Inhalation of simple asphyxiants reduces the fraction of inspired oxygen ($FiO_2$) below 21% and lowers the partial pressure of oxygen. These gases leave the pulmonary parenchyma largely intact allowing normal gas exchange to resume once the patient is removed from the toxic environment.

Inhaled toxins that injure or inflame the pulmonary alveoli and result in lung injury are termed pulmonary irritants. These gases disrupt the alveolar epithelial integrity by different mechanisms. Some gases such as chlorine ($Cl_2$) and ammonia ($NH_3$) form acids or bases that cause inflammation and disruption of surfactant. Other gases such as ozone ($O_3$) and oxides of nitrogen ($NO_x$) produce reactive free radicals or intermediates that result in inflammatory injury, sometimes hours after exposure. These gases are a major contributor to air pollution and high rates of asthma and symptomatic airway disease.

SIMPLE ASPHYXIANTS

Sources of simple asphyxiants include workplace releases of noble gases and agricultural sources such as methane. Iatrogenic asphyxiation may occur in hospitals when nitrous oxide is affixed to a patient’s face for prolonged periods, or when a nitrogen line is inadvertently confused for supplemental oxygen. Some simple asphyxiant sources exist in a nongaseous phase (e.g., dry ice [CO$_2$] in a solid form, or nitrogen [N$_2$] in liquid form).1 Asphyxiation from these sources usually occurs in a confined space, requiring phase transition to a gas.$^{2-4}$ Occasionally, simple asphyxiants are associated with mass casualties: the large-scale emission of carbon dioxide gas from Lake Nyos, a carbonated volcanic lake in Cameroon, West Africa, asphyxiated more than 1,700 residents and thousands of livestock within a radius of 10 km.$^{5,6}$
Management Guidelines
Because simple asphyxiants reduce the effective fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO₂), the signs and symptoms of toxicity are similar to those of hypoxia; they include altered sensorium, syncope, coma, seizures, and cardiac arrest. Depending on the severity of the global tissue hypoxia, end-organ injury may develop, leading to significant morbidity and mortality. Simple asphyxiants typically do not interfere with ventilation, and with the exception of asphyxia by carbon dioxide, hypercarbia is absent until respiratory depression or arrest occurs. The primary therapeutic intervention in simple asphyxiant toxicity is patient removal from the exposure and restoration of adequate oxygenation and ventilation. In the setting of multiorgan failure from prolonged tissue hypoxia, therapy is limited to supportive care. Given that simple asphyxiants do not cause primary lung injury, recovery is complete provided end-organ damage from tissue hypoxia has not occurred.

PULMONARY IRRITANT GASES
Inhaled pulmonary irritants can destroy the alveolar epithelium, resulting in impaired alveolar gas exchange. The initial disruption of respiratory tract integrity is attributed to one or both of two causes: the acid or base produced when pulmonary irritant gases dissolve in the physiologic alveolar fluid and the generation of free radicals, specifically reactive oxygen species. Although the exact mechanism of injury is unknown, the toxic end products of pulmonary irritants are believed to cause direct cellular damage and initiate an inflammatory cascade that can lead to the development of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Highly water-soluble toxic gasses such as concentrated ammonia quickly irritate mucous membranes, often prompting rapid retreat from the irritant source. Less water-soluble agents, such as chlorine gas, phosgene, and oxides of nitrogen, do not cause as rapid a reaction and are more likely to result in prolonged exposures.

Two well-known pulmonary irritant gases are chlorine gas [Cl₂] and phosgene [COCl₂]. During World War I, both Axis and Allied forces used these agents as chemical weapons; today, they are used in the production of pharmaceuticals, plastics, textiles, and pesticides. A majority of exposures to these pulmonary irritants result from mass casualty occupational, industrial, or transportation accidents. Domestic exposures—most notably to chlorine gas—do occur occasionally and typically result from unsafe mixing of cleaning agents or from inappropriate use and storage of swimming pool chlorinating solutions (see below).

Chlorine [Cl₂]
While the majority of chlorine gas exposures result from occupational- and industrial-related incidents, nonindustrial exposure can occur when acidic cleaning agents such as hydrochloric acid [HCl] are mixed with sodium hypochlorite [NaOCl], or bleach. Chlorine is a yellowish green gas that has a distinct and readily recognized odor with a density that is twice as heavy as air. It tends to settle near the ground and is dispersed by air movements. The mechanism of injury is the formation of hydrochloric acid, hypochlorous acid, and nascent oxygen [O⁻] (oxygen liberated from a chemical reaction) when the chlorine gas dissolves in the alveolar fluid. Complicating this
process is nascent oxygen’s ability to induce the formation of free radicals, which can cause additional pulmonary injury.

The severity of the toxic effects of chlorine gas inhalation varies from minor respiratory tract irritation to death, depending on ambient concentration of the gas and the duration of exposure. From available data, exposure to 1 to 15 parts per million (ppm) will produce mild to moderate mucous membrane and conjunctival irritation. Inhalation of >30 ppm of chlorine gas results in chest pain, cough, and shortness of breath; chemical pneumonitis and acute pulmonary edema are observed at concentrations between 40 and 60 ppm. Exposure to concentrations above 400 ppm results in death, usually over a period of 30 minutes, while exposure to concentrations >1,000 ppm may be fatal within minutes.

The intermediate water solubility of chlorine gas often results in mild or delayed initial symptoms, including conjunctival and nasal irritation, that can contribute to an unintentionally prolonged duration of exposure. A majority of exposures, however, remain brief, with inhalation of low to moderate concentrations resulting in transient symptoms such as cough, shortness of breath, and wheeze. Prolonged exposure can result in severe pulmonary sequelae—often not observed until 4 to 8 hours following inhalation—including pneumonitis, pulmonary edema, and ARDS.

Chloramines [NH₂Cl, NHCl₂, and NCl₃]

Chloramine is produced when chlorine interacts with nitrogen-containing compounds. This typically occurs during chlorination of indoor swimming pools where chlorine, in the form of bleach, is used to disinfect both organic (urea and creatinine) and inorganic (ammonia) nitrogen-containing compounds. In households, chloramine exposures are reported after two common household cleaning products, bleach and ammonia, are mixed. Three different types of chloramines can be generated, depending on the degree of chlorination: monochloramine [NH₂Cl], dichloramine [NHCl₂], and trichloramine [NCl₃]. The dissolution of chloramine in physiologic fluid (e.g., in the alveoli epithelial layer or mucous membrane) generates hypochlorous acid [HOCl], ammonia, and oxygen radicals—toxic end products that cause irritation of the eyes, respiratory tract, and mucosal membrane. Because chloramines are highly water-soluble, symptom onset is typically immediate, prompting the exposed person to escape to fresh air and minimize prolonged exposure. Significant morbidity, including pneumonitis, has been reported when exposure occurs in a confined space with limited ventilation.

Phosgene [COCl₂]

Similar to chlorine gas, phosgene has become an important compound in the chemical industry after its debut during World War I. Phosgene is used in the production of organic solvents, dyes, pesticides, and pharmaceuticals. The majority of phosgene exposures also occur in the industrial setting. Phosgene gas may also be emitted by combustion of chlorinated hydrocarbons such as plastic or polyvinyl chloride (e.g., house or vehicle fire).

Contact with phosgene causes tissue injury by two distinct chemical mechanisms: acylation and hydrolysis. Acylation (the process of adding an acyl group to a compound) is believed to be the primary mechanism, occurs when phosgene reacts with nucleophilic components of macromolecules (amino, hydroxyl, thiol, and sulfhydryl
groups), and produces injury by permanent denaturation of proteins and lipoproteins. The second mechanism is the hydrolysis of phosgene in the physiologic fluid of the alveoli, which results in the production of hydrochloric acid [HCl] and carbon dioxide [CO₂] responsible for the initial mucous membrane irritation.

The characteristic odor of phosgene gas is described as “fresh hay” (odor threshold 0.4 to 1.5 ppm). This property may contribute to prolonged exposure by inciting deep breathing rather than alarm at the presence of a toxic gas. Moreover, due to phosgene’s intermediate water solubility, early symptoms of mucosal irritation are frequently minor, further prolonging exposure and allowing deeper penetration into the lower respiratory tract.

Phosgene toxicity produces three clinical phases: reflex, latent, and delayed pulmonary edema. During the initial reflex phase, symptom severity is related to gas concentration. Phosgene concentrations of >3 to 5 ppm result in immediate mucous membrane irritation, cough, and chest tightness. Initial exposure stimulates a vagal reflex, which results in decreased vital capacity from rapid shallow breathing, bradycardia, and hypotension. In the subsequent latent phase, patients may be asymptomatic for up to 48 hours; in the final, delayed phase, they may develop noncardiogenic pulmonary edema and respiratory distress. While the severity of the initial mucosal irritation is dependent on gas concentration, the delayed development of pulmonary edema is correlated with the total dose exposure and reflects a dose–response relationship. Clinically latent pulmonary interstitial inflammation occurs at exposures to 30 to 150 ppm/min, while overt pulmonary edema occurs at exposures to >150 ppm/min. The estimated lethal dose for mortality of 1%, 50%, and 100% is 300 ppm/min, 500 ppm/min, and 1,300 ppm/min, respectively.

Management Guidelines
The principle management strategy for pulmonary irritant gas exposure is to remove the patient from the exposure and provide supportive care, including ensuring adequate oxygenation and ventilation. Following removal, patients should be undressed and examined for other potential toxic exposures and traumatic injuries. There is no antidote for pulmonary irritant exposure and no indication for decontamination in setting of acute chlorine, chloramine, and phosgene gas exposure. Decontamination protocols should be considered if dermal or ocular exposure to liquid agents has occurred. Irrigation of the eye and other mucosal surfaces may help reduce irritation, and if respiratory tract irritation is evident, supplemental oxygen and bronchodilators (β-agonists) should be administered.

Several studies have investigated the role of inhaled nebulized sodium bicarbonate in neutralizing the acidic end products of pulmonary irritants and in reducing pulmonary injury. In general, chemical neutralization is contraindicated, especially in ingestion of acid or alkali agents, due to its potential to exacerbate the initial caustic injury by producing an exothermic reaction and gas formation. Some practitioners have attempted chemical neutralization of pulmonary irritants, considered safe because the large surface area of the lung and the low concentration of pulmonary irritant end products would allow for the dissipation of the heat and gas produced. To date, however, no convincing evidence exists to support the routine use of inhaled nebulized sodium bicarbonate in
pulmonary irritant exposures. One case report \((n = 3)\) showed immediate relief of symptoms (cough and dyspnea) after 3.75% \(\text{NaHCO}_3\) nebulized solution was administered following chlorine exposure. However, a small prospective trial \((n = 22)\) of 4.2% \(\text{NaHCO}_3\) nebulized solution for patients with chlorine and chloramine exposures failed to demonstrate any clinical benefit. Chemical neutralization using \(\text{NaHCO}_3\) has not been studied in gas exposures other than chlorine. Since definitive evidence is lacking, a brief trial of nebulized sodium bicarbonate <4.2% may be attempted in awake patients if tolerated, and continued only if subjective relief occurs, but is unlikely to affect outcome.

The most serious complication of pulmonary irritant exposure is the development of ARDS. In chlorine and phosgene exposure, physical exam findings (rales or crackles) and radiologic signs of pneumonitis or pulmonary edema may not be evident for up to 8 and 48 hours, respectively. Although the etiology of ARDS caused by pulmonary irritants is different from the etiology of injury caused by sepsis or trauma, the similarities of the underlying inflammatory response suggest that similar management principles apply. Specifically, targeting tidal volumes of 6 mL/kg and plateau pressure of <30 cm H\(_2\)O decreases inflammatory markers and improves survival.

In animal model studies, corticosteroids have been shown to improve oxygen delivery and lung compliance and possibly decrease pulmonary injury risk in chlorine gas-induced ARDS and pneumonitis. To date, no trials have investigated the role of corticosteroids in counteracting the inflammatory process during human pulmonary irritant exposure.

Patients exposed to chloramine and chlorine gas who remain asymptomatic after 8 hours of observation may be safely be discharged with adequate follow-up in place. Asymptomatic patients exposed to phosgene should be observed for 24 hours to monitor for delayed onset of pulmonary edema and pneumonitis.

Other Pulmonary Toxins
Although beyond the scope of this chapter, other chemicals, including salicylate, opioids, cocaine, carbon monoxide, and negative inotropic agents (beta-blockers and calcium channel blockers), have also been implicated in pulmonary toxicity/ARDS. Treatment of lung injury from these agents generally requires supportive care and, in some cases, such as salicylates, treatment to enhance elimination of toxin.

CONCLUSION
Exposure to simple asphyxiants and pulmonary irritants is potentially fatal. Patients exposed to simple asphyxiants who survive to reach medical care generally require only short-term supportive care. Patients surviving pulmonary irritant exposure may present with early and/or late mucosal and respiratory symptoms; for these patients, the specific irritant, duration of exposure, and severity of symptoms will determine the extent of supportive care needed. Although pulmonary toxins are less commonly treated in the ED than many other emergencies, a familiarity with the information presented in this chapter is indispensable for the emergency physician committed to managing the full spectrum of critically ill patients.
REFERENCES


BACKGROUND
Elevations in body temperature may be caused by behavioral factors, exertion, infections, endocrinologic conditions, and environmental exposures; as well as by therapeutic and illicit drugs that disrupt the autonomic nervous system or impair the body’s cooling capacity. Core body temperatures in excess of 106°F (41.1°C) precipitate life-threatening hyperthermia—termed heat stroke when the condition is accompanied by altered mental status.

Heat stroke is always a time-sensitive emergency that requires prompt diagnosis and treatment, as its mortality rate is directly related to delays in cooling. Patients subject to such delays are at risk for multisystem organ failure, often heralded by impaired liver synthetic function and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). From 1999 to 2003, a total of 3,442 deaths from heat stroke were reported in the United States; while underlying illnesses contributed to the majority of these deaths, 4.2% were due to toxicologic causes. This chapter reviews some of the common toxicologic hyperthermic syndromes and their management (Table 47.1).

HYPERTHERMIC AGITATED DELIRIUM
Patients with severe hyperthermia may present with agitated delirium—a difficult-to-manage form of heat stroke—that can impair the clinician’s ability to obtain vital signs in a timely fashion. When presented with an agitated patient, especially during the summer months, the emergency physician should maintain a high degree of suspicion for a hyperthermic etiology.

History and Physical Exam
Agitated delirium has been used to describe patients with severe agitation who are unresponsive to verbal redirection, are combative, or have altered mental status. Cases are frequently associated with drug use; illicit sympathomimetic agents such as cocaine are common culprits, and patients classically present diaphoretic, tachycardic, hypertensive, and severely agitated (sympathomimetic toxidrome). The use of cocaine or other sympathomimetic agents causes vasoconstriction, which limits effective cooling and simultaneously increases motor tone, generating heat. Data suggest that mortality related to cocaine use increases when ambient temperatures are above 88°F (31.1°C). Centrally
acting anticholinergic agents such as scopolamine can similarly impair cooling and may cause psychomotor agitation. These patients will present with altered mental status, tachycardia, dry skin, pupillary dilation, and urinary retention (anticholinergic toxidrome).6

### Diagnostic Evaluation

The diagnosis of agitated delirium requires two factors: psychomotor agitation and a reduced ability to focus or shift attention.4 In addition to toxicologic etiologies, other causes of agitated delirium that should always be considered include infection, postictal states, and endocrinological emergencies. Laboratory assessments should include a basic metabolic panel and urinalysis; blood cultures if etiology of delirium is uncertain; and creatinine kinase to rule out the potential complication of rhabdomyolysis. In addition, liver function tests, a coagulation panel (PT/PTT/INR), and complete blood count should be used to screen for evidence of DIC due to hyperthermic liver injury as well as nonspecific tissue damage, which can lead to consumption of coagulation factors.7 Arterial/venous blood gas and serum lactate tests should be used to identify acidosis, which commonly accompanies heat stroke. If an intentional self-poisoning is suspected, serum salicylate and acetaminophen concentrations should be obtained.

### Management Guidelines

Prompt sedation with benzodiazepines facilitates measurement of body temperature, hemodynamic stabilization, and the rapid cooling that is critical to patient survival. If intravenous access is unavailable, a rapidly sedating benzodiazepine such as midazolam may be administered intramuscularly (10 mg in a 70 kg adult). Lorazepam may also be administered intramuscularly, but its time to peak sedation is typically >15 minutes. In the hyperthermic patient with status epilepticus, however, lorazepam offers equivalent onset for seizure termination with a longer duration of action.

If intravenous access is available, then an adult patient may be administered diazepam in 10 mg aliquots intravenously every 5 minutes until adequate sedation is achieved, which allows for cooling and reduces psychomotor tone. Patients receiving repetitive doses of any intravenous or intramuscular benzodiazepine require close respiratory monitoring. Intramuscular ketamine has been reported for the patient presenting with an agitated delirium, but the data are limited.
Ideally, the hyperthermic patient is cooled using ice water immersion or cold, wet sheets with ice packed across the entire body, with continual fanning. Continuous core temperature monitoring using a rectal probe is preferable. Occasionally, interventions such as intubation and neuromuscular paralysis are required to reduce heat production. Patients can be removed from ice/ice water when the core temperature is 101.3°F (38.5°C) to avoid overshooting normothermia and provoking hypothermia. Cooling is ideally achieved within 15 minutes of presentation to reduce total hyperthermic time.

Invasive cooling methods—including ice water irrigation of the bladder and thoracic and peritoneal cavities—should be avoided, due to their inadequate rate of cooling in patients with hyperthermic emergencies. Similarly, cooling blankets, while low risk, are also inadequate and should also be avoided. Restoration of a patient’s intravascular volume may be necessary, with serial evaluations for urine output, assessment of inferior vena cava (IVC) collapse, and lung examinations.

Monitoring
Once cooled, patients should be admitted to an intensive care unit and have serial reassessment of basic laboratory tests. Renal dysfunction and coagulopathy are commonly seen within 24 hours of heat stroke onset and may worsen depending on the duration of hyperthermia; acute renal failure is seen in 30% to 50% of heat stroke patients. Liver function tests may also initially appear normal but worsen as organ dysfunction evolves.

TOXICOLOGIC HYPERTHERMIC SYNDROMES

Serotonin Toxicity
Serotonin toxicity results from excessive stimulation of 5-HT_1A and 5-HT_2A receptors. It can develop in patients after a large overdose of a single serotonergic agent; in patients taking more than one serotonergic agent; or in individuals who initiate a new serotonergic agent without adequately timed discontinuation of another serotonergic agent. Life-threatening serotonin toxicity is most often seen in the patient taking a monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) followed by the ingestion of or iatrogenic administration of a serotonergic drug. MAOIs inhibit the presynaptic intracellular breakdown of serotonin, enhancing the amount of serotonin released into the synapse. The subsequent administration of another serotonergic agent can cause excessive receptor stimulation. The onset of life-threatening serotonin syndrome is usually rapid, often within minutes to <2 hours of drug administration.
Diagnostic Evaluation
Serotonin toxicity is a diagnostic challenge; it lacks a specific biomarker, and patients may present within a spectrum of potential signs and symptoms. A milder serotonin toxicity without hyperthermia or autonomic instability may also be difficult to recognize. Such patients can exhibit hyperactivity of the extremities and delirium. Other minor manifestations of serotonin excess—such as diarrhea, hypertension, insomnia, or restlessness—may be present, but mistakenly be attributed to the patient’s underlying psychiatric or medical condition.

Unless the patient’s presentation follows shortly after an interaction of medications known to precipitate the toxicity, the diagnosis is generally one of exclusion in the differential of hyperthermia. There is no universally accepted diagnostic test; however, the Hunter Serotonin Toxicity Criteria were demonstrated to have a sensitivity and specificity for detecting serotonin toxicity of 84% and 97% respectively. For the screen to be positive, the patient must have taken a serotonergic agent and have any of the five listed symptoms. (Table 47.3). In patients meeting these criteria, the emergency physician should suspect serotonin toxicity and evaluate for complications of hyperthermia, including rhabdomyolysis, renal failure, seizure, DIC, and abnormalities of liver function.

Management Guidelines
When serotonin toxicity presents with severe hyperthermia, cooling should be started as soon as possible, and the offending serotonergic drug should be discontinued.

### TABLE 47.2
**Substances That Can Contribute to Serotonin Toxicity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of serotonin breakdown</td>
<td>MADI, Linezolid, Methylene blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blockade of serotonin reuptake</td>
<td>SSRI, Bupropion, Dextromethorphan, Cocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotonin precursors</td>
<td>L-Tryptophan, Lysergic acid diethylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotonin release enhancers</td>
<td>Amphetamine, especially MDMA, Buspirone, Lithium, Mirtazapine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### TABLE 47.3
**Hunter Serotonin Syndrome Criteria**

Patient must have taken a serotonergic agent and have one of the following:
- Spontaneous clonus
- Inducible clonus and agitation or diaphoresis
- Ocular clonus and agitation or diaphoresis
- Tremor and hyperreflexia
- Increased tone and temperature >38°C and ocular clonus or inducible clonus
Benzodiazepines will relieve most mild to moderate symptoms, including agitation and clonus; in patients with refractory muscle rigidity and hyperthermia, a neuromuscular blockade may be considered for muscle relaxation.¹

Milder manifestations of serotonin toxicity are generally treated with supportive care and withdrawal or reduction of the responsible serotonergic agent. Evidence supports the use of cyproheptadine—an antihistamine with nonspecific antagonist effects at 5-HT₁A and 5-HT₂A receptors—for the targeted treatment of the serotonergic excess in patients with mild to moderate symptoms that are insufficiently controlled by sedation. The recommended initial dose is 12 mg followed by 2 mg every 2 hours with a maximum of 32 mg/day until symptoms resolve. A maintenance dose of 8 mg of cyproheptadine every 6 hours can be considered if mild symptoms persist. In case reports, patients responded to 4 mg of cyproheptadine within 2 hours with some requiring one repeat dose.²¹,²² There are, however, no definitive data regarding cyproheptadine’s utility in severe cases due to the rarity of events and difficulty in randomization.

**Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome**

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) is a rare but potentially fatal disorder caused by blockade of dopaminergic receptors in the striatum and hypothalamus—such as in patients taking therapeutic antipsychotics—or by withdrawal of therapeutic dopaminergic agents. Reduction of dopamine levels in the hypothalamus changes the core temperature set point, leading to hyperthermia, while blockade of striatal dopamine receptors contributes to muscle rigidity and tremor.²³ Approximately 0.2% to 1.4% of all patients receiving antipsychotics will develop NMS.²⁴,²⁵

**History and Physical Exam**

Most cases of NMS occur in patients taking therapeutic antipsychotics. The condition is triggered by rapidly escalating dosage, use of high-potency agents such as haloperidol, parenteral administration, and use of depot preparations (intramuscular injections with slow release).²³,²⁴ Atypical antipsychotics may also cause NMS, but less commonly than typical antipsychotics.²⁶ NMS risk is greatest during the first weeks to months of therapy but can occur anytime during use of neuroleptics. NMS may also be precipitated by cessation of dopamine agonists in patients being treated for Parkinson's, but this is less common.

The four main clinical findings of NMS are: changes in mental status (typically gradual-onset catatonia); increased muscle tone, described as “lead pipe rigidity” and “cogwheeling”; hyperthermia; and autonomic dysfunction presenting as tachycardia with alternating hypotension and hypertension. One study reviewing 340 patients with NMS showed 70.5% of patients developed symptoms in the following order: (1) mental status changes, (2) rigidity, (3) hyperthermia, and (4) autonomic dysfunction. In addition, 83.6% of individual patients demonstrated either altered mental status or rigidity before the onset of hyperthermia or autonomic instability.²⁴,²⁷,²⁸ NMS is also frequently preceded by the onset of bradykinesia.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

In vulnerable patients, NMS can be life threatening; clinicians should maintain a high index of suspicion for hyperthermia when presented with a catatonic, rigid patient,
particularly one exposed to elevated ambient temperatures. Like serotonin toxicity, NMS has no diagnostic biomarker. Multiple diagnostic criteria, including the Levenson and Caroff criteria, have been proposed, but none is universally accepted. The most frequently referenced criteria are found in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., which requires the development of severe muscle rigidity and elevated temperature associated with the use of antipsychotic medication, as well as two or more of the following: diaphoresis, elevated blood pressure, tachycardia, incontinence, dysphagia, mutism, tremor, changes in the level of consciousness (ranging from confusion to coma), leukocytosis, and laboratory evidence of muscle injury (elevated creatinine kinase).

### Differentiating Serotonin Toxicity from Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome

Differentiating between NMS and serotonin syndrome can be difficult, since the two syndromes share many clinical features. The following clinical findings can help distinguish them (Table 47.4).

Serotonin toxicity has a rapid onset, within minutes to hours; NMS, by comparison, evolves over days or weeks. Serotonin toxicity carries the additional features of tremors and myoclonus, while NMS is further characterized by bradykinesia, mutism, and gradual-onset catatonia. Finally, in most cases of serotonin syndrome, symptoms resolve within 24 to 72 hours after removal of the offending agent, while in NMS, symptoms may continue for weeks.

### Management Guidelines

Patients with NMS who present with life-threatening hyperthermia—that is, heat stroke, or $T > 41.1^\circ$C or 106°F—should be treated aggressively, as outlined in the management section of agitated delirium. If the syndrome was caused by discontinuation of a dopamine agonist, as with abrupt cessation of Parkinson’s medications, the dopaminergic agent should be resumed as soon as possible.

Benzodiazepines are the first-line pharmacologic therapy used to provide sedation and muscle relaxation. Bromocriptine and, rarely, dantrolene may also be used.

### Table 47.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathophysiology</th>
<th>Serotonin Toxicity</th>
<th>NMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Excess stimulation of $\text{5HT}<em>{1A}$ and $\text{5HT}</em>{2A}$ receptors</td>
<td>Dopamine receptor blockade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of onset</td>
<td>Minutes to hours</td>
<td>Days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution of symptoms</td>
<td>24–96 h</td>
<td>Days to weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms</td>
<td>Altered mental status, Hyperthermia, Autonomic instability, Muscle rigidity, Tremors (“wet dog shakes”), myoclonus, oculomotor clonus</td>
<td>Altered mental status, Hyperthermia, Autonomic instability, Muscle rigidity, Bradykinesia, mutism, catatonia, severe muscle rigidity (“lead pipe rigidity and cogwheeling”)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bromocriptine is a central dopamine agonist that can be administered if supportive therapy with benzodiazepines and rapid cooling fail to improve the patient’s symptoms. Bromocriptine, however, may lead to a worsening of a patient’s underlying psychiatric illness due to dopamine agonism. This effect can be temporized by use of the same benzodiazepines used for muscle relaxation, until the NMS has resolved. Bromocriptine is only available in oral form, and the dose is 2.5 to 10 mg orally three to four times a day. The dosage can be increased with increments of 2.5 mg three times a day every 24 hours until a response is seen or up to a maximum 60 mg per day.

Generally, supportive care, benzodiazepines, and bromocriptine are sufficient to manage muscle rigidity and autonomic dysfunction from NMS; however, patients with severe rigidity unresponsive to benzodiazepines or bromocriptine may require intubation followed by neuromuscular paralysis. Since the clearance of antipsychotics is slow, pharmacological dopaminergic therapies should be continued for at least 10 days after a return to baseline. Premature discontinuation of dopamine agonists may lead to recurrence of NMS. When NMS is related to depot neuroleptics, bromocriptine should be continued for 2 to 3 weeks. Full recovery may take weeks to return to baseline.

Some authors describe the use of dantrolene for treatment of NMS, although data supporting its use are limited, and it is rarely indicated. Dantrolene is more typically used to treat malignant hyperthermia (MH) by inhibiting calcium release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum (see more on “Malignant Hypothermia,” below).

Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) has been suggested as treatment for NMS. ECT is thought to exert its therapeutic effect by enhancing central dopamine activity, and reports have shown that three to four sessions of ECT resolve symptoms of NMS with a mean time from initiation of treatment to resolution of symptoms of 6 days. However, data for ECT are limited, and patients with hyperthermia and organ dysfunction are not candidates for this therapy.

**Malignant Hyperthermia**

MH is a rare autosomal dominant disorder typically seen in patients who receive inhalational anesthetics or succinylcholine. The incidence of MH in patients exposed to general anesthesia has been reported to be anywhere from 1 in 5,000 to 1 in 62,000. In normal muscle, contraction occurs as action potentials open voltage-gated calcium channels, which in turn activate ryanodine receptors (RYR-1) that release calcium for myocyte contraction. The released calcium is recycled by sarcoplasmic Ca\(^{2+}\)-ATPase. In MH, this cycling of calcium in the muscle cells becomes disordered.

MH is a form of drug-induced hypermetabolism of skeletal muscle. Patients who are predisposed to MH have mutations of the RYR-1. In susceptible persons, inhalational anesthetic agents and succinylcholine enhance the activity of the defective RYR-1, leading to accelerated release of Ca\(^{2+}\) inside the skeletal muscle. Intracellular ATP becomes depleted as the sarcoplasmic Ca\(^{2+}\)-ATPase attempts to transport Ca\(^{2+}\) back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum of the muscle cells. The result is diffuse, sustained contraction of skeletal muscles, rigidity unresponsive to nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade, and hyperthermia. This process also leads to anaerobic metabolism with resultant lactic acidosis and an increase in CO\(_2\) production.
History and Physical Exam
Typically, MH symptoms manifest shortly after exposure to an inhalational anesthetic or succinylcholine; however, a delayed onset of up to 7 to 8 hours has been reported. Even among susceptible patients, MH does not always occur with anesthetic drug exposure, so a negative history cannot safely rule out the development of MH with subsequent exposures. The earliest signs of MH are tachycardia, an increase in end-tidal CO₂ concentration, and generalized skeletal muscle rigidity and masseter spasm. Hyperthermia, which is the hallmark of MH, may not be seen until later in the process.

Diagnostic Evaluation
There are no readily available diagnostic tests for MH: diagnosis is suspected when administration of neuromuscular blockers fails to result in paralysis. The gold standard for diagnosing MH is an in vitro contracture test (IVCT). This tests the contracture of muscle fibers in the presence of halothane or caffeine and monitors for abnormal muscle contractility.

The toxicologic differential diagnosis of MH is addressed in Table 47.1. The distinguishing features of MH are exposure to an implicated agent and failure to respond to neuromuscular blockade. Unlike in serotonin syndrome, rigidity in MH is not attended by muscle hyperactivity.

Management Guidelines
When hyperthermia does occur, temperatures will increase by 1°C to 2°C every 5 minutes, and that core temperatures should be continuously monitored. Similar to the treatment of hyperthermic agitated delirium and serotonin toxicity, it is crucial to stop administration of the offending agent. If hyperthermia is present or evolving, cooling should be initiated, as previously outlined.

Dantrolene can be lifesaving and is the definitive therapy for MH. Dantrolene blocks Ca²⁺ release from the skeletal muscle sarcoplasmic reticulum. After the introduction of dantrolene as a therapy, the mortality from MH decreased from 64% to <5%. The starting dose is 2.5 mg/kg IV bolus followed by 2 to 3 mg/kg IV every 15 minutes until resolution of symptoms or to a cumulative dose of 10 mg/kg. To prevent recrudescence, administration of 1 mg/kg IV every 4 to 6 hours for a minimum of 24 to 48 hours is recommended.

Other Drug-Related Hyperthermic Syndromes
Life-threatening hyperthermia may also be triggered when patients generate heat disproportionately to their cooling capacity. Drugs that cause status epilepticus, including isoniazid (INH) theophylline, and chloroquine, can cause excessive heat generation. Termination of convulsions, restoration of adequate ventilation, and rapid cooling are critical interventions. Most toxicologically caused seizures will not respond to traditional anticonvulsant agents such as phenytoin. Benzodiazepines or other sedative hypnotic agents are most efficacious. INH overdose with resultant status epilepticus may require pyridoxine therapy for adequate neurologic inhibition.

Agents that uncouple oxidative phosphorylation, such as salicylates or dinitrophenol (an illegal weight loss agent), may also cause life-threatening hyperthermia. Acidosis
evolves as the potential energy unable to be transformed into ATP is dissipated as heat. In each of these cases, the primary intervention is rapid identification of hyperthermia, rapid cooling, and minimization of psychomotor agitation with benzodiazepines, supportive care, and, in extreme cases, intubation with a neuromuscular paralytic agent.

CONCLUSION

Hyperthermic agitated delirium, serotonin syndrome, NMS, and MH share many physical findings. Distinguishing between these syndromes can be difficult and depends on a clear understanding of the patient’s pharmacologic history. Essential components of treatment include rapid cooling of life-threatening hyperthermia and supportive care with benzodiazepines. Secondary complications of toxicologic hyperthermic syndromes, which include rhabdomyolysis, acute kidney injury, hyperkalemia, liver injury, and DIC, should be identified and aggressively treated in an intensive care unit.

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dunkley et al., QJM. 2003</td>
<td>Newly created decision rules (Hunter criteria) were applied to prospectively collected dataset and compared with diagnosis by toxicologist.</td>
<td>Hunter criteria were more sensitive and specific (84% and 97% respectively) than Sternbach criteria (69% and 97%, respectively).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velamoor et al., J Nerv Ment Dis. 1994</td>
<td>Review of 340 case reports to determine the order of symptoms of NMS</td>
<td>70.5% were consistent with sequence of 1) mental status changes, 2) rigidity, 3) hyperthermia, and 4) autonomic dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison and Serpel, Eur J Anaesthesiol. 1998</td>
<td>Reported a case of a 36-year-old man who developed signs of MH as late as 8 h after the initiation of surgery.</td>
<td>Emphasizes on the importance of early consideration of diagnosis of MH when increase in end-expiratory CO2 and tachycardia are observed. Hyperthermia is a late manifestation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES

Metabolic Inhibitors
Lauren K. Shawn and Lewis S. Nelson

BACKGROUND
The complicated metabolic pathways of the human body present multiple opportunities for poisoning. Toxins can inhibit essential pathways in many ways, such as by blocking enzymes or overwhelming a normal pathway with toxic metabolites. Although there are many known toxins that affect various metabolic pathways, this chapter focuses on those that affect the mitochondria and cause metabolic acidosis, namely, aspirin, cyanide, methanol, and metformin.

ASPIRIN
Aspirin is a common over-the-counter medication used as a cardioprotective agent as well as a pain and fever reducer. Although it is used therapeutically to inhibit platelets and prostaglandins, in overdose, it has neurotoxic effects.

Pathophysiology
Aspirin is a weak acid with a pKₐ of 3.5, which means that in a solution with a pH of 3.5, 50% of the aspirin is in an ionized form. When the pH is lower than the pKₐ, more of the aspirin is in the nonionized form, which can move more freely through the lipid bilayer of cellular and subcellular membranes. The implication is that at the physiologic pH of tissues and blood, most aspirin is ionized and does not move easily between compartments. However, even at a pH of 7.4, a small amount of aspirin is nonionized (0.004%) and can travel into the brain, and this percentage increases with acidemia.¹ In experimental models, lowering the blood pH produces a shift of salicylate into the tissues, especially the brain; increasing the blood pH with sodium bicarbonate produces a shift in salicylate out of the tissues and into the blood.²⁻⁴ This is a key concept used to manage patients with aspirin toxicity.

In the mitochondria, ionized aspirin binds the hydrogen ions trapped in the intermembrane space and then exits the mitochondria in the nonionized form, preventing the proton motive force from fueling ATP formation (by uncoupling oxidative phosphorylation). Heat, but not energy, is therefore generated, and a low-grade temperature can be seen in patients with significant aspirin toxicity. The brain depends on ATP to pump water out of neurons, and in the absence of ATP, loss of oxidative phosphorylation leads to cerebral edema.
History and Physical Exam

Therapeutic salicylate serum concentrations typically range from 15 to 30 mg/dL. At a serum concentration of approximately 35 mg/dL, aspirin stimulates the brainstem’s respiratory center, causing hyperventilation that produces respiratory alkalosis. Some of the earliest signs of aspirin intoxication are tachypnea and hyperpnea; the physical exam of a suspected aspirin toxic patient should include careful attention to the rate and depth of breathing. As a weak acid, aspirin itself causes an anion gap metabolic acidosis at supratherapeutic concentrations. In addition, because of aspirin’s ability to impair aerobic metabolism and increase fatty acid metabolism, other organic acids and ketoacids accumulate. The classic blood gas in patients with aspirin toxicity, or salicylism shows a mixed process of respiratory alkalosis with a metabolic acidosis (as opposed to a respiratory compensation for a metabolic acidosis). This acid–base pattern may not be as evident in pediatric exposures, because of their limited ventilatory reserve. Adults who show a “normalization” of their serum pH due to a decreasing respiratory alkalosis are extremely concerning, as this is a sign that respiratory fatigue or lung injury is preventing proper ventilation. Patients with acidemia late in the course of salicylate toxicity are at high risk of permanent neurologic damage and death, as the lowered pH will allow more aspirin to enter the brain.

Tinnitus or the sensation of hearing loss can occur early in toxicity. In the era before immune-modulating drugs, patients with rheumatologic disease were often instructed to titrate their aspirin doses to just below the amount that induced tinnitus.

The most concerning and consequential sign of toxicity is alteration in mental status. This is a sign of cerebral edema and an indication for more aggressive management such as dialysis. Seizures are often a preterminal event. Neuroglycopenia may occur and cause mental status abnormalities even when the serum glucose is within normal limits. The glucose concentration in the cerebral spinal fluid is depleted as salicylate-poisoned neurons utilize more glucose to compensate for the loss of ATP due to uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation.5

The signs and symptoms of chronic salicylism may be more difficult to appreciate, which can delay detection. Furthermore, chronic salicylism is often found in elderly patients, in whom altered mental status, tachypnea, tachycardia, and mild anion gap acidosis may be misinterpreted as resulting from infection, malnourishment, cardiopulmonary disease, or dementia. In one study of 73 consecutive adults hospitalized with salicylate poisoning, 27% were not correctly diagnosed for as long as 72 hours after admission, and the mortality rate associated with this delayed diagnosis was 25%. Many of these patients had neurology consults for altered mental status prior to correct diagnosis.6

Aspirin toxicity can increase pulmonary capillary permeability, leading to acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). This pulmonary toxicity can impair ventilation, reducing the respiratory alkalosis and worsening the clinical effects of salicylate toxicity. It can also limit the ability to use sodium bicarbonate infusion as a therapy, since patients with ARDS may not be able to tolerate the fluid load.

Management Guidelines
Initial Resuscitation

Salicylate-poisoned patients can decompensate rapidly if not carefully managed. The hyperpnea, tachypnea, and diaphoresis associated with aspirin toxicity cause a large amount of insensible losses, so fluid status should be monitored and repletion with
normal saline should be initiated on arrival. Every patient with suspected salicylate poisoning requires testing of serum salicylate concentration, and repeat levels are needed if the initial concentration is elevated. The frequency of retesting should be based on clinical findings and trends in serum concentration. Additional laboratory testing should include a blood gas (arterial or venous) to monitor pH and pCO2, serum potassium, serum acetaminophen concentration (in patients with toxicity thought to be due to self-harm), and urine pH every 1 to 2 hours (see Alkalinization below). Given the acid/base physiology of aspirin, a “normal” pH and pCO2 are not reassuring.

**GI Decontamination**
Activated charcoal should be administered unless there is a concern for aspiration in a vomiting or altered patient. Whole bowel irrigation should be avoided as it may solubilize an aspirin bezoar and facilitate absorption. If there is concern for a bezoar or the serum salicylate level has plateaued despite alkalinization, multiple doses of activated charcoal may be indicated.

**Alkalinization**
There is no specific antidote for salicylism, but alkalinization is a mainstay of treatment. Alkalinization of the serum promotes trapping of the ionized salicylate outside the brain. Furthermore, alkaline urine promotes elimination of salicylate; and this effect increases logarithmically as the pH of urine increases from five to eight. There is no specific uptake mechanism in the kidney for salicylate, and passive reabsorption of charged molecules is very limited. Under therapeutic conditions, approximately 10% of salicylates are excreted in the urine as salicylic acid, while the majority of the salicylate is metabolized into a conjugated form in the liver prior to renal elimination. In overdose, the enzymes involved in hepatic metabolism become saturated, and the amount of urinary unconjugated salicylic acid increases. Urine alkalinization does not affect elimination of conjugated salicylate, so serum clearance is less affected. To alkalinize the serum and the urine, sodium bicarbonate is typically dosed as a 1 to 2 mEq/kg bolus, followed by 150 mEq mixed in D5 water at twice maintenance. Titrate with goal of serum pH around 7.5 to 7.55 and urine pH around 8.

**Electrolyte Management**
Alkalinization will cause potassium to shift intracellularly in order to release hydrogen ions into the serum. The kidneys sense this relative hypokalemia and will begin to reabsorb potassium in exchange for hydrogen ions, preventing proper urine alkalinization despite the sodium bicarbonate infusion. Serum potassium should be repleted to normal levels in order to suppress this physiologic response and maintain urinary alkalinization.

**Airway Management**
Although many patients with altered mental status are intubated for airway protection, in the case of salicylism, inadequate matching of hyperventilation and subsequent CO2 retention can be catastrophic because the resulting acidemia will shift more salicylate into the brain. Sedation should be avoided unless the patient is carefully monitored or receiving ventilatory support. In patients receiving mechanical ventilation, every effort should be made to prevent a falling pH and rising PCO2, which may be done by matching the ventilator settings with the patient’s pre-intubation minute ventilation. An experienced
operator should perform the intubation, and sodium bicarbonate, 1 to 2 mEq/kg bolus, should be given just prior to intubation to ensure alkalemia during rapid sequence intubation. Patients will require large tidal volumes and a high respiratory rate with the goal of a minute ventilation of 20 to 30 L/min. Despite these steps, patients still may be unable to maintain an appropriate serum pH or may suffer ventilator-associated barotrauma, in which case hemodialysis is indicated.

Hemodialysis
Although some resources and textbooks cite a serum aspirin concentration >100 mg/dL as an absolute indication for dialysis, this does not mean that a patient may not need extracorporeal elimination at lower concentrations. Hemodialysis is indicated when there are signs of end-organ injury or when pulmonary edema and lung injury prevents further use of sodium bicarbonate. This is particularly true in the case of the patient with altered mental status, as serum concentrations may underestimate central nervous system (CNS) concentrations.

**CYANIDE**

Cyanide is a chemical asphyxiant. It is most commonly encountered clinically in patients who were victims of fires, especially involving the combustion of fabrics and plastics. However, cyanide should be on the differential of a sudden death in an otherwise healthy person because it is such a fast-acting, lethal, and potentially treatable toxin. Cyanide salts such as sodium cyanide and potassium cyanide are used in jewelry making, plastic manufacturing, photography, and other industries. They react with water to form hydrogen cyanide, a gas. Organic compounds containing cyanide also exist. Acetonitrile is methyl cyanide and is commonly found in acrylic nail glue remover and other similar cosmetics. When ingested, it is metabolized by the P450 system to hydrogen cyanide and formaldehyde, causing delayed toxicity.

Iatrogenic cyanide poisoning can occur when nitroprusside is used for the treatment of hypertension. Each nitroprusside molecule contains five cyanide molecules, which may be liberated. After rapid or prolonged infusion, or in malnourished patients, cyanide or its metabolite (thiocyanate) toxicity may occur.

Pathophysiology
Acute cyanide toxicity can occur via inhalational, oral, dermal, and parenteral routes. The dose of cyanide required to produce toxicity is dependent on the form of cyanide and the duration and route of exposure. Hydrogen cyanide gas at concentrations above 270 ppm can be immediately fatal, and ingestion of 200 mg of KCN salt can be fatal within minutes. Cyanide is a very potent toxin and is on a short list of rapidly acting, fatal exposures.

Cyanide is eliminated from the body by multiple pathways. The major route is the enzymatic conversion to thiocyanate by rhodanese (thiolsulfate–cyanide sulfurtransferase). This enzyme catalyzes the transfer of a sulfur group from a sulfur donor, such as thiosulfate, to cyanide to form thiocyanate. In acute poisoning, the ability of rhodanese to detoxify cyanide is limited by the endogenous amount of sulfur donor, which is rapidly depleted. Thiocyanate has relatively little inherent toxicity and is eliminated in the urine.
Cyanide inhibits many enzymes, but its most consequential effect is the inhibition of cytochrome oxidase in the mitochondria. Cytochrome oxidase is a key enzyme of the electron transport chain, and oxidative phosphorylation cannot occur without it. Cyanide acts at the cytochrome a3 portion of complex IV of the electron transport chain. As a result, hydrogen ions cannot combine with oxygen to form water, ATP cannot be generated, and oxygen utilization by the tissues is decreased. Cellular asphyxiation occurs despite normal blood oxygen tension, and the excess hydrogen ions cause acidemia. Lactate accumulates because the cessation of the electron transport chain prevents the conversion of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH) back into NAD+ and H+, and this favors the conversion of pyruvate to lactate.

**History and Physical Exam**

Cyanide toxicity can cause rapid and severe neurologic dysfunction and hemodynamic instability. When organic cyanogenic compounds such as acetonitrile are ingested, however, symptoms may be delayed for hours because the parent compound must be metabolized to release cyanide. Cyanide toxicity from a nitroprusside infusion may take hours to days to become clinically apparent.

CNS signs and symptoms of cyanide toxicity are typical of those associated with progressive hypoxia and include headache, anxiety, agitation, confusion, lethargy, seizures, and coma. Centrally mediated tachypnea occurs initially and is followed by bradypnea. Cardiovascular signs can vary early in the clinical course, but bradycardia and hypotension are usually the preterminal findings.

Cyanide victims have classically been described as having cherry red skin coloration, due to increased oxygenation of the venous blood. Cyanide does not typically cause cyanosis despite the similar-sounding names. The word cyanide is derived from the Greek word for blue *kyanos*, due to its liberation from Prussian blue (ferric hexacyanoferrate) upon heating.

Clinicians should have high suspicion for cyanide poisoning in hemodynamically unstable or comatose fire victims, industrial or laboratory workers with sudden collapse, and suicidal patients with rapid collapse and metabolic acidosis following ingestion. Cyanide toxicity should also be considered a potential diagnosis in patients on nitroprusside infusions that develop altered mental status, metabolic acidosis, and abnormal vital signs.

**Cyanide and Nitroprusside**

Nitroprusside is a nitric oxide–releasing drug and is used as a vasodilator. The standard infusion rate is 3 mcg/kg/min (0.25 mcg/kg/min to 10 mcg/kg/min). The nitroprusside molecule contains five cyanide radicals that are slowly liberated and rapidly metabolized to thiocyanate. In healthy individuals, cyanide detoxification occurs at a rate of about 1 g/kg/min, which corresponds to a sodium nitroprusside infusion rate of 2 g/kg/min. However, critical illness and malnutrition can deplete sulfur stores, so ICU patients are at increased risk for cyanide toxicity. An infusion of nitroprusside at a rate of more than 15 mcg/kg/min administered over a few hours or more than 4 mcg/kg/min for more than 12 hours may overwhelm the capacity of rhodanese for detoxifying cyanide.
Sodium thiosulfate is sometimes coadministered with nitroprusside in order to prevent cyanide toxicity. Dosing of 1 g sodium thiosulfate for every 100 mg of nitroprusside is typically sufficient to prevent cyanide accumulation. However, it is important to note that thiocyanate is renally eliminated and may accumulate in patients with impaired renal function, causing toxicity. The symptoms of thiocyanate toxicity are nonspecific and may include nausea, vomiting, fatigue, dizziness, confusion, delirium, and seizures. Extremely elevated thiocyanate concentrations (>200 g/mL) may produce life-threatening effects, such as hypertension and intracranial pressure elevation. Anion gap metabolic acidosis does not occur with thiocyanate toxicity. Hemodialysis clears thiocyanate from the serum and should be strongly considered in patients with severe clinical manifestations of thiocyanate toxicity.

**Laboratory Tests**

Laboratory testing for cyanide is not readily available in most clinical settings. In general, the patient’s history and physical exam and other ancillary testing will guide management. Expected laboratory findings include an anion gap metabolic acidosis, an elevated lactate concentration, and an elevated venous oxygen saturation. However, none of these findings are specific for cyanide. Other metabolic inhibitors such as carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, and sodium azide, as well as medical conditions such as sepsis, high-output cardiac syndromes, and left-to-right intracardiac shunts, can reduce oxygen extraction. Simultaneous arterial and venous blood gases may show a reduced difference in arterial and venous oxygenation saturation (<10 mm Hg).

A significant association exists between blood cyanide and serum lactate concentrations. In a small group of patients with a strongly suggestive history of cyanide ingestion, a serum lactate concentration above 8 mmol/L was associated with sensitivity of 94%, specificity of 70%, positive predictive value of 64%, and negative predictive value of 98% for a blood cyanide concentration above 1.0 g/mL, which is a toxic concentration. In a case–control study of fire victims, a lactate over 10 mmol/L was a sensitive indicator of cyanide intoxication.

**Management Guidelines**

**Initial Resuscitation**

Since cyanide can be so rapidly fatal, there is a limited window to initiate resuscitation. In most cases, empiric administration of antidotes will be required, based on history and clinical appearance. Resuscitation with a focus on airway, breathing, and circulation is the mainstay of treatment, but timely administration of the antidotes is paramount. Patients should be given 100% oxygen. Patients with altered mental status or fire victims with signs of oropharyngeal burns may require intubation in order to protect the airway. Vaspressors may be required to treat persistent hypotension despite adequate intravenous volume resuscitation.

**GI Decontamination**

Although some in vitro studies suggest that cyanide does not have significant adsorption to activated charcoal, it remains reasonable to administer charcoal to a patient with a protected airway in the setting of potentially toxic ingestion.
Medical Therapy
Either hydroxycobalamin or a cyanide antidote kit should be administered as soon as cyanide poisoning is suspected. Hydroxycobalamin, a vitamin B₁₂ precursor, directly binds cyanide (1:1) to form cyanocobalamin (vitamin B₁₂). Hydroxycobalamin has few adverse effects, including a reddish discoloration of the skin, mucous membranes, and urine that can last a few days. Colorimetric laboratory testing can be affected by the red color, and common lab tests, such as serum lactate, may yield inaccurate results. For this reason, blood specimens should be taken for laboratory analysis prior to administering hydroxycobalamin. The package insert lists the lab tests commonly affected and for how long the interference can last. Adult dosing for hydroxycobalamin is 5 g administered as an IV infusion over 15 minutes. Depending on the severity of the poisoning and the clinical response, an additional 5 g may be administered (total dose of 10 g).

The cyanide antidote kit contains three components: amyl nitrite, sodium nitrite, and sodium thiosulfate. Both thiosulfate and nitrite have antidotal efficacy when given alone in animal models of cyanide poisoning, but they have even greater benefit when they are given in combination. Thiosulfate donates the sulfur atoms necessary for rhodanese to convert cyanide to thiocyanate. The nitrites generate methemoglobin, which cyanide binds preferentially over cytochrome a₃, leading to improved cytochrome oxidase function. Amyl nitrite is contained within glass pearls that are crushed and intermittently inhaled or introduced into the ventilator. IV sodium nitrite is preferred, and the use of amyl nitrite pearls is reserved for cases in which IV access is delayed or not possible. It is important to note that standard testing for methemoglobin does not detect cyanomethemoglobin. Therefore, it may be difficult to define the optimal methemoglobin concentration to bind cyanide without causing further hypoxia. In addition to excessive methemoglobin formation, other adverse effects of nitrites include hypotension and tachycardia because of its vasodilatory effects. Avoiding rapid infusion, monitoring blood pressure, and adhering to dosing guidelines limit adverse effects.

Sodium thiosulfate is the second component of the cyanide antidote kit, and it works synergistically with both nitrites and hydroxycobalamin in the detoxification of cyanide. Because sodium thiosulfate does not cause methemoglobinemia, it can be used without nitrites in circumstances when the creation of methemoglobinemia would be concerning, such as in patients with high carboxyhemoglobin concentrations. (Adult dosing for sodium thiosulfate: 12.5 g IV over 10 to 30 minutes, adult dosing for amyl nitrite [only if no IV access]: break one ampule in front of mouth and hold for 15 seconds, remove for 15 seconds and repeat as needed until sodium nitrate infusion is begun [if needed]. Adult dosing for sodium nitrite [NaNO₂] 3% [30 mg/mL]: 10 mL [300 mg] IV over 2 to 4 minutes.)

METHANOL
Methanol is a common industrial and household product. It can be found in windshield washer fluid, cooking fuel gels for camping and buffet platters (Sterno), gas line antifreeze, photocopier ink, and perfumes. Large outbreaks occur when improper fermentation occurs in illegal ethanol production. Management is often complicated by the inability to obtain serum concentrations in a timely manner.
**Pathophysiology**

Methanol is rapidly absorbed when ingested. It can also be inhaled and dermally absorbed, but these latter routes are uncommon. Although methanol is not eliminated renally, it can be exhaled—a slow exit route that explains the elimination half-life of almost 30 hours.

Methanol is slowly metabolized to formate through successive oxidation by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) and aldehyde dehydrogenase, each of which is coupled to the reduction of NAD\(^+\) to NADH and H\(^+\). Formate is a mitochondrial toxin that inhibits cytochrome oxidase, interfering with oxidative phosphorylation. The retinal epithelium and optic nerve are especially sensitive to methanol, and affected patients may experience visual impairment ranging from blurry or hazy vision to “snowfield vision” or total blindness.

**History and Physical Exam**

Toxic alcohols, such as ethylene glycol and methanol, are on the differential diagnosis for anion gap metabolic acidosis. Like ethanol, methanol can cause inebriation, but animal studies suggest that its lower molecular weight makes it less inebriating than other alcohols. Methanol levels of 25 to 50 mg/dL can be toxic, but may not be high enough to cause inebriation, especially in an ethanol-tolerant individual. Lack of inebriation, however, should not be used to rule out toxicity.

The basal ganglia are also uniquely sensitive to formate. Methanol is on a short list of toxins that can cause isolated basal ganglia lesions on CT and MRI. In a comatose patient with an acidemia, isolated basal ganglia infarcts may point to a methanol exposure. In one series, typical radiologic lesions were present in six of nine cases. Other CNS lesions reported include necrosis of the corpus callosum and intracranial hemorrhage.

**Laboratory Tests**

Local laboratory capabilities greatly affect management of methanol-intoxicated patients. If methanol concentrations can be determined within a clinically reasonable time frame (e.g., within the same day), management and disposition is straightforward. In institutions in which report of serum concentrations takes days to return, physicians often use surrogate tests, which may have significant limitations, to stratify patients.

Methanol and other toxic alcohols are often first considered in the differential of a patient with an unexplained anion gap metabolic acidosis. To help exclude other diagnoses, a serum lactate concentration, serum or urine ketones, salicylate concentration, ethanol concentration, and renal function tests should be assessed. Traditionally, toxic alcohols cause an anion gap acidosis with normal lactate and negative ketones. Once a toxic alcohol is considered on the differential diagnosis, serum concentrations should be sent. Even if the result will not return for days, it can still help guide management.

Often, the diagnostic dilemma in an alcohol user is distinguishing toxic alcohol poisoning from alcoholic ketoacidosis (AKA), since in both cases, an anion gap metabolic acidosis is present. One means of identifying AKA is to note an improvement in the anion gap after administration of intravenous fluids, thiamine, and glucose.
Osmol Gap

Checking an osmol gap historically has been considered an essential part of the evaluation of a potentially toxic alcohol-poisoned patient. However, there are several critical limitations to the test. The osmol gap is defined as the difference between the values for the measured osmolality and the calculated osmolarity. The formula to calculate osmolarity is as follows:

\[
\text{Osmolarity} = 2(\text{Na}^+) + \text{BUN} / 2.8 + \text{glucose} / 18
\]

\[
\text{Osmol gap} = \text{measured osmolality} - \text{calculated osmolarity}
\]

It is helpful to account for any ethanol in the osmolarity because it may explain the presence of unaccounted osmols:

\[
\text{Osmolarity} = 2(\text{Na}^+) + \text{BUN} / 2.8 + \text{glucose} / 18 + \text{ethanol} / 4.6
\]

In methanol (or any alcohol) poisoning, the toxic molecule has osmotic activity that is measured but not calculated, which creates the osmol gap. The anion gap does not increase until methanol, for example, is metabolized to formate. Although the formate metabolite also has osmotic activity, its activity is accounted for by the sodium ion in the osmolarity calculation because it exists as dissociated sodium formate in solution. As a result, there will be an elevated osmol gap and a normal anion gap initially after the exposure; but as time progresses, the anion gap will increase and the osmol gap will decrease.

A normal osmol gap is approximately $-2 \pm 6$; the range to account for 95% of patient populations is $-10$ to $+14$. Note that a normal gap measurement can be misleading, since the patient’s baseline osmol gap is unknown. For example, a patient with a normal osmol gap of $-5$, who presents with an osmol gap of $9$, has in reality an osmol gap of $14$. Since a patient’s baseline osmol gap is unknown, it is impossible to know whether the calculated gap during their initial presentation is elevated or not.

Finally, although large osmol gaps may be suggestive of toxic alcohol ingestions, common conditions such as alcoholic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, renal failure, and shock are all associated with elevated osmol gaps. ICU patients, regardless of the underlying diagnosis, often have osmol gaps near $20$. As a result, a normal osmol gap cannot safely exclude a toxic alcohol exposure, and a mildly elevated one is not specific enough for confirmation. However, a very high osmol gap ($>30$ mOsm/L) is very suggestive of toxic alcohol poisoning.

Management Guidelines

Medical Therapy

Blocking ADH is the mainstay of treatment in methanol poisoning, since this prevents the production of formate, the toxic metabolite. Blocking ADH can be achieved by the administration of either ethanol or fomepizole. ADH has greater affinity for ethanol than for methanol, and complete blockade occurs with serum ethanol concentrations of approximately 100 mg/dL. Fomepizole is a competitive inhibitor of ADH. Intravenous ethanol is no longer readily available in the United States, but in extreme cases when no other antidote is available and dialysis is delayed, oral ethanol may be used.

Traditionally, intravenous ethanol was the antidote of choice, but its use necessitated an ICU bed, and its administration was complicated by mental status changes, potential
loss of airway, and electrolyte changes. The goal of either oral or intravenous administration of ethanol is a serum concentration of 100 mg/dL, which can be inebriating to those without any tolerance to ethanol. Fomepizole is not associated with the mental status or electrolyte changes commonly seen with ethanol administration, and its use may not require an ICU admission. Fomepizole is given as a loading dose of 15 mg/kg, followed by doses of 10 mg/kg every 12 hours for four doses. Importantly, this dosing regimen of fomepizole is based on the pharmacokinetics of ethylene glycol, not methanol. The main limitation of fomepizole is that the half-life of methanol, once ADH is blocked, reaches 50 hours. Methanol is not renally eliminated, but rather is eliminated via exhalation. As a result, a patient may require a week-long course of fomepizole, which can be expensive and require complicated dosing regimens. Fomepizole induces its own metabolism after 48 hours of use by activating the CYP 450 enzyme 2E1. As a result, higher doses (15 mg/kg) may be required when using beyond 48 hours. In this instance, hemodialysis may be a preferred method of treatment.

Hemodialysis
Hemodialysis is indicated in patients with severe acidemia, signs of end-organ injury such as coma or renal failure, and those with methanol concentrations >50 mg/dL. Hemodialysis can clear toxic alcohols and their metabolites and correct any acid–base disturbances. A nephrology consult should be obtained early in the clinical course of any toxic alcohol patient so that the proper resources can be obtained in a timely manner if needed. In cases of large ingestions resulting in high concentrations of methanol or ethylene glycol, multiple rounds of hemodialysis as well as administration of fomepizole in between sessions may be indicated. Patients should be monitored for recurrent acidosis, abnormal vision changes, and renal failure (in cases of ethylene glycol poisoning) post-dialysis.

Folic Acid
Folate should be administered to any patient with suspected methanol toxicity. Folate is an inexpensive, water-soluble vitamin with minimal associated adverse reactions. Folinic acid (leucovorin) has also been shown to be effective. Animal models show that folic acid and folinic acid enhance formate elimination. Scant human case reports also suggest a benefit. Formate is bound by tetrahydrofolate and then undergoes metabolism by 10-formyltetrahydrofolate dehydrogenase to carbon dioxide and water.

METFORMIN
Metformin is an oral antihyperglycemic agent commonly used to treat diabetes mellitus. Its mechanism of action is inhibition of gluconeogenesis and decreased hepatic glucose production. However, it also enhances peripheral glucose uptake by the GLUT transporters in muscle and adipose cells. Metformin overdose should not cause hypoglycemia unless the patient has increased metabolic demands from being critically ill. The most concerning toxicity involves hyperlactemia and metabolic acidosis, commonly referred to as MALA—metformin-associated lactic acidosis.

It is possible for MALA to develop after a single acute overdose of metformin. More commonly, MALA occurs in patients who are therapeutically on metformin and...
Section 11

Toxicologic Critical Care

Toxicologic Critical Care

Patients who have unintentional metformin intoxication do poorly compared to those with intentional metformin overdose. This may be due to a delay to diagnosis, inciting medical illness-causing tissue hypoxia or renal failure, or other comorbidities. Patients who are managed on metformin are advised to hold their medication for 72 hours following the administration of iodinated contrast to prevent MALA; however, some authors argue that only diabetics with impaired renal function prior to receiving IV contrast are at risk.

Pathophysiology

Recent animal and in vitro studies show that metformin is a mitochondrial toxin. Metformin decreases lactate uptake and consumption in the hepatocyte. However, metformin also decreases global oxygen consumption and causes mitochondrial dysfunction in nonhepatic tissues as well.

The diagnosis of MALA is controversial. The Cochrane Review disputes its existence, but that is likely because any data regarding MALA are derived from case reports and case series rather than randomized controlled trials. Randomized controlled trials of metformin exclude patients with kidney disease and are not assessing for the effects of overdose, so the incidence of MALA in those trials is essentially nonexistent. Based on case reports, case series, and animal models, evidence is overwhelmingly supportive of the existence of MALA, and it should be considered in patients with anion gap metabolic acidosis and elevated lactate concentrations.

History and Physical Exam

MALA can be a fatal, but easily missed, diagnosis. Initial symptoms—which include nausea, lethargy, vomiting, and abdominal pain—can be nonspecific. Careful history should assess for etiology of renal impairment such as dehydration, recent infection, new medication, or a recent IV contrast study. Patients can develop a severe metabolic acidosis and multiorgan dysfunction.

Management Guidelines

Although a sodium bicarbonate infusion may be indicated in patients who have a serum bicarbonate concentration <5 mEq/L, it will likely be insufficient to correct the acid–base abnormalities associated with MALA. Hemodialysis is the mainstay of treatment in those with severe acidemia. Hemodialysis does not effectively remove metformin, but it corrects the acid–base disorder and possibly the renal complications.

CONCLUSION

Mitochondrial toxins can cause severe disruptions in oxidative phosphorylation and ultimately lead to multiorgan failure and death. Initial symptoms are often nonspecific and can be easily overlooked for nontoxicologic etiologies. However, any patient with an anion gap metabolic acidosis, elevated lactate, or suspicious history should be rapidly evaluated for these toxins with judicious use of ancillary testing and antidotes.
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aspirin</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
<td><strong>DESIGN</strong></td>
<td><strong>RESULT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill, <em>Pediatrics</em>. 1971²</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Bicarbonate lowered salicylate levels in muscle, brain, and liver. Carbon dioxide had the opposite effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapoport et al., <em>J Clin Investigations</em>. 1945⁵</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Salicylates cause a respiratory alkalosis, sedatives increase toxicity, and bicarbonate infusions increase pH but do not affect pCO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thurston et al., <em>J Clin Investigation</em>. 1970⁰</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Salicylates decrease brain glucose concentration and increase lactate concentration. Administration of glucose improves survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stolbach et al., <em>Acad Emerg Med</em>. 2008⁸</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 3,144 patients with salicylate poisoning</td>
<td>Improper mechanical ventilation causes respiratory acidosis, acidemia, and clinical deterioration. All intubated patients had pH &lt; 7.4; acidosis correlated with outcome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cyanide</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baud et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2002¹⁴</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 11 patients with cyanide poisoning</td>
<td>Serum lactate concentration &gt; 8 mmol/L had sensitivity of 94%, specificity of 70%, positive predictive value of 64%, and negative predictive value of 96% for a blood cyanide concentration above 1.0 g/mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baud et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 1991¹⁵</td>
<td>Prospective case–control study of serum cyanide levels from 109 patients obtained at the scenes of residential fires prior to medical treatment</td>
<td>Lactate &gt; 10 mmol/L sensitive for CN intoxication, lactate elevations correlate with CN more than CO levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borron et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med</em>. 2007¹⁶</td>
<td>Prospective, observational case series of 69 patients with cyanide poisoning</td>
<td>67% of confirmed cyanide cases survived after hydroxycobalamin administration; adverse reactions included skin and urine discoloration and hypertension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methanol</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>McMartin et al., <em>Biochem Med</em>. 1975¹⁸</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Formic acid is responsible for the metabolic acidosis in methanol poisoning. 4-Methylpyrazole can effectively block formate production and prevent acidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoffman et al., <em>Clin Tox</em>. 1993¹⁷</td>
<td>Prospective, observational study of 321 patients requiring determination of serum ethanol and electrolyte levels</td>
<td>Normal osmol gap is −2 ± 6. Normal osmol gap cannot rule out toxic alcohol ingestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brent et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2001²¹</td>
<td>Prospective, observational case series of 11 patients administered fomepizole for treatment of methanol poisoning</td>
<td>Metabolic disturbances resolved in all 11 patients; 9 patients survived. Adverse reactions were minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McMartin et al., <em>JPET</em>. 1977²⁵</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Folate increased formate metabolism to CO₂. Folate deficiency decreased formate metabolism and elimination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metformin</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seidowsky et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2009²⁷</td>
<td>Retrospective single-center MICU study of 42 patients admitted for metformin-associated lactic acidosis</td>
<td>Intentional metformin overdose had more favorable outcome compared to unintentional intoxication. Multiorgan dysfunction poor prognostic indicator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## REFERENCES

15. Protti et al., *Crit Care*. 2012
16. Salpeter et al., *Cochrane database*. 2010

### LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Owen et al., <em>BioChem J</em>. 2000</td>
<td>In vitro study</td>
<td>Metformin inhibits gluconeogenesis by inhibiting the respiratory chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protti et al., <em>Crit Care</em>. 2012</td>
<td>Animal study</td>
<td>Metformin inhibits global oxygen consumption and inhibits complex I of the mitochondria in various tissues including the liver, kidney, and heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salpeter et al., <em>Cochrane database</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 347 prospective trials and observational cohort studies of metformin use in patients with type 2 diabetes</td>
<td>No evidence that metformin causes increased lactic acidosis. Study did not look at patients with impaired renal function or with metformin overdose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Caustics**

Payal Sud and Mark Su

**BACKGROUND**

In 2010, the American Association of Poison Control Centers documented 201,750 reported exposures to caustic household cleaning substances. Most acid, alkali, and other caustic exposures occur via ingestion: 85% are unintentional, and more than 90% occur in children.\(^1\) Intentional exposures, although less common, are more likely to result in severe damage.\(^2,3\) Immediate risks of caustic exposure include esophageal perforation and death. Delayed risks include stricture formation and esophageal carcinoma.\(^2,4\)

**PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**

The extent of tissue injury caused by contact with caustics is determined by four factors: the amount of caustic ingested, the specific caustic ingested, the caustic’s pH, and its titratable acid/alkaline reserve (TAR).\(^5,6\) Significant damage can be caused by strong acids (pH < 3) and strong bases (pH > 11), as well by certain substances with near-neutral pH, such as phenol, because of high TAR.\(^4\) TAR is defined as the amount of HCl or NaOH needed to titrate a given caustic to a pH of 8, which is close to normal esophageal pH.\(^5\) In evaluating the potential of a substance to cause esophageal injury, TAR may be more accurate than pH; however, TAR values can vary greatly among similar substances and even between solid and liquid forms of the same substance. TAR values may be unavailable to the emergency physician during the initial evaluation of a patient; however, TARs of common household substances are published and can be accessed as needed.\(^5\) While the practical use of TARs in the ED is limited, it is important for the emergency physician to be mindful that a substance can cause significant caustic injury despite having a near-neutral pH.

**Alkalis**

Strong alkalis (or bases) produce liquefactive tissue necrosis when hydroxide (OH\(^-\)) ions penetrate deeply into tissue surfaces. This necrotic tissue is then hydrolyzed by enzymes and forms a soft, purulent fluid mass.\(^7\) Alkalis commonly encountered in the home that can cause significant caustic injury in small amounts include lye-containing liquids typically used in oven cleaners and drain openers (historically composed of potassium hydroxide (KOH), but now more commonly sodium hydroxide (NaOH)). Solid caustics that contain strong alkalis, such as laundry powders and dishwasher detergents, can also cause severe injury in small volumes because of prolonged adherence of the solid to
the mucosa. Household strength ammonium hydroxide (NH\textsubscript{4}OH, found in multiple household cleaning products) and sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl, found in household bleach) are generally dilute enough not to cause significant esophageal damage except when ingested in large volumes (e.g., in an intentional ingestion).

Liquid detergent capsules, only relatively recently available in North America, deserve special mention for their unique ability to cause serious injury. Introduced in Europe in 2001, these detergent capsules became available in North America in 2011. They contain a concentrated liquid detergent, composed of anionic and ionic detergents, propylene glycol, and ethanol, in a water-soluble polyvinyl alcohol sachet. Although the pH of the detergents is close to physiologic (pH 7 to 9), they have caused severe esophageal, skin, and eye irritation and damage. A recent retrospective review attempted to catalogue the presenting symptoms and outcomes of patients exposed to these capsules. The majority of exposures were unintentional ingestions in children, and vomiting was the most common presenting complaint. Several children presented with severe respiratory distress and central nervous system (CNS) depression, typically shortly after exposure. Consistent follow-up was not possible in a majority of the cases, and thus the long-term effect of these liquid detergent ingestions is unclear; as such, these exposures should be managed cautiously.

Finally, the ingestion of button batteries historically posed a serious threat because of their tendency to leak sodium and potassium hydroxide upon contact with the esophageal mucosa. Newer batteries, although still of clinical concern, are significantly more resistant to leakage.

**Acids**

Acids dissociate into hydrogen (H\textsuperscript{+}) ions and cause coagulation necrosis, which results in desiccation of tissues and a firm eschar formation. Eschar formation may, in fact, protect against further injury by limiting deeper penetration of the acid. Common strong household acids include hydrochloric acid (found in toilet bowl cleaners and other cleaning products) and hydrofluoric acid (HF) (present in rust removers and wall and tile cleaners). HF has unique clinical manifestations and management guidelines, which will be discussed at the end of the chapter.

**HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM**

Alkalis cause liquefactive necrosis, and acids cause coagulation necrosis; however, exposure to both caustics presents similarly. When managing a case of caustic exposure, the EP should obtain a detailed patient history, including intent of ingestion; type, formulation (solid or liquid) and concentration of compound ingested; amount of compound ingested; and time of ingestion. The physical exam should observe for the following:

- Nausea or emesis
- Oropharyngeal edema or burns
- Drooling, hoarseness, or stridor
- Dysphagia or odynophagia
- Epigastric pain or hematemesis

These findings may be indicative of esophageal, gastric, or airway injury. Details of the specific injury patterns associated with each clinical presentation are outlined in the endoscopy and management sections that follow.
DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Laboratory Tests
In addition to the history and physical exam, certain blood tests should be performed. A 2003 study found an arterial pH < 7.22 and a base deficit of 12 to be reliable predictors of severe esophageal injury requiring surgical intervention, such as transtorial esophagectomy and total gastrectomy. The same study reported a pH < 7.11 and a base deficit of 16.1 to be predictors of death despite intervention, suggesting that severe acidosis correlates well with the degree of tissue necrosis and subsequent lactic acid production.

Imaging
Chest and abdominal x-rays are recommended following any caustic ingestion to exclude obvious esophageal perforation; however, the sensitivity of these tests is limited. Computed tomography (CT) is more sensitive and should be considered in patients with negative x-rays despite a high clinical suspicion for perforation. Contrast esophagography can also be used to detect perforations, which can be visualized on a radiograph as extravasation of the contrast medium. The choice of contrast medium remains controversial; some experts advocate a water-soluble contrast like gastrografin to minimize mediastinal and peritoneal irritation upon extravasation, while others advocate barium, which is less likely to cause aspiration pneumonitis. The appropriate contrast medium should be chosen in conjunction with radiology, toxicology, and gastroenterology consult. For grading of esophageal injury, recent studies suggest benefits of using CT instead of endoscopy; currently, however, endoscopy remains the current standard.

Endoscopy
For the emergency physician, the greatest challenge in treating caustic ingestion is determining which patients require immediate endoscopy. Although it carries a potential risk of further esophageal damage, endoscopic evaluation can differentiate low-grade injuries in patients who may be safely discharged from patients with high-grade injuries requiring more extensive management, including potential surgery or other intervention to reduce the risk of stricture formation.

In the past, endoscopy with rigid endoscopes carried a high risk of perforation. Newer flexible endoscopes have lowered this risk and made endoscopy easier to perform; nevertheless, the indication and timing of the procedure remain controversial. Several studies have evaluated history and physical exam criteria as indicators for emergent endoscopy in patients with caustic ingestions. Their conclusions vary widely. A retrospective review of 378 children found no statistically significant relationship between the presence of symptoms (such as vomiting, excessive drooling, abdominal pain, oropharyngeal burns, dysphagia, nausea and refusal to drink) and the severity of esophageal lesions and thus advocated endoscopy in all ingestions. A second retrospective study of 156 children arrived at similar conclusions, excepting a correlation of vomiting with second- and third-degree esophageal lesions.

Two other studies reported opposite findings in a similar population. In a review of 79 patients younger than 20 years of age, the absence of vomiting, drooling, and stridor was found to have a 100% negative predictive value in identifying esophageal injury, while the presence of two or more of the above three symptoms had a 50% positive predictive value for esophageal injury. Based on these findings, the authors recommended limiting the use of endoscopy to patients with clinical symptoms (vomiting, drooling, stridor) rather
than performing endoscopy on all patients. A second prospective study of 85 children likewise reported the absence of symptoms to have a 100% negative predictive value for esophageal injury, and the presence of respiratory symptoms and hematemesis to have a significant positive predictive value for injury.\textsuperscript{17} This study also advocated withholding endoscopy in the asymptomatic patient with an unintentional ingestion. These studies did not consider suicidal ingestions, but consensus is that endoscopy is necessary in these cases regardless of symptoms, given the high morbidity associated with intentional ingestions.\textsuperscript{1}

Consensus recommendation is that the unintentionally exposed, asymptomatic patient—with no respiratory complaints, drooling, stridor, hoarseness, dysphagia, or vomiting—can be safely discharged after appropriate observation in the ED and a trial of oral intake.\textsuperscript{10} Symptomatic patients, whether exposed intentionally or unintentionally, should have formal gastroenterology evaluation for endoscopy. The suicidal patient, regardless of symptoms, deserves consultation for endoscopy.

**Timing of Endoscopy**

A limited number of studies have considered the time period within which endoscopy should be performed or avoided. Mucosal sloughing typically occurs 4 to 7 days after injury, and collagen deposition does not begin until after 14 days; therefore, the esophagus is considered most vulnerable to endoscopic-induced perforation during the 5- to 15-day period following caustic ingestion.\textsuperscript{3,14,18} A 1991 prospective cohort study of 81 patients with caustic ingestions who underwent endoscopy reported that of the 381 total (initial and follow-up) endoscopies performed, no patient experienced perforation in close proximity to endoscopy.\textsuperscript{14} Perforation did occur in three patients—on the 9th, 11th, and 15th day following endoscopy, respectively—although these perforations were likely due to the use of rigid endoscopes. The study concluded that endoscopy could safely be performed between 6 and 96 hours following caustic ingestion. Of note, none of the study’s patients underwent endoscopy during the 5- to 15-day post-ingestion period due to the assumption of esophageal friability. There are no studies that specifically evaluate endoscopy during the 5- to 15-day interval, and it is recommended to avoid the procedure whenever possible during this time.\textsuperscript{3,14,18}

One benefit of early endoscopy is the placement of a nasogastric tube (NGT) (always done under direct visualization), which allows for early enteral nutrition. Early nutrition aids rapid healing of the caustic injury, which in turn reduces hospital length of stay.\textsuperscript{19} Enteral nutrition has advantages over parenteral nutrition, including preservation of intestinal mucosa, reduced risk of infection, reduced hepatic and biliary complications, more effective monitoring of electrolytes and nutrients, and more cost-efficient delivery.\textsuperscript{19}

**Endoscopic Grading System of Esophageal Injuries**

Grade I injuries involve superficial tissue damage, such as edema and erythema. These injuries do not progress to stricture formation or carcinoma, and these patients can be discharged safely if able to tolerate a regular diet. No other therapy is required.

Grade IIa injuries involve transmucosal damage with superficial ulceration, sloughing, and mucosal hemorrhage of the esophagus. These patients may be able to tolerate a soft diet, or may need the placement of a NGT for enteral feeding. Grade IIb injuries are similar to IIa injuries, but are circumferential, affecting all sides of the esophagus.

Grade III injuries involve deep ulcerations, tissue necrosis, severe hemorrhage, and perforation. Patients with IIb and III injuries are at a risk of perforation, infection, and
stricture formation, and are at a 1,000 times increased risk of developing carcinoma over the following 40-year period.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

**Airway Management**
Management begins with the airway. Caustics can produce significant airway edema, which can lead to rapid airway compromise. Hoarseness, stridor, and drooling are all signs of upper airway injury and require fiberoptic inspection of the vocal cords by an otolaryngologist in the ED. Although not investigated, the consensus recommendation is to use dexamethasone to treat airway edema at a one-time dose of 10 mg IV. If the edema progresses to airway compromise and respiratory distress, orotracheal intubation must be performed, preferably with a fiberoptic laryngoscope.

**Decontamination**
Although decontamination is generally contraindicated in caustic ingestions, it is essential in treating caustic exposure to the eye and skin. Dry, powdered caustics should be brushed off the skin before washing, as dissolution of the caustic in water may cause further injury. Ophthalmic exposures should be managed with copious irrigation of the eye using a Morgan lens and normal saline (NS), or lactated Ringer’s (LR), until the pH of the eye is close to physiologic pH (7.40). Visual acuity should be assessed after irrigation, and a slit-lamp examination should be performed to look for corneal abrasions and ulcerations. These injuries require ophthalmic antibiotics and timely follow-up with an ophthalmologist.

Activated charcoal, a commonly used gastrointestinal decontaminant, is contraindicated in caustic ingestions. Its use impedes endoscopic visualization of the esophageal mucosa, and it can cause pneumonitis if perforations are present. Ingested caustics should never be neutralized, as this reaction is exothermic and can cause further tissue injury.

**Treatment of Esophageal Injury**

**Surgery**
Surgical management is necessary in patients with caustic ingestion who present with perforation, persistent hypotension, and metabolic acidosis. Early surgical management (within 24 hours of ingestion) is associated with a lower morbidity and mortality than delayed surgery. Surgery may be also required in grade II and III esophageal injuries.

**Steroids**
Steroids have been considered for the prevention of caustic ingestion associated esophageal stricture formation, but their use is controversial. A meta-analysis of 361 patients demonstrated a 19% rate of stricture formation in the steroid-treated group and a 41% rate in the untreated group; as a result, the study advocated the use of steroids in high-degree esophageal injuries. They study did not, however, differentiate between grade II and III injuries. Other studies have failed to show a benefit from the use of steroids. A prospective study of 60 children with a range of grade I, II, and III injuries found no statistically significant difference in stricture formation between steroid-treated and untreated groups, even after considering each injury grade separately. A recent review study also reported no difference in stricture formation between
Steroid-treated and untreated patients. It is important to note that steroid therapy not only lacks proven efficacy but also is potentially harmful, as steroids may suppress immunity in patients with injuries already prone to infection. Current guidelines thus recommend against steroid therapy for prevention of esophageal strictures.

**Antibiotics**
There are limited data on the use of antibiotics for esophageal injuries. If there is a known source of infection, antibiotics should be administered. Giving antibiotics to patients receiving steroids is reasonable, although in general prophylactic antibiotic therapy is not recommended.

**Nasogastric Tube**
Placement of a NGT may be necessary to provide enteral nutrition in patients unable to tolerate an oral diet because of esophageal injury. In patients with esophageal injuries, an NGT should be placed only under endoscopic visualization.

**Intraluminal Stents**
Placement of intraluminal stents, usually made of silicone, may prevent stricture formation and ensure patency of the esophageal lumen. Stents can cause increased trauma at the insertion site and can cause increased gastrointestinal reflux, which may impede healing. Use of stents is decided on a case-by-case basis.

**Sucralfate**
No significant scientific evidence exists to suggest a benefit of using sucralfate in caustic ingestions.

**Proton Pump Inhibitors and H₂ Antagonists**
The use of proton pump inhibitors and H₂ antagonists reduces the amount of acid that comes into contact with the esophageal mucosa, aids in healing, and is recommended in all cases.

**HYDROFLUORIC ACID**
Hydrofluoric acid (HF) is present in multiple products, including oven cleaners, rust removers, aluminum brighteners, heavy-duty cleaners, and laundry detergents. It is also used in plastic dye and electronics manufacturing, as well as in the synthesis of Teflon and Freon. Although technically a weak acid, HF produces a unique systemic toxicity, unrelated to its causticity, which merits special discussion.

**Pathophysiology**
Aqueous hydrofluoric acid is a weak acid, with a pKa of 3.5. HF toxicity is typically the result of dermal, ocular, or inhalational exposure, although ingestions do also occur. HF penetrates deeply into tissues and dissociates into hydrogen (H⁺) and fluoride (F⁻) ions. Localized hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia occur when F⁻ ions bind to Ca and Mg and form insoluble salts, such as calcium fluoride (CaF₂), that deposit in the tissues. The pain of HF exposure is due to the corrosive burns of the H⁺ ions, as well as the calcium dysregulation, which can result in neuroexcitation and vasospasm with associated pain and ischemia.
HF’s deep penetration produces systemic toxicity regardless of the route of exposure. In addition to hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia, hyperkalemia can occur. This is postulated to be due to F−-induced increased intracellular Ca2+, which induces Ca2+-dependent K+ channels to produce a K+ efflux. Hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, and hyperkalemia can, in turn, cause potentially fatal cardiac dysrhythmias.

**History and Physical Exam**

**Dermal Exposure**

Dermal exposure to HF can cause a delayed onset of pain and visible tissue damage. Hyperemia may occur, followed by a white discoloration due to calcium precipitation. Pain may precede tissue changes; therefore, a high level of clinical suspicion is required for the patient who presents with severe hand pain but without obvious skin damage.6,36–38

**Inhalational Exposure**

Inhalational exposure to HF can produce symptoms ranging from mild upper respiratory tract irritation to dyspnea, hypoxemia, and hypocalcemia. A retrospective chart review of 939 patients with inhalational exposure to HF released from a petrochemical plant revealed subjective toxicity including eye and throat irritation, headache, and shortness of breath, as well as objective toxicity, including decreased pulmonary function testing, hypoxemia, and hypocalcemia.39

**Ingestion**

Ingestion of HF results in gastritis and systemic toxicity, including possible cardiac dysrhythmia due to hypocalcemia and hyperkalemia.40,41 Local tissue damage may result in airway compromise. Intentional ingestion of HF often results in death.42,43

**Ocular Exposure**

HF is highly caustic to the eye; it penetrates deeply and causes corneal stromal edema, conjunctival chemosis, hemorrhage, ischemia, inflammation, and stromal opacification.44,45 Long-term effects can include corneal revascularization and dry eyes.

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

**Laboratory Tests**

Serum calcium, magnesium, and potassium should be monitored. Low serum pH is a sign of worsening systemic toxicity and can be monitored via blood gas analysis. Serum fluoride concentrations are not clinically relevant because of the time it takes to obtain results.6

**Electrocardiogram**

An electrocardiogram should be obtained in all cases of HF exposure to evaluate the effects of hypocalcemia (prolonged QTc) and hyperkalemia (peaked T waves).

**Management Guidelines**

**Decontamination**

- **Dermal**: Prompt irrigation with water to limit absorption.
- **Inhalational**: No decontamination possible.
- **Ingestion**: Gastric lavage should be considered, given the high fatality rate with this ingestion. Systemic toxicity from HF is much greater than its caustic potential; thus,
the benefit of removing the gastrointestinal burden of HF outweighs the risk of perforation posed by NGT placement. Caution must be exercised to limit exposure of health care personnel to HF, and personal protective equipment should always be worn. Activated charcoal does not bind fluoride ions effectively.

- **Ocular**: Irrigation with NS, LR, or water; prolonged irrigation can be detrimental and should be avoided.

### Medical Therapy

- **Dermal**: Topical calcium gel, such as 2.5% calcium gluconate solution (used for IV administration) mixed with a sterile water-soluble lubricant, should be applied over the affected area. Usually, the affected area is the hand, which can then be covered with a glove for 30 minutes to allow absorption of the calcium solution. The calcium from the solution will bind the fluoride ions from the HF, preventing the fluoride ions from depleting the calcium and magnesium stores of the patient.
- **Intradermal**: Injection of dilute calcium gluconate solution into the tissues has been debated, but is no longer recommended as the risk of compartment syndrome, infection, and tissue damage outweighs potential benefit. Intradermal injection of calcium chloride can cause severe tissue necrosis and should always be avoided.
- **Intravenous**: When topical administration fails, 10% intravenous calcium gluconate has been shown to relieve pain and correct hypocalcemia. There is limited evidence to recommend topical or parenteral magnesium therapy for HF exposures.
- **Intra-arterial**: Intra-arterial infusion of calcium gluconate has been shown to provide rapid analgesia and salvation of tissues. The mechanism is thought to be vasodilation, which allows increased delivery of calcium to scavenge the fluoride ions. Adverse effects of this technique include local inflammation, radial artery spasm, and hypomagnesemia.

All patients with digital exposures require 4 to 6 hours of ED observation to monitor for recurrence of pain and need for repeat calcium administration.

### Additional Therapy for Specific Exposures

- **Inhalational**: Treat with nebulized calcium gluconate solution (2.5% to 5%). If laryngeal edema is present, the patient should be intubated with advanced airway techniques, and positive-pressure ventilation should be applied.
- **Ingestion**: Oral calcium salts have been tested on animals with mixed efficacy; human data are lacking.
- **Ocular**: Following copious irrigation, patients should have an ophthalmic examination and ophthalmology consult. The use of 1% calcium gluconate eye drops is controversial because calcium, or magnesium, can cause further ocular irritation.

### Treatment of Severe Toxicity

Cardiac dysrhythmias due to hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia should be managed with intravenous calcium and magnesium. Hyperkalemia should be aggressively treated using standard therapies. Urinary alkalization with intravenous sodium bicarbonate can enhance fluoride elimination. Patients who cannot tolerate a large volume load, who are severely ill, or who have renal dysfunction may require hemodialysis for definitive fluoride elimination.
CONCLUSION

A majority of lethal caustic exposures are intentional and occur in adults. A majority of accidental caustic exposures occur in children. It is challenging to risk stratify the extent of tissue injury after caustic exposures, and special attention should be directed towards the type of product involved, the intent of exposure, and signs and symptoms such as vomiting, stridor, and drooling. Gastroenterology and surgical consults should be involved early in the care of any significant or symptomatic ingestion. Although decontamination is usually contraindicated in caustic ingestions, it is important in ocular and dermal exposures. Hydrofluoric acid exposures may also require decontamination to prevent systemic toxicity, followed by appropriate calcium therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caustics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crain et al., Am J Dis Child. 198420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheng et al., Surg Today. 200321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zargar et al., Gastrointest Endosc. 199124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamineau et al., J Ped Gastroenterol Nutr. 200125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedova and Navratil, Toxicol Rev. 200526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrofluoric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hatzifotis et al., Burns. 200427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Capitani et al., Sao Paulo Med J. 200928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graudins et al., Ann Emerg Med. 199729</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES

Anticoagulants
Betty C. Chen and Lewis S. Nelson

BACKGROUND
Systemic anticoagulation is widely used to treat patients with or at risk for thromboembolic events. Vitamin K antagonists (VKAs) such as warfarin have been the standard therapy for long-term systemic anticoagulation since the mid-20th century. The discovery of the heparins followed shortly thereafter. Most recently, the development of direct clotting factor antagonists has radically changed the landscape of modern anticoagulation therapy. Although these new anticoagulants boast convenient dosing regimens, their use can result in potentially disastrous bleeding complications. While reversal agents are available for VKAs and certain heparins, no antidotes exist to rapidly reverse anticoagulation with the new direct factor antagonists.

Medical providers and patients must weigh the risks and benefits of systemic anticoagulation. Both spontaneous and traumatic bleeding are the most common and consequential complications of all anticoagulants. Intracranial hemorrhages and bleeding at noncompressible sites, such as the gastrointestinal tract, are examples of life-threatening bleeding events; smaller bleeds are also common and can occur at almost any location.

For the patient who presents with significant blood loss, restoration and maintenance of effective circulating volume is a priority. Although crystalloid infusion and blood transfusion with packed red blood cells (pRBCs) will replace volume, neither reverses medication-induced anticoagulation. Instead, both interventions potentially worsen coagulopathy by producing hypocalcemia from citrate toxicity, dilutional thrombocytopenia, and dilution of existing clotting factors. The use of targeted antidotal therapy depends on the particular anticoagulant involved. Operative or definitive management for the bleeding complications may be necessary in select cases (e.g., drainage of epidural hematomas).

VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS
Warfarin is the most commonly prescribed oral anticoagulant. It inhibits vitamin K 2,3-epoxide reductase and vitamin K quinone reductase, causing anticoagulation from a depletion of activated factors II, VII, IX, and X. In addition to inhibition of these procoagulant clotting factors, VKAs also inhibit anticoagulant factors C and S, which can result in a transient procoagulant state at the initiation of VKA therapy.
History and Physical Exam

Adverse drug events may occur even in VKA-anticoagulated patients who are within therapeutic ranges of anticoagulation. There are many factors that increase the risk for major bleeding in patients treated with the VKAs, including age, comorbid medical problems, labile international normalized ratios (INRs), concomitant ethanol or drug use, and genetic factors. Labile INRs are common in patients anticoagulated with the VKAs because of numerous dietary and drug interactions.

Bleeding is the most prevalent complication from VKA use, but the emergency physician should also be familiar with a variety of associated nonhemorrhagic complications. Warfarin skin necrosis and purple toe syndrome are uncommon, and providers may misidentify these adverse drug reactions. Warfarin skin necrosis is believed to occur more frequently in patients with deficiencies of protein C, protein S, or antithrombin (AT) III. It is thought dermal thrombosis may lead to ischemia, although the mechanism of action is poorly understood. Patients typically develop painful and erythematous skin in areas with higher amounts of subcutaneous fat, such as the breasts, abdomen, thighs, and buttocks, within a week of warfarin initiation. These areas progress to necrotic patches that can extend up to 5 cm deep into the tissue. In addition, secondary infection is frequently reported as an additional source of morbidity.

Purple toe syndrome is an embolic phenomenon that typically occurs 3 to 8 weeks after initiating treatment with warfarin. It is caused by VKA-induced bleeding into atherosclerotic plaques, with subsequent release of cholesterol emboli.

Diagnostic Evaluation

Prothrombin time (PT) and INR are widely available and inexpensive laboratory tests used to determine warfarin’s anticoagulant effect. The PT measures the extrinsic pathway of the coagulation cascade. Because the PT varies due to individual laboratory and reagent variability, the INR is used to standardize results. Each lab calculates an INR based on a PT ratio raised to the lab’s unique international sensitivity factor. Target INRs typically range between 2 and 3.5, depending on indication for anticoagulation with warfarin.

The PT and INR, however, can be elevated in conditions not specific to warfarin-induced anticoagulation. Hepatic failure, inhibitors to clotting factors, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and a number of other conditions may cause a prolongation of PT and INR. This prolongation does not necessarily reflect anticoagulation.

A mixing study can assist in differentiating between a factor deficiency (such as that created by VKAs) and factor inhibitors (such as heparin). After combining equal volumes of pooled normal plasma and the patient’s plasma, failure to correct PT and INR confirms the presence of a clotting factor inhibitor.

Management Guidelines

Reversal of VKA-induced coagulopathy can be achieved by restoration of activated clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X. In patients requiring rapid reversal, such as those with life-threatening bleeding, immediate factor replacement with fresh frozen plasma (FFP) or prothrombin complex concentrates (PCC) rapidly reverses coagulopathy. The American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) 2012 guideline recommends 4-factor PCC for rapid reversal of VKA-induced coagulopathy in patients with bleeding. The 2012 version recommends PCC over FFP, though there are no large randomized controlled trials that
Anticoagulants

Directly compare these reversal strategies. The guideline is based on small, nonblinded, and unevenly matched studies. Theoretical advantages for PCC administration include smaller infusion volumes, which decrease time of administration and mitigate risks for volume overload. PCC also obviates the need for cross-matching of blood types, circumvents transfusion reactions, and decreases the risk of viral transmission. However, FFP is more frequently administered to reverse VKA-induced coagulopathy because of lower costs and because 4-factor PCC was unavailable in the United States until its approval in April 2013. Both 3- and 4-factor PCC contain non-activated factors II, VII, IX, and X. However, 3-factor PCC contains reduced amounts of factor VII to decrease thrombogenesis. Some have advocated the use of recombinant activated factor VII (rFVIIa), which is indicated only in patients with hemophilia or inhibitors to factors VIII or IX, for reversal of VKA-induced coagulopathy. However, the latest ACCP guideline explicitly recommends against using rFVIIa for this purpose. The risk of thrombosis following off-label rFVIIa administration may be higher in patients without hemophilia or inhibitors to factor VIII or IX.

Because clotting factors have a definitive half-life, an essential step in reversing VKA-induced coagulopathy is the administration of vitamin K₁ to promote reactivation of inactive vitamin K-dependent clotting factors. Oral administration results in peak plasma concentrations in 3 to 6 hours, whereas intravenous administration results in immediate peak plasma concentrations. Improvement in INR may lag, as clotting factor activation via hepatic gamma-glutamyl carboxylase is the rate-limiting step. In a single study of excessively anticoagulated patients, intravenous administration of vitamin K₁ resulted in return to target INR at 6 hours, while oral administration required 12 hours. Maintaining a normal INR depends on the half-life of vitamin K₁, plasma concentration of vitamin K₁, and the duration of action of the specific VKA. Long-acting VKAs can require repeated doses of vitamin K₁ to prevent excessive anticoagulation.

For adult patients with life-threatening bleeding, 10 mg of vitamin K₁ should be administered intravenously if the benefits of INR normalization outweigh the risks. The rate of infusion should not exceed 1 mg/min, as intravenous administration is associated with anaphylactoid reaction. In nonbleeding patients with an INR >10, small doses of vitamin K₁ (1 to 2.5 mg) should be administered orally. Patients with supratherapeutic INRs <10 can omit their next warfarin dose and recheck their INR if bleeding is not an issue. Subcutaneous administration of vitamin K₁ results in unpredictable absorption kinetics and should be saved for rare occasions when patients are unable to take oral medications.

Patients who develop warfarin skin necrosis should discontinue warfarin therapy, and heparin should be used for systemic anticoagulation. Surgical debridement and amputation of limbs have been reported in severe cases.

HEPARINS

Unfractionated heparin is a mixture of glycosaminoglycans that causes a conformational change in AT, increasing its activity. This inhibits both thrombin and a number of clotting factors, including factors IXa, Xa, XIa, and XIIa. Low molecular weight heparins (LMWHs) are short fragments derived from unfractionated heparin. LMWHs cause distinct conformational changes in AT, which targets inhibition specifically at factor Xa. LMWHs have several potential clinical advantages compared to unfractionated heparin, including longer half-lives and the ability to use fixed-dosing regimens.
Complications of heparin therapy fall into two categories: bleeding complications (expected from any of the anticoagulants) and nonbleeding complications including heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) and heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and thrombosis syndrome (HIT(T)). It is important to distinguish between postoperative consumptive thrombocytopenia and HIT(T) derived from heparin-induced complications. Postoperative thrombocytopenia usually occurs on postoperative day 1 or 2, followed by an improvement 1 or 2 days later. HIT(T) usually manifests between 5 and 10 days after introduction of heparin. However, an earlier fall in platelet count may occur in patients previously treated with heparin, and this early appearance of thrombocytopenia may confuse providers.23

HIT(T) develops as a result of antibodies that recognize a heparin–platelet factor 4 complex. When these antibody–antigen complexes bind to platelets, the consequences are either platelet destruction or platelet activation. HIT occurs when platelets are destroyed without any thrombotic sequelae. HITT occurs when platelets are activated and cause thrombosis. If HIT goes untreated, up to 55% of patients will develop HITT. HIT(T) can also occur with the LMWHs.23,24

Diagnostic Evaluation
Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) is the test of choice for monitoring unfractionated heparin’s anticoagulant effect. Nomograms can help providers alter heparin dosing based on aPTT results. In patients requiring high-dose heparin, such as those undergoing cardiovascular procedures, activated clotting time can be used instead of aPTT.25 A subset of patients may manifest heparin resistance, where high doses of heparin cannot achieve aPTTs in the therapeutic range. In these cases, anti-Xa levels may be measured instead of aPTT, which permits lower dosing of heparin while providing similar therapeutic effect and safety profiles.26

Patients treated with LMWHs typically do not receive laboratory monitoring.27 VTE prophylaxis dosing is fixed, while VTE treatment is weight based. Laboratory monitoring with anti-Xa activity measurements should be performed in the case of pregnant patients, obese patients, or those with chronic kidney disease. Therapeutic anti-Xa activity ranges in these populations vary based on indication for anticoagulation.25

HIT(T) must be suspected if the platelet count drops below 100 × 10^9/L or if there is a 40% drop in the platelet count after heparin initiation.28 Patients who are at highest risk of developing HIT(T) are postoperative patients on either prophylactic or therapeutic heparin. The incidence of HIT(T) in these patients is between 1% and 5%. Cardiac surgery patients also have a higher risk of developing HIT(T) with an incidence between 1 and 3%.23 In patients with a risk of >1% for developing HIT(T), platelet counts should be measured every 2 to 3 days starting on day 4 of heparin therapy. If a patient does not develop HIT(T) by day 14 of therapy, then further monitoring is not necessary.23 HIT antibody assays should be sent to confirm the diagnosis of HIT(T) if the platelet counts drop by the aforementioned amount.

Management Guidelines
For nonsignificant bleeding with an elevated aPTT, cessation of anticoagulation therapy may be sufficient, as unfractionated heparin has a short duration of action between 1 and 2.5 hours, depending on amount administered.29,30 Significant bleeding, by
contrast, may necessitate antidotal therapy. Protamine sulfate binds to heparin and effectively neutralizes its anticoagulant capabilities. One milligram of intravenous protamine neutralizes 100 U of unfractionated heparin, and dosing should reflect the amount of heparin calculated to be present at the time of antidote administration (assume that the half-life of heparin is 60 to 90 minutes). Adverse effects of protamine are numerous. Paradoxical anticoagulation can occur if excessive protamine is administered. Hypotension and bradycardia can occur with correct dosing, but slow infusion helps decrease the risk of these events. Anaphylaxis is also possible, and patients with a history of receiving protamine, fish allergy, or history of vasectomy have a higher risk of developing anaphylaxis to protamine. Because of the risk of anaphylaxis, only patients with life-threatening bleeding should receive protamine.

Protamine is sometimes used to treat patients anticoagulated with LMWHs if they suffer from life-threatening bleeding. There are no proven antidotes for LMWH, but partial reversal may be possible with protamine. One milligram of protamine should be administered per 100 anti–factor Xa units (1 mg enoxaparin is the equivalent to 100 anti–factor Xa units) if LMWH was administered within 8 hours. If bleeding continues, a second dose of protamine at 0.5 mg per 100 anti–factor Xa units can be considered. Smaller doses of protamine should be administered if more than 8 hours has elapsed since LMWH administration.

If HIT(T) is suspected or confirmed in a patient, the most important intervention is cessation of heparin or LMWH therapy. Alternative anticoagulants such as the direct thrombin inhibitors (DTI) argatroban and bivalirudin, or a Xa inhibitor such as danaparoid should be used until a therapeutic INR is achieved with warfarin. Novel oral anticoagulants, such as dabigatran, rivaroxaban, and apixaban, have not been studied for this indication.

**DIRECT THROMBIN INHIBITORS**

To circumvent the problems associated with the VKAs and the heparins, DTIs have been utilized parenterally, and more recent developments have led to the introduction of oral DTIs. These medications are derived from hirudin, a peptide secreted by the medicinal leech, and they are used to treat acute coronary syndrome and VTE. The most commonly used parenterally administered DTIs are bivalirudin and argatroban. Providers typically use these agents when patients have a contraindication to heparin, such as HIT(T).

Dabigatran, an oral DTI, is currently approved only for VTE and stroke prophylaxis in patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. Initial studies showed favorable results for VTE prophylaxis in patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation with lower bleeding and mortality rates. Unfortunately, a higher-than-anticipated bleeding rate associated with dabigatran has been identified in postmarketing analyses and studies. A U.S. FDA advisory statement cited dabigatran as the leader in reported adverse drug events in 2012. However, further data in this advisory suggest that risk factors for bleeding include inappropriate renal dosing, age older than 75 years, and use for the wrong indication. In addition, the risk of myocardial infarctions and acute coronary syndrome appeared to be higher in groups treated with dabigatran when compared to patients treated with other anticoagulants.
Diagnostic Evaluation
To estimate the degree of anticoagulation with the DTIs bivalirudin and argatroban, serial aPTT measurements are used most often. Unfortunately, estimates made with aPTT are frequently inaccurate, since the relationship between aPTT and degree of anticoagulation with DTIs is not linear. With dabigatran, the aPTT plateaus when concentrations are over 200 ng/mL, and PT and INR also follow a nonlinear relationship with the serum dabigatran concentration. The use of thrombin time (TT) and ecarin clotting time (ECT), which follow a more linear relationship to DTI concentration, has been proposed as better tests to estimate DTI concentration and anticoagulation. With the increased use of DTIs, some laboratories have increased the availability of the TT; ECT still remains largely unavailable for use in real time.

Management Guidelines
The most concerning issue with the DTIs is the absence of a proven reversal agent or strategy. Because the half-lives of the parenteral medications are relatively short, the most critical action is to stop the infusion or administration of the DTI when bleeding is suspected. A single case report describes the use of FFP in a patient who received a 13-fold overdose of argatroban. He was treated with FFP for a prolonged aPTT, which did not normalize. Fortunately, the patient did not suffer any bleeding consequences. Orally administered dabigatran has a half-life of 8 to 12 hours, whereas the parenterally administered DTIs have half-lives of approximately 0.5 to 2 hours. Therefore, bleeding while anticoagulated with dabigatran can be particularly difficult to manage. The manufacturers of dabigatran suggest using supportive care and transfusion of pRBCs and FFP. They also mention that rtVIIa, PCC, and hemodialysis may be considered, although there are no prospective, randomized controlled human studies that show better outcomes with any of these interventions. In a murine study, mice with intracranial bleeds were given increasing doses of 4-factor PCC, which resulted in a dose-dependent response in minimizing hematoma expansion; the mice given PCC at doses of 100 U/kg showed the best response, however, in none of the mice were bleeding times normalized. In the same study, neither rtVIIa nor FFP reduced hematoma expansion. Healthy human volunteers anticoagulated with 2.5 days of dabigatran continued to have abnormal coagulation studies despite treatment with 50 U/kg of 4-factor PCC. Hemodialysis has been proposed as a possible lifesaving intervention in bleeding patients who are anticoagulated with dabigatran. A single study shows that hemodialysis affords extraction ratios of 62% to 68% at hours 2 and 4 during hemodialysis, respectively, but this study was performed in dialysis-dependent patients who were given a single dose of dabigatran. Unfortunately, further pharmacokinetic characterization published in multiple case reports demonstrates that significant drug rebound, up to 87%, following hemodialysis may limit the effectiveness of hemodialysis. Furthermore, while hemodialysis may decrease serum dabigatran concentrations, it does not necessarily normalize aPTT or TT. In addition, providers may be reluctant to place a large-bore hemodialysis catheter in an excessively anticoagulated patient. Despite aggressive intervention in some of these patients, including massive transfusion and hemodialysis, deaths from exsanguination in dabigatran-anticoagulated patients may occur.
A monoclonal antibody that neutralizes dabigatran is currently undergoing evaluation for use in patients requiring rapid reversal of anticoagulation.\(^{46,47}\) Until it or another antidote is approved, providers must make use of imperfectly effective options. From the limited available data, the best choice may be to attempt reversal with PCC in aliquots of 25 U/kg up to a maximum of 100 U/kg. The risk of thrombosis remains and should be weighed against the benefits of treatment in a bleeding patient. 4-factor PCC was utilized in studies that evaluated PCC’s ability to reverse dabigatran-induced anticoagulation and is, therefore, preferred over 3-factor PCC if available.\(^{40,41}\) Hemodialysis may be helpful, particularly in patients with suspected supratherapeutic dabigatran concentrations, assuming that the degree of anticoagulation is directly related to dabigatran concentration. Initiation of hemodialysis should not delay required definitive treatments such as operative intervention to control bleeding.

**DIRECT FACTOR Xa INHIBITORS**

Rivaroxaban and apixaban are orally active, direct factor Xa inhibitors. They are approved for VTE prophylaxis in patients with atrial fibrillation. Rivaroxaban holds an additional indication for VTE prophylaxis in some postsurgical patients. The factor Xa inhibitors may be safer than the DTIs because they prevent thrombin activation upstream from thrombin itself.\(^{48,49}\) This indirect inactivation allows downstream administration of clotting factors in bleeding patients. While rivaroxaban is both renally and hepatically eliminated, a large portion of apixaban elimination is fecal.\(^{50,51}\)

**Diagnostic Evaluation**

Rivaroxaban inhibits factor Xa activity and prolongs PT and PTT via a dose-dependent relationship.\(^{52–56}\) The HepTest is a nonapproved assay that measures anti-Xa and anti-IIa activity. It is not widely available, and it has not yet gone through the FDA approval process. Studies show that this assay correlates well with the anticoagulant effect of apixaban.\(^{52,53}\)

**Management Guidelines**

Similar to the DTIs, the factor Xa inhibitors have no definitive antidotes. In healthy human volunteers given rivaroxaban for 2.5 days, PT and endogenous thrombin potential, a thrombin generation assay, normalized after 50 U/kg of 4-factor PCC.\(^{45}\) In a rabbit study, bleeding animals continued to bleed despite treatment with 4-factor PCC and rFVIIa, while a battery of coagulation parameters such as bleeding time, aPTT, anti-Xa activity, and clotting time improved.\(^{57}\) There are currently no studies that evaluate clinical outcomes associated with antidotal treatment in apixaban-treated patients. Unlike dabigatran, rivaroxaban and apixaban are not amenable to hemodialysis because they are highly protein bound.\(^{58}\)

Because the anticoagulation effect of these factor Xa inhibitors can last more than 24 hours under certain circumstances, specific interventions to reverse anticoagulation may be necessary if supportive measures with volume resuscitation are not helpful. While PCC may help improve coagulation parameters, there are no randomized controlled outcome studies evaluating this intervention. Under life-threatening circumstances, it is
reasonable to administer 4-factor PCC in doses of 25 U/kg to patients anticoagulated with direct factor Xa inhibitors. If necessary, repeated doses up to a total of 100 U/kg may be considered, with the knowledge that an unknown risk of thrombosis is present. If 4-factor PCC is not available, 3-factor PCC may be substituted, but its efficacy is not well studied.

**REFERENCES**


**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Direct thrombin inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Connolly et al., *N Engl J Med* 2009<sup>32</sup>  
RE-LY | Prospective RCT of 18,113 patients comparing dabigatran to warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation | Dabigatran at doses of 110 mg twice daily had similar rates of stroke but lower rates of major bleeding when compared to warfarin cohort. Dabigatran at doses of 150 mg twice daily had lower rates of stroke and similar rates of major hemorrhage when compared to warfarin-treated cohort |
| Eikelboom et al., *Circulation* 2011<sup>33</sup> | Subgroup analysis of the RE-LY Trial | Dabigatran-anticoagulated patients >75 y of age have a higher risk of extracranial bleeding when compared to warfarin-treated patients |
| Zhou et al., *Stroke* 2011<sup>40</sup> | Murine study where intracranial hemorrhages were induced in mice treated with dabigatran. Subjects received PCC, FFP, or rFVIIa, and coagulation assays and intracranial hematoma volume were compared | rFVIIa and FFP did not prevent hematoma expansion. PCC prevented hematoma expansion in a dose-dependent fashion. Bleeding time improved in a dose-dependent relationship after PCC administration but did not normalize |
| Eerenberg et al., *Circulation* 2011<sup>41</sup> | Prospective RCT of 12 healthy patients anticoagulated with dabigatran who received 50 U/kg of PCC | No improvement in coagulation assays after PCC administration |
| **Direct factor Xa inhibitors** | | |
| Eerenberg et al., *Circulation* 2011<sup>41</sup> | Prospective RCT of 12 healthy patients anticoagulated with rivaroxaban who received 50 U/kg of PCC | Normalization of PT and endogenous thrombin potential after PCC administration |
| Patel et al., *N Engl J Med* 2011<sup>48</sup> | Prospective RCT of 14,264 patients comparing rivaroxaban to warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation | Rivaroxaban had similar rates of stroke, systemic thromboembolism, and major bleeding compared to the warfarin cohort. Intracranial and fatal bleeding was lower in the rivaroxaban group |
| Granger et al., *N Engl J Med* 2011<sup>49</sup> | Prospective RCT of 18,201 patients comparing apixaban to warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation | Apixaban had lower rates of stroke and systemic thromboembolism, as well as lower bleeding and mortality rates, when compared to warfarin |


Drugs of Abuse
Rana Biary and Jane Marie Prosser

OPIOIDS

Background
Opioids comprise both naturally occurring and synthetic compounds that bind to the \( \mu \) opioid receptor. \( \mu \) receptors are located throughout the body, notably in regions of the brain related to analgesia, which include the periaqueductal gray matter, nucleus raphe magnus, and the medial thalamus. They are also found in the respiratory center of the medulla and the gastrointestinal tract.\(^1\) Opioids have been used since ancient times as analgesics, appearing as early as 1500 BC in the Ebers Papyrus as a “remedy to prevent excessive crying in children.” By the 16th century, there were manuscripts detailing opioid addiction, tolerance, and withdrawal.\(^2\) In 1914, the Harrison Narcotic Act made nonmedical use of opioids illegal in the United States.\(^1\) Heroin is the classic opioid street drug of abuse; however, prescription opioids have become increasingly more common. In New York City, in 2009, prescription opioids surpassed motor vehicle collisions, cocaine, and heroin as the leading cause of accidental death.\(^3,4\)

History and Physical Exam
Opioids can be ingested, injected, insufflated, inhaled, absorbed through the oral and rectal mucosa, or applied topically. The classic clinical presentation—or toxidrome—of an opioid overdose is similar regardless of which opioid is used. It includes miosis, a depressed respiratory rate, and a depressed mental status. Additionally, the patient may have decreased bowel sounds and a mildly decreased blood pressure.\(^5,6\)

Patients with severe overdose may present with hypoxia and crackles on pulmonary exam, consistent with a noncardiogenic pulmonary edema.\(^5,7\) Another, albeit less common presentation, often attributed to rapid bolus injection of fentanyl, is the development of chest wall rigidity.\(^8,9\)

Certain opioids are also known to cause unique complications. The opioid tramadol can cause seizures even in therapeutic doses. Tramadol also causes serotonin syndrome, characterized by hyperthermia, clonus, rigidity, and tremor.\(^10,11\) The synthetic opioids methadone and buprenorphine are known to prolong the QT interval, predisposing patients to torsade de pointes.\(^12\) Intravenous drug users are also at risk for developing complications associated with nonsterile venous puncture, including endocarditis, septic emboli, and epidural abscess.
Differential Diagnosis
Clonidine, an imidazole derivative, is used in the treatment of hypertension, pediatric behavioral disorders, and the treatment of opioid withdrawal. It has some effects on the \( \mu \) receptor, producing clinical findings resembling opioid overdose, including meiosis and respiratory depression.\(^1\) Clonidine overdoses, by contrast, are usually associated with distinct vital sign abnormalities not common to opiate overdose, including significant bradycardia and hypotension. Benzodiazepines and barbiturates can, like opiates, result in a depressed mental status and respiratory rate.\(^1\) Gamma hydroxybuturate (GHB) may also lead to a depressed respiratory rate and mental status, though its effects are usually transient. The pupils in patients who have overdosed on GHB may also be mitotic and minimally responsive to light.\(^1\) Phencyclidine (PCP), typically described as a stimulant, may in large doses behave as a sedative. Patients will typically have a depressed mental status with mydriasis and rotary nystagmus.

In addition to these drugs, other common etiologies of depressed mental status, including trauma, metabolic disorders (hypoglycemia, hyponatremia), infection, hypoxia, and hypothermia, must always be considered.

Diagnostic Evaluation
Physical exam is the essential tool for the diagnosis of opioid intoxication. As noted, the exam of the patient with opioid intoxication will include pinpoint pupils with a depressed mental status and respiratory rate. Response to naloxone has been suggested to aid in diagnosis but can be associated with complications when used in the undifferentiated patient and is therefore not recommended.

Urine toxicology screens are of limited utility and are therefore not routinely recommended. The urine toxicology screen generally tests for morphine, and because of this, naturally occurring opioids such as heroin and morphine will result in a positive test. Synthetic opioids such as methadone and fentanyl, however, are not metabolized to morphine or its metabolites, and will not result in a positive test. Semisynthetic opioids such as oxycodone and hydrocodone produce variable results. Additionally, a positive result may persist long after acute intoxication. For example, heroin use can result in a positive urine drug screen for up to 4 days post ingestion, giving a potentially misleading explanation for the patient’s current symptoms.\(^1^3\)

Additional testing should include an ECG, liver function tests, and a serum acetaminophen concentration. On the ECG, particular attention should be given to the QTc interval length. Because of the increasing abuse of prescription opioids containing acetaminophen, routine laboratory testing is recommended. In patients who present with crackles, hypoxia, or tachypnea, chest radiography should be performed to look for pulmonary edema.

Management Guidelines
The most common cause of death from opioid overdose is respiratory arrest. The first step in management of a patient with suspected opioid intoxication is to ensure airway management. Administration of naloxone, an opioid antagonist, should be considered in patients with an opioid toxidrome. Studies suggest that naloxone is most likely to be of benefit in those patients whose respiratory rate is <12, or who have significant hypventilation.\(^3^6\) To prevent precipitation of withdrawal, a low initial dose of 0.04 to 0.05 mg
of naloxone should be administered. The dose can be titrated to an arousable mental status and a respiratory rate of approximately 8 to 10 breaths per minute. Bolus administration can be followed by an infusion, titrated to maintain the same goals. The recommended starting dose for the infusion is two-thirds of the effective bolus dose.

In non-opioid dependent patients, naloxone has few side effects even in high doses. However, injudicious administration in opioid-dependent patients may result in withdrawal including vomiting and diarrhea. This can be harmful in several scenarios. If naloxone is administered to an opioid-dependent patient whose altered mental status is due to a different etiology, vomiting may occur without an increase in mental status, increasing the risk for aspiration. Opiate reversal with naloxone administration in the setting of marked hypoxemia and hypercarbia can also lead to a large catecholamine surge (as an appropriate response to respiratory deficits) and subsequent pulmonary edema. Administration of several breaths via bag valve mask prior to administration will minimize hypoxia and hypercarbia and reduce the likelihood of this response.

The duration of action of naloxone is 20 to 90 minutes, shorter than the half-life of most opioids, including heroin. Therefore, patients requiring naloxone should be observed for at least 4 to 6 hours to ensure that they do not develop recurrent respiratory depression. Patients who overdose on long-acting opioids, such as methadone or extended-release oxycodone, will require observation for 24 hours. In patients with a depressed mental status, gastric decontamination with charcoal should be avoided due to the risk of aspiration.

Clinicians must also consider the possibility of unintentional coingestion of adulterants. While classic adulterants included strychnine and quinine, more recently levamisole, caffeine, acetaminophen, phenobarbital, methaqualone, scopolamine, and clenbuterol have also been used.

**BENZODIAZEPINES**

**Background**

Benzodiazepines were introduced in the 1960s, as sedatives with a safer side effect profile than that of barbiturates. In Florida, between 2003 and 2009, there was a 233.8% increase in reported deaths caused by alprazolam. A study from the United Kingdom evaluated 1,024 consecutive patients admitted to the hospital, and found that diazepam was the fourth most commonly abused drug overall (third most common among men). Benzodiazepines fall under the category of sedative hypnotics, and act on the GABA\(\text{A}\) receptor.

**History and Physical Exam**

The typical presentation of a benzodiazepine overdose is a depressed mental status with normal vital signs. Patients may also present with slurred speech, gait ataxia, and coma. Respiratory depression is not expected with oral ingestion, unless coingestants such as ethanol or other sedatives have also been consumed. Controversy exists regarding respiratory depression after IV administration, with a few case reports suggesting it may occur.

Another important consideration in cases of intravenous administration of benzodiazepines, particularly in a hospital setting, is the use of diluents. Lorezepam, for example, is typically carried in propylene glycol, which, when administered rapidly, can
lead to hypotension. Prolonged exposure to propylene glycol, as occurs with continuous infusions, can lead to an elevated lactate metabolic acidosis.22

**Differential Diagnosis**
The differential diagnosis for benzodiazepines overdose is similar to opioid overdose, and includes any medical condition or toxic ingestion that can result in altered senso-rium (e.g., ethanol or opioid ingestion, hypoglycemia, hypoxia, infection).

**Diagnostic Evaluation**
If the diagnosis is clear on presentation, few tests are likely to add to the clinical picture. As with all overdose patients, acetaminophen and salicylate concentrations and an ECG are useful screening tests to evaluate for potential coingestants.23 However, if the diagnosis is uncertain, as is often the case, then evaluation of a patient’s altered mental status should proceed in the standard fashion, including comprehensive blood testing, head computed tomography, and cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) analysis. As with opioid intoxication, a urine toxicology screen is of limited utility due to false-positive and -negative results.

**Management Guidelines**
Initial management centers on assessing airway, breathing, and circulation. Intravenous access, cardiac monitoring, and close observation are also indicated. As noted, respiratory depression is not expected with oral benzodiazepine overdose, but sedation and loss of airway protection requiring intubation is possible. Gastric decontamination using charcoal should be avoided due to the risk of aspiration in patients with a depressed mental status.

Flumazenil is a benzodiazepine receptor antagonist and has been used to treat benzodiazepine overdose; however, its use is not routinely recommended due to its risk of precipitating withdrawal, which can be a life-threatening complication.24 Intubation and mechanical ventilation are generally considered safer than flumazenil in the treatment of benzodiazepine-associated respiratory depression.25 In circumstances in which the risk of preexisting benzodiazepine dependence is minimal—such as with pediatric patients or patients post procedural sedation—the likelihood of flumazenil precipitating withdrawal will be acceptably low and its use may be reasonable.

Patients with isolated benzodiazepine overdose are expected to have good outcomes, and generally improve with supportive care and close observation. Benzodiazepine withdrawal (covered in the following chapter) can, however, be life threatening.

**SYMPATHOMIMETICS**

**Background**
Sympathomimetics are a large category of compounds that cause increased excitatory neurotransmitter release. They include drugs such as amphetamines, phenylethylamines such as MDMA, cocaine, and synthetic cathinone derivatives often referred to as “bath salts.” These compounds produce effects specific to each compound; however, common to all is the increased release of epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine, which leads to increased activation of the sympathetic nervous system and euphoria. Certain sympathomimetics, such as the phenylethylamines, also modulate serotonin release.
Patients with sympathomimetic intoxication are at risk for hyperthermia, dysrhythmias, myocardial infarction, strokes, hyponatremia, and death. Stimulants such as ecstasy and bath salts often do not contain the ingredients they are sold as, and may contain different sympathomimetics, caffeine, or even placebo. Furthermore, compounds marketed as “legal highs” may contain illegal substances.26–29

History and Physical Exam
Patients with sympathomimetic intoxication present with a variety of issues that occur as a result of increased sympathetic output. The sympathomimetic toxidrome includes mydriasis, hypertension, tachycardia, diaphoresis, hyperthermia, and psychomotor agitation.

The wide range of potential complications associated with sympathomimetic use highlights the importance of a thorough history and physical exam. Signs and symptoms may suggest stroke, seizure (either due to direct sympathomimetic toxicity or from secondary hyponatremia), intracranial hemorrhage, myocardial infarction, and other complications that can accompany increased sympathetic output.

Differential Diagnosis
The differential diagnosis of sympathomimetic toxicity includes any medication capable of causing a sympathomimetic toxidrome including cocaine, PCP/ketamine, amphetamines, and newer synthetic drugs of abuse including bath salts and synthetic cannabis/cannabinoid compounds such as “k2” or “Spice.” Patients who are withdrawing from a sedative/hypnotic may also present with altered mental status, diaphoresis, and autonomic instability that can clinically resemble the sympathomimetic toxidrome. As with any suspected overdose that produces a depressed mental status, unless the offending agent is clearly identified, a more comprehensive evaluation is necessary.

Diagnostic Evaluation
Unlike benzodiazepine overdose, patients who present after sympathomimetic intoxication require further diagnostic evaluation, including laboratory evaluation. Laboratory tests should include a basic metabolic panel to evaluate for hyponatremia secondary to drug-induced SIADH and increased free water consumption. Patients may also develop rhabdomyolysis secondary to sympathomimetic ingestion; therefore, a creatinine phosphokinase should be checked, as well as renal function. As in any overdose, acetaminophen and aspirin concentrations should be checked, given the concern for coingestants. As with other ingestions, a urine toxicology screen is of limited utility. Testing should include an ECG to ensure absence of ST-segment changes, as sympathomimetics may be associated with coronary vasospasm. Altered mental status in the setting of sympathomimetic use requires a CT head to rule out stroke, seizure, or intracranial hemorrhage.

Management Guidelines
Prioritization of treatment of sympathomimetic toxicity is guided by patient presentation. In a patient with uncontrolled psychomotor agitation, adequate dosing with benzodiazepines is necessary to ensure that the patient is appropriately sedated and not
at risk of harm to self or others. While any benzodiazepine may be used, benzodiazepines with quicker onset, such as midazolam or diazepam, are preferred. Lorazepam, while acceptable, takes approximately 20 minutes to produce peak therapeutic effect.

Hyperthermia is the most common cause of death in patients with sympathomimetic toxicity. High ambient temperatures are known to compound sympathomimetic-induced hyperthermia; in a retrospective review of medical examiner cases from 1990 to 1995, a 33% increase in the mean daily number of cocaine overdose deaths was recorded when ambient temperatures exceeded 31.1°C (2.4 more deaths per day). Initial management should therefore include obtaining a core temperature. If hyperthermia is present, rapid and aggressive treatment is essential. Classically, a “mist and fan” technique has been suggested, although this requires fans of much stronger caliber than are available in most hospitals. For severe hyperthermia, an ice bath is a more efficient intervention. To avoid the risk of overshoot and secondary hypothermia, patients should be removed from the ice bath once core temperatures fall below 38°C.

Because patients with psychomotor agitation and hyperthermia are at risk for muscle breakdown, rhabdomyolysis should be treated empirically with fluid hydration. Urine output should be maintained at a minimum of 1 mL/kg/h.

Patients reporting chest pain should have an ECG performed immediately. Cocaine use can produce coronary vasospasm, as well as increased platelet aggregation and coronary artery atherosclerosis. The management for patients who present with cocaine-induced chest pain parallels the management of ACS with two important exceptions. Cocaine-induced chest pain should be treated with benzodiazepines to decrease the central nervous system release of epinephrine and norepinephrine. Beta-blockers should be avoided, as there is risk not only of worsening the coronary vasospasm but also of further elevating the blood pressure from an unopposed alpha effect. Aspirin should be administered, especially given the increased risk of platelet aggregation that accompanies chronic cocaine use. Nitroglycerin can help with smooth muscle relaxation and may improve coronary vasospasm. In patients with refractory chest pain, phentolamine, an alpha-1 blocker, should be given. Finally, as patients who abuse cocaine and other sympathomimetics are predisposed to coronary artery disease, a cardiac catheterization in patients with ST-segment elevation is indicated.

Seizures may occur in the setting of sympathomimetic overdose because of stimulation of excitatory neurotransmitters; seizures may also occur due to drug-induced hyponatremia. Drugs of abuse, such as MDMA, can lead to hyponatremia through a combination of SIADH and increased free water consumption. Hypertonic saline should be considered in any patient suspected of having ingested MDMA who is actively seizing or who has an altered mental status.

CONCLUSION

Patients with opioid, benzodiazepine, and sympathomimetic overdose commonly present to the ED. Once the emergency physician is familiar with the clinical toxidromes of these overdoses, a focused bedside physical exam will enable formulation of an accurate differential diagnosis and appropriate plan of care.
### Opioids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duberstein et al., <em>Am J Med.</em> 1971&lt;sup&gt;14&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective study of all heroin overdose cases admitted to two hospitals between July 1, 1968 and November 30, 1970</td>
<td>One hundred and forty-nine patients, all with depressed mental status and depressed respiratory rate. Seventy percent presented with pulmonary edema. Thirteen deaths occurred; all had pulmonary edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldfrank et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 1986&lt;sup&gt;14&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Two-phase study to determine the pharmacokinetics of naloxone. Developed a continuous dosing nomogram</td>
<td>Continuous infusion of two-thirds of the bolus dose that resulted in reversal should be started for patients requiring continuous infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoffman et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 1991&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Review of Emergency Medical Service run sheets of 730 patients administered naloxone to determine whether clinical criteria could predict response to naloxone in patients with altered mental status</td>
<td>A respiratory rate &lt;12/min is predictive of a response to naloxone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Benzodiazepines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greenblatt et al., <em>Clin Pharmacol Ther.</em> 1997&lt;sup&gt;21&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective review of 773 patients admitted to the Massachusetts General Hospital between 1962 and 1975 with acute overdose on psychotropic drugs</td>
<td>No patient with overdose on oral benzodiazepines alone was observed to have significant toxicity. The frequency and severity of complications (CNS depression, need for assisted ventilation) escalated when benzodiazepines were taken in combination with another medication or drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arroliga et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2004&lt;sup&gt;22&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective, observational study of 9 patients receiving high-dose lorazepam infusions (&gt;10 mg/h) to evaluate the relationship between high-dose lorazepam and serum propylene glycol concentrations</td>
<td>Significant laboratory findings consistent with propylene glycol toxicity were present in 6/9 patients at 48 hours as evidenced by an elevated osmolar gap as well as an elevated anion gap. A significant correlation between high-dose lorazepam infusion rate and serum propylene glycol concentration was observed ($r = 0.557$, $p = 0.021$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spivey, <em>Clin Ther.</em> 1992&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Review of 43 patients who developed seizures in proximity to receiving flumazenil</td>
<td>Forty-seven percent of patients had reversal of benzodiazepines suppressing drug-induced seizures. Twelve percent of patients had reversal of benzodiazepines suppressing non-drug-induced seizures. Sixteen percent of patients had reversal of benzodiazepines given for a seizure disorder. Seven percent had reversal of chronic benzodiazepine dependence. Five percent had reversal of benzodiazepines given for conscious sedation. Fourteen percent had no apparent causal relationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sympathomimetics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baggott et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 2000&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Ecstasy tablets obtained though an internet site sampled for their contents</td>
<td>One hundred and seven pills were received and assayed. 28% contained identifiable drugs but not MDMA. The most common drug identified was dextromethorphan, although caffeine, ephedrine, and pseudoephedrine were also found. Eight percent of pills had no identifiable drug</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES


LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marzuk et al., JAMA. 1998</td>
<td>Retrospective review of 2008 unintentional fatal cocaine overdoses (medical examiner cases, 1990 to 1995)</td>
<td>When ambient temperatures were &gt;31.1°C there was an increase in mean daily number of cocaine overdose deaths of 2.34 (SD 1.68), 33% higher than the mean on days with a maximum temperature of &lt;31.1°C (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boehrer et al., Am J Medicine. 1993</td>
<td>Prospective study of the influence of cocaine on coronary vasocostriction. Fifteen patients undergoing cardiac catheterization had heart rate, mean arterial pressure, and coronary artery area measured at: (1) baseline, (2) 15 min following administration of intranasal cocaine, and (3) 5 min after saline or labetalol</td>
<td>Intranasal cocaine led to increased myocardial oxygen demand and decreased myocardial oxygen supply through coronary vasocostriction; labetalol reduced mean arterial pressure (p = 0.05), but did not improve coronary vasocostriction (p = NS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McCord et al., Circulation. 2008</td>
<td>American Heart Association recommendations for management of cocaine-associated chest pain and myocardial infarction based on critical review of the literature form 1960 to 2007</td>
<td>In cocaine-associated chest pain, patients should be treated with aspirin and benzodiazepines; this can be followed by intravenous nitroglycerin or nitroprusside for persistent hypertension (alternative: phentolamine). High-risk patients who present with a ST segment myocardial infarction should undergo catheterization. Beta-blocking agents should be avoided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Alcohol Withdrawal
Nicole Bouchard

BACKGROUND
Chronic alcoholism and alcohol withdrawal syndrome (AWS) are serious disorders that affect millions of people worldwide. AWS is frequently encountered in hospitalized patients and contributes significantly to patient morbidity and mortality. AWS also imposes a considerable financial burden on hospitals, as these patient visits are often prolonged and not fully reimbursed. In spite of the high volume of medical admissions for moderate to severe AWS, relatively little evidence-based literature addresses its management. This is particularly true in the intensive care unit (ICU), where management varies significantly among institutions.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
When the central nervous system is exposed to long-term ethanol use, compensatory changes occur to counter ethanol’s depressant effects on the inhibitory centers of the cerebral cortex. The net effect of these compensatory changes is to restore cerebral homeostasis despite the near-constant presence of ethanol. Tolerance to ethanol is an example of such a compensatory changes change. Alcohol potentiates γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA$_A$) signaling by increasing the GABA$_A$ chloride channel opening. With chronic ethanol use, the persistently stimulated inhibitory GABA$_A$ receptors become down-regulated and less sensitive to ethanol. Ethanol also inhibits glutamate, the excitatory neurotransmitter that binds to and activates the excitatory N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor. In chronic ethanol use, NMDA receptor systems are up-regulated and become more sensitive to glutamate. Ethanol use is also associated with increased brain dopamine; this is thought to be a contributing factor to some of its acutely pleasurable effects and addictive qualities.

When ethanol exposure is abruptly terminated, there is a loss of homeostasis, and these neurotransmitter systems become imbalanced. This absence of ethanol’s depressant effects on the already desensitized, down-regulated GABA system combined with the enhanced NMDA excitatory system and dysregulation of the dopaminergic system is primarily responsible for the development of unopposed CNS excitation and the hyperexcited state associated with AWS.

Chronic ethanol use is also thought to desensitize $\alpha_1$ receptors. The increased dopamine seen with ethanol use is metabolized to norepinephrine (NE) by dopamine-β-hydroxylase,
resulting in an increase in available NE. Chronically impaired $\alpha_2$ receptor activity in the face of increased NE results in adrenergic receptor up-regulation and adrenergic hypersensitivity. These effects may explain the increased sympathetic nervous system activity observed in alcohol withdrawal.\textsuperscript{15–17}

**HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAM**

Initial steps in the successful treatment of adult patients at risk of or actively experiencing AWS include early recognition of AWS, appropriate patient disposition, early initiation of symptom-triggered therapy (STT),\textsuperscript{18–25} and/or front-loading with benzodiazepines.\textsuperscript{26} Early recognition of AWS requires detailed history taking and an awareness of the stages of withdrawal.

Clinical manifestations of alcohol withdrawal occur along a spectrum and often coexist with other pathophysiologic states. Psychological symptoms range from mild anxiety, insomnia, craving, irritability, and labile emotions to significant agitation, trouble thinking clearly, and altered mental status (AMS) or frank delirium. Physical symptoms include headache, diaphoresis, nausea and vomiting, tachycardia, hypertension, tremor, tongue fasciculations, hyperthermia, and seizures.

The typical withdrawal timeline after a patient’s last drink is as follows:

- 6 to 12 hours: acute tremulousness (“the shakes”), insomnia, headache
- 12 to 24 hours: visual and/or auditory hallucinations, also known as alcohol hallucinosis
- 6 to 48 hours (or earlier with rapidly declining blood alcohol level [BAL]): seizures (“rum fits”) (typically several, usually short and self-terminating)
- 72 to 96 hours: delirium tremens (DT or “DTs”) characterized by AMS, delirium, hyperdynamic circulation, hyperventilation, and hyperthermia. DTs may persist for up to 2 weeks (1 week is more common)

Although AWS tends to occur in a temporal progression, there is no fixed sequence. Completion of alcohol withdrawal typically lasts 4 to 7 days; however, significant withdrawal can last up to 2 weeks.\textsuperscript{27} Historically, approximately 5% of all patients with AWS will progress to DTs;\textsuperscript{28} this number jumps to over 30% for patients who experience withdrawal seizures.\textsuperscript{29} In modern times, advances in medical therapy and ICU care have decreased the mortality from AWS with DT from 37% to 5%.\textsuperscript{30–33}

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS**

It is important to consider the complete clinical picture when caring for a patient with AWS. Not only does AWS frequently exist as a result of or in parallel with another pathophysiologic process, but its signs and symptoms can also be masked or complicated by other processes (Table 52.1). Occasionally, symptoms such as isolated tachycardia are wrongly attributed to AWS in the ethanol-dependent patient. Similarly, confounding AWS with other diagnoses (encephalopathy, psychosis, delirium from another cause, CNS injury, infection) can lead to wrong diagnoses, inappropriate sedation, and withheld treatments.\textsuperscript{34}
**Table 52.1** AWS Precipitants and Exacerbating Factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category of Precipitant/Complicating Factor</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comorbid acute medical diagnoses</td>
<td>Trauma, infection, cirrhosis, pancreatitis, gastritis, hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbid psychiatric diagnoses</td>
<td>Psychosis, suicidality, depression, mania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other substance addiction or withdrawal</td>
<td>Other benzodiazepines, opioids, cocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic causes</td>
<td>Evolution of symptoms while hospitalized, failure of providers to recognize, anticipate, or prevent AWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior AWS episodes</td>
<td>Prior history of significant or undertreated AWS predicts similar or more severe course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbid chronic diagnoses</td>
<td>Medication or treatment nonadherence with coexisting diagnoses, concurrent complicating diagnoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbid metabolic disarray</td>
<td>Alcohol ketoacidosis, dehydration, electrolyte and vitamin deficiencies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

A history of physiologic tolerance to ethanol from years of heavy use, coupled with recent cessation or reduction in ethanol intake, places patients at risk for developing AWS, severe AWS, and/or DT. Risk factors for the development of severe AWS and/or DT include duration of ethanol abuse; quantity of ethanol consumed; history of repeated episodes of AWS, DTs, or seizures; withdrawal symptoms with a positive BAL; mild intoxication with BAL >300 to 400 mg/dL; and comorbid infections. Hypokalemia, thrombocytopenia, and presence of structural brain lesions are additional independent predictors of more severe withdrawal. Certain populations may also be predisposed to severe AWS, and there may be a genetic or racial component (Whites appear more at risk than Blacks for severe AWS). When admitted to the hospital, high-risk patients should undergo careful risk assessment, followed by management using an established clinical care pathway. Unrecognized or undertreated withdrawal may progress to more severe withdrawal and exacerbate future episodes of AWS, underscoring the importance of early recognition and treatment.

The most commonly used and highly validated scoring systems for the assessment and STT of AWS are the Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment—Alcohol (CIWA-Ar, Ar: Alcohol-revised, and, where available, a new version CIWA-Ad) (Table 52.2). Care must be taken to apply the CIWA score correctly to at-risk patients to avoid erroneous attribution of symptoms to patients not in AWS. Some centers use abridged, institution-specific assessment tools; these may be convenient at a local hospital level but have not been extensively validated.

The strength of the CIWA tools is the ability to detect AWS at an early stage, when treatment will be maximally beneficial. The CIWA-Ar/Ad score becomes more difficult to evaluate in patients with very high scores, DTs, or benzodiazepine-resistant AWS. In these cases, the goal of STT is to maintain light sedation, and an agitation/sedation score such as the Richmond Agitation Sedation Score (RASS) may be a more useful assessment tool (Table 52.3).
### TABLE 52.2 Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment - Alcohol (CIWA-Ar)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient:</th>
<th>MR #:</th>
<th>Date: (yy/mm/dd)</th>
<th>Time: (24 hr)</th>
<th>Blood Pressure:</th>
<th>Pulse or heart rate:</th>
<th>Temp:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Nausea and Vomiting:** Ask "Do you feel sick to your stomach?" Have you vomited?

Observation:
- 0 — no nausea and no vomiting
- 1 — mild nausea with no vomiting
- 2
- 3
- 4 — intermittent nausea with dry heaves
- 5
- 6
- 7 — constant nausea, frequent dry heaves and vomiting

**Tactile Disturbances:** Ask "Have you any itching, pins and needles sensations, any burning, any numbness, or do you feel bugs crawling on or under your skin?"

Observation:
- 0 — none
- 1 — very mild itching, pins and needles, burning or numbness
- 2 — mild itching, pins and needles, burning or numbness
- 3 — moderate itching, pins and needles, burning or numbness
- 4 — moderately severe hallucinations
- 5 — severe hallucinations
- 6 — extremely severe hallucinations
- 7 — continuous hallucinations

**Tremor:** Arms extended and fingers spread apart.

Observation:
- 0 — no tremor
- 1 — not visible, but can be felt fingertip to fingertip
- 2
- 3
- 4 — moderate, with patient’s arms extended
- 5
- 6
- 7 — severe, even with arms not extended

**Auditory Disturbances:** Ask "Are you more aware of sounds around you? Are they harsh? Do they frighten you? Are you hearing anything that is disturbing to you? Are you hearing things that you know aren’t there?"

Observation:
- 0 — not present
- 1 — very mild harshness or ability to frighten
- 2 — mild harshness or ability to frighten
- 3 — moderate harshness or ability to frighten
- 4 — moderately severe hallucinations
- 5 — severe hallucinations
- 6 — extremely severe hallucinations
- 7 — continuous hallucinations

**Paroxysmal Sweats:**

Observation:
- 0 — no sweat visible
- 1 — barely perceptible sweating, palms moist
- 2
- 3
- 4 — beads of sweat obvious on forehead
- 5
- 6
- 7 — drenching sweats

**Visual Disturbances:** Ask "Does the light appear to be too bright? Is its color different? Does it hurt your eyes? Are you seeing anything that is disturbing you? Are you seeing things that you know aren’t there?"

Observation:
- 0 — not present
- 1 — very mild sensitivity
- 2 — mild sensitivity
- 3 — moderate sensitivity
- 4 — moderately severe hallucinations
- 5 — severe hallucinations
- 6 — extremely severe hallucinations
- 7 — continuous hallucinations

**Anxiety:** Ask "Do you feel nervous?"

Observation:
- 0 — no anxiety, at ease
- 1 — mildly anxious
- 2
- 3
- 4 — moderately anxious, or guarded, so anxiety is inferred
- 5
- 6
- 7 — equivalent to acute panic states as seen in severe delirium or acute schizophrenic reactions

**Headache, Fullness in Head:** Ask "Does your head feel different? Does it feel like there is a band around your head?" Do not rate dizziness or lightheadedness. Otherwise, rate severity.

Observation:
- 0 — not present
- 1 — very mild
- 2 — mild
- 3 — moderate
- 4 — moderately severe
- 5 — severe
- 6 — very severe
- 7 — extremely severe
Initial patient classification into mild, moderate, or severe AWD should be based on CIWA-Ar score and clinical picture. At initiation of treatment, CIWA-Ar/Ad/RASS (the latter for ICU patients) should again be assessed. The result of these scores, along with clinical picture, should then guide medication dosing; scoring should be repeated as indicated by the degree of AWS and frequency of medication dosing. No single guideline exists for managing this process; a sample protocol is provided in Figures 52.1–52.3.

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

Moderate to severe AWS is most commonly treated with benzodiazepines. Ideal pharmacologic management is tailored to the individual patient and controls hyperadrenergic symptoms, anxiety, agitation, and delirium while minimizing adverse effects. Drug selection and dosing strategy should be informed by the desired pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic properties of the drugs, as well as by individual patient characteristics (existing symptoms, underlying illnesses, and/or past episodes of AWS). Ongoing subjective assessments using CIWA-Ar/Ad and RASS scores are essential.
When compared to standing doses or continuous infusions of benzodiazepines, well-executed STT with benzodiazepines plus adjunctive agents can decrease total benzodiazepine dose, incidence of intubation and admission to the ICU, and hospital and ICU length of stay (LOS).\textsuperscript{18,20–25,42,45–47} In one study, well-executed STT was shown to be comparable to front-loading, an approach in which patients are typically titrated to lid lag, a low CIWA score (<8), or a state of calm.\textsuperscript{26} In front-loading, the use of long-acting benzodiazepines with active metabolites can lead to heavier sedation but confers the advantage of autotapering. In the emergency department (ED), front-loading followed by SST is often used in the initial control phase for patients in AWS.\textsuperscript{48} Generally speaking, institutional clinical guidelines and individual patient parameters should guide the practitioner’s choice of approach.

### Benzodiazepines

The five most commonly used benzodiazepines are diazepam, chlordiazepoxide, lorazepam, clonazepam, and oxazepam. There are several important considerations when choosing a pharmacologic agent for a patient in AWD (Table 52.4).

Chlordiazepoxide and diazepam have a longer duration of action due to the presence of active metabolites. This may decrease the rate of breakthrough symptoms and have an autotapering effect.\textsuperscript{31,50} Parenteral diazepam has a short onset and is preferred for rapid titration in severe cases; doses of 5 to 20 mg can be given every 5 to 10 minutes. Higher bolus doses can be used if the patient demonstrates tolerance. Oral chlordiazepoxide can be used effectively in moderate withdrawal and can be rapidly titrated at doses of 50 to 100 mg/hour. Patients may also be managed with aggressive oral dosing of chlordiazepoxide. The experience of recent national drug shortages established the efficacy of this approach in patients previously thought to require parenteral medications.\textsuperscript{51–53}

Lorazepam, which has a longer time to peak effect (15 to 20 minutes), may lead to iatrogenic oversedation if titrated too rapidly. Lorazepam can be titrated in doses of 1 to 4 mg every 15 to 30 minutes. If higher doses are used, a longer dosing interval is preferred. Due to lorazepam’s lack of active metabolites, nondependence on renal or hepatic mechanisms for clearance and predictable \( t_{1/2} \), it is preferred over diazepam and chlordiazepoxide for use in patients with COPD, hepatic dysfunction (INR > 1.6), renal dysfunction (\( \text{CrCl} < 30 \text{ mL/min} \), \( S_{\text{Cr}} > 2 \text{ mg/dL} \)), or age > 65 years.\textsuperscript{54} Prolonged lorazepam infusions carry a risk of toxicity from propylene glycol (the diluent in lorazepam infusions) with associated metabolic acidosis and renal failure. Lorazepam is also incompatible with numerous other infusions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Benzodiazepine</th>
<th>PO</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>Onset</th>
<th>( T_{1/2} )</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlordiazepoxide</td>
<td>50 mg</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>30–60 min (PO)</td>
<td>5–100 h</td>
<td>Active metabolites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diazepam</td>
<td>10 mg</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
<td>~5 min (IV)</td>
<td>30–100 h</td>
<td>Active metabolites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td>2 mg</td>
<td>1 mg</td>
<td>15–20 min (IV)</td>
<td>10–20 h</td>
<td>No active metabolites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>1 mg</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>30–60 min (PO)</td>
<td>20–50 h</td>
<td>No active metabolites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxazepam</td>
<td>30 mg</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>60 min (PO)</td>
<td>3–25 h</td>
<td>No active metabolites</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In general, it is recommended to avoid using different benzodiazepines together (e.g., oral chlordiazepoxide and intravenous benzodiazepines), except during the initial control phase when a patient is progressing from mild to more severe symptoms, or to provide a basis for autotapering (when chlordiazepoxide is added). The deliberate and measured use of different classes of medications based on mechanism of action and synergy can yield good results. Haphazard polypharmacy with benzodiazepines and other sedatives in difficult-to-control patients increases the chances of unexpected synergy and oversedation.

Patients with resistant alcohol withdrawal (defined below) require ICU-level monitoring and a more aggressive pharmacotherapeutic approach. Such patients often require adjunctive therapies like phenobarbital or propofol (see below).

Resistant Alcohol Withdrawal (RAW) is defined as the following:

1. Failure to respond to 200 mg of IV diazepam (or 30 mg lorazepam) in the first 3 hours
2. Failure to respond to 400 mg of IV diazepam (or 60 mg lorazepam) in the first 8 hours
3. Requirement of repeated doses of more than 40 mg of diazepam for control of agitation
4. Persistent CIWA scores of >25 despite aggressive therapy

**Barbiturates**

Barbiturates are GABA<sub>A</sub> agonists and have been employed as monotherapy and, more commonly, as adjuncts in severe DT or RAW. The most studied barbiturate in the setting of AWS is phenobarbital, which is typically initiated in a monitored setting when high-dose benzodiazepines have failed to control symptoms. A standard starting dose of phenobarbital of 30 mg can be used, titrated to effect every 30 minutes. As the onset of barbiturates’ effect can be delayed, it is prudent to wait approximately 30 minutes before adding an additional agent. The long half-life of barbiturates also confers a beneficial self-tapering effect. One study showed decreased ICU admissions with phenobarbital given as a single dose of 19 mg/kg (vs. placebo) early in the course of treatment. It is unclear, however, whether this outcome demonstrates superiority of loading with a barbiturate, or the benefit of a front-loaded approach in general paired with a less aggressive institutional protocol. In times of nationwide benzodiazepine shortages, the use of barbiturates in the treatment of AWS should be considered a reasonable therapeutic option.

**Propofol**

Propofol is a GABA<sub>A</sub> agonist and an NMDA antagonist. It is highly effective at controlling severe AWS symptoms and is generally reserved for cases refractory to high-dose benzodiazepines and barbiturates. Intubation is generally recommended because of propofol’s potency and the narrow window between an effective and toxic dose. Propofol’s short half-life makes it unsuitable as a primary or exclusive agent. Intubated patients on propofol infusions can be started on a benzodiazepine or chlordiazepoxide via nasogastric tube, in an effort to wean from propofol and establish a base of long-acting benzodiazepines that permit autotapering (see Tapering section). Propofol infusions are susceptible to tachyphylaxis and should only be used in a highly monitored setting.
**Antipsychotics**

In historical studies of AWS, benzodiazepines have been shown far superior to monotherapy with antipsychotics in controlling symptoms and preventing seizures or DTs. Bolus therapy with the antipsychotic haloperidol, given with clonidine and benzodiazepines, has been described as a successful combination when compared to continuous monotherapy infusions. It is not clear whether the strength of the treatment reported was the result of attentive STT/bolus therapy, or the combination of the medications used, or both. As a general rule, while there may be a role for antipsychotics in patients in AWS with comorbid psychiatric disorders or pronounced hallucinations, monotherapy with these agents should be avoided.

**Anticonvulsants**

Some studies have suggested that benzodiazepine use in the treatment of AWS can lead to more craving—of both ethanol and benzodiazepines—and that alternative, non–benzodiazepine-based regimens—such as anticonvulsants—may decrease craving and relapse after detoxification. Since these studies considered only short-term outcomes, it is difficult to know whether the effect on craving continues beyond the initial period following detoxification.

The anticonvulsant topiramate is an antiglutaminergic and GABA-enhancing drug, and studies have shown it to attenuate AWS in rodents. Human studies have shown a benefit over placebo for preventing AWS and suggest a possible role for treating ethanol dependence. Valproic acid, gabapentin, and carbamazepine have also been evaluated in the treatment of AWS, primarily in mild to moderate cases in the settings of inpatient and outpatient detoxification units. Studies suggest them to be inadequate as sole agents but potentially more useful in combination therapy.

A 2010 Cochrane review of anticonvulsants for AWS concluded that there was insufficient evidence in their favor, excepting the use of carbamazepine, which may outperform benzodiazepines in treating some aspects of AWS. Compared to benzodiazepines, carbamazepine appears to have more benefit in symptom control and craving in less medically severe cases and in the outpatient setting, but less benefit in preventing seizures and DTs.

Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB), also a GABA A agonist, was found to be comparable, but not superior, to benzodiazepines. GHB has been used more widely in Europe, but concerns for GHB addiction have tempered its use in the United States. Phenytoin has not been shown to be beneficial in seizures related to AWS.

Of note, in 2013, an unpublished case series was presented at a national meeting regarding the use of valproic acid or gabapentin with clonidine patches. The investigator described successful detoxification of medically moderate to severe AWS without the use of a benzodiazepine. Since the findings remain unpublished, it is difficult to comment on the results, except to say that alternative regimens to benzodiazepines are being explored and discussed.

**Clonidine and Dexmedetomidine**

Clonidine and dexmedetomidine are centrally acting α2 agonists. α2 agonists decrease NE release and reduce symptoms of sympathetic overdrive. These agents have been studied in rodent models for the treatment of AWS as well as in a limited number
of human trials. The surgical literature has reported the successful use of clonidine with haloperidol and benzodiazepines in the treatment of surgical intensive care unit (SICU) and trauma patients with AWS; one randomized controlled trial found transdermal clonidine to be as effective as chlordiazepoxide in the management of mild AWS, and a case series reported using high-dose clonidine patches in combination with valproic acid or gabapentin in the treatment of moderate to severe AWS. Most studies (case reports and uncontrolled case series) of dexmedetomidine in AWS have focused on its use as an adjunctive agent. Both clonidine and dexmedetomidine can produce sedation as well as hypotension and bradycardia, and acute withdrawal from dexmedetomidine has been described in patients on prolonged infusions. There is likely a role for clonidine and dexmedetomidine as adjuncts in the treatment of AWS, but more studies are required to fully comment on appropriate case selection, outcomes, and patient safety. At this time, neither agent is recommended for use as monotherapy in AWS.

**Baclofen**

Baclofen is a stereo-selective agonist of GABA. It has been shown to be effective in suppressing AWS in rodents and, in a small number of human trials, to be comparable, but not superior, to benzodiazepines. It is notable that the benzodiazepine doses were low in the human trial comparison groups, suggesting that the study population was experiencing less severe withdrawal. A recent Cochrane review concluded that there were insufficient data to make outcome or safety conclusions regarding baclofen’s use for AWS. Baclofen has shown some effect in supporting efforts at alcohol abstinence in alcohol-dependent patients with liver cirrhosis. This application has gained popularity, particularly in Europe, and warrants further study.

**Ethanol**

Ethanol therapy for AWS (IV or PO) is not recommended due to a high failure rate and potential for complications. In both PO and IV forms, alcohol has large free water content, an association with electrolyte and behavioral disturbances, and a tendency to cause hypoglycemia. These factors, as well as difficulties in titration to adequate blood levels, make it an unsuitable choice. In a randomized trial of IV ethanol versus scheduled-dose diazepam in a trauma ICU, IV ethanol was found to be inferior to diazepam and was associated with greater treatment failures. Prophylaxis with ethanol in patients, particularly for elective surgical admissions, is practiced in some centers. A discussion of this is beyond the scope of this chapter, and it remains a controversial practice.

**Beta-blockers**

Beta-adrenergic agents should not be used to control the hypertension and tachycardia associated with AWS until the underlying cause (i.e., the hyperadrenergic AWS state) is treated. Once fluid status and appropriate sedation are administered, vital sign abnormalities usually normalize. If hypertension coexists, beta-blockers and other anti-hypertensive agents can be used to control blood pressure. Beta-blockers, by masking abnormal vital signs, can also obscure the diagnosis of delirium tremens.
Tapering
Once initial control of withdrawal symptoms is achieved with benzodiazepines and/or phenobarbital/propofol and a stable clinical trend is established for 24 to 28 hours, a plan for tapering must be implemented. A recommended approach is to taper by approximately 20% per day of total daily benzodiazepine equivalent dose. Taper with chlordiazepoxide when possible (anticipate starting with ≥100 mg chlordiazepoxide PO q2–8h in severe cases). For example, if a patient had a total of 700 mg chlordiazepoxide PO and 8 mg lorazepam IV over 24 hours (equivalent to ~900 mg chlordiazepoxide), then the next day’s dose would be 720 mg/day (divided q6–8h). Patients treated with long-acting agents with active metabolites may exhibit varying degrees of an “autotaper” effect while still receiving STT. If during tapering, a patient’s CIWA-Ar scores increase to >10, give supplemental medication for breakthrough symptoms and consider a slower taper by increasing the daily dose, that is, tapering by 10% per day. Propofol infusions should be tapered as early as possible (after 2 to 3 days) because of the associated risk of infection and hypertriglyceridemia. Tapering from nonbenzodiazepines is not well described in moderate to severe AWS.

General Supportive Care
The following additional supportive care measures for the patient with AWS should be considered, particularly if the patient is heavily sedated or bedbound.

A. Daily × 7 days: thiamine 100 mg PO/IV, folate 1 mg PO/IV, and MVI PO/IV
B. Careful electrolyte repletion
C. Docusate 100 mg PO/NG/DT/PEG TID and Senna two tablets PO/NG/DT/PEG daily
D. Lacrilube each eye BID or artificial tears two drops each eye QID
E. NPO if compromised mental status, severe agitation, and risk for aspiration
F. Early mobilization of bed whenever possible per ICU/SDU care plan
G. Avoidance of daily interruption of sedation as is routine with other ICU patients
H. Restraints and continuous observation as per hospital policy
I. MICU and psychiatry consult for difficult cases
J. Social Work consult for after care and outpatient detox/rehab follow-up

CONCLUSION
STT with benzodiazepines is currently accepted as best practice in the management of mild to severe AWS. This approach provides the greatest advantage in patients with severe AWS, benzodiazepine-resistant AWS, and DT's, resulting in shorter lengths of stay, decreased complication rates, and lower total medication dose requirements when compared to lower bolus doses or those placed on continuous infusions (especially of benzodiazepines).35 Propofol and dexmedetomidine are not supported as sole agents or first-line agents, but show promise as rescue medications in benzodiazepine-resistant cases or when intubation is considered imminent. Resource utilization and complications rates remain high for patients with severe AWS, and providers should exercise a low threshold for transfer to the MICU in concerning cases (Figs. 52.2 and 52.3).
Management of Alcohol Withdrawal: Clinical Guidelines for Medicine and the ED

Always use clinical judgment to customize patient therapy when applying clinical guidelines.

Does the patient meet eligibility criteria for Alcohol Withdrawal?

Is the patient at RISK for Alcohol Withdrawal?

History of severe withdrawal/DT’s?

Consider co-morbidities and precipitants?

Classify patient into Mild, Moderate or Severe Alcohol Withdrawal Category

Use CIWA-Ar score and clinical picture to guide medication dosing

Dosing may need to be customized to meet each patient's needs.

The categories are approximations along a continuum/clinical spectrum.

This guideline is intended for use in patients with Alcohol Withdrawal and for patients AT RISK FOR Alcohol Withdrawal.

Consider use of an Alcohol Withdrawal tracking spreadsheet to track CIWA-Ar scores, vital signs and medication requirements over time.

FIGURE 52.1 AWS initial assessment guideline. AWS guidelines codeveloped with Dr. Amy Dzierba, Pharm.D., Columbia University Medical Center.
**Management of Alcohol Withdrawal: Clinical Guidelines for Medicine and the ED**

Always use clinical judgment to customize patient therapy when applying clinical guidelines.

### Toxicologic Critical Care

**Management of Alcohol Withdrawal: Clinical Guidelines for Medicine and the ED**

Always use clinical judgment to customize patient therapy when applying clinical guidelines.

**Floor Goal = CIWA-Ar £ 10**

- Light sedation

**ICU Goal = CIWA-Ar £ 10**

- RASS 0 to -3

**CIWA-Ar Score**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Clinical Picture</th>
<th>CIWA-Ar Score</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤ 10</td>
<td>Stable</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 10</td>
<td>Ketamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-15</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 16</td>
<td>Delirium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reassess Clinical Picture, CIWA-Ar score & VS at minimum of every 4 hrs unless medically stable, then re-evaluate every 8 hrs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CIWA-Ar &gt; 15 &amp; Patient is medically stable</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CIWA-Ar &gt; 15 &amp; Patient is medically stable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CIWA-Ar &gt; 15 &amp; Patient is medically stable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Floor Goal = CIWA-Ar ≤ 10, Light Sedation

**CIWA-Ar Score**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Clinical Picture</th>
<th>CIWA-Ar Score</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤ 10</td>
<td>Stable</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 10</td>
<td>Ketamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-15</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 16</td>
<td>Delirium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Always use clinical judgment to customize patient therapy when applying clinical guidelines.**

**Delirium Tremens (DTs) & Resistant Alcohol Withdrawal (RAW)**

- Delirium:
  - CIWA-Ar score ≥ 8-10
  - Chlordiazepoxide 100 mg PO ×1 is indicated when CIWA-Ar <8 AND if history of severe AWD/DT’s or:
  - If CIWA-Ar scores <8 x 24 hrs AND patient is eligible for discharge, may discharge.

- Delirium Tremens:
  - CIWA-Ar score ≥ 16 or high benzodiazepine doses used:
  - Consider SDU/ICU admission.

- Tremens:
  - CIWA-Ar score ≥ 8-10
  - Chlordiazepoxide 100 mg PO X1
  - Then, reassess CIWA score 1 hr after medication dose and redose if CIWA >8.

- Resistant:
  - CIWA-Ar score ≥ 8-10
  - Patient is eligible for discharge, may discharge.

**CIWA-Ar Score**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Clinical Picture</th>
<th>CIWA-Ar Score</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤ 10</td>
<td>Stable</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 10</td>
<td>Ketamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-15</td>
<td>CIWA-Ar ≤ 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 16</td>
<td>Delirium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 52.2** Suggested AWS guideline for mild, moderate, and severe AWS. AWS guidelines codeveloped with Dr. Amy Dzierba, Pharm.D., Columbia University Medical Center.
Management of Alcohol Withdrawal: Clinical Guidelines for Medicine and the ED

Always use clinical judgment to customize patient therapy when applying clinical guidelines.

**ICU: Delirium Tremens and/or Resistant Alcohol Withdrawal (RAW)**
Persistent CIWA-Ar ≥ 25, frank delirium or inability to control symptoms despite medication AND/OR ≥200 mg in the initial 3 hrs or ≥400 mg of diazepam in the first 8 hrs OR ≥30 mg in the initial 3 hours or ≥60 mg of lorazepam in the initial 8 hours AND alternate diagnosis considered AND ADMIT TO ICU.

**ICU Goal: CIWA-Ar ≤ 10, RASS -1 to -3**
Diazepam 20 mg IV x1 (preferred)
Reassess in 10 min and redose at 20 mg if CIWA-Ar ≥13 or RASS ≥1
If ineffective, increase to 40 mg every 10 min for subsequent doses. If CIWA-Ar ≥12 or RASS ≥1 give half the last dose (not cumulative)

OR
Lorazepam 4 mg IV x1
Reassess in 20 min and redose at 4 mg if CIWA-Ar ≥13 or RASS ≥1
If 4 mg not effective, increase to 6 mg every 20 min for subsequent doses. If CIWA-Ar ≥12 or RASS ≥1 give half the last dose (not cumulative)

If ≥200 mg in the initial 3 hrs or ≥400 mg of diazepam in the first 8 hrs OR ≥30 mg in the initial 3 hours or ≥60 mg of lorazepam in the initial 8 hours AND alternate diagnosis considered, move to RAW treatment algorithm below.

**Continuous symptom triggered therapy with high dose diazepam (preferred) or high dose lorazepam (may need to consider lorazepam continuous infusion, this is the least favored option for non-intubated patients and should be reserved for selected patients with above contraindications)**
Bolus therapy may reach doses as high as ≥2000 mg diazepam/day or ≥200 mg/day or lorazepam

**CONSIDER ADDING**
1) Phenobarbital (with interspersed benzodiazepines):
Phenobarbital 60 mg IV (bolus) every 30 min – consider halving total daily dose of benzodiazepines if starting phenobarbital and not intubated. Though the goal of this strategy is to avoid intubation, intubation may be required due to respiratory depression with concurrent benzodiazepine therapy.

2) Propofol if ≥5 doses of phenobarbital over 8 hrs and patient is still having severe symptoms (intubation usually required)
Propofol - No Bolus, start drip at 5-10 micrograms/kg/min and titrate to sedation (RASS -3 to -4), maximum dose of 80 micrograms/kg/min.

3) Lorazepam infusion - start at 2mg/hr, bolus at 1-2mg every 30 min as necessary and increase drip by 1-2 mg/hr as needed

Reassess Clinical Picture, CIWA-Ar score & VS at minimum of every 1 hr until symptoms are stable. Redose medication at last effective dose if CIWA-Ar ≥13 or RASS ≥1, redose at half the last dose for CIWA-Ar ≥12 or RASS ≥0. Hold medication if CIWA-Ar ≤8 or RASS ≤-3 (unless intubated).

ALL patients will require medication TAPERING once stabilized. Begin tapering after 48 hrs or once a stable trend has emerged. Taper by 20% per day.

*IF patient requires sedation for co-existing condition, titrate sedation to achieve desired RASS goal and begin tapering when clinically stable (use caution when holding sedation for daily interruption).

**FIGURE 52.3** AWS guideline for RAW and DT. AWS guidelines codeveloped with Dr. Amy Dzierba, Pharm.D., Columbia University Medical Center.
REFERENCES


---

**LITERATURE TABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gold et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2007</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study of patients treated pre (54 patients) and post (41 patients) the introduction of an AWS guideline for escalating dose therapy in patients admitted to the ICU for the treatment of severe AWS. A previous standard therapy of lower bolus doses and frequent continuous infusions was compared to a strategy of escalating doses of benzodiazepines (primarily diazepam) and adjunctive phenobarbital</td>
<td>Postguideline patients had lower rates of intubation (47% vs. 22%; ( p = 0.008 )), with trends toward decreased ICU LOS and nosocomial pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saitz et al., <em>JAMA.</em> 1994</td>
<td>Prospective double-blind RCT of 101 patients with AWS randomized to fixed-dose or symptom triggered-therapy (STT) with chlordiazepoxide</td>
<td>STT therapy, individualized treatment, and decreased both treatment duration (( p &lt; 0.001 )) and total dose of medication used (( p &lt; 0.001 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spies et al., <em>Intensive Care Med.</em> 2003</td>
<td>Prospective double-blind RCT of 44 surgical ICU patients with AWS randomized to either (a) continuous infusion with IV flunitrazepam, clonidine, and haloperidol or (b) the same medications given in a bolus-titrated manner. Severity and duration of AWS was assessed</td>
<td>Bolus-titrated therapy decreased the severity and duration of AWS (median 2 vs. 6 d; ( p = \leq 0.01 )), total medication requirements, rate of intubation (85% vs. 90%, ( p = 0.050 )), days of mechanical ventilation (median 6 vs. 12, ( p = 0.01 )), incidence of pneumonia (43% vs. 26%, ( p = \leq 0.01 )), and duration ICU length of stay (median 6 vs. 14 d; ( p = \leq 0.01 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awissi et al., <em>Intensive Care Med.</em> 2013</td>
<td>Systematic review of screening tools, prophylaxis, treatment, and outcomes for AWS and DTs in the critically ill</td>
<td>No screening tools have been validated for the ICU. Early and aggressive titration of medication guided by symptoms is the only approach associated with improved outcome. Treatment of AWS is associated with higher ICU complication rates and resource utilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarff and Gold, <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2010</td>
<td>Review article of pathophysiology, diagnosis, and pharmacologic treatment of AWS in critically ill patients</td>
<td>High-dose benzodiazepines, barbiturate, and propofol are supported for the treatment of severe or benzodiazepine-resistant AWS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


83. Maldonado JP. Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome—Treatment Options Beyond Benzodiazepines. San Juan, Puerto Rico: ACMT Alcohol Abuse Academy; 2013.


SECTION 12
Environmental Critical Care

Hypothermia
Morgan Eutermoser and Jay Lemery

BACKGROUND
In 2005, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report disclosed that 689 deaths per year in the United States were attributable to accidental hypothermia, defined as an involuntary or unintentional drop in core body temperature to <35°C (95°F). Heat loss from environmental exposure occurs through four well-known mechanisms: radiation, conduction (which can significantly increase in water and/or wet clothes), convection, and evaporation. Conversely, heat generation occurs through skeletal muscle use as well as through involuntary hypothalamic-mediated shivering. The latter is a neuroendocrine response to mild hypothermia mediated through serotonin, dopamine, norepinephrine, thyroid-stimulating hormone, and thyrotropin-releasing hormone, all of which affect the autonomic nervous system.

Primary hypothermia occurs when an individual’s intrinsic compensatory capacity is overwhelmed by cold stress and thus unable to maintain temperature homeostasis. Patients with chronic disease or physiologic vulnerability—such as advanced age, alcohol or drug abuse, and mental impairment—have diminished compensatory capacity and are at greater risk for primary hypothermia.

Secondary hypothermia occurs when a person with a systemic illness (e.g., myxedema coma or sepsis) becomes hypothermic due to a pathologic lack of autoregulation. Clinicians should be aware that this may occur even in a warm environment and is a sign of severe physiologic decompensation. This chapter describes the clinically relevant parameters of hypothermia and outlines an appropriate organ system–based approach to diagnosis and management.

DEFINITIONS
Hypothermia is a sign of severe illness and/or significant environmental exposure. Prompt identification is critical for optimal clinical management. Degree of hypothermia is generally stratified to four categories: mild (35°C to 32°C), moderate
Hypothermia (32°C to 28°C), severe (28°C to 20°C), and profound (<20°C). In the absence of an ability to quantify temperature, the Swiss staging system (Table 53.1) may be used to categorize hypothermia severity based on clinical presentation.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY AND CLINICAL PRESENTATION

Cardiovascular

The initial response to cold stress and mild hypothermia (>33°C) is a norepinephrine (NE)-mediated increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and heart rate (HR). These physiologic signs reverse, with a decrease in MAP and HR, when the core temperature falls below 33°C. Sinus bradycardia is an expected finding in hypothermic patients, due to a combination of decreased sympathetic tone and a slowing of spontaneous depolarization of cardiac pacemaker cells. This bradycardia is not vagally mediated, and thus atropine will have limited efficacy in resuscitation. The hypothermic state significantly lowers metabolism, and therefore marked bradycardia is not as detrimental to the body’s needs as in a euthermic patient. The hypothermic effect on the myocardium is known to produce an “irritable” state, in which the use of pacing wires and antiarrhythmic drugs during resuscitation has been shown to trigger significant dysrhythmias. These interventions are not supported by available evidence and are not recommended in the current American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines.

The classic ECG finding of hypothermia (<33°C) (Fig. 53.1)—the “J-wave” or “Osborn wave”—is a marked with a dome configuration at the R-ST junction. First characterized in 1953, this EEG morphology was associated by Osborn with the risk of impending ventricular arrhythmias; however, this has since been refuted. J-waves can also be seen in myocardial ischemia, sepsis, and CNS lesions and can be a normal ECG variant in young people. The formation of the J-wave in hypothermia is thought to be due to delayed depolarization or early repolarization of the left ventricular wall.

Atrial fibrillation is quite common at core temperatures below 32°C and will commonly convert spontaneously with rewarming. At 28°C, severe bradycardia (30 to 40 bpm) can be expected. As moderate to severe hypothermia set in, decreased conduction velocity, increased myocardial conduction time, and decreased refractory time can result in the sinus bradycardia degenerating into atrial and ventricular dysrhythmias.

### Table 53.1 Swiss Staging System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Clinical Findings</th>
<th>Likely Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Alert, shivering</td>
<td>35°C–32°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Drowsy, not shivering</td>
<td>32°C–28°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Unconscious, vital signs present</td>
<td>28°C–24°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Vital signs absent, appears dead</td>
<td>24°C–13°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Death (irreversible hypothermia)</td>
<td>&lt;13°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Below 25°C, asystole and ventricular fibrillation occur spontaneously and may be hastened by the jostling of patients by caregivers; therefore, care must be taken when handling these patients.\(^3\)

As previously noted, MAP drops in severe hypothermia, producing an associated significant decrease in global sympathetic tone. Peripheral vasodilation occurs at this time and can result in a warming sensation. When combined with an altered mental status (see neurologic effects below), this warming sensation can lead to “paradoxical undressing,” whereby patients may remove clothing in an effort to cool down, compounding environmental hypothermia.\(^11\) During hypothermic resuscitation, IV arterial vasopressor therapies such as vasopressin or phenylephrine may be used to improve peripheral vasomotor tone during rewarming. Careful attention to and correction of any intravascular volume deficit are also important for appropriate resuscitation.

**Pulmonary**

The initial response to hypothermia is tachypnea driven by the increased metabolic demand from shivering. However, once basal metabolism begins to slow (50% decrease in CO\(_2\) production with an 8°C drop in core temperature), there is a commensurate decrease in minute ventilation. This physiologic change highlights the need to be aware of possible overventilation and subsequent iatrogenic hypocapnia during a hypothermic resuscitation. Direct cold exposure affects pulmonary mechanics through airway congestion, bronchoconstriction, increased secretions, and decreased mucociliary clearance. The primary ventilatory response to cold air is a decrease in baseline ventilation and respiratory chemosensitivity. These responses are thought to provide significant protection against heat loss in animals, although the effect on human physiology is minimal. Cold exposure also elicits an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance. This stimulus is synergistic with hypoxia and may mediate pulmonary hypertension and edema at altitude.\(^12\)
Neurologic
For every 1°C decrease in core body temperature, cerebral metabolism is decreased by 6% to 7%, with EEG silencing typically found at 19°C to 20°C. This loss of pupillary light reflex and deep tendon reflexes can be seen in moderate hypothermia. However, in one series of 97 patients with accidental hypothermia, level of consciousness, pupillary reflex, and deep tendon reflexes could not be correlated with temperature even in severe hypothermia. This illustrates an important clinical pearl—patients may appear dead, yet be profoundly hypothermic. Indeed, there have been many case reports of patients who have survived with extremely low core temperatures—as low as 14.2°C in a child and 13.7°C in an adult—thus supporting the maxim patients are not dead until they are warm and dead.

Renal
Renal pathology in hypothermia is most commonly due to prerenal failure from cold-induced diuresis and fluid shifts (primary hypothermia) and may be coupled with underlying systemic diseases affecting renal function (secondary). The initial systemic autonomic response to cold stress is that blood flow shifts to the core and away from the periphery. The resulting increased central blood volume and perfusion produce a reduction in CNS release of antidiuretic hormone resulting in renal free water diuresis, a process known as “cold diuresis.” This is important to understand during a hypothermic resuscitation, as the patient may have markedly reduced blood volume yet maintain a normal blood pressure due to significant concomitant vasoconstriction. Likewise, when rewarming begins, peripheral vasodilation may lead to core blood redistribution and cardiovascular collapse in the hypothermic dehydrated patient.

Hematologic
Hypothermia causes an increase in blood viscosity, hematocrit, and fibrinogen levels. The normal clotting cascade is also impeded, due to the temperature-mediated inhibition of the catalytic function of multiple clotting cascade components. Severe hypothermia (often with concomitant frostbite) can lead to fulminant disseminated intravascular coagulation from the release of tissue thromboplastin (responsible for catalyzing the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin) from ischemic tissues. Cold stress also suppresses bone marrow production, which may lead to thrombocytopenia and cause splenic and hepatic sequestration of platelets. Hypothermia can have significant impact on the care of trauma patients and is considered part of the “lethal triad of trauma” (metabolic acidosis, coagulopathy, and hypothermia).

For every 1°C decline in core temperature, there is a 2% increase in the hematocrit. Anemia in a severely hypothermic patient should therefore raise suspicion and prompt a broader workup. Caution also should be exercised in interpreting prothrombin time and activated partial thromboplastin times. They will not accurately reflect coagulation status because the values are measured at 37°C in the lab rather than the in vivo core body temperature of the patient.

Gastrointestinal
As temperature declines, gut motility begins to slow, often resulting in an ileus at temperatures below 28°C. Decreased hepatic blood flow will cause hepatic impairment, which can result in reduced drug metabolism as well as compromised clearing of lactate.
Pancreatitis is also commonly seen in hypothermia but can be clinically silent, discovered only through elevation of enzymes. Because of this, glucose should be carefully monitored during rewarming.23

**MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES**

**Temperature Determination**
Optimal clinical management of the hypothermic patient depends on accurate and consistent temperature monitoring. The esophageal probe is the recommended device in a critically hypothermic patient.24 Temperature determination can be falsely elevated if the patient is intubated or ventilated with heated air, or if the probe is placed too proximally in the esophagus. To avoid this problem, it is recommended to place the probe in the lower third of the esophagus.25 Rectal temperature measurement is commonly used but has a greater risk of inaccuracy than the esophageal devices. Specifically, rectal temperatures can lag behind true core body temperatures and thus risk accidental overshoot in core temperature during rewarming.26 Proper placement of the probe is 15 cm into the rectum, avoiding cold feces. Tympanic membrane temperature assessment is cumbersome and not recommended for continuous monitoring, but can effectively and quickly identify core temperature. If used, the ear should be clear of cerumen and shielded from the outside environment.27 Bladder temperature probes are also not recommended in the severely hypothermic patient and may be confounded if warm saline is instilled into the bladder.

**Airway and Breathing**
Accurately assessing oxygen saturation in a hypothermic patient can be difficult. The skin surface must be warm and well perfused in order to accurately measure transcutaneous oxygen saturation and is therefore poorly suited to this purpose in the hypothermic patient.28 Airway management decisions remain the same as in any critically ill patient. Gentle handling of the patient during airway maneuvers is recommended because of a potentially irritable myocardium; however, a multicenter survey that reviewed 117 intubations of hypothermic patients reported no increased complications.3,29 Endotracheal intubation has an additional benefit of allowing for the inhalation of humidified, heated air. Hypothermic patients are vulnerable to electrolyte imbalances, and succinylcholine should be avoided given its side effect of transient hyperkalemia.30 In any hypothermic patient with altered mental status, precipitating events, including trauma, infection, and toxic/metabolic disorders, should be carefully assessed.

**Medical Therapy**
Medications that have temperature-dependent activity may have compromised efficacy in a hypothermic patient. Cold-induced pharmacokinetic changes include increased protein binding and decreased liver metabolism.31 Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) drugs given to a hypothermic patient may remain in circulation and subsequently manifest toxic effects during rewarming. Most hypothermic clinical conditions, however, do not require pharmacologic intervention, as rewarming will resolve the majority of cold-induced pathologies (e.g., atrial fibrillation).

High-risk hypothermic patients merit full infectious workups and consideration of broad-spectrum antibiotics. In a retrospective review of 59 patients with accidental
hypothermia, 41% also had serious infections with predominance of respiratory and soft tissue infections.32

**ACLS**

ACLS is modified in several protocols. Table 53.2 shows three common transport protocols and recommendations with ACLS modifications. Each patient should be assessed on an individual basis.

**Rewarming**

Rewarming is divided into three levels: passive external, active external, and active internal/core rewarming.3 The choice of specific rewarming method(s) should be based on both available resources and specific patient needs.36 Rescuers should be aware of the phenomenon of afterdrop when extricating a patient from prolonged cold exposure settings (e.g., avalanches). Afterdrop is the decrease in core body temperature during rewarming due to redistribution of peripheral cold blood (also known as core shunting).

**TABLE 53.2** ACLS Recommendations in Accidental Hypothermia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State of Alaska Cold Injuries Transport Guidelines33</th>
<th>JAMA Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiac Care: Hypothermia34</th>
<th>The 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science: Cardiac Arrest in Accidental Hypothermia35</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLS/ACLS should not be initiated in field if core temperature is &lt;15°C, chest is frozen, victim is underwater for more than an hour, or lethal injury present</td>
<td>1. Rescue breaths should be given to the apneic patient</td>
<td>1. If no signs of life, begin CPR without delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signs of life and pulse should be assessed for 45 s before CPR initiated</td>
<td>2. Pulse check for 30–45 s prior to initiation of chest compression. Prior recommendations focused on 1- to 2-min check</td>
<td>2. If VT or VF present, defibrillation should be attempted. No recommendation for ceasing attempts or continued attempts if VT or VF persists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intubation is safe and needed to give humidified, heated oxygen</td>
<td>3. Gentle intubation to avoid ventricular fibrillation</td>
<td>3. Supports advanced airway placement and warmed, humidified oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain the patient in horizontal position</td>
<td>4. Maintain the patient in horizontal position</td>
<td>4. Given animal investigations and vasopressors, reasonable to administer medications according to the standard ACLS algorithm. No formal recommendation to give or withhold ACLS medications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest compressions should not be performed if there are signs of life</td>
<td>5. Deliver three shocks for patients in VF; however, if persistent VF, do not shock again until warmed to 30°C</td>
<td>5. Patients should be warm prior to declaration of death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest compressions should be performed if there are no signs of life. If after 60 min and appropriate CPR and there are still no signs of life, an EMT can discontinue resuscitative efforts</td>
<td>6. Warm oxygen (42°C–46°C) and IVF (43°C) should be started while transporting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defibrillation and ACLS drugs should only be used if the core temperature is above 86°F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One trial of defibrillation can be attempted if temperature is unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLS/ACLS procedures should be terminated if there is significant harm/risk to the rescuer or if procedures cause a delay in evacuation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF should be heated to 42°C–44°C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Although some studies show no effect of afterdrop on patients during rewarming, a field study performed in 2010 suggests a significant physiologic effect. In that study, subjects were buried in snow with an esophageal temperature probe in place and wearing an Avalung (a commercially available personal avalanche rescue device to assist in preservation of ventilation). After 60 minutes, subjects were extricated and placed in a warm blanket, subsequently demonstrating a fourfold increase of cooling rate compared to burial cooling rate.

**Passive External Rewarming**

Passive external rewarming is a noninvasive, spontaneous process that involves removal of wet/cold garments and placement of blankets. Passive rewarming is recommended only for mild hypothermia.

**Active External Rewarming**

Common methods of active external rewarming include breathing warmed and humidified air, cutaneous warming via localized heating pads, blankets, or commercially available forced-air warmers (e.g., Bair Hugger), and, on occasion, extremity immersion. Heated, humidified air can increase core temperature by 1°C to 2°C/hour. Convection-based forced-air warmers can raise core temperatures 0.9°C/hour. Chemical heat packs or local heating pads can cause thermal injury to skin, especially in an obtunded patient, do not provide core warming, and are not recommended. If available and appropriate for the clinical circumstances, extremity immersion in hyperthermic water has proven utility. In a 1999 study, hypothermic subjects were warmed by either shivering or extremity immersion into 42°C or 45°C water. The subjects in the immersion group achieved a faster rewarming rate.

**Active Internal Rewarming**

Active internal rewarming techniques have progressed from initial drain placement and warm lavage fluid to cardiopulmonary bypass. A provider’s decision to transition from active external to active internal rewarming techniques should be guided by the mental status and hemodynamic stability of the patient, as well as by capacity for close patient monitoring. Rewarming of blood has proven to have superior outcomes than warm lavage of body cavities. There are four techniques to warm blood: cardiopulmonary bypass, arteriovenous rewarming, venovenous rewarming, and hemodialysis. A Swiss review of 32 severely hypothermic young, healthy patients requiring cardiopulmonary bypass yielded 15 long-term survivors with excellent to no cerebral impairment (Table 53.3). Rewarming fluids for all techniques should be calibrated to 40°C to 42°C. Once a patient’s core temperature reaches 32°C to 35°C, rewarming should be slowed and stopped completely at 35°C to avoid temperature overshoot.

**Termination of Resuscitation**

Poor prognostic indicators include serum levels of fibrinogen <50 mg/dL, potassium >10 mEq/L, and ammonia >250 mol/L. One study in 1994 evaluated 22 patients presenting due to hypothermic cardiac arrest. No patient with an arrival potassium level of 9 mEq/L or above survived off of cardiopulmonary bypass.
These data support the generally accepted recommendation to terminate resuscitation in patients with initial potassium levels of more than 10 mEq/L. The AHA recommends withholding field resuscitation if the body is frozen or the airway is blocked; its 2005 guidelines state, “once the patient is in the hospital, physicians should use their clinical judgment to decide when resuscitative efforts should cease in a victim of hypothermic arrest.” However, in the most recent AHA 2010 guidelines, they changed this position to reflect the accepted current view: “Patients should not be considered dead before warming has been provided.”

**CONCLUSION**

Primary hypothermia should be considered in any patient with a history of environmental exposure. Secondary hypothermia should be considered in any chronically ill patient. In primary hypothermia, care will be dictated by the clinical condition of the patient. Understanding the irritability of the myocardium, care should focus on rewarming without invasive procedures or pharmacologic interventions that may do more harm than good.

Clinicians should understand the physiology of core shunting and the potential dangers of afterdrop. Trauma, infection, and toxic/metabolic disarray often exist concomitantly with hypothermia and require comprehensive workup and appropriate supportive care.

Clinicians should be aware of their institution’s rewarming capabilities. Passive rewarming is adequate for the vast majority of hypothermic patients. In cases of severe environmental hypothermia, invasive measures involving multiple services (renal, ICU, cardiovascular surgery) may be indicated. In the extreme case of a hypothermic patient without vital signs, clinicians should understand the indications for rewarming and the criteria for cessation of resuscitation.

**TABLE 53.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Rate of Rewarming</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiopulmonary bypass</td>
<td>Patients without a perfusing rhythm</td>
<td>9.5°C/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If cardiac activity lost, flow is preserved. Requires specialized personnel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arteriovenous rewarming</td>
<td>Does not require specialized equipment or personnel</td>
<td>3°C–4°C/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple Seldinger technique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venovenous rewarming</td>
<td>Circuit is not complex, efficient</td>
<td>2°C–3°C/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemodialysis</td>
<td>Portable. Addresses metabolic derangements, renal failure, and dialyzable toxins</td>
<td>2°C–3°C/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Catheters are two-way; therefore, only one vessel is needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward et al., <em>Resuscitation</em>. 1984&lt;sup&gt;44&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Controlled observational study that evaluated cardiac, esophageal, rectal, skin, and tympanic temperatures in a patient who was cooled and rewarmed using three different rewarming techniques</td>
<td>During rewarming, divergent temperatures were demonstrated between probe locations. Only esophageal temperature was representative of cardiac temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danzl et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med</em>. 1987&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 428 cases of hypothermia in 13 emergency departments that assessed outcomes of intubation in 117 patients</td>
<td>Orotrachal intubation performed without complications, including 97 in patients with core temperatures ≤32.2°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewin et al., <em>Arch Intern Med</em>. 1981&lt;sup&gt;13&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 59 patients admitted for accidental hypothermia that evaluated infection risk and antibiotic use</td>
<td>Forty-one percent of patients had serious bacterial infections. Infection is frequently masked in hypothermic patients (38% of infections were not diagnosed at time of admission)—study concluded that prompt empiric antibiotic therapy is appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grissom et al., <em>Wilderness Environ Med</em>. 2010&lt;sup&gt;25&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Cohort observational study of six subjects buried in the snow with Avalungs to support breathing to demonstrate the afterdrop phenomenon</td>
<td>Temperature was measured with esophageal probe. The rate of core cooling increased fourfold when subjects were extricated and re-warming was initiated with an insulated wrap compared to burial cooling rate (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walpoth et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 1997&lt;sup&gt;40&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Cohort study of 46 patients with circulatory arrest due to accidental hypothermia</td>
<td>Thirty-two of 46 patients underwent cardiopulmonary bypass with 15 survivors. Follow-up of the 15 survivors showed no hypothermia-related deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mair et al., <em>Resuscitation</em>. 1994&lt;sup&gt;44&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 22 patients rewarmed using cardiopulmonary bypass to evaluate poor prognostic indicators</td>
<td>Potassium, pH, and activated clotting time (ACT) values assessed to determine prognostic indicators. Poor prognostic indicators for successful resuscitation: potassium above 9 mmol/L, pH ≤6.50, and ACT above 400s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaller et al., <em>JAMA</em>. 1990&lt;sup&gt;44&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 24 patients with accidental hypothermia comparing potassium levels and outcomes</td>
<td>No survivors in group with potassium between 6.8 and 24.5 mmol/L compared to complete survival in group with potassium range of 2.7–5.3 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES

Altitude Emergencies
Christopher Davis, Zina Semenovskaya, and Jay Lemery

BACKGROUND
Altitude illness encompasses a spectrum of clinical entities that occur at elevation as a result of hypobaric hypoxia. While a mild case of acute mountain sickness (AMS)—defined as headache with one of the following: nausea, fatigue, dizziness, anorexia, or poor sleep—may be no more than an inconvenience, high-altitude cerebral and pulmonary edema are true emergencies that require critical intervention and stabilization.

Although the concentration of oxygen remains nearly constant at 20.95% up to an elevation of at least 50 km, the partial pressure of oxygen decreases with increasing altitude in logarithmic fashion. With ascent to higher elevations, the lungs experience a decreasing pressure difference between alveolar and pulmonary arterial capillary beds. Without this pressure difference to drive oxygen across the alveolar membrane, tissue oxygen concentrations fall and, with extended time at altitude, result in hypoxia. This decrease begins at 1,500 m above sea level—generally referred to as the physiologic starting point of high altitude. Elevations are further classified as high altitude (1,500 to 3,500 m), very high altitude (3,500 to 5,500 m), and extreme altitude (above 5,500 m)—imprecise categories that loosely correlate to physiologic stress and pathology. While altitude determines the presence and extent of hypobaric hypoxia, increasing latitude, winter season, and the presence of storms driven by lower regional barometric pressure can influence local barometric pressure. These effects may combine to raise the effective altitude by hundreds of meters resulting in significant clinical consequences.

HIGH-ALTITUDE PULMONARY EDEMA
Overview
High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) is a potentially deadly form of noncardiogenic edema driven by hypobaric hypoxia. Ascent to altitude produces an initial hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstrictor response. Although this adaptive response is believed to be useful in mitigating ventilation-perfusion mismatch in disorders such as pneumonia, a global constriction of the pulmonary vascular bed may lead to a pathologic increase in pulmonary artery pressures.1 While pulmonary artery pressures rise in all individuals with ascent to altitude, HAPE-susceptible individuals manifest an exaggerated response.2–4
One theory purports that uneven pulmonary vasoconstriction leads to overperfusion in select areas of the pulmonary vascular bed.5,6 This unevenly distributed perfusion overloads the pulmonary capillaries, eventually leading to fluid leak and “stress failure” of the alveolar–capillary membrane.7

Susceptibility to HAPE is driven by a complex set of factors, including prior history of HAPE, rate of ascent, sleeping altitude, physical exertion, air temperature, concomitant respiratory illness, and individual genetic predisposition or congenital cardiopulmonary abnormalities.2,8–14 Males were historically considered to be at higher risk for HAPE than females, but this hypothesis may have been influenced by behavioral confounders such as typically faster ascent profiles in males more than innate physiology. One recent study suggests that females may in fact be at higher risk.15 The incidence of HAPE at moderate elevations of 2,500 m (such as the Rocky Mountains of the American West) is 0.01%. Incidence increases to 2% at 3,600 m and may approach 5% at elevations above 4,300 m.16 Despite a relatively low incidence, HAPE is believed to be the most common cause of altitude-related death.

**Clinical Presentation and Diagnostic Evaluation**

The classic victim of HAPE is a young, healthy person who is fit enough to rapidly ascend to high altitude. Symptoms typically develop on the second night of a new and higher sleeping altitude. Development of HAPE after 4 days at a given altitude is rare and should prompt the consideration of alternative diagnoses. Early (and possibly subtle) symptoms include a dry cough and reduced exercise performance. Symptoms may then progress to the more classic findings of dyspnea at rest and cough productive of pink, frothy sputum. The Lake Louise Criteria for the diagnosis of HAPE are based on the patient exhibiting a combination of two cardinal signs along with two symptoms17 (Table 54.1).

While AMS is present in half of cases, it may notably be absent.18 Fever is common and does not preclude a diagnosis of HAPE, even in the presence of productive sputum. On chest radiograph, patchy lung infiltrates in the setting of a normal-sized heart confirms the diagnosis. EKG findings suggestive of right heart strain may also be observed. Arterial blood gas analysis reveals respiratory alkalosis with severe hypoxia. Partial pressures of arterial oxygen are typically between 30 and 40 mm Hg.19 The differential diagnosis for HAPE includes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shortness of breath</td>
<td>Tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Tachypnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue or weakness</td>
<td>Cyanosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased exercise</td>
<td>Wheezing in at least one lung field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest congestions or</td>
<td>Rales in at least one lung field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tightness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Asthma
Bronchitis
Heart failure
Mucus plugging
Myocardial infarction
Pneumonia
Pulmonary embolus

Management Guidelines
As with all altitude illness, the mainstays of treatment are descent and supplemental oxygen. In the field, individuals should descend 500 to 1,000 m or until symptoms resolve.\(^{20}\) If oxygen is available and symptoms are mild, oxygen may be given to maintain saturations above 90% in lieu of descent.\(^{21}\) While not systemically studied, simulated descent using a portable hyperbaric chamber can be considered if evacuation and oxygen are unavailable.\(^{22}\) Clinicians not experienced with these devices should be forewarned that their use may limit ongoing patient contact. More generally, patients should be kept warm and should avoid exertion, as both hypothermia and exercise lead to increased pulmonary artery pressures.\(^{23}\)

Should weather or logistics preclude the provision of oxygen or descent, pharmacologic pulmonary vasodilators exist that can be used to bridge a patient until evacuation or oxygen is available. These agents are known to reduce pulmonary artery pressures; however, rigorous controlled studies are lacking regarding their efficacy in improving outcome. One study assessed nifedipine in a small cohort and demonstrated a reduction in pulmonary artery pressures and an improvement in arterial oxygenation, albeit with only modest clinical improvement.\(^{24}\) More recently, phosphodiesterase inhibitors and beta-agonists have shown efficacy in the prevention of HAPE and are commonly used in the field; however, no systematic trials have been performed to demonstrate their use in the acute treatment of HAPE.\(^{25,26}\) More work is currently needed to determine best pharmacologic practice for the treatment of HAPE; in the interim, it is reasonable to consider use of a pulmonary vasodilator if oxygen and descent are not available.

Once a patient is evacuated to an appropriate medical facility, oxygen should be delivered to maintain saturations above 90%. Positive airway pressure devices may be used to improve oxygenation if available; obtundation due to concomitant high-altitude cerebral edema (HACE) would be a relevant contraindication.\(^{27,28}\) The need for intubation is rare, but may be necessary for unstable patients with altered mental status or severe hypoxemia not responsive to supplemental oxygen. Patients will typically show clinical improvement within hours after the provision of oxygen. In the acute setting, the addition of a pharmacologic agent to oxygen therapy is reasonable if the patient has stable hemodynamics.

HIGH-ALTITUDE CEREBRAL EDEMA

Overview
HACE is the most critical manifestation of the AMS spectrum. Change in mental status in travelers at high altitude has been observed and documented for over a century;\(^{29}\) but
the first comprehensive review of HACE was not published until 1983. The diagnosis of HACE is most often made clinically and requires mental status changes in individuals exhibiting symptoms of AMS. HACE has been reported to occur in just 1% to 2% of all high-altitude trekkers and in 3.4% of those suffering from AMS. Climbers who have developed HAPE have a much higher risk of concomitant HACE while at altitude, with a reported incidence of 13% to 20%; autopsy studies of patients who died of HAPE have shown that up to 50% of those had concurrent HACE.

Although its exact pathophysiology remains unclear, HACE is believed to occur through a cascade of cytotoxic and vasogenic responses resulting in increased cellular permeability, vasoconstriction, and a deleterious rise in intracranial pressure. HACE most commonly occurs at altitudes above 4,700 m; however, it may present at lower altitudes in those already affected by HAPE. It is not known why some individuals are more susceptible than others to developing HACE—rapid ascent, heavy exertion at altitude, and a past history of AMS or HACE remain the most relevant risk factors.

Clinical Presentation and Diagnostic Evaluation
Altered mental status and ataxia are pathognomonic for HACE. Typically, individuals report progressively worsening AMS over the preceding 24 to 48 hours. Headache is usually, but not always, present. Early symptoms include drowsiness and subtle psychological and behavioral changes including apathy, social withdrawal, and confusion. Ataxia has been reported in approximately 40% to 60%, and papilledema is present in up to 50%. Gastrointestinal symptoms, including anorexia, nausea, and vomiting, may also occur. Visual and auditory hallucinations and seizures are rare. Retinal hemorrhages are associated with HACE but may also be present in climbers unaffected by HACE at higher altitudes. Level of consciousness may progress rapidly to coma, so alertness is a poor prognosticator of disease severity.

In 1991, the International Hypoxia Symposium established a set of guidelines for the clinical diagnosis of HACE. The Lake Louise Criteria for HACE are “the presence of a change in mental status or ataxia in a person with AMS” or “the presence of both a change in mental status and ataxia in a person without AMS.” It is critical to maintain a broad differential diagnosis, especially in patients with atypical presentations or those who are not responding to conventional therapy. The differential diagnosis for HACE is broad and includes:

- Hypoglycemia
- Hyponatremia
- Hypothermia
- Central nervous system (CNS) infection
- Seizure
- Migraine
- Psychosis
- CVA
- CNS tumor or hemorrhage
- Carbon monoxide poisoning
- Drugs, alcohol, or toxins
Chapter 54  Altitude Emergencies  695

HACE is primarily a clinical diagnosis, with laboratory and imaging studies primarily used to rule out potentially confounding disease processes. Appropriate laboratory studies include an electrolyte panel, complete blood count, glucose, ethanol level, carboxyhemoglobin level, and toxicology screen. Patients with HACE may have a mild leukocytosis, so clinical correlation is necessary to exclude an infectious etiology. A lumbar puncture may be performed if there is sufficient concern for CNS infection or subarachnoid hemorrhage. Typical findings include normal cell counts, but markedly elevated opening pressures as high as 44 to 220 mm H2O in affected individuals. Head computed tomography will show an attenuation of signal in the white matter with compression of sulci and flattening of gyri consistent with cerebral edema. Magnetic resonance imagings (MRIs) will demonstrate increased T2 signaling in the corpus callosum without changes in the gray matter, consistent with the white matter effects of vasogenic edema. Importantly, imaging findings lag behind clinical recovery and can be used to confirm the diagnosis of HACE even after clinical improvement.

Management Guidelines
There is a saying that there are three treatments for HACE: “descent, descent, and descent.” All altitude illnesses should be treated primarily by descent to a lower elevation. Current field guidelines recommend descending at least 500 m or to the last known elevation at which the patient was asymptomatic. Delaying descent to wait for aero-medical rescue or to institute pharmacologic treatment can be fatal. If physical descent is impossible due to weather, geography, or severity in a patient’s condition, achieving physiologic descent via a portable hyperbaric chamber is also effective. This cylindrical, inflatable pressure bag can simulate descent of over 1,500 m.

Once evacuated to a medical facility, the patient should be placed on high-flow oxygen with a nonrebreather mask. A 10-mg loading dose of dexamethasone may be given intravenously or intramuscularly, depending on available access. Intubation may be required, either for airway control or if there is significant coexisting HAPE. For obtunded patients, a Foley catheter should be placed for bladder decompression. In an effort to reduce intracranial pressure, hyperventilation (following intubation) and hypertonic saline with diuresis have been used for patients with HACE; however, no controlled studies exist to suggest either of these techniques increase survival or improve neurologic outcome. Summary recommendations for treatment of HACE are listed in Table 54.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 54.2 Treatment Strategies for HACE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperbaric chamber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexamethasone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetazolamide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONCLUSION

HAPE and HACE are medical emergencies that require prompt clinical recognition. Dyspnea at rest is an early sign of HAPE, while ataxia is an important indicator of HACE. Treatment for all altitude emergencies includes descent and oxygen; however, pharmacologic treatment strategies and judicious supportive care may also be necessary.

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Altitude illness</td>
<td>Consensus guidelines for clinical diagnosis of AMS, HACE, and HAPE</td>
<td>Reference and summary. Subsequent literature uses these criteria for diagnosis of altitude illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luks et al., Wilderness Environ Med. 2010</td>
<td>Expert panel review of altitude literature graded using the American College of Chest Physicians classification scheme for grading evidence</td>
<td>Evidence-based review of management algorithms for altitude illness including dosing regimens for the treatment and prevention of altitude illnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HACE</td>
<td>Observational epidemiologic study to determine the incidence of AMS and cerebral edema at 4,300 m</td>
<td>68% of randomly chosen subjects had AMS, and 31% had HACE. Women had a significantly higher rate of HACE (OR 3.15, CI 1.62–6.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hackett et al., JAMA. 1998</td>
<td>Case–control study of nine patients with HACE evaluated with MRI showing reversible white matter edema changes</td>
<td>Primary case series supporting an endothelial cytotoxic and vasogenic pathophysiologic basis of HACE. Seven of nine patients showed significant T2 signal in corpus callosum with normal gray matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAPE</td>
<td>Small cohort study of HAPE-susceptible patients taken to altitude to induce HAPE and then given nifedipine</td>
<td>Subjects demonstrated improvements in oxygenation (65 % ± 11 vs. 73 % ± 11.4) and decreased pulmonary arterial pressure (133.7 ± 19.8 vs. 73.7 ± 13.8 mm Hg) after treatment with nifedipine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio.

REFERENCES

Drowning
Samuel Gerson and Jose Evangelista III

BACKGROUND
The International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation defines drowning as primary respiratory impairment caused by submersion or immersion in liquid. Updated terminology separates the event into fatal or nonfatal drowning, discouraging the use of ambiguous terms such as near drowning or dry versus wet drowning. Worldwide, drowning accounts for an estimated 388,000 annual deaths, represents 7% of all injury-related fatalities, and is the leading cause of death among young males. In the United States, drowning causes roughly 10 fatalities per day and ranks fifth among leading causes of death from unintentional injury. It is estimated that for every drowning fatality, four nonfatal drowning victims are treated in an emergency department with more than 50% requiring hospital admission; this is compared to a 6% admission rate for all unintentional injuries.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
The major pathophysiologic event in drowning is hypoxia secondary to aspiration. Following submersion/immersion, the victim typically passes through the following stages within minutes; breath holding → laryngospasm → aspiration → hypoxia with loss of consciousness and apnea → cardiac arrest. The clinical presentation of drowning results from dysfunction in multiple organ systems including the cardiovascular, pulmonary, and neurologic. As tissue hypoxia and acidemia increase, cardiac rhythm most often progresses from sinus tachycardia, to sinus bradycardia, to pulseless electrical activity (PEA), and eventually to asystole as the terminal event. Regardless of whether salt water or fresh water enters the lung, the resulting injuries are the same: surfactant washout and dysfunction, increased permeability of the alveolar–capillary membrane, decreased lung compliance, and ventilation/perfusion ratio mismatching from areas of unventilated dead space. Depending on the amount of fluid aspirated, pulmonary manifestations range from minor respiratory complaints to fulminant noncardiogenic pulmonary edema consistent with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

Neurologic status of the drowning victim depends on the degree and duration of hypoxia prior to successful resuscitation and ranges from awake and alert to comatose in the acute setting. Irreversible brain injury develops within 4 to 10 minutes of tissue hypoxia at normal body temperature, followed by cerebral edema and elevated
intracranial pressure (ICP). Hypothermic exposure at the time of drowning may be protective by reducing cerebral oxygen consumption and delaying neuronal death for up to an hour or more. Permanent neurologic sequelae in survivors may vary from minor disorders in memory, movement, and coordination to a more devastating persistent vegetative or comatose state.

**PREHOSPITAL AND INITIAL EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT CARE**

During the primary response to a drowning incident, respondents should initiate cardiopulmonary resuscitation in a person submerged <60 minutes without clear signs of death. Because respiratory failure is the primary cause of cardiac arrest in drowning, resuscitation begins with rescue breaths or bag–valve–mask (BVM) ventilations in keeping with the traditional protocol of airway, breathing, and circulation (ABC). Providing supplemental oxygen at the highest flow rate available is a critical early action, preferably through a nonrebreather face mask at 15 L/min in the awake, alert patient. If passive measures fail to correct hypoxia, continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) or bilevel positive airway pressure (BIPAP) may be effective and prevent the need for invasive airway management. However, early intubation and mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is indicated for worsening oxygenation despite noninvasive support or for deterioration of respiratory drive or neurologic status with a goal of maintaining oxygen saturation above 92%. While many drowning accidents involve trauma, cervical spine injuries are rare, and immobilization should only be implemented for cases in which head or neck injury is suspected.

For drowning victims who suffer cardiac arrest, PEA or asystole is managed as per standard advanced cardiovascular life support (ACLS) algorithms. Prompt defibrillation is indicated for rare cases of ventricular fibrillation. As in all hypothermic cases, rewarming the patient to a core temperature above 32°C is essential to optimize resuscitation efforts and prevent dysrhythmias. While there is some debate regarding the duration of resuscitation, most experts agree that efforts should be halted when the patient is rewarmed and is asystolic >20 minutes.

After initial stabilization is achieved and the primary survey completed, further evaluation typically includes chest radiography and arterial blood gas measurements. Lung ultrasound also provides a rapid and effective bedside tool to diagnose, quantify, and monitor pulmonary edema in drowning victims. In patients who remain unresponsive without a clear cause, toxic/metabolic investigation and head/neck imaging are warranted. Use of a validated grading system helps to guide intervention and disposition in the emergency department.  

- **Grade 1**: No lung findings, normal arterial oxygenation → observation for 6 hours  
- **Grade 2**: Scattered pulmonary crackles, stabilized with low flow oxygen → admit for extended observation or discharge if signs of clinical improvement after 6 hours  
- **Grades 3 to 6**: Acute pulmonary edema with or without hypotension → ICU admission
MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Pulmonary

In drowning victims who require invasive mechanical ventilation, guidelines recommended for ARDS patients (lung-protective ventilation) should be followed:\textsuperscript{19}

- Set tidal volumes < 6 mL/kg
- Adjust PEEP to optimize alveolar recruitment
- Maintain low plateau pressures
- Minimize suctioning to prevent hypoxia and elevated airway pressures
- Do not attempt to wean prior to 24 hours on mechanical ventilation

Prophylactic antibiotics for pneumonia are advised in cases of exposure to polluted sources; however, they are not routinely indicated for the majority of drowning victims.\textsuperscript{20,21} Given the substantially increased risk for translocation of bacteria in the lung in cases of water aspiration (and lung injury), obtaining blood cultures early in the clinical course may be of significant clinical utility. Early respiratory cultures may have diminished utility and are not generally recommended. Glucocorticoids have not been proven to reduce pulmonary injury from drowning, but may be beneficial for bronchospasm poorly controlled by inhaled bronchodilators.\textsuperscript{20,22} Exogenous surfactant and inhaled liquid perfluorocarbon use remain controversial, but may be considered in cases that are refractory to standard therapy.\textsuperscript{23,24} Finally, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) is indicated with severe ARDS when pulmonary exchange is inadequate to maintain oxygenation.\textsuperscript{25,26}

Cardiovascular

In the hypotensive patient, conservative fluid management is recommended to avoid volume overload that could worsen cardiac and pulmonary function.\textsuperscript{27} Bedside echocardiography is a useful tool to monitor volume status, identify cardiogenic shock, and guide the use of cardioactive or vasopressor medications.\textsuperscript{28} Acute renal failure is uncommon but may result from prerenal (hypovolemia, shock) or renal (anoxic renal tubular injury, rhabdomyolysis) etiologies.\textsuperscript{29}

Neurologic

Therapeutic hypothermia in drowning victims is neuroprotective and is supported by extrapolation from randomized clinical trials in cardiac arrest patients,\textsuperscript{30,31} and from case reports on drowning.\textsuperscript{25,32} While initial resuscitation efforts may require rewarming of a hypothermic patient, core temperature should be maintained at 32°C to 34°C for 24 hours in comatose patients who regain spontaneous circulation. Tight control of blood glucose, arterial oxygenation, and carbon dioxide levels is essential to prevent increases in brain metabolism.\textsuperscript{33} Neurologic monitoring techniques—including EEG, MRI, and cerebral biomarkers—provide useful prognostic tools, but have not yet demonstrated an impact on clinical decision-making.\textsuperscript{34} Seizures are common after anoxic brain injury and warrant treatment with antiepileptic medications; however, prophylactic anticonvulsants are not currently proven or recommended in drowning victims.\textsuperscript{35} Finally, aggressive control of ICP in case reports of pediatric drowning has produced disappointing results and is not considered a management priority.\textsuperscript{36}
CONCLUSION
In the United States, drowning ranks fifth among leading causes of death from unintentional injury. Management of the drowning victim requires careful evaluation of pulmonary status with use of lung-protective strategies when mechanical ventilation is indicated, conservative fluid management, and consideration of ECMO support in severe cases.

LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Szpilman, Chest 1997</td>
<td>Retrospective analysis of 2,304 cases from near-drowning recuperation</td>
<td>1,831 cases included and graded. Gd 1—Normal lung exam = 0% mortality, Gd 2—Scattered rales = 1% mortality, Gd 3—ARDS = 5% mortality, Gd 4—ARDS + low BP = 19% mortality, Gd 5—Respiratory arrest = 44% mortality, and Gd 6—Cardiac arrest = 93% mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van Berkel et al., Intensive Care Med 1996</td>
<td>Retrospective analysis of 125 submersion victims</td>
<td>No effect on occurrence of pneumonia with administration of prophylactic antibiotic therapy or prednisolone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hein et al., Crit Care 2004</td>
<td>Case report of twin toddler drowning victims</td>
<td>Female twin treated with induced hypothermia for 72 h → no neurologic deficits Male twin treated under normothermic conditions → developed apallic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guenther et al., Resuscitation 2009</td>
<td>Case report of 2 drowning victims treated with ECMO and prolonged hypothermia</td>
<td>Patients had been submerged &gt;10 min and had severe ARDS and hypotension ECMO/hypothermia maintained for 6 d. Both survived without neurologic deficits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES
**SECTION 13**

**Sedation and Delirium**

---

**Delirium**

Jin H. Han, Eduard E. Vasilevskis, and E. Wesley Ely

**BACKGROUND**

Delirium is a form of acute brain dysfunction that occurs in 8% to 10% of emergency department (ED) patients. By contrast, delirium affects 20% to 70% of intensive care unit (ICU) patients, especially those requiring mechanical ventilation. Historically, delirium was considered a normal and transient part of critical illness that posed little consequence to the patient. Evidence collected in the past decade, however, suggests that delirium may affect patient outcomes profoundly. In the critically ill, delirium is an independent risk factor for death, as well as for long-term cognitive impairment, increased ventilator time, prolonged hospitalizations, and increased hospital costs.

When present, delirium should be considered a medical emergency, as it can be the sole manifestation of an underlying critical illness. ED management of delirium influences clinical outcomes, and the emergency physician must be adept at detecting delirium, identifying its etiology, and initiating potentially lifesaving therapies. This chapter reviews the definition and risk factors for delirium, validated instruments for its detection, and appropriate diagnostic workup and management in confirmed cases.

**DEFINITION**

Delirium is an acute reversible disturbance in attention and cognition precipitated by an underlying medical illness not attributable to a preexisting or evolving dementia. Cognitive change in delirium is rapid, occurring over several hours or days and often fluctuating. The core feature of delirium is inattention; other features may include altered consciousness level, disorganized thinking, and sleep–wake cycle disturbances. It is important to note that delirium lies on a continuum of acute brain dysfunction, the most severe form of which is coma (Fig. 56.1).

Delirium is classified into three psychomotor subtypes: hypoactive, hyperactive, and mixed type. Hypoactive or “quiet” delirium is characterized by decreased psychomotor
activity and may manifest in a depressed, sedated, somnolent, or lethargic appearance. Its clinical presentation may be subtle, and it is frequently missed or misdiagnosed as depression or fatigue. Hyperactive delirium is the most recognizable subtype and is characterized by increased psychomotor activity; patients appear restless, anxious, agitated, and even combative. In mixed-type delirium, patients fluctuate between hypoactive and hyperactive psychomotor activity over a period of minutes to hours. In critically ill patients, hypoactive and mixed type are the commonly observed delirium subtypes; purely hyperactive delirium occurs in <2% of cases.

Excited delirium syndrome (ExDS) is an extreme manifestation of hyperactive delirium. Patients with ExDS exhibit extreme agitation, aggressiveness, and violent behavior; they also can appear to possess superhuman strength and to be insensitive to pain. Patients with ExDS are an immediate danger to themselves and to the people around them; this unique set of challenges is discussed separately in Chapter 57.

**RISK FACTORS FOR DELIRIUM**

The onset of delirium involves a complex interaction between patient vulnerability factors and precipitating factors. To establish delirium risk, both sets of factors must be considered. Patients who are vulnerable to developing delirium (e.g., an 89-year-old with severe dementia) require a relatively benign insult (e.g., urinary tract infection without signs of sepsis) to develop delirium. Conversely, patients who are not vulnerable to developing delirium (e.g., a healthy 45-year-old) require higher doses of noxious stimuli (e.g., multifocal pneumonia with septic shock) to develop delirium. Therefore, when a patient with low vulnerability presents to the ED with delirium, the clinician should be vigilant in looking for an underlying life-threatening illness.

Among patient vulnerability factors for delirium, dementia is the most consistent across a variety of clinical settings, including the ED and ICU. Age, alcohol use, and depression are additional vulnerability factors in the critically ill. Numerous precipitating factors identified in general medical patients are likely equally applicable to the ICU population (Table 56.1). In general, patients with higher illness severity are more likely to develop delirium. Drug exposures—notably benzodiazepines, opioids, and medications with anticholinergic properties—may also trigger delirium, as can withdrawal from ethanol and benzodiazepines. Other precipitants, especially in the elderly, include cardiovascular illnesses like congestive heart failure and acute myocardial infarction.
When critically ill patients are boarded for extended periods of time in the ED, emergency physicians become important monitors of potentially preventable iatrogenic risk factors for delirium, specifically the use of deliriogenic medications. Several studies have shown a strong dose-response relationship between benzodiazepine use and the development of delirium in the ICU.25–27 Opioids may also precipitate delirium, but this relationship is less clear.5 Since poorly controlled pain can trigger delirium, opioids in some instances may have protective effect; in burn ICU patients, for instance, opioid pain control reduced delirium incidence by 50%.28,29 Delirium can also be stimulated by negative environmental conditions, such as isolation, lack of daylight, and immobility due to the use of physical restraints.18

**ASSESSING FOR DELIRIUM**

The diagnosis of delirium is commonly missed.1,12 In the ED, 75% of cases of delirium will go unrecognized; of these, 90% will continue to be overlooked in the inpatient setting.1 When health care providers fail to identify delirium, it is usually because they are unfamiliar with established diagnostic criteria and rely instead on clinical gestalt and the absence of disorientation, hallucinations, delusions, and agitation—features often absent in patients with delirium.30

The American College of Critical Care Medicine, the Society of Critical Care Medicine, and the American Society of Health-System Pharmacists collectively published clinical practice guidelines for pain, agitation, and delirium (2013 PAD Guidelines). The guidelines recommend routine delirium monitoring in critically ill patients, using one of two methods validated in this population: the Confusion Assessment Method for the Intensive Care Unit (CAM-ICU) or the Intensive Care Delirium Screening Checklist (ICDSC).31
The CAM-ICU enables assessment of delirium in under a minute—or less if it is performed algorithmically, which allows for early stoppage (Fig. 56.2). The CAM-ICU evaluates four cognitive features: (1) altered mental status or fluctuating course, (2) inattention, (3) altered level of consciousness, and (4) disorganized thinking. Since it does not require the patient to speak, it can be performed in both mechanically ventilated and non–mechanically ventilated patients. For a patient to meet criteria for delirium, features 1 and 2, and either feature 3 or feature 4, must be present.

Details on how to perform the CAM-ICU and its training manual are available at www.icudelirium.org. Briefly, feature 1 (altered mental status or fluctuating course) is usually obtained from the family member, friend, or caretaker in the ED. Changes and fluctuations in mental status can also be observed by the health care provider during the ED course. Feature 2 (inattention) uses objective assessments and is comprised of an auditory and visual component. For the auditory component, the patient is given a series of tests:

1. Command: “Hold up this many fingers” (Hold up two fingers). “Now do the same thing with the other hand” (Do not demonstrate).

Feature 3 - Altered Level of Consciousness?

Yes

CAM-ICU POSITIVE
DELIRIUM PRESENT

No

Feature 4 – Disorganized Thinking

1. Will a stone float on water?
2. Are there fish in the sea?
3. Does one pound weigh more than two pounds?
4. Can you hammer to pound a nail?

Command: “Hold up this many fingers” (Hold up two fingers). “Now do the same thing with the other hand” (Do not demonstrate).

>2 errors

Feature 2 - Inattention

“Squeeze my hand on the letter ‘A’”
“SAVEAHAART”
+ Picture Cards

≤2 errors

CAM-ICU Negative
No Delirium

Yes

CAM-ICU Negative
No Delirium

No

CAM-ICU POSITIVE
DELIRIUM PRESENT

≤1 error

CAM-ICU Negative
No Delirium

Copyright © 2002 Vanderbilt University, All Rights Reserved

of 10 letters (“SAVEAHAART”) and is asked to squeeze the rater’s hand whenever the letter “A” is heard. For the visual component, the patient is asked to remember 5 objects shown on picture cards and then asked to identify the 5 objects from a series of 10 pictures. Patients who are minimally arousable to verbal stimuli and unable to perform the CAM-ICU’s inattention tasks are often erroneously classified as “Negative” or “Unable to Assess” for inattention. These patients, however, are actually at the most severe end of the inattention spectrum and should be considered inattentive (feature 2 positive). For feature 3 (altered level of consciousness), a validated arousal scale such as the Richmond Agitation–Sedation Scale is used. For feature 4 (disorganized thinking), the rater asks the patient to answer 4 simple yes/no questions and to perform a simple command.

Initial studies showed the CAM-ICU to have excellent sensitivity (95% to 100%) and specificity (89% to 100%) in detecting delirium in both mechanically ventilated and non–mechanically ventilated patients. Because of its ease of use, both nurses and physicians can use it reliably. Subsequent validation studies, however, demonstrated variable diagnostic accuracy. A meta-analysis of nine studies evaluated the performance of the CAM-ICU in critically ill patients and reported a pooled sensitivity of 80% and pooled specificity of 96%. While the CAM-ICU’s sensitivity for delirium appeared to vary widely between studies (range, 45% to 100%), its specificity remained consistently high, indicating that a positive CAM-ICU is diagnostic of delirium. The reasons for such variability in the CAM-ICU’s sensitivity remain unclear and deserve further study.

The ICDSC is another assessment tool that uses an eight-item checklist of delirium symptoms, designed for use by ICU nurses over an 8- to 24-hour period. The checklist comprises (1) altered level consciousness; (2) inattention; (3) disorientation; (4) hallucinations, delusions, or psychosis; (5) psychomotor agitation or retardation; (6) inappropriate speech or mood; (7) sleep/wake cycle disturbance; and (8) symptom fluctuation. If a delirium symptom is present, 1 point is assigned; if the symptom is absent, 0 points are assigned. A score of 4 or more is considered positive for delirium. An advantage of the ICDSC is that it does not require additional interaction with the patient, since observations are made during routine clinical care. The ICDSC is, however, more subjective than the CAM-ICU, and its diagnostic performance is dependent on the observer’s clinical experience and level of training.

The original validation study of ICDSC found it to be 99% sensitive and 64% specific for delirium, compared to a psychiatrist’s evaluation using DSM-IV criteria. Subsequent studies have shown variability in the ICDSC’s sensitivity and specificity. A meta-analysis of four studies evaluating the diagnostic performance of the ICDSC in the ICU setting reported a pooled sensitivity and specificity of 74% and 82%, respectively.

A delirium assessment tool that may have promise in the critically ill ED patient is the Brief Confusion Assessment Method (bCAM). The bCAM is a modified CAM-ICU in which the inattention (feature 2) tasks are replaced by having the patient recite the months backward from December to July. The bCAM also decreases the cutoff for disorganized thinking. With these changes, the CAM-ICU’s sensitivity improved from 72% to 84%, without a significant impact on specificity. This study was performed in older ED patients, and its validity in a broader population of critically ill patients may be limited. The bCAM also requires the patient to speak, so this assessment is not useful in mechanically ventilated patients. Future studies are needed to determine the bCAM’s diagnostic accuracy in non–mechanically ventilated patients who are critically ill.
Chapter 56  Delirium  709

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

If a patient presents with delirium, or develops delirium during the ED course, aggressive efforts are required to uncover the underlying etiology. Early identification and treatment of delirium reduces hospital costs and improves patient outcomes; each additional day of delirium has been shown to increase risk of 1-year mortality by 10%. Delirium also prolongs the duration of mechanical ventilation and ICU length of stay and accelerates cognitive decline.

Life-threatening causes of delirium should be considered first, especially in the otherwise healthy patient (Table 56.2). Many of these processes can be ruled out at the initial assessment, but others, such as meningitis, demand a more extensive evaluation. Once serious causes have been ruled out, precipitating factors listed in Table 56.1 should be considered.

The underlying cause of delirium is best diagnosed via a complete history and physical examination. However, as delirious patients have an acute loss in cognition, obtaining an accurate history can be difficult. It is best to collect collateral patient history from family members or companions as well as an accurate medication history, including any medication or dosing changes (especially in elderly patients). Medication history can be confirmed with the patient’s caregiver or pharmacy. If a medication overdose is suspected, every effort should be made to obtain the patient’s medication bottles in order to identify the specific medication and amount taken. A careful substance abuse history should also be obtained—preferably from a proxy—as delirium can be precipitated by exposures to, or withdrawal from, benzodiazepines and ethanol.

The physical examination of the delirious patient should be similarly thorough and is summarized in Table 56.3. All patients should be fully exposed to allow for an adequate dermatologic and genitourinary examination looking for signs of infection. Medication patches such as fentanyl and scopolamine should be removed if present.

Routine laboratory testing for patients with delirium includes complete blood count, serum electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen and creatinine, blood glucose, liver function studies, and urinalysis. If the patient is on delirium-inducing medications that are amenable to serum measurement (i.e., anticonvulsants, lithium, theophylline, and digoxin), then these levels should be ordered. Thyroid-stimulating hormone and free T4 levels should be considered to rule out thyroid dysfunction. In patients with respiratory complaints or symptoms, an arterial or venous blood gas should be used to identify hypercarbia. Because sepsis is a major precipitant in delirium, blood and urine and cultures should be considered. A lumbar puncture is not routinely performed, but should be obtained in delirious patients in whom a high clinical suspicion for meningitis or encephalitis exists or if the patient has a fever or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 56.2</th>
<th>Life-Threatening Causes of Delirium</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wernicke disease or ethanol withdrawal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia or hypercarbia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertensive encephalopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthermia or hyperthermia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracerebral hemorrhage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis/encephalitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poisoning (whether exogenous or iatrogenic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status epilepticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

leukocytosis without an obvious source.\textsuperscript{42,43} Urine drug screens are typically ordered, but a positive result should be interpreted with caution, as it may mislead the clinician and divert attention from an underlying illness. Urine drug screens can produce false-positive and false-negative results and are qualitative and do not provide drug concentrations.\textsuperscript{44} In a patient on home opioids or benzodiazepines, it would be difficult to differentiate if positive urine drug screen was the result of an overdose or normal home usage.

If a focal, delirium-inducing process is suspected, imaging is indicated (e.g., chest radiography to evaluate for pneumonia or pulmonary edema in the setting of tachypnea, dyspnea, hypoxemia, or cough). A head CT is not routine, but should be obtained in delirious patients with altered level consciousness, a recent history of a fall or head trauma, or focal neurologic deficits.\textsuperscript{45,46} A head CT may also be reasonable if no other etiology for delirium is found. Magnetic resonance imaging of the brain (brain MRI) and electroencephalography are not typically performed in the ED, but may be useful in ruling out cerebrovascular accidents and nonconvulsive status epilepticus, both of which can mimic or precipitate delirium.

**PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT OF DELIRIUM**

The pharmacologic management of delirium has three guiding principles: pain control, avoidance of deliriogenic medications, and medical therapy to minimize the time of delirium.

---

**TABLE 56.3** Physical Examination of the Emergency Department Patient with Delirium

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical Examination</th>
<th>Sign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>Soft tissue swelling, ecchymosis, and other signs of trauma looking for traumatic brain injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes</td>
<td>Mydriasis and miosis may indicate anticholinergic or opioid medication toxicity, respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupil</td>
<td>Papilledema suggests high intracranial pressure. Retinal subhyaloid hemorrhage suggests subarachnoid hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fundoscopic</td>
<td>Nystagmus may indicate toxicologic etiology or posterior fossa insult. Ophthalmoplegia may increase the suspicion of Wernicke encephalopathy or increased intracranial pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extraocular muscles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck</td>
<td>Meningismus may suggest meningitis or subarachnoid hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory</td>
<td>Look for signs of hypoxemia (cyanosis), respiratory distress, and signs of pneumonia or pulmonary edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>If febrile, new murmurs may indicate endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>Abdominal tenderness may suggest acute surgical emergency such as acute appendicitis, cholecystitis, or diverticulitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurologic</td>
<td>Focal, lateralizing neurologic symptoms may suggest a CNS insult (e.g., cerebrovascular accident, intraparenchymal hemorrhage, or mass effect). If possible, the patient’s gait should be assessed; ataxia may indicate Wernicke encephalopathy or medication overdoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitourinary</td>
<td>Look for signs of infection such as perirectal or perianal abscesses or infected decubitus ulcers in paralyzed or bedridden patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Look for signs of infection, medication patches (e.g., fentanyl or scopolamine), petechiae, and any sequelae of liver failure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNS, central nervous system.
Pain Control
Because inadequate pain control can precipitate delirium, intravenous opioid analgesia may be necessary.\textsuperscript{27} Alternative methods for pain control, such as regional or neuraxial (spinal or epidural) anesthesia may also be considered. Importantly, the delirious patient may not be able to communicate his or her needs; every effort should be made to identify factors contributing to or aggravating delirium (e.g., urinary retention) while simultaneously treating the patient’s discomfort.

Deliriogenic Medications
With the notable exception of patients withdrawing from ethanol (delirium tremens) or benzodiazepines, benzodiazepines should be avoided in the delirious patient because they can increase delirium severity.\textsuperscript{47–49} The same holds true for agitated patients, when possible; initial verbal and nonverbal de-escalation techniques should be attempted, including calming the patient environment by dimming or turning off lights, minimizing auditory stimulation from cardiac monitor or intravenous infusion pump alarms, and having family members and familiar objects from home at the patient’s bedside. The PAD guidelines also recommend against the use of benzodiazepines to sedate mechanically ventilated patients, endorsing alternative agents less associated with delirium, such as dexmedetomidine or propofol.\textsuperscript{31}

Antipsychotics
When nonpharmacologic methods fail, typical (haloperidol) and atypical (olanzapine, ziprasidone, risperidone, quetiapine) antipsychotics may be considered. While some practitioners advocate using antipsychotics for all delirious patients, these medications are typically reserved for delirious patients with agitation or psychotic features (delusions, misperceptions, hallucinations, etc.). Before administering antipsychotic medications, a 12-lead electrocardiogram should be obtained, as these medications can precipitate torsades de pointes in patients with QTc intervals >500 milliseconds.\textsuperscript{31} This is especially the case for intravenous haloperidol.\textsuperscript{50}

Haloperidol is commonly used in the treatment of delirium and can be given intravenously, intramuscularly, and orally. The 2013 PAD guidelines, however, do not recommend its routine use in the critically ill because of a paucity of supporting data. Only one ICU study—the Modifying the Incidence of Delirium (MIND) Trial—compares haloperidol with placebo for the treatment and prevention of delirium.\textsuperscript{51} The trial randomized 103 mechanically ventilated ICU patients to haloperidol (5 mg), ziprasidone (40 mg), or placebo every 6 hours for up to 14 days and demonstrated no differences in days alive without delirium or coma, duration of mechanical ventilation, hospital length of stay, or mortality between the three treatment groups.\textsuperscript{51} The trial was, however, intended for use as a pilot study to assess feasibility and was not adequately powered to determine efficacy.

The PAD guidelines support the use of atypical antipsychotics in the treatment of delirium, but this is again based on limited evidence. One small double-blinded randomized control trial compared quetiapine (50 mg q12h, titratable up to 200 mg q12h) with placebo in 36 ICU patients, with both groups receiving additional haloperidol as needed.\textsuperscript{52} The quetiapine group had shorter delirium duration and less agitation.\textsuperscript{52} A trend toward increased likelihood of hospital discharge to home rather than to rehabilitation was also observed.\textsuperscript{52} Atypical antipsychotics are increasingly favored in the treatment of delirium because of a lower association with extrapyramidal side effects.
As new clinical trial data emerge, the PAD recommendations for typical and atypical antipsychotic medications will likely evolve.

Other Agents
Finally, because the pathogenesis of delirium is thought to be due in part to increased anticholinergic central nervous system activity, rivastigmine, a cholinesterase inhibitor, was evaluated for use in elderly patients with delirium. A recent multicenter trial comparing rivastigmine with placebo in critically ill patients was, however, stopped early when the rivastigmine group was noted to have longer duration of delirium and higher mortality.53

NONPHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT OF DELIRIUM
Data concerning the nonpharmacologic management of delirium are largely obtained from the geriatric literature, but certain components may be applicable to the critically ill patient. Most of these interventions have multiple components and emphasize (1) encouraging early mobility and avoiding physical restraints; (2) providing a calm and quiet environment, especially at night; (3) reestablishing the sleep–wake cycle reversal commonly observed in delirious patients through environmental modifications (e.g., limit light and noise at night and provide the majority of clinical care during the day) and nonpharmacologic sleep aids (e.g., soothing music, massages, earplugs); (4) reorienting the patient using large clocks or dated whiteboards; (5) performing cognitive stimulating activities such as word games; (6) placing familiar persons or objects near the patient; and (7) reducing sensory deprivation during daytime hours by offering eyeglasses or hearing devices.54 The efficacy of such bundled protocols in the critically ill, though intuitive, is still not well defined and requires future study. One randomly controlled trial, however, proved the efficacy of the simple and cost-effective earplug in the noisy ED and ICU environment: In 136 critically ill patients, the use of ear plugs at night reduced the onset of delirium by half (hazard ratio 0.47, 95% CI, 0.27 to 0.82).55

ABCDE BUNDLE FOR MECHANICALLY VENTILATED PATIENTS
The ABCDE bundle is a recently proposed approach to the management and prevention of delirium in mechanically ventilated patients. The acronym stands for Awakening and Breathing Coordination, Choice of Medication, Delirium monitoring and Exercise/Early mobility bundle (ABCDE).56

The first two steps of the bundle are the Awakening and Breathing Coordination, which comprise a daily spontaneous awaking trial (SAT) and spontaneous breath trials (SBT) implemented by bedside nurses and respiratory therapists. Details of these steps are provided in Chapter 58. The key component of the ABC portion of the bundle is the daily interruption of sedation. To pass the SAT, patients must open their eyes to verbal stimuli or tolerate the interruption of sedation for 4 or more hours, without meeting any of the failure criteria. Following a successful SAT, patients proceed to the SBT. Use of this portion of the bundle alone has been shown to decrease both days spent in coma and 1-year mortality.57

The third step is Choice of sedation for the mechanically ventilated patient. As previously noted, benzodiazepines should be avoided except in the cases of ethanol or benzodiazepine withdrawal. Preferred alternatives include propofol or dexmedetomidine, both of which have a reduced risk of delirium. Use of dexmedetomidine, when compared to benzodiazepines, is also associated with more ventilator-free days.58,59
The fourth step is Delirium monitoring. This is particularly important for patients boarded in the ED for prolonged periods. Using validated delirium assessment tools, such as the CAM-ICU or ICDSC in combination with a validated sedation scale (e.g., Richmond Agitation–Sedation Scale), facilitates early delirium recognition and helps tailor sedation management to specific patients’ needs. Standardized assessment instruments also provide a structured framework for communication between providers. While the term “altered” may suggest a range of cognitive capacity, “RASS −3 and CAM-ICU positive” provides a clear and succinct description of a patient’s mental status.

The fifth step is Early Exercise. One randomized controlled trial (RCT) compared mechanically ventilated patients given daily interruptions of sedation with exercise to patients given daily interruption of sedation alone. Patients who received protocolized exercise early in their ICU course experienced an average of two fewer days of delirium, two more ventilator-free days, and a 5-day improvement in time to mobilization out of bed.60 Patients in the intervention group were also more likely to return to independent functional status at hospital discharge (59% vs. 35%).

A recent study of the ABCDE bundle in 296 mechanically ventilated patients demonstrated more delirium-free and ventilator-free days than historical controls.61 While these results are encouraging, the study’s use of historical controls made it subject to bias from general improvements in care over time; however, obtaining more robust data from randomized controlled trials may not be ethical or feasible.

**CONCLUSION**

Delirium is a form of acute brain dysfunction that is commonly observed in critically ill patients in the ED. It is associated with accelerated cognitive decline and higher mortality. Delirium follows from a complex interaction between patient vulnerability and precipitating factors and can be diagnosed using a validated assessment such as the CAM-ICU or ICDSC. Once detected, the primary clinical goal is to identify and treat the underlying precipitant. Beyond this, the optimal management of delirium remains unclear. Environmental modifications to calm patients and restore natural sleep cycles may be helpful to all patients. Pharmacologically, benzodiazepines should be avoided whenever possible, including for sedation of mechanically ventilated patients, where alternative sedatives, including propofol or dexmedetomidine, may be used. Atypical antipsychotics, such as quetiapine, may improve outcomes in all critically ill delirious patients, but larger trials are needed to confirm these findings. The ABCDE bundle, which consists of interruption of sedation in mechanically ventilated patients, appropriate choice of medicine, delirium monitoring, and early mobilization, may be a useful model for the treatment and prevention of delirium.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

Dr. Han is supported by the National Institutes of Health (K23AG032355). Dr. Vasilevskis is supported by the National Institutes of Health (K23AG040157). Dr. Ely has received grant support and honoraria from Eli Lilly, Hospira, and Pfizer and is supported by the National Institutes of Health (R01 AG035117-02, R01 AG 027472-05). Drs. Ely and Vasilevskis are also supported by the Veterans Affairs Clinical Research Center of Excellence and the Tennessee Valley Geriatric Research, Education and Clinical Center (GRECC).
### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delirium and outcomes in critically ill patients</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ely et al., <em>JAMA</em>. 2004&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective cohort study that enrolled 275 mechanically ventilated patients. Delirium was ascertained daily using the CAM-ICU. The primary outcome was 6-mo mortality and hospital length of stay. Secondary outcome was duration of mechanical ventilation</td>
<td>Delirium was independently associated with higher 6-mo mortality (hazard ratio 3.2; 95% CI, 1.4–7.7) and longer hospital length of stay (hazard ratio 2.0; 95% CI, 1.4–3.0). Delirium was associated with longer duration of mechanical ventilation (24 d vs. 19 d, ( p )-value = 0.03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandharipande et al., <em>N Engl J Med</em>. 2013&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective cohort study that enrolled 821 medical and surgical ICU patients. Delirium was ascertained daily using the CAM-ICU. The primary outcome was 12-mo global cognition as measured by the RBANS</td>
<td>Of those enrolled, 6% had cognitive impairment at baseline. At 12 months, 34% and 24% had global cognition scores that were similar to patients with moderate traumatic brain injury and mild Alzheimer’s disease, respectively. After adjusting for confounders, a longer duration of delirium was independently associated with worse global cognition at 12 months (( p = 0.04 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAM-ICU and ICDSC</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ely et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2001&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective observational study that enrolled 38 patients in the ICU, 58% of whom were mechanically ventilated. Two nurses and physician performed the CAM-ICU, and a psychiatrist’s DSM-IV assessment was the reference standard for delirium</td>
<td>The CAM-ICU, when performed by nurses, was 95%–100% sensitive and 93% specific. When performed by a physician, the CAM-ICU was 100% sensitive and 89% specific. Interobserver reliability between the nurses and physician was very good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ely et al., <em>JAMA</em>. 2001&lt;sup&gt;13&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective observational study that enrolled 111 mechanically ventilated patients in the ICU. Two nurses performed the CAM-ICU, and a psychiatrist’s DSM-IV assessment was the reference standard for delirium</td>
<td>In mechanically ventilated patients, the CAM-ICU was 93%–100% sensitive and 98%–100% specific with excellent interobserver reliability between both nurses. The diagnostic performance was similar in the young and old (( \geq 65 ) y old), sick and not sick, and in those with and without dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gusmao-Flores et al., <em>Crit Care</em>. 2012&lt;sup&gt;35&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Meta-analysis that included 9 studies evaluating the diagnostic performance of the CAM-ICU and 4 studies evaluating the diagnostic performance of the ICDSC</td>
<td>The CAM-ICU’s pooled sensitivity was 80%, and its pooled specificity was 95.9%. The ICDSC’s pooled sensitivity was 74%, and its pooled specificity was 81.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bergeron et al., <em>Intensive Care Med</em>. 2001&lt;sup&gt;16&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prospective observational study that enrolled 93 patients in the medical and surgical ICU</td>
<td>The ICDSC was 99% sensitive and 64% specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pharmacologic treatment of delirium</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girard et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2010&lt;sup&gt;11&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT that enrolled 103 mechanically ventilated patients. Patients were randomized to receive haloperidol (5 mg), ziprasidone (40 mg), or placebo every 6 h for up to 14 d</td>
<td>There was no difference in the number of days alive without coma or delirium in all three groups. In addition, no differences were observed in ventilator-free days, hospital length of stay, and mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devlin et al., <em>Crit Care Med</em>. 2010&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT that enrolled 36 ICU patients with delirium. Patients were randomized to receive quetiapine 50 mg q12h (titratable to 200 mg q12h) or placebo. Both groups received adjunctive haloperidol as needed</td>
<td>The quetiapine group had reduced delirium duration (38 vs. 120 h, ( p )-value = 0.006), less agitation (( p )-value = 0.02), and a trend toward being more likely to be discharged to home rather than rehabilitation (89% vs. 56%, ( p )-value = 0.06). No differences in mortality or ICU LOS were observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES

Sedation of the Agitated Patient
Randall Wood and Jin H. Han

BACKGROUND

Emergency physicians are frequently called upon to provide care to agitated, violent, and combative patients. These patients pose a significant safety threat to themselves and to the providers who care for them; furthermore, their agitation can impede the diagnostic workup and delay potentially lifesaving care. Chemical sedation is often necessary in order to ensure patient and provider safety and to expedite the diagnostic workup.

Acute undifferentiated agitation can be classified broadly into medical, toxicologic, or psychiatric etiologies (Table 57.1). It may present with a wide spectrum of severity; patients may be agitated but cooperative or dangerously combative. Excited delirium syndrome (ExDS), also referred to as agitated delirium, is a recently-recognized syndrome that represents the most severe form of agitation. ExDS can be precipitated by almost any psychiatric or medical condition, drug, toxin, or biochemical or physiologic alteration. Patients with ExDS are typically young males; they present in a hyperadrenergic autonomic state characterized by hyperthermia, tachycardia, insensitivity to pain, and superhuman strength. ExDS is associated with an increase in mortality and represents a true medical emergency that requires immediate attention.

MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Although sedation is a critical component of the management of acute agitation in the emergency department (ED), health care professionals should be mindful that these patients are experiencing personal, psychological, and medical crises and that they deserve respect and dignity. Prior to administering sedative agents, de-escalation techniques both verbal and environmental (i.e., turning the lights down, minimizing ambient noise) should be attempted. Such techniques may fail in the severely agitated (or combative) patients, some of whom may require physical restraint prior to chemical sedation. If physical restraint is used, it should be for the shortest time possible; positioning a restrained patient in the prone position should be avoided as this has been associated with increased mortality.

Benzodiazepines and antipsychotic medications are the most commonly-used pharmacologic agents for the sedation of the agitated patient (Table 57.2). Although intravenous (IV) administration of these medications allows for rapid onset, this dosing route may be challenging and unsafe in the combative and uncooperative patient. For this reason, intramuscular (IM) formulations are often used initially until an IV
can be established. Oral administration of benzodiazepines and antipsychotics is rarely given in acutely agitated patients, but can be considered in those who are cooperative.3

**MEDICATIONS USED FOR SEDATION OF THE SEVERELY AGITATED EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT PATIENT**

**Benzodiazepines**
Benzodiazepines have a long history of use in the treatment of agitation. This drug class binds to the gamma–aminobutyric acid β (GABA-β)-subtype receptor—the primary inhibitory neurotransmitter of the central nervous system—and exerts sedative, hypnotic, anxiolytic, anticonvulsant, amnestic, and muscle relaxant effects.4 Lorazepam and midazolam are the most commonly used and best studied benzodiazepines for the management of acute agitation because they have predictable onset of action when given in the IM form. Diazepam, chlordiazepoxide, and clonazepam are infrequently used in the acute management of agitation because they have longer half-lives and have

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 57.2</th>
<th>Agents for Acute Undifferentiated Agitation in the Emergency Department</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agent</strong></td>
<td><strong>Formulation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Droperidol</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV, intravenous; IM, intramuscular; PO, oral. Consider using lower doses for elderly patients.

Midazolam has a faster onset and shorter duration of action than lorazepam, especially when given IM; however, patients receiving midazolam may require more frequent redosing because of its shorter half-life.

The dosing of IM and IV midazolam and lorazepam is listed in Table 57.2. Protocols recommend dosing midazolam 2 to 5 mg IV every 5 to 10 minutes. Serial dosing, however, must be used cautiously, as it may increase the risk of respiratory depression, which was reported to be as high as 13% with use of this protocol. Fortunately, this serious side effect is usually transient; it may, however, be more common in patients with ethanol or opiate intoxication and so should be used with caution in this population. Additional side effects of benzodiazepines include ataxia, dizziness, and decreased blood pressure, especially in patients who are hypovolemic.

Benzodiazepines should be reserved for patients whose agitation is severe and who present an immediate threat to themselves or others. They may also be useful in patients who are withdrawing from ethanol or benzodiazepines or those who have taken stimulants such as amphetamines or cocaine. For agitated patients with delirium, the risks and benefits of benzodiazepine use, which can exacerbate delirium, must be carefully weighed.

**Typical Antipsychotics**

Typical, or first-generation, antipsychotics have a long history of use in the treatment of agitation. Haloperidol and droperidol are high-potency butyrophenone antipsychotics that primarily antagonize the D2 dopamine receptor. Despite their side effects (discussed below), and the availability of newer generation atypical antipsychotics, haloperidol and droperidol are still widely used for the management of agitation. They have relatively little effect on hemodynamics and can be given orally, intramuscularly, and intravenously.

Although haloperidol is more commonly used for agitation, droperidol offers several advantages. Droperidol may have a more rapid onset of action and a shorter half-life when given intramuscularly. In one randomized controlled study comparing droperidol 5 mg IM with haloperidol 5 mg IM, droperidol achieved more rapid control of the patient’s agitation without any relative increase in side effects. Compared with IM haloperidol, IM droperidol may also last longer and be less likely to require repeat dosing. The dosages for haloperidol and droperidol are listed in Table 57.2. Serial dosing (i.e., every 5 to 10 minutes) can be required to achieve adequate sedation; total doses exceeding 20 mg are associated with increased side effects and have limited incremental benefit.

One of the most feared side effects of both droperidol and haloperidol is QT prolongation and torsades de pointes, especially when these drugs are given intravenously and at higher doses. Because of reports of cardiac death secondary to torsades de pointes, the FDA issued a black box warning on droperidol in 2001 that has curtailed its use in the clinical setting. This warning is not without controversy. Many have argued that the adverse events observed with droperidol were at doses much higher than typically used for agitation. Several studies have also shown droperidol to be safe for use at doses typically administered for agitation. Regardless, special care should be taken when using either haloperidol or droperidol in patients with a known prolonged QT interval, who take other QT prolonging medications, or have medical conditions that cause QT prolongation. A 12-lead electrocardiogram should be obtained if possible prior to IV administration. If the patient’s QTc interval is >500 milliseconds, the IV route should be avoided.
Haloperidol and droperidol can also cause extrapyramidal symptoms (EPS)—including acute dystonic reactions, akathisia, and pseudoparkinsonism—due to their blockade of dopamine receptors in the basal ganglia. Because haloperidol and droperidol have relatively little anticholinergic activity, EPS occurs in up to 20% of patients treated with these medications. Anticholinergic agents such as diphenhydramine (25 to 50 mg), benztropine (1 to 2 mg), and promethazine (25 to 50 mg) are usually effective in treating acute EPS, though severe akathisia may require benzodiazepines.

Droperidol and haloperidol have also been shown to decrease seizure threshold and should be used with caution in patients with a history of seizures. Finally, neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) is a rare but potentially fatal complication of these medications.

Atypical Antipsychotics

Olanzapine, risperidone, aripiprazole, and ziprasidone have been extensively evaluated for the treatment of acute agitation in the psychiatric patients; their role in the ED patient with undifferentiated agitation is less clear. Most atypical antipsychotics have oral and IM formulations, although the IM formulation may be less readily available in the ED.

Compared to typical antipsychotics, second-generation, or atypical, antipsychotics have a favorable side effect profile. Atypical antipsychotics also antagonize the dopamine D2 receptor, but unlike typical psychotics, they also antagonize the serotonin 5-HT2, histamine, alpha, and muscarinic receptors to variable degrees. They are less likely to cause oversedation, EPS, QT prolongation, and vital sign abnormalities. Some concerns, however, have been raised about hypotension and oxygen desaturation caused by parenteral olanzapine used in combination with benzodiazepines, especially in patients intoxicated with ethanol. Similar to typical antipsychotics, NMS has also been reported in patients receiving atypical antipsychotics.

**CHOICE OF MEDICATION FOR SEDATION OF THE AGITATED PATIENT**

The choice of medication for sedating the agitated ED patient can depend on how quickly sedation needs to be achieved and on the desired length of sedation. Several randomized controlled trials of typical antipsychotics have explored how they compare with benzodiazepines as monotherapy for controlling agitation. In one study, 111 ED patients with severe agitation were treated with either midazolam 5 mg IM, lorazepam 2 mg IM, or haloperidol 5 mg IM; midazolam was reported as having the shortest time to adequate sedation and shorter times to awakening compared with haloperidol and lorazepam. A second study compared midazolam 5 gm IV with droperidol 5 mg IV in 153 agitated ED patients and allowed these medications to be redosed every 5 minutes until adequate sedation was achieved. The study observed that more patients in the midazolam group achieved adequate sedation within 5 minutes (45% vs. 17%), suggesting that midazolam may have faster onset of action than droperidol. Both medications had side effects; there was a trend toward increased respiratory depression in the midazolam group (4.1% vs. 0.0%) and dystonic reactions in the droperidol group (0.0% vs. 3.8%). A third study compared droperidol IV (2.5 mg for patients <50 kg, 5.0 mg for patients >50 kg) with lorazepam IV (2.0 mg for patients <50 kg, 4.0 mg for patients >50 kg) in 202 agitated ED patients; repeat dosing was
allowed in 30 minutes.\textsuperscript{28} Though sedation was similar for both medications at 5 minutes, a larger proportion of the droperidol group achieved adequate sedation at subsequent time intervals. In addition, more patients in the lorazepam arm required redosing compared with the droperidol arm. No major adverse events occurred in either group.

The role of atypical antipsychotics in the management of the acutely agitated ED patient is less well established. To date, most research has been conducted in patients whose agitation has a psychiatric cause; in this population, atypical antipsychotics such as olanzapine, aripiprazole, and risperidone are as effective as haloperidol and show a lower incidence of EPS.\textsuperscript{29–31} Only one randomized controlled trial has evaluated the role of atypical antipsychotic medications in the ED patient with undifferentiated agitation. This study randomized 144 agitated ED patients to receive midazolam 5 mg IM, droperidol 5 mg IM, or ziprasidone 20 mg IM.\textsuperscript{17} Only 39\% of the ziprasidone group achieved adequate sedation within 15 minutes compared to 69\% of the midazolam group and 60\% of the droperidol group.\textsuperscript{17} As result, IM ziprasidone is not recommended for rapid sedation of the agitated patient.

In the agitated patient with a psychiatric etiology, several studies have demonstrated that a butyrophenone in combination with a benzodiazepine results in improved sedation with less EPS than monotherapy.\textsuperscript{23,32,33} In ED patients, the role of combination therapy in the patient with undifferentiated agitation remains unclear. One randomized controlled trial compared droperidol 10 mg IM, midazolam 10 mg IM, and the combination of droperidol 5 mg IM + midazolam 5 mg IM in 91 violent and agitated ED patients.\textsuperscript{34} The study did not observe any differences in the duration of agitation between the three groups. However, the midazolam group required more redosing to maintain adequate sedation; this group also experienced a nonsignificant tendency to develop oxygen desaturations, especially in patients with ethanol intoxication. A second randomized controlled trial compared midazolam IV alone with midazolam IV used in conjunction with either droperidol 5 mg IV or olanzapine 5 mg IV.\textsuperscript{24} The combination of droperidol + midazolam or olanzapine + midazolam was associated with significantly shorter times to adequate sedation compared with midazolam alone. More patients in the midazolam-only group required additional sedation within 60 minutes. There were no differences in adverse events or ED length of stay. Several retrospective studies, however, raise concerns that combining olanzapine with a benzodiazepine may result in lower oxygen saturations when given to patients with ethanol intoxication.\textsuperscript{35,36} As a result, additional research is needed to determine the safety and efficacy of combining antipsychotics and benzodiazepine in the treatment of agitation in the ED.

**SUMMARY RECOMMENDATIONS**

Based on the abovementioned studies, the following general conclusions can be made:

- Droperidol and midazolam appear to achieve fastest onset of sedation; midazolam, however, may require redosing if prolonged sedation is needed.
- Combination therapy with an antipsychotic and a benzodiazepine has been shown to be effective for managing agitation in psychiatric patients, but its effectiveness in the ED patient with undifferentiated agitation is yet to be determined. The use of midazolam in conjunction with droperidol or olanzapine is as effective as monotherapy, but may result in prolonged sedation.
Midazolam, whether used as monotherapy or in conjunction with an antipsychotic, may cause respiratory compromise in ethanol-intoxicated patients and should be used with caution.

No droperidol study has reported torsades de pointes, but patients who received droperidol developed longer QTc when compared with midazolam.

Other Agents Used for the Sedation of the Agitated Patient

Ketamine is a dissociative anesthetic that antagonizes the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor. It is commonly used in the ED for procedural sedation and induction of intubation and minimally affects respiratory drive. Several case reports have shown that ketamine may be useful in the treatment of severe agitation refractory to antipsychotics or benzodiazepines.

Dexmedetomidine is an alpha-2 agonist sedative that produces minimal respiratory depression; an advantage of this agent is that patients remain easily arousable, even while their agitation is adequately controlled. The evidence supporting its use is limited to case reports in patients with delirium tremens. Further research is needed to establish the role and safety of both ketamine and dexmedetomidine in treating agitation in the ED.

CHOICE OF SEDATIVES BASED UPON CAUSE OF AGITATION

Recently, the American Association for Emergency Psychiatry released a consensus statement on the management of agitation in the ED including specific types of agitation that may warrant specific sedatives. In a busy ED, however, it is often challenging to determine the cause of agitation, especially early in a patient’s course. With this caveat, for agitation secondary to stimulants, benzodiazepines are considered the first-line agent. Benzodiazepines should also be used for agitation secondary to alcohol and benzodiazepine withdrawal. For alcohol-intoxicated patients, benzodiazepines should be avoided because of increased risk of respiratory depression; haloperidol or a second-generation antipsychotic should be used instead. For agitation secondary to a psychiatric illness, antipsychotics are preferred over benzodiazepines, and atypical antipsychotics are preferred over typical antipsychotics. Benzodiazepines may be used if the initial dose of antipsychotic medications is insufficient to control agitation. For agitation secondary to hyperactive delirium not caused by a stimulant, ethanol withdrawal, or benzodiazepine withdrawal, haloperidol is recommended if immediate pharmacologic control is required. Benzodiazepines can exacerbate the delirium component of hyperactive delirium and should be avoided in those instances.

CONCLUSION

The management of severe acute agitation in the ED is challenging and requires a coordinated effort between emergency physicians, nurses, and staff. When non-pharmacological methods fail to calm the patient, intervention with chemical sedation can to ensure patient and staff safety and facilitate the diagnostic workup. Familiarity with the summary recommendations provided in this chapter can help guide selection of the most appropriate sedative agent.
## REFERENCES


---

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nobay et al., <em>Acad Emerg Med.</em> 2004&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT comparing midazolam 5 mg IM, lorazepam 2 mg IM, or haloperidol 5 mg IM in 111 violent and severely agitated ED patients</td>
<td>Mean time to adequate sedation was significantly (p-value &lt;0.05) shorter in the midazolam group (18 min) compared with those who received haloperidol (28 min) or lorazepam (32 min). Mean time to awakening was significantly shorter (p-value &lt; 0.05) in the midazolam group (62 min) compared with lorazepam (217 min) and haloperidol (127 min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knott et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2008&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT comparing midazolam 5 mg IV with droperidol 5 mg IV in 153 agitated ED patients; each group could be redosed every 5 min for a total of six doses until adequate sedation was achieved</td>
<td>More patients in the midazolam group achieved adequate sedation within 5 min (45% vs. 17%, p-value &lt; 0.001), but the proportion of patients achieving adequate sedation in 10 min were similar (65% vs. 53%, p-value = 0.91). Three patients in the midazolam group required airway intervention including one intubation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martel et al., <em>Acad Emerg Med.</em> 2005&lt;sup&gt;11&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT comparing droperidol 5 mg IM, ziprasidone 20 mg IM, and midazolam 5 mg IM in 144 ED patients with acute undifferentiated agitation</td>
<td>Fewer patients in the ziprasidone (39%) group were adequately sedated within 15 min compared with the midazolam (69%) and droperidol (60%) groups (p-value = 0.01). However, the midazolam group required more rescue medications (50%) compared with droperidol (10%) or ziprasidone (20%) groups (p-value &lt; 0.05). The proportion of patients with respiratory depression were not significantly different between the three groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chan et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2013&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter-blinded RCT investigating IV droperidol (5 mg) vs. IV olanzapine (5 mg) vs. IV saline (placebo) in 336 acutely agitated ED patients. These were immediately followed by incremental IV midazolam boluses (2.5–5 mg) titrated until sedation was adequately achieved</td>
<td>Median difference for times to sedation between placebo (midazolam only) and olanzapine + midazolam group was 4 min (95% CI, 1–6 min), and the median difference for times to sedation between placebo and the droperidol + midazolam group was 5 min (95% CI, 1–6 min). More patients in the placebo group required additional sedation in the 60 min. All groups had similar rates of adverse events, and no differences in ED LOS were observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richards et al., <em>J Emerg Med.</em> 1998&lt;sup&gt;28&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Randomized nonblinded trial comparing droperidol IV (2.5 mg for patients &lt;50 kg, 5.0 mg for patients &gt;50 kg) with lorazepam IV (2.0 mg for patients &lt;50 kg, 4.0 mg for patients &gt;50 kg) in 202 ED agitated patients</td>
<td>Sedation scores were similar at 5 min. The droperidol group, however, had achieved better sedation than lorazepam after 10 min through 60 min. More patients in the lorazepam arm required redosing compared with the droperidol arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isbister et al., <em>Ann Emerg Med.</em> 2010&lt;sup&gt;34&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Blinded RCT that investigated droperidol 10 mg IM, midazolam 10 mg IM, and the combination of droperidol 5 mg IM + midazolam 5 mg IM in 91 violent and agitated ED patients</td>
<td>No difference in the median duration of agitation between the three treatment arms, but redosing was required more often in patients who received midazolam (62%) compared with droperidol (33%) and combination therapy (41%). Oxygen desaturation was the most common adverse event and occurred with greater frequency in the midazolam group (28%) than with the droperidol group (6%) or the combination group (7%), although this finding did not reach statistical significance. This complication was observed predominantly in patients with ethanol intoxication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RCT**, randomized control trials; IV, intravenous; IM, intramuscular; ED, emergency department; 95% CI, 95% confidence intervals; LOS, length of stay.


Induction of Intubation and Sedation of the Mechanically Ventilated Patient

Jin H. Han and Pratik Pandharipande

BACKGROUND
Sedation is the pharmacologic reduction of agitation and anxiety, and it is an indispensable tool for the clinician treating critically ill emergency department (ED) patients. Sedation is used in the induction of intubation, as well as for maximizing comfort and reducing anxiety in the already intubated patient. Choice of sedative agents in the ED may have ramifications in the intensive care unit (ICU) and hospital course and may affect patient outcomes. This chapter reviews the pharmacologic agents used for the induction for intubation and for the sedation of mechanically ventilated patients.

INDUCTION AGENTS
The ED is frequently tasked with the initial management of a critically ill patient’s airway. Induction for endotracheal intubation employs sedatives—called, in this context, induction agents—at doses that typically suppress ventilation. Etomidate, ketamine, barbiturates (methohexital), benzodiazepines (midazolam), and propofol have all been used in this capacity (Table 58.1).

Etomidate
Etomidate is a carboxylated imidazole derivative that is a potent hypnotic and activates the \( \gamma \)-aminobutyric acid type A (GABA) receptors in the brain; it has no analgesic effects.\(^1\) For induction of intubation, the etomidate dose is 0.3 mg/kg given intravenously (IV).\(^2\) Etomidate is an ideal induction agent in the ED because it has rapid and predictable onset of action (5 to 15 seconds), a short duration of action (5 to 14 minutes), negligible effect on spontaneous respiration at lower doses, and no direct effects on cardiac output or vascular resistance.\(^1,3,4\) Etomidate may be particularly useful in patients with suspected traumatic brain injury or intraocular injuries; by reducing cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption, it can decrease intracranial and intraocular pressure.\(^3\)

It should be noted that etomidate use can lead to adrenal suppression, and as such its safety has come into question. Etomidate inhibits the 11\(\beta\)-hydroxylase enzyme, which is involved in the production of cortisol. A single dose of etomidate can cause adrenal
suppression for up to 72 hours, but whether this has a clinically relevant effect on outcomes has been a source of significant controversy.\textsuperscript{5}

A recent meta-analysis that included five studies reported that critically ill patients who were septic and received etomidate were more likely to die (relative risk = 1.20).\textsuperscript{6} However, only two of the five studies included in this meta-analysis were primary analyses of randomized controlled trials.\textsuperscript{7,8} A recent retrospective cohort study enrolled 2,014 septic patients and reported that one-time etomidate use was not associated with ICU mortality, hospital mortality, vasopressor use, duration of mechanical ventilation, or ICU length of stay (LOS) in the unadjusted and adjusted models.\textsuperscript{9} However, the limitations of retrospective studies are well documented, and larger randomized controlled trials comparing etomidate with other induction agents are needed.

Data regarding the safety of etomidate in nonseptic patients are even more uncertain, as there are few rigorously performed randomized controlled trials comparing etomidate to other induction agents. An association between single-dose etomidate and adverse outcomes (mortality, hospital LOS, ventilator days) has been noted in several retrospective cohort studies of critically ill patients.\textsuperscript{10,11} One randomized controlled trial enrolled 469 critically patients with and without sepsis and compared etomidate with ketamine.\textsuperscript{8} Though the etomidate group was more likely to have adrenal sufficiency, no significant difference in 28-day mortality was observed in the septic and nonseptic groups. There was, however, a trend toward increased vasopressor use in the etomidate group compared with the ketamine group (59% vs. 51%).\textsuperscript{9}

Some clinicians have advocated the use of supplemental hydrocortisone and/or fludrocortisone when etomidate is administered for intubation.\textsuperscript{12} In a secondary analysis of a major randomized controlled trial comparing the role of corticosteroids in septic shock, it was found that patients who received hydrocortisone and fludrocortisone for 7 days had lower 28-day mortality rates compared with patients who received placebo (55% vs. 76%).\textsuperscript{13,14} However, two additional studies compared hydrocortisone

### Table 58.1: Induction Agents for Intubation in the Emergency Department

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Induction Agent</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>May be Beneficial for</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
<th>Caution/Contraindications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Etomidate</td>
<td>0.3 mg/kg</td>
<td>Hemodynamically unstable patients</td>
<td>Myoclonus, adrenal suppression</td>
<td>Consider alternative agent in patients with septic shock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine</td>
<td>1–2 mg/kg</td>
<td>Hemodynamically unstable patients</td>
<td>Increased heart rate and blood pressure</td>
<td>Use with caution in patients who are markedly hypertensive or tachycardic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methohexital</td>
<td>1–1.5 mg/kg</td>
<td>Head injury patients with increased ICP, actively seizing</td>
<td>Hypotension</td>
<td>Use with caution in patients with hypovolemia. Avoid in hypotensive patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>0.3 to 0.35 mg/kg</td>
<td>Those who are actively seizing</td>
<td>Hypotension rare, but can occur in the setting of hypovolemia</td>
<td>Use with caution in patients with hypovolemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propofol</td>
<td>1–2.5 mg/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hypotension</td>
<td>Use with caution in patients with hypovolemia. Avoid in hypotensive patients</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICP, intracranial pressure. Consider using the lowest dose of induction agent possible to minimize precipitating or exacerbating hemodynamic instability.
with placebo in patients who received etomidate and observed no improvement in mortality in patients with and without septic shock.\textsuperscript{15,16}

Based upon these limited data, etomidate should be used judiciously in patients with sepsis; however, given its favorable hemodynamic profile, etomidate is still preferable to propofol or barbiturates in unstable patients. In nonseptic patients, despite the reports of adrenal insufficiency, the effect of etomidate on patient outcomes remains uncertain.

Myoclonus is another, albeit less serious, side effect of etomidate and has been reported to occur in 10\% to 80\% of patients when a paralytic is not used.\textsuperscript{3} For intubations without neuromuscular blockade, premedication with fentanyl or diazepam prior to etomidate administration may help reduce the incidence of myoclonus.\textsuperscript{3}

**Ketamine**

Ketamine is a promising alternative to etomidate since it does not, in most cases, affect blood pressure or cardiac output and can be used safely in patients who are hemodynamically unstable. Ketamine is a dissociative agent that has anesthetic, amnestic, and anxiolytic properties. Unlike most other induction agents, it also provides analgesia. Ketamine noncompetitively inhibits glutamate at the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors and causes dissociation between the thalamocortical and limbic regions of the central nervous system (CNS).\textsuperscript{2} Ketamine may also have theoretical benefit in patients with asthma exacerbations; it causes an increase in serum catecholamine levels and may cause bronchodilation.\textsuperscript{2} Lastly, patients who receive ketamine are typically able to maintain their respiratory effort and have preserved airway reflexes. For intubation, the dose is 1 to 2 mg/kg IV with an onset of action of approximately 30 seconds.\textsuperscript{2}

Ketamine stimulates catecholamine release, but it can also cause slight myocardial depression.\textsuperscript{17} Typically, the sympathomimetic stimulation overcomes the myocardial depression and causes an increase in heart rate, blood pressure, and cardiac output.\textsuperscript{18} Theoretically, patients who have been physiologically stressed for a prolonged period of time may be depleted of endogenous catecholamines, allowing for the myocardial depression to dominate and cause hypotension. Because of this theoretical risk, ketamine should be used cautiously in patients in whom catecholamine depletion is suspected. Because ketamine increases myocardial oxygen demand, it should also be used cautiously in patients with coronary artery disease and avoided in patients who have evidence of myocardial ischemia.\textsuperscript{18} Ketamine can also cause an increase in heart rate and blood pressure and should be used cautiously in patients who are hypertensive or tachycardic.

Traditionally, ketamine has also been used with caution in patients with traumatic brain injury because early small observational trials observed an increase in intracranial pressure (ICP).\textsuperscript{19} More recent studies have failed to record a statistically significant increase in ICP, but these studies were similarly limited by their small sample sizes.\textsuperscript{19} Until more definitive evidence is available, caution should be exercised with ketamine in this population.

**Barbiturates**

Barbiturates, such as methohexital, are CNS depressants that exert effects on the GABA receptors and have anxiolytic and sedative properties. Because barbiturates decreases cerebral blood flow and the brains’ metabolic demands, they may have a protective effect in head injury patients. Barbiturates also have anticonvulsant properties and may
be advantageous to patients who are actively seizing or who have a history of seizure disorder. However, since barbiturates can cause myocardial depression and peripheral vasodilatation, they are seldom used for intubation in the ED, where patients needing intubation are frequently hemodynamically unstable. Barbiturates can also induce aminolevulinic acid synthetase and can precipitate acute porphyric crisis and should be avoided in patients with a history of porphyric disorders. Standard induction dose for methohexital is 1 to 1.5mg/kg/IV.

**Benzodiazepines**

Benzodiazepines also act on the GABA receptor and have sedative, hypnotic, amnestic, anxiolytic, and anticonvulsant properties, but provide no analgesia. Midazolam (0.3 to 0.35 mg/kg) is the most commonly used benzodiazepine for intubation because it has a rapid onset and short duration of action. Although benzodiazepines have minimal cardiovascular effects, they can cause hypotension in patients who are hypovolemic. Benzodiazepines have anticonvulsant activities and may be useful in patients who are actively seizing.

**Propofol**

Propofol binds to multiple receptors in the CNS including GABA, glycine, nicotinic, and muscarinic receptors. Propofol has sedative, hypnotic, anxiolytic, amnestic, and anticonvulsant properties, but provides no analgesia. The dose for induction is 1 to 2.5 mg/kg IV. Propofol has several appealing characteristics for an induction agent. First, it is highly lipophilic and easily crosses the blood–brain barrier, resulting in rapid onset of sedation (1 to 2 minutes). Second, it is rapidly redistributed into the peripheral tissues, resulting in a short duration of action (2 to 8 minutes) even in the setting of renal or hepatic dysfunction. The primary disadvantage of propofol is its negative inotropic effect, which can lead to decreased systemic vascular resistance and cause pronounced hemodynamic depression. For this reason, propofol should be used with caution in patients who are volume depleted and should be avoided in patients who are hypotensive. Because propofol is dissolved in a 10% lipid emulsion containing egg, soybean oil, and egg lecithin, allergic reactions can be seen in patients with soybean and egg allergies.

**CHOICE OF INDUCTION AGENT**

The choice of induction should be guided by the patient’s underlying illness and comorbid conditions. Etomidate and ketamine are ideal for use in the ED because of their favorable hemodynamic profiles. Etomidate should probably be avoided in septic patients, although the medical community has not uniformly embraced this recommendation; additional trials are needed to clarify etomidate’s safety. Ketamine may be a safer alternative, including in head injury patients. Propofol, barbiturates, and to a lesser extent, benzodiazepines can cause potentially fatal decreases in blood pressure, especially in patients who are volume depleted.

Surprisingly little data exist regarding the effect of induction agent on ease of intubation. One trial randomized 469 septic and nonseptic patients to receive either etomidate or ketamine for the induction of intubation and did not observe any difference in intubation conditions (number of attempts, number of operators, number of alternative
techniques, glottis visualization, lifting force, use of external laryngeal pressure, and vocal cord position). In a registry study (NEAR II) of 2,380 ED patients who underwent rapid sequence intubation, etomidate, ketamine, and benzodiazepine were associated with a lower likelihood of successful first-attempt intubation compared with barbiturates. The authors concluded that using methohexital and propofol facilitated rapid sequence intubation, but that the benefits of these medications should be weighed against their capacity to produce hemodynamic instability.

ANALGESIA AND SEDATION IN THE MECHANICALLY VENTILATED PATIENT

Once a patient is intubated in the ED, a primary goal is to ensure comfort in as safe a manner possible. Endotracheal intubation (as well as other critical care procedures) can result in significant anxiety and agitation, which can lead a patient to self-remove lifesaving medical devices. Unrelieved pain and anxiety may also have long-term psychological consequences, including posttraumatic stress disorder.

Analgesia and sedation are an integral part to providing comfort to the mechanically ventilated patient (Fig. 58.1). However, special care must be taken to avoid oversedation, which is associated with increased duration of mechanical ventilation, prolonged ICU stays, and delirium. Delirium has gained increased attention in the critical care literature over the past decade; it has been shown to be a predictor of death and leads to increased duration of mechanical ventilation, longer ICU stays, and long-term cognitive impairment.

In 2013, the American College of Critical Care Medicine, Society of Critical Care Medicine, and American Society of Health-System Pharmacists released a clinical practice guideline for the management of pain, agitation, and delirium in critically ill patients (PAD guidelines). These guidelines were developed by a 20-person multidisciplinary task force that reviewed the latest critical care literature and provided consensus recommendations for sedation and analgesia. The subsequent paragraphs provide a summary of these guidelines.

Analgesia

Adequate analgesia is essential to minimizing discomfort, agitation, and delirium in the mechanically ventilated patient (Fig. 58.1). Because vital sign abnormalities alone are inaccurate markers for pain, a validated pain assessment should be used for all intubated patients. The Behavioral Pain Scale and Critical-Care Pain Observation Tool are two examples of pain scales validated for this patient population. These scales are based upon the health care providers’ observations of the patient’s facial expression, upper body movements, and compliance with ventilator.

While it is beyond the scope of this chapter to provide a comprehensive review of analgesia for the mechanically ventilated patient, it is important to note that the PAD guidelines recommend IV administration of opioid medications as first-line treatment of pain related to intubation. Longer-acting opioids (such as morphine and hydromorphone) and shorter-acting opioids (such as fentanyl and remifentanil) can be used. Of the opioid medications listed above, fentanyl is the most commonly used because of its rapid onset of action, short duration of action, and minimal histaminic release. Meperidine is generally avoided because it may be deliriogenic and because it is...
Analgesia and Sedation Protocol for Mechanically Ventilated Patients

1. Analgesia
   - In pain?
     - Yes
     - Fentanyl 50–100 µg prn
     - Morphine 2–5 mg prn
     - Hydromorphone 0.2–1 mg prn
     - Controlled or anticipated control with < 3 bolus doses / hour?
     - No
     - Fentanyl 50–200 µg/h gtt
     - Fentanyl 25–50 µg prn pain
     - Analgesia may be adequate to reach target RASS
   - No
     - Reassess often

2. Sedation
   - RASS at target?
     - Yes
     - SAT + SBT daily
     - Reassess often
   - No
     - Over-sedated
       - Hold sedative and analgesics until target RASS is achieved
       - Restart at 50% if clinically indicated.
     - Under-sedated
       - Propofol 5–50 µg/kg/min
       - Dexmedetomidine 0.2–0.7 µg/kg/h (if delirious / weaning)
       - Midazolam 1–3 mg prn* (only in ETOH withdrawal or propofol intolerance#)
     - Reassess often

3. Delirium**
   - Delirium negative
     - Reassess q6–12 hours
   - Delirium positive
     - Non-pharmacologic and pharmacologic management.

FIGURE 58.1 Empiric Sedation Protocol. *Midazolam 1 to 3 mg/hour gtt may be used if more than three midazolam boluses are given per hour, for propofol intolerance, or if the patient has been on propofol for >96 hours. #Propofol intolerance may be secondary to propofol infusion syndrome. **Delirium monitoring in critically ill patients is reviewed in Chapter 56. RASS, Richmond agitation and sedation scale; gtt, infusion; prn, as needed; ETOH, ethanol; SAT, Spontaneous awakening trial; SBT, Spontaneous breathing trial. Courtesy of icudelirium.org. Used with permission.
metabolized into normeperidine, which is neurotoxic and can cause tremors, myoclonus, and generalized tonic–clonic seizures.\textsuperscript{30,31} Morphine has a less clear role in the development of delirium, with studies producing conflicting results. It is possible that opioid medications may be delirium protective when used for pain control, but deliriogenic in higher doses.\textsuperscript{32,33} Nonopioid analgesia—such as regional anesthesia, IV acetaminophen, oral, IV or rectal cyclooxygenase inhibitors, or IV ketorolac—can be also used as adjunctive therapy for pain control.\textsuperscript{21}

**Sedation**

After adequate pain control has been achieved, the next step (Fig. 58.1) is to provide sedation, if needed, to further minimize anxiety and agitation. Dosing must be guided by ongoing, accurate assessment of a patient’s agitation and depth of sedation. Traditionally, descriptors such as lethargic, drowsy, somnolent, restless, agitated, or combative have been used, but these terms may have different meanings for different health providers; instead, arousal scales with standardized definitions should be utilized. The commonly used Richmond Agitation Sedation Scale (RASS, Table 58.2) ranges from $-5$ (unresponsive to pain and voice) to $+4$ (extreme combativeness).\textsuperscript{34} Alternatively, the Riker Sedation–Agitation Scale can be used and ranges from 1 (unarousable) to 4 (calm) to 7 (dangerous agitation).\textsuperscript{35}

In the time immediately following intubation, it is not uncommon for an ED patient to be overly sedated and minimally responsive to painful stimuli. Prolonged and deep sedation (RASS $-3$ to $-5$) within the first 48 hours of mechanical ventilation can lead to delayed extubation times and increased in-hospital and 6-month mortality.\textsuperscript{36} Ideally, a lighter degree of sedation (RASS $-1$ or $-2$) should be targeted, using the least amount of sedation necessary to control agitation and anxiety while maintaining patient comfort.\textsuperscript{21} Traditionally, benzodiazepines have been the sedative of choice for mechanically ventilated patients.\textsuperscript{21} Recent evidence, however, suggests that alternative sedative agents such as propofol and dexmedetomidine, when available, may improve patient outcomes.

### TABLE 58.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$+4$</td>
<td>Combative</td>
<td>Overly combative, violent, immediate danger to staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$+3$</td>
<td>Very agitated</td>
<td>Pulls or removes tube(s) or catheter(s); aggressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$+2$</td>
<td>Agitated</td>
<td>Frequent nonpurposeful movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$+1$</td>
<td>Restless</td>
<td>Anxious but movements not aggressive vigorous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0$</td>
<td>Alert and clam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-1$</td>
<td>Drowsy</td>
<td>Not fully alert, but has sustained awakening (eye opening/eye contact) to voice ($&gt;10$ s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-2$</td>
<td>Light sedation</td>
<td>Briefly awakens with eye contact to voice ($&lt;10$ s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-3$</td>
<td>Moderate sedation</td>
<td>Movement or eye opening to voice (but no eye contact)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-4$</td>
<td>Deep sedation</td>
<td>No response to voice, but movement or eye opening to physical stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-5$</td>
<td>Unarousable</td>
<td>No response to voice or physical stimulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring for delirium—which affects up to 80% of mechanically ventilated patients and is associated with adverse outcomes—is an essential component of the pain analgesia and sedation protocol (Fig. 58.1). Delirium can be the initial manifestation of oversedation or of a change in patient status, such as pain, hypoxemia, hypoglycemia, hypotension, or ethanol withdrawal. If a patient is found to be delirious, every effort should be made to uncover the underlying precipitant. Delirium can be monitored using validated assessments such as the Confusion Assessment Method for the Intensive Care Unit or the Intensive Care Delirium Screening Checklist. Details of the diagnosis and management of critically ill patients with delirium are described in Chapter 56.

**SEDATION AGENTS**

**Benzodiazepines**
Benzodiazepines have been used for sedation for many years in EDs and ICUs. Most benzodiazepines are metabolized by the liver, and their effects can be prolonged in patient with hepatic dysfunction. With the exception of lorazepam, the metabolism of benzodiazepines also produces active metabolites that are renally eliminated. This can result in prolonged sedation in patients with renal dysfunction. For all benzodiazepines, elimination is impaired with increased patient age.

Benzodiazepines can also produce respiratory depression and exacerbate hemodynamic instability, especially in patients with preexisting respiratory or cardiac disease. Although they are in continued widespread use in the ICU setting, benzodiazepines are known to impair quality of sleep, which can increase the risk for delirium and lead to extended mechanical ventilation time and ICU LOS. While there has been a recent push to curtail ICU reliance on benzodiazepines, practice patterns have yet to comply.

**Propofol**
For sedation of the mechanically ventilated patient, propofol is initially given as a bolus injection of 5 μg/kg IV over 5 minutes followed by an infusion of 5 to 50 μg/kg/min. Propofol crosses the blood–brain barrier with ease, and it is rapidly redistributed into the peripheral tissues, causing it to have a rapid onset and short duration of action. For these reasons, propofol is widely used in the ICU setting, especially for patients that require frequent awakenings for neurologic examinations. In addition, it is useful for performing spontaneous awakening and breathing trials. Note that emergence can be delayed with prolonged propofol infusions once the peripheral tissues have been saturated.

Propofol is a sympatholytic and can lead to hypotension and respiratory depression. Its hemodynamic effects are more pronounced in patients with baseline respiratory insufficiency, cardiovascular instability, or significant hypovolemia. Propofol infusion syndrome (PRIS), although less likely to occur early in a patient’s ED or ICU course, is a potentially fatal complication of propofol sedation. The clinical features of PRIS are variable, but can include hypotension and bradycardia, metabolic acidosis, and hypertriglyceridemia. Acute kidney injury, hyperkalemia, rhabdomyolysis, and enlarged or fatty liver are also observed. PRIS occurs more frequently in patients receiving prolonged (>48 hours) propofol infusions at higher doses (>75 μg/kg/min and in patients with acute neurologic or inflammatory illnesses. When large doses of propofol are used
in critically ill patients, it is recommended that serum pH, lactate, creatinine kinase, triglyceride levels, and electrocardiograms (Brugada-type changes) be routinely monitored. If PRIS is suspected, treatment consists of discontinuation of the propofol infusion and provision of supportive care.

**Dexmedetomidine**

Whereas benzodiazepine and propofol are GABA receptor agonists, dexmedetomidine is an alpha-2 receptor agonist. It exerts its effects primarily on the presynaptic neurons within the locus ceruleus and spinal cord. Patients sedated with dexmedetomidine are easily arousable to the point of being interactive, and there is minimal associated respiratory depression. Unlike propofol and benzodiazepines, dexmedetomidine does not have anticonvulsant properties, but does provide analgesia by an unknown mechanism. The loading dose is 1 μg/kg IV over 10 minutes, and maintenance dose is 0.2 to 0.7 μg/kg/h. Studies have shown safety up to 2 g/kg/h but at the expense of increased risk of bradycardia. Because dexmedetomidine is metabolized in the liver, lower doses may be required in patients with hepatic dysfunction. There is no need for dose adjustment for patients with renal dysfunction.

Bradycardia and hypotension are the most common side effects of dexmedetomidine. However, the bradycardia observed with dexmedetomidine typically does not require intervention. Hypertension may also occur, usually during bolus dosing, via stimulation of the postjunctional alpha-2 receptors located on arterial and venous smooth muscle.

**CHOICE OF SEDATION AGENT**

The PAD guidelines currently recommend nonbenzodiazepines (propofol and dexmedetomidine) for sedation of mechanically ventilated patients. Based on a recent meta-analysis, propofol appears to decrease ICU LOS and slightly decrease the time spent on the ventilator compared with benzodiazepines, but it does not affect mortality. When compared to midazolam, a shorter-acting benzodiazepine, propofol’s benefit in reducing ICU LOS disappears. It is unclear whether propofol decreases the risk of delirium when compared with benzodiazepines.

Several recent studies have compared dexmedetomidine with a variety of other sedative agents in mechanically ventilated patients. The MENDS and SEDCOM studies compared dexmedetomidine with lorazepam and midazolam, respectively, and both studies observed that the dexmedetomidine group was less likely to develop delirium. Patients receiving dexmedetomidine were also more likely to be close to target sedation compared with patients receiving lorazepam, but no differences were observed when dexmedetomidine was compared with midazolam in this regard. More importantly, the use of dexmedetomidine may facilitate liberation from the ventilator; in the SEDCOM study, patients receiving dexmedetomidine spent a median of two fewer days on the ventilator compared with the midazolam group. Dexmedetomidine may also have some mortality benefit in septic patients. In a secondary analysis of the MENDS trial, dexmedetomidine was observed to reduce the risk of mortality by 70% in septic patients compared with patients who received lorazepam.

More recently, two multicentered randomized controlled trials compared dexmedetomidine with propofol (PRODEX trial) and midazolam (MIDEX trial).
Time at target arousal was similar between the dexmedetomidine and control (midazolam and propofol) groups. Duration of mechanical ventilation was reduced with dexmedetomidine compared with midazolam; no difference was observed with propofol. In both trials, patients on dexmedetomidine were better able to communicate pain than those sedated with midazolam or propofol. Additional studies are needed to determine if dexmedetomidine should be routinely used for sedation in mechanically ventilated patients and to determine its performance compared with propofol. While there is a push to decrease use of benzodiazepines as the sedation agent of choice, benzodiazepines will continue to play an important role in patients with status epilepticus, or in patients who are withdrawing from ethanol or benzodiazepines.

**INTERUPTION OF SEDATION**

Recently, there has been a paradigm shift in sedation protocols for mechanically ventilated patients, with the goal of reducing duration of mechanical ventilation and patient morbidity. The Awakening and Breathing Controlled (ABC) trial evaluated the efficacy and safety of a “Wake Up and Breathe” protocol that paired management of sedation with ventilation management (Fig. 58.2). This protocol combined spontaneous breathing trials (SBTs), which are standard of care in most intensive care units, with spontaneous awakening trials (SATs), which involve routine interruption of the patient’s sedation.

The “Wake Up and Breathe” protocol (SAT + SBT) was compared to the standard of care (SBT alone) in a multicenter randomized control trial that enrolled 336 mechanically ventilated patients. Patients who were randomized to the “Wake Up and Breathe” intervention arm spent more days breathing without assistance and had shorter ICU and hospital LOSs. At 1-year follow-up, patients in the intervention arm were less likely to die (44% vs. 58%); for every seven patients treated with the intervention, one life was saved. More patients in the intervention group self-extubated (10% vs. 4%), but there was no difference in patients requiring reintubation. There is natural concern that the SAT may cause undue psychological stress in the patient. However, studies have demonstrated that routine interruption of sedation not only did not result in adverse psychological outcomes but also produced a reduction in symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder in this population.

The decision of when to begin SAT and SBT is based on the provider’s clinical judgment and the patient’s severity of illness. A patient mechanically ventilated because of a drug overdose, for example, will likely begin an SAT + SBT trial earlier than a patient intubated because of a massive traumatic brain injury. As a general rule, ventilator weaning should be initiated within 12 to 24 hours—and in certain circumstances may be initiated in the ED.

**CONCLUSION**

Sedation is an integral part of ED care of the critically ill patient. For induction of intubation, etomidate has been the medication of choice, but its use is controversial, as a one-time dose causes adrenal suppression and may lead to higher mortality, especially in septic patients. Ketamine is a viable alternative induction agent notable for its minimal impact on a hemodynamic status. Propofol, methohexital, and to a lesser extent midazolam are more likely to cause hypotension, especially in patients who are hypovolemic.
Once a patient is intubated and on mechanical ventilation, achieving adequate analgesia and sedation is critical to optimizing outcome. For sedation of most patients, propofol and dexmedetomidine should—when available—be used in place of benzodiazepines. If a patient is anticipated to be the ED for more than 12 hours, SAT and SBT trials should be considered, as these can facilitate early extubation and improve mortality.

FIGURE 58.2 “Wake Up and Breathe Protocol.” SAT, Spontaneous awakening trial; SBT, Spontaneous breathing trial. Courtesy of icudelirium.org. Used with permission.
## ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Dr. Han is supported by the National Institutes of Health (K23AG032355).

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Induction of Intubation</strong>&lt;br&gt;Chan et al., Crit Care Med 2012&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 5 studies that enrolled 696 critically ill patients with sepsis. They compared all-cause mortality and adrenal insufficiency in patients who received etomidate with other induction agents</td>
<td>Septic patients who received etomidate for induction of intubation were more likely to die (pooled relative risk 1.20, 95% CI: 1.02–1.42) and were more likely to develop adrenal insufficiency (pooled relative risk 1.29, 95% CI: 1.22–1.46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabre et al., Lancet. 2009&lt;sup&gt;10&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 469 septic and nonseptic patients who were randomized to receive either etomidate or ketamine for the induction of intubation</td>
<td>There was no difference in Sequential Organ Failure Assessment scores, which quantifies organ dysfunction. There was also no difference in 28-d mortality, duration of mechanical ventilation, and ICU LOS. Intubating conditions were not different between the two groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sedation for Mechanically Ventilated Patients</strong>&lt;br&gt;SEDCOM Study Group, JAMA. 2009&lt;sup&gt;47&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 366 mechanically ventilated patients in medical and surgical ICUs comparing dexmedetomidine and midazolam</td>
<td>Patients receiving dexmedetomidine were less likely to be delirious (54% vs. 77%, p &lt; 0.001) and had shorter times to withdrawal of sedation (median 3.7 vs. 5.6 d, p = 0.01). No statistically significant differences in time spent at target sedation, ICU LOS, or mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandharipande et al., Crit Care Med. 2010&lt;sup&gt;48&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 103 mechanically ventilated patients in medical and surgical ICUs comparing dexmedetomidine and lorazepam</td>
<td>Patients receiving dexmedetomidine spent less time delirious or comatose than those receiving lorazepam (median 7 d vs. 3 d, p = 0.01). Patients on dexmedetomidine spent more time at target sedation. Dexmedetomidine improved 28-d mortality in septic patients only (HR 0.3, 95% CI: 0.1–0.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jakob et al., JAMA. 2012&lt;sup&gt;49&lt;/sup&gt; MIDEX</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 300 mechanically ventilated patients in medical, surgical, and trauma ICUs comparing dexmedetomidine and midazolam</td>
<td>Duration of mechanical ventilation was shorter in the dexmedetomidine group compared with the midazolam group (median 123 h vs. 164 h, p = 0.03). Dexmedetomidine also improved the patient’s ability to communicate pain. No difference in time spent at target sedation, ICU LOS, hospital LOS, or mortality were observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jakob et al., JAMA. 2012&lt;sup&gt;49&lt;/sup&gt; PRODEX</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT of 298 mechanically ventilated patients in medical, surgical, and trauma ICUs comparing dexmedetomidine and propofol</td>
<td>No difference in time spent on mechanical ventilation was observed between the dexmedetomidine and propofol groups (median 97 h vs. 118 h, p-value = 0.24). The dexmedetomidine group had improved ability to communicate pain. There was no difference in time spent at target sedation, ICU LOS, hospital LOS, and mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interruption of Sedation for Mechanically Ventilated Patients</strong>&lt;br&gt;Girard et al., Lancet. 2008&lt;sup&gt;50&lt;/sup&gt; ABC</td>
<td>Multicenter RCT that enrolled 336 patients and compared SAT (daily interruption of sedation) + SBT with SBT alone</td>
<td>The SAT + SBT group had more ventilator-free days (mean difference 3.1 d, p-value = 0.02), shorter ICU LOS (9.1 d vs. 12.9 d, p = 0.03), and hospital LOS (14.9 d vs. 19.2 d, p = 0.04). Patients in the SAT + SBT group also had lower 1-y mortality rates (44% vs. 58%, p = 0.01). There was no difference in reintubation rates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RCT, randomized control trial; CI, confidence interval; HR, hazard ratio; LOS, length of stay.
REFERENCES

The Geriatric Patient
Mary R. Mulcare, Alexis Halpem, and Michael E. Stern

BACKGROUND
Geriatric patients, or “older adults,” are defined chronologically as 65 years and older. They represent a growing percentage not only of our adult patient population but also of those requiring critical care–level interventions within the emergency department (ED). Between 2000 and 2010, the population 65 years and older increased at a faster rate (15.1% over a 10-year period) than the U.S. population as a whole (9.7% over a 10-year period) and currently represents over 13% of the total U.S. population. There was a concomitant increase in persons 85 years and older by a remarkable 29.6% over the same time frame. The older adult population is expected to double to more than 70 million by 2030. A recent retrospective cohort study in the United States showed that older adult patients represent 45.7% of the total intensive care unit (ICU) population (with 10.35% of all patients being over 85 years old). An analysis of over 120,000 ICU patients in Australia and New Zealand demonstrated that 13% of ICU admissions were for patients over 80 years old, with an annual increase in ICU admission in this population of 5.6% per year.

The baseline health and functioning of older adults is improving, as advances in education have yielded changes in lifestyle with respect to diet, exercise, and preventative care. In addition, improvements in pharmacotherapy and health-related technology are enabling this population to live longer and better. With better resources and more effective goal-directed therapy, our ability to resuscitate and care for very sick older adults has also greatly improved, as have clinical outcomes in this population. Age alone, therefore, should no longer be the deciding factor when formulating plans of care for critically ill geriatric patients. Rather, it should be a combination of the severity of the acute medical issue, the biologic and physiologic state of the patient, and the patient’s wishes.

GENERAL APPROACH TO THE OLDER ADULTS
The reality of aging is that all persons experience approximately a 1% per year decline in physiologic functioning after age 30. However, everyone starts at a different baseline. There are two ways to quantify age: biologic age (physiologic age), often associated with
frailty, poor biologic reserve, or impairment of several biologic systems,\textsuperscript{4} and chronologic age.\textsuperscript{7} The literature differs over whether advanced age should be considered an independent risk factor for mortality,\textsuperscript{2,3,8} but several authors have emphasized that advanced age alone does not preclude a successful ICU outcome.\textsuperscript{9–12} Aspects of particular importance in surviving critical illness that may be independent of chronologic age include overall physiologic reserve, organ structure and function (e.g., cardiac or renal), pulmonary compliance and vital capacity, and changes in volume of distribution that occur with changes in body composition. Each of these is discussed further in the sections below.

The emergency physician should be cognizant of the following common themes in the management of older adults.

1. \textit{Polypharmacy} is widely prevalent and represents a serious hazard to this population. The decreased functional reserve of major organ systems increases the risk of decompensation in response to certain medications, particularly those affecting the cardiovascular and renal system. Drugs with hepatic clearance, such as diazepam, can also cause significant harm. When considering medical therapy, the mantra "start low and go slow" is well advised in the geriatric population.\textsuperscript{13}

2. \textit{Atypical presentations} are the rule, not the exception, in medical, surgical, and trauma patients. While this text does not focus on trauma, clinicians should maintain a high index of suspicion for severe traumatic injuries with even the most minor of mechanisms, such as a fall from standing height. Geriatric patients are more susceptible to intracranial hemorrhage, fractures, and their associated complications, with increased risk for bleeding diatheses given the prevalence of anticoagulant and antiplatelet use. Among patients older than 85 years, trauma is the second most common cause for ICU admission following cardiovascular diagnoses.\textsuperscript{2}

With these caveats in mind, the following sections review acute presentations in older adults that require special consideration.

\section*{SEPSIS}

Severe sepsis continues to carry a high mortality rate despite advances in early detection and goal-directed therapy.\textsuperscript{14} Older adults have decreased physiologic reserve, undergo immune system senescence, and are more likely to have multiple comorbidities. It follows that the incidence of sepsis is higher in older adults and that age is an independent predictor of mortality. Older adults have a relative risk of sepsis of 13.1 compared with younger patients.\textsuperscript{15} The mortality rate for patients \textgreater 65 years is 27.7\% and close to 40\% for those over 85 years.\textsuperscript{15} Pneumonia is the most common culprit for infection, followed by urinary tract infections and then bacteremia.\textsuperscript{15} Thus, the workup for these patients should always include a chest radiograph, urinalysis, urine culture, and blood cultures; this is true even if a fever is not documented, since a blunted or absent fever response is common in older patients.

As with all patients, early antibiotic coverage is essential, with mortality increasing each hour treatment is delayed.\textsuperscript{16} This population is also more susceptible to drug-resistant organisms, as their tendency toward infection leads to frequent antibiotic use, both as outpatients and as inpatients.\textsuperscript{17} The following are important considerations when choosing an appropriate antibiotic regimen:
1. Is the patient coming from a nursing home or rehabilitation center?
2. What infections has the patient previously had, and what were the sensitivities on prior cultures?
3. Based on the presentation and exam, what is the most likely source of the infection? (Remember: these patients present atypically)
4. What are the local/regional resistance patterns, including those at the local nursing homes and neighboring communities?

In the absence of specific microbial data indicating a history of resistant organisms, the initial antibiotic regimen should be broad spectrum and then narrowed once further clinical data and culture sensitivities are obtained.

Early goal-directed therapy (EGDT) and aggressive fluid resuscitation have become a mainstay of sepsis therapy. The mean age of the 263 patients included in the EGDT study was 65.7 years (SD 17.2); however, there was no subgroup analysis performed on those patients 65 years and older. To our knowledge, there have been no further studies that specifically explore the use of EGDT in this population. Thus, older adults should receive aggressive fluid resuscitation (a minimum of 30 mL/kg) when indicated based on sepsis markers. As this population has a higher rate of heart failure and, therefore, has difficulty managing fluid balance, the clinician should perform frequent patient reassessments during fluid infusion, paying particular attention to respiratory status.

The use of vasopressors in the older adult population has not been extensively studied. Important factors to consider when deciding to initiate vasopressor support include this group’s increased incidence of heart failure and potential need for inotropic support. Confounding this picture is that one-third of heart failure in older patients is primarily diastolic, resulting from impaired ventricular relaxation. These patients are particularly dependent on late diastolic filling in order to maintain adequate preload. As this late-phase filling is provided by atrial contraction, adequate rate control is essential in order to avoid pulmonary congestion. Rate control in a tachycardic patient, however, should not be initiated until initial, yet judicious fluid resuscitation has occurred, as an elevated heart rate is often a necessary compensatory mechanism. When choosing a rate-controlling agent, it is important to remember that as one ages, cardiac output declines and the heart increasingly relies on endogenous catecholamines for inotropic support. Because of this, beta-blocker agents can place older adult patients at greater risk of acute pulmonary edema, and many emergency physicians are therefore more comfortable using calcium channel blockers as the initial rate-controlling agent.

The use of corticosteroids has also not been specifically studied in the older adult population. Studies supporting the use of steroids, including the CORTICUS trial, had a mean patient age of 60.8 years, with 79% of the patients younger than 75, making it difficult to generalize findings to the older adult population.

Abdominal pain is a common presenting complaint in the older adult population. As with other illness, significant abdominal pathology in older adults frequently presents atypically, often without localizing signs on exam and therefore requires comprehensive evaluation with advanced imaging. Of older adults presenting with abdominal pain to the ED, approximately 60% will be admitted, and close to 20% will require invasive procedures or surgery. Approximately 14% of patients with abdominal pain discharged home from the ED, as well as 9% of those discharged from inpatient admissions for
abdominal pain, will return to the ED within 2 weeks of the index visit, with a nearly 5% mortality rate if admitted or readmitted to the hospital. Moreover, patients aged 75 years and older are less likely to have an ED diagnosis that is concordant with the final diagnosis than patients who are younger (76% vs. 87%). It is important to remember that diseases such as appendicitis and cholecystitis have a bimodal distribution, with a significant percentage occurring in older adults (14% and 12% to 41%, respectively).

CARDIAC DYSFUNCTION

With advanced age, the heart undergoes structural changes—including left ventricular (LV) wall thickening, left atrial and LV cavity dilation, and coronary artery wall thickening—that together result in decreased LV relaxation and diminished functional cardiac reserve. As a result of these changes, the older adult patient typically will have a higher resting systolic blood pressure, decreased intrinsic sinus rate, and increased sympathetic activity but with decreased response to beta-adrenergic stimulation. On electrocardiogram, clinicians will most often find nonspecific ST or T wave changes, decreased QRS voltage, increased ectopic beats, lengthening of the intervals, and bundle branch blocks.

With our aging population, patients admitted to the ICU more frequently demonstrate evidence of these changes in cardiac function, including an increased incidence of heart failure, cardiac arrhythmia, and valvular heart disease. The aging population, conversely, confers a reduced prevalence of diabetic complications, alcohol abuse, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and liver failure. A retrospective cohort study of 1,409 patients confirmed that cardiac patients are the most common ICU admission group in patients >65 years (67.7%), with acute coronary syndrome (ACS) being the most frequent diagnosis (76.7%). A separate study showed that having a cardiac diagnosis on admission correlates significantly with an increased mortality risk.

HEART FAILURE

Congestive heart failure (CHF) is the most common principal diagnosis among all hospital admissions in older adults. In 2009, CHF accounted for 149 hospital stays per 10,000 population among all adults aged 65 to 84 years and for 433 stays per 10,000 population among all adults aged 85 years and older. As an individual ages, the decreased elasticity of the great vessels leads to increased afterload, causing LV hypertrophy, increased coronary artery oxygen consumption, and possible ischemia. Increased afterload is compounded by chronically impaired renal flow, which leads to afferent vasoconstriction and increased fluid retention, exacerbating already compromised cardiac function.

Of note, a CHF patient’s ejection fraction, a value often ascertained in the ED through chart review or bedside echocardiography, is frequently normal or even increased. It has been shown that as many as 30% to 50% of heart failure patients have circulatory congestion on the basis of diastolic dysfunction, with impaired ventricular relaxation causing higher LV filling pressures and reduced left ventricular end diastolic pressure (LVEDP). This diastolic failure often requires a clinical approach that focuses on
afterload reduction while remaining cognizant of the risk of overdiuresis, as is discussed below.

Because CHF is primarily a clinical diagnosis, pertinent findings on a physical exam, including lower extremity edema and crackles in the lung bases, are important to identify. Depending on the degree of heart failure, the patient will present with varying levels of dyspnea, fatigue, and/or orthopnea. In the setting of severe hypoxia, an older adult patient may also present with atypical symptoms including somnolence, confusion, and failure to thrive.

The causes of exacerbations of heart failure in older adults are myriad. Medication and dietary nonadherence are most common, followed by arrhythmias, cardiac ischemia, renal failure, pulmonary embolisms, uncontrolled hypertension, adverse effects of medications, and infection. The key to management beyond the initial presentation is identifying the underlying precipitant. B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) is a common marker for CHF (90% sensitive, 76% specific); however, plasma BNP levels have been shown to increase with age independent of ejection fraction, decreasing specificity. Other important diagnostic laboratory values include hemoglobin (anemia is an independent prognostic factor in elderly), electrolytes (in particular, hypokalemia from diuretic use), and troponin, which, along with an ECG, is needed to exclude ischemia as a precipitating cause. Chest radiograph and echocardiography can help confirm the diagnosis.

All patients presenting in acute pulmonary edema require immediate intervention. Following assessment and stabilization of the ABCs, first-line therapy includes supplemental oxygen and nitrates. However, when initiating medical therapy for CHF in an older adult, the emergency physician must proceed with an appreciation of the cardiovascular changes that can occur with age. For example, extra care must be taken in patients with severe aortic stenosis (AS), as nitrates can cause an acute and severe drop in blood pressure. It is also imperative to ask patients if they recently have taken Viagra or any other phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitor, as this combination may also result in rapid hypotension. Intravenous ACE inhibitor (enalaprilat) is an alternative option if nitrates are contraindicated but is used more commonly in chronic management. Diuretics are also effective in the setting of frank volume overload; however, care must be taken not to over diurese and potentially compromise perfusion. Fortunately, in most cases of decompensated heart failure, it is the accompanying sympathetic surge—not a sudden volume overload—that is the primary cause of pulmonary decompensation. Equally challenging are patients with diastolic heart failure who are preload dependent and thus require higher filling pressures due to a stiff LV. As such, if not carefully managed, these patients—following aggressive nitrate and diuretic therapy—can decompensate due to a lack of forward flow. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) reduces intubation rates in this population and is discussed further in the next section.

ACS complicated by cardiogenic shock occurs in 5% to 7% of all adult patients with an associated mortality rate >50%. The mortality rate is higher for elderly patients with ACS than for younger patients; however, percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) appears to provide better long-term survival and quality of life (defined by return to good functional status) for older adults receiving the therapy than for those who do not. For geriatric patients presenting in cardiogenic shock, inotropic assistance may be needed. Dobutamine (beta-1 agonist) and milrinone (phosphodiesterase inhibitor) are
the drugs of choice. While emergency physicians have been traditionally more comfortable using dobutamine in the ED setting, it carries a greater risk of ventricular ectopy and tachycardia when compared to phosphodiesterase inhibitors.33

**CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS**

Admission to hospitals for cardiac arrhythmias increased by 25% in adults aged 85 years old and above between 1997 and 2009.25 As people age, there is a stretching and fatiguing of the conduction system, which leads to ectopic beats and altered paths of depolarization. These patients present with a range of symptoms and degree of hemodynamic compromise, which dictates how quickly the emergency physician must act and which strategies are most appropriate. Management beyond the initial resuscitation—which focuses on identifying the underlying etiology of the arrhythmia—requires an appreciation of cardiac and vascular changes that occur in the aging population.

Atrial fibrillation (AF) is the most common sustained arrhythmia in older adults, with a prevalence of 5% and an incidence that doubles with each decade of life.34 AF leads to 20% of all stroke-related deaths.35 Acute management of AF with rapid ventricular rate is dictated by the patient’s hemodynamic state. If the patient is hypotensive or unstable, immediate cardioversion is required and safe in the elderly, with similar success and complication rates to that of the younger population.36 Cardioversion for those patients with stable, new-onset AF can also be effective (see Chapter 17).

If the patient is symptomatic and normotensive, rate-controlling agents should be utilized along with anticoagulation. Given the prevalence of heart failure as previously discussed, the emergency physician should presume an abnormal EF if no information is known. Emergency physicians will often use diltiazem, which is a good choice in older adults as it can be titrated with small boluses followed by a drip, allowing for close monitoring of potential hemodynamic compromise. Based on experience with this population, consensus recommendation is to start with 10 mg IV diltiazem and titrate, rather than the recommended 0.25 mg/kg. Amiodarone is the preferred drug in known impaired cardiac function as it causes less hypotension37; however, it is harder to titrate. Digoxin is another option for rate control, but its onset of action is significantly delayed and thus not ideal for use in the ED setting. In patients with known normal EF, beta-blockers and verapamil may also be considered. However, verapamil can have altered pharmacokinetics in the elderly due to reliance on hepatic metabolism38 and therefore should be used cautiously.

If a patient with rapid AF is asymptomatic, the emergency physician has time to investigate the etiology, such as noncompliance with home medications or any of the myriad pathologic causes/triggers of AF. Slowing a patient in AF too quickly may be ill advised if the patient’s rate is an appropriate response to an underlying condition such as dehydration, fever, or infection. Administration of intravenous fluids, antibiotics, and antipyretics may lower the heart rate while treating the inciting cause.

Given the prevalence of conduction disease in older adults, sick sinus syndrome and complete heart block are more common in this population and should be considered in any patient with cardiac instability. A 12-lead electrocardiogram is essential for any patient with arrhythmia or derangement in vital signs.
OTHER CARDIAC CONSIDERATIONS

Aortic Stenosis
AS affects nearly 10% of patients over 80 years and is the third most common cause of cardiac death.39 Symptomatic AS, which often presents in the setting of ACS, acute decompensated heart failure, or syncope, requires treatment that provides necessary afterload reduction while maintaining adequate preload. Nitrates and diuretics should be used judiciously. Aortic valvuloplasty or replacement (AVR) is the definitive treatment for severe AS. Recent studies have shown favorable survival in patients >80 years of age (>50% surviving 6 years) after AVR, with concomitant coronary artery bypass grafting not changing the mean survival rates.39,40

Acute Coronary Syndrome
ACS is common in this age group, and older adults with an acute myocardial infarction have a higher mortality risk. Atypical presentations of ACS are commonplace in older adults; over 50% of this population’s myocardial infarctions will present without chest pain, or “silent.”41 The differences between men and women in presentation and mortality attenuate with increasing age. There are significant data now showing that fibrinolysis, PCI, and CABG should be considered in even the very old.31,40,42–44

RESPIRATORY DISTRESS
The management of respiratory failure in older adults is multifaceted and requires consideration of patient acuity, resource utilization, and the degree of invasiveness of potential interventions. The decision to implement mechanical ventilation can be complex, especially in very chronologically old patients.45 Studies suggest that age is an independent risk factor for mortality in the setting of mechanical ventilation.46,47 However, evidence regarding the role of pulmonary physiology—independent of age—is more compelling.

Age-related changes in pulmonary physiology result in a decline in overall patient functioning.48 Decreased lung compliance and stiffening of costovertebral joint articulations and associated muscles, including the diaphragm, lead to increased risk of complications from mechanical ventilation. There is an increased propensity toward distal airway collapse, with a subsequent decrease in lung surface area, gas exchange, and lung capacity. Reduced peripheral carbon dioxide sensitivity decreases the hypoxic drive and ventilatory response, often most pronounced during sleep. Because of these physiologic impairments, older adults are more likely to develop chronic respiratory failure when recovering from an acute pulmonary illness.

An ARDS network subgroup analysis showed that patients older than 70 years who require endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation have an equally effective response to low tidal volume ventilation, despite increased mortality.49 Further data are needed to determine appropriate ventilatory strategies in older adults, given their higher rates of COPD and primary lung conditions.14

NIPPV has an important role in treating mild to moderate respiratory distress in older adults.48,50 In both younger and older patients, NIPPV is associated with overall less discomfort, fewer complications, and better short-term results than endotracheal
ventilation for specific disease processes, described below. NIPPV promotes muscle rest and improves gas exchange by increasing alveolar recruitment and lung volume. The ability of the patient to protect his or her airway is always a concern with NIPPV, especially in older adults with comorbid conditions. Dementia alone should not preclude the use of NIPPV; agitated delirium, however, may limit its use.\textsuperscript{51}

NIPPV can be helpful in the management of the following illnesses:

- \textit{Acute exacerbation of COPD:} The success rate of NIPPV in the older adult population is similar to that in the general population.\textsuperscript{52} A positive response to NIPPV is defined by improved acidosis, a lower respiratory rate, and decreased hypercapnia, all within 1 to 2 hours (with a maximum response period of up to 4 hours) before additional ventilatory support is needed.\textsuperscript{51,52}

- \textit{Acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema:} NIPPV (CPAP in particular) has been shown to improve gas exchange, normalize hemodynamics, and decrease rates of intubation.\textsuperscript{53} It should be used with caution in patients with active cardiac ischemic or acute myocardial infarction, as it can increase oxygen demand by coronary arteries, worsening ischemia.\textsuperscript{48,54}

- \textit{Pneumonia} (leading infectious cause of death in this age group): NIPPV use is controversial. Limited data suggest NIPPV may be helpful in patients with underlying COPD.\textsuperscript{48}

- \textit{End-of-life scenarios:} Consider NIPPV, as it can serve as a palliative measure.

Based on findings from the studies above, if no significant improvement is achieved within 2 hours of NIPPV, endotracheal intubation and ventilation should be considered in older adults, especially if a reversible condition is causing acute respiratory failure.\textsuperscript{51}

\section*{DELIRIUM AND AGITATION}

Delirium, or an acute change in mental status not caused by underlying dementia, is an often underappreciated consequence of both critical illness and the hospital environment.\textsuperscript{55} It is an emergency unto itself, with an in-hospital mortality rate mirroring that of sepsis or acute myocardial infarction.\textsuperscript{56} The older adult population is especially at risk of delirium and can present with either a hypoactive (i.e., somnolent, lethargic, stuporous, etc.) or hyperactive (i.e., agitated, etc.) state (discussed in detail below).\textsuperscript{57}

Identifying delirium is the first challenge for the emergency physician, especially when the patient’s degree of underlying cognitive impairment is unknown. The Confusion Assessment Method (CAM)\textsuperscript{58} is the most commonly used tool in critical care settings and is the only validated tool for the ED (86% sensitivity, 100% specificity).\textsuperscript{60} The CAM evaluates four elements: (1) acute onset and fluctuating course, (2) inattention, (3) disorganized thinking, and (4) altered level of consciousness. A patient must demonstrate elements 1 and 2 as well as either 3 or 4 to be considered “delirious.”\textsuperscript{58} The CAM-ICU scale has the potential to be even more applicable in the ED, once validated.\textsuperscript{57}

Older adults experience physiologic changes that alter both pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, predisposing them to delirium. Changes in drug distribution (pharmacokinetics) occur due to relatively higher fat stores as compared to lean muscle mass. This increases the absorption of lipophilic drugs and imparts a longer half-life (e.g., propofol, diazepam, midazolam). The lower percentage of muscle mass in an older
adult’s body decreases the absorption of hydrophilic drugs (e.g., digoxin, theophylline), thereby lowering their effective half-life but raising their peak plasma concentrations and therefore toxicity risk. Older adults are also more likely to have decreased gastrointestinal first-pass metabolism, hepatic metabolism and clearance, and renal clearance. Acute renal failure is also more common in the elderly population, and multiple commonly prescribed drugs—including digoxin, enoxaparin, dabigatran, metformin, lithium, and Parkinson medications such as amantadine—may cause toxicity in this clinical setting. Finally, aging also affects neurohormonal receptors, especially adrenergic receptors, which can alter a drug’s effects on the body (pharmacodynamics); however, inadequate evidence exists to provide specific recommendations regarding this process. Medication dosing decisions should take into account the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of each drug as well as the patient’s underlying physiologic functioning.

Delirium has three clinical subtypes: hyperactive, hypoactive, or mixed type. Hyperactive (or agitated) delirium can make evaluation of the underlying precipitant challenging for the emergency physician. Once a patient has been identified as delirious, the next step is the evaluation of the delirium precipitant. Certain causes are often overlooked, yet are more readily reversible than the traditionally considered life-threatening causes, such as infection, stroke, MI, hypoglycemia, and underlying cognitive impairment. These less frequently considered causes include inadequate pain control, urinary retention, constipation, dehydration, polypharmacy, and environmental precipitants in the patient’s immediate surrounding.

Delirium can be managed with both nonpharmacologic (preferred) and pharmacologic interventions, although the literature reveals no current standard of practice. Nonpharmacologic strategies include decreasing sensory stimulation, keeping family (or familiar faces) at the bedside or utilizing one to one observation, and choosing a calmer and quieter location for the patient, preferentially by a window, to maintain orientation. Pharmacologic interventions should be reserved for emergencies; in other words, when patient or provider safety is of concern, or if the patient’s agitation is impeding the necessary medical care. Benzodiazepines should be avoided, especially as monotherapy, as they may worsen delirium (discussed in detail in Chapter 56). If necessary for minimal sedation, lorazepam is preferred over diazepam because of how they are metabolized in the liver. Haloperidol, a typical antipsychotic, has been the traditional drug of choice in the treatment of delirium, with a prolonged QT interval being the only significant contraindication. Currently, however, the atypical antipsychotics, such as olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone, are increasingly used in the management of delirium. Each of these antipsychotic options, however, has limitations, and familiarity with their side effect/safety profiles is necessary. Despite several studies involving atypical antipsychotics, there is no clear evidence to date on the efficacy and safety profile of these drugs for use in managing agitated delirium in the elderly.

CONCLUSION

Admissions to the hospital in general, and ICUs in particular, are increasing more rapidly than our resources can sustain. More than any other demographic, the older adult population is contributing to this complex problem. ICU triage is known to be a subjective process, and literature demonstrates age-discriminatory practices, especially when resources are scarce. These age-biased practices are supported by studies showing...
that patients over 80 years of age have lower short-term survival rates, modified by pre-
hospital function, comorbid illness, surgical status, primary diagnosis, and illness severity. Survivors in this age group are more likely to go to rehab or long-term care facilities.³

After correcting for disease severity, however, elderly patients have the greatest mortality benefit when receiving ICU-level care. The older adult patients who are deemed “too well” for the ICU and diverted to lower levels of care suffer the greatest loss. Limited physiologic reserve increases their vulnerability to disease processes. Receiving care in a setting that makes early recognition of decompensation possible has a marked effect on their clinical outcomes.⁶³ Emergency physicians should advocate for older patients to be triaged to the ICU whenever warranted. Until we have a more reliable way to predict prognosis, these patients need to be treated aggressively, unless their wishes are otherwise.

While the ED will continue to send critically ill older adults to the ICU, the emergency physician can also work to help avert many of the conditions that lead to these admissions. Preventable illnesses such as falls and gastrointestinal bleeds are a source of many ICU admissions in the elderly, especially in individuals over 80 years of age and with the advent of novel anticoagulants. Emergency physicians on the front lines of care for these patients can coordinate preventative measures as part of their purview of care. Good discharge planning and medication reconciliation upon discharge is essential and can help minimize return visits and new illnesses by working to ensure a safer home environment and more coordinated primary care.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRAIL DESIGN RESULT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Demographics</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuchs et al., Intensive Care Med. 2012²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bagshaw et al., Crit Care. 2009³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roch et al., Crit Care. 2011⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprung et al., Crit Care Med. 2012⁵</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sepsis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin et al., <em>Crit Care Med.</em> 2006</td>
<td>Longitudinal observational study using national hospital discharge data. Data included 10,422,301 adult sepsis patients hospitalized over 24 y</td>
<td>Elderly patients accounted for 12% of population but 64.9% of sepsis cases (RR 13.1 [95% CI 12.6–13.6] compared to younger patients); linear increase in case-fatality rate by age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis et al., <em>J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med.</em> 2005</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 360 patients over 60 years old presenting with nontraumatic abdominal pain to the ED, evaluated for clinical course, diagnosis, and mortality</td>
<td>Mean age 73.2 ± 8 y (66% female, 51% white); 58% admitted; 18% surgical intervention or invasive procedure; 7% readmission rates; 5% mortality at 2 wk. Older patients had higher mortality rates (OR 4.4; 95% CI 1.4–14) and lower diagnostic concordance rates (76% vs. 87%, <em>p</em> = 0.01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiac</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blancas et al., <em>Eur Geriatr Med.</em> 2012</td>
<td>Retrospective cohort study of 1,409 patients &gt;65 y of age admitted to an ICU</td>
<td>Confirmed that cardiac patients are the most common admission group in patients &gt;65 (67.7%), with ACS being most frequent diagnosis (76%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Respiratory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ely et al., <em>Ann Intern Med.</em> 2002</td>
<td>Retrospective chart review of 902 patients in ARDS network</td>
<td>Age ≥70 was a strong predictor of in-hospital death (hazard ratio 2.5 [CI 2.0–3.2]), longer duration of mechanical ventilation, and higher rates of reintubation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balami et al., <em>Age Ageing.</em> 2006</td>
<td>Prospective observational study of 36 patients &gt;65 y with acute COPD exacerbations (defined by acidosis, respiratory rate, and hypercapnia)</td>
<td>Of the 36 patients, 2 failed NIPPV due to inability to tolerate mask. 7 patients did not improve at 4 h. All 9 of these patients died (mortality rate 25%). 27 of 34 patients initiated on NIPPV showed significant improvement (79%) and had no complications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delirium</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monette et al., <em>Gen Hosp Psychiatry.</em> 2001</td>
<td>Prospective, observational study of 110 elderly patients interviewed by a geriatrician in the ED and a trained nonphysician in CAM methodology</td>
<td>Interrater reliability with Kappa coefficient of 0.91, sensitivity of 0.86, and specificity of 1.00. PPV 1.00, NPV 0.97. Concluded that CAM methodology by trained interviewer is able to detect delirium in ED setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI, confidence interval; OR, odds ratio; RR, relative risk.

## REFERENCES


Palliative Care in the Emergency Department
Lawrence A. Ho and J. Randall Curtis

BACKGROUND

Emergency medicine is typically characterized as a fast-paced, procedure-based specialty that focuses on the evaluation and stabilization of acutely ill patients. Training of emergency medicine physicians, therefore, is centered on interventions aimed at preserving life and achieving clinical stability. At times, however, when these interventions fail, the core tenets of emergency medicine can appear to be at odds with those of palliative care, which balances quality of life with the burdens of invasive treatment. In the intensive care unit (ICU) setting, successful integration of palliative care has been shown to be associated with a number of key outcomes. These outcomes include improved quality of death and dying, shorter ICU length of stay for patients who die in the ICU, increased family satisfaction, and reductions in family members’ psychological symptoms after a patient’s death.1–5

These benefits have also been recognized in the emergency department (ED), evidenced by positive physicians’ attitudes and a growing body of literature regarding palliative care in the ED.6–11 Hospice and palliative medicine are now also official subspecialties of the American College of Emergency Physicians. Despite these advances, significant challenges remain in the successful integration of palliative care in the ED. These include medicolegal issues (which may lead the emergency physician to favor aggressive over palliative treatment to avoid litigation), a narrow view of the role of the emergency physician (perpetuating the perception that end-of-life issues should be addressed by inpatient teams), and lack of awareness among ED staff about ED palliative care resources.8,12

The importance of palliative care and end-of-life decision making in the ED is increasingly evident. The majority of seriously ill patients begin their hospital course in the ED, and decisions made in the ED frequently dictate subsequent medical decisions and therapeutic direction.13–15 Because patients who die in the ED are often elderly, ED-based end-of-life discussions and decisions are likely to become increasingly important as our population ages.6 A comprehensive discussion of palliative care in emergency medicine is beyond the scope of this book; therefore, this chapter focuses on the pillar of successful palliative care, namely, communication. In the growing literature on the role of palliative care in the ED, there is little specific guidance for ED-based discussions.
on end-of-life care. This review, and the recommendations made, is therefore largely extrapolated from the critical care literature.

COMMUNICATION

Deaths in the hospital setting often involve withholding or withdrawing life-supporting treatments. In the ICU, the percentage of such deaths is as high as 90%. Limited data suggest that this proportion is considerably lower in the ED, but decisions to limit life-sustaining treatment in this setting are nevertheless common.

The decision to withhold or withdraw life-sustaining therapies should always involve effective communication, including sharing information about illness and prognosis, offering support, and engaging patients and families in the treatment decision process. Families rate successful communication as one of the most important skills of a quality health care provider, and effective communication has been shown to improve patient and family outcomes. Significant barriers to successful communication do exist, however, and when asked, few families consider patient–clinician communication to have been adequate.

General End-of-Life Communication Considerations

End-of-life care in the intensive care or acute care setting typically involves multiple health care professionals from different disciplines. This is true even in the ED, where time from presentation to disposition is typically measured in hours, rather than days. It is important that all team members who communicate directly with patients and families be involved in the end-of-life decision-making process. Clear communication—and, ideally, agreement—within the health care team about appropriate patient care helps prevent conflicting messages to the patient or family, facilitates cooperation among clinicians, and minimizes provider internal conflict and “burnout.”

Although consensus among providers is very important, the fundamental goal of any end-of-life discussion is to align clinicians’, patients’, and/or families’ views of what is happening to the patient. The most challenging conversations occur when the clinicians’ and patients’ and/or families’ goals of care differ. Although aligning separate viewpoints can be time consuming, these efforts, if successful, greatly facilitate future decisions about end-of-life care. A useful mnemonic that can enhance clinician–family communication is VALUE.17,29,30

VALUE: 5-Step Approach to Improving Communication in ICU with Families

- **V**—Value family statements
- **A**—Acknowledge family emotions
- **L**—Listen to the family
- **U**—Understand the patient as a person
- **E**—Elicit family questions

When this mnemonic was used as part of an intervention to improve clinician–family communication in the ICU, it was shown to significantly reduce family symptoms of depression, anxiety, and posttraumatic stress disorder 90 days after the patient’s death.3

The appropriate time to initiate of end-of-life care conversation can be difficult to gauge. It is generally a good idea to discuss end-of-life issues as soon as possible for the seriously ill patient, although circumstances may dictate different timing.23 Conversations held early in the ED course often focus on prognosis and treatment options, rather than on withdrawal/withholding of life support and end-of-life care; even so, they can set the stage for subsequent end-of-life care conversations once the patient is admitted to the hospital. For patients with a very poor prognosis or with severe underlying terminal or life-limiting illnesses, discussion of withdrawal/withholding of life support and end-of-life is appropriate in the ED.

A recent qualitative analysis of communication between patients and providers identified six essential themes.31 These include (1) talking with patients in an honest and straightforward way, (2) being willing to talk about dying, (3) giving bad news in a sensitive way, (4) encouraging questions from patients, (5) being sensitive to when patients are ready to talk about death, and (6) listening to patients. Of these, listening to patients and families is of the greatest importance. Clinicians tend to dominate communication with patients and families; an observational study evaluating audiotapes of family conferences in the ICU found that clinicians spent 70% of time talking and only 30% of the time listening.30 This study also found that the higher the proportion of time a family spent speaking, the more satisfied the family was with the conference.

Cross-Cultural Communication and Spirituality
Cultural or language barriers may limit successful communication. Family allies, such as religious or community leaders as well as professional interpreters, can be useful in easing these barriers.32 Unfortunately, even with professional interpreters, communication errors are common and can affect patient and family understanding, emotional support, and decision making.33,34 To mitigate these errors, clinicians can take several simple steps: include interpreters in a health care team meeting prior to the family conference; speak slowly to allow time for interpretation and use pictures or drawings when possible; and try to limit simultaneous conversations.35

Spiritual care is very important to many patients and their families, but it is an area of palliative care that many clinicians identify as needing improvement.36 Family satisfaction with care is increased if spiritual care needs are assessed and a spiritual care provider is made available.37,38 Provision of spiritual care in the ED can be challenging due to time constraints; however, many hospitals have spiritual care providers available on call.

Family Conferences
As patients are often unable to participate in end-of-life discussions in the setting of an acute or critical illness, family conferences are an essential communication tool. Even with the time constraints in the ED, the family conference can be very useful, albeit in often abbreviated form. Family conferences can also provide an opportunity for palliative care consultants to become involved in patient care. Appropriate preparations, including the use of a "preconference" and following a predetermined, semi-structured conversation format can help ensure an efficient and successful conference. It is, however, also important to be able to adapt this structure to met the needs of individual patients and family members.
Prior to leading a family conference, the clinician should encourage all active members of the team to be involved. Team members should meet in a “preconference” to agree on conference goals and to identify issues or conflicts likely to arise either between team members or with the family during the meeting.23

Many family conferences follow a similar structure.39 This structure typically includes (1) individual introductions and a quick discussion of the goals and agenda, (2) asking the family to describe their understanding of what is happening, (3) an information exchange about the illness and treatments (from clinicians, generally) and about the patient’s preferences and values (from the family, generally), (4) a discussion of the prognosis for survival and quality of life, and (5) a discussion of the goals of care and decisions that need to be made.

Several studies have shown that certain conference features result in improved ratings for communication and family experience. These include holding the meeting in a private place, consistent communication among all members, assuring families that patients will be kept comfortable and will not be abandoned no matter what treatment path is followed, and the use of empathic statements by the clinicians.40–42

At the conclusion of family conferences, it is important that the clinicians make a recommendation. There is a tendency for some clinicians to merely describe the treatment options, but avoid providing a recommendation.43 In cases of withholding or withdrawing life support, recommendations are often particularly important. It is not uncommon for family members to resist being put in the position of making the decision to “give up” or “pull the plug.”

**DECISION MAKING**

Often, family members must make critical decisions for their loved ones. In this case, it is important for the clinician to understand and convey the principles of surrogate decision making. The surrogate is asked to consider what the patient would want if he or she could speak for himself or herself—and not to weigh his or her own preference for the patients’ care—or what he or she would choose if placed in the patient’s situation. This clarification can be especially helpful when the surrogate is faced with continuing or discontinuing life-sustaining therapy.

There is a range of potential roles for physicians in the end-of-life decision-making process. Several critical care societies have issued a joint consensus statement advocating a shared decision-making approach,44 in which the physician and family share their opinions and jointly reach a decision (Fig. 60.1). Family members and patients may prefer varying degrees of involvement in the decision-making process, so it is important for the physician to take time to determine individual family members’ preferred roles.45 It is also important for the physician to understand that the spectrum of preference ranges from allowing the physician to make the decision, to family members assuming full responsibility for the decision. As the prognosis of a patient worsens, the physician’s willingness to take on the burden of a decision should increase.

Resuscitation is a common topic of end-of-life discussions and family conferences. Resuscitation following a cardiac arrest should follow the adult cardiac life support (ACLS) algorithm. While it is possible for a family to consider separate components of the ACLS algorithm (chest compressions, intubation, medications, cardioversion, etc.), these discussions can be unnecessarily complex and can lead to unrealistic expectations.
In general, resuscitation should be discussed as a single entity.

**FAMILY REACTIONS**

The feeling of abandonment, in both patients and families, is common in the end-of-life process. Although patients and families usually do not use the word "abandon," they express this feeling in different ways. Families may either request that everything be done to cure the patient despite overwhelmingly poor chances for survival, or they may express concerns about "letting go" or "giving up." Being aware of these expressions helps the clinician address such concerns. Ensuring that the patient is not suffering and that his or her end-of-life preferences are respected supports nonabandonment. Clinicians should also be mindful of language that may heighten a sense of abandonment. For example, "withdrawal of care" should not be used synonymously with "withdrawal of life support." Following a decision to withdraw or withhold life-sustaining treatments, some patients and families may be worried about transferring to a less intensive care area of the ED; in this case, the clinician should convey that the patient will continue to receive timely and appropriate treatment.

After having an end-of-life conversation with the family, it is imperative to explore the families' reactions and feelings. Several approaches can be used. First, the clinician...
should summarize what the patient or family has said. This active listening technique verifies to the patient or family that they have been heard; it is especially useful when the clinician and family have differing views. Second—since strong emotions often develop during conversations about prognosis or end-of-life care—the clinician should recognize the family’s emotions and explore how and why patients and family members feel the way they do. Exploratory questions, such as “tell me more about that,” and reflective statements, such as “it seems to me that you are very upset,” can draw out and support family members in the discussion. Finally, once a decision has been made, the clinician can support the family by acknowledging the difficulty of the situation, expressing agreement that the decision is consistent with the patient’s values, and voicing appreciation for all family members’ comments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decision Making</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlet et al., Intensive Care Med. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Communication</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wenrich et al., Arch Intern Med. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seiph et al., J Gen Intern Med. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Family Conferences</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lautrette et al., N Engl J Med. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtis et al., Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McDonagh et al., Crit Care Med. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stapleton et al., Crit Care Med. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spiritual Care</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall et al., Crit Care Med. 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONCLUSION

While challenges to successful implementation of palliative care in the ED remain, there is a growing awareness that conducting effective end-of-life discussions is an important component of the ED clinician skill set. Effective communication is a prerequisite to good palliative care, and, although multiple barriers to this goal exist in a busy ED, the evidence-based strategies discussed in this chapter can help clinicians, patients, and their families find common ground.

REFERENCES

Chapter 60  Palliative Care in the Emergency Department  761

BACKGROUND
Risk assessment and disposition of the critically ill patient is guided by impression of clinical trajectory as well as presumed diagnosis. While diagnosis is often based on historical information and on physician experience and intuition, the clinical trajectory is dictated by the state of tissue perfusion and the patient’s ability to compensate for physiologic perturbations. For example, a patient with a positive troponin, ST changes, and a mean pressure of 65 mm Hg may be having a simple myocardial infarction, while another patient with similar findings may be in cardiogenic shock. Similarly, low blood pressure (BP) in one patient may result from therapeutic lowering of vascular tone (e.g., heart failure), while the same BP in a different individual may signify distributive shock. Differentiating these possibilities enables appropriate disposition and treatment and is essential to the practice of acute care medicine. This chapter focuses on the pathophysiologic roots of organ dysfunction, and demonstrates how an understanding of these principles permits efficient identification of likely diagnoses, institution of timely therapy, and safe patient disposition. Fluency with these principles also enhances communication with other health care providers.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF SHOCK AND ORGAN DYSFUNCTION
Organ dysfunction arising from critical illness can be traced to abnormalities in either one or both of the following physiologic relationships:

1. The autoregulatory curve describing the relationship between organ blood flow and mean arterial pressure (MAP)
2. The relationship between the supply of oxygen to tissues (oxygen delivery or \( \text{DO}_2 \)) and consumption (demand or \( \text{VO}_2 \))

Evaluating these two key homeostatic relationships—MAP/blood flow and oxygen supply/demand (\( \text{VO}_2/\text{DO}_2 \))—is essential in any patient exhibiting distress, organ dysfunction, or hemodynamic instability. Failure to do so commonly results in misdiagnosis and delayed recognition of clinical deterioration.
Oxygen consumption or demand (VO₂) is determined by physical activity, temperature, and body mass, while oxygen delivery (DO₂) is the product of cardiac output (CO) and the content of arterial oxygen (CaO₂). CO is in turn the product of stroke volume (SV) and heart rate (HR), while arterial oxygen content is primarily determined by hemoglobin concentration and saturation. The graphic representation of these relationships is presented in Figure 61.1. For both curves, the down-sloping limb on the left indicates a region where the patient is at risk for organ failure. Specifically, in curve A, DO₂ below the critical threshold signifies a loss of physiologic reserve and a transition to anaerobic metabolism; in curve B, a MAP below the autoregulatory threshold signifies the inability to maintain a constant blood flow to metabolically active regions with an organ. Appreciating the implication of these curves is essential to understanding the impact of different categories of shock.

For example, the low MAP typically seen in distributive shock becomes life threatening when vascular resistance is unable to maintain MAP above the autoregulatory threshold. Cardiogenic shock may have borderline or low MAP but is differentiated from a simple myocardial infarction by a loss in CO to levels insufficient to meet tissue oxygen demand. Hemorrhagic shock involves both a loss in hemoglobin content and a related loss in ventricular volume—and hence a loss in CO. In severe hemorrhage,
these “two hits” on DO₂ can result in huge derangements in oxidative metabolism. The hemodynamic indices associated with the prototypic shock states are displayed in Table 61.1. As will be shown throughout the chapter, detection of abnormalities in either maintenance of MAP or DO₂ is followed by further differentiation of these parameters as described in Figure 61.2.

### EVALUATION OF THE ADEQUACY OF BLOOD PRESSURE

From classic studies, we know that the normotensive brain autoregulates at MAPs between 50 and 150 mm Hg. This corresponds to the flat portion of the curve in Figure 61.1B. A baseline hypertensive patient would operate on a right-shifted autoregulatory curve and may not have normal organ perfusion at mean pressures <65 to 70 mm Hg. Retrospective analyses of trauma registries support the existence of age-related relative hypotension and have demonstrated poorer outcomes in these individuals at MAP values previously considered normal. Based on an aggregate data on patients with septic shock, studies propose that previously normotensive patients should be considered hypotensive if, after receiving 30 mL/kg crystalloid infusion, they still exhibit a decreased systolic pressure (a drop >40 mm Hg) or a decrease in MAP >30 mm Hg. Determination of adequacy of MAP, therefore, often depends upon understanding a patient’s usual BP range and the magnitude of acute change. Review of vital signs obtained in the outpatient setting or preoperative visit are helpful in this regard. Patients without clinic notes and charts may be more difficult to evaluate, but the patient history, as well as the presence of renal disease or left ventricular hypertrophy, can provide clues. Pressures noted on admission or obtained in the emergency department are not likely to reflect a patient’s true baseline.

### EVALUATION OF THE ADEQUACY OF OXYGEN DELIVERY RELATIVE TO DEMAND (VO₂/DO₂)

In many cases, a critically ill patient may arrive at the ED with a BP close to his or her baseline value. It is important to remember that for these patients, evaluation of DO₂/VO₂ is still required. The key question surrounding the status of this relationship is whether the patient’s oxygen extraction is abnormally high (a falling DO₂ for a given
Clinical change or suspicion of clinical deterioration

- Change in end organ function
- Significant change in vital signs
- Significant lab abnormality (e.g., lactate, troponin)

Warrants immediate investigation of:

\[ \downarrow \text{Mean Arterial Pressure} \quad \downarrow \text{DO}_2 / \text{VO}_2 \]

\[ \downarrow \text{SVR} \quad \downarrow \text{Cardiac Output} \quad \downarrow \text{Arterial Oxygen Content} \]

Decreased effective stroke volume—classes of abnormalities

1. Loss of effective circulating volume:
   Hypovolemia, hemorrhage (Low JVP, \( \downarrow \text{CVP} \), \( \downarrow \text{PaOP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))

2. Adequate circulating volume but inadequate ventricular filling:
   PTX, tamponade (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), var \( \text{PaOP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))
   AV valve stenosis with loss of atrial contraction or filling time

3. Contractility:
   MI, CHF, Cardio shock (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), \( \uparrow \text{PaOP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))

4. Obstructive:
   Pulm Embolus (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))
   High PVR with RV failure (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), \( \uparrow \text{PAP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))
   High SVR, or AS with LV failure (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), \( \uparrow \text{PaOP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))

5. Backflow:
   Mitral regurgitation (\( \uparrow \text{CVP} \), \( \uparrow \text{PAP} \), \( \uparrow \text{SVR} \))

**FIGURE 61.2** A useful scheme organizing the constituents of MAP and DO\(_2\) in the context of suspected decompensation. For each key abnormality, physiologic variables are indicated in black, along with the main corresponding medical diagnoses indicated in dark gray. For each, key differentiating findings of laboratory or physiologic monitor data are presented in light gray.

\( \text{VO}_2 \), oxygen uptake; \( \text{DO}_2 \), oxygen delivery; CO, cardiac output; JVP, jugular venous pressure; MAP, mean arterial pressure; SVR, systemic vascular resistance; CVP, central venous pressure; PAP, pulmonary artery pressure; PaOP, pulmonary artery occlusion (wedge) pressure.

\( \text{VO}_2 \)—moving right to left on that flat portion of the cure in Fig. 61.1A) or whether anaerobic metabolism is already present (an inadequate \( \text{DO}_2 \) for a given \( \text{VO}_2 \)—the left side downward slope in Fig. 61.1A). Metabolic acidosis, an elevated anion gap, and elevated lactate levels are associated with an oxygen debt and subsequent anaerobic
metabolism and can be rapidly identified with point-of-care blood gas analysis. A fall in DO$_2$ and subsequent abnormal increase in oxygen extraction may be identified by a central venous oxyhemoglobin saturation of $<70\%$. Typically, perturbations in the economy of oxygen extraction result from impaired delivery.

**MAKING THE DIAGNOSIS**

**Evaluation of Low Blood Pressure**

A low MAP results from either a low CO or low systemic vascular resistance (SVR). Thus, the etiology of a low MAP can often be inferred by an exam that differentiates between high and low SVR. Cold extremities, weak pulses with narrow pulse pressures, and delayed capillary refill suggest a low CO and a high SVR. Warm extremities with brisk capillary refill and bounding pulses indicate a normal or high CO and a low SVR.

Low MAP and physical exam findings consistent with low vascular tone (i.e., low SVR) are suggestive of distributive shock. In these patients, attention centers on differentiating neurologic injury from the other etiologies of low vascular tone, such as anaphylaxis and sepsis (Fig. 61.2).

**Evaluation of Low Oxygen Delivery**

Low MAP and physical exam findings consistent with a high SVR and low CO (i.e., increased vascular tone, cool extremities) should prompt the provider to consider the determinants of CO—specifically either a low HR or diminished SV. A key point differentiating causes of low SV is the overall volume status of the patient. Low SV can result from frank hypovolemia as in hemorrhage and severe dehydration, or can exist in the setting of euvolemia or hypervolemia where the low SV results from precardiac obstruction of ventricular filling, poor pump function, postcardiac obstruction, or valvular regurgitation. With hypovolemia, central veins will be collapsed, and peripheral veins may be difficult to locate; findings of hypovolemia should prompt a search for sources of volume loss, particularly bleeding. Low SV from all other causes will be accompanied by normal to large central veins; enlarged central veins should prompt a thorough examination of the chest and echocardiographic examination of the heart. The use of transthoracic echocardiography is increasingly common in ICUs and EDs for focused assessment of these conditions.\(^{11,12}\) Figure 61.2 provides a systematic approach to the evaluation of the patient with evidence of clinical deterioration or the onset of organ dysfunction. The physiologic parameters incorporated into Figure 61.2 allow consideration of all possibilities for a given category of abnormality, which offers advantages in evaluation of the unstable patient.

**Evaluation of Hemorrhage**

In a patient in whom blood loss has occurred more than 30 minutes prior to laboratory analysis, interstitial-to-vascular fluid shifts will result in hemodilution and produce an accompanying drop in hematocrit. In this setting, the presence of an elevated lactate or evidence of an imbalance in DO$_2$/VO$_2$ would clearly be due to hemorrhage. In hemorrhage, physical exam findings include a weak pulse, narrow pulse pressure, delayed capillary refill, and cold extremities, which suggest that MAP is being
maintained by abnormally high vascular resistance. With more rapid or immediate hemorrhage, isovolemic blood loss prior to fluid shifts will fail to reveal a depressed hematocrit, while still yielding findings of increased vascular tone and inadequate DO₂. In the case of low CO suspected to be due to occult hemorrhage (e.g., a retroperitoneal bleed, contained aneurysm rupture, etc.), clinical assessment could still uncover the presence of hemorrhage through exam findings suggestive of a low SV (e.g., flat neck veins).

**PROVIDING EMPIRIC THERAPY**

Therapy for any shock state involves both targeted interventions as well as empiric resuscitation. The utility of a physiologic evaluation as presented here is its ability to direct therapy appropriate to the class of abnormality while more definitive diagnostic data are being obtained—thereby avoiding undesirable delays in patient care. A hypotensive patient with findings consistent with distributive shock will always require vasopressors and fluids. This intervention can safely take place while the possibilities of allergy and sepsis are investigated and, if present, treated. In a patient with evidence of low CO and compensatory vasoconstriction, the physiologic analysis might encourage use of inotropes and avoidance of additional vasopressors while possibilities of heart failure or outflow tract obstruction are investigated.

**END POINTS OF RESUSCITATION**

Much controversy exists regarding the desirable end points for resuscitation from shock.¹³⁻¹⁷ Rather than target specific numeric indices of DO₂ and CO, a “bare minimum” goal should be to ensure that an adequate MAP has been restored and that DO₂ is not limiting consumption. The concepts presented in this chapter provide a balanced and physiologic approach to achieving these resuscitative goals. From the determinants of MAP, one can see that a MAP that is disproportionately supported by a high vascular resistance will do so at the expense of CO, which can have disastrous consequences DO₂. Similarly, optimization of SV and DO₂ does not guarantee a MAP sufficient to maintain renal and other solid organ function; vasopressors to ensure an adequate SVR may be necessary and may help avoid fluid overload.¹⁸ To achieve these minimum goals, the Society of Critical Care Medicine¹⁹,²⁰ recommends a target MAP of >65 mm Hg and the normalization of central venous oxygen saturation or lactate. Some individualization of the MAP goal may be indicated in patients with known hypertension.

As resuscitation proceeds, it is important to continually reexamine VO₂/DO₂ and adequacy of MAP. If these two physiologic relationships are revisited frequently, missed diagnoses (bleeding, myocardial infarction) and therapeutic mistakes (vasoconstrictors used instead of fluid) can be identified early. For example, in the case of a hypotensive patient given a vasopressor to elevate his or her MAP and subsequently noted to have a rising lactate and falling in pH, evidence would suggest that the initial perception of inadequate vascular tone was incorrect and that correction of MAP would be better served by augmenting CO rather than SVR.
CONCLUSION

The development of shock and organ dysfunction is not a certainty for most medical conditions. Patients progressing to shock are differentiated by the development of abnormalities in at least one of the following two physiologic relationships: (1) the relationship between oxygen supply and demand (DO$_2$/VO$_2$) and (2) the relationship between organ blood flow and MAP. Understanding the derivation of these relationships and their significance to overall organ function enables the provider to effectively implement the diagnostic and therapeutic approach outlined in this chapter. Adherence to this approach also ensures the provision of timely and appropriate care; it is comprehensive, efficient, allows prioritization of diagnostic studies, does not delay treatment, helps define end points of resuscitation, and provides a common physiology-based language for enhanced communication with other health care providers.

REFERENCES


Severity of Illness Scores and Prognostication

David M. Maslove

The ability to quickly and accurately assess a patient’s clinical status is essential to effective triage. This is especially true for patients with critical illness or injury. Severity of illness (SOI) scores help estimate the likelihood of impending clinical deterioration, identify appropriate services for consultation and admission, and enable practitioners to determine which patients will require frequent reassessment; this, in turn, helps guide time management and resource allocation.

In addition to their role in clinical assessment, disease-specific diagnostic and treatment algorithms frequently make use of SOI scores. Likewise, research trials in critical care almost always involve SOI scoring, as a means of both stratifying patients and comparing the results of one trial to another. Finally, some semblance of prognosis, even when imprecise and tentative, can be helpful in addressing the anxiety experienced by patients and families facing the uncertainty of critical illness.

To be useful in a busy emergency department (ED), an SOI score must be easy to use and its parameters should be reliable, objective, unambiguous, limited in number, and available at the time of initial assessment. This poses a challenge; easily obtained clinical parameters like vital signs are prone to disagreement between observers especially in dynamic situations when these signs fluctuate, while more objective laboratory values require additional time and resources to collect and analyze.

The simplest scoring systems use binary variables that are designated a specific cutoff value and then marked as either “present” or “absent.” Points assigned to each variable are tallied into an overall integer score that corresponds to a risk category. Traditionally, the most useful SOIs employed a small number of easily remembered parameters, allowing for rapid calculation at the point of care. Increasing adoption of smart phones and other mobile devices in the hospital setting has lessened the importance of simplicity in the scoring system, and SOIs are evolving in response to this technology.

The clinical variables included in SOI scores are determined in numerous ways, ranging from expert opinion to logistic regression. Ideally, scoring systems are derived from data describing one cohort of patients and then validated in a second, independent cohort. Additional studies are often carried out to assess a score’s validity under a range of circumstances, such as geographic location or model of health care delivery. In order to maintain score performance, updates are required as practice patterns and case mix evolve.
A score’s discrimination refers to its utility in distinguishing patients who experience the outcome of interest, from those who do not. Discrimination is often expressed in terms of sensitivity and specificity, or by a receiver operator characteristics (ROC) curve that relates these terms over a range of cutoff values. Scores are said to be well calibrated if they perform equally well across a range of conditions, including low- and high-risk disease, different diagnoses, and different geographical regions.

Some SOI scores are intended for use with specific clinical presentations and diagnoses, while others are more general. In all cases, prognostic indices and SOI scores must be interpreted with caution; such tools are derived based on population averages and therefore provide only a probabilistic estimate for any given patient. For the most part, SOI scores are meant to help inform clinical decision making, which typically involves many more demographic, physiologic, and psychosocial parameters than can be distilled to a single number.

**SYSTEM-SPECIFIC SOI SCORES**

**Pulmonary**

The pneumonia severity index (PSI) for community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) is one of the most familiar disease-specific SOI scores. Also known as the PORT score, (for Pneumonia Patient Outcomes Research Team, the cohort in which it was validated), this SOI was published in 1997 and subsequently validated in several independent studies. Created to standardize admission practices and to identify low-risk patients suitable for home treatment, the PSI generates a score using age and 19 clinical variables recorded as either “present” or “absent.” The score, in turn, corresponds to one of five categories predicting risk of death at 30 days (Table 62.1).

Age and comorbidities weigh heavily in the PSI, predisposing the score to overestimate severity in elderly patients with chronic illness and to underestimate severity in young and otherwise healthy patients. In one validation study, only 20% of patients in the highest-risk class (V) were admitted to the ICU, proving that PSI is less useful in prognosticating for ICU admission than for hospital admission. Patients with HIV were excluded from the initial PSI study, and the index was shown to markedly underestimate disease severity in patients with pandemic influenza A(H1N1) during the 2009 outbreak. In a meta-analysis involving 16,519 patients, the PSI was found to be sensitive (pooled sensitivity 90%), but lacked specificity (pooled specificity 53%).

| TABLE 62.1 Risk Categories in the Pneumonia Severity Index |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Points                           | Category        | 30-Day Mortality| Treatment Location |
| NA<sup>a</sup>                   | I               | 0.1%            | Outpatient       |
| ≤70                              | II              | 0.6%            | Outpatient       |
| 71–90                            | III             | 0.9%            | Outpatient (consider inpatient) |
| 91–130                           | IV              | 9.3%            | Inpatient        |
| >130                             | V               | 27.0%           | Inpatient (consider ICU) |

<sup>a</sup>Category I is assigned to patients <50 years of age, with none of the specified coexisting conditions or physical exam findings.

With 20 variables to account for, the PSI can be cumbersome to use. A simpler score developed by the British Thoracic Society known as CURB-65 uses only five clinical parameters: confusion, blood urea nitrogen (BUN) level, respiratory rate (RR), blood pressure, and age.\(^8\) One point is assigned for each variable, depending on whether it is present or absent according to a specified cutoff value (Table 62.2). As in the PSI, the total score is then used to assign a risk category that predicts mortality at 30 days. The CURB-65 score is less sensitive than is the PSI (pooled sensitivity 62%), but is more specific (pooled specificity 79%).\(^7\) Other versions of the CURB-65 score include CURB, in which age is omitted, and CRB-65, which does not require the laboratory value of BUN. The exclusion of BUN leads to a decrement in sensitivity (pooled sensitivity 33%), but improves specificity (pooled specificity 92%).\(^7\) Importantly, the original CURB cohorts excluded nursing home residents as well as immunocompromised patients including those with malignancy, HIV, and tuberculosis.

Like the PSI, the CURB-65 score performs poorly in predicting the need for ICU admission. Because delayed ICU admission increases mortality risk in patients with severe CAP, the SMART-COP score was designed to address this issue specifically. This score combines eight clinical characteristics to estimate the risk of requiring intensive respiratory support (either invasive or noninvasive mechanical ventilation) or infusions of vasopressors and can therefore be useful in assigning patients to the appropriate level of care (Table 62.3).\(^9\) A SMART-COP score of \(\geq 3\) was found to be more sensitive for the need for ICU-level support than was PSI class IV, PSI class V, or CURB-65 risk category 3 (92.3% vs. 73.6% vs. 38.5%, respectively). ATS/IDSA guidelines on CAP management also offer ICU admission criteria, including the need for invasive mechanical ventilation, septic shock with the need for vasopressors, or any three of a set of minor criteria similar to those used in the aforementioned CAP scores.\(^10\)

### Neurologic

In critical neurologic conditions such as subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH), ischemic stroke, and traumatic brain injury, SOI scores—based on both clinical and imaging characteristics—can be used to estimate prognosis and, in some cases, inform treatment decisions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters (One Point for Each That Is Present)</th>
<th>Total Score</th>
<th>Risk Category</th>
<th>30-Day Mortality</th>
<th>Treatment Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Confusion(^a)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>Outpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUN &gt; 7 mmol/L</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>Outpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR (\geq 30)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9.2%</td>
<td>Consider inpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBP &lt; 90 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure (\leq 60) mm Hg</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>Inpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (\geq 65)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Assess for admission to ICU</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Mental Test Score of 8 or less or new disorientation in person, place, or time.

Coma

First published in the mid-1970s, the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) was initially developed to standardize descriptions of coma. Later, it was modified specifically to evaluate level of consciousness following traumatic brain injury. To calculate the score, points are added for the patient’s eye, verbal, and motor responses. Scores range from 3 to 15, with lower scores indicating greater severity of injury (Table 62.4).

Although GCS can be reported as a single sum, this may be less informative than an explicit breakdown of the constituent parts. Common confounders include sedation, analgesia, neuromuscular blockade, delirium, orbital trauma, and intubation, each of which can make it impossible to calculate one or more of the subscores. In intubated patients, for example, the verbal score is often represented by the letter “T,” which provides information, but precludes calculation of a total score. Alternative scoring systems, such as the Full Outline of UnResponsiveness (FOUR) score, may be more appropriate in critically ill intubated patients.

In the prehospital setting, GCS is predictive of both death and hospitalization. A GCS of ≤13 in the field is an indication for immediate transport to a specialized trauma center. GCS calculated at ED admission is an independent predictor of mortality as well as of functional status at 6 months. In some studies of the GCS the motor component alone has been shown to correlate with mortality.

In the GCS system, traumatic brain injury is classified as mild (GCS 13 to 15), moderate (GCS 9 to 12), or severe (GCS < 9). A GCS score of 8 or less is often cited as an indication for intubation. Current guidelines from the Eastern Association for the
The ED-ICU Transfer of Care

Surgery of Trauma recommend endotracheal intubation for patients with GCS ≤ 8, but note that patients with altered mental status and a GCS > 8 often require intubation as well. Airway obstruction, persistent hypoxemia, and hypoventilation should trigger prompt intubation regardless of mental status.

The GCS is likely the most widely used mental status score in the ICU. It is easily calculated at the bedside and can be repeatedly measured as a means of tracking the progression of injury and recovery. Interrater agreement depends on provider type and level of experience and is highest when scores are high. The GCS has become integral to other more recently developed SOI scoring systems, including the Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) and Simplified Acute Physiology Score (SAPS) systems discussed below.

**Subarachnoid Hemorrhage**

Numerous SOI scores exist for SAH, although most are derived from expert opinion and have only been validated in small cohorts. The most frequently used are the Hunt and Hess scale and the World Federation of Neurological Surgeons (WFNS) scale, which are based on clinical parameters, as well as the Fisher scale, based on computerized tomography (CT) imaging (Table 62.5).

The Hunt and Hess grading system can be difficult to apply consistently; some of its terms are ambiguous, and clinical findings have the potential to span multiple categories. Interrater agreement in applying the score is moderate ($\kappa = 0.48$). The score defines five classes, with a sixth (Hunt and Hess 0) sometimes included for patients with unruptured aneurysms. The Hunt and Hess scale is poorly powered to predict distinct outcomes for each individual class, and as such, classes are sometimes aggregated: Patients are often grouped into low scores (classes 0 to III) versus high scores (classes IV and V) or to “alert” (classes I and II), “drowsy” (classes III and IV), and “comatose” (class V). The WFNS comprises a condensed version of the GCS and an additional binary measure for the presence or absence of a focal motor deficit. Its prognostic value is unclear; some studies suggest it correlates with outcome, while others do not. The Fisher...

---

**TABLE 62.4** Glasgow Coma Scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eye Opening</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To voice</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To pain</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Best Verbal Response</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oriented</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confused conversation</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inappropriate words</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomprehensible sounds</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Best Motor Response</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obeys commands</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localizes pain</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withdraws from pain</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal flexion (decorticate)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension (decerbrate)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Severity of Illness Scores and Prognostication

A grading system uses CT findings and was initially established to predict the risk of vaso-spasm; it also has been shown to correlate with outcomes at 1 year and beyond. Patients in Fisher class 3 and 4 have an increased risk of poor outcome or death (relative risk 3.2 to 14.8).23 Fisher class does not, however, accurately predict long-term health-related quality of life.24 The GCS has also been shown to correlate with outcomes in SAH.20

Ischemic Stroke

The National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS) is an 11-part evaluation of neurologic signs and is used for triage and prognostication of ischemic stroke. It incorporates measures of level of consciousness, gaze, visual fields, motor function, ataxia, sensation, speech, language, and neglect. The NIHSS has been shown to correlate with survival, length of stay, discharge destination, and functional status at 1 year.26 It has been used to identify patients who are appropriate candidates for thrombolytic therapy, with both very high-scoring and very low-scoring patients deemed not suitable for treatment. Patients with profound deficits isolated to a single component of the scale, such as severe aphasia, may score low but should be considered for thrombolysis nonetheless.27

Gastrointestinal

Devised in the 1970s to predict complications of acute pancreatitis, the Ranson score is an early example of a disease-specific SOI score.32 Its use has largely been supplanted by more generalized scoring systems such as APACHE and Sequential Organ Failure Score (SOFA), reflecting the propensity of severe pancreatitis to result in multiple organ dysfunction.33 Establishing risk in acute gastrointestinal bleeding can be useful in determining which patients require hospital admission and urgent endoscopy. The Rockall score incorporates age, comorbidities, and the presence of shock to stratify patients according to risk of rebleeding and death.34 The Glasgow-Blatchford score (GBS) incorporates features of the presentation (melena, syncope), along with heart rate, blood pressure, hemoglobin, BUN, and the presence of cardiac or hepatic disease to derive an integer score.35 The GBS is predictive of a composite endpoint that includes death; rebleeding; and the need for blood transfusion, endoscopy, or surgery. It has been shown to outperform the Rockall score in a number of prospective evaluations, with an area under the (ROC) of approximately 0.9.35–37

### Table 62.5 Common Scales Used in SAH25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hunt and Hess</th>
<th>Fisher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade I Asymptomatic or minimal headache and slight nuchal rigidity</td>
<td>No blood visualized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade II Moderate to severe headache, nuchal rigidity, no neurologic deficit other than cranial nerve palsy</td>
<td>Diffuse blood that does not appear dense enough to represent a large, thick homogenous clot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade III Drowsiness, confusion, or mild focal deficit</td>
<td>Dense collection of blood that appears to represent a clot &gt; 1 mm thick in the vertical plane or &gt;5 x 3 mm in longitudinal and transverse dimensions in the horizontal plane; severe spasm predicted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade IV Stupor, moderate to severe hemiparesis, possible early decerebrate rigidity, and vegetative disturbances</td>
<td>Intracerebral or intraventricular clots, but with only diffuse blood or no blood in basal cisterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade V Deep coma, decerebrate rigidity, moribund appearance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In patients with acute liver failure (ALF), SOI scoring has been used to estimate the risk of death, so that referral for transplant can be initiated if indicated. The King’s College criteria (Table 62.6), developed in the United Kingdom, distinguish between ALF resulting from acetaminophen toxicity and ALF resulting from other causes, many of which portend a worse prognosis. In general, the King’s College criteria predict mortality with specificity of approximately 90%, but sensitivity of only approximately 60%. This limits the utility of the score somewhat, as many patients who do not meet criteria should still be considered for transplant.

The Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) score is a mathematical combination of the serum bilirubin, creatinine, and INR and is used to evaluate 3-month mortality risk in chronic liver disease. MELD has also been applied to patients with AFL, with a recent prospective analysis showing it to be a better predictor of death than the King’s College criteria. In particular, the MELD score improved upon the poor negative predictive value of the King’s College criteria, as 20 of the 22 patients who survived without transplantation had a MELD score $\leq 30$.

### TRAUMA SOI SCORES

Trauma severity scores were initially established for field triage. They have since become important in research, quality of care improvement, and health care administration. Stratifying trauma patients according to severity of injury allows not only the comparison of large and diverse patient groups but also the analysis of trauma outcomes in different settings. Some SOIs are based on anatomical regions of injury or systemic signs of organ dysfunction, while others are designed for specific types of injury.

Anatomical reporting systems allocate points for injuries sustained in distinct body regions. The injury severity score (ISS), one of the first such scores, assigns points based on the Abbreviated Injury Scale (AIS) to each of the six distinct body regions. The ISS is then calculated by adding the squares of the highest AIS values in each of the three most severely injured body regions (Table 62.7). Scores range from 1 to 75, with an AIS of 6 in any single region resulting in an automatic maximal score.
The full extent of injury in any given body region is often not known until diagnostic imaging or surgery is performed. The ISS is therefore less useful as a field triage tool than as a means for comparing trauma outcomes in retrospective analyses of clinical and administrative data. An ISS ≥ 16 has been correlated with a mortality risk of 10% and is used as a cutoff above which patients should be treated at a specialized trauma center.\(^\text{28}\) The ISS may underestimate severity in cases of multiple injuries to the same body region or when significant injuries are sustained in more than three regions.\(^\text{29}\) A modification of the ISS, the New Injury Severity Score (NISS) attempts to address this shortcoming by adding the squares of the 3 highest AIS scores, regardless of the body regions in which they occur.\(^\text{30}\)

While the ISS and NISS represent injury in purely anatomical terms, other scores incorporate physiologic variables that measure the systemic sequelae of trauma. The Revised Trauma Score (RTS) is one of the most commonly used physiologic scores and is derived from the GCS, systolic blood pressure (SBP), and RR (Table 62.8).\(^\text{29}\) The raw score, which is the sum of the coded values of the three variables, can be easily calculated in the field and used for prehospital triage. Values range from 0 to 12, with scores <11 predicting a mortality rate of 12% or greater, suggesting the need for immediate transfer to a trauma center.\(^\text{28}\) A weighted version of the RTS can also be calculated, which increases

---

**TABLE 62.7** Injury Severity Scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviated Injury Scale</th>
<th>ISS Body Regions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Minor</td>
<td>1. Head and neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Moderate</td>
<td>2. Face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Serious</td>
<td>3. Chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Severe</td>
<td>4. Abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Critical</td>
<td>5. Extremity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(\text{ISS} = A^2 + B^2 + C^2\) where A, B, and C are the highest AIS scores in each of the three most severely injured body regions.


---

**TABLE 62.8** Revised Trauma Score

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GCS</th>
<th>SBP (mm Hg)</th>
<th>RR (per Minute)</th>
<th>Coded Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13–15</td>
<td>&gt;89</td>
<td>10–29</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9–12</td>
<td>76–89</td>
<td>&gt;29</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6–8</td>
<td>50–75</td>
<td>6–9</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–5</td>
<td>1–49</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(\text{RTS}_c = 0.7326 \times \text{SBP} + 0.2908 \times \text{RR} + 0.9368 \times \text{GCS}\).

the importance of the GCS to reflect the morbidity of isolated severe head injury. The RTS may be difficult to use in patients with unstable or fluctuating vital signs and may underestimate injury severity in patients who have been adequately resuscitated.

Trauma scores that combine anatomical and physiologic components may overcome the limitations of either approach used in isolation. The Trauma and Injury Severity Score (TRISS) is a statistical method of combining the ISS and the RTS to predict mortality risk in either blunt or penetrating trauma. Newer scores, such as the mechanism, GCS, age, and arterial pressure (MGAP) score, incorporate additional clinical and mechanistic features in order to predict mortality.

GENERAL SOI SCORES

Since the early 1980s, a number of multiparameter SOI scoring systems have been designed to estimate mortality in unselected populations of critically ill patients. General SOI scores have been used to enroll patients into clinical trials, to measure disease progression over the course of an ICU stay, and to generate standardized mortality ratios and other measures used in comparing outcomes between ICUs, hospitals, and geographic locales. They are intended to describe groups of patients, with scores predicting average outcomes for the cohort to which they are applied. In the case of a single patient, only a probabilistic estimate of survival can be inferred. Clinicians must therefore exercise caution in applying these scores to individual patients, considering that clinical decisions are informed by significantly more information than is used in SOI scoring, including psychosocial factors and patient preferences.

General SOI scoring systems include the APACHE, the SAPS, and the Mortality Probability Model (MPM), all of which have undergone numerous revisions and reinventions over the last few decades. Clinical variables initially were selected based on expert opinion, but more recently have been determined by logistic regression, applied in some cases to data sets of over 100,000 patients. The APACHE system is the most popular, with APACHE IV being the most widely used score in the United States and APACHE II the most commonly used worldwide. APACHE II incorporates age, operative status (emergency vs. elective), and the presence of severe chronic organ dysfunction or immune suppression, along with 12 physiologic variables. It produces an estimate of mortality based on a mathematical combination of weighted variables. APACHE III is broken down into 3 constituent subscores (age, acute physiology, and chronic health evaluation) and is designed to predict mortality for each of 78 distinct diagnostic categories as well as risk-adjusted ICU length of stay. The latest iteration, APACHE IV, uses 142 clinical variables, 115 of which are admission diagnoses, and is used in approximately 7% of the entire United States ICU population. Both APACHE III and APACHE IV rely on proprietary algorithms to generate a final score and are made available as commercial services. All APACHE scores are based on the most abnormal values collected during the first 24 hours of the ICU stay.

Some of the newer general SOI scores, such as SAPS 3 and MPM II, are based on values collected at the time of ICU admission, rather than during the first 24 hours. As such, they may be more applicable to the period of ED management prior to transfer to the ICU. SAPS 3 requires input for 20 parameters, including age, comorbidities,
pre-ICU clinical status, reasons for ICU admission, and physiologic measures. It has been shown in one large study to overestimate mortality risk as compared to its predecessor, SAPS II. The MPM_0 III (the subscript “0” refers to the time relative to ICU admission that the score is calculated) includes 3 physiologic parameters, along with 13 other features related to chronic conditions, acute conditions, and other demographic and clinical features. It is an update of the MPM_0 II, based on a new retrospective analysis of 124,855 patients in 135 ICUs. The APACHE, SAPS, and MPM models all exhibit good discrimination for predicting mortality, with areas under the ROC curve of between 0.8 and 0.9. Calibration for severity levels tends to be worse at the extremes. Calibration for different diagnoses is better for scores such as APACHE IV that incorporate diagnosis explicitly, while calibration for geographic region can be improved by local customization.

In addition to general SOI scores such as those described above, there are a number of scores designed to measure degrees of organ dysfunction in critical illness. These scores, which include the Logistic Organ Dysfunction Score (LODS), the Multiple Organ Dysfunction Score (MODS), and the SOFA, are intended to be more descriptive than predictive. Each uses a similar panel of clinical variables to categorize degrees of perturbation in the neurologic, cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, hemotologic, and hepatic organ systems. Scores can be used to convey the extent of organ dysfunction and to track progression of illness. For example, an increasing SOFA score over the first 48 hours of ICU admission has been shown to portend a twofold increase in mortality risk, as compared to a decreasing score (50% vs. 27%).

**FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

The modern complement of SOI scores includes those used for specific disease conditions, those designed to predict functional status and mortality, and those intended to provide standardized descriptors of disease severity and organ dysfunction. While some scores (APACHE, SAPS, MPM) are of limited use in individualized treatment decisions, they can help provide a framework in which to compare populations of critically ill patients. Importantly, all SOI scores provide a common language, so that clinicians can quickly and efficiently convey disease severity to consultants and colleagues, even across different facilities.

Newer SOI scores will focus on predicting key outcomes not only for the patient but also for the health care system in which they are treated. The PREEDICCT project proposes to develop decision support tools for triage in pandemic and mass casualty situations or in other situations in which resources are constrained. These new scores will reflect the importance of resource allocation in decision making and the need to establish standardized practices that can apply equally in all settings.

Increasingly SOI scores are based on modern statistical techniques and rely less on expert opinion. As electronic medical record coverage expands, new opportunities will emerge to apply real-time data mining algorithms to the derivation and application of SOI scoring. This transformation has immense potential to improve both the precision and calibration of scores, which could in theory be customized even at the level of the individual hospital. Larger data sets could enable outcome prediction for rare conditions that might not otherwise have been captured by existing scoring systems. Better prognostication stands to benefit not only a wider range of patients but also the health systems that care for them.
LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loke et al., <em>Thorax</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 23 prospective studies (22,753 patients) evaluating the performance of CAP severity scores</td>
<td>PSI was found to be more sensitive but less specific than CURB-65 for prediction of death (pooled sensitivity 90% vs. 62%, pooled specificity 53% vs. 79%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husson et al., <em>J Rehab Med</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Meta-analysis of 28 prospective studies of early determinants of functional outcome after traumatic brain injury</td>
<td>GCS at the time of ED admission was a strong predictor of poor outcome at 6 mo (assessed mostly by GOS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwakkel et al., <em>J Neurol Sci</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Prospective study of the predictive value of the NIHSS in 188 patients with ischemic stroke</td>
<td>The NIHSS score at days 2, 5, and 9 post-stroke were highly predictive of neurologic outcome at 6 mo (as measured by Barthel Index)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craig et al. <em>Aliment Pharmacol Ther</em>. 2010</td>
<td>Systematic review of 14 studies (1,960 patients) evaluating prognostic criteria in acute liver failure due to acetaminophen toxicity</td>
<td>Pooled analysis showed King’s College Criteria to have high specificity (94.6%) but poor sensitivity (58.2%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES


Indications for Contact and Respiratory Isolation
Chanu Rhee and Michael Klompas

BACKGROUND
Emergency and intensive care department health care providers often encounter patients with suspected or confirmed infections due to transmissible organisms. Isolation of patients who are infected or colonized with selected high-risk organisms is a cost-effective means of reducing rates of nosocomial infection and is a core component of infection control programs.\(^1\,^2\) Isolation and precaution guidelines were first issued in 1970 by the Centers for Disease Control and were last updated in 2007.\(^3\) A basic understanding of infection control terminology and practice is an essential skill for the emergency physician caring for critically ill patients.

In addition to standard precautions, which are recommended in the care of all hospitalized patients, there are three isolation categories—contact, droplet, and airborne spread—that reflect the major modes of transmission of microorganisms in health care settings. This chapter summarizes the key components and indications for each type of isolation precaution. We also include an overview of empiric isolation precautions for common clinical syndromes for use when the pathogen is unknown.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS
Standard precautions are recommended in the care of all hospitalized patients, in order to reduce the risk of transmission of infectious agents between patients and health care workers. Standard precautions include the following:

- Practice hand hygiene before and after every patient contact.
- Use gloves, gowns, and eye protection when exposure to body secretions or blood is likely.
- Safely dispose of sharp instruments and needles in puncture-resistant containers.
- Carefully handle soiled patient care materials and linens so as to avoid skin and mucous membrane exposures. Store soiled linens in impervious bags.
- Use safe injection practices.
- Practice respiratory hygiene and cough etiquette, which involves covering the nose and mouth when coughing, prompt disposal of tissues, and hand hygiene after contact with respiratory secretions. This also applies to all patients and accompanying family/friends with signs of respiratory illness (cough, congestion, rhinorrhea).
Hand hygiene is the single most important measure for reducing transmission of microorganisms. Hand cleansing with alcohol-containing disinfectants is more efficient than hand washing with soap and water. Note, however, that alcohol-based disinfectants are not effective against Clostridium difficile spores.

**CONTACT PRECAUTIONS**

Contact precautions prevent transmission of infectious agents, which may colonize patients’ skin, wounds, and mucous membranes, as well as the inanimate environment. Contact precautions are applied to patients with multidrug-resistant bacteria (such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* [MRSA], vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* [VRE], and some Gram negatives), diarrheal illnesses, draining wounds or abscesses, selected respiratory pathogens, and vesicular rashes (Table 63.1). Contact precautions are necessary every time a provider enters a patient room, regardless of whether or not

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition/Pathogen</th>
<th>Duration of Precautions and Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multidrug-resistant organisms (infection or colonization): methicillin-resistant <em>S. aureus</em>, vancomycin-intermediate and vancomycin-resistant <em>S. aureus</em>, vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus, multidrug-resistant Gram negatives (e.g., extended-spectrum beta-lactamase–producing and carbapenemase-producing organisms)</td>
<td>Specific types of organisms that warrant precautions and criteria for discontinuing precautions may vary between different geographic areas and institutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium difficile</em></td>
<td>Optimal duration of isolation not well defined, but at the minimum until diarrhea has completely resolved. Hand washing with soap and water is preferred over alcohol (which lacks sporicidal activity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory and enteric viral infections: adenovirus, enterovirus, coxsackie virus, rotavirus, human metapneumovirus, parainfluenza, poliomyelitis, respiratory syncytial virus, SARS, MERS-CoV</td>
<td>Generally until resolution of symptoms, but prolonged shedding of viruses tends to occur in immunocompromised patients. Adenovirus also requires droplet precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enteric infections in incontinent or diapered patients: toxin-producing <em>Escherichia coli</em> strains (O157:H7), noroviruses, <em>Giardia lamblia</em>, <em>Salmonella</em>, <em>Shigella</em>, <em>Vibrio parahaemolyticus</em>, <em>Yersinia enterocolitica</em>, and hepatitis A</td>
<td>Until resolution of symptoms. Can also place in contact isolation for nonincontinent or nondiapered patients for control of institutional outbreaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutaneous viral infections: varicella–zoster, severe mucocutaneous disseminated herpes simplex</td>
<td>Until lesions are completely crusted over and no new lesions. Susceptible health care workers should not enter the room if immune caregivers are available. Place on airborne precautions as well if patient has disseminated zoster or is immunocompromised (due to high risk of dissemination)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major draining abscess or infected pressure ulcer (if unable to adequately dress or contain drainage)</td>
<td>Until drainage stops or can be contained by dressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Burkholderia cepacia</em> infection or colonization in patients with cystic fibrosis</td>
<td>Optimal duration unknown. Avoid exposure to other patients with cystic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome or major Staphylococcal or group A streptococcal wound</td>
<td>For staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, contact precautions should continue for the duration of illness. For staph/strep wound infections, duration is until 24 h of appropriate antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrapulmonary tuberculosis with a draining lesion</td>
<td>Until patient is improving clinically and drainage stops or three consecutive negative cultures from drainage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutaneous diphtheria</td>
<td>Until two cultures taken 24 h apart are negative. Pharyngeal diphtheria requires droplet precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head lice</td>
<td>Until after 24 h of appropriate therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*TABLE 63.1* Indications for Contact Precautions
he or she plans to touch the patient, since inanimate objects in the patient’s environment are as likely to harbor pathogens as the patient himself.

Contact precautions include the following steps:

- Use gloves and gowns for all contact with patients and their environment. Remove both gloves and gowns prior to leaving the patient’s room.
- Wash hands before entering and after leaving patient rooms. Hands must still be washed before and after donning or removing gloves.
- Place patients in a private room whenever possible. If this is not possible, cohort infected patients with other patients on contact precautions for the same organism.
- Dedicate inexpensive items, such as stethoscopes, to a single patient.

There is some controversy regarding the use of contact precautions for drug-resistant pathogens like MRSA and VRE. Health care workers spend less time in the rooms of patients on contact precautions, compared to those on standard precautions, and this may impair the quality of care. In addition, a recent cluster-randomized trial involving multiple ICUs compared an intervention of enhanced surveillance for MRSA and VRE (through serial nasal and stool/perianal cultures) to standard care. Despite increased use of contact precautions in the intervention group (due to more patients being identified as being colonized with MRSA or VRE), there was no significant change in incidence rates of ICU infection or colonization with those pathogens. The study, however, was confounded by long turnaround times for screening results and suboptimal compliance with hand hygiene and contact precautions. On the other hand, implementation of a multifaceted MRSA “prevention bundle” that included contact precautions as well as universal surveillance, culture change, and emphasis on hand hygiene was associated with a significant decline in healthcare-associated MRSA infections at Veterans Affairs hospitals across the country.

Emerging data suggest that an alternate strategy involving universal decolonization of all critically ill patients with nasal mupirocin and chlorhexidine baths is superior to screening and isolation or targeted decolonization (i.e., screening, isolation, and decolonization of MRSA carriers) in reducing the presence of MRSA and rates of all bloodstream infections. For now, however, practitioners are advised to refer to their local institution’s policies.

**DROPLET PRECAUTIONS**

Droplet precautions prevent transmission of pathogens spread through respiratory secretions. These pathogens are predominantly viral, but include notable bacterial pathogens such as *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Haemophilus influenzae* type B, invasive group A streptococcal infections, and diphtheria (Table 63.2). Droplets are particles of respiratory secretions with mean diameter of larger than 5 μm. They remain suspended in the air only for limited periods and so are generally infectious over short distances (typically less than 3 feet). Unlike airborne pathogens, droplets do not require special air handling and ventilation to prevent transmission. Note that some organisms, such as respiratory viruses, can be transmitted by both droplets and direct patient contact; these require both droplet and contact precautions. Droplet precautions entail the following:

- Wear a mask for close contact with patients (within 3 feet). A respirator (such as an N95 mask) is not necessary.
Section 15  The ED-ICU Transfer of Care

**TABLE 63.2**  Indications for Droplet Precautions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition/Pathogen</th>
<th>Duration of Precautions and Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Influenza</td>
<td>5 d from onset of symptoms, except in immunocompromised patients in whom duration cannot be defined (due to prolonged viral shedding). Health care workers should wear a face mask when entering the room and N95 respirators when performing aerosol-generating procedures (e.g., intubation, bronchoscopy, sputum induction, suctioning of airways, chest compressions).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Neisseria meningitidis</em> meningitis, pneumonia, or bacteremia</td>
<td>24 h after initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B: epiglottitis or meningitis</td>
<td>24 h after initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</em> pneumonia</td>
<td>Until illness has resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bordetella pertussis</em> (whooping cough)</td>
<td>5 d after initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphtheria (pharyngeal)</td>
<td>Until two cultures 24 h apart are negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonic plague (Yersinia pestis)</td>
<td>48 h after initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps (infectious parotitis)</td>
<td>9 d after onset of swelling (5 d may be appropriate in community settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubella</td>
<td>7 d after onset of rash. Susceptible health care workers should not enter the room if immune caregivers are present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenovirus pneumonia</td>
<td>Until illness resolved, except in immunocompromised patients in whom duration cannot be defined. Adenovirus also requires contact precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parovirus B19 (erythema infectiosum)</td>
<td>For the entire hospitalization in immunocompromised patients with chronic disease and 7 d in patients with transient aplastic or red cell crisis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Group A streptococcal disease</em>: serious invasive disease, pneumonia, or major wounds</td>
<td>24 h after initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy. Contact precautions should also be used if skin lesions are present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhinovirus</td>
<td>Until illness resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral hemorrhagic fevers (Lassa, Ebola, Marburg, Crimean-Congo fever viruses)</td>
<td>Until illness resolved. Patients also require contact precautions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Place the patient in a private room if possible. If cohorting of patients possessing the same pathogens is necessary, place patient beds at least 3 feet apart and draw the curtains between beds.
- Place a mask on the patient during transport.

For influenza, studies have specifically compared the use of N95 respirators to standard masks and have found no difference in rates of transmission.\(^{11,12}\)

**AIRBORNE PRECAUTIONS**

Airborne precautions prevent transmission of pathogen-laden droplets that can remain suspended in the air for prolonged periods. Airborne droplet nuclei are particles of respiratory secretions with mean diameter of 1 to 5 μm. In contrast to contact and droplet precautions, the list of pathogens that require airborne precautions is short: suspected or confirmed tuberculosis, measles, *varicella–zoster*, smallpox, and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). In addition, a novel coronavirus (now designated as the Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus, or MERS-CoV) has recently emerged that, similar to SARS, can cause severe lower respiratory tract infection. While the exact nature of exposure causing...
infection in the MERS-CoV is not known at this time, human-to-human transmission has been observed, including health care–associated clusters of infection. Clinicians should suspect MERS-CoV in patients (or their close contacts) who developed fever and an acute lower respiratory illness within 14 days after traveling from countries in areas involved in the outbreak (which currently includes countries in the Arabian Peninsula). Currently, the recommended infection control policy is the same as that for SARS and includes both airborne and standard precautions.13 Airborne precautions entail the following:

- Place the patient into an airborne infection isolation room. This means a single-patient, negative pressure room with at least 6 to 12 air exchanges per hour. The air should be exhausted directly to the outside or recirculated through HEPA filters before return.
- Wear a certified respirator (e.g., N95 mask or powered air-purifying respirator) when entering the room. Health care providers need to be fit tested for N95 masks annually. Providers unable to establish an adequate fit with an N95 mask must wear a powered air-purifying respiratory mask instead.
- When possible, assign immune health care workers to care for patients with vaccine-preventable airborne diseases: measles, varicella, and smallpox.
- Minimize patient transport; if this is unavoidable, place a mask on the patient (a regular surgical mask is adequate).

Tuberculosis is the most important pathogen requiring airborne precautions, and it should be suspected in any patient with fever, cough, and upper lobe infiltrate. The threshold for airborne isolation should be very low in patients with HIV/AIDS presenting with fever and a pulmonary infiltrate, especially as they are much more likely to have an atypical appearance on chest radiography. Note that although guidelines recommend discontinuation of airborne precautions once patients are smear negative on three consecutive samples, transmission can still occur in these situations (although at a much lower rate) (Tables 63.3 and 63.4).14

### TABLE 63.3 Indications for Airborne Precautions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition/Pathogen</th>
<th>Duration of Precautions and Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculosis: pulmonary or extrapulmonary with draining lesions</td>
<td>Until patient is improving on effective therapy and has 3 sputum smears negative for acid–fast bacilli (acquired on different days). Contact precautions also required for extrapulmonary TB with draining lesions (see Table 63.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicella zoster: disseminated or cutaneous in an immunocompromised host</td>
<td>Until lesions are completely crusted over and no new lesions are appearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles (rubeola)</td>
<td>Until 4 d after onset of rash or until illness resolves completely in immunocompromised patients. Susceptible health care workers should not enter the room if immune caregivers are present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallpox</td>
<td>Until all scabs have crusted and separated (usually 3–4 wk). Also requires contact precautions. Smallpox has been eradicated, but threat of bioterrorism still exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) and MERS-CoV (Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus)</td>
<td>Until illness resolved, plus 10 d after resolution of fever. Patients also require contact precautions. There have been no cases of SARS reported since 2004. Current recommendations regarding MERS-CoV are based on scant clinical data, and the period of quarantine considered safe is uncertain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 63.4  Common Clinical Syndromes That Warrant Empiric Precautions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Syndrome</th>
<th>Potential Pathogens That Warrant Precautions</th>
<th>Empiric Precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Respiratory infections:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever, cough, upper lobe pulmonary infiltrate (or any lung location in an HIV-infected patient)</td>
<td><em>M. tuberculosis</em>, respiratory viruses, group A streptococcus, methicillin-resistant <em>S. aureus</em>&lt;br&gt;Also: SARS, MERS-CoV, or avian influenza if recent travel to countries with active outbreaks</td>
<td>Airborne + contact&lt;br&gt;Use eye/face protection if aerosol-generating procedure performed or contact with respiratory secretions anticipated (e.g., intubation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diarrhea:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute diarrhea likely due to infectious agent in an incontinent or diapered patient</td>
<td>Enteric pathogens (e.g., <em>E. coli</em> O157:H7, <em>Shigella</em>, hepatitis A, norovirus, rotavirus, <em>C. difficile</em>)</td>
<td>Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rash:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Petechial or ecchymotic</td>
<td><em>Neisseria meningitidis</em>, viral hemorrhagic fevers if travel to endemic area (Ebola, Lassa, Marburg viruses)&lt;br&gt;2. Varicella zoster, herpes simplex&lt;br&gt;3. Rubeola (measles)</td>
<td>1. Droplet (for first 24 h of antimicrobial therapy), if viral hemorrhagic fever possible, use droplet + contact precautions&lt;br&gt;2. Airborne + contact (contact alone adequate if herpes simplex or localized zoster in immunocompetent host)&lt;br&gt;3. Airborne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meningitis in adults</strong></td>
<td><em>Neisseria meningitidis</em>, <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B, <em>M. tuberculosis</em></td>
<td>Droplet (for first 24 h of antimicrobial therapy)&lt;br&gt;Airborne if pulmonary infiltrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skin or wound infection:</strong></td>
<td><em>S. aureus</em> (methicillin-sensitive or resistant), group A streptococcus</td>
<td>Contact. Add droplet for the first 24 h of antimicrobial therapy if invasive group A streptococcal disease is suspected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LITERATURE TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huskins et al., <em>NEJM</em>. 2011&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Cluster randomized trial evaluating the effect of universal surveillance for MRSA and VRE with expanded use of barrier precautions, vs. existing practice</td>
<td>During 6-mo intervention period, no significant difference in rates of colonization or infection with MRSA or VRE, but confounded by long turnaround time for screening results (~5 d) and suboptimal compliance with interventions (~69% for hand hygiene, 77% for gowns, and 82% for gloves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jain et al., <em>NEJM</em>. 2011&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Comparison of rates of health-care–associated MRSA infection rates before and after national implementation of a MRSA prevention bundle (universal surveillance with nasal cultures or polymerase chain reaction, contact precautions, hand hygiene, culture change) at acute care VA hospitals</td>
<td>After implementation of the MRSA bundle, rates of health-care–associated MRSA infections fell by 62% in ICUs and 45% in non-ICUs (p &lt; 0.001 for trend)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 63  ■  Indications for Contact and Respiratory Isolation  789

LITERATURE TABLE (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRIAL</th>
<th>DESIGN</th>
<th>RESULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huang et al., NEJM. 2013</td>
<td>Multicenter cluster randomized trial involving 74,256 ICU patients, evaluating universal decolonization (no screening and decolonization of all patients with nasal mupirocin and chlorhexidine baths) vs. screening and isolation alone, vs. targeted decolonization (screening, isolation, and decolonization of MRSA carriers)</td>
<td>After a 12-month baseline period and 18-month intervention period, universal decolonization of all ICU patients was the most effective strategy, reducing the hazard of MRSA-positive clinical cultures by 37% vs. baseline period, compared to 25% for targeted decolonization, and 8% for screening and isolation (p = 0.01 for 3-group comparison). Universal decolonization also reduced the hazard of bloodstream infections from any pathogen by 44%, compared to 22% for targeted decolonization, and 1% for screening and isolation respectively (p &lt; 0.001 for 3-group comparison)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Influenza

| Loeb et al., JAMA. 2009 | Randomized trial during 2008–2009 influenza season of fit-tested N95 respiratory vs. surgical mask in 446 health care workers | Surgical masks were noninferior to N95 in terms of rates of laboratory-confirmed influenza |

Tuberculosis

| Tostmann et al., Clin Infec Dis. 2008 | Retrospective study of patients with culture-confirmed TB in the Netherlands from 1996 to 2004, using molecular linkage studies | Patients with smear-negative, culture-positive TB were responsible for 13% of TB transmissions. The relative transmission rate among those with smear-negative TB (vs. smear-positive TB) was 0.24 |

REFERENCES

EPILOGUE

Scott Weingart

Emergency medicine in the United States is at a crossroads. The purpose of the emergency physician is being determined as we speak by legislators and hospital administrators. Our role in the hospital is slowly being forced to evolve to that of a provider of primary care, available without appointment, 24 hours a day. This is laudable and a boon for patients; it is, however, very different than the original purpose of our specialty.

Many of the founders of our specialty envisioned emergency physicians as the ideal managers of critically ill patients during their initial resuscitation. In the time between caring for these sick patients, the department could also see patients with non–life-threatening complaints. It was understood that these latter patients could wait for care if a critically ill patient arrived, thereby maximizing treatment to the group whose lives depended on our interventions.

During the past decade, this system has been turned around. Now, in many departments, it is the noncrashing patient who takes priority. The wait time of patients with primary care complaints has become a rubric by which an emergency physician is judged. This year, the postvisit reviews of the patients discharged from the emergency department (ED) will be a pay-for-performance measure; not the reviews of patients we admitted to the hospital and not the reviews of the patients we brought back from near-death and sent to the intensive care unit (ICU) markedly improved due to our resuscitation. This is a clear message from the shapers of health care policy: the ED must prioritize the noncrashing patient over the crashing one.

Despite these pressures, we will still always manage airway, breathing, and circulation for the first 10 to 20 minutes of a patient’s ED course, but after that, the feeling in some departments is that these high-risk patients should become someone else’s problem. The ICU doctors should take these patients upstairs or come manage them in the ED. Unfortunately, waits of 24 to 48 hours for an ICU bed are not uncommon, and a dire shortage of intensivists makes their caring for critical patients in the ED untenable in most hospitals.

But someone must take care of critically ill patients in the ED. These patients must not be left to languish with anything less than the equivalent care they will receive when their ICU bed becomes available. That someone could be an inpatient intensivist, an ED intensivist, or an emergency physician. All three are capable, but if the emergency physician cedes this role, then our profession has become very different than the specialty I hoped for when I was a medical student choosing my future career.

This handbook offers the knowledge and techniques necessary to care for the critically ill patient in the ED. It will guide you through the initial resuscitation and the continued management of these patients during their first 24 hours of intensive care. A wealth of experience is encompassed in the pages of this monograph. It extends the already strong foundations of resuscitation that are the core of our specialty. Please seize the knowledge contained here and use it.

Use it to take back the role of the emergency physician as the ultimate resuscitationist. Use it to care for patients during their most vulnerable moments. Use it to heal and to
relieve suffering when we cannot heal. Just because the intubated patients cannot verbalize their complaints and misery, do not let their needs be drowned out by a patient who needs a medication refill. All patients deserve rapid, optimal care, but the purpose of an emergency physician is to provide maximally aggressive care to patients at their sickest. Everything else fills the time until the next crashing patient arrives.

REFERENCES

INDEX

Note: Page numbers followed by f indicate figures and those followed by t indicate tables

A
Abbreviated Injury Scale (AIS), 775, 776, 776f
Acetaminophen, 341–342, 577
Acid-base disorders
  alcoholic ketoacidosis, 496–497
  anion gap metabolic acidosis, 495–496
  blood gas analysis, 491–493
  diabetic ketoacidosis, 496–497
  lactic acidosis, 496
  metabolic acidosis, 493–495
  metabolic alkalosis
    chloride-/saline-responsive conditions, 499
    saline-/chloride-unresponsive conditions, 499–500
  mixed acid-base disorders, 500–501
  non-anion gap metabolic acidosis
    gastrointestinal etiologies, 498
    iatrogenic etiologies, 499
    renal etiologies, 498
  respiratory acidosis, 500
  respiratory alkalosis, 500
  toxic alcohols, 497
  uremia, 497
Acquired von Willebrand disease, 244
Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), 146, 644, 646
Acute bacterial skin and skin structure infections (ABSSSI), 475
Acute chest syndrome, 372–373
Acute coronary syndrome (ACS), 745, 747
  diagnostic evaluation, 212
  history and physical exam, 212
  hyperglycemia, 544
  management guidelines, 212–213
Acute heart failure syndrome (AHFS)
  background, 180, 181f
  diagnostic evaluation
    chest radiograph, 183–184
    electrocardiogram, 183
    laboratory testing, 183
  differential diagnosis, 184, 184f
  history and physical exam, 181–183
  management guidelines, 184–185
Acute hydrocephalus, 292
Acute kidney injury (AKI)
  Acute Kidney Injury Network Criteria, 535
  classification, 534–535
  contrast-associated nephropathy, 541
  emerging biomarkers, 538
  etiology, 536–537, 537f
  history and physical exam, 537–538, 538f
  indications, dialysis, 539–540
  Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcome Criteria, 535–536
  management guidelines, 538–539
  RIFLE Criteria, 535
Acute leukemia
  ALL (See Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL))
  AML (See Acute myeloid leukemia (AML))
  anemia and transfusions, 360
  APL (See Acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL))
  coagulopathy and thrombocytopenia, 361
  diagnostic evaluation, 358–359
  hyperleukocytosis, 360
  infection, 362–363
  neutropenic colitis/typhylitis, 363
  patient history, 358, 359f
  risk factors, 358
  tumor lysis syndrome, 361–362
Acute liver failure (ALF), 777–778, 777f
  acetaminophen, 341–342
  autoimmune hepatitis, 344
  cardiovascular complications, 339
  definitions, 334
  hematologic complications, 339–340
  hepatic encephalopathy, 339
  infectious complications, 340
  metabolic complications, 341
  neurologic complications, 337–338
  nonacetaminophen drug/toxins, 342–343
  pregnancy-related disease, 345
  renal complications, 340
  respiratory rate, 337
  vascular disease, 344–345
  viral hepatitis, 343–344
  Wilson disease, 344
Acute lung injury (ALI)
  pleural effusion, 104
  TRALI, 390
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL)
  cytoreductive therapy, 363–364
  overall cure rate, 357
Acute mountain sickness (AMS), 691–694, 696f
Acute myeloid leukemia (AML)
  cytoreductive therapy, 363–364
  incidence, 357
  prognostic features, 358
Acute myocardial infarction (AMI), 544

793
Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) system, 778, 779
Acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) coagulopathy, 361
differentiation syndrome, 363
overall cure rate, 361
Acute pulmonary edema (APE) diagnostic evaluation, 209
history and physical exam, 208–209
management guidelines, 209–210
Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), 602
background, 158
management guidelines
corticosteroids, 160–161
extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, 161–162
fluid management, 160
hemodynamic monitoring, 160
lung-protective ventilation, 158–159
neuromuscular blocking agents, 161
PEEP strategy, 159–160
noninvasive positive pressure ventilation, 164
pleural effusion, 104
rescue therapies
high-frequency oscillatory ventilation, 163
inhaled vasodilators, 163
prone positioning, 162–163
recruitment maneuvers, 164
Acute respiratory failure (ARF)
airway pressure, 117–119, 118f–119f
diagnostic approach, 113
hypercapnic respiratory failure, 112–113
hypoxemia
diffusion impairment, 110
hypventilation, 109–110
shunt, 112
ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) mismatch, 110–112
mechanical ventilation
indications for, 120f
invasive mechanical ventilation (See Invasive mechanical ventilation)
Acylation, 600–601
Adrenal insufficiency
background, 561–562
diagnosis, 565
etiology, 562–563, 563f
etomidate, 563–564
HIV and AIDS, 563
management guidelines, 565–566
sepsis, 564–565
Adult cardiac life support (ACLS) algorithm, 757, 758f
Air embolism, 177
Airborne precautions, 786–787, 787f, 788f
Alberta Stroke Program Early CT Score (ASPECTS), 267
Alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH), 624, 625
Alcohol withdrawal syndrome (AWS), 674f
anticonvulsants, 668
antipsychotics, 668
background, 661
baclofen, 669
barbiturates, 667
benzodiazepines, 666–667, 666f
beta-blockers, 669
clonidine and dexmedetomidine, 668–669
diagnostic evaluation
CIWA-Ar, 663, 664f–665f
initial assessment guideline, 665, 671f
RASS, 663, 665f
differential diagnosis, 662, 663f
ethanol, 669
general supportive care, 670
guideline for
mild, moderate, and severe AWS, 672f
RAW and DT, 673f
management guidelines, 665, 667
pathophysiology, 661–662
patient history and physical examination, 662
propofol, 667
tapering, 670
Alcoholic ketoacidosis, 496–497
Alkalization, 618
Altered mental status (AMS), 662
Altitude emergencies, 696
background, 691
HACE, 693–694
clinical presentation and diagnostic evaluation, 694
diagnostic evaluation, 695
management guidelines, 695, 695f
HAPE, 691–692
clinical presentation and diagnostic evaluation, 692–693, 692f
management guidelines, 693
Alveolar-interstitial syndrome (AIS), 100–102, 776
American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP), 642–643
Amiodarone, 578
Analgesia
in mechanically ventilated patients, 731–733, 732f
SCD, 369–370
and sedation, 175
Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage
background, 287
diagnostic evaluation, 289–290, 290f
epidemiology, 287–288
high-volume center, patient transfer to, 293
initial stabilization, 290–291
medical complications, 294
neurological monitoring, 292–293
patient history and physical exam, 288, 289*
postobliteration management, 293
rebleeding, prevention of
antifibrinolytic agents, 291–292
blood pressure management, 291
cogulopathy, 292
pain and anxiety management, 291
ruptured aneurysm, definitive treatment of, 293
symptomatic vasospasm/delayed cerebral ischemia, 294
Angiodysplasia, 324–325
Anion gap metabolic acidosis
diabetic ketoacidosis, 553
Anorectal diseases, 325
Anticoagulants
background, 641
direct factor Xa inhibitors, 648*
diagnostic evaluation, 647
management guidelines, 647–648
direct thrombin inhibitors, 645–647, 648*
heparins, 643–645
vitamin K antagonists, 641–643
Antiepileptic drugs (AEDs), 304–305
Antimicrobial therapy
antimicrobial susceptibility testing, 424
anti-MRSA antibiotics, 425, 432*
antipseudomonal antibiotics, 425, 433*
 beta-lactams, 425, 426–431
definitive therapy and de-escalation, 423
empiric antibiotic regimen
allergies, 419–420
antibiotic exposure, 419
clinical setting, 419
comorbidities, 413, 419
level of illness, 419
local resistance patterns, 419
presumptive diagnosis, 413, 414–418*
resistant organism, history of, 419
pharmacologic factors
antibiotic metabolism, 421
bactericidal vs. bacteriostatic therapy, 420
combination therapy, 421–422
empiric MRSA therapy, 422–423
empiric Pseudomonas therapy, 422
killing, mechanism of, 420
site penetration, 420–421
therapy duration, 424–425
Antipsychotics, 668
Aortic dissection (AD)
diagnostic evaluation, 213–214
history and physical exam, 213
management guidelines, 214
Aortic stenosis (AS), 747
ARDS. See Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
Area under the curve (AUC), 22
ARF. See Acute respiratory failure (ARF)
Arrhythmia management
ROAF (See Recent-onset atrial fibrillation (ROAF))
VT (See Ventricular tachycardia (VT))
WCT, 223–226
Arrhythmias
cardiac arrhythmias, 746
left ventricular assist devices, 241
ventricular arrhythmias, 243
Arterial blood pressure (ABP) monitoring
arterial pressure waveform
dicrotic limb, 46, 46f
end diastole, 46, 46f
Fourier analysis, 43–44, 44f
harmonic waves, 43–44, 44f
square flush test, 44, 45f
systolic peak, 46, 46f
systolic upstroke, 46, 46f
waveform abnormalities, 46–48, 47f
components, 43
direct ABP monitoring
complications, 42–43, 42f
contraindications, 43
indications, 41–42, 41f
site selection, 42
leveling and zeroing, 45
Arterial waveform analysis, 22
Aspirin, 627*
history and physical examination, 617
management guidelines, 617–618
airway management, 618–619
alkalinization, 618
electrolyte management, 618
GI decontamination, 618
hemodialysis, 619
initial resuscitation, 617–618
pathophysiology, 616
Asthma
mechanical ventilation support, 126–128, 130f
noninvasive ventilation support, 125–126
Atrial fibrillation (AF)
arrhythmia, 746
left ventricular assist devices, 241
Atrial tachyarrhythmias, 261
Autoimmune hepatitis, 344
Awakening and Breathing Controlled (ABC) trial,
736, 737f/
Awakening and Breathing Coordination, Choice of Medication, Delirium monitoring and Exercise/Early (ABCDE) mobility bundle, 712–713, 714
AWS. See Alcohol withdrawal syndrome (AWS)

B
Baclofen, 669
Barbiturates
alcohol withdrawal syndrome, 667
intubation, 728r, 729–730
Benzodiazepines, 607, 610–614, 658r
AWS, treatment of, 666r
background, 654
diagnostic evaluation, 655
differential diagnosis, 655
history and physical examination, 654–655
intubation, 728r, 730
Beta-natriuretic peptide (BNP)
congestive heart failure, 745
pulmonary edema, 136
RV strain, 198
volume resuscitation, 474
Bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP), 116, 700
Biomarkers
beta-natriuretic peptide, 136
ED, 136
sepsis
background, 481
cardiac markers, 485–486
cortisol, 482–483
C-reactive protein, 483
diagnostic approach, 486–487
emerging biomarkers, 486
lactate, 481–482
procalcitonin, 483–485, 485f
role of, 481
Bisferiens pulse, 46, 47f
Blood gas analysis, 491–493
Blood product transfusion
background, 387
complications
citrate toxicity, 391
immunologic complications, 390–391
transfusion-associated circulatory overload, 390
transfusion-related acute lung injury, 390
transfusion-transmitted infection, 390
indications, 389r
cryoprecipitate, 388
fresh frozen plasma, 388
in massive hemorrhage, 389
packed red blood cells, 387–388
platelets, 388
tranexamic acid, 388–389

Brain infarction, 265
Breast cancer, 452
Brief Confusion Assessment Method (bCAM), 708
Budd-Chiari syndrome, 345
Burns
diagnostic evaluation, 472–473, 473r
treatment guidelines, 473–475, 473r

Calcium
hypercalcemia, 515–516, 516r
hypocalcemia
diagnostic workup, 514
epidemiology, 514
history and physical exam, 514
management guidelines, 514
treatment, 516r
Calcium-sensitizing agents, 409
Cardiac arrhythmias, 746
Cardiac contractility
cardiopulmonary interactions, 13–15, 14r
central venous oxygen saturation, 11–12
echocardiographic assessment, 12–13
lactate clearance, 11–12
Cardiac markers, 485–486
Cardiac output (CO), 763, 763f, 764, 764r, 765r, 766
    cardiogenic contractility
cardiopulmonary interactions, 13–15, 14r
central venous oxygen saturation, 11–12
echocardiography, 12–13
lactate clearance, 11–12
fluid responsiveness
central venous pressure monitoring, 10–11
passive leg-raising, 9–10
pulmonary artery catheterization, 11
impaired LV systolic function, 134
noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring
carbon dioxide and Fick principle, 29–30
pulse contour analysis, 26–28
stroke volume and heart rate, 19
transthoracic electrical bioimpedance, 29
ultrasound, 28–29
USCOM, 28–29
optimization, 8–9
Cardiac tamponade
echocardiography
periocardiocentesis, 77–78
strategies, 77
ultrasound findings, 76, 77f
pericardial effusions
grading scale, 74, 74r
parasternal long-axis view, 74–76, 75f
pathophysiology, 73–74
D

Delirium, 751

ABCDE bundle, mechanically ventilated patients, 712–713, 714
and agitation, 748–749
assessment of
CAM-ICU, 707–708, 707, 714
ICDSC, 708, 714
definition, 704–705
diagnostic evaluation
life-threatening causes, 709, 709
physical examination, 710, 710
ExDS, 705
nonpharmacologic management, 712
pharmacologic management, 714
antipsychotics, 711–712
deliriogenic medications, 711
pain control, 711
risk factors, 705–706, 706

Delirium tremens (DT), 662, 673

Deltadown (d-Down), 22

Dexmedetomidine (DEX), 669, 723

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)
acid-base disorders, 496–497
artrial vs. venous blood gas, 553–554
complications, 558
diagnostic evaluation
anion gap metabolic acidosis, 553
ketones, 552–553
differential diagnosis, 556
history and physical, 551–552
management guidelines
bicarbonate, 558
fluid, 556
insulin, 557
potassium, 558
osmolarity, 554
pathogenesis, 552
phosphate, 554, 556
potassium, 554, 555
sodium, 554
Diastolic blood pressure (DBP), 40
Dichloramine, 600
Digoxin-Specific Fab fragments (DSFab), 591, 594

Direct blood pressure monitoring
complications, 42–43, 42
contraindications, 43
indications, 41–42, 41
site selection, 42

Direct thrombin inhibitors (DTIs), 648

diagnostic evaluation, 646
management guidelines, 646–647

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 380

DKA. See Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)

Dobutamine, 408

Dopamine, 188, 405, 406, 407

Droplet precautions, 785–786, 786

Drowning, 702

background, 699
definition, 699
management guidelines
cardiovascular critical care, 701
neurocritical care, 701
pulmonary critical care, 701
pathophysiology, 699–700
prehospital and emergency department care, 700

Drugs of abuse
benzodiazepines, 658
background, 654
diagnostic evaluation, 655
differential diagnosis, 655
history and physical examination, 654–655
management guidelines, 655
opioids, 658
background, 652
diagnostic evaluation, 653
differential diagnosis, 653
history and physical examination, 652
management guidelines, 653–654
sympathomimetics, 655–656, 659
background, 655–656
diagnostic evaluation, 656
differential diagnosis, 656
history and physical examination, 656
management guidelines, 656–657

E

Early goal-directed therapy (EGDT), 2, 30–31, 743

Ecarin clotting time (ECT), 646
Echocardiogram
- cardiogenic shock (CS), 187
- pericardial effusions, 580
- transesophageal echocardiogram, 145

Echocardiography
- cardiac contractility, 13
- critical care
  - apical window, 70–71, 70f
  - parasternal long-axis view, 67–68, 67f–68f
  - parasternal short-axis view, 68–69, 68f–69f
  - pulmonary embolus and right ventricular enlargement, 78–79
  - subxiphoid window, 69–70, 69f

Electrocardiogram (ECG)
- bradycardia, 589
- cardiogenic shock (CS), 187
- hyperkalemia, 511
- hypokalemia, 509
- Osborn waves, 682
- pulmonary edema, 135
- RV failure, 204
- tachycardia, 589

Electrolyte disorders
- calcium
  - hypercalcemia, 515–516, 516
  - hypocalcemia, 514
- magnesium
  - hypermagnesemia, 517, 518
  - hypomagnesemia, 516–517, 517
- potassium
  - hyperkalemia, 510–513, 513
  - hypokalemia, 509–510
- sodium disorders
  - hypernatremia, 507–508, 509
  - hyponatremia, 504–507

Emergency department (ED)
- contact and respiratory isolation, indications for
  - airborne precautions, 785–787, 786t, 787t
  - contact precautions, 784–785, 784t
  - droplet precautions, 785–786, 786t
  - standard precautions, 783–784
- ED evaluation
  - blood pressure, 764
  - hemorrhage, 766–767
  - low blood pressure, 765f, 766
  - low oxygen delivery, 765f, 766
  - VO2/DO2, 763f, 764–766, 765f
- GBS diagnosis, 317
- and ICU, 1–4
- neuromuscular respiratory failure, 317
- palliative care (See Palliative care)
- seizures (See Seizures)
- shock, 768
- empiric therapy, 767

and organ dysfunction, pathophysiology of, 762–764, 764t
- SOI scores (See Severity of illness (SOI) scores)

Emphysema
- characteristics, 124
- pathology, 124
- End-tidal CO2 (EtCO2), 26
- Epinephrine, 188, 405, 406f
- Esophageal Doppler, 28
- Etomidate
  - adrenal insufficiency, 563–564
  - intubation, 727–729, 728t
- Excited delirium syndrome (ExDS), 705, 718
- Extracorporeal life support (ECLS), 150
- Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), 257, 590
- ARDS, 161–162
- background, 170
- circuit-related factors
  - anticoagulation, 174
  - blood flow, 175
  - gas exchange, 174–175
  - in emergency department, 177
  - history of, 170–171
- indications
  - cardiac failure, 172
  - contraindications, 172
  - respiratory failure, 171–172
  - technique, 172–174, 173f
  - patient-related factors
    - complications, 177
    - hemodynamics, 176
    - infection, 176
    - neuromuscular blockade, 175
    - procedures, 177
    - sedation and analgesia, 175
    - temperature regulation, 177
    - ventilator management, 176
    - volume status and electrolyte management, 176

F
- Febrile neutropenia
  - imaging, 443
  - laboratory studies, 443
  - risk factors, 442, 443
  - Fick principle, 29–30
- Fisher grading system, 775
- Fluid resuscitation, 19–20
- Free fatty acids (FFA), 592
- Fresh frozen plasma (FFP), 642, 643

G
- Gallbladder disease, 373
- γ-aminobutyric acid (GABAγ), 661, 667, 668
Gamma hydroxybuturate (GHB), 653
Gastrointestinal cancer, 452
Gastrointestinal hemorrhage
  lower gastrointestinal bleeding
  angiodysplasia, 324–325
  anorectal diseases, 325
  background, 324
  dieulafoy lesion, 325
  diverticular bleeding, 324
  epidemiology, 324–325
  initial evaluation and risk stratification, 325–326
  ischemic colitis, 325
  management guidelines, 326–328
  mucosal inflammation, 325
  neoplasia and postpolypectomy bleeding, 325
  nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding
  background, 328
  initial evaluation and risk stratification, 328
  management guidelines, 328–330
  variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 330–331
Genitourinary cancer, 452
Geriatric patients
  atypical presentations, 742
  background, 741
  biologic age, 741–742
  cardiac arrhythmias, 746
  cardiac dysfunction, 744
  chronicologic age, 742
  definition, 741
  delirium and agitation, 748–749
  heart failure, 744–746
  polypharmacy, 742
  respiratory distress, 747–748, 751r
  sepsis, 742–744, 751r
  Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), 773–774, 774r, 776, 777r
  Glasgow-Blatchford score (GBS), 777
  Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 581
  Glucagon, 591–592, 594r
  Glucocorticoids, 399–400
  Graves disease, 569, 570
  ophthalmopathy, 572
  pregnant patient, 577
  prevalence, 570
  Guillain–Barre syndrome (GBS)
    clinical features and diagnostic evaluation, 317
    intubation, 319–320, 320r
    mechanical ventilation, 319–320
    neuromuscular respiratory failure, 317
H
  Head and neck cancer, 452, 456
  Heliox, 128
  HELLP syndrome, 376–378, 377r
  Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT)
    adjunctive therapies, 448
    antibacterial therapy, 448
    antifungal therapy, 448
    early postengraftment period, 449–450
    febrile neutropenia
      imaging, 443
      laboratory studies, 443
      risk factors, 442, 443r
      infectious conditions, 444r–447r
      late postengraftment period, 450
      timeline of infections, 448, 449r
  Hemodialysis (HD), 540
  Hemodynamic monitoring
    ARDS, 160–161
    historical perspective, 8
    noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring (See Noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring)
  Hemolysis, 244
  Hemolytic uremic syndrome, 379–380
  Hemophilia, 381–382, 381r
  Hemostasis
    liver disease, 382–383
    platelet disorders (See Platelet disorders)
  Heparin
    diagnostic evaluation, 644
    management guidelines, 644–645
  Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), 376–378, 377r, 644
  Hepatic encephalopathy, 582. See also Acute liver failure (ALF)
  HHS. See Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS)
  High risk pulmonary embolism. See Pulmonary embolism
  High-altitude cerebral edema (HACE), 693–694
    clinical presentation, 694–695
    diagnostic evaluation, 694–695, 695r
    management guidelines, 695, 695r
    treatment strategies for, 695r
  High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE), 691–692
    clinical presentation and diagnostic evaluation, 692–693, 692r
    Lake Louise Criteria, 692r
    management guidelines, 693
  High-dose insulin euglycemia (HIE), 592, 594r–595r
  High-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV), 163
  High-risk submassive pulmonary embolism, 150–151
  HSCT. See Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT)
  Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infected patients
    altered mental status, 439, 440r–441r, 442
    respiratory infections, 439
sepsis, 438
treatment, 438–439
Hunt and Hess grading system, 774, 775
Hydrofluoric acid (HF), 638
diagnostic evaluation
electrocardiogram, 636
laboratory tests, 636
history and physical exam
dermal exposure, 636
ingestion, 636
inhalational exposure, 636
ocular exposure, 636
management guidelines
decomination, 637
medical therapy, 637
severe toxicity, treatment of, 638
pathophysiology, 635–636
Hydroxycobalamin, 622
Hypercapnic respiratory failure, 112–113
Hyperglycemia
and clinical outcomes, 544
pathophysiology, 543–544
Hyperkalemia, 362
AKI, 538–539
diagnostic workup, 511
epidemiology, 510
history and physical exam, 510–511
management guidelines, 511–513
treatment, 513
Hypermagnesemia, 517, 518
Hypernatremia
diagnostic workup, 507
epidemiology, 507
history and physical, 507
management guidelines, 508
treatment, 509
Hypoglycemia
clinical outcomes, 545
pathophysiology, 544–545
Hypokalemia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 510
treatment, 509
Hypomagnesemia, 516–517, 517
Hypnatremia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 509
Hypotension
and bradycardia, 735
left ventricular assist devices (LVADs), 240–241
phenylephrine, 408
propofol, 734
recruitment maneuvers, 165
RVF, 241
Hypothermia, 338, 688
background, 680
definitions, 680–681
ECG finding, 681, 682
management guidelines
ACLS, 685, 685
active external rewarming, 686
active internal rewarming, 686, 687
airway and breathing, 684
passive external rewarming, 686
temperature determination, 684–685
pathophysiology and clinical manifestations
cardiovascular effects, 681–682, 682
gastrointestinal effects, 683–684
hematologic effects, 683
neurologic effects, 683
renal effects, 683
respiratory effects, 682
Swiss staging system, 681, 681
termination of resuscitation, 686–687
therapeutic hypothermia, 252–254
Hypertension
acute coronary syndrome, 212–213
aortic dissection, 213–214
APE (See Acute pulmonary edema (APE))
background, 208, 215–216
hypertensive encephalopathy, 210–212
Hypertensive encephalopathy
diagnostic evaluation, 211
history and physical exam, 210–211
management guidelines, 211–212
Hypoglycemia
clinical outcomes, 545
pathophysiology, 544–545
Hypokalemia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 510
Hypomagnesemia, 516–517, 517
Hypnatremia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 509
Hypotension
and bradycardia, 735
left ventricular assist devices (LVADs), 240–241
phenylephrine, 408
propofol, 734
recruitment maneuvers, 165
RVF, 241
Hypothermia, 338, 688
background, 680
definitions, 680–681
ECG finding, 681, 682
management guidelines
ACLS, 685, 685
active external rewarming, 686
active internal rewarming, 686, 687
airway and breathing, 684
passive external rewarming, 686
temperature determination, 684–685
pathophysiology and clinical manifestations
cardiovascular effects, 681–682, 682
gastrointestinal effects, 683–684
hematologic effects, 683
neurologic effects, 683
renal effects, 683
respiratory effects, 682
Swiss staging system, 681, 681
termination of resuscitation, 686–687
therapeutic hypothermia, 252–254
Hyperkalemia, 362
AKI, 538–539
diagnostic workup, 511
epidemiology, 510
history and physical exam, 510–511
management guidelines, 511–513
treatment, 513
Hypermagnesemia, 517, 518
Hypernatremia
diagnostic workup, 507
epidemiology, 507
history and physical, 507
management guidelines, 508
Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS)
artrial vs. venous blood gas, 553–554
complications, 558
diagnostic evaluation
anion gap metabolic acidosis, 553
ketones, 552–553
differential diagnosis, 556
history and physical, 551–552
management guidelines
bicarbonate, 558
fluid, 556
insulin, 557
potassium, 558
osmolarity, 554
pathogenesis, 552
phosphate, 554, 556
potassium, 554, 555
sodium, 554
Hyperphosphatemia, 362
Hypertension
acute coronary syndrome, 212–213
aortic dissection, 213–214
APE (See Acute pulmonary edema (APE))
background, 208, 215–216
hypertensive encephalopathy, 210–212
Hypertensive encephalopathy
diagnostic evaluation, 211
history and physical exam, 210–211
management guidelines, 211–212
Hypoglycemia
clinical outcomes, 545
pathophysiology, 544–545
Hypokalemia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 510
Hypomagnesemia, 516–517, 517
Hypnatremia
diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
epidemiology, 504
history and physical exam, 509–510
management guidelines, 509
Hypotension
and bradycardia, 735
left ventricular assist devices (LVADs), 240–241
phenylephrine, 408
propofol, 734
recruitment maneuvers, 165
RVF, 241
Hypothermia, 338, 688
background, 680
definitions, 680–681
ECG finding, 681, 682
management guidelines
ACLS, 685, 685
active external rewarming, 686
active internal rewarming, 686, 687
airway and breathing, 684
passive external rewarming, 686
temperature determination, 684–685
pathophysiology and clinical manifestations
cardiovascular effects, 681–682, 682
gastrointestinal effects, 683–684
hematologic effects, 683
neurologic effects, 683
renal effects, 683
respiratory effects, 682
Swiss staging system, 681, 681
termination of resuscitation, 686–687
therapeutic hypothermia, 252–254
Hypoventilation, 109–110
Hypoxic respiratory failure
diffusion impairment, 110
hypoventilation, 109–110
shunt, 112
ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) mismatch, 110–112

Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 375–376
Immune-compromised patient
diagnostic evaluation, 437–438
HSCT (See Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT))
solid organ transplantation
Clostridium difficile infections, intermediate posttransplant period, 463
common infectious conditions, 458r–462r
IFD (See Invasive fungal diseases (IFD))
immune defects, 456
timeline of infections, 456, 457r
solid tumors
breast cancer, 452
catheter-related blood stream infections,
450–451
common infectious conditions, 453r–455r
gastrointestinal cancer, 452
genitourinary cancer, 452
head and neck cancer, 452, 456
HIV-negative patients, 451
immune defects, 450
lung cancer, 452
neutropenic fever, 451
opportunistic infections, corticosteroid use and risks, 451
sepsis, 451–452
viral infections
cytomegalovirus infections, 464
late posttransplantation period, 465
reactivation infections, intermediate posttransplantation period, 465
respiratory viruses, 463–464
Induction of intubation, 738
barbiturates, 728r, 729–730
benzodiazepines, 728r, 730
choice of induction agent, 730–731
etomidate, 727–729, 728r
ketamine, 728r, 729
propofol, 728r, 730
Inferior vena cava (IVC), 24–25, 25r
cardiac tamponade, 77
massive pulmonary embolism, 149–150
ultrasound evaluation
anatomic and sonographic correlation, 80
aorta, 81
internal jugular vein, 82–83, 83r
patient position, 80
probe position, 80
volume status, 81–82, 81r–82r, 82r
Influenza, 785, 786r
Inhaled nitric oxide (INO), 150
Inhaled vasodilators therapy, 165
Injury severity score (ISS), 776, 777r
Inotropes
background, 404
calcium-sensitizing agents, 409
dobutamine, 408
isoproterenol, 409
phosphodiesterase inhibitors, 409
physiology, 404, 405r
therapeutic approach, in shock, 409–410
Intensive Care Delirium Screening Checklist (ICDSC), 708, 714r
Intensive care unit (ICU)
clinician–family communication in, 755, 756
and ED critical care, 1–4
International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation, 699
International normalized ratios (INRs), 642, 643
Intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP), 590
Intravenous fat emulsion (IFE), 592–593, 594r
Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg), 321
Intravenous lipid emulsion (ILE), 592–593, 594r
Invasive fungal diseases (IFD)
diagnosis of, 457–463
treatment, 463
Invasive mechanical ventilation
noninvasive positive pressure ventilation,
116–117
pressure-cycled ventilation, 116
volume-cycled ventilation, 114–116
Ischemic colitis, 325
Ischemic stroke
background, 261
diagnostic evaluation, 266–267, 266r, 267r–268r
management guidelines
acute-stroke flow chart, 267, 268r
endovascular therapy, 272
indications and contraindications, IV tPA, 268, 272r
MCA stroke, 272
medical management, 268, 270r
potential complications and treatment, 268, 270r–271r
protocols, criteria, and order sets, 271
pathogenesis, 265
patient history, 261–263, 263r
physical exam, 263, 264r–265r, 265
Isoproterenol, 409
J
Jugular venous pressure (JVP), 196

K
Ketamine, 723
   intubation, 728, 729
   sedation, 723
King's College criteria, 777

L
Lactate, 481–482
Lactic acidosis, 496
Large-vessel occlusion (LVO) strokes, 263
Left ventricular assist devices (LVADs)
   acquired von Willebrand disease, 244
   aortic insufficiency, 244
   arrhythmias, 241
   atrial fibrillation, 241
   blood loss and coagulopathy, 243–244
   cardiac arrest, 243
   evolution and function, 233–234, 234f
   hemolysis, 244
   hypotension and hemodynamic instability, 239–240
   infections, 236, 237–238, 239f
   pump parameters
      flow estimate, 235–236
      pulse index, 236
      pump power, 235
      pump speed, 235
   radiographic evaluation, HeartMate II, 244–245, 245f
   right ventricular failure, 240–241
   suction events, 241, 242f
   thrombotic complications, 243
   ventricular arrhythmias, 243
LGIB. See Lower gastrointestinal bleeding (LGIB)
Liposomal amphotericin, 463
Liver disease, 382–383
Low molecular weight heparins (LMWHs), 643–645
Lower gastrointestinal bleeding (LGIB)
   angiodysplasia, 324–325
   anorectal diseases, 325
   background, 324
dieulafoy lesion, 325
diverticular bleeding, 324
epidemiology, 324–325
   initial evaluation and risk stratification, 325–326
   ischemic colitis, 325
   management guidelines, 326–328
   mucosal inflammation, 325
   neoplasia and postpolypectomy bleeding, 325
Lung cancer, 452
LVADs. See Left ventricular assist devices (LVADs)

M
Magnesium
   hypermagnesemia, 517, 518f
   hypomagnesemia, 516–517, 517f
Malignant hyperthermia (MH)
   diagnostic evaluation, 613
   history and physical examination, 613
   incidence of, 612
   management of, 613
Massive pulmonary embolism
   adjunctive therapies
      extracorporeal life support, 150
      inferior vena cava filter, 149–150
      inhaled nitric oxide, 150
      catheter embolectomy, 149–150, 149f
      definition, 140
   diagnostic evaluation, 144–145
   pathophysiology, 141–143, 142f
   stabilization, 143–144
   surgical embolectomy, 147–148
   systemic thrombolytic therapy, 146–147
Mean arterial pressure (MAP), 41
Metabolic acidosis, 493–495, 495–496
Metabolic alkalosis
   chloride-/saline-responsive conditions, 499
   saline-/chloride-unresponsive conditions, 499–500
Metabolic inhibitors
   aspirin, 616–619, 627f
   cyanide, 619–622, 627f
   metformin, 625–626, 627f–628f
   methanol, 622–625, 627f
Metformin, 627f–628f
   history and physical examination, 626
   management guidelines, 626
   pathophysiology, 626
   Metformin-associated lactic acidosis (MALA), 625–626
Methanol, 627f
   history and physical examination, 623
   laboratory tests, 623
   management guidelines
      folic acid, 625
      hemodialysis, 625
      medical therapy, 624–625
      osmol gap, 624
   pathophysiology, 623
Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus [MRSA], 784, 784f, 785
Methylene blue, 594
Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERSCoV), 786–787
Mixed acid-base disorders, 500–501
Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) score, 778
Modified Rankin Scale (mRS), 269
Modifying the Incidence of Delirium (MIND) Trial, 711
Monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI), 608
Monochloramine, 600
Monocytic leukemias, 362
Mortality Probability Model (MPM), 778, 779
Myasthenia gravis (MG)
clinical features and diagnostic evaluation, 315–317, 316f
differential diagnosis, 317
intubation, 319–320, 320f
mechanical ventilation, 319–320
neuromuscular respiratory failure, 317
Mycobacterium tuberculosis (MTB), 439
diagnosis of, 465
mortality rate, 465
Myoclonus, 729
Myoglobinuria, 526
Myxedema coma
differential diagnosis, 582
history and physical exam, 579–580
laboratory testing and radiography, 580–582, 582f
management guidelines, 582–583
physiology and organ-specific effects, 579
special populations, 583–584
N
Naloxone, 593, 594f
Nasogastric tube (NGT), 635
National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS), 263, 264f, 775
Necrotizing soft tissue infection (NSTI)
diagnosis, 476
surgical intervention, 476
treatment guidelines, 477
Neisseria meningitidis, 785, 786f
Neoplasia, 325
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), 721
diagnostic evaluation, 610–611
history and physical examination, 610
management of, 611, 612
vs. serotonin syndrome, 611, 611f
Neurologic injury, 544
Neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBA), 161
Neutropenic fever, 451
Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL), 538
New Injury Severity Score (NISS), 776
Nitroprusside, 620–621
N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA), 661
Nonacetaminophen drug/toxins, 342–343
Non-anion gap metabolic acidosis gastrointestinal etiologies, 498
iatrogenic etiologies, 499
renal etiologies, 498
Noninvasive hemodynamic monitoring background, 18
cardiac output carbon dioxide and Fick principle, 29–30
pulse contour analysis, 26–28
stroke volume and heart rate, 19
transthoracic electrical bioimpedance, 29
ultrasound, 28–29
USCOM, 28–29
device assessment, 20, 22
fluid responsiveness arterial waveform analysis, 22
cardiocirculatory function, 21f
CVP, 19–20
delta-down, 22
pulse oximeter waveform analysis, 23–24
pulse pressure variation, 22–23, 23f
practical fluid strategy, severe sepsis, 30–31
spontaneously breathing patients end-tidal CO₂, 26
passive leg raise, 26
stroke volume variation, 24
ultrasound indices brachial artery peak velocity variation, 25
inferior vena cava, 24–25, 25f
Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV), 116–117, 184, 745, 747–748
acute respiratory distress syndrome, 165
asthma, 125–126
invasive mechanical ventilation, 119
respiratory distress, 747–748
Nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding (NVUGIB)
background, 328
initial evaluation and risk stratification, 328
management guidelines, 328–330
Norepinephrine, 188, 405, 406f
NVUGIB. See Nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding (NVUGIB)
O
Older adults. See Geriatric patients
Opioids, 658f
background, 652
diagnostic evaluation, 653
differential diagnosis, 653
history and physical examination, 652
management guidelines, 653–654
Osmolarity, 554
Out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA)
acute care and diagnosis evaluation, 249–250
cardiac catheterization, 250–252
continuous EEG, 256
cooling methods, 254–255
hypothermia
  physiology of, 255–256
  therapeutic hypothermia, 252–254
percutaneous hemodynamic support, 256–257
pulmonary embolism, 252
shivering, 256
Oxygen consumption/demand (VO\textsubscript{2}), 762–766, 763
Oxygen delivery (DO\textsubscript{2}), 762–766, 763
Pain, agitation, and delirium (PAD Guidelines), 711, 712
Palliative care
  background, 754–755
  communication, 759
    cross-cultural communication and spirituality, 756
    decision making, 757–758, 758, 759
  family conferences, 756–757
  family reactions, 758–759
  general considerations, 755–756
  VALUE, 755
Pancreatitis
  acute pancreatitis, 349–350, 350
    complications, 351
    diagnostic tests, 350–351
    differential diagnosis, 351
    history and physical exam, 350
    management guidelines, 351–353, 352
  chronic pancreatitis
    complications, 354
    diagnostic tests, 353
    differential diagnosis, 353–354
    history and physical exam, 353
    management guidelines, 354
Passive leg raise (PLR)
  fluid responsiveness, 9–10
  PLR-induced change in cardiac output
    (PLR-cCO) technique, 26
  PLR-induced changes in arterial pulse pressure
    (PLR-cPP), 26
Penicillin, 343
Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), 745
Phencyclidine (PCP), 653
Phenylephrine, 188, 408
Phosgene (COCl\textsubscript{2}), 600–601
Phosphodiesterase inhibitors, 409
Pike-and-dome waveform, 47, 48
Plasma exchange (PE), 321
Platelet disorders
  HELLP syndrome, 376–378, 377
  hemolytic uremic syndrome, 379–380
  heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 376–378, 377
  idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 375–376
  thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, 379–380
Pleur effusion
  ARDS/ALI, 104
  characterization, 104
  detection, 103
  quantification, 103–104
  ultrasound-guided thoracentesis, 104
Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia (PJP)
  HIV-negative patients
    diagnosis, 451
    treatment, 451
    incidence of, 457
  Pneumonia, 101
  Pneumonia severity index (PSI), 771–773, 771–773
Pneumothorax
  AAA, 87
  chest radiography (CXR), 98
  FAST (E-FAST) protocol, 99
  lung point, 99, 100
  lung sliding examination, 98
  M-mode US, 86
  pipes evaluation, 86
  probe position, 85
  stratosphere sign (bar-code sign), 99, 99
Polypharmacy, 742
PORT score. See Pneumonia severity index (PSI)
Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), 126, 700
  in ARDS
    clinical outcomes, 160
    recruitment maneuvers, 164
  asthma and COPD, 126, 129
  auto-PEEP, 119, 119
  extrinsic PEEP, 120
  intrinsic PEEP, 120
Postpolypectomy bleeding, 325
Potassium
  DKA/HHS, 554, 555
  hyperkalemia
    diagnostic workup, 511
    epidemiology, 510
    history and physical exam, 510–511
    management guidelines, 511–513
    treatment, 513
  hypokalemia
    diagnostic workup, 510
    epidemiology, 509
    history and physical exam, 509–510
    management guidelines, 510
    treatment, 509
Pressure–cycled ventilation (PCV), 116
Priapism, 373
Index

Procalcitonin, 483–485, 485
Prognostication, 771, 774, 775, 779. See also Severity of illness (SOI) scores
Prophylactic antibiotics, 701, 702
Propofol, 667
alcohol withdrawal syndrome, 667–668
hypotension, 734
intubation, 728, 730
Propofol infusion syndrome (PRIS), 734–735
Prothrombin complex concentrates (PCC), 642, 643
Prothrombin time (PT), 642, 646
Pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH)
pathologic feature, 125
ventilation strategies, 129, 130
Pulmonary artery catheter (PAC)
cardiac output, 20
complications, 58, 58f
contraindications, 58–59
indications, 55
insertion and data interpretation, 55–57, 56f, 57f
noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, 135
Pulmonary edema
cardiogenic ED, 133–134
diagnostic evaluation, 135–136, 136f
etiology, 133
noncardiogenic ED, 134–135
Pulmonary embolism (PE), 203
acute, 140–141
massive pulmonary embolism
diagnostic evaluation, 144–145
management guidelines, 146–150
pathophysiology, 141–143, 142f
stabilization, 143–144
out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA), 252
submassive PE, 150–151
Pulmonary hypertension, 202–203
Pulmonary toxins
background, 598
pulmonary irritant gases
chloramines, 600
chlorine, 599–600
management strategy, 601–602
phosgene, 600–601
simple asphyxiants, 598–599
Pulmonary ultrasonography
background, 94
clinical conditions
alveolar-interstitial syndrome, 100–102
pleural effusion, 103–104
pneumonia/lung consolidation, 102
pneumothorax (See Pneumothorax)
in emergency protocol, 105–106, 105f
imaging modalities, 94–95
imaging technique, 95, 96f
sonographic thoracic anatomy
A-lines/pleural line, 97, 97f
B-lines, 97, 98f
lung sliding, 96, 97f
training requirements, 95
transducer selection, 94
Pulse oximeter waveform analysis, 23–24
Pulse pressure (PP), 40
Pulse pressure variation (PPV), 22–23, 23f
Pulsed-wave Doppler, 65
Pulsus alternans, 47f, 48
Pulsus paradoxa, 47f, 48
Pulsus parvus, 46, 47f
Pulsus tardus, 46, 47f
R
Radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU), 575
Randomized Evaluation of Mechanical Assistance for Congestive Heart Failure (REMATCH), 234
Rapid ultrasound in shock (RUSH) examination
B-mode ultrasound, 63, 72f
cardiac contractility, 72–73
cardiac tamponade (See cardiac tamponade)
categories, 62, 63f
Doppler ultrasound, 65
echocardiography
apical window, 70–71, 70f–71f
parasternal long-axis view, 67–68, 67f–68f
parasternal short-axis view, 68–69, 68f–69f
pulmonary embolus and right ventricular enlargement, 78–79
subxiphoid window, 69–70, 69f
M-mode ultrasound, 65
pericardial effusions and cardiac tamponade
grading scale, 74, 74f
parasternal long-axis view, 74–76, 75f
pathophysiology, 73–74
sonographic appearance, 74
subxiphoid view, 76
resuscitation protocols and examination
components, 62, 64f
shock types, 88f
society support, 62–63
transvenous pacemaker placement
FAST and thoracic ultrasound, 83–84, 84f
inferior vena cava, 80–83, 81f–83f
tension pneumothorax, 84–87, 85f–86f
ultrasound presets, 63
ultrasound probe selection, 63
Recent-onset atrial fibrillation (ROAF)
rate control vs. rhythm control
controversies, 222–223
multicenter randomized trials, 220–221
multicenter retrospective cohort study, 221
Ottawa Aggressive Protocol, 221, 222f
prospective controlled study, 221
Renal artery stenosis, 134
Renal replacement therapy (RRT)
continuous renal replacement therapy, 540
hemodialysis, 540
rhabdomyolysis, 530–531
sustained low-efficiency daily dialysis, 540
Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS), 561
Resistant Alcohol Withdrawal (RAW), 667, 673f
Respiratory acidosis, 500
Respiratory alkalosis, 500
Respiratory failure. See Acute respiratory failure (ARF)
Revised Trauma Score (RTS), 776, 777f
Revolutions per minute (RPMs), 175
Rhabdomyolysis
diagnostic evaluation
anion gap/coagulation, 527
BUN/creatinine, 527
CK and serum myoglobin, 526
creatine kinase, 526
phosphate and calcium, 527
potassium, 526–527
urinalysis, 526
epidemiology, 524
etiology, 524, 525f
history and physical exam, 525
management guidelines
choice of fluid, 528
fluid administration recommendations, 530–531
renal replacement therapy, 530–531
sodium bicarbonate and mannitol, 529–530
timing and volume of fluids, 528
Richmond Agitation Sedation Scale (RASS), 663, 665f, 705f, 733, 733f
Right ventricular failure (RVF)
afterload reduction, 199
background, 193
classification and epidemiology, 193
diagnostic evaluation
chest radiography, 197–198, 197f/
ecocardiography, 198, 198f/
electrocardiogram, 197
laboratory investigation, 198
differential diagnosis, 196–197
history and physical exam, 194–196
inotropic support, 199
management guidelines
antiarrhythmics, 200–201, 202f/
diuretics, 200
nitric oxide, 200
oxygen, 199–200
vasopressors and inotropes, 200, 201f
pathophysiology, 193–194, 194f, 195f–196f
therapeutic approach, 203
volume resuscitation, 199
RUSH exam. See Rapid ultrasound in shock (RUSH) examination
RV end-diastolic volume (RVEDV), 142
Sedation
agitated patient, 719f
acute undifferentiated agitation, 719f
atypical antipsychotics, 721
background, 718
benzodiazepines, 719, 720, 723
choice of medication, 721–722
dexmedetomidine, 723
ketamine, 723
management guidelines, 718–719
typical antipsychotics, 720–721
and induction agents for intubation (See Induction of intubation)
in mechanically ventilated patients, 732f, 738f
benzodiazepines, 734
choice of sedation agent, 735–736
dexmedetomidine, 735
propofol, 734–735
“Wake Up and Breathe” protocol, 736, 737f
RASS, 733, 733f
Seizures
aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage, 292–293
ED diagnostic evaluation
history of epilepsy, 304–305
resolved seizure episode, 306–307, 306f
epidemiology, 302–303
management guidelines
first-time seizure, 307
LEV and LCS, 310
medical therapy, 309
phenobarbital (PHT), 310
refractory status epilepticus, 310–311
second-line agents, 309
prehospital evaluation and management, 303, 304f
Sepsis, 202
adrenal insufficiency, 564–565
antimicrobial therapy and source control, 396–397
background, 394
biomarkers
background, 481
cardiac markers, 485–486
Sepsis (Continued)
cortisol, 482–483
  C-reactive protein, 483
diagnostic approach, 486–487
  emerging biomarkers, 486
lactate, 481–482
  procalcitonin, 483–485, 485
role of, 481
blood transfusion, 400
definitions, 394, 395
  diagnostic evaluation, 396
  glucocorticoids, 399–400
  history and physical examination, 395, 396
hyperglycemia, 544
inotropes, 399
intravenous fluids, 398–399
mechanical ventilation, 400
protocol-guided hemodynamic resuscitation, 397–398
  solid tumors, 451–452
  vasopressors, 399
Sequential organ failure assessment (SOFA) score, 578
Sequential Organ Failure Score (SOFA), 777
Serotonin syndrome, 609
  diagnostic evaluation, 609
  history and physical examination, 608
  management of, 609–610
symptoms, 609
  vs. NMS, 611, 611
Serum myoglobin, 526
Severity of illness (SOI) scores
APACHE system, 778, 779
  coma, 773–774, 774
  discrimination, 771
  gastrointestinal, 775–776, 776
  ischemic stroke, 775
  MPM, 778, 779
  pneumonia, 771–773, 771–773
  PREEDICCT project, 779
  SAPS system, 778, 779
  subarachnoid hemorrhage, 774–775, 775
  trauma, 776–778, 777
Shunt, 112
Sickle cell disease (SCD)
  background, 368
  diagnostic evaluation, 368–369
  uncomplicated VOC
    acute chest syndrome, 372–373
    acute sequestration, 373
    acute stroke, 373
    analgesia, 369–370
    fluid replacement, 370
    gallbladder disease, 373
    priapism, 373
Silibinin, 343
Simplified Acute Physiology Score (SAPS) system, 778, 779
Skin and soft tissue infections (SSTIs)
  complicated infections, 475
  diagnostic evaluation, 476
  treatment guidelines, 477
  uncomplicated infections, 475
SMART-COP score, 772, 773
Symptom-triggered treatment (STT), 662, 663
Sodium bicarbonate, 593, 594
Sodium disorders
  hypernatremia
    diagnostic workup, 507–508
    epidemiology, 507
    history and physical exam, 507
    management guidelines, 508
    treatment, 509
  hyponatremia
    diagnostic evaluation, 504–505
    epidemiology, 504
    history and physical exam, 504
    management guidelines, 505–507
    treatment, 509
  Sodium thiosulfate, 620–622
Solid organ transplantation (SOT)
Clostridium difficile infections, intermediate posttransplant period, 463
  common infectious conditions, 458–462
  immune defects, 456
  invasive fungal diseases
    diagnosis of, 457–463
    early to intermediate posttransplant period, 457
    treatment, 463
  timeline of infections, 456, 457
Solid tumors
  breast cancer, 452
  catheter-related blood stream infections, 450–451
  common infectious conditions, 453–455
  gastrointestinal cancer, 452
  genitourinary cancer, 452
  head and neck cancer, 452, 456
  HIV-negative patients, 451
  immune defects, 450
  lung cancer, 452
  neutropenic fever, 451
  opportunistic infections, corticosteroid use and risks, 451
  sepsis, 451–452
Spontaneous awakening trials (SATs), 712, 736, 737
  Spontaneous breathing trials (SBTs), 712, 736, 737
  Spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage
    diagnostic evaluation, 279–280
    etiology, 276–278, 277
initial stabilization, 281
intraventricular hemorrhage and hydrocephalus, 285
patient history and physical exam, 278–279
primary brain injury, 278
primary injury, prevention of antiplatelet agents, 283
blood pressure management, 281–282
coagulopathy, 282–283
fibrinolytic agents, 283–284
risk factors, 276–278
risk stratification and prognostication, 280–281, 280
secondary injury, 278
antiepileptic drugs, 286
disposition, 287
elevated intracranial pressure, 285
hyperglycemia, 286
seizures, 285–286
temperature control, 286
secondary injury, 278
antiepileptic drugs, 286
disposition, 287
elevated intracranial pressure, 285
hyperglycemia, 286
seizures, 285–286
temperature control, 286
venous thromboembolism, 286–287
Standard precautions, 783–784
Status epilepticus (SE)
ED diagnostic evaluation
history of epilepsy, 304–305
resolved seizure episode, 306–307, 306
epidemiology, 302–303
management guidelines
first-time seizure, 307
LEV and LCS, 310
medical therapy, 309
phenobarbital (PHT), 310
refractory status epilepticus, 310–311
second-line agents, 309
prehospital evaluation and management, 303, 304
Stroke
ischemic stroke (See Ischemic stroke)
SCD, 373
volume variation, 24
ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI)
AD, 213
Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH), 774–775, 775
Submassive pulmonary embolism, 140, 150–151
Surgical embolectomy, 147–148
Sustained low-efficiency daily dialysis (SLEDD), 540
Swiss staging system, 681, 681
Sympathomimetics, 655–656, 659
background, 655–656
diagnostic evaluation, 656
differential diagnosis, 656
history and physical examination, 656
management guidelines, 656–657
Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV), 115–116
Systemic thrombolytic therapy, 146–147
Systemic vascular resistance (SVR), 763f, 765f, 766, 767
Systolic blood pressure (SBP), 40, 776, 777
T
Tachyarrhythmias, 134, 399
Therapeutic hypothermia (TH), 252–254
Thionamides, 576
Thrombocytopenia, 361
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, 379–380
Thyroid storm. See Thyrotoxicosis
Thyrotoxic periodic paralysis (TPP), 572
Thyrotoxicosis
diagnostic criteria, 570
history and physical exam, 572, 573
laboratory testing and imaging, 573–575, 574
physiology and organ-specific effects, 571–572
special populations, 577–578
treatment, 575–577
Titratable acid/alkaline reserve (TAR), 630
Toxic alcohols, 497
Toxicologic hyperthermic syndromes
background, 606
causes of, 607
hyperthermic agitated delirium
diagnostic evaluation, 607
history and physical examination, 606–607
management, 607–608
monitoring, 608
malignant hyperthermia (See Malignant hyperthermia (MH))
NMS (See Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS))
serotonin syndrome (See Serotonin syndrome)
Transfusion therapy. See Blood product transfusion
Transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO), 390
Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI), 390
Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE), 12–13, 29
Transthoracic electrical bioimpedance (TEB), 29
Trichloramine, 600
Tuberculosis, 787, 787
Ultrasound-guided thoracentesis, 104
Uremia, 497
Ultrasonic cardiac output monitor (USCOM), 28–29
Uremia, 497
Index
809
V
Valproic acid (VPA), 309
Valvular abnormalities, 134
Vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus (VRE), 784, 784, 785
Variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 330–331
Vascular disease, 344–345
Vascular pedicle width (VPW), 135
Vasopressin, 188, 407–408
Vasopressors
background, 404
cardiogenic shock (CS), 188, 189

dopamine, 405, 406, 407
epinephrine, 405, 406
norepinephrine, 405, 406
phenylephrine, 408
physiology, 404, 405
right ventricular failure (RVF), 200, 201
sepsis, 400
vasopressin, 407–408
Ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) mismatch, 110–112
Ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP), 3
Ventricular arrhythmias
left ventricular assist devices (LVADs), 243
Ventricular tachycardia (VT)
exercise-induced VT, 224
procaainamide vs. amiodarone
2010 multicenter historical cohort study, 228
eyearly studies of amiodarone, 227–228
eyearly studies of procaainamide, 226–227
lidoicaine and sotalol, 226
retrospective study, 228
Viral hepatitis, 343–344
Viral infections
cytomegalovirus infections, 464
late posttransplantation period, 465
reactivation infections, intermediate posttransplantation period, 465
respiratory viruses, 463–464
Vitamin K antagonists (VKAs)
diagnostic evaluation, 642
history and physical examination, 642
management guidelines, 642–643
Volume assist-control ventilation
definition, 115
and SIMV, 115–116
Volume-cycled ventilation, 114–116
Voriconazole, 462

W
Wide-complex tachycardia (WCT)
adenosine administration
ED prospective study, 223
electrophysiology studies, 223
safety concerns, 224–226
VT termination, 224
Wilson disease, 344
World Federation of Neurological Surgeons (WFNS), 774